

**DICTUM**



MORE THAN TOOLS



## CONTACT

### Telephone

#### Ordering

+49 (0)9931 4058-902

#### Consulting

+49 (0)9931 4058-912

#### Sharpening advice

+49 (0)9931 4058-971

Our lines are open:

Monday till Friday from  
8.00 am to 7.00 pm.

### Post

#### DICTUM GmbH

Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3  
94447 Plattling - Germany

### Retail Shops

#### DICTUM Shop - Plattling

Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3  
94447 Plattling - Germany

#### DICTUM Shop - Munich

Haager Str. 9  
11<sup>th</sup> floor  
81671 Munich - Germany

► For further information  
see page 439.

### Online

#### Online shop

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### Sharpening tips

[www.perfect-sharpening.com](http://www.perfect-sharpening.com)



DictumGmbH

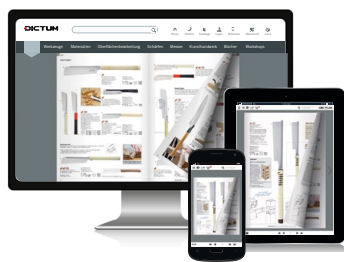


DICTUM.MehrAlsWerkzeug



dictum\_mehr\_als\_werkzeug

Order conveniently online  
or browse through our interactive  
flip catalogues.



RESPONSIBILITY KNOW-HOW Aspiration KNOWLEDGE  
Aspiration FUNCTIONAL AESTHETICS KNOW-HOW  
MATERIALS LIFETIME KNOWLEDGE Added value  
Aspiration Knowledge  
Inspiration TOOLS PRECISION  
FUNCTIONAL AESTHETICS NO RISK ADDED VALUE  
DURABILITY ADDED VALUE RESPECT  
CRAFT COURSES KNOW-HOW CRAFT COURSES KNOWLEDGE  
KNOW-HOW KNOWLEDGE FUNCTIONAL AESTHETICS PERFECTION



PERFECTION KNOW-HOW DURABILITY  
Inspiration Claim  
KNOW-HOW MATERIALS  
Anspruch Knowledge Quality  
Inspiration  
FUNCTIONAL AESTHETICS  
RESPONSIBILITY added value  
KNOW-HOW KNOWLEDGE

## DICTUM ..... 4

	Saws ..... 7
	Chisels ..... 35
	Sculpting Tools ..... 51
	Hatchets and Axes ..... 81
	Planes ..... 95
	Sharpening Devices ..... 123
	Hammers, Nails and Pry Bars ..... 167
	Woodturning Tools ..... 175
	Rasps and Files ..... 193
	Measuring and Inspection Instruments ..... 205
	Scribing and Cutting Tools ..... 221
	Router Bits and Drilling Tools ..... 229
	Clamps ..... 241
	Workshop Accessories and Toolkits ..... 251
	Surface Design ..... 267
	Leather, Paper and Tools ..... 295
	Materials ..... 306
	Forging Accessories / Blade Processing ..... 337
	Garden Tools ..... 341
	Knives and Kitchen Tools ..... 367
	Razors and Scissors ..... 419
	Books ..... 427

Index ..... 434

Our Obligation to Inform ..... 437

Services, Orders ..... 438

Shops ..... 439



## “ FOR US, VALUES ARE MORE THAN JUST WORDS

We put our corporate philosophy of sustainability into practice. Every single day. Our services for maintaining the value of your tools:



### **Includes premium sharpening service**

You can have premium class products that bear this logo sharpened by our experts at any time free of charge and without limitation. And you pay only the shipping costs.



### **Includes sharpening pass**

Products marked with this symbol come with a sharpening pass, which entitles you to two free sharpenings. Just send us your cutting tool with its sharpening pass and we will sharpen it free of charge and return it within a few days. All you pay is the shipping costs.



### **Handle-fitting pass included**

Send us the axe you have bought from us, including the handle-fitting pass. We will return it with a new handle fitted within a few days. All you pay is the cost of the new handle and the shipping.



### **Recycling pass**

When you buy CBN grinding wheels, you get a recycling pass. Just send the used item back to us, and you will receive a recycling bonus when you buy a new CBN grinding wheel. The bonus rate in euros is visible in the recycling symbol.

### **Vide**

A product or application video is available on our website [www.dictum.com/videos](http://www.dictum.com/videos) for products with this symbol.



### **DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

All products with this logo can be tested thoroughly for 15 days. If you are not entirely satisfied with the product, simply return it – no questions asked – within the 15 days. We will reimburse the full price.

### **Buy at no risk**

All our products come with a 30-day right of return.

### **Spare parts service**

For most of our high-quality products, spare parts are readily obtainable even years after your purchase. This means that you can use your tried and trusted tool for a very long time.

### **Our services**

For more information on our general sharpening service, our hardening service and other services we offer, see page 438.

### **Special orders**

You cannot find a specific product of one of our brand manufacturers in our range? We would be delighted to arrange a special order for you direct from the manufacturer.

# We love crafts!

People. Tools. Knowledge. We have been bringing them together in harmony for more than 170 years. DICTUM provides inspiring tools and materials for those who create lasting values with their own hands.

A nice feel and ergonomic shape, quality materials and good workmanship - there are many factors that combine to make first-class tools. Before we decide to recommend a product to our customers, it must meet a number of criteria: Our quality assurance standards are very high. Our unique tools - many of which we manufacture ourselves with great precision and attention to detail - stand our customers in excellent stead, day in, day out. High-quality steels, blades with outstanding edge life and our individual sharpening service ensure that you can enjoy our superior products for many a year.

“MADE WITH PRECISION FROM HIGH-QUALITY MATERIALS, EACH OF OUR HAND-MADE TOOLS IS A VALUABLE UNIQUE PIECE.

We practise traditional values, preserve ancient knowledge, and do follow consciously the ideologies and spirit of the times. Driven by a passion for crafts, our enthusiastic and accomplished team develops innovative products - often working closely with our customers - and redefines »craftsmanship« in keeping with modern times. Over many years we have created a portfolio of tools, materials and knives to meet the highest demands.

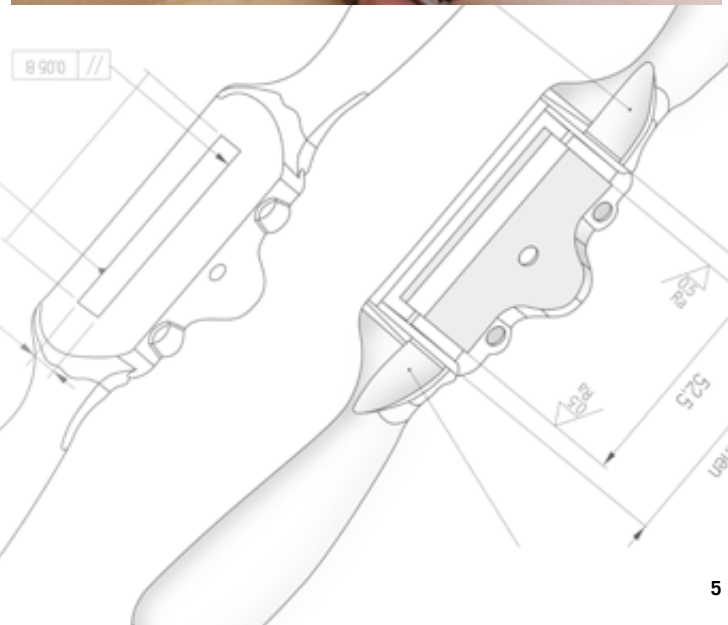
And they are waiting to be discovered by you - either in one of our shops or on our courses, where you can find out for yourself what it means to work with our products and assure yourself of their quality. We want your purchase to be a conscious decision. Our experts offer valuable tips and are happy to give you qualified advice for your individual needs.

## Respect

DICTUM makes long-lasting products with absolute conviction. They are free of pollutants and harmful substances, and their origins are guaranteed and documented. We call this »fidelity of origin«. Japanese saws, for example, are made exactly where the name implies. We attach great importance to honest dealings with our customers, business partners and staff. Because DICTUM is about more than just tools.

## Inspiration

This is something you can experience for yourself on our courses. We happily support you in learning to use the tools, materials and craft techniques or develop your skills further. Get inspired with the many and varied learning opportunities in our workshops and be taught by masters of their crafts.







# Knowledge grows through communication!

## The programme

Have you always wanted to bind a book, build a boat or restore an antique table yourself? Or would you prefer to work with metal? Cast a bronze, forging or knife making? With over 300 workshops, there are no limits to developing your creativity and skills. And every workshop ends with a product you have made with your own hands. Explore your creative side!

## Your teachers

Our workshops are taught by experts from around the world. They pass on the expertise they have acquired over years of practice, but always take into account your personal level of knowledge. Whether you choose a beginners' or advanced course, every workshop provides sufficient time for personal instruction.

## Inspiring location

Our bright and perfectly equipped course workshops are a paradise for any craftsman, set in an inspiring environment that promotes creativity and recreation.

## Your loyalty will be rewarded with a bonus card for workshops

After participating in five workshops, you will receive a €50 DICTUM shopping voucher. For each further participation the value of your voucher will increase by €10. After participating in ten workshops, you will receive the Bonuscard Red with a 12 month validity period, that allows you to benefit from a 15% discount on all purchases\*. The validity of the Bonuscard Red will be automatically extended when you book a new workshop. You will receive the bonus card at the beginning of the workshop.



Check out our Workshop Scheduler:



It is available as an online flip catalogue at [www.dictum.com/catalogues](http://www.dictum.com/catalogues)

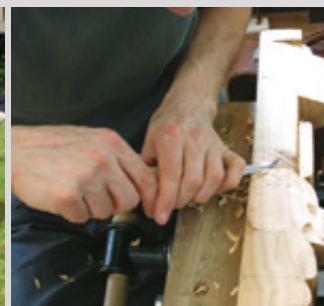


Scan & open  
online flip catalogue

Find out more at [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

► For further information see  
[www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

\* Books, DVDs, power tools from Festool, Bosch Professional and Lamello, as well as already reduced items and all products from Mafell and Hegner are excluded from this offer. For more information see [www.dictum.com/non-discountable-items](http://www.dictum.com/non-discountable-items)



Experience our crafts courses: **unique, fascinating & exciting!**  
at Niederalteich, Bad Gandersheim and Munich.

# Saws



**DICTUM® Japanese Saws  
with Interchangeable Blades | 10**

Dozuki Saws | 10

Kataba Saws | 13

Ryoba Saws | 16

Folding Saws | 18

DICTUM® Saw Sets | 19

**Japanese Saws by other Suppliers | 20**

Dozuki Saws | 20

Kataba Saws | 21

Ryoba Saws | 21

Folding Saws | 21

**Silky® Japanese Saws  
with Interchangeable Blades | 22**

**Classic Handmade Japanese Saws | 23**

**Cases for Japanese Saws | 24**

**Other Saw Types | 25**

Fine-toothed Saws and Back Saws | 25

Azebiki Saw | 26

Flush-cutting and Veneer Saws | 27

Frame Saws | 28

Panel Saws | 29

Coping Saws | 29

Keyhole Saws | 31

Saws for Cutting Other Materials | 31

Mitre Saws and Saw Guides | 32

Scroll Saws | 34



## PRECISE CUTTING, CLEAN CUTTING SURFACES, NO RE-WORKING - THE PERFECTION IN WOOD WORKING!

### With us you get the originals

As one of the largest suppliers of Japanese handcraft tools with decades of experience, we ensure the highest quality standards for every Japanese saw that leaves our company.

The saws that we offer are manufactured exclusively in leading Japanese master blacksmiths' workshops. Saws with interchangeable blades are manufactured on

high-precision machines, and saws with permanent blades in traditional small workshops. The quality of these tools fundamentally differs in many respects from inexpensive Chinese or Taiwanese imports, which sometimes have a similar appearance. More than 20 testing processes during manufacture, for example the microscopic final inspection of every saw blade or the manual

sawing test (spot checks of each shipment), are followed by a 100 % check of incoming goods in our company.

#### Your benefit:

**You purchase a top product guaranteed to be 100 % fault-free! And our responsibility does not end with selling the saw. The supply of replacement parts is also ensured over the long term.**

### Features of an original DICTUM® Japanese saw - made in Japan!

► Find out more in our blog at [www.dictum.com/blog](http://www.dictum.com/blog)

#### Rust protection and reduced friction

thanks to cutting edge surface plating technology (inexpensive saws are usually only lacquered, leading to increased friction in the saw kerf!)

#### Perfect deburring of the teeth

for reduced sawing forces

Individually impulse-hardened tooth tips for equal hardness of all teeth and thus long-lasting sharpness

Uniform set of saw teeth and absolutely straight teeth for drift-free sawing

Backlash-free saw blade guidance for excellent cutting precision

#### Stainless steel blade holder –

rust protection, no varnish and increased bending stiffness of the back of the blade

No play in saw blade attachment for smooth, chatter-free sawing

### DICTUM® Quality Tests and Services:

- Long-term replacement blade service
- Proof of origin
- Tool handles are free from toxins (all plastic handles are regularly tested)
- Regular checking of steel quality and hardness values per tooth tip carried out in a German test laboratory
- Microscope checks (deburring and tooth grinding) carried out on site in Plattling, Germany



#### New and exclusive: DICTUM Wave Grip®

### The right handle for each application:

- **NEW:** Extra slip-proof alder wood handles (1)
- Original Japanese wooden handles that are wrapped in rattan (no plastic or low-quality braiding) (2)
- Hardwood folding handles with ergonomic cross-section (3) and easy-care Power Grip handles e.g. for outdoor use (4)
- Handles for quick-change saw blades - extreme flexibility with different combinations of matching handles and blades (5)

stainless steel screw



## THE ADVANTAGES OF JAPANESE SAWS:

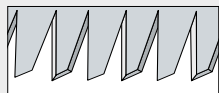
### 1. Low sawing forces thanks to thin blades

Conventional saws cut on the push stroke. This requires thick blades in order to ensure sufficient stability. Japanese saws, on the other hand, cut on the pull stroke, allowing the use of very thin blades, as they are only subjected to tensile stress and cannot warp. The saw kerfs are therefore finer and the required sawing forces considerably lower.

#### Your benefit:

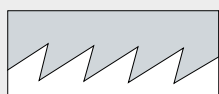
Easy work and little wear.

### 2. Clean cutting surfaces thanks to special tooth pattern



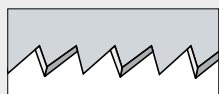
#### Trapezoidal teeth (crosscut teeth)

Preferred for cuts across the grain. The teeth are sharpened on three sides in alternating pattern to cleanly sever the wood fibres with razor-blade sharpness, leaving very clean surfaces.



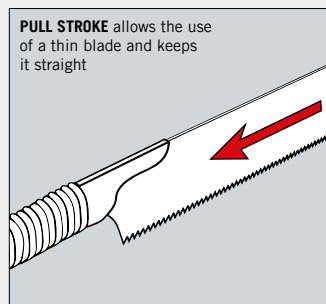
#### Triangular teeth (rip teeth)

For sawing along the grain (ripping). The tooth pitch varies over the saw's length to make it easier to start cuts and improve cutting efficiency.

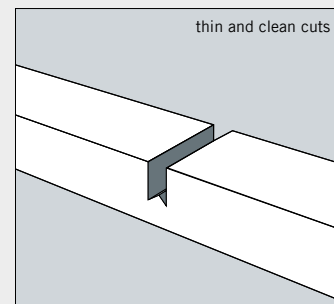


#### Universal teeth

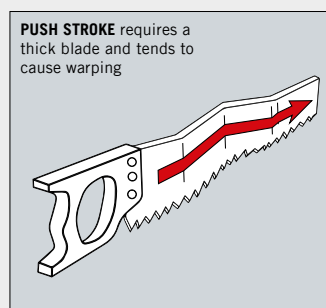
A hybrid pattern of the above tooth types, for sawing across, along, and diagonally to the grain.



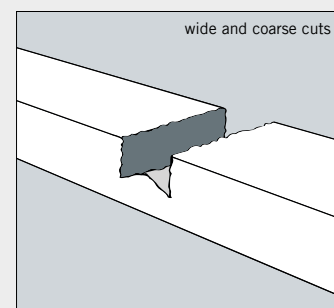
**PULL STROKE** allows the use of a thin blade and keeps it straight



thin and clean cuts



**PUSH STROKE** requires a thick blade and tends to cause warping

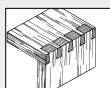


wide and coarse cuts

## WHICH SAW IS THE MOST SUITABLE?

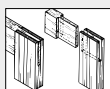
Even without concerning yourself too much with details, you can find the right saw with us.

What is the intended use?



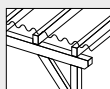
**Dovetails and quick trimming/  
material thicknesses up to 50 mm**

Recommended saw:  
DICTUM® Dozuki Universal 240 (No. 712808), page 10



**Alternating cutting directions (trimming, rip cutting) of  
softwood boards, mortise and tenon joints and other wood joints/  
material thicknesses up to 100 mm**

Recommended saw:  
DICTUM® Ryoba Komane 240 (No. 712806), page 17



**Trimming roof battens and softwood studwork/  
material thicknesses up to 100 mm**

Recommended saw:  
DICTUM® Kataba Universal 270 (No. 712478), page 13



**Cutting sheet materials, trimming impregnated  
construction timbers or hardwood blocks/  
material thicknesses up to 100 mm**

Recommended saw:  
DICTUM® Kataba Super Hard 240 (No. 712204), page 15

Some rules of thumb concerning **further distinctive features**:

#### 1) Fixed saw blade or folding saw/quick-change saw?

The advantage of the folding saw or quick-change saw is the safe tooth protection and the compact transport size.

#### 2) Choice of saw type

Models with reinforced back (Dozuki) are more robust and allow narrower kerfs. Models without reinforced back (Kataba, Ryoba) have an unlimited cutting depth. The Ryoba additionally features two tooth patterns (crosscuts and rip cuts) in one saw.

#### 3) Which kind of wood/wood composite do I work with?

Some saws have a tooth pattern and a tooth pitch that is designed for special materials or material conditions.



Saws for construction timber (wet wood)  
see page 15, 22, 23



Saws for sheet materials or exotic hardwoods  
see page 12 and 18

#### 4) In which cutting direction do I usually work?

The tooth patterns for the two main cutting directions are very different from each other. A saw with fine crosscut teeth offers a restricted use for rip cuts and vice versa. A quick guide is offered here by our pictograms.

#### 5) Which saw blade length?

The length of the saw blade should be at least twice the cutting length (width of the workpiece).

## JAPANESE SAW TYPES:

All our traditional grip saws come with original and natural rattan wrapping and stainless steel blade holders!



**Dozuki**  
Universal saw with reinforced back and therefore limited cutting depth. For precise, thin cuts and fine surfaces. See page 10.



**Kataba**  
The Kataba is a sturdy saw without reinforced back for deep, long and level cuts. See page 13.



**Ryoba**  
The Ryoba is a double-sided saw with trapezoidal crosscut teeth on one side and triangular rip teeth on the other. The optimum sawing performance is therefore available for sawing both across and along the grain. See page 16.



# DICTUM® Japanese Saws with Interchangeable Blades

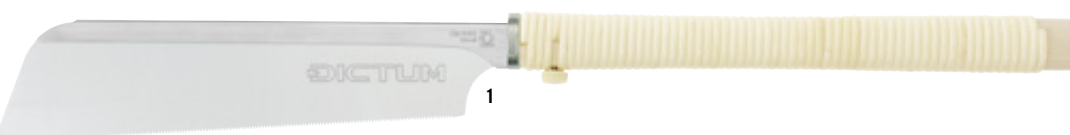
## Dozuki Saws

Dozuki saws are indispensable for cutting wood joints and making precise crosscuts and shoulder cuts. The ultra-thin and fine-toothed saw blade allows precise, tear-free cuts and the finest kerfs. The reinforced back stabilises the blade and makes it less susceptible to breakage, but also limits the possible cutting depth.

Dozuki saws with universal tooth pattern are ideal for making dovetails and other wood joints.

### The special steel alloy of DICTUM® Dozuki saws

Dozuki saws are equipped with extremely thin and finely toothed saw blades. In order to protect the fine teeth from breakage, DICTUM Dozuki saws feature a special steel alloy instead of the standard saw steel.



### DICTUM® DOZUKI UNIVERSAL® 240 No. 712420



**B DICTUM® DOZUKI UNIVERSAL® COMPACT 180**  
Handy and compact:  
For mobile use or maximum control in detail cuts across and along the grain.  
Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 395 mm  
Cut depth 45 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.5 mm  
Universal teeth 1.5 mm  
Handle version  
**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712110**  
**2** Power Grip **No. 712848**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712948**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712870**



**A DICTUM® DOZUKI UNIVERSAL® 240**  
The most popular Dozuki:  
Standard version for all cuts along and across the grain.  
Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 530 mm  
Cut depth 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm

Setting 0.5 mm  
Universal teeth 1.5 mm  
Handle version  
**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712808**  
**2** Power Grip **No. 712830**  
**3** Wave Grip **No. 712420**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712908**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**

► For a DICTUM® Dozuki Universal folding saw see page 18.

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



»We have been using Dozuki Universal Saws for years in apprentice training with great success.«

Peter Winklhofer, teacher at Heinrich Hübisch School Karlsruhe (Germany)

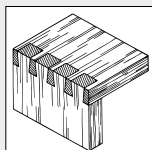


**Vide** (in German) on 7 exercises for Japanese saws on our youtube channel.

[www.youtube.com/dictum](http://www.youtube.com/dictum)

### What makes the Dozuki Universal ideal for cutting dovetail joints?

Dovetail joints require a saw that allows precise cuts in both directions.

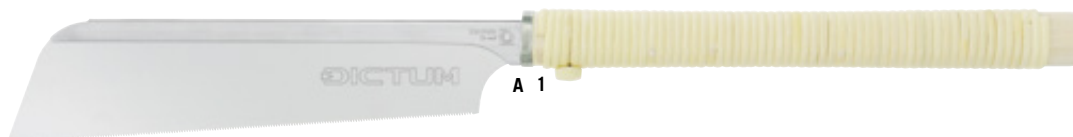


Cutting the pins = rip cut  
Cutting the side pins = crosscut

- The kerf is extremely narrow (0.45 mm) - for ultimate accuracy of fit of the finished tails and pins
- The saw blade is stabilised by a back to minimise chattering, thus allowing ultra-straight cuts

### Handle versions

- DICTUM Traditional Grip**  
Light and breathable wooden handle, wrapped in rattan.
- DICTUM Power Grip**  
Very robust and slip-proof rubberised grip.
- DICTUM Wave Grip®**  
Oiled, extra slip-proof grip made of native alder wood.
- X-Grip**  
Dark-stained handle, wrapped crosswise in rattan.



#### A DICTUM® DOZUKI UNIVERSAL® EXTRA-FINE 240

Precise results with familiar design:  
The closest-ever tooth pitch of a mass-produced Japanese saw with universal teeth is 1.3 mm. This makes the

saw suitable for precise and clean cuts along and across the grain.

- Extremely accurate joints - allowing the highest bonding strength in glued joints
- Smooth, clean cuts

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 530 mm  
Cut depth 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.45 mm  
Universal teeth 1.3 mm

Handle version

1 Trad. Grip **No. 712994**  
2 Wave Grip **No. 712421**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712996**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**

*»My reason for getting the Dozuki Universal Extra-fine X 240 is that it does a splendid job for dovetail cuts in about 8 mm thick hardwood. The ripping is excellent and the crosscut is not too bad either, though the Dozuki Tenon X 240, Crosscut is a little faster.«*

David Charlesworth, English author and teacher of furniture making

#### DICTUM® DOZUKI X

- Extremely accurate joints - allowing the highest bonding strength in glued joints
- Smooth, clean cuts
- Extra-long back for improved stability and smoothness

- Blade made from White Silver Steel for extreme hardness and unbeatable edge life



#### B DICTUM® DOZUKI UNIVERSAL® EXTRA-FINE X 240

Extraordinary precision in a Japanese look:  
As well as the closest tooth pitch, this Japanese saw with universal teeth also guarantees a long edge life and extreme hardness. Ideal for clean cuts across and along the grain.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 600 mm  
Cut depth 55 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.45 mm  
Universal teeth 1.3 mm

Handle version  
1 X-Grip **No. 712405**  
2 Wave Grip **No. 712422**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712997**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**



#### C DICTUM® DOZUKI TENON X 240, CROSSCUT

Unique look - unbeatable edge life:  
Traditional design for all cuts across the grain as well as crosscuts and shoulder cuts.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 590 mm  
Cut depth 55 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1 mm

Handle version  
1 X-Grip **No. 712406**  
2 Wave Grip **No. 712423**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712507**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**

► »X« saws are mostly handmade. For this reason, shortages of supply can occur.

#### White Silver Steel

This steel has significantly lower alloy content than the steels commonly used for saws and is thus »purer«. We use it for the »X« saws. The resulting finer structure of the steel makes it easier to sharpen and harden, which gives it a much longer edge life. Tests have shown a 30-40 % increase in edge life under identical conditions.



Complex joints require precisely manufactured saws!



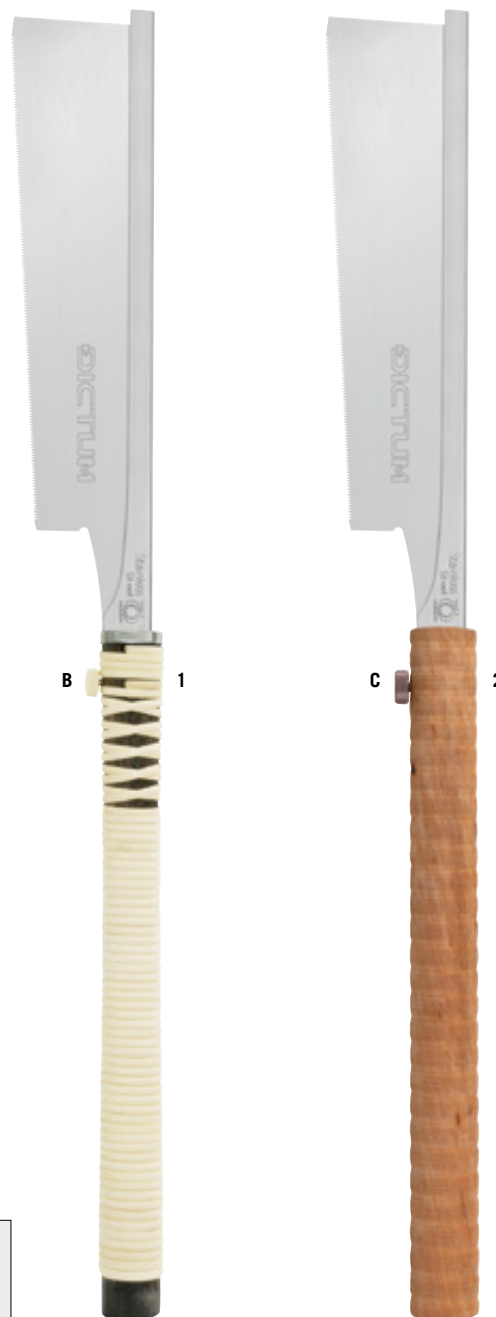
#### Cutting direction across/ along the grain

Universal teeth - for fast cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs along the grain.



#### Cutting direction across the grain

Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.







A



**A DICTUM® DOZUKI UNIVERSAL®, KATANA BLACK EDITION**  
White Silver Steel with excellent edge life, warp-resistant stainless steel, light-weight Yamagiri wood, non-slip rayon ribbon, acid-resistant as well as extremely ageing-resistant Urushi are the materials that make up this saw. Each saw component goes through a production process optimised for its application, in the same way as making a Samurai sword.

- Hardening of the White Silver Steel through a special staggered-tooth induction hardening process
- Black Urushi coating on handle and back of blade
- Handle wrapped »Hinerimaki« style by a sword handle manufacturer (Katana shokunin)



Extra-fine universal teeth guarantee ultra-precise joints in any cutting direction with the »Katana Black Edition«. An interchangeable blade system and the use of exclusive materials make this saw a durable tool. Comes in jute slide-in pouch.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 600 mm  
Cut depth 55 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.45 mm  
Universal teeth 1.3 mm  
**No. 712155**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712156**

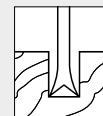


#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



#### Brief information on setting and blade thickness



Setting describes the bending of the saw teeth, alternating to the right and the left. However, where this setting is measured is not clearly defined. To ease understanding, we specify the setting according to the thickness of the saw blade at its teeth. This dimension also corresponds to the width of the saw kerf. The blade thickness is measured on the back of the blade.

**Setting minus blade thickness =**  
between **0.15 and 0.35 mm**

- Easy adjustment of the saw cut
- Less effort needed

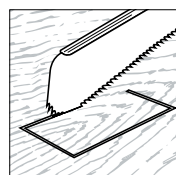
**Setting minus blade thickness =**  
between **0.1 and 0.15 mm**

- Saw makes straight cuts without adjusting the direction
- Extremely clean surfaces

#### Dozuki Super Hard

Preferred for cuts across the grain (trimming and shoulder cuts) in exotic hardwoods, as well as glued wood and particle boards.

- Wear-resistant teeth, even with hardwoods (exotic woods), glued joints and synthetic resins
- Curved tip also allows mid-panel cuts



**Our saws give you clean cuts even in daily heavy-duty use on the building site.**



**B DICTUM® DOZUKI SUPER HARD 240**  
Robust tooth design - precise cuts:  
Standard length for general use and larger stock.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 530 mm  
Cut depth 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm

Setting 0.45 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm  
Handle version

**1 Trad. Grip No. 712809**

**2 Power Grip No. 712413**

**3 Wave Grip No. 712424**

Repl. Blade **No. 712909**

Case p. 24 **No. 712871**

► For a version with blade length 270 mm see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► For a DICTUM® Dozuki Super Hard folding saw see page 18.



**Quick-change fastener**  
for easy changing of blade or handle. Easy to disassemble for transport.



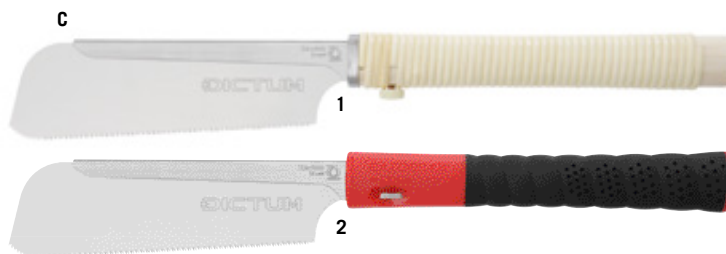
**Cutting direction across/along the grain**  
Universal teeth - for fast cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs along the grain.



**Cutting direction across the grain**  
Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.



**Particle boards**  
Ideal for hard materials like particle boards.



**C DICTUM® DOZUKI SUPER HARD COMPACT 180**

For mobile use or maximum control in detail work. With traditional wooden handle, light and breathable, or rubberised power grip, particularly robust and slip-proof.

Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 395 mm

Cut depth 45 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.45 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm

Handle version

**1 Trad. Grip No. 712112**

**2 Power Grip No. 712795**

Repl. Blade **No. 712796**

Case p. 24 **No. 712870**

#### Handle versions



**DICTUM Traditional Grip**  
Light and breathable wooden handle, wrapped in rattan.



**DICTUM Power Grip**  
Very robust and slip-proof rubberised grip.



**DICTUM Wave Grip®**  
Oiled, extra slip-proof grip made of native alder wood.



**DICTUM Akagashi**  
Ergonomic, hand-made hard wood handle



**A** **DICTUM® DOZUKI 240, CROSSCUT**  
For especially fine-cut surfaces:  
Standard version for tear-free crosscuts  
and shoulder cuts.  
Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 530 mm  
Cut depth 45 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.46 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1 mm  
Handle version  
**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712388**  
**2** Power Grip **No. 712389**  
**3** Wave Grip **No. 712425**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712390**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**



**B** **DICTUM® DOZUKI COMPACT 180, CROSSCUT**  
Handy and compact:  
For mobile use or maximum control in  
detail cuts across the grain.  
Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 395 mm  
Cut depth 45 mm

Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1 mm  
Handle version  
**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712111**  
**2** Power Grip **No. 712846**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712946**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712870**

## Kataba Saws

Due to their thicker blades, the backless Kataba saws are very robust and allow deep cuts flush to the surface. They are available with different blade lengths and tooth spacings and are thus highly versatile in cabinet making and carpentry.



**C** **DICTUM® KATABA UNIVERSAL 270**  
For cuts across, along and diagonal to  
the grain.

- Special raker teeth ensure quick removal of cut material

Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 570 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.9 mm

Handle version  
**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712478**  
**2** Wave Grip **No. 712430**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712479**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**



**D** **DICTUM® AKAGASHI UNIVERSAL 270**  
For cuts across, along and diagonal to  
the grain.

- Handmade ergonomic handle of oiled Japanese red oak
- Special raker teeth ensure quick removal of cut material

Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 520 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.9 mm  
**No. 712160**

Repl. Blade **No. 712479**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712169**



**E** **DICTUM® AKAGASHI FINE 250**  
Ideal saw for fine cuts of any depth  
across the grain.

- Handmade ergonomic handle of oiled Japanese red oak

Blade length 250 mm  
Overall length 500 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.6 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.4 mm  
**No. 712162**

Repl. Blade **No. 712988**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712169**



**F** **DICTUM® KATABA FINE 250**  
Ideal saw for fine cuts of any depth  
across the grain.

Blade length 250 mm  
Overall length 550 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.6 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.4 mm

Handle version  
**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712397**  
**2** Wave Grip **No. 712431**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712988**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**

## Akagashi saws

Akagashi (Japanese red oak) is one of the hardest Japanese wood species. It is therefore often used to produce »Bokuto«, wooden training swords. The handles of the Bokuto with their slightly curved, ergonomic shape, the oval cross-section and their special surface (which is treated with oil several times and therefore provides a good grip even with wet hands) served as a model for the Akagashi saw handle.







### A DICTUM® KATABA 270, CROSSCUT, POWER GRIP

For cuts of any depth across the grain.

- For use in combination with saw guide No. 712460
- Ergonomic plastic handle
- Blade length 270 mm

Overall length 455 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.75 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.8 mm  
**No. 712471**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712481**



### B DICTUM® QUICK-CHANGE SAW BLADES

1 Akagashi Rough 270	<b>No. 712987</b>
2 Kataba Crosscut 270	<b>No. 712481</b>
3 Akagashi Fine 250	<b>No. 712988</b>
4 Akagashi Extra-fine 180*	<b>No. 712989</b>
5 Kataba Universal 270	<b>No. 712479</b>
6 Akagashi Rip Cut 250	<b>No. 712998</b>
7 Ryoba 240	<b>No. 712480</b>
8 Akagashi Flush Cut 170	<b>No. 712992</b>
9 Akagashi Keyhole Saw 150	<b>No. 712993</b>
10 Akagashi Hard Wood 210	<b>No. 712991</b>
11 Kataba Vario 210, Rough Wood Cuts	<b>No. 712482</b>
12 Kataba Vario 210, for Laminates	<b>No. 712483</b>
13 Kataba Vario 210, for Bamboo	<b>No. 712484</b>
14 Kataba Vario 210, for Plastics	<b>No. 712485</b>

► For specifications of the saw blades see saw description text.

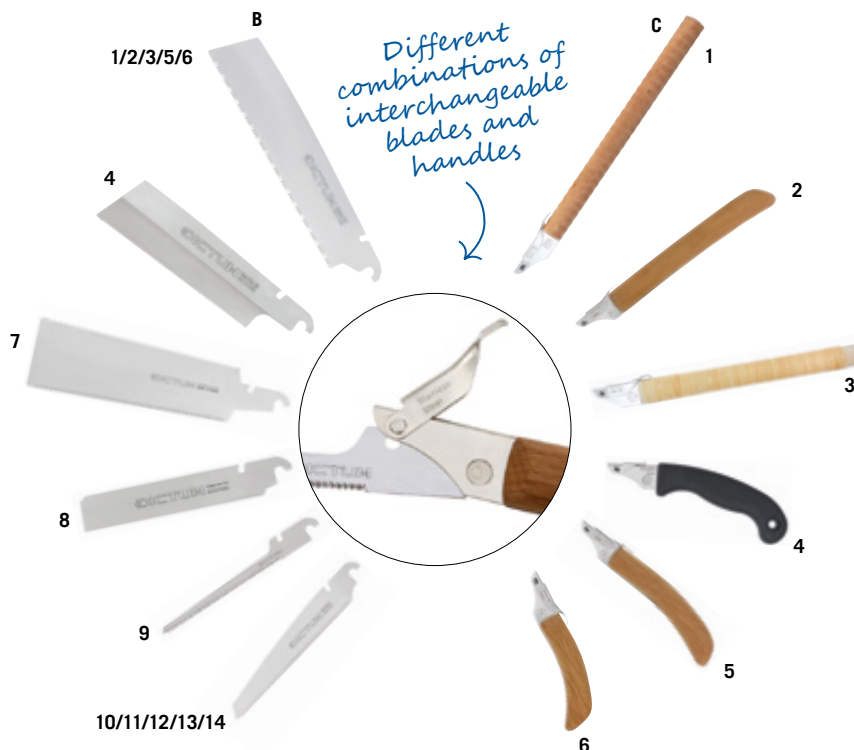
\* Due to the reinforced back of the blade, this saw blade fits only the Akagashi handles and not the rattan-wrapped and Power Grip handles.



### C DICTUM® HANDLES FOR QUICK-CHANGE SAW BLADES

1 Wave Grip 270 mm	<b>No. 800597</b>
2 Red oak straight 215 mm	<b>No. 712983</b>
3 Traditional Grip 270	<b>No. 712487</b>
4 Power Grip 210 mm	<b>No. 712486</b>
5 Red oak curved 125 mm	<b>No. 712982</b>
6 Red oak curved 165 mm	<b>No. 712981</b>

► Even if all combinations of handles and blades are possible, an unfavourable choice may restrict the function of the saw, e.g. Ryoba saw blade with curved handle.



### Japanese Akagashi Saws with Interchangeable Blades



► DICTUM® Akagashi Rough Cut 270 and Rip Cut 250 available online



► DICTUM® Akagashi Hard Wood 210 available online



► DICTUM® Akagashi Extra-fine 180 available online



► DICTUM® Akagashi Flush Cut Saw 170 see page 27



► DICTUM® Akagashi Keyhole 150 and Keyhole 150 Power Grip see page 31



► DICTUM® Kataba Crosscut 270 Power Grip with Vario saw blades see page 20

### Handle versions



**DICTUM Traditional Grip**  
Light and breathable wooden handle, wrapped in rattan.



**DICTUM Power Grip**  
Very robust and slip-proof rubberised grip.



**DICTUM Wave Grip®**  
Oiled, extra slip-proof grip made of native alder wood.



**DICTUM Akagashi**  
Ergonomic, hand-made hard wood handle



### D DICTUM® KATABA 240, RIP CUT

Unbeatable along the grain:

Thanks to the triangular tooth pattern, this Kataba produces particularly good results when cutting in the direction of the grain. The tooth pitch which decreases as it gets towards the handle, makes it easier to start a cut, whereas less force is required as the sawing progresses.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 540 mm  
Blade width 55 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.75 mm  
Rip teeth 2.4-3.8 mm

Handle version

1 Trad. Grip	<b>No. 712394</b>
2 Power Grip	<b>No. 712395</b>
3 Wave Grip	<b>No. 712426</b>
Repl. Blade	<b>No. 712396</b>



### A DICTUM® KATABA KARIWAKU DAIKU 330

The most popular carpenter's saw:  
Robust saw for larger dimensions in  
carpentry and joining.

- Also for damp wood
- Mixed tooth pattern ensures high cutting performance, also diagonally to the grain

Blade length 330 mm  
Overall length 655 mm  
Blade width 55 mm  
Blade thickness 0.8 mm  
Setting 1.2 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3 mm

Handle version  
1 Trad. Grip **No. 712386**  
2 Wave Grip **No. 712429**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712387**

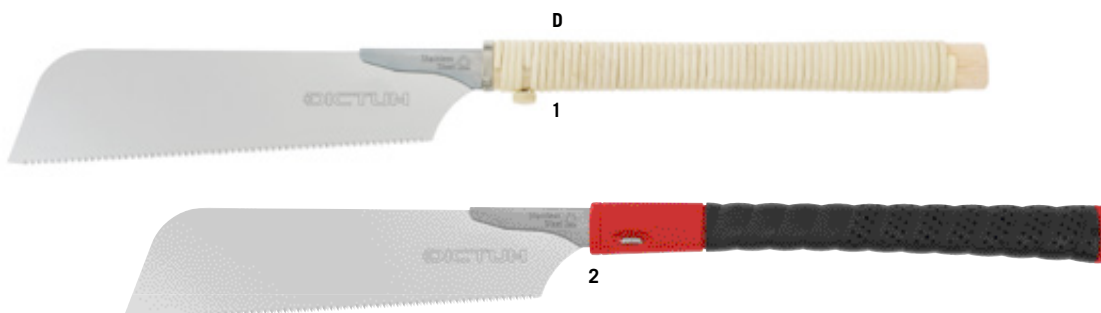


**B LEATHER CASE FOR  
KATABA KARIWAKU**  
Saw case made of European split  
cowhide. Fits no. 712386, 712429 and  
712868.  
**No. 712868**



### Kataba Super Hard

Preferred for cuts across the grain (trimming and shoulder cuts) in exotic hardwoods, as well as glued wood and particle boards. Wear-resistant teeth, even in hardwood (exotic woods), glued joints and synthetic resins.



**D DICTUM® KATABA  
SUPER HARD 240**  
The most popular Kataba:  
Standard length for general use and  
larger stock.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 540 mm  
Blade width 65 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.9 mm

Handle version  
1 Trad. Grip **No. 712204**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712412**  
3 Wave Grip **No. 712428**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712205**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712871**



### C DICTUM® KATABA 255, CROSSCUT

For precise cuts:

Due to the fine crosscut teeth and the  
minimum setting, this saw produces  
smooth, clean and tear-free cuts across  
the grain.

Blade length 255 mm  
Overall length 550 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.74 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.3 mm

Handle version  
1 Trad. Grip **No. 712391**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712392**  
3 Wave Grip **No. 712427**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712393**

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested  
for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



### DICTUM® Saws:

- **Backlash-free saw blade guidance** for excellent cutting precision
- **No play in saw blade attachment** for smooth, chatter-free sawing
- **Stainless steel blade holder** - rust protection, no varnish and increased bending stiffness of the back of the blade
- **Perfect deburring of the teeth** for reduced sawing forces
- **Individually impulse-hardened tooth tips** for equal hardness of all teeth and thus long-lasting sharpness
- **Rust protection and reduced friction** thanks to cutting edge surface plating technology (inexpensive saws are usually only lacquered, leading to increased friction in the saw kerf!)
- **Uniform set of saw teeth** and absolutely straight teeth for drift-free sawing

For more information see page 8.



► For a DICTUM® Kataba Super Hard folding saw see page 18.



**Quick-change fastener**  
for easy changing of blade or  
handle. Easy to disassemble  
for transport.



**Cutting direction  
across the grain**  
Trapezoidal teeth - for  
precise and extremely clean  
cuts across the grain and  
narrowest kerfs.



**Cutting direction  
along the grain**  
Triangular teeth - for fast and  
efficient cuts along the grain.



**Wet wood**  
Ideal for wet and green wood  
(timber).



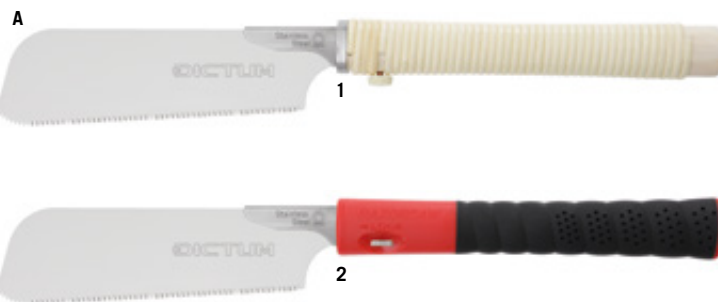
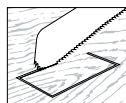


### A DICTUM® KATABA SUPER HARD COMPACT 180

For mobile use or maximum control in detail work. Curved tip also allows mid-panel cuts.

Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 395 mm

Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.8 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm  
Handle version  
**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712113**  
**2** Power Grip **No. 712845**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712945**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712870**



## Ryoba Saws

With its two different tooth patterns, the Ryoba saw ensures optimum cutting performance not only across but also along the grain, making it the most versatile saw for carpentry and joinery. The thicker blade allows sawing without a stabilizing back and can thus be used for cuts of any depth flush to the surface. Since the teeth become successively finer from the tip to the tang, it is easy to start a cut and less force is required as the stroke progresses.



B



### B DICTUM® RYOBA COMPACT 180

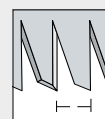
Handy and compact:

For mobile use or maximum control in detail cuts across and along the grain.

Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 395 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.7 / 0.6 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm  
Rip teeth 2.7-3.7 mm  
Handle version

**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712114**  
**2** Power Grip **No. 712849**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712949**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712858**

### Brief information on tooth pitch



The tooth pitch is measured from one tooth tip to another. In our printed catalogue this dimension is always indicated next to the kind of tooth pattern (e.g. crosscut teeth 1.5 mm).

**Tooth pitch between 1.5 and 3.5 mm**  
(trapezoidal and universal teeth)

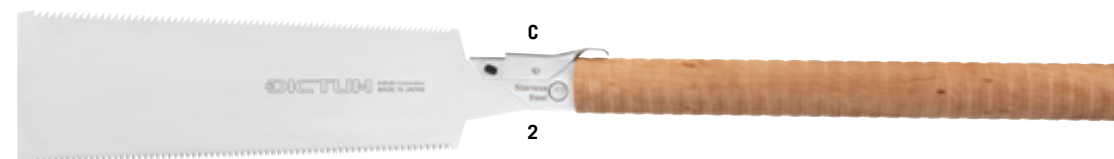
**Tooth pitch between 4 and 5 mm**  
(triangular teeth)

- You will quickly reach the cut end
- Slightly coarse cuts

**Tooth pitch between 1 and 1.5 mm**  
(trapezoidal and universal teeth)

**Tooth pitch between 3 and 4 mm**  
(triangular teeth)

- Extremely clean cuts
- Slightly inferior cutting performance (feed)



### C DICTUM® RYOBA 240

Universal saw for cuts of any depth across and along the grain.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 570 mm  
Blade width 83 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 1.0 / 0.9 mm

Crosscut teeth 2.0  
Rip teeth 2.8-4.3 mm  
Handle version

**1** Trad. Grip **No. 712385**  
**2** Wave Grip **No. 712434**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712480**

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



#### Quick-change fastener

for easy changing of blade or handle. Easy to disassemble for transport.



#### Cutting direction along the grain

Triangular teeth - for fast and efficient cuts along the grain.



#### Cutting direction across the grain

Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.



#### Particle boards

Ideal for hard materials like particle boards.

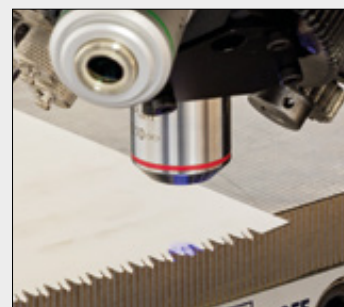
### Quality checks on Japanese saws



Tooth checking by microscope



Manual saw test (spot checks)



Quality control at DICTUM



A 3



### A DICTUM® RYOBA KOMANE 240

The most popular Ryoba:  
The particularly fine trapezoidal teeth of this universal saw allow extremely clean cuts across the grain, the rip teeth are designed for a good cutting performance along the grain.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 580 mm  
Blade width 84 mm  
Blade thickness 0.45 mm  
Setting 0.65 / 0.65 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.3 mm  
Rip teeth 2.4-3.8 mm

Handle version

1 Trad. Grip **No. 712806**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712379**  
3 Wave Grip **No. 712433**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712906**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712851**

#### Handle versions



**DICTUM Traditional Grip**  
Light and breathable wooden handle, wrapped in rattan.



**DICTUM Power Grip**  
Very robust and slip-proof rubberised grip.



**DICTUM Wave Grip®**  
Oiled, extra slip-proof grip made of native alder wood.



B 2



### B DICTUM® RYOBA SEIUN 210

For smaller workpieces:  
Because of its small size, this Ryoba provides maximum control in all detail cuts across and along the grain.  
Blade length 210 mm  
Overall length 540 mm

Blade width 88 mm  
Blade thickness 0.45 mm  
Setting 0.65 / 0.55 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm  
Rip teeth 2.5-3.7 mm

Handle version

1 Trad. Grip **No. 712803**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712375**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712903**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712851**



C 3



### C DICTUM® RYOBA SEIUN 240

Highly versatile:  
For universal use in cabinetmaking and carpentry, thanks to high-performance rip teeth and medium-fine trapezoidal teeth for precise cuts across the grain.  
Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 600 mm

Blade width 97 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.8 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.7 mm  
Rip teeth 2.4-3.8 mm

Handle version

1 Trad. Grip **No. 712804**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712376**  
3 Wave Grip **No. 712432**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712904**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712851**



D 2



### D DICTUM® RYOBA SEIUN 270

Ideal for carpenters:  
High-performance Ryoba for wood joints as well as trimming cuts and cuts along the grain.  
Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 660 mm

Blade width 115 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 / 0.8 mm  
Crosscut teeth 2.5 mm  
Rip teeth 3.8-5.6 mm

Handle version

1 Trad. Grip **No. 712805**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712377**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712905**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712859**



E 1



### E DICTUM® RYOBA SEIUN 300

For large pieces of wood:  
The largest Ryoba with aggressive crosscut teeth and high-performance rip teeth can even handle strong beams and planks.

Blade length 300 mm  
Overall length 700 mm  
Blade width 120 mm  
Blade thickness 0.7 mm  
Setting 1 / 0.95 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3 mm  
Rip teeth 3.6-5.6 mm

Handle version

1 Trad. Grip **No. 712812**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712378**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712912**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712859**

#### The saws of world champions!

For many years, saws from DICTUM have been used with great success in the WorldSkills competition in cabinetmaking and joinery.





## Japanese Folding Saws

- For mobile use
- Safe tooth protection by folding in the blade
- Secure locking of the blade in the working position



### Robusuta® Folding Saws

When open, these folding saws offer all functions and the stability of a traditional Japanese saw. Thanks to their special handle shape, they fit perfectly in the hand. The teeth are protected against damage and when folded, the saw can be space-saving stewed using the robust yet easy-to-use toggle lever. The blade can be quickly and easily replaced by loosening and tightening the positioning bolts.

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



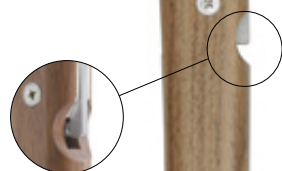
**A DICTUM® ROBUSUTA® FOLDING SAW, DOZUKI UNIVERSAL®**  
This Dozuki saw with universal teeth is excellent for producing dovetail joints and all other kinds of wood joints. The ultra-thin and fine-toothed saw blade allows precise, tear-free cuts and the finest kerfs. The reinforced back stabilises the

blade and reduces the risk of snapping. Ideal for all cuts across, along, and diagonally to the grain.  
Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 540 mm  
Cut depth 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.45 mm  
Universal teeth 1.5 mm

#### Handle

- 1 Untreated Beechwood Handle  
**No. 712339**
- 2 Stained Beechwood Handle  
**No. 712333**
- 3 Walnut Handle  
**No. 712330**

Repl. Blade **No. 712336**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712169**



Robust toggle lever locks the blade securely in place



**B DICTUM® ROBUSUTA® FOLDING SAW, DOZUKI SUPER HARD**  
The ultra-thin and fine-toothed saw blade allows precise, tear-free cuts and the finest kerfs. The reinforced back adds stability to the blade and reduces the risk of snapping, although it does limit the possible depth of the cut. It is the tool of choice for shoulder cuts across the grain in exotic hardwood, but also glulam and chipboard materials. The hard wearing teeth are barely troubled by mineral inclusions in the wood (tropical woods), glued joints and synthetic resins.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 540 mm  
Cut depth 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.45 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm

#### Handle

- 2 Stained Beechwood Handle  
**No. 712335**
  - 3 Walnut Handle  
**No. 712332**
- Repl. blade **No. 712338**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712169**



**Video** Application video available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**C DICTUM® ROBUSUTA® FOLDING SAW, KATABA SUPER HARD**  
This Kataba saw has a thicker blade for an extremely rugged design allowing deep cuts entirely flush to the surface. It is the tool of choice for deep cuts across the grain (crosscuts) in exotic hardwood, but also glulam and chipboard materials. The hard-wearing teeth are barely troubled by mineral inclusions in the wood (tropical woods), glued joints and synthetic resins.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 540 mm  
Blade width 65 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.9 mm

#### Handle

- 2 Stained Beechwood Handle  
**No. 712334**
- 3 Walnut Handle  
**No. 712331**

Repl. Blade **No. 712337**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712169**



**Cutting direction across the grain**  
Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.

**Cutting direction across/along the grain**  
Universal teeth - for fast cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs along the grain.

**Particle boards**  
Ideal for hard materials like particle boards.

## DICTUM® Saw Sets

All saw sets come with a jute tool roll or in a Systainer.



Weight 2.1 kg.  
396 x 296 x 105 mm

- Robusuta folding saw, Dozuki Universal, walnut handle (No. 712330) for precise cuts across and along the grain
- Ryoba 240 (No. 712385) for rip cuts and trimming cuts of any depth
- Handle for quick-change saw blade 125 mm, red oak, curved (No. 712982) with quick-change saw blade for flush-cut saw 170 and jigsaw 150 for flush cuts without scratches, holes and curved cuts.

### A DICTUM® SAW SET IN SYSTAINER® T-LOC

**Price advantage**

Basic set for all sawing work, that fits in the durable Systainer made of high-quality polymer with a specially fitted inlay.



No. 718807



B

1

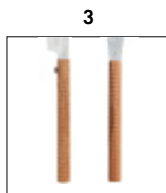
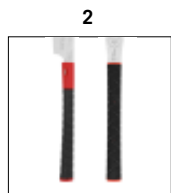
### B DICTUM® JAPAN-DUO SAW SET, 2-PIECE SET **Price advantage**

The two most popular all-rounders:

- Dozuki Universal 240 (No. 712808, 712830 or 712420) for precise cuts across and along the grain
- Ryoba Komane 240 (No. 712806, 712379 or 712433) for rip cuts and trimming cuts of any depth

Handle version

- 1 Trad. Grip **No. 712141**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712380**  
3 Wave Grip **No. 712644**



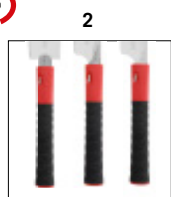
D

1

### D DICTUM® COMPACT SAWS, 3-PIECE SET **Price advantage**

This 3-piece set is a must for every tool bag:

- Dozuki Universal Compact 180 (No. 712110 or 712848) for precise cuts across and along the grain
- Ryoba Compact 180 (No. 712114 or 712849) for rip cuts and trimming cuts of any depth
- Kataba Super Hard Compact 180 (No. 712113 or 712845) for cuts across the grain in exotic hardwoods as well as particle boards



- Handle version  
1 Trad. Grip **No. 712120**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712834**



A



C

1

### C DICTUM® BASIC SAW SET, 3-PIECE SET **Price advantage**

Three standard joinery saws:

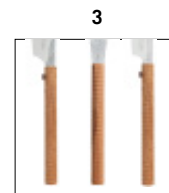
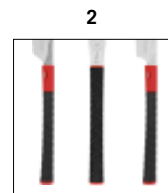
- Dozuki Universal 240 (No. 712808, 712830 or 712420) for precise cuts across and along the grain
- Ryoba Komane 240 (No. 712806, 712379 or 712433) for rip as well as trimming cuts of any depth
- Kataba Super Hard (No. 712204, 712412 or 712428) for cuts across the grain in exotic hardwoods as well as particle boards

Handle version

- 1 Trad. Grip **No. 712833**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712381**  
3 Wave Grip **No. 712645**



For Japan-Duo II and Basic II saw sets see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



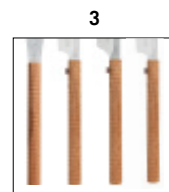
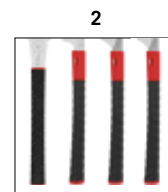
E

1

### E DICTUM® BASIC SAW SET, 4-PIECE SET **Price advantage**

The right blade for each cut:

- Dozuki Universal 240 (No. 712808, 712830 or 712420) for precise cuts across and along the grain
- Ryoba Komane 240 (No. 712806, 712379 or 712433) for rip cuts and trimming cuts of any depth
- Kataba Super Hard (No. 712204, 712412 or 712428) for cuts across the grain in exotic hardwoods as well as particle boards
- Dozuki 240, crosscut (No. 712388, 712389 or 712425) for exact cuts across the grain with the highest



- Handle version  
1 Trad. Grip **No. 712383**  
2 Power Grip **No. 712384**  
3 Wave Grip **No. 712646**





**A** DICTUM® CARPENTRY SAWS, 3-PIECE SET **Price advantage**  
Three robust saws for joining beams and on the building site:

- Ryoba Seiun 300 (No. 712812) for wood joints and precise rip cuts and trimming cuts of any depth



- Kataba Kariwaku Daiku 330 (No. 712386) - high cutting performance, even diagonally to the grain and in wet wood
- Silky Gomboy 270, coarse (No. 712096) - robust folding saw for extremely clean cuts, even in wet wood

**No. 712647**

**B**



**B** DICTUM® COMPACT SAWS, 4-PIECE SET **Price advantage**  
Handy full set for mobile use:

- Dozuki Universal Compact 180 (No. 712848) for precise cuts across and along the grain
- Ryoba Compact 180 (No. 712849) for rip cuts and trimming cuts of any depth



- Kataba Super Hard Compact 180 (No. 712845) for cuts across the grain in exotic hardwoods as well as particle boards
- Dozuki Compact 180, crosscut (No. 712846) for precise trimming and shoulder cuts

**No. 712863**



**C** DICTUM® AKAGASHI SAW SET

**Price advantage**

One handle, two saws - ready for almost any cutting situation:

Flexible saw set with universal saw blade for precise cuts and a jig saw blade for narrow shapes and curves. The blades can be easily changed thanks to a practical quick-change fastener. Simply press the lever upwards and pull the saw blade

out downwards. The blade is locked twice and fits perfectly! The ergonomic red oak handle provides a good grip and a comfortable surface feel. Comes in a high-quality cotton canvas bag. **No. 712170**



**D**



**D** DICTUM® KATABA VARIO SAWS, 5-PIECE SET **Price advantage**

Flexible use through exchangeable blades: Quick-change saw with five different saw blades for multi-purpose use from working solid wood right through to plastic.

Set contains:

- Kataba 270, crosscut, Power Grip

(No. 712471) for fine cuts in wood

- Saw Blade No. 712482 for rough cuts in wood
- Saw Blade No. 712483 for laminates
- Saw Blade No. 712484 for bamboo
- Saw Blade No. 712485 for plastics

**No. 712470**

## Japanese Saws by Other Suppliers

### Dozuki Saws



**E**



**E** BACK SAW POWERGRIP 150  
Small Japanese saw with interchangeable blade for all fine wood cuts in model work and hobby work. The rubberised handle fits the hand comfortably. For cuts across the grain.  
Blade length 150 mm

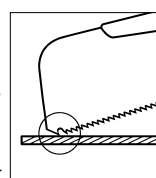
Overall length 295 mm  
Cut depth 32 mm  
Blade thickness 0.4 mm  
Setting 0.55 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.3 mm  
**No. 712714**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712716**



**F**



**F** Z-SAW® DOZUKI MINI 150, CROSSCUT  
Good price/performance ratio:  
Handy saw for cross-cuts and shoulder cuts on small objects. A special tooth at the tip of the blade allows the saw to be used also for



mid-panel cuts.  
Blade length 150 mm  
Overall length 370 mm  
Cut depth 30 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Setting 0.45 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.4 mm  
**No. 712816**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712916**  
Case p. 24 **No. 712870**

Precise cuts are best performed using little force and smooth, even strokes.

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



## Kataba Saws



### A Z-SAW® KATABA SPEED SAW 265, CROSSCUT

Japanese saw blade - Western-style handle:  
The ergonomic pistol-type handle in Western design allows shoulder and mitre cuts as well as crosscuts without tiring.  
Blade length 265 mm  
Overall length 435 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.75 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.7 mm

**No. 712794**

Repl. Blade **No. 712894**

Leather case **No. 717698**

Z-Saw® Kataba Speed Saw 265, Crosscut, incl. Leather Case **Price advantage No. 717699**

► For a Saw Guide Set (No. 712461) see page 32.



### B Z-SAW® KATABA MINI 175, CROSSCUT

Western-style mini-Kataba:  
For fine, tear-free cuts. With ergonomic pistol-type handle.

- For maximum control in detail work
- Ideal for working with a saw guide set

Blade length 175 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
Blade width 47 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.65 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm

**No. 712467**

Repl. Blade **No. 712468**



### C HATTORI® KATABA 265, CROSSCUT

Original Japanese saw at an entry-level price:

For cuts across the grain.

Blade length 265 mm

Overall length 600 mm

Blade width 60 mm

Blade thickness 0.6 mm

Setting 0.9 mm

Crosscut teeth 1.7 mm

**No. 712655**

Repl. Blade **No. 712656**

Case p. 24 **No. 712871**



### D Z-SAW® KATABA ALPHA 265, CROSSCUT

Faster, more precise sawing:

For long cuts on large workpieces, boards and beams in carpentry.

Curved edge:

- Better clearing of the kerf - no clogging
- Long cuts can be started precisely, simply by shifting pressure

Blade length 265 mm

Overall length 600 mm

Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.8 mm

**No. 712014**

Repl. Blade **No. 712015**

Case p. 24 **No. 712871**

## Ryoba Saws



### E HATTORI® RYOBA 240

Original Japanese saw at an entry-level price. With fixed saw blade (non-replaceable).

Blade length 240 mm

Overall length 600 mm

Blade width 100 mm

Blade thickness 0.6 mm

Setting 0.8 / 0.9 mm

Crosscut teeth 1.6 mm

Rip teeth 2.5–3.8 mm

**No. 712654**



► Z-Saw® Kataba Kariwaku 330 available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Folding Saws



### F Z-SAW® FOLDING SAW VIII

Robust saw ideal for everyday trimming and shoulder cuts (across and diagonal to the grain).

- Folds away, therefore easy to store
- Ergonomic, easy-to-clean handle with anti-slip rubber coating
- Unlimited cutting depth

- Saw blade locks in two positions, therefore also suitable for cutting in the centre of boards

Blade length 265 mm  
Overall length 620 mm  
Blade width 55 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.92 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.75 mm



**No. 712558**

Repl. Blade **No. 712559**



#### Quick-change fastener

for easy changing of blade or handle. Easy to disassemble for transport.



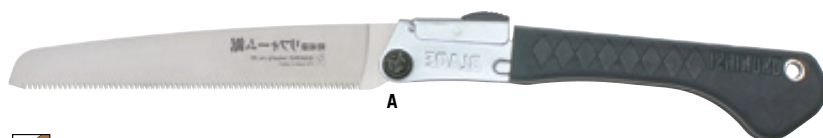
#### Cutting direction across the grain

Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.



#### Cutting direction along the grain

Triangular teeth - for fast and efficient cuts along the grain.



#### A ISHINOKO JOINER'S FOLDING SAW 210

Folding saw offering good value for money for cuts across the grain. The soft rubberised metal handle provides a comfortable grip. Hard-chromed (rustproof) blade.

Blade length 210 mm  
Overall length 450 mm  
Blade width 36 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Setting 1.15 mm



Crosscut teeth 1.4 mm  
**No. 712118**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712119**



#### B CUTTER SAW 110

Whether in the workshop, on the building site or on the go, the impulse-hardened tooth tips of the high-quality quick-change blade ensure excellent cutting performance in wood and particle boards. When required, the saw blade can be replaced quickly and easily with conventional cutter blades.

Blade length 110 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
Blade width 18 mm  
Blade thickness 0.45 mm  
Setting 0.5 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.3 mm  
**No. 712150**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712151**  
Cutter Blades, 10 Pieces  
**No. 701633**

► For a cutter compass see page 31.

## Silky® Japanese Saws with Interchangeable Blades

### Silky® Saws with Interchangeable Blades

- Saw blades are hard-chromed and thus rustproof



Taper-ground blade with no additionally set teeth:

- Allows cutting with little friction
- Produces extremely clean cuts, making it ideal for precisely fitting cuts and joint surfaces that are to be glued



- Can be locked in two positions, also for mid-panel cuts
- Robust aluminium handle with anti-slip rubber coating



All our Japanese saws have toxin-free handles (all plastic handles are regularly tested).



**C SILKY® WOODBOY FOLDING SAWS**  
State-of-the-art saws:  
The Dozuki and Kataba Woodboy are suitable for fine cuts across the grain.



**1 Dozuki 240, Crosscut**  
Saw blade with reinforced back for exact control.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
Cut depth 45 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Crosscut teeth 0.9 mm  
**No. 712768**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712769**

**2 Kataba 240, Crosscut**  
Strong, backless blade for cuts of any depth.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
Blade width 46 mm  
Blade thickness 0.7 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.1 mm  
**No. 712766**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712767**



**D SILKY® POCKETBOY FOLDING SAW 170, COARSE**

Whether on the building site, in the workshop or for outdoor use, this compact folding saw with its razor-sharp teeth runs rings around many »large« saws.

For crosscuts and rip cuts.

Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 370 mm  
Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 1.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3 mm  
**No. 712776**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712777**



#### E SILKY® BIGBOY FOLDING SAW 360, MEDIUM

With 360 mm, the Bigboy has one of the longest blades of all folding saws. It is ideal for cuts across and diagonal to the grain in large beams in carpentry.

Special raker teeth:

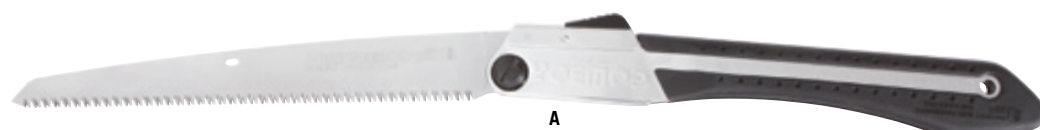
- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade length 360 mm  
Overall length 760 mm  
Blade width 42 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3 mm

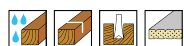
**No. 712499**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712500**







A



#### A SILKY® GOMBOY FOLDING SAW 270, COARSE

The most universal folding saw: Robust folding saw with excellent cutting performance for larger sections (carpentry), insulation material and pruning fruit trees. Cuts across and diagonally to the grain - also in wet wood.

##### Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade length 270 mm

Overall length 560 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 2.8 mm

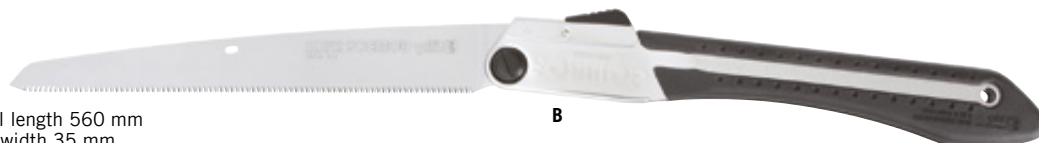
**No. 712096**

Repl. Blade **No. 712097**

SILKY® GOMBOY FOLDING SAW 270, 2-PIECE SET **Price advantage**  
The set contains:

- Silky Gomboy folding saw 270, coarse (No. 712096)
- Replacement blade for Silky Gomboy 270, fine (No. 712099)

**No. 718825**



B



#### B SILKY® GOMBOY FOLDING SAW 270, FINE

Robust design - fine tooth spacing:

##### Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging



Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm  
**No. 712098**

Repl. Blade **No. 712099**

## Classic Handmade Japanese Saws

### Deluxe Saws

#### Handmade - for the highest demands

Our handmade master saws for the highest demands provide unparalleled control, surprising balance and the **finest kerfs**. The handles are made of light kiri wood and wrapped in rattan.

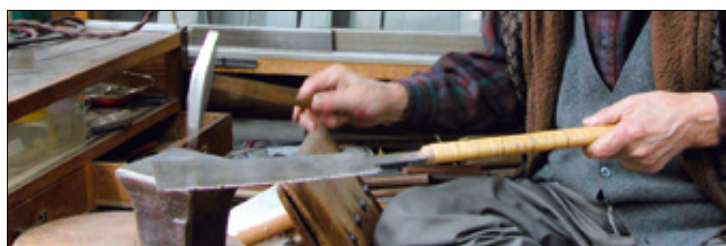
- Manufacturing a saw by hand requires many process steps
- The blades are made of vacuum-melted White Paper Steel for maximum edge life
- Each blade is straightened manually with a straightening hammer and hand-engraved by the master himself

##### Through-hardened blade:

- Allows resharpener by hand
- If used correctly, these saws will last a lifetime

The saw blades are hollowed by hand over the whole blade width to ensure the optimum blade thickness at each point of the blade:

- Ultimate flexibility and stability of the blade
- Ensures smooth, frictionless cutting
- Creates the cleanest cuts

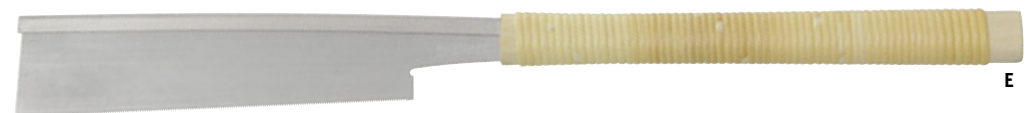


The full-hardened blades are more delicate than the interchangeable blades and should be treated with the greatest care by experienced craftsmen to avoid breakage of the blade or single teeth. With proper use and care, the saw will last a lifetime.

**Attention:** Through-hardened blades require adequate use. Broken blades or teeth are no reason for a warranty claim.



C



E



D



#### D RYOBA DELUXE 240

Ideal saw for exactly fitting wood joints and precise rip cuts and trimming cuts of any depth.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 600 mm  
Blade width 105 mm

Blade thickness 0.55 mm  
Setting 0.75 / 0.65 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.4 mm  
Rip teeth 3-4.5 mm

**No. 712001**

Case p. 24 **No. 712851**



#### E DOZUKI DELUXE 240, RIP CUT

Extremely thin blade with minimum set for true cutting and minute kerfs along the grain.  
Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 600 mm  
Cut depth 45 mm  
Blade thickness 0.25 mm  
Setting 0.35 mm  
Rip teeth 1.5 mm

**No. 712250**

Case p. 24 **No. 712871**



#### C HON DOZUKI DELUXE 240, CROSSCUT

The finest Dozuki:

Hand-crafted saw for highest-precision cuts, well-suited for fine cabinetmaking and restoration work. The extremely thin blade and minimal set (0.3 mm) result in very little cutting loss. Super-light wooden handle, rattan-wrapped.

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 610 mm  
Cut depth 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.2 mm  
Setting 0.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 0.8 mm

**No. 712213**

Case p. 24 **No. 712871**



##### Cutting direction across the grain

Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.



##### Cutting direction along the grain

Triangular teeth - for fast and efficient cuts along the grain.



##### Wet wood

Ideal for wet and green wood (timber).



##### Insulating materials

Used to cut foamed and insulating materials.

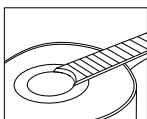


##### Hollow grinding

No setting for cleanest cutting surfaces.

**B FRET SAW DELUXE**

Fine saw with reinforced back for fret wire grooves in guitar fretboards. The unset crosscut teeth allow tear-free, straight cuts across the grain. Cedar wood handle.  
Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
Blade thickness 0.57 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.1 mm  
**No. 712260**



The full-hardened blades are more delicate than the interchangeable blades and should be treated with the greatest care by experienced craftsmen to avoid breakage of the blade or single teeth. With proper use and care, the saw will last a lifetime.

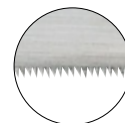
**Attention:** Through-hardened blades require adequate use. Broken blades or teeth are no reason for a warranty claim.

**A KOBICI DELUXE 450**

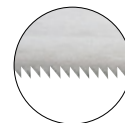
Large, well-proportioned hand saw, available with rip cut or crosscut teeth. The angled handle allows strong pulling with both hands.

**Crosscut**

Blade length 450 mm  
Overall length 700 mm  
Blade width 85 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Setting 1.5 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3.3 mm  
**No. 712291**

**Rip Cut**

Blade length 450 mm  
Overall length 700 mm  
Blade width 85 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Setting 1.75 mm  
Rip teeth 6.3-7.5 mm  
**No. 712293**



## Cases for Japanese Saws

Protect your premium Japanese saws from dust and damage by storing them in a suitable case and thus improving their tool and edge lives.

**C DICTUM® LEATHER CASES FOR DOZUKI AND KATABA SAWS**

European cowhide, rivet-reinforced seams, slide-in tongue with hang-up hole.

**Size 1**

Blade length 150-180 mm  
Blade width max. 60 mm  
**No. 712870**

**Size 2**

Blade length 240-270 mm  
Blade width max. 70 mm  
**No. 712871**

**Size 3**

Blade length 240-315 mm  
Blade width max. 75 mm  
**No. 712852**

**D DICTUM® LEATHER CASES FOR RYOBA SAWS**

European cowhide, rivet-reinforced seams, slide-in tongue with hang-up hole.

**Size 1**

Blade length 150-180 mm  
Blade width max. 75 mm  
**No. 712858**

**Size 2**

Blade length 210-250 mm  
Blade width max. 105 mm  
**No. 712851**

**Size 3**

Blade length 270-300 mm  
Blade width max. 120 mm  
**No. 712859**

**E**

Saw not included!

**E SAW AND TOOL BAG**

This extra-long case does not just accommodate saws of up to 60 cm in length, it also has room for plenty of other tools and parts. Four interior and six exterior pockets allow you to organise everything

in limited space. Made of the finest-quality robust nylon with a zip closure and two handles.

Outer dimensions 600 x 170 x 120 mm  
**No. 712896**

**F DICTUM® JUTE TOOL ROLLS FOR JAPANESE SAWS**

Four compartments, natural colour.

**Size 1**

Blade width max. 70 mm  
Outer dimensions 400 x 400 mm  
**No. 712877**

**Size 2**

Blade width max. 90 mm  
Outer dimensions 600 x 600 mm  
**No. 712878**

**Size 3**

Blade width max. 120 mm  
Outer dimensions 740 x 740 mm  
**No. 712879**



Saw not included!

**G DICTUM® CASE FOR AKAGASHI/ROBUSUTA SAWS**

Convenient transporting: You can close this cotton canvas saw case securely with a push button and/or cord. To prevent damage to the teeth of Akagashi saws, we recommend using the protective guard No. 712952.

- With Akagashi saws, the front compartment can be used for holding a saw handle and the back compartment for holding three saw blades

- With Robusuta saws, the front compartment can be used for holding saw blades and the back compartment for holding the saw

- Fits all Akagashi and Robusuta saws.

Outer dimensions 265 x 100 mm  
**No. 712169**

**Cutting direction along the grain**

Triangular teeth - for fast and efficient cuts along the grain.

**Cutting direction across the grain**

Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.



Saw not included!

**A** DICTUM® JAPANESE SAW BAG  
Practical shoulder bag with DICTUM logo. Ripstop cordura nylon with adjustable shoulder strap and compartments for at least four saws up to 75 cm in length. Two separate pockets for replacement blades. Without contents.  
Max. saw length 750 mm  
Outer dimensions 780 x 160 x 60 mm  
**No. 712895**



**B** PROTECTIVE GUARD FOR SAW BLADES  
Plastic clip-on saw blade guard. Overall length 600 mm  
**No. 712952**

## Other Saw Types

### Fine-toothed Saws and Back Saws



**C** BACK SAW FOR HARDWOOD 165  
Small saw that cuts on the pull stroke for fine detail work in model-building, musical instrument making and restoration work. Unset saw blade with reinforced back.

Blade length 165 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
Cut depth 30 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Triangular teeth for crosscuts 0.9 mm  
**No. 712710**



▶ Veritas® Saws available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### Bad Axe Back Saws

The hand-sharpened saw blade, made of Swedish spring steel, is attached to a gun-metal-finished steel back that allows it to be tightened or, when necessary, completely replaced. The hickory handles (different sizes available according to hand size) are secured with traditional brass split-nut screws.



**D** BAD AXE  
»STILETTO« DOVETAIL SAW  
Precise, efficient back saws with excellent cutting performance that produce clean cuts. Triangular teeth that cut on the push stroke, especially for dovetail joints. The minimum set makes it easier

to saw a straight line.  
Blade length 305 mm  
Overall length 430 mm  
Cut depth 42 mm  
Blade thickness 0.46 mm  
Setting 0.64 mm

### The Bad Axe Back Saws Difference:

- Sized handles guaranteed to fit your hand. XS, S and XL sizes available on request
- Traditional folded sawbacks that prevent kinking your blade and allows you to retension your toothline at will (see video)
- Hammer-set toothline that precisely locks in a kerf width most appropriate to the blade gauge
- Legendary sharpening excellence
- Customised saws (back, handle and fastener material on choice) available on special order

### Advantages of tapered saw blades:

- Less weight on the saw blade
- Centre of mass is closer to the handle for a more balanced saw
- Faster and more aggressive cutting; if the back of the saw is held horizontally during cutting, each tooth is set lower than the one before, resulting in faster stock removal

### Rip-Cut

Triangular teeth for rip cuts 1.8 mm

Handle Size

Regular **No. 712340**

Size L **No. 712341**

Sharpening

file (page 165) **No. 704438**

### Hybrid-Cut

Universal teeth 1.8 mm

Handle Size

Regular **No. 712342**

Size L **No. 712343**

Sharpening

file (page 165) **No. 704438**



**Video** for retensioning the toothline available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### TIPS FROM EXPERTS:

#### Finger position

With Western-style saws having pistol-type or D-handles, the index finger is positioned on the side of the handle. Besides providing balance, this gives additional control during cutting.

#### Starting the cut

For sawing out mortises or dovetails, firstly set the saw at a flat angle and saw along the marking. Only then, tip the saw increasingly towards the right-angle position and saw down to the ground.







A

**A BAD AXE CARCASS SAW**

The ideal saw for cutting tenon shoulders. Medium-fine teeth that cut on the push stroke for fast but precise cuts across the grain.

Blade length 356 mm  
Overall length 480 mm  
Cut depth 52 mm  
Blade thickness 0.46 mm  
Setting 0.64 mm

**Hybrid-Cut**

Universal teeth 1.8 mm

Handle Size

Regular **No. 712344**

Size L **No. 712345**

Sharpening file  
(page 165) **No. 704438**

**X-Cut**

Triangular teeth for crosscuts 1.8 mm

Handle Size

Regular **No. 712346**

Size L **No. 712347**

Sharpening file  
(page 165) **No. 704438**



► Instructions on how to determine the handle sizes available for every saw at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



B

**B BAD AXE TENON SAW, HYBRID-CUT**

This back saw with a large saw blade is perfect for deep cuts in the direction of the grain, such as cutting mortise and tenon joints. The very well-balanced saw with specific toothings cuts efficiently on the push stroke and without jamming, up to a depth of 10 cm.

Blade length 406 mm

Overall length 540 mm

Cut depth 105 mm

Blade thickness 0.46 mm

Setting 0.64 mm

Triangular teeth for rip cuts 2.1 mm

Handle Size

Regular **No. 712348**

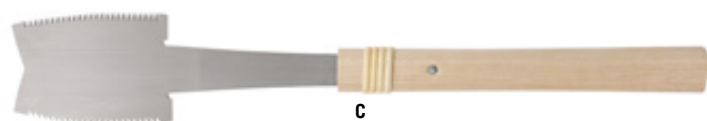
Size L **No. 712349**

Sharpening file  
(page 165) **No. 712810**



► Lie-Nielsen® Saws available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Azebiki Saw**

C

**C AZEBIKI SAW 90**

The opposing rip cut and crosscut teeth are suitable for blind mid-panel cuts, grooves and sliding dovetail joints. Short blade, curved tooth tips.

Blade length 90 mm

Overall length 405 mm

Blade width 65 mm

Blade thickness 0.45 mm

Setting 0.7 / 0.85 mm

Crosscut teeth 1.67 mm

Rip teeth 3.3 mm

**No. 712247**

**Cutting direction along the grain**

Triangular teeth - for fast and efficient cuts along the grain.

**Cutting direction across the grain**

Trapezoidal teeth - for precise and extremely clean cuts across the grain and narrowest kerfs.



## Flush-cutting and Veneer Saws

Japanese flush-cutting saws are ideal for cutting dowels, pegs and tenons flush to the surface of the piece without damaging its surface. Flexible blades with unset teeth.



**A** DICTUM® AKAGASHI FLUSH CUT 170  
The unset teeth leave no scratches on the surface of the workpiece and are thus ideal for cutting off dowels flush to the surface.

- Handmade ergonomic handle of oiled Japanese red oak

Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 335 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 0.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1 mm

**No. 712166**

Repl. Blade **No. 712992**

**D** FLUSH-CUTTING SAW KUGIHIKI 190  
Traditional Japanese saw:

Professional Kugihiki with extremely thin and flexible blade. Traditional design with wooden handle wrapped in rattan.

Blade length 190 mm  
Overall length 510 mm  
Blade width 40 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1 mm

**No. 712303**

**F** Z-SAW® MINI KUGIHIKI

Small flush cutting saw for flush cuts without damaging surfaces. Replaceable blade, hard-chromed. Lightweight plastic handle. Double cutting edge.

Blade length 150 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 0.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.2 / 1.5 mm

**No. 712321**

Repl. Blade **No. 712323**



**H** GERMAN VENEER SAW 75

Veneer saw made in Germany with cranked handle and double-edged saw blade. Triangular teeth for push and pull strokes.

Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 195 mm  
Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.55 mm  
Rip teeth 1.6 mm

**No. 703810**

Repl. Blade **No. 703811**



### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



**B** FLUSH-CUTTING SAW KUGIHIKI 180  
Professional Kugihiki with flexible blade. Traditional design with wooden handle wrapped in rattan.

Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 355 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.4 mm

**No. 712657**

Repl. Blade **No. 712658**

**C** FLUSH CUTTING SAW MINI KUGIHIKI 150

Simple flush cutting saw with hardwood handle.

Blade length 150 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.2 mm

**No. 712304**

**E** RYOBA RESTAURO 125

This compact Japanese saw with two different tooth spacings and an ultra-thin blade is the first choice for the finest cuts in tight spaces and cutting off dowels or other projecting wooden parts flush with the surface. Beech handle.

Blade length 125 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1 / 1.3 mm

**No. 712123**

**G** KATABA RESTAURO 100

Compact Japanese saw for fine repair cuts, also ideal for working in tight spaces or cutting off dowels. The unset crosscut teeth ensure clean cuts, while the thin blade minimises kerf wastage.

Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
Blade width 20 mm  
Blade thickness 0.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1 mm

**No. 712309**



### Quick-change fastener

for easy changing of blade or handle. Easy to disassemble for transport.

## Frame Saws



### DICTUM® Frame Saw Classic with Japanese Saw Blade

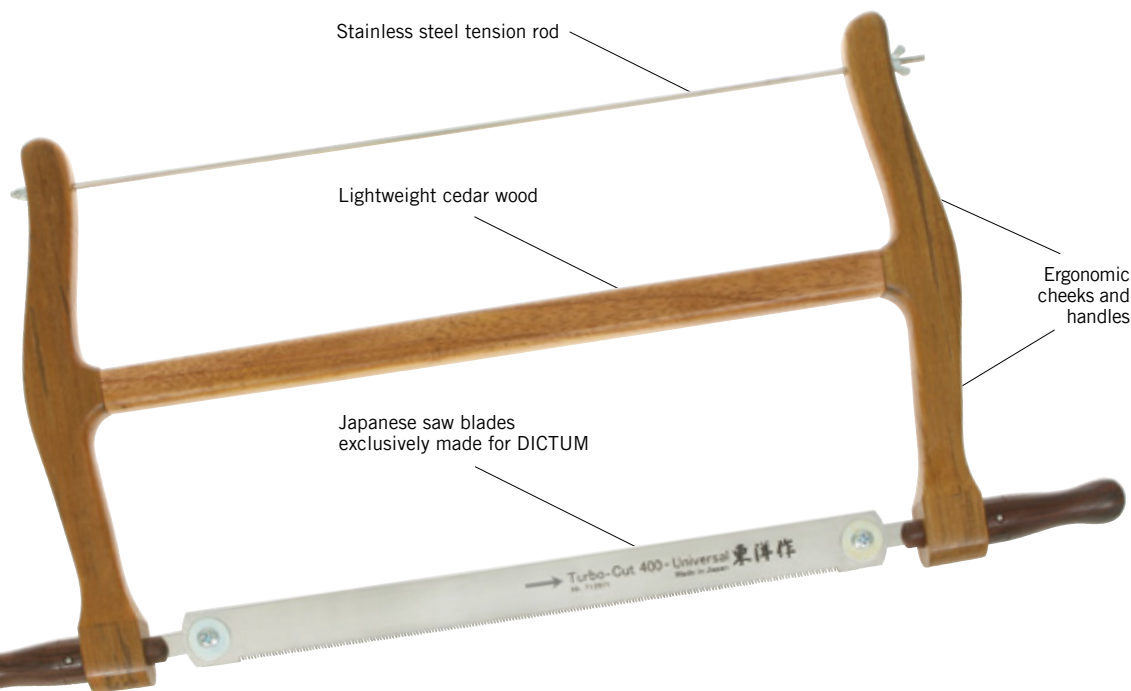
The Frame Saw Classic combines European tradition with Japanese cutting quality. Both the frame and the saw blades are produced exclusively for DICTUM. The ergonomically curved cheeks and knobs are made of precious wood with finely sanded, oiled and polished surfaces. The cedar stretcher lowers the weight of the saw and reduces vibrations.

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



A / B / C  
/ D / E



**A** DICTUM® CLASSIC 400, UNIVERSAL  
Handy saw for precision work:  
With Turbo-Cut universal blade.  
Blade length 400 mm  
Blade width 40 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Universal teeth 1.8 mm  
Outer dimensions 320 x 700 mm  
550 g  
**No. 712968**

**B** DICTUM® CLASSIC 400, JIG  
For precise curve cuts:  
With Turbo-Cut jig blade.  
Blade length 400 mm  
Blade width 10 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.8 mm  
Outer dimensions 320 x 700 mm  
550 g  
**No. 712969**

**C** DICTUM® CLASSIC 500, UNIVERSAL  
For precise wood joints:  
With Turbo-Cut universal blade.  
Blade length 500 mm  
Blade width 40 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Universal teeth 1.8 mm  
Outer dimensions 360 x 800 mm  
790 g  
**No. 712962**



**D** DICTUM® CLASSIC 600, UNIVERSAL  
The most popular frame saw:  
With Turbo-Cut universal blade.  
Blade length 600 mm  
Blade width 40 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Universal teeth 2 mm  
Outer dimensions 360 x 900 mm  
850 g  
**No. 712964**

**E** DICTUM® CLASSIC 700, UNIVERSAL  
Ideal for use in carpentry:  
With Turbo-Cut universal blade.  
Blade length 700 mm  
Blade width 40 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.85 mm  
Universal teeth 2.2 mm  
Outer dimensions 410 x 1000 mm  
950 g  
**No. 712965**



### Accessories and replacement parts for Frame Saw Classic

#### Turbo-Cut Frame Saw Blades

Japanese saw blades for upgrading your frame saw:

- Special tooth patterns for true and clean cuts

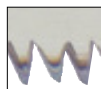
- Extremely hard tooth tips (hardness over 70 HRC, cannot be resharpened) for a much longer edge life as compared with conventional blades

- Blade thickness 0.6 mm

F

G

#### Available in the following tooth patterns:



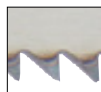
##### Universal blade

Highest performance for cuts across, along or diagonally to the grain. Universal teeth.



##### Crosscut blade

For the cleanest cuts across the grain. Trapezoidal teeth.



##### Rip cut blade

For cuts along the grain. Triangular teeth.



##### Jig blade

For all precise curved cuts. Trapezoidal teeth.

**F** UNIVERSAL BLADE 400  
**No. 712971**

**G** JIG BLADE 400  
**No. 712972**

UNIVERSAL BLADE 500  
**No. 712956**

UNIVERSAL BLADE 600  
**No. 712957**

CROSSCUT BLADE 600  
**No. 712950**

RIP CUT BLADE 600  
**No. 712951**

UNIVERSAL BLADE 700  
**No. 712958**



## WORKSHOP

### MAKING AND SHARPENING SAWS

**Content:** Find out everything about different types of high-quality Western saws, their range of use, and how to sharpen them. In this course, we will make a saw with a reinforced back for cutting along or across the grain (dovetail saw, carcass saw, tenon saw). We will set and sharpen the teeth.



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



## Panel Saws

### A TURBO-CUT PANEL SAWS

This classic European hand saw with high-performance Japanese blade allows precise cutting at high speed.



- The teeth are designed to cut primarily on the »push stroke«, but are also specially ground to cut on the »pull stroke« as well
- Raker teeth prevent the saw from clogging and keep it true
- Hard-chromed (rustproof) blade
- Teeth can be resharpened (e.g. with sharpening file No. 712802, page 164)
- Screwed-on hardwood handle

#### 1 Turbo-Cut Panel Saw 330

Blade length 330 mm  
Overall length 420 mm  
Blade width 35-120 mm  
Blade thickness 0.8 mm  
Setting 1.05 mm  
Crosscut teeth 2 mm  
**No. 712090**



1



2

#### 2 Turbo-Cut Panel Saw 450

Blade length 450 mm  
Overall length 540 mm  
Blade width 35-120 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Setting 1.15 mm  
Crosscut teeth 2.3 mm  
**No. 712091**



► Bad Axe Panel Saw D8 available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Coping Saws



B

### B GROBET® COPING SAW

Premium design with perfect balance and high stability. The Swiss-made coping saw frame allows precise and effortless cutting. Perfect for intarsia, mother-of-pearl or goldsmith work and other artisan and precise mechanical applications. Suitable for max. blade width 1.15 mm. Comes without blade.

- Adjustable frame up to 150 mm clamping length
- Patented blade clamping mechanism for fast changing of blades
- Non-slip plastic grip

Blade length 130 mm  
170 g  
Jaw depth  
75 mm **No. 712548**  
100 mm **No. 712547**

### Making dovetails with a coping saw

There are many possible ways of creating a dovetail joint. The traditional method starts with the vertical cutting of the pins and tails with a dovetail saw (No. 712710, page 25), a Dozuki saw (No. 712808, page 10) or a frame saw (No. 712968, page 28). Then the side tails are cut and the remaining tails and pins are worked out with a chisel. Another option is to use a coping saw for both steps, cutting the vertical and horizontal parts of the joint in one go. This saves time, prevents tear-outs and allows the finest kerfs.



C

### C JAPANESE COPING SAW

With its great depth, this Japanese coping saw is ideal for deep cuts. Includes three replacement blades with 0.4 mm blade thickness.

- Extra-deep frame of 250 mm depth
- Saw blade is tightened by simply turning the handle

- Chrome-plated steel frame
- Holding clamps with square shaft - can be locked in four positions
- Super Glardon coping saw blades can be used as replacement blades

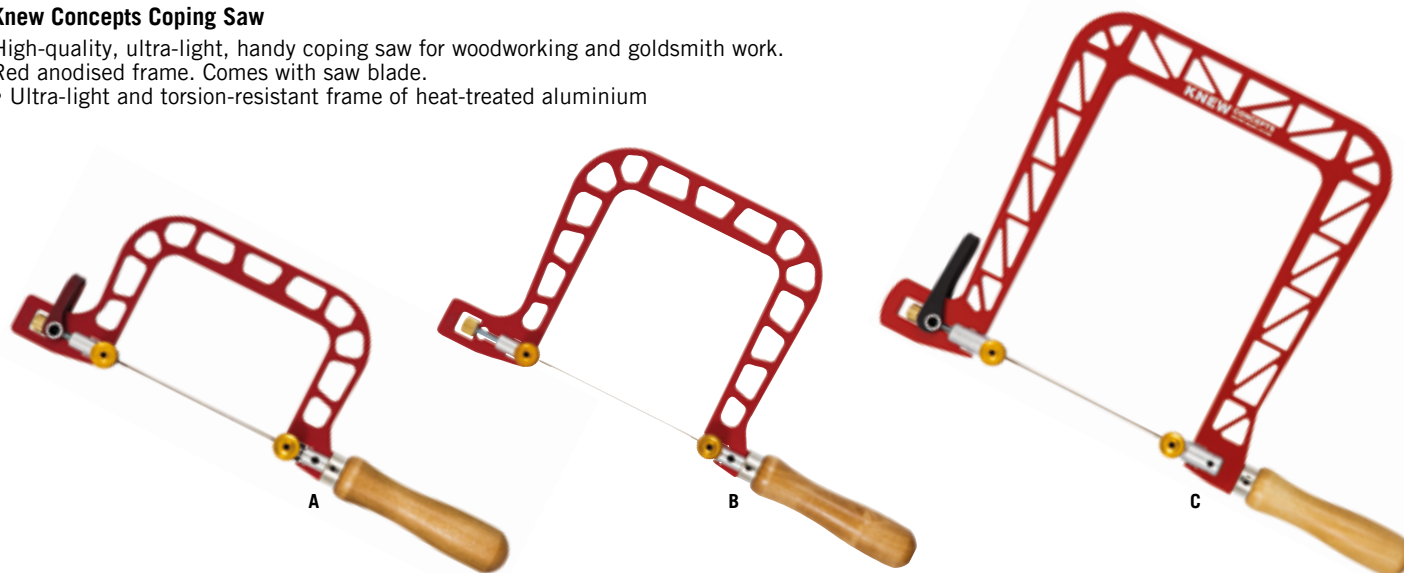
Blade length 130 mm  
Jaw depth 250 mm  
225 g

**No. 712517**

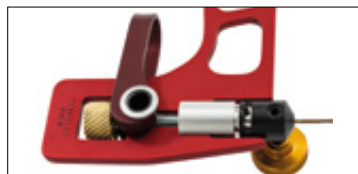
### Knew Concepts Coping Saw

High-quality, ultra-light, handy coping saw for woodworking and goldsmith work. Red anodised frame. Comes with saw blade.

- Ultra-light and torsion-resistant frame of heat-treated aluminium



**A** KNEW CONCEPTS COPING SAW WITH SWIVEL BLADE



The ultimate coping saw:

- Saw blade swivels to two additional positions (45° to the right or left)
- Tensioning mechanism with screw and lever allows quick, easy and fine tension adjustments

Blade length 130 mm  
Jaw depth 75 mm  
115 g  
**No. 712553**

**B** KNEW CONCEPTS COPING SAW

- Tension screw for precise and simple tensioning

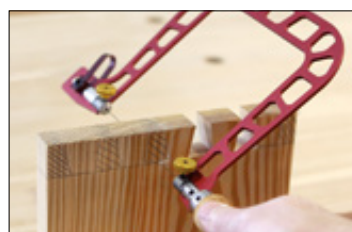
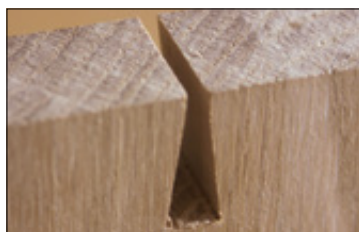
Blade length 130 mm  
Jaw depth 125 mm  
120 g  
**No. 712551**

**C** KNEW CONCEPTS COPING SAW, HEAVY DUTY

- Tougher than the standard model due to additional cross struts in the frame construction
- Tensioning mechanism with screw and lever allows quick, easy and fine tension adjustments

Blade length 130 mm  
Jaw depth 200 mm  
260 g  
**No. 712554**

► For a Knew Concepts coping saw Heavy Duty with swivel blade in 3 versions see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► For a blog post (in German) about how to make dovetail joints by hand within 10 minutes (»Zinken-Verbindung von Hand in 10 Minuten«) see [www.dictum.com/blog](http://www.dictum.com/blog)

### Accessories and replacement parts for Grobet, Japanese and Knew Concepts coping saws

#### Super-Pike Saw Blades, Standard Tooth Pattern

Coping saw blades of the highest quality. Spring steel with rounded back. Blade length 130 mm.

**TOOTHING FINE, 12-PIECE SET**  
Blade width 0.36 mm  
Rip teeth 0.3 mm  
Blade thickness 0.18 mm  
Setting 0.21 mm  
**No. 712522**

#### TOOTHING MEDIUM, 12-PIECE SET

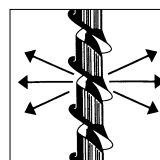
Blade width 0.58 mm  
Rip teeth 0.5 mm  
Blade thickness 0.28 mm  
Setting 0.32 mm  
**No. 712523**

#### TOOTHING COARSE, 12-PIECE SET

Blade width 0.94 mm  
Rip teeth 0.8 mm  
Blade thickness 0.4 mm  
Setting 0.48 mm  
**No. 712524**

#### Pégas® Saw Blades, Spiral Tooth Pattern

For cuts in any direction without having to turn the saw, very easy to use. Blade length 130 mm.



**TOOTHING FINE, 12-PIECE SET**  
Blade thickness 0.7 mm  
**No. 712530**

**TOOTHING MEDIUM, 12-PIECE SET**  
Blade thickness 0.75 mm  
**No. 712531**

**TOOTHING COARSE, 12-PIECE SET**  
Blade thickness 0.85 mm  
**No. 712532**

► For an extensive range of Pégas coping saw blades see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

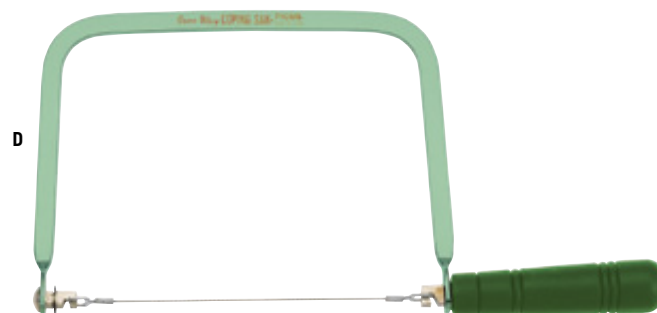
### Freeway®

- Robust steel frames for high torsion-resistance
- Saw blade easy to hook into the sockets
- Blade tightened and released by turning the handle

#### D FREEWAY® COPING SAW

For hobbies, training and school: Spiral-tooth saw wire for cuts in any direction without turning the saw. The case-hardened saw wire (Ø 1 mm) is highly resistant to breakage and wear. Comes with two replacement blades.

Blade length 165 mm  
Jaw depth 120 mm  
190 g  
**No. 712512**  
2 Repl. Blades  
**No. 712513**



**A FREEWAY® DIAMOND SAW**

For hard materials:

The diamond particles embedded in the blade allow this saw to be used for cutting the hardest materials like steel, stone, ceramic, or glass in any direction. Comes with one diamond saw blade Ø 1.6 mm and one conventional

blade Ø 1 mm.  
Blade length 165 mm  
Jaw depth 120 mm  
190 g  
**No. 712514**  
2 Repl. Blades  
**No. 712515**

**Accessories and replacement parts for Freeway coping saws**

**PÉGAS® PINNED COPING SAW BLADES, SKIP-TOOTH, 6-PIECE SET**  
Coarse toothing, suited for diverse materials ranging from wood to plastics, and to ferrous and non-ferrous metals. Fits Freeway saws No. 712512 and

**No. 712514.**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade width 2.4 mm  
Rip teeth 1.8 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
**No. 704845**

**Keyhole Saws**

With long, slender Japanese blades for making holes and curved cuts and working in confined spaces.

**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)

**B****B DICTUM® AKAGASHI KEYHOLE SAW 150**

The long slim blade makes this saw ideal for cutting holes and curves.

- Handmade ergonomic handle of oiled Japanese red oak

Blade length 150 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
Blade width 10-15 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.8 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.6 mm  
**No. 712167**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712993**

**C**

**C DICTUM® KEYHOLE SAW 150, POWER GRIP**  
Robust saw with a long slim blade, ideal for cutting holes and curves. Ideal for on-site use as it can be easily disassembled and stored.  
Blade length 150 mm

**D****D KEYHOLE SAW 180**

Ideal for precise curves and recesses.  
Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
Blade width 6-14 mm  
Blade thickness 1.0 mm  
Setting 1.3 mm  
Universal teeth 3.4 mm  
**No. 712613**



For pendulum jigsaws see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**E CUTTER COMPASS SAW**

Practical cutter compass saw for the workshop or on the construction site. The impulse-hardened tooth tips of the high-quality interchangeable blade cut either on the pull stroke (No. 715120) or on the push stroke (No. 715122) in wood, composites, expanded polystyrene and plasterboard. If necessary, the saw

blade can be quickly and easily replaced with standard cutter blades.  
Blade length 80 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
Blade width 6-10 mm  
Blade thickness 0.90 mm  
Setting 1.10 mm  
Rip teeth 1.60 mm

**E**

**Push Stroke**  
**No. 715122**  
Repl. Blade **No. 715123**  
Cutter Blades, 10 Pieces  
**No. 701633**



For fitting Black Evolution cutter blades see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Pull Stroke**  
**No. 715120**  
Repl. Blade **No. 715121**  
Cutter Blades, 10 Pieces  
**No. 701633**

**Saws for Cutting Other Materials****F**

**F Z-SAW® SAW FOR PLASTIC**  
For hard and soft plastics and composite materials. Backless saw with slender, replaceable blade and pistol-type, rubberised handle.  
Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 380 mm

Blade width 32 mm  
Blade thickness 0.5 mm  
Setting 0.75 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.5 mm  
**No. 712503**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712504**



► Arbortech® brick and mortar saw available online.



**Quick-change fastener**  
for easy changing of blade or handle. Easy to disassemble for transport.



**Plastic**  
Ideal for plastic materials.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





**A HANDIWORK METAL 150**  
Metal saw with Japanese look:  
Fine saw for non-hardened metals and hard plastics. The rubber handle provides a comfortable and secure grip. Replaceable blade. Can also be used with blade for wood (No. 712716).  
Blade length 150 mm

Overall length 295 mm  
Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 0.4 mm  
Setting 0.5 mm  
Triangular teeth 0.9 mm  
**No. 712715**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712704**



**B HARD MATERIAL SAW SELECT 250**  
Specially designed saw for cutting brass, copper, aluminium, hard plastics, and plated materials (plasterboard).  
• Fine triangular teeth that cut on the pull stroke  
• Blade coated to reduce friction  
• Robust ergonomic aluminium handle with soft-rubber coating

Blade length 250 mm  
Overall length 400 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 0.7 mm  
Setting 0.9 mm  
Universal teeth 1.8 mm  
**No. 712610**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712611**



**C HACKSAW**  
Robust professional quality:  
Universal use for cutting metal and plastics. You can tension the blade quickly and easily thanks to a spring-loaded tensioning mechanism integrated in the handle.

- Aluminium frame for maximum rigidity
- Eight cutting positions in 45° increments
- Large cutting depth up to 100 mm
- Constant and automatically controlled 110 kg blade tension for optimum cutting performance
- Aluminium die-cast handle with plastic shell for reduced vibrations

Blade length 300 mm  
Overall length 440 mm  
Blade width 12 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Setting 0.9 mm

Teeth per inch 24  
**No. 712019**



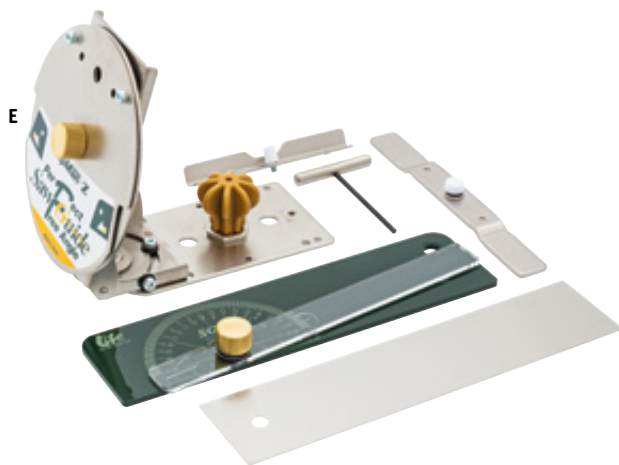
#### Accessories and repl. parts

##### D



**D REPLACEMENT BLADES FOR HACKSAW**  
Japanese top quality, long edge life and sharpness. HSS. 2-piece set.  
Blade length 300 mm  
Teeth per inch  
18 **No. 712544**  
32 **No. 712546**

## Mitre Saws and Saw Guides



**E Z-SAW® SAW GUIDE**  
Extremely practical:  
The mitre and angle of inclination of this saw guide are fully adjustable, making highly accurate cuts of battens, frames and joints.

- The sliding fence allows boards to be easily trimmed or bevelled
- Adjustable +/- 45°-90°
- Robust design made of galvanised steel
- Comes with protractor, length stop and sliding fence, hex key and instructions
- Suitable for saws with blade thicknesses from 0.4-0.6 mm, e.g. Kataba Speed Saw No. 712794 and Kataba Vario No. 712471

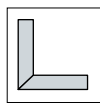
**No. 712460**



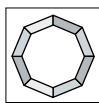
**Plastic**  
Ideal for plastic materials.



**Metal**  
Mainly for metal materials.



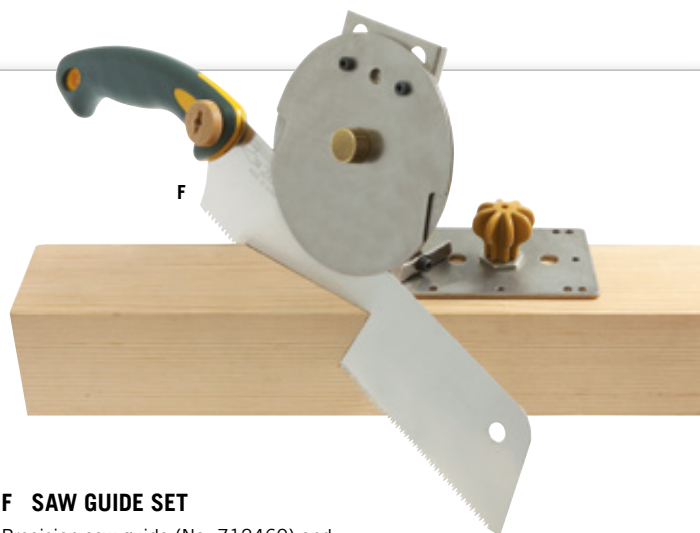
Mitre



Polygone



Lap joint

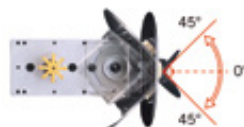


#### F SAW GUIDE SET

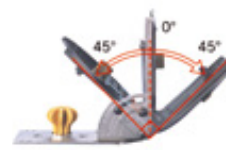
Precision saw guide (No. 712460) and suitable Kataba Speed Saw 265 (No. 712794).  
**No. 712461**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712894**

**Price advantage!**

Adjustments to be made with Z-Saw saw guide



Mitre angles



Inclination angles



► Z-Saw® Precision saw-guide set available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### A VERITAS® DOVETAIL SAW GUIDE SYSTEMS

For amateurs and experts:  
Easy-to-use saw guide that allows precise dovetail joints.

- Convertible groove-guided workpiece clamp - stop can be fitted in two positions for dovetails and tenons
- Magnet on the inside of the aluminium guide holds the saw (Kataba saw, e.g. No. 712794) precisely in position
- Saw blade glides along a replaceable plastic cover to minimise friction and wear
- For material from 6 to 25 mm thick

1 1:4

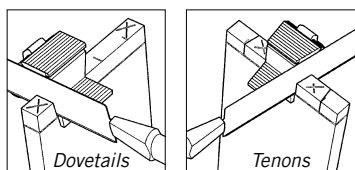
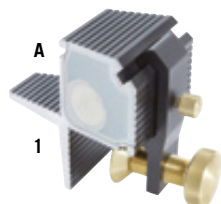
Angle 1:4, for thinner stock, approx. 14°.

No. 701057

1:6

Angle 1:6, for softwood, approx. 9-10°.

No. 712465



1:8

Angle 1:8, for hardwood, approx. 7-8°.

No. 712466



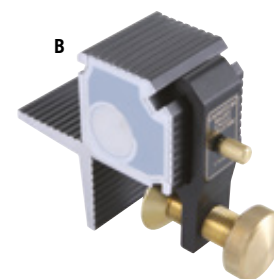
For replacement covers of dovetail saw guide systems see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### B VERITAS® RIGHT-ANGLE SAW GUIDE

This right-angle saw guide is ideal for making finger joints, cutting tenons or perfectly square perpendicular cuts on squared timber and battens. An ideal tool for less-experienced users and beginners allowing them to make precisely square cuts.

- Magnet on the inside of the aluminium guide holds the saw (Kataba saw, e.g. No. 712794) precisely in position
- Saw blade glides along a replaceable plastic cover to minimise friction and wear
- For material from 6 to 25 mm thick

No. 701056



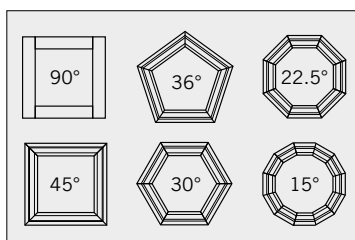
#### C NOBEX® DOUBLE MITRE SAW CHAMPION 180, SET

With Japanese blade:

Precise, versatile mitre saw made in Sweden with solid aluminum construction, equipped with exact blade guides that ensure straight cuts as well as a stepless angle setting and additional locking at any angle. Two integrated clamps hold the workpiece tight, long pieces are supported by a pull-out support. Extra details like the length stop, cutting depth lock-out or the compound mitre function make the difference on this multi-purpose tool, as well as the Japanese high-performance blade, which

allows effortless, extremely quick cutting in solid wood. Set includes Japanese high-performance saw blade CH-16 JP.

No. 712549



**D SAW BLADE FOR NOBEX® DOUBLE MITRE SAW CHAMPION 180**  
Blade length 630 mm  
Blade width 40 mm

For Wood, Japanese Tooth Pattern

Blade thickness 0.8 mm  
Setting 1 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.4 mm

No. 712534

For Hardwood and Hard Plastics

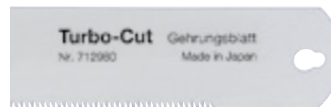
Blade thickness 0.8 mm  
Setting 1.2 mm  
Rip teeth 1.4 mm

No. 712535

For Fine Cuts in Wood

Blade thickness 0.8 mm  
Setting 1.2 mm  
Rip teeth 1 mm

No. 712536



#### E TURBO-CUT MITRE SAW BLADE 550

Razor-sharp and with premium cutting quality, this Japanese Turbo-Cut blade severs even the hardest woods and ensures exact joint surfaces in frames, battens and squared timber.

- Crosscut raker teeth, cuts on the pull stroke

- Fits most standard mitre saws

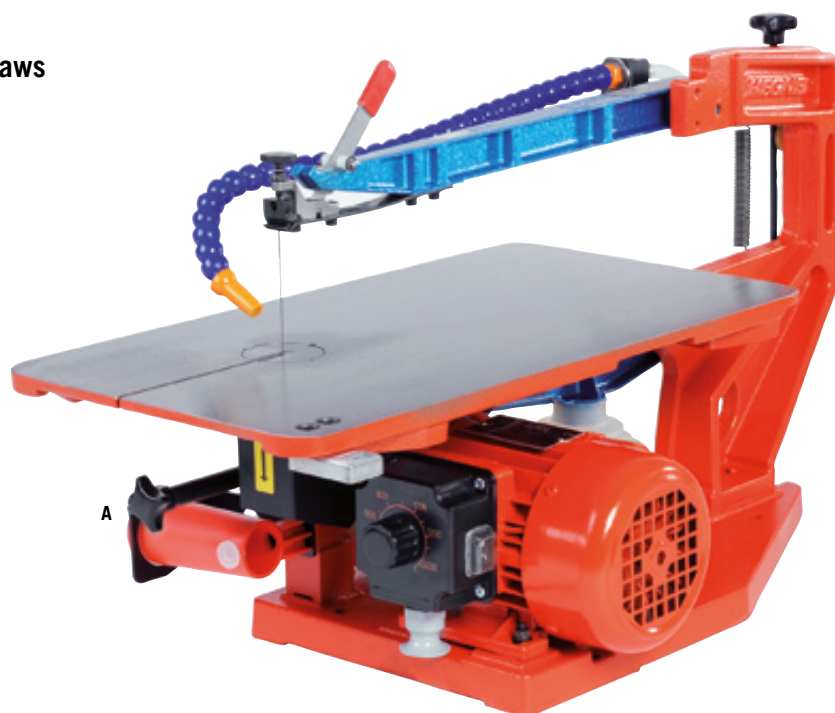
**Note:**

Cannot be used with Double Mitre Saw Champion 180, No. 712539 and 712549.

Blade length 550 mm  
Blade width 45 mm  
Blade thickness 0.7 mm  
Hole spacing 515 mm  
Setting 1 mm  
Crosscut teeth 1.8 mm

No. 712980

## Scroll Saws



► More scroll saws and a wide range of matching saw blades available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### A HEGNER SCROLL SAW MULTICUT-SE

High-precision saws by Hegner are regarded as the best on the market. The continuously rated motor with electronically and progressively adjustable speed regulation allows you to cut wood, metal and plastic effortlessly and precisely. Motor rating output 100 W, 230 V,

400-1400 rpm, 23 kg.

- Easy blade replacement thanks to a speed-lock mechanism and adjustable saw blade tension
- Saw stroke adjustable to either 19 or 12 mm
- Base and table top made of grey cast iron, table surface is precision ground

- The table (435 x 230 mm) can be progressively inclined to precisely 45° or 12° thanks to the scaling
- Pass length 460 mm, pass height 65 mm
- With exhaust nozzle, Ø 35 mm

#### Includes:

Assortment of quality saw blades (76 pieces),

2 saw blade clamps 0.7 mm, Screws for saw blade clamps, Special clamp for internal cuts, Plastic table insert, 2 replacement rolls for quick gripping, Operating tool set, detailed instruction manual.

**No. 704805**



### ► DICTUM® Bandsaws

- Doors made of impact-resistant flat steel.
- Integrated safety switches prevent unintentional operation.
- Cutting height, roller gradient and belt tension can be adjusted quickly and easily.
- Mitre gauge guided in T-Track on surface-ground and polished work table.

*DICTUM® Bandsaws and a wide range of accessories as well as fitting saw blades available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





# Chisels

For perfect joints!

**Western Type | 36**

**Hybrid Type | 41**

**Japanese Type | 42**

**Chinese Type | 49**

**Tool Rolls | 50**

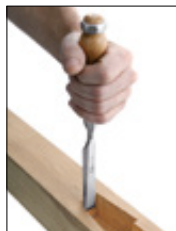
## Western Type

**DICTUM****CHISELS**

DICTUM chisels feature blades and handles that are specifically shaped to create a perfect symbiosis between function and ergonomics, whether driven manually or using a mallet or hammer. The selected steel quality makes them easy to sharpen and very durable at the same time.

Chrome-vanadium steel chisels with high carbon content (61-62 HRC):

- Easy to sharpen
- Guaranteed long edge life

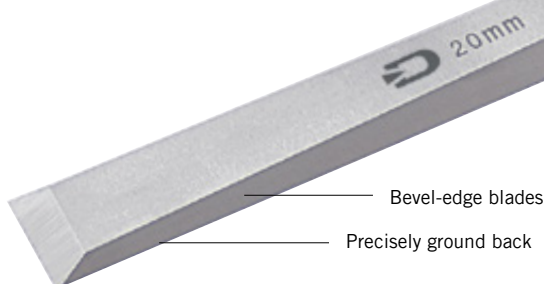


Varnished, impact resistant German hornbeam handles

Handle form developed and tested for optimal use, whether driven manually or using a mallet or hammer

Sturdy steel ferrule joining handle and blade

The solid hoops can be re-fitted into the handle without damage when the handle shows signs of wear



Bevel-edge blades

Precisely ground back



**A** DICTUM® CHISELS, LONG PATTERN  
Traditional European design with reinforced ferrule, long blade, and long handle.

- Ready-to-use, machine-ground bevel



- 1 Single Chisel**  
Blade length 95-105 mm  
Overall length 260-280 mm  
Blade thickness 3-6 mm  
Blade width
- |       |                   |
|-------|-------------------|
| 4 mm  | <b>No. 701371</b> |
| 6 mm  | <b>No. 701380</b> |
| 8 mm  | <b>No. 701372</b> |
| 10 mm | <b>No. 701381</b> |
| 12 mm | <b>No. 701382</b> |
| 16 mm | <b>No. 701383</b> |
| 20 mm | <b>No. 701384</b> |
| 26 mm | <b>No. 701385</b> |
| 30 mm | <b>No. 701373</b> |
| 40 mm | <b>No. 701374</b> |

- 2 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll**  
**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
**No. 701386**

- 3 6-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll**  
**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
**No. 701389**

- 4 6-Piece Set in Wooden Case**  
**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
**No. 701387**

- 5 10-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll**  
**Price advantage**  
Blade width 4 / 6 / 8 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 / 30 / 40 mm  
**No. 701388**

**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



*»The DICTUM chisels are beautifully shaped and provide a good grip, also for exact finishing. I like the idea with the adjustable steel hoop as well as the aesthetic way they have joined the handle to the blade.«*

Hermann Bihler, technical instructor for professional training at the Balthasar-Neumann Berufsbildungszentrum Augsburg



**Video** on re-fitting the hoops available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





## A DICTUM® CHISELS, SHORT PATTERN

The short chisels are perfect for close, accurate work. They are particularly popular in the UK and USA. The large, impact-resistant handles are designed for use with a mallet.

- Ready-to-use, machine-ground bevel

### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 75-85 mm  
Overall length 220-235 mm  
Blade thickness 3-6 mm  
Blade width

6 mm **No. 701390**

10 mm **No. 701391**

12 mm **No. 701392**

16 mm **No. 701393**

20 mm **No. 701394**

26 mm **No. 701395**

### 2 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**

Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm

**No. 701396**

### 3 6-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll

**Price advantage**

Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm

**No. 701401**

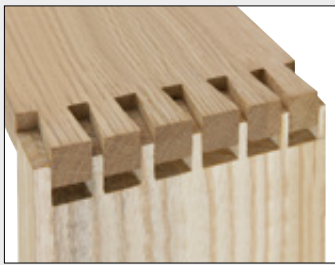


*»Once the blades are tuned up, the cutting edges of the DICTUM chisels hold up well providing fine shavings are taken during pairing.«*

Charles Beresford, master furniture maker



**4 6-Piece Set in Wooden Case**  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
**No. 701397**

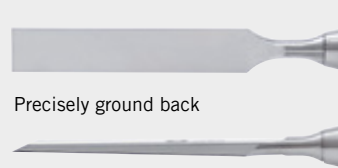


Conventional



DICTUM chisels

Narrow, bevel-edge chisels, parallel along the length. Reduces friction build-up during use.



Precisely ground back

Ideal for finishing joints, e.g. dovetails, without damage to the edges.



## B DICTUM® CRYO CHISEL, LONG PATTERN

Traditional European design with reinforced ferrule, long blade and long handle.



- The micro bevel and back face have been ground by hand close to the cutting edge by using a waterstone
- Cryogenic version (low-temperature treated at -185 °C and subsequent heat treatment) for a finer cutting edge and longer service life



### 1 Single Chisels

Blade length 95-105 mm  
Overall length 260-280 mm  
Blade thickness 3-6 mm  
Blade width

6 mm **No. 701719**

10 mm **No. 701721**

12 mm **No. 701722**

16 mm **No. 701723**

20 mm **No. 701724**

26 mm **No. 701725**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
**For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings

### 2 6-Piece Set in Wooden Case

Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm

**No. 701728**



### Cryogenic (Cryo), low-temperature treated

Cryogenic hardening is a computer-controlled, technically elaborate process, in which the steel is cooled down to -185 °C after hardening. After this treatment, the steel contains finer carbides that cannot be formed during the usual hardening process.

This results in the following excellent characteristics:

- Longer edge life
- Fine cutting edge that produces very few burrs



**DICTUM**

## PARING CHISELS CRYO WITH BIRCH BARK HANDLE

What makes this paring chisel exceptional is the new material bm1. During the manufacturing process, individual birch bark discs are joined together, which produces a unique natural texture, and glued onto a solid, impact-resistant hornbeam handle core. The bm1 birch bark not only impresses with its pleasant, smooth warm feel, but also with its unique technical properties. As an extremely durable natural material, that is sustainably and ecologically produced, it is easy-care, water-repellent and slip-proof even when used with sweating hands. The material has an antiseptic effect because it is antibacterial, antiviral and prevents fungi from growing.



Impact-resistant  
hornbeam handle core

Handle form developed and tested for optimal use, whether driven manually or with a mallet or hammer

Sturdy steel ferrule joining handle and blade

Bevel-edge blades

Cryogenic version (low-temperature treated at -185 °C and subsequent heat treatment) for a finer cutting edge and longer edge life

The micro bevel and back face have been ground by hand close to the cutting edge by using a waterstone



Only bark from Siberian birches is used for the handles. Central European bark is too thin for use in handicrafts. The material has an antiseptic effect, as it is antibacterial, antiviral and inhibits fungal growth. The soft and flexible bark has traditionally been shaped to form vessels, shoes, backpacks, knife sheaths, mats and baskets using weaving, sewing and tucking techniques.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



### A DICTUM® CRYO PARING CHISELS WITH BIRCH BARK HANDLE

#### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 95-105 mm  
Overall length 260-280 mm  
Blade thickness 3-6 mm  
Blade width

6 mm **No. 701710**  
10 mm **No. 701711**  
12 mm **No. 701712**  
16 mm **No. 701713**  
20 mm **No. 701714**  
26 mm **No. 701715**



2



1

**2 6-Piece Set in Wooden Case**  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
**No. 701716**

**3 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll Deluxe**  
*Price advantage*  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
**No. 701717**



#### Leather Tool Roll Deluxe

High-quality leather tool roll made of fine cowhide. The tools are safely secured in place by an elastic strap that prevents the tools from slipping out in any situation. The well-designed closure straps provide comfortable opening and closing, and round off the appealing design of the leather tool roll.

► Tool roll also available separately, see page 50.



3



► Lie-Nielsen® chisels and fishtail chisels available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**A VERITAS® MINIATURE CHISELS**  
Three fully functional miniature chisels, which are reproduced on a scale of 1:3 compared to the regular Veritas chisels. Only 83 mm long overall, PM-V11 steel blade (61-63 HRC) and ground flat on the face, precious wood handles and stainless steel ferrule. Bevel angle 25°.

Not only a nice gift idea or a collector's item: these chisels are extremely helpful where fine, precise cuts are needed. Comes in an elegant leatherette case. Blade width 3 / 6 / 9.5 mm  
Overall length 83 mm  
Blade thickness 2.4 mm  
**No. 703856**

*Miniature chisel  
only 83 mm  
long!*



▶ Veritas® chisels made of PM-V11 steel available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## **B PFEIL® CHISELS**

Traditional quality:  
Precision-made chisels with a traditional design. Forged from a chrome-vanadium steel alloy, heat-treated in an electric furnace, then ground and polished by hand. The high quality of these chisels is noticeable in their uniform hardness (approx. 60 HRC) and homogeneous fine mirror polish. The blades come pre-sharpened, ready to use, and fitted with unvarnished hornbeam handles.

### **1 Single Chisel**

Blade length 95-105 mm  
Overall length 260-280 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5-4.5 mm  
Blade width

4 mm	<b>No. 700950</b>
6 mm	<b>No. 700951</b>
8 mm	<b>No. 700961</b>
10 mm	<b>No. 700952</b>
12 mm	<b>No. 700953</b>
16 mm	<b>No. 700954</b>
20 mm	<b>No. 700956</b>
26 mm	<b>No. 700957</b>
30 mm	<b>No. 700958</b>
32 mm	<b>No. 700959</b>
35 mm	<b>No. 700962</b>
40 mm	<b>No. 700963</b>



**2**



**3**

### **2 6-Piece Set in Beechwood Case**

Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
**No. 700997**

### **6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll**

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 20 / 26 / 30 mm  
**No. 700960**

### **3 12-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll**

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 4 / 6 / 8 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 / 30 / 32 / 35 / 40 mm  
**No. 700965**



**C**



## **C PFEIL® PARING CHISELS, 6-PIECE SET**

These perfectly shaped paring chisels of chromium-vanadium steel, hardened to approximately 60 HRC, are ideal for finishing wood joints. With its oval shape, the octagonal oiled elm wood handle provides a comfortable, non-slip grip. Its trapezium profile, created by the bevelled sides, means you can use the chisel in mortises or for finishing dovetails without damaging the edges.

6-piece set in a robust tool roll:  
Blade width 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 26 mm  
Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 265 mm  
Blade thickness 3-5 mm  
**No. 730030**



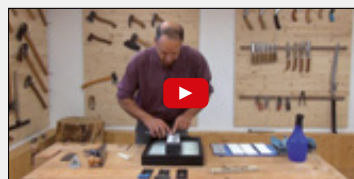
▶ For mallets  
see chapter  
»Hammers, Nails  
and Pry Bars«.



For single chisels see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## **Trueing and polishing the back of chisels and plane blades - DICTUM sharpening tips in cooperation with Garrett Hack**

The back of the blade forms half of the cutting edge. The sharper and more polished you get the back, the sharper the blade will be. For a good result, it is important to level the sharpening stones as evenly as possible and to get an even grinding pattern before each change of grit. Once you have a good back, you only remove the new burr of the bevel when sharpening.



**Vide** on sharpening techniques available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## **WORKSHOP**

**CLASSIC**

## **SHARPENING OF CUTTING TOOLS**

**Content:** Perfect and gentle sharpening of chisels, plane blades, knives, and carving blades using waterstones.



▶ For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)





A

**A STUBAI® CHISELS 2K PROFESSIONAL, 6-PIECE SET**  
High-quality chisel set with two-component plastic handles. The highly polished blades are forged from high-alloy tool steel (62 HRC). An ecological, water-based stove-enamel finish protects them from corrosion. The ergonomic handle is made of impact-resistant hard plastic and anti-slip rubber inserts with roll-stop faces. 6 pieces in a cotton tool roll.

Blade width 6 / 10 / 14 / 18 / 22 / 26 mm  
Blade length 95-105 mm  
Overall length 255-270 mm  
Blade thickness 3-6 mm  
**No. 701398**



B

**B STUBAI® CHISELS 3K CORK PROFESSIONAL, 6-PIECE SET**  
With their combination of comfortable, non-slip natural cork handle material and ultra-strong hard plastic, these chisels are ideal for both on site and in the workshop. The highly polished blade of high-alloy tool steel (approx. 62 HRC) is corrosion-protected by an ecological water-based stove-enamel finish. The oval handle provides a good grip and has roll-stop faces on both sides. 6 pieces in a cotton tool roll.

Blade width 6 / 10 / 14 / 18 / 22 / 26 mm  
Blade length 95-105 mm  
Overall length 255-270 mm  
Blade thickness 3-6 mm  
**No. 701399**



The Stubai chisels we offer are all made of their top-quality steel.



C

**C HULTAFORS® CARPENTER'S CHISELS**  
Ideal for use at construction sites: Extremely tough chisel designed for everyday use at construction sites. Can be hit with a metal hammer thanks to the nylon striker. The angled blade makes it possible to work with the chisel lying on the surface. It is therefore ideal for mid-panel use. The Santoprene handle ensures a tight grip even when the tool

is struck hard. Comes with holster which can easily be attached to a belt or a button.  
Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
Blade thickness 4-11 mm  
Blade width  
20 mm **No. 701126**  
25 mm **No. 701127**  
32 mm **No. 701128**  
40 mm **No. 701129**



For single chisels see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**D ALL-METAL CHISELS, 4-PIECE SET**  
**Price advantage**  
Nothing is impossible with this chisel: These robust tools are not only great for reworking timber joints, but are also suited for occasional prying and for evening plaster. Alloyed tool steel with a hardness

of 60-62 HRC at the front end of the blade. The neck and tang are made of softer steel to cushion hammer blows.  
Blade width 25 / 30 / 40 / 50 mm  
Blade length 125-145 mm  
Overall length 300-360 mm  
Blade thickness 5.5 mm  
**No. 701016**

D



Veritas® mortise chisels available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening



## Hybrid Type

These chisels are a hybrid form of Western design and Japanese technology. They combine the benefits of both tool cultures and are designed for craftsmen who appreciate the Japanese construction but do not want to forego the Western design.



### Tang chisels:



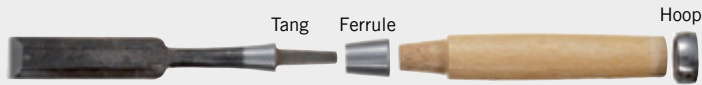
Classic design, ensuring firm anchoring of the blade in the handle. On cheap tools without an additional steel ferrule, the handles may split under heavy blows.

### Socket chisels:



This design allows a continuous transition from the neck to the handle and thus comfortable ergonomics. Through the conical fit of the socket strong forces can be transmitted during striking.

### Japanese chisels (Nomi):



This design combines the benefits of both types above.

### A HYBRID CHISELS WITH LONG BLADE

Ready-to-use bevel, pre-fitted hoops: These chisels come in a completely Western design with a long blade of vanadium-alloyed steel for high durability (approx. 61 HRC). With a large ferrule and big handle made of Japanese red oak. The back of the blade is flat (not hollow-ground).

Blade length 95 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
Blade thickness 3-5 mm

#### 1 Single Chisel

Blade width  
6 mm No. 710277  
9 mm No. 710278  
12 mm No. 710279  
15 mm No. 710280  
19 mm No. 710281  
22 mm No. 710282  
25 mm No. 710283  
30 mm No. 710284  
32 mm No. 710285  
38 mm No. 710286

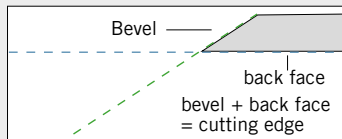


#### 2 6-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll

Blade width 6 / 12 / 19 / 25 / 32 / 38 mm  
No. 710287

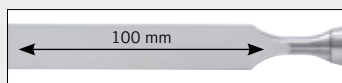
### Creating the back

The back of the chisel blade, together with the bevel, form the cutting edge - which is why the back is just as important as the bevel.



It is relatively easy to sharpen the bevel. However, due to its large surface, the back face creates some challenges:

The back face of western chisels is too large to work the entire surface across the width of a waterstone.



Therefore, it is very difficult to create a 100 % flat surface on the whole length of the blade. If there is unevenness of a hundredth of a millimetre or more in the front section of the back - the cutting edge - the blade will never be equally sharp all along the cutting edge.

To solve these problems, you have to take a careful look at both functions of the back.

#### The back face while working:

The back face is a reference surface when chiselling and serves as a support while working. It should be fairly flat over the entire area used. In this case, fairly flat means no rough milling or grinding traces, no hollow grind or convexity. A few minor indentations on the back are not cause for concern.

- Area used for dovetails and joints 20-60 mm
- Mortises up to 90 mm (but there are also mortise chisels)

Since working with a chisel precisely to a hundredth of a millimetre is not possible, the standard of flatness for this purpose is clearly lower than that for creating a cutting edge.

#### The back of the blade while creating a cutting edge:

In order to achieve a 100 % flat surface, the machined edge of the back face should be as small as possible.

The opposite side (bevel) has, depending on the bevel angle, a width of approx. 8 mm. However, the area that creates the cutting edge is often much smaller.

A secondary bevel or hollow grind will be 0.5-1 mm.

Yet on the back, it is not possible to differentiate the size of the area that is necessary to create a cutting edge by a bevel or an offset. It is part of the back of the chisel that also serves as a contact surface.

Furthermore, it is very difficult to machine areas less than 30 mm exactly flat due to the even pressure exerted on the edge of the sharpening stone.

#### A possible compromise during sharpening:

##### Grit 220:

Trueing the whole used contact surface (60 mm is a standard sharpening stone width that also corresponds to the area used); there is thus a slight offset on the back of the blade in an area that is not used. If the blade becomes shorter over the years, you will eventually have to true the contact surface (60 mm) again to drive the offset that has formed more towards the handle.



##### Grit 1000:

Create a back with a width of approx. 30-40 mm



##### Grit 6000+:

Continuously polish the back after each sharpening

When polishing the back normally (exclusively with grit 6000+) with 4-5 moves, there should not be any transition (see above) that influences working with the chisel until you have to true the contact surface again.

**A DAMASCUS HYBRID CHISELS**

Japanese steel quality -

Western blade form:

The blades of 24-layered Damascus steel (Suminagashi), laminated with Blue Paper Steel (approx. 61 HRC), have outstanding endurance, even on the hardest woods. Hefty handle of Japanese red oak, with a slim neck for controlled guidance during paring.

The blades are sharpened and ready for use, not angled and have a flat back (not hollow-ground).



Blade length 65 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 7 mm

**1 Single Chisel**

Blade width

6 mm **No. 710830**12 mm **No. 710832**19 mm **No. 710834**25 mm **No. 710835**32 mm **No. 710836**38 mm **No. 710837****2 6-Piece Set in Kiri Wood Case**

Blade width 6 / 12 / 19 / 25 / 32 / 38 mm  
**No. 710838**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

## Japanese Type

Wherever absolute precision is required, when working even the hardest of woods, Japanese chisels (Nomi) are the first choice. The meticulous workmanship with which they are made, the multi-layered, ultra-sharp blades, the outstanding edge life, and of course the compact design allow you to work ergonomically, comfortably, and precisely.

- The soft iron body prevents brittle fractures in the double-layered blade and dampens the force of the strike
- The cutting layer of carbon steel is hardened to 62-63 HRC
- Due to the angled blade, the cutting depth is increased to almost twice the blade length
- As the back of the blade is hollow-ground, the contact surface is reduced, which in turn decreases the friction and the necessary cutting force
- Conical steel ferrule between blade and handle for maximum force transmission

- Handles made of tough Japanese hardwoods
- Sturdy steel ferrules are designed for being driven by an iron hammer



## From the master's hand

The master smith himself performs all stages of production.

### Akio and Michio Tasai

The master smith Akio Tasai has earned himself a legendary reputation among Japan's metalworkers, especially due to his Mokume technique. His son Michio Tasai is following in the footsteps of his father, acquiring his Japanese sword-making license - the most prestigious accolade among smiths - at the age of 38 after eight years of study under the master sword smith Takano Yukimitsu. They use Blue Paper Steel, specifically manufactured according to their needs, to create the cutting layer of their tools, as this particular steel remains easy to sharpen despite its hardness.

**B TASAI MOKUME NOMI, CHISELS**

With skilful handling of fire and iron, the master blacksmith Akio Tasai lends this highly aesthetic chisel a wood-like structure (Mokume). The folds appear on the surface like a relief, and make each piece unique. Cutting edge of Blue Paper Steel, hardened to 62-63 HRC. With forged ferrule and hoop, the handle is made from selected sandalwood.

**1 Single Chisel**

Blade length 60 mm

Overall length 225 mm

Blade thickness 6-7.5 mm

Blade width

9 mm **No. 718950**12 mm **No. 718951**18 mm **No. 718952**

Blade width

24 mm **No. 718953**30 mm **No. 718954**36 mm **No. 718955****2 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll****Price advantage**

Blade width 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 / 36 mm

**No. 718960**

2



Various manufacturing steps besides forging are needed for a finished product.



Shaping



Engraving



Rust prevention



Sharpening

### A TASAI MASAME NOMI, CHISELS

In this extraordinary chisel series, Michio Tasai combines the blade and handle by skillfully selecting a »grown« Damascus pattern and a unique handle wood grain. The vertically aligned Damascus structure »Masame« merges seamlessly with the stringlike woven surface of the handle made of Lace Sheoak, an Australian species. Hand polished backs, ready-to-use bevels and hand forged steel rings/ferrules demonstrate the usual high manufacturing quality of Tasai products. Cutting layer made of Blue Paper Steel specially produced for Tasai and hardened to 62-63 HRC.



#### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
Blade thickness 6-7.5 mm  
Blade width

6 mm **No. 710385**

9 mm **No. 710386**

12 mm **No. 710387**

18 mm **No. 710388**

24 mm **No. 710389**

30 mm **No. 710390**

#### 2 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**

Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710391**



Further sizes available  
on special order.



### Japanese chisels

#### Blades of double-layered steel

Soft iron protects the blade against cracking and absorbs the shocks of the hammer blows (usually Nomi are driven by an iron hammer), forge-welded with a thin layer of extremely hard carbon steel (with the exception of HSS Nomi). The hardness values are 62-63 HRC.

#### Tapered blade

The blade is set at a slight angle to the tang to increase the working depth to nearly double the blade length.

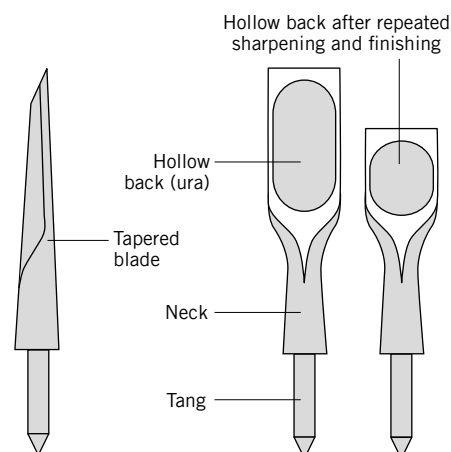
#### Integral design

The neck is seamlessly integrated in the handle and therefore lies comfortably in the hand. The conical steel ferrule protects the handle against fracture when struck with the hammer.

#### Hollow-ground back

The hollow relief (ura) on the back of the blade reduces the contact surface and therefore also the friction and the required cutting force. It also simplifies sharpening, as only the edges of the hard carbon steel of the blade need to be sharpened. Due to the abrasion during sharpening, the straight cutting edge remains intact, even though the blade becomes shorter through sharpening over time.

### Japanese chisel design





## Akio and Michio Tasai

The master smith Akio Tasai has earned himself a legendary reputation among Japan's metalworkers, especially due to his Mokume technique. His son Michio Tasai is following in the footsteps of his father, acquiring his Japanese sword-making license - the most prestigious accolade among smiths - at the age of 38 after eight years of study under the master sword smith Takano Yukimitsu. They use Blue Paper Steel, specifically manufactured according to their needs, to create the cutting layer of their tools, as this particular steel remains easy to sharpen despite its hardness.

**A** TASAI SHINOBI NOMI,  
DOVETAIL CHISEL

This chisel seems to come from a by-gone era. For the soft, shock-absorbing steel layer, Akio Tasai uses Japanese »Watetsu« iron, which dates from the Edo period. This extraordinary material is extremely rare and only used by licensed Japanese swordsmiths. The sword- and toolsmith welds the shock-absorbing material to a cutting layer of hard Blue Paper Steel in the fire. A high-contrast grained Bocote hardwood handle completes this unique tool.

Classic, triangular cross-section for chiselling and reworking of dovetails and other wood joints. The back faces are polished by hand, the bevel angles are sharpened and set ready for use and the steel rings / loops are hand-forged. Hardness 62-63 HRC.

**1** *Single Chisel*

Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
Blade thickness 5.5-8 mm  
Blade width  
6 mm **No. 710485**  
9 mm **No. 710486**  
12 mm **No. 710487**  
18 mm **No. 710488**  
24 mm **No. 710489**  
30 mm **No. 710490**



**B** TASAI OIRE NOMI, CHISELS

Perfection is when there is nothing left to add or take away. Tasai used this philosophy to create a consummately complete, ready-to-use tool that satisfies even the highest standards. He is guided in this belief by principles that extend beyond mere design, such as the hand-forged steel ring, the beaten ferrule, or the exquisitely polished handle made of red oakwood. Even the »inner values« are carefully considered in the choice of Blue Paper Steel developed specifically for Tasai. Each back is polished by hand, and the bevel sharpened on waterstones ready-for-use, before the product finally leaves the workshop. Cutting layer hardened to 62-63 HRC.

**1** *Single Chisel*

Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
Blade thickness 5-8 mm  
Blade width  
6 mm **No. 710351**  
9 mm **No. 710352**  
12 mm **No. 710353**  
18 mm **No. 710355**  
24 mm **No. 710357**  
30 mm **No. 710358**  
36 mm **No. 710359**



► Tasai Damekiri Nomi chisels available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**2** 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**

Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710491**



**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

**2** 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**

Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710362**





### Chutaro Imai

Chutaro Imai, who is already over 70 years old, is a second-generation master blacksmith and started producing chisels at the age of 18. He uses a specially developed, elaborate forging method for this purpose, with which he manufactures chisels to a high degree of perfection.

#### A IMAI MENTORI NOMI, CHISELS

Master blacksmith Chutaro Imai demonstrates his blacksmithing art, perfected down to the last detail, by creating pieces of humble Japanese aesthetics. The closely forged Damascus layers with their annual ring-like structure give the chisel a special feel and make each piece unique. It is not until one glances at the fine details, for instance the forge-welding and the precise finishing of the blade, that his 50+ years of experience as a smith become perfectly evident. The cutting core is made of White Paper Steel and hardened to 62-63 HRC.

##### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
Blade thickness 5-7.5 mm  
Blade width  
6 mm **No. 718651**  
9 mm **No. 718652**  
12 mm **No. 718653**  
18 mm **No. 718654**  
24 mm **No. 718655**  
30 mm **No. 718656**



► Available June 2021.

#### 2 6-piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 718657**



### Handmade in the master's workshop

These chisels are manufactured in a Japanese master's workshop. The master smith handles all crucial stages of production and conducts the final inspection. His qualified employees assist during production.



► D-Kumi Nomi chisels available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### B CHU-GATA NOMI, CHISELS

Handmade blades for connoisseurs: These premium-quality chisels are extremely durable. The blade is laminated with White Paper Steel, and finished by means of hand-forging with low deformation. Like sword steel, this material is melted from purest iron sand. The back of the blade has multiple grooves for improved support when working near edges. Handles made of high-quality »Kumi«, a Japanese hardwood species.

##### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
Blade thickness 5-7.5 mm  
Blade width  
3 mm **No. 710160**  
6 mm **No. 710161**  
9 mm **No. 710162**  
12 mm **No. 710163**  
15 mm **No. 710164**  
18 mm **No. 710165**  
24 mm **No. 710166**  
30 mm **No. 710167**  
36 mm **No. 710168**  
42 mm **No. 710169**



2

#### 2 10-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 3 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 15 / 18 / 24 / 30 / 36 / 42 mm  
**No. 710170**



3

#### 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710230**

#### 3 6-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710231**





A

1



Japanese chisels with long handles



2

### A OIRE NOMI KASHI, CHISELS

European-style handle and oiled surface:

These chisels are handmade in a Japanese master forge and have a cutting edge of specially developed YC3 steel. YC3 steel has similar characteristics and composition as White Paper Steel and therefore takes a very fine edge. It is however considerably tougher which reduces the risk of chipping when working in knotty wood. The extra-long handle of Japanese white oak optimally absorbs impact and its oiled surface provides a very comfortable grip.



3

#### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
Blade thickness 5-6 mm  
Blade width  
3 mm **No. 710320**  
6 mm **No. 710321**  
9 mm **No. 710322**  
12 mm **No. 710323**  
15 mm **No. 710324**  
18 mm **No. 710325**  
21 mm **No. 710326**  
24 mm **No. 710327**  
30 mm **No. 710328**  
36 mm **No. 710329**  
42 mm **No. 710330**

#### 2 10-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 3 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 15 / 18 / 21 / 24 / 30 / 36 mm  
**No. 710332**

#### 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710331**

#### 3 6-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710333**

### Why do the shoulder forged onto the blade and the steel ferrule only fit 100 % in one position?

The answer to this question lies in the manufacture. There are two ways of making the steel ferrule in Japan. In the first and most common version, the area where the steel ferrule joins the forged-on shoulder is ground. At first sight, the two parts seem to be made of one piece.

In the second version, the steel ferrule is accentuated by either a hammer finish (hand-forged) or blueing. If the steel ferrule becomes slightly loose on the first version, it looks as if the chisel is cracked.

But what looks like a crack is actually created when the steel ferrule is joined with the blade, where the steel ferrule buckles slightly. Since the edge of the steel ferrule deforms unevenly, the ferrule only fits in one position, and if the fit opens slightly, it appears as if a crack had formed. This visual irregularity, however, does not affect the stability of the chisel.



### B OIRE NOMI, CHISELS

For the professional: Professional-quality forged chisels from a Japanese master workshop. A cutting edge of White Paper Steel ensures highest durability and is easy to sharpen. Japanese red oak handles with solid steel hoops.

#### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
Blade thickness 5-6 mm  
Blade width  
3 mm **No. 710129**  
6 mm **No. 710130**  
9 mm **No. 710131**  
12 mm **No. 710132**  
15 mm **No. 710011**  
18 mm **No. 710133**  
21 mm **No. 710012**  
24 mm **No. 710134**  
30 mm **No. 710135**  
36 mm **No. 710013**

#### 2 10-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 3 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 15 / 18 / 21 / 24 / 30 / 36 mm  
**No. 710137**



1



2



3

#### 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710136**

#### 3 6-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710138**



## Crafted quality, perfect for first-time buyers

In the production process of these chisels, each employee in our specially chosen smithy workshops in Japan is specialised in certain stages of manufacturing. The result at the end of the process is an extraordinary product at a fantastic price.

### A TATAKI NOMI, CHISELS

Ready to use, ideal for beginners:

Well-crafted chisels with durable double-layered blades (milled steel). Waxed handles of Japanese red oak with pre-fitted hoops.



#### 1 Single Chisel

Blade length 58 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
Blade thickness 5-6 mm  
Blade width

3 mm **No. 710780**  
6 mm **No. 710781**  
9 mm **No. 710782**  
12 mm **No. 710783**  
15 mm **No. 710784**  
18 mm **No. 710785**  
24 mm **No. 710786**  
30 mm **No. 710787**  
36 mm **No. 710788**  
42 mm **No. 710789**

#### 2 6-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll

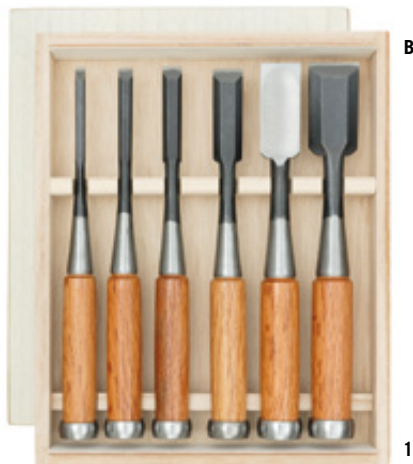
**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710792**

#### 6-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710790**

#### 3 10-Piece Set in Leather Tool Roll

**Price advantage**  
Blade width 3 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 15 / 18 / 24 / 30 / 36 / 42 mm  
**No. 710791**



B

### B HATTORI® CHISEL SETS

Inexpensive Japanese chisels made of milled steel (double-layered, 60 HRC) in a kiri wood case. Handles made of Japanese red oak.  
Blade length 58 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
Blade thickness 5-6 mm

#### 1 6-Piece Set in Wooden Case

Blade width 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 30 mm  
**No. 710015**

#### 10-Piece Set in Wooden Case

Blade width 3 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 15 / 18 / 24 / 30 / 36 / 42 mm  
**No. 710016**



1

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

#### Set up tips:

Nomi do not come ready-to-use (except some models). They must first be sharpened and finished. We recommend using Japanese waterstones. For high-precision applications, the back of the blade should also be plane and trued prior to use. This can be done using a steel plate and silicon carbide powder or a diamond stone. The ferrule on the butt end of the handle should also be driven down prior to use so that the hammer only makes contact with the wood when striking the chisel. Detailed instructions are included with every chisel.



## WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

### JAPANESE WOOD JOINTS

**Content:** In the basic course, you will learn about Japanese tools and the basic working techniques to make simple Japanese wood joints. In the advanced course, you will create a variety of sophisticated Japanese joints such as:

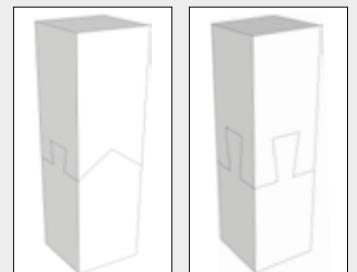
- Longitudinal joints
- Corner joints
- T and cross joints
- So-called »impossible« wood joints

You will learn:

- Efficient scribing techniques
- Sawing and chiselling tips
- Tricks for working out wood joints more effectively
- Facts and background of Japanese wood joints

The basic techniques will be explained in more depth.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



► Protective caps for Japanese chisels available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Japanese Special Tools



**A HATTORI® SLICKS**  
Well-proportioned and -balanced slick with double-layered blade (milled steel) and a long edge life. The handles are made of Japanese white oak.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 580 mm  
Blade thickness 12 mm  
Blade width  
42 mm **No. 710825**  
54 mm **No. 710823**



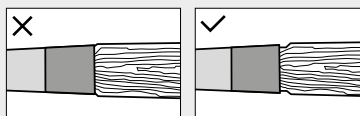
► Protective caps for slicks available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## How does the steel ferrule have to fit?

The steel ferrule transfers the impact via the conical section. Therefore, if the ferrule touches the wood at the upper end of the turned conical section, you

should remove some of the wood from the contact surface. Otherwise the impact is not transferred via the conical section but via the contact surface.



**B SLICK**  
Slick for making beam joints and for finishing work. Double-layered, well-proportioned blade with a cutting edge

of White Paper Steel. Handle made of Japanese red oak.  
Blade width 54 mm  
Blade length 120 mm

Overall length 580 mm  
Blade thickness 12 mm  
**No. 710802**



## What is the difference between the steel ferrule on Japanese chisels and the ferrule on Western-style ones?

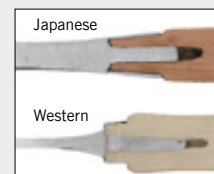
On Japanese chisels, the impact is transferred to the blade via the handle and the steel ferrule that is held in place by the conical shape. Unlike the ferrules on Western-style chisels, Japanese steel ferrules are solid and turned.

On Western-style chisels, the impact is transferred via a tang and the shoulder of the blade. Japanese blades are therefore connected to the handle in two ways, while Western ones are only fixed by the tang.



## Tang:

There is no difference between the tang in a Japanese or Western chisel. The steel ferrule in Japanese chisels and the ferrule in Western chisels prevent the handle from being split by the impact of the hammer.



## Conical section:

The forged-on shoulder touches the ferrule in the Western version, but it only fixes it and does not transfer the impact to the blade. In the Japanese version, the forged-on shoulder of the blade also touches the steel ferrule, but the ferrule itself sits on a turned conical section on the handle. Thus the impact is also transferred through the steel ferrule.



**C TAPERED CHISELS**  
Chisels with tapered blade, ideal for undercutting in joinery and for cleaning corners and notches. Cutting edge of White Paper Steel. The handles are made of Japanese red oak and have forged steel hoops.  
Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 230 mm

Blade thickness 4-7 mm  
Blade width  
6 mm **No. 710210**  
9 mm **No. 710211**  
12 mm **No. 710212**  
15 mm **No. 710213**  
18 mm **No. 710214**  
21 mm **No. 710215**



► HSS chisels for rough handling in restoration, on-site carpentry and cabinetmaking available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► For a Genko for striking Japanese chisels see chapter »Hammers, Nails and Pry Bars«.

**A HATTORI® CARPENTER'S CHISELS, 4-PIECE SET**  
Set of four sturdy chisels with extra-long blades made of double-layered, milled steel for joinery and restoration in carpentry. Handles made of Japanese white oak. Comes in a wooden case.

Blade width 18 / 24 / 30 / 42 mm  
Blade length 85 mm  
Overall length 295 mm  
Blade thickness 9 mm  
**No. 710850**

## Chinese Type



Rugged HSS blades in a simple design. These Chinese chisels will not let you down, even under rough treatment in restoration and joinery work or when working on hard composite materials and glue joints.



► Paring chisels available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**B CHINESE HSS CABINETMAKER'S CHISELS**  
Extra-hard HSS (64 HRC) for heavy-duty applications and working on wearing materials. The slightly tapered blades reach corners and undercuts effortlessly. Fine-grained handle made of Chinese hardwood.

**1 Single Chisel**  
Blade length 105 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
Blade thickness 4 mm  
Blade width  
12.5 mm **No. 700980**  
19 mm **No. 700981**  
25 mm **No. 700982**  
31 mm **No. 700983**  
38 mm **No. 700984**

**2 5-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll**  
**Price advantage**  
Blade width 12.5 / 19 / 25 / 31 / 38 mm  
**No. 700985**



## C CHINESE HSS BROAD CHISELS

These extra-broad chisels are perfect for large-scale carpentry, restoration and sculpture work. The front portion of the spade-shaped blade is made of HSS (64 HRC) and is hard-soldered to the body via a transitional metal layer. Durable handle made of fine-grained Chinese hardwood with untreated surface.

**1 Single Chisel**  
Blade length 80 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 4 mm  
Blade width  
40 mm **No. 700991**  
50 mm **No. 700986**  
63 mm **No. 700987**  
75 mm **No. 700988**  
90 mm **No. 700990**

**2 5-Piece Set in Cotton Tool Roll**  
**Price advantage**  
Blade width 40 / 50 / 63 / 75 / 90 mm  
**No. 700996**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



## Tool Rolls

For safely storing chisels and sculpting gouges.



**A LEATHER TOOL ROLLS**  
Made of fine-quality leather. The seams are reinforced with rivets.

*Pockets 6*  
Max. tool length 270 mm  
Outer dimensions 370 x 290 mm  
**No. 717501**

*Pockets 6*  
Max. tool length 300 mm  
Outer dimensions 370 x 320 mm  
**No. 717502**

*Pockets 12*  
Max. tool length 270 mm  
Outer dimensions 550 x 290 mm  
**No. 717504**

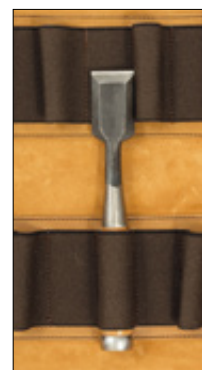
*Pockets 12*  
Max. tool length 300 mm  
Outer dimensions 550 x 320 mm  
**No. 717503**

*Pockets 20*  
Max. tool length 270 mm  
Outer dimensions 790 x 290 mm  
**No. 717505**



**B LEATHER TOOL ROLLS DELUXE**  
High-quality leather tool roll made of fine cowhide. The tools are safely secured in place by an elastic strap that prevents the tools from slipping out in any situation. The well-designed closure straps provide comfortable opening and closing, and round off the appealing design of the leather tool roll.  
Max. tool length 300 mm

*Pockets 6*  
Outer dimensions 380 x 340 mm  
**No. 715182**



Chisel not included!



*Pockets 12*  
Outer dimensions 600 x 340 mm  
**No. 715183**

### Filson - since 1897

Headquartered in Seattle, Washington (USA), and renowned for making products from fabrics such as heavyweight Tin Cloth and warm Mackinaw Wool, Filson stands for the highest quality and most durable clothing and accessories available.



Chisel not included!



**C FILSON TOOL ROLL**  
This roll-up tool kit is made of water-repellent, tear-resistant Rugged Twill and has Tin Cloth-bound seams. It features multiple offset tool slots, a



bellows pocket made of Tin Cloth for small gear and a four-hole, adjustable strap-and-stud Bridle Leather closure. Colour tan. Wipe or brush clean.

Material 22-oz. Rugged Twill / 15-oz. oil finish Tin Cloth  
476 x 356 mm  
**No. 818069**



**D COTTON TOOL ROLLS**  
Heavy fabric with shaped pockets for chisels, gouges, screwdrivers, spanners, pliers etc. Includes belt with snap fastener.

*Pockets 5*  
Max. tool length 240 mm  
Outer dimensions 310 x 400 mm  
**No. 712900**

*Pockets 10*  
Max. tool length 280 mm  
Outer dimensions 570 x 400 mm  
**No. 712901**

Chisel not included!



**E ROLLUP CASES**  
Strong, impregnated cotton fabric rollup case. Belt with snap fastener. As the tools are secured by a flap, they cannot fall out.

*Pockets 6*  
Max. tool length 260 mm  
Outer dimensions 390 x 420 mm  
**No. 707513**



► Protective caps available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

*Pockets 9*  
Max. tool length 260 mm  
Outer dimensions 560 x 430 mm  
**No. 707514**

*Pockets 12*  
Max. tool length 260 mm  
Outer dimensions 710 x 430 mm  
**No. 707515**

# Sculpting

The extension of the artist's arm!

**Carving and Sculpting Tools | 52**

**European Carving Tools | 52**

**Japanese Carving Tools | 63**

**Traditional Chinese Carving Tools | 64**

**Special Tools | 64**

**Carver's Mallets | 65**

**Carving Knives and Woodcutting Tools | 66**

**Central European Type | 66**

**Northern European Type | 69**

**Japanese Type | 71**

**Electric Carving Tools | 72**

**Sculptor's Hatchets | 77**

**Drawknives | 78**

**Adzes | 79**



# Carving and Sculpting Tools

## European Carving Tools

### ■ DICTUM Carving Tools

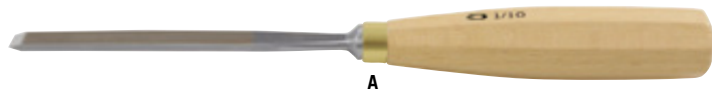
Our sculptor's gouges, available in a wide choice of sweeps and widths, are made of premium German carbon steel, hand-forged under a spring hammer by the traditional company Henry Taylor of Sheffield, UK. This gives them supreme sharpness as well as excellent durability and makes them easy to resharpen.

- Consistently thin blade for perfect balance and precise control

- Consistent hardness through modern hardening and annealing methods

Rounded octagonal handle of red beech with shellac surface:

- For easy tool alignment
- Prevents the tool from rolling off the worktop
- Provides a non-slip grip
- Colour anodised, polished inner faces reduce light reflection during use
- Perfectly polished outer faces for smooth guidance



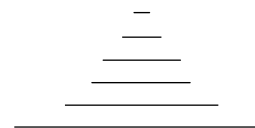
A



#### A DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, CHISELS, DOUBLE BEVEL

Straight chisels are preferred for lettering, but are also suitable for chip carving and for smoothing straight or slightly convex surfaces in figure sculpting. The skewed variant can be drawn across the surface and cuts into corners more easily. Blade length 110-150 mm, overall length 220-280 mm

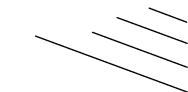
#### Sweep 1 flat



Blade width  
2 mm  
5 mm  
10 mm  
13 mm  
20 mm  
32 mm

No. 701411  
No. 701412  
No. 701413  
No. 701414  
No. 701415  
No. 701482

#### Sweep 2 flat/skew



Blade width  
5 mm  
10 mm  
13 mm  
20 mm

No. 701416  
No. 701417  
No. 701418  
No. 701419

### How is a hand-forged sculptor's gouge made?

First the tang and shoulder are formed on the blanks, with particular attention to making a flat surface on the shoulder.

In the next step, the blank shape is forged and then the blade is evenly shaped to its final thickness. A traditional technique allows the tool to be forged as thin as possible while ensuring high stability.

Before hardening, the blade is pre-ground to remove the decarbonised surface layers produced in the forging process. This ensures a consistent

hardness at all points throughout the blade.

The blade is hardened consistently in a controlled hardening and annealing process.

Blade polishing is done on special grinding machines which cool it during grinding to prevent a loss of hardness due to overheating.

► Due to the entirely manual or free hand production sweeps and widths may vary slightly.



Hand-forged under a spring hammer for a dense structure:

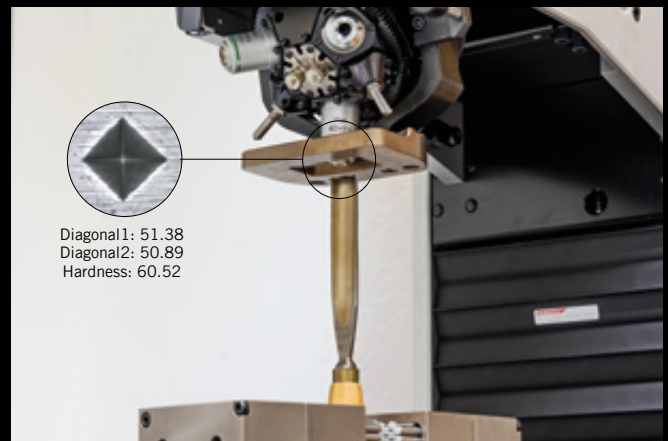
- Supreme sharpness
- Long service lives
- Easy to resharpen
- Large forged shoulder with straight contact surface for optimum force transmission



Forging



Hardening

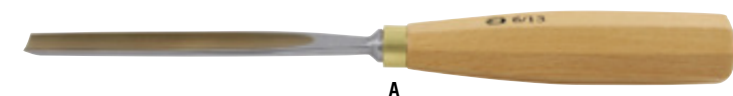


Diagonal1: 51.38  
Diagonal2: 50.89  
Hardness: 60.52

Quality control

**Vide** A video that shows the manufacturing process is linked to every product in our online shop.





A

**A** DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGE, STRAIGHT

Gouges are used for anything from rough work to shaping and finishing, and are therefore the most versatile sculptor's tools. If necessary, each of these gouges can also be used the other way round to work on convex surfaces. Sweep 11, which takes you from gouge to V-parting tool, is often used to create shape transitions. Blade length 110-150 mm, overall length 220-280 mm

## Sweep 3



Blade width	
5 mm	No. 701420
10 mm	No. 701421
13 mm	No. 701422
20 mm	No. 701423
32 mm	No. 701483

## Sweep 4



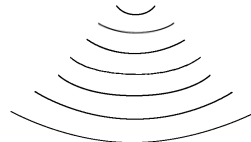
Blade width	
5 mm	No. 701424
10 mm	No. 701425
13 mm	No. 701426
20 mm	No. 701427
26 mm	No. 701428
32 mm	No. 701484

## Sweep 5



Blade width	
20 mm	No. 701429

## Sweep 6



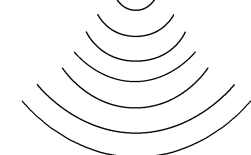
Blade width	
5 mm	No. 701430
10 mm	No. 701431
13 mm	No. 701432
16 mm	No. 701433
20 mm	No. 701434
26 mm	No. 701435
32 mm	No. 701485

## Sweep 7



Blade width	
20 mm	No. 701436

## Sweep 8



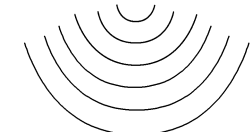
Blade width	
5 mm	No. 701437
10 mm	No. 701438
13 mm	No. 701439
16 mm	No. 701486
20 mm	No. 701440
26 mm	No. 701441
32 mm	No. 701487

## Sweep 9



Blade width	
5 mm	No. 701442
10 mm	No. 701443
16 mm	No. 701444
20 mm	No. 701445
26 mm	No. 701446
32 mm	No. 701488

## Sweep 10

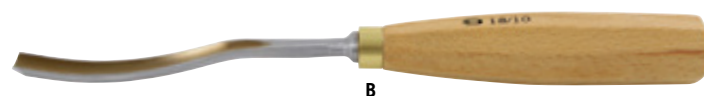


Blade width	
5 mm	No. 701447
10 mm	No. 701448
16 mm	No. 701449
20 mm	No. 701450
26 mm	No. 701451
32 mm	No. 701489

## Sweep 11



Blade width	
2 mm	No. 701452
6 mm	No. 701453
10 mm	No. 701454
16 mm	No. 701455
20 mm	No. 701494



B

**B** DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGE / V-PARTING TOOLS, LONG BENT

The long bent form is used in curved recesses to allow you to cut out of the piece from the deepest point without damaging the edges of recess.

Blade length 110-150 mm, overall length 220-280 mm

## Sweep 17 equals 8



Blade width	
13 mm	No. 701456
20 mm	No. 701457
26 mm	No. 701458
32 mm	No. 701495

## Sweep 18 equals 9

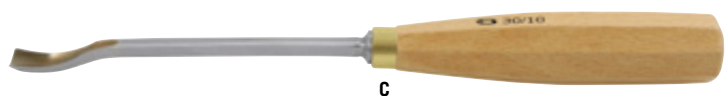


Blade width	
10 mm	No. 701459
16 mm	No. 701460
32 mm	No. 701496

## Sweep 42 V 65°



Blade width	
6 mm	No. 701472



C

**C** DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGE / V-PARTING TOOLS, SHORT BENT

Similar to the long bent form, these gouges are also used for deep, curved shapes. The even stronger bend of the gouge allows you to carve transitions in even deeper areas and to create small radiuses and arches.

Blade length 110-150 mm, overall length 220-280 mm

## Sweep 29 equals 8



Blade width	
10 mm	No. 701461
13 mm	No. 701462
16 mm	No. 701479

## Sweep 30 equals 9



Blade width	
10 mm	No. 701463
16 mm	No. 701464
26 mm	No. 701465

## Sweep 31 equals 10



Blade width	
32 mm	No. 701528

## Sweep 32 equals 11



Blade width	
5 mm	No. 701497
10 mm	No. 701498

## Sweep 44 V 65°



Blade width	
3 mm	No. 701473
6 mm	No. 701474

»I was impressed by the quality of the DICTUM carving tools in terms of hardness and durability. They rest well in the hand and are comfortable to the touch.«

Hartmut Rademann, self-employed master sculptor

## DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

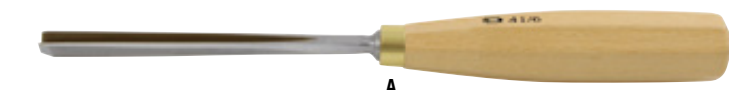
Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



## A DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, V-PARTING TOOLS

V-parting tools are popularly used in relief carving to delimit areas. Another important use is the cutting of even grooves.

Blade length 110-150 mm, overall length 220-280 mm

Sweep 41 V 65°



Blade width  
3 mm  
6 mm  
10 mm  
20 mm

No. 701466  
No. 701467  
No. 701468  
No. 701471

Sweep 45 V 95°



Blade width  
3 mm  
6 mm  
10 mm

No. 701475  
No. 701476  
No. 701469

Sweep 47



Blade width  
6 mm

No. 701470



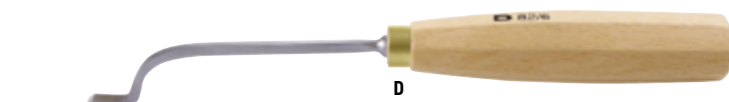
**C DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGES, BACK BENT, INSIDE BEVEL**  
Primarily used for convex shapes and cylindrical profiles which cannot be worked on with a turned straight gouge because of the strong curve.  
Blade length 125 mm, overall length 245 mm

Sweep 34 equals 4



Blade width  
6 mm  
13 mm

No. 701477  
No. 701478



## D DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, DOGLEG GOUGE

This gouge is used to clear the ground of deep, shouldered areas to their final depth and to rework corners.

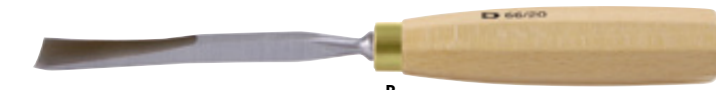
Blade length 105 mm, overall length 225 mm

Sweep 82 equals 1



Blade width  
6 mm

No. 701529



## B DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, POD TOOLS

Thanks to their conical form, pod tools are used for backcutting in relief carving and for general finishing work. Their projecting corners make it easy to cut within narrow recesses, in which the angle of the gouge can still be corrected.

Blade length 120 mm, overall length 240 mm

Sweep 64 equals 4



Blade width  
6 mm  
16 mm

No. 701499  
No. 701505

Sweep 66 equals 6



Blade width  
6 mm  
20 mm

No. 701506  
No. 701507

Sweep 70 equals 10



Blade width  
6 mm  
16 mm

No. 701508  
No. 701509

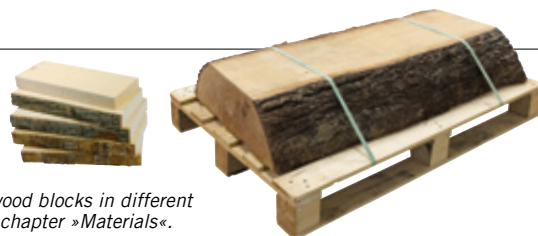
## Carving tool types

**Gouges** - Gouges are the classical sculptor's tools. Their curvature is described by sweep numbers (from 3 = very flat to 11 = very strongly curved).

**Chisels** - In comparison with normal woodworking chisels, they are sharpened on both sides. Due to their versatility for use they are a must in every basic set.

**V-parting tools** - These have a V-shaped cross-section and are used for cutting sharp-edged grooves, outlining patterns, and carving letters.

**Cranked tools** - Bent tools are advantageous for elaborating concave surfaces, recesses or relief backgrounds.



► For limewood blocks in different sizes see chapter »Materials«.



► Sharpening set for carving tools available online.



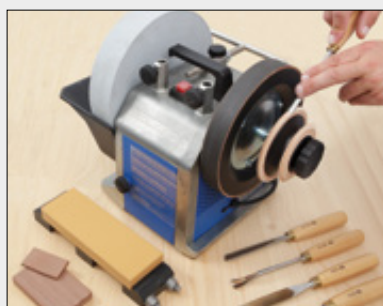
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## WORKSHOP

## SHARPENING CARVING AND SCULPTING TOOLS

**Content:** In this course you will learn step by step the techniques and all important aspects of sharpening carving and sculpting tools on both waterstones and machines.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



## Forming the inside

Unlike drop-forged tools, on DICTUM carving tools the inside of the blade is forged by hand with a fullering tool. Repeated postforming creates a thin, uniform blade and produces a solid metal structure for a better edge life and easier sharpening.

► For a video that shows the manufacturing process see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## DICTUM Compact Carving Tools

Our compact sculptor's gouges are made of premium German carbon steel. Hand-forged under a spring hammer by the traditional company Henry Taylor of Sheffield (England). This gives them supreme sharpness as well as excellent durability and makes them easy to resharpen.

Hand-forged under a spring hammer for a dense structure:

- Makes the steel stronger
- Enables long edge lives
- The polished inner faces are coloured in the annealing process in order to reduce light reflection during use
- Perfectly polished outer faces for smooth guidance

Rounded octagonal handle of red beech with Shellack surface:

- For easy tool alignment
- Prevents the tool from rolling off the worktop
- Provides a non-slip grip

- Consistent hardness through modern hardening and annealing methods

A

- Consistently thin blade for perfect balance and precise control

- Wide forged-on shoulder with straight contact surface for optimum force transmission



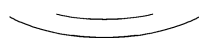
### A DICTUM® COMPACT CARVING TOOL

Perfect for the details:

The blade is shorter than standard carving tools to work closer to the work-piece. The sculptor can create extraordinarily precise details by hand thanks to the combination of a short blade with a compact octagonal ball grip that lies perfectly in the hand.

Blade width 13 mm  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 185 mm

Sweep 5



Blade width  
13 mm  
26 mm

No. 701680  
No. 701681

Sweep 6



Blade width  
16 mm  
20 mm  
22 mm

No. 701682  
No. 701683  
No. 701684

Sweep 7



Blade width  
5 mm  
10 mm  
16 mm

No. 701685  
No. 701686  
No. 701687

Sweep 8



Blade width  
5 mm  
10 mm

No. 701688  
No. 701689

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested  
for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



## DICTUM® Carving Tool Sets

Sets of selected sculptor's gouges with high-quality tool roll or wooden case with top.



### B DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS IN COTTON TOOL ROLL, 4-PIECE SET

#### Price advantage

4-piece set as a basic equipment for beginners. DICTUM carving knife, shape BS/K, with leather cutting edge protection and selected DICTUM carving tools.

Flat 1 / 10 mm;  
V-parting tool 41  
V 65° / 10 mm;  
gouge, straight, sweep 8 / 10 mm.  
Blade length 110-150 mm  
Overall length 220-280 mm

No. 728901



B



C

1



### C DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, 6-PIECE SETS

6-piece set as basic equipment for beginners. Flat/skew 13 mm; V-parting tool 41 V 65° / 10 mm; gouges, straight sweep 5 / 20 mm; sweep 6 / 13 mm; sweep 8 / 10 mm; sweep 10 / 5 mm.  
Blade length 110-150 mm  
Overall length 220-280 mm

- 1 In cotton tool roll **Price advantage**  
No. 701536
- 2 In wooden case  
No. 701523
- 3 In leather tool roll **Price advantage**  
No. 701480



2



3





A



### A DICTUM® CARVING TOOLS, IN LEATHER TOOL ROLL, 12-PIECE SET

#### Price advantage

With these twelve sculptor's tools you are perfectly equipped for sculpting figures and ornaments. Flat 10 mm; flat/skew 10 mm; V-parting tool 41 V 65° / 6 mm;

gouges, straight sweep 6 / 10 and 20 mm; sweep 8 / 5 and 13 mm; sweep 9 / 5 and 10 mm; sweep 11 / 6 mm; gouge, short bent sweep 9 / 10 mm; gouge, long bent sweep 8 / 20 mm. Blade length 110-150 mm, overall length 220-280 mm  
**No. 701481**

## Pfeil® Carving Tools

With over 700 forms and sweeps, Pfeil offers the largest and most variable product range. The products of the world's leading manufacture of fine carving tools are made from specially alloyed, hard tool steel, forged and ground on precision machines, heat-treated in an electric furnace and sharpened by hand ready-for-use. The blades are uniformly hardened to 59-61 HRC along their entire length, the break-proof oiled ash handles are mounted with inner ferrules. Only indigenous woods and solvent-free oils are used.

Your advantage: Quick delivery straight from stock



B

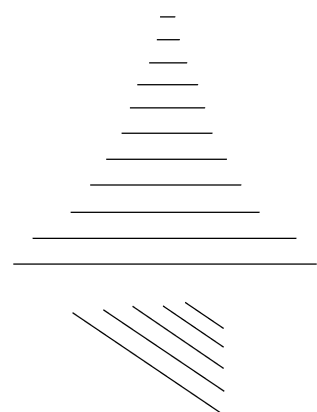


### B PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, CHISELS, DOUBLE BEVEL

Straight chisels are preferred for lettering, but are also suitable for chip carving and for smoothing straight or slightly convex surfaces in figure sculpting. The skewed variant can be drawn across the surface and cuts into corners more easily.

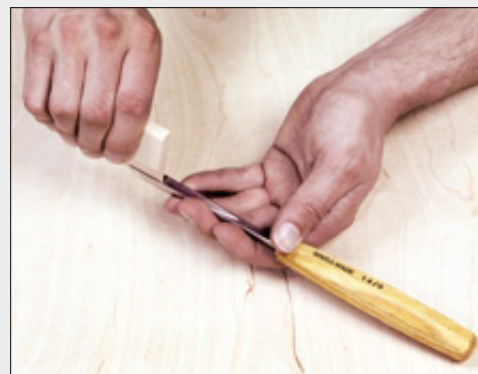
Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm

Sweep	Blade width	
1 flat	2 mm	<b>No. 700800</b>
	3 mm	<b>No. 700801</b>
	5 mm	<b>No. 700802</b>
	8 mm	<b>No. 700803</b>
	10 mm	<b>No. 701220</b>
	12 mm	<b>No. 700804</b>
	16 mm	<b>No. 700805</b>
	20 mm	<b>No. 700806</b>
	25 mm	<b>No. 700807</b>
	35 mm	<b>No. 700808</b>
	40 mm	<b>No. 700763</b>
1S flat/skew	5 mm	<b>No. 700812</b>
	8 mm	<b>No. 700813</b>
	12 mm	<b>No. 700814</b>
	16 mm	<b>No. 700815</b>
	20 mm	<b>No. 700816</b>



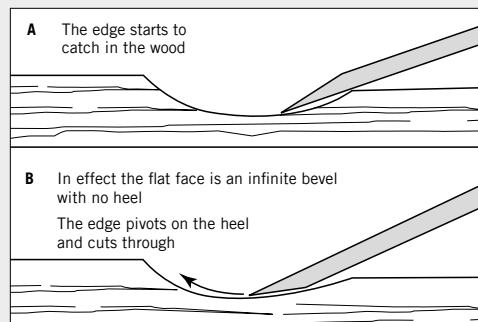
## Inside bevels on carving gouges - sharpening tips by DICTUM in cooperation with Chris Pye

An inside bevel adds a very special configuration to carving gouges, altering the whole »feel« and performance of these tools to great advantage. It is true: some carvers produce excellent carvings without this inside bevel; so make your own mind up by carving with two similar gouges, one with and one without the inner bevel, experiment and compare how they feel.

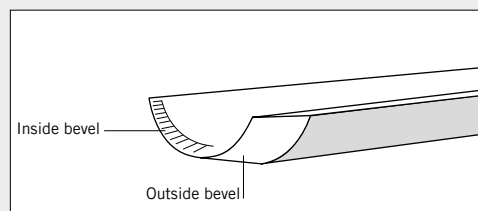


## Why is the inside bevel so important?

- You can cut more easily with the gouge »upside down«; without the inside bevel, the cutting edge tends to »jig« on the flat inner face and bury itself into the wood, rather than rising out by pivoting on the inner heel (see fig. A)



- The inside bevel throws the cutting edge to the middle of the metal, thus »buttressing« and strengthening the edge by increasing the combined, overall bevel angle
- This in turn allows a lower cutting angle since the outer bevel can be longer
- An inside bevel eases the shaving up and out of the channel in deep and U-shaped gouges



## Guidelines

- Make the angle for the inside bevel quite low, 5-10°
- Add the inside bevel early when you »commission« your carving tool (before dealing with the outside bevel)
- The flatter the gouge (i.e. the lower the number) and the more it will be used upside down, the longer the inside bevel; the deeper the gouge, the shorter and sharper; V-tools and bent gouges need very little, if any inside bevel

For a detailed version of this sharpening technique and more techniques see [www.perfect-sharpening.com](http://www.perfect-sharpening.com)

Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.



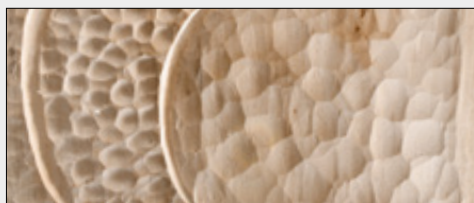
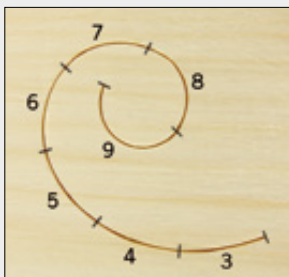
Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

## How are sweeps defined?

Sweeps depict the shape of a tool as viewed from the front. To make tool selection easier, these shapes are numbered. The gouge sweeps go back to a standard that was set by the so-called »Sheffield Illustrated List«, where the number has no particular meaning. People often think that the number relates to the diameter of a circle on which a specific sweep is based, but this is wrong. It may well be possible that the shapes of the sweeps were based on Archimedean spirals rather than on circles. In general, the sweeps of the different manufacturers follow the basic system of the »Sheffield Illustrated List«, but some may also differ. To allow you to compare the sweeps, we print a 1:1 sketch of the individual sweeps in our catalogue wherever possible.



Working on surfaces with different sweeps results in different surface structures, which means they can also be used to produce variations in design. The larger the sweep, the more noticeable the structure.

## WORKSHOP

**CLASSIC**

## INTRODUCTION TO SCULPTING



**Content:** Participants learn how to turn their ideas into wooden items. Modeled after nature and according to your individual imagination, the layout for a botanical theme, an animal or human motif is created step by step. You will be given general explanations on sculpting as well as information on tools for carving and sharpening. You may bring your own wood.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



### A PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGES, STRAIGHT

Gouges are used for anything from rough work to shaping and finishing, and are therefore the most versatile sculptor's tools. If necessary, each of these gouges can also be used the other way round to work on convex surfaces. Sweep 11, which takes you from gouge to V-parting tool, is often used to create shape transitions.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm

Sweep	Blade width	No.
2	5 mm	No. 701223
	8 mm	No. 701224
	12 mm	No. 700818
	16 mm	No. 701355
	20 mm	No. 700820
3	30 mm	No. 700819
	3 mm	No. 700821
	5 mm	No. 700822
	8 mm	No. 700823
	10 mm	No. 701226
	12 mm	No. 700824
	16 mm	No. 700825
	20 mm	No. 700826
	25 mm	No. 700827
	30 mm	No. 700828
4	35 mm	No. 700829
	40 mm	No. 700765
4	20 mm	No. 701356
5	3 mm	No. 700830
	5 mm	No. 700831
	8 mm	No. 700832
	10 mm	No. 701227
	12 mm	No. 700833
	16 mm	No. 700834
	20 mm	No. 700835
	25 mm	No. 700836
	30 mm	No. 700837
	35 mm	No. 700838
6	40 mm	No. 700766
	20 mm	No. 701357
7	4 mm	No. 700848
	6 mm	No. 700840
	10 mm	No. 700841
	12 mm	No. 700849
	14 mm	No. 700842
	18 mm	No. 700843
	20 mm	No. 700844
	25 mm	No. 700845
	30 mm	No. 700846
	35 mm	No. 700847
8	40 mm	No. 700767
	4 mm	No. 700850
9	7 mm	No. 700851
	10 mm	No. 700852
	13 mm	No. 700853
	16 mm	No. 701229
	18 mm	No. 700854
	20 mm	No. 701230
	25 mm	No. 700855
	30 mm	No. 700856
	35 mm	No. 700857
	40 mm	No. 701231
11	2 mm	No. 701232
	3 mm	No. 700858
	5 mm	No. 700860
	7 mm	No. 700861
	10 mm	No. 700862
	13 mm	No. 701233
	15 mm	No. 700863
	20 mm	No. 701234
	25 mm	No. 700864
	30 mm	No. 700859
11	0.5 mm	No. 701235
	1 mm	No. 700868
	2 mm	No. 700867
	3 mm	No. 700865
	7 mm	No. 701238
	10 mm	No. 700866
	15 mm	No. 700869
	18 mm	No. 701239



A

- A** PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGES, BACK BENT, INSIDE BEVEL  
Primarily used for convex shapes and cylindrical profiles which cannot be worked on with a turned straight gouge because of the strong curve.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm



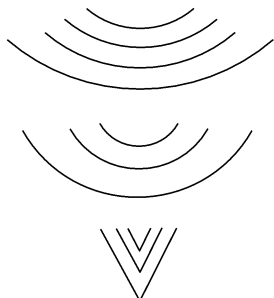
Sweep	Blade width	
25	6 mm	No. 700736
	10 mm	No. 700738
	13 mm	No. 700737



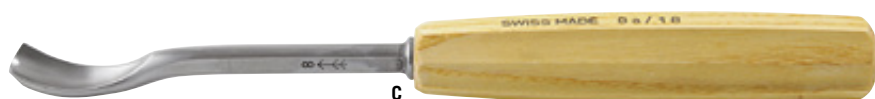
B

- B** PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGES/V-PARTING TOOLS, LONG BENT  
The long bent form is used in curved recesses to allow you to cut out of the piece from the deepest point without damaging the edges of recess.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm

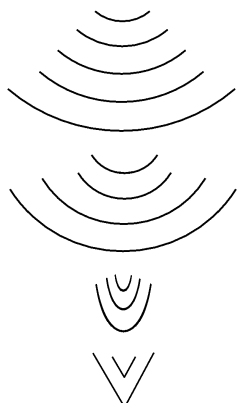


Sweep	Blade width	
7L	14 mm	No. 700710
	20 mm	No. 700884
	25 mm	No. 700885
	35 mm	No. 700711
8L	10 mm	No. 700715
	18 mm	No. 700886
	30 mm	No. 700716
12L. V 60°	3 mm	No. 700720
	6 mm	No. 701254
	10 mm	No. 700721



C

- C** PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, GOUGES/V-PARTING TOOLS, SHORT BENT  
Similar to the long bent form, these gouges are also used for deep, curved shapes. The even stronger bend of the gouge allows you to carve transitions in even deeper areas and to create small radiuses and arches.



Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm

Sweep	Blade width	
7A	6 mm	No. 700887
	10 mm	No. 701261
	14 mm	No. 700880
	18 mm	No. 701262
	25 mm	No. 700881
8A	7 mm	No. 700700
	10 mm	No. 700882
	18 mm	No. 700883
	25 mm	No. 700701
11A	2 mm	No. 700705
	4 mm	No. 700706
	7 mm	No. 700707
12A. V 60°	3 mm	No. 700725
	8 mm	No. 700726



**Video**  
on sharpening  
V-parting  
tools available  
online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Which tools are recommended for beginners?

For sculpting figures:

- Pfeil Allongee Gouge, sweep 7, blade width 50 mm (for rough material removal and large workpieces)
- DICTUM/Pfeil Carving Tools, gouge, sweep 3, blade width 32-40 mm (clean-up)
- DICTUM/Pfeil Carving Tools, gouge, sweep 8, blade width 32-40 mm (clean-up)
- DICTUM/Pfeil Carving Tools, gouge, sweep 11, blade width 15-20 mm (clean-up); smaller widths of different sweeps for detail work, depending on the workpiece.

For relief work:

- DICTUM/Pfeil Compact Carving Tools, see page 55 and 62
- Pfeil Woodcutting Tools, see page 68
- Power Grip Carving Tool Set (No. 710258)

For hollowing out troughs or bowls:

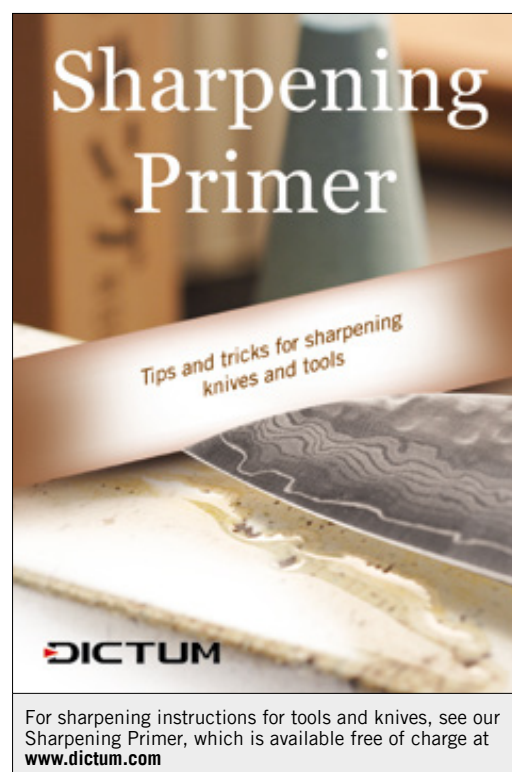
- DICTUM Trough-maker's Adze, sweep 5 (No. 706066)
- Pfeil Scorp Gouge, size 2 (No. 700702)
- DICTUM/Pfeil Carving Tool, gouge, short-bent version, see page 53 and 58

These tools are also used for our »Sculpting Figures« workshop.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

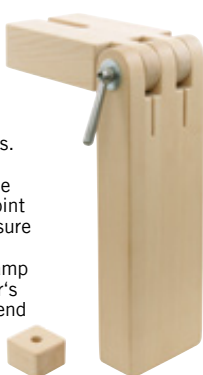


For sharpening instructions for tools and knives, see our Sharpening Primer, which is available free of charge at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**DICTUM® CARVING SUPPORT**

Rugged high-quality carving support made of steamed beech. The support is clamped into your workbench vice, thus provides safe and ergonomic working conditions for all kinds of sculpting projects. The working position can be set flexibly due to the freely movable joint, the robust double tenon joint and the solid clamping lever ensure precise locking. It comes with a spacer block, which helps to clamp smaller workpieces with a carver's screw and may be useful as an end support for the front vice. Fits carver's screw No. 705799.



► For our carving support see chapter »Workshop Accessories«.

**Care tip**

If the tools are not going to be used for a long time, you should treat the blades with thin oil. For optimum protection we recommend the Sinensis Camellia Oil No. ► 705280, page 166.

**DICTUM® SCULPTOR'S BENCH WITH CARVING SUPPORT**

Solid high-quality sculptor's workbench for professional use. The tilting bench top offers optimum fixing and working positions and high comfort even when working over long periods. A front vice and 44 holes in the bench top provide the best possible positioning for the workpiece.

► For our sculptor's bench see chapter »Workshop Accessories«.

**Tip**

For beginners in woodcarving, we recommend wearing the »ProHands« protective gloves (see page 264) for difficult working situations.

**A PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, V-PARTING TOOLS**

V-parting tools are popularly used in relief carving to delimit areas. Another important use is the cutting of even grooves.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm



Sweep	Blade width	
1 12 V 60°	3 mm	No. 700870
	4 mm	No. 701242
	6 mm	No. 700871
	8 mm	No. 701243
	10 mm	No. 700872
13 V 90°	3 mm	No. 700876
	6 mm	No. 701245
	8 mm	No. 700877
14 V 55°	6 mm	No. 700703
	8 mm	No. 700873
15 V 45°	3 mm	No. 700874
	6 mm	No. 700875
16 V 35°	3 mm	No. 700878
	6 mm	No. 700879



2 22 winged V-Parting Tool  
6 mm No. 700730  
12 mm No. 700731



3 23 Macaroni Tool  
6 mm No. 700760

**B PFEIL® CARVING TOOL, DOGLEG GOUGE**

This gouge is used to clear the ground of deep, shouldered areas to their final depth and to rework corners.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm



Sweep	Blade width	
21	6 mm	No. 700728
	12 mm	No. 700729

**C PFEIL® CARVING TOOL, DRAGON GOUGE**

This strongly bent gouge is ideal for deep recesses and for finishing corners, lettering and ornaments.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
Bevel straight

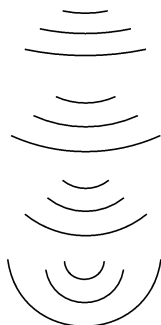
Sweep	Blade width	
21 G g	5 mm	No. 700689



### A PFEIL® CARVING TOOL, GOUGE, FISHTAIL, THIN BLADES

Thanks to their conical form, fishtail gouges are used for backcutting in relief carving and for general finishing work. Their projecting corners make it easy to cut within narrow recesses, in which the angle of the gouge can still be corrected.

Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm



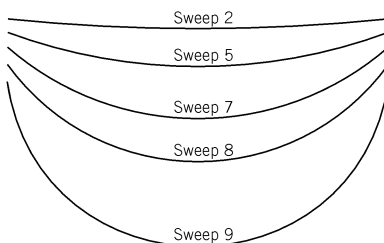
Sweep	Blade width	No.
3F	6 mm	No. 700740
	12 mm	No. 700741
	16 mm	No. 700742
5F	8 mm	No. 700745
	14 mm	No. 700746
	20 mm	No. 700747
7F	6 mm	No. 700750
	10 mm	No. 700751
	16 mm	No. 700752
9F	5 mm	No. 700755
	10 mm	No. 700756
	20 mm	No. 700757



### B PFEIL® ALLONGEE GOUGES

With its extra-hard white beech handle and heavy-duty ferrule, this gouge is designed for rough shaping with the mallet and can resist even the toughest impact.

Blade length 130-140 mm  
Overall length 290-300 mm



Sweep	Blade width	No.
2	60 mm	No. 700946
5	60 mm	No. 700947
7	50 mm	No. 701276
7	60 mm	No. 700948
8	60 mm	No. 701271
9	50 mm	No. 700949

### Pfeil® Carver's Sets with Ash Handles

The standard version of the carver's sets is supplied with characteristic oiled handles made from light ash. Delivered in a practical roll-up case made of robust »Schwingerhosen-yarn« with grey felt lining to protect the blades.



### C PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, ASH, 8-PIECE SET

Eight standard carving tools as a professional basic equipment for quality-conscious beginners. Sweep 1 (flat) / 12 mm; sweep 1 S (flat/skew) / 12 mm; sweep 4 / 20 mm; sweep 5 / 12 mm; sweep 7 / 10 mm; 9 / 4 mm; V-tool 8 mm. Overall length 250 mm. Chip carving knife form 12. Tool roll. Ash handles.

No. 700896



### D PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, ASH, 12-PIECE SET

Set of twelve Pfeil carving tools for medium-sized figures, lettering and fine ornaments, compiled by the Sculptor's School in Brienz. Sweep 1 (flat) / 8 mm; sweep 1 S (flat/skew) / 8 mm; sweep 5 / 8 mm; sweep 5 / 20 mm; sweep 7 / 6 mm; sweep 7 / 14 mm; sweep 8 / 4 mm; sweep 9 / 10 mm; sweep 11 / 3 mm; sweep 12 (V 60°) / 6 mm; sweep 8 A / 10 mm; sweep 7 L / 20 mm. Overall length 250 mm. Tool roll. Ash handles.

No. 700890

### KERBSCHNITZEN - DAS GROSSE WERKBUCH!

Dennis Moor:

From simple pattern to elaborate ornament, the reader is guided step by step through the decoration of different workpieces using the chip carving techniques and the correct carving of letters or fonts. The sharpening of tools and their use is also explained in detail. The book presents various design techniques such as the production of different borders, fonts and even the decoration of picture frames. 119 pages, paperback, numerous colour photographs and templates, 215 x 280 mm. In German.

No. 714360







**A PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, ASH, 24-PIECE SET**  
 With these 20 carving tools plus accessories you are perfectly equipped for a wide range of challenging carving projects:  
 sweep 1 (flat) / 16 mm;  
 sweep 1 S (flat/skew) / 16 mm;  
 sweep 2 / 20 mm; sweep 3 / 3 mm;  
 sweep 3 / 12 mm; sweep 3 / 25 mm;  
 sweep 5 / 35 mm; sweep 7 / 20 mm;  
 sweep 8 / 7 mm; sweep 8 / 18 mm;  
 sweep 8 / 25 mm; sweep 9 / 7 mm;  
 sweep 9 / 15 mm; sweep 11 / 10 mm;  
 sweep 11 / 2 mm; sweep 12 (V 60°) / 10 mm;  
 sweep 14 (V 55°) / 8 mm;  
 sweep 15 (V 45°) / 3 mm;  
 sweep 8 A / 18 mm;  
 sweep 7 L / 25 mm  
 Overall length 250 mm  
 Brienz chip carving knife, two Arkansas sharpening stones, grinding oil and tool roll with holding strap for mallet.  
 Ash handles.  
**No. 730027**

### Pfeil® Carver's Sets with Sycamore Handles

These carving sets with handles made of oiled sycamore heartwood made exclusively for DICTUM are not just aesthetic but also hard-wearing. The decorative sycamore wood with its slightly red colour is - due to its small annual rings and scattered pores - very hard and tough and therefore takes more blows than ash wood. This beautiful wood is also characterised by its striped pattern that is a result of the cutting face of the medullary rays. Delivered in a practical tool roll made of robust »Schwingerhosen-yarn« with grey felt lining to protect the blades.



**B PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS, SYCAMORE, 8-PIECE SET**  
 Eight standard carving tools as a professional basic equipment for quality-conscious beginners.  
 Sweep 1 (flat) / 12 mm; sweep 1 S (flat/skew) / 12 mm; sweep 4 / 20 mm;

sweep 5 / 12 mm; sweep 7 / 10 mm;  
 sweep 9 / 4 mm; V-tool 8 mm  
 Overall length 250 mm  
 Chip carving knife form 12.  
 Tool toll. Sycamore handles.  
**No. 730020**

**C PFEIL® SYCAMORE, CARVING TOOLS, 12-PIECE SET**  
 Set of twelve Pfeil carving tools for medium-sized figures, lettering and fine ornaments, compiled by the Sculptor's School in Brienz. Sweep 1 (flat) / 8 mm; sweep 1 S (flat/skew) / 8 mm; sweep 5 / 8 mm; sweep 5 / 20 mm; sweep 7 / 6 mm; sweep 7 / 14 mm;

sweep 8 / 4 mm; sweep 9 / 10 mm;  
 sweep 11 / 3 mm; sweep 12 (V 60°) / 6 mm;  
 sweep 8 A / 10 mm;  
 sweep 7 L / 20 mm.  
 Overall length 250 mm.  
 Tool roll. Sycamore handles.  
**No. 730021**

**D PFEIL® SYCAMORE, CARVING TOOLS, 24-PIECE SET**  
 With these 20 carving tools plus accessories you are perfectly equipped for a wide range of challenging carving projects:  
 sweep 1 (flat) / 16 mm;  
 sweep 1 S (flat/skew) / 16 mm;  
 sweep 2 / 20 mm; sweep 3 / 3 mm;  
 sweep 3 / 12 mm; sweep 3 / 25 mm;  
 sweep 5 / 35 mm; sweep 7 / 20 mm;  
 sweep 8 / 7 mm; sweep 8 / 18 mm;  
 sweep 8 / 25 mm; sweep 9 / 7 mm;  
 sweep 9 / 15 mm; sweep 11 / 10 mm;  
 sweep 11 / 2 mm; sweep 12 (V 60°) / 10 mm;  
 sweep 14 (V 55°) / 8 mm;  
 sweep 15 (V 45°) / 3 mm;  
 sweep 8 A / 18 mm; sweep 7 L / 25 mm  
 Overall length 250 mm  
 Brienz chip carving knife, two Arkansas sharpening stones, grinding oil and tool roll with holding strap for mallet.  
 Sycamore handles.  
**No. 730028**



► Single carving tools with sycamore handles available upon request.

Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening



**A PFEIL® CARVING TOOLS**  
**»VAL GARDENA«, 11-PIECE SET**  
 Recommended by professional sculptors:  
 This set of eleven Pfeil carving tools for  
 quick and easy preliminary cutting of  
 large figures was put together in coopera-  
 tion with experienced sculptors from the  
 State Vocational School in Gröden (South  
 Tyrol). Delivered in a practical tool roll  
 made of robust »Schwingerhosen-yarn«  
 with grey felt lining to protect the blades.  
 Sweep 1 (flat/skew) 10 mm, 20 mm and  
 30 mm; sweep 3 / 35 mm;  
 sweep 4 / 20 mm; sweep 5 / 12 mm;  
 sweep 7 / 10 mm and 35 mm;  
 sweep 11 / 5 mm and 10 mm  
 Overall length 250 mm  
 Chip carving knife form 12.  
 Tool roll. Ash handles.  
**No. 700669**



**B EMPTY TOOL ROLL**  
 Protect your tools with these tool rolls  
 made of indestructible »Schwingerhosen-  
 yarn« linen. The robust »Schwingerhose«  
 is as much admired in Switzerland as the  
 »Lederhose« (traditional Bavarian leather  
 trousers) in Germany. The inside is lined  
 with grey felt and thus protects the tools  
 from touching each other and keeps away  
 dust and shavings.  
 Pockets  
 8 **No. 730024**  
 12 **No. 730025**  
 25 **No. 730026**

### Pfeil® Compact Carving Tools

Perfect for small objects and intricate work. The shorter blades and  
 slender handles make these gouges ideal for small hands performing  
 delicate work.



**C PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOLS, CHISELS, STRAIGHT, DOUBLE BEVEL**  
 Blade length 90 mm  
 Overall length 200 mm

Sweep	Blade width	
1	8 mm	<b>No. 700670</b>
1S flat/skew	8 mm	<b>No. 700671</b>



**D PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOLS, V-PARTING TOOLS, STRAIGHT**

	Blade length 90 mm Overall length 200 mm	
	Sweep	Blade width
	12. V 60°	2 mm <b>No. 700686</b> 4 mm <b>No. 701338</b> 6 mm <b>No. 700688</b> 8 mm <b>No. 700687</b>
	15. V 45°	3 mm <b>No. 701340</b>



**E PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOLS, GOUGES, STRAIGHT**

	Blade length 90 mm Overall length 200 mm	
	Sweep	Blade width
	3	12 mm <b>No. 701328</b>
	5	3 mm <b>No. 700673</b> 8 mm <b>No. 700674</b> 12 mm <b>No. 700675</b>
	7	4 mm <b>No. 700676</b> 10 mm <b>No. 701332</b> 14 mm <b>No. 700678</b>
	8	4 mm <b>No. 701333</b> 7 mm <b>No. 700679</b> 10 mm <b>No. 700681</b>
	9	5 mm <b>No. 700682</b> 10 mm <b>No. 700683</b>
	11	1 mm <b>No. 700684</b> 2 mm <b>No. 701336</b> 3 mm <b>No. 700685</b>



**H PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOL, GOUGE, LONG BENT**

	Blade length 90 mm Overall length 200 mm	
	Sweep	Blade width
	7L	10 mm <b>No. 700677</b>



**F PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOLS, 4-PIECE SET**  
 Ideal for anyone who wishes to try their  
 hand at carving; and for young people,  
 makes a splendid gift.  
 No. 700670 / 79 / 88 and 700921.  
**No. 700690**



**G PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOLS, 6-PIECE SET**  
 Including a rack made from birch and  
 maple. No. 700670 / 71 / 74 / 79 /  
 84 / 86.  
 Blade length 90 mm  
 Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 700691**

### WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

### CHIP CARVING BASIC COURSE

AN INTRODUCTION TO  
THE ART OF CARVING

**Content:** In this workshop you will  
 learn the basics about carving.  
 By way of introduction, we will  
 learn to sharpen the tools, the  
 proper handling of the carving blades and mallet, hand-eye coordination, i.e.  
 all the basics needed for sculpting. The feeling for the wood grain and the  
 proportions will come while working with the carving blade. After practicing  
 with limewood and other woods, you are free to carve traditional patterns or  
 your own designs into any sort of wooden object (picture frames, nameplates,  
 boards, etc.).



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



A



## A PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOL, GOUGE, SHORT BENT

Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
Sweep 8A short bent  
Blade width 7 mm  
**No. 700680**



B

**B** PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOLS, 12-PIECE SET  
No. 700670 / 71 / 73 / 74 / 79 / 80 / 82 / 83 / 84 / 85 / 86 / 87.

Including a rack made from birch and maple.  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 700692**



C

**C** PFEIL® COMPACT CARVING TOOLS, 18-PIECE SET  
No. 700670 / 71 / 72 / 73 / 74 / 75 / 76 / 77 / 78 / 79 / 80 / 81 / 82 / 83 / 84 / 85 / 86 / 87.

Comes in a fine beechwood case.  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 700693**

## Japanese Carving Tools

As with many other handcraft traditions, the Japanese woodcarving craft has its origins in the ecclesiastical sphere. Even today, lavishly carved temples and precious family altars as well as the Buddha carving craft bear witness to the centuries of refinement of the sculpting art and of sculpting tools. Japanese sculpting and carving tools are characterised by double-layered blades with excellent sharpness. Their integral design and sturdy ferrules allow them to be struck with a mallet or hammer.



D



**D** SCULPTING TOOLS, 10-PIECE SET

The compact design of these carefully crafted Nomi from a master workshop in Japan makes them well-suited for delicate tasks requiring precision, such as lettering and reliefs. Blades of double-layered steel, core made of Blue Paper Steel, Japanese red oak handles.

Gouges:  
sweep 5 / 15 mm  
sweep 9 / 9 mm  
sweep 6 / 6 mm

sweep 6 cranked / 15 mm  
flat point 15 mm  
flat 12 mm  
Yarri-Kanna 12 mm  
skew chisel right, 9 mm  
V-parting tool 7.5 mm  
flat cranked 9 mm.

10 pieces in a kiri wood case.

Blade length 20-50 mm  
Overall length 205-215 mm  
**No. 714009**

**E** GOUGES

These gouges offer all the quality advantages of Japanese sculptor's gouges at a good price-performance ratio. Double-layered blades, core made from SK 5, seamlessly integrated handles and a removable heavy-duty head ferrule, which is fitted for use with a hammer. Outside bevel.

Sweep 7  
Blade length 50 mm  
Overall length 220 mm

**1** Single gouges  
Blade width

6 mm **No. 715251**  
9 mm **No. 715252**  
12 mm **No. 715253**  
15 mm **No. 715254**  
18 mm **No. 715255**  
21 mm **No. 715256**  
24 mm **No. 715257**

**2** 7-Piece Set **Price advantage**  
7-piece set in a cotton tool roll:  
No. 715251 / 52 / 53 / 54 / 55 / 56 / 57.  
**No. 715250**



1



2

Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening



## Traditional Chinese Carving Tools

These exceptional carving tools emanate from two forges on the southern Chinese city of Dongyang, a centre of the sculpting craft. With the small chisels, the durable blades are sharply tapered into a pointed tang. The larger tools have a socket-shaped throat which holds the handle and prevents splitting. The small carving blades are made of carbon steel (C 60, approx. 58 HRC). The socket tools are of forged double-layered steel (above 60 HRC). In line with Chinese tradition, the chisels are only roughly ground by the blacksmith. It is the user who makes the chisels ready-for-use by fine grinding to the required sharpness and mounting the handles.

Note: Due to the purely manual manufacturing process, the stated dimensions are subject to relatively wide fluctuations.



Note how close to the blade the chisel is held.



**A CARVING BLADES, 18-PIECE SET**  
Light-duty gouges for relief carving and detail work. The blades have pointed tangs. Mixture of forms (flat, flat/skew, curved, V). Coarse ground, no handles.

Blade width 2-32 mm  
Overall length 100-120 mm  
**No. 700970**



**B CARVING TOOLS, 12-PIECE SET**  
Light-duty gouges with pointed tangs. Chinese hardwood handles. Mixture of forms (flat, flat/skew, curved, V), in cotton tool roll.

Blade width 5-20 mm  
Blade length 80-105 mm  
Overall length 180-210 mm  
**No. 700972**



**C SCULPTING BLADES, 18-PIECE SET**  
Tools of forged double-layered steel for all-purpose carving. The blades have socket tangs. Mixture of forms (flat, flat/skew,

curved, V). Coarse ground, no handles.  
Blade width 3-40 mm  
Overall length 100-120 mm  
**No. 700971**



**D SCULPTING TOOLS, 6-PIECE SET**  
Double-layered forged gouges with socket tangs. Chinese hardwood handles. Mixture of forms (flat, curved, V), in cotton tool roll.  
Blade width 6-18 mm  
Blade length 45-60 mm  
Overall length 180-210 mm  
**No. 700973**

**E SCULPTING TOOLS, 12-PIECE SET**  
Double-layered forged gouges with socket tangs. Chinese hardwood handles. Mixture of forms (flat, flat/skew, curved, V), in cotton tool roll.  
Blade width 6-25 mm  
Blade length 45-60 mm  
Overall length 180-210 mm  
**No. 700974**



## Special Tools

### Yarri-Kanna Spear Planes

The Yarri-Kanna is one of the oldest tools for smoothing wood and is recognised as the predecessor of the plane in Japan. The freehand application of this tool allows the user to follow the wood's grain and so produce wonderfully organic and tactile surfaces. Can be used on both flat and curved workpieces. Ideal for decorative panels, reliefs or sculptures.



**F TWO-HAND YARRI-KANNA**  
For planing large wooden surfaces in carpentry and sculpting. Core made of Blue Paper Steel, handle made of Japanese red oak.  
Blade width 25 mm  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 410 mm  
**No. 710095**



**G ONE-HAND YARRI-KANNA**  
For fine sculpting work, instrument making and restoration. Core made of White Paper Steel, handle made of Japanese red oak.  
Blade width 18 mm  
Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 235 mm  
**No. 710096**

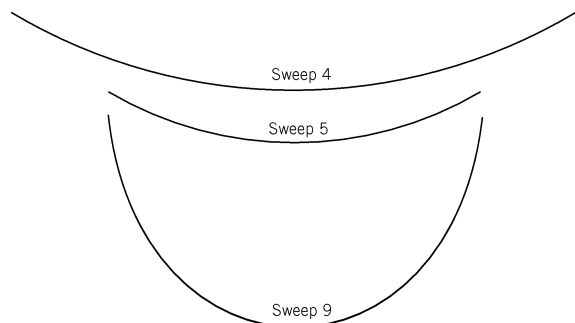




**A PFEIL® SCORP GOUGE, SIZE 1**  
The curved blade is ideal for bowls and hollow shapes. Where normal gouges can no longer be guided along the grain due to lack of space (e.g. in narrow spots), this tool makes the difference because it is drawn across the surface.  
Blade width 33 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 700935**

**B PFEIL® SCORP GOUGE, SIZE 2**  
This scorp gouge is primarily used for hollowing out large bowls and for chair seats. The hefty cherrywood handle provides a comfortable grip and the curved 3.5 mm blade can even tackle hardwood.  
Blade width 70 mm  
Overall length 235 mm  
**No. 700702**

**C JAPANESE SCORP GOUGE**  
Semi-circular, double-layered blade for hollowing out bowls, chair seats, etc. White Paper Steel, handle made of Japanese red oak. Inside bevel.  
Blade width 32 mm  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 225-245 mm  
**No. 710812**



**D CHINESE LONG-HANDLED GOUGES**  
Ideal for hollowing out drums, deep vessels and large sculptures. The blades are bevelled on the inside and slightly angled, allowing more free play for the oak handles. Made of carbon steel.  
Overall length 680 mm

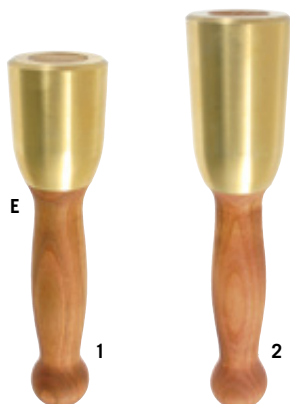
Sweep	Blade width	No.
4	73 mm	<b>No. 700978</b>
5	53 mm	<b>No. 700976</b>
5	65 mm	<b>No. 700977</b>
9	30 mm	<b>No. 701001</b>
9	40 mm	<b>No. 701002</b>
9	48 mm	<b>No. 701003</b>

## Carver's Mallets

**E PFEIL® BRASS MALLET**  
Highly functional brass mallets from the traditional company Pfeil, with cherry wood handles. Their bell-shaped heads enable the mallets to be held close to the neck in order to finely adjust the striking power. The mallets are shock absorbing and ensure a joint-gentle work.

**1 Size M**  
Head diameter 47 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
Total weight 450 g  
**No. 730018**

**2 Size L**  
Head diameter 49 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
Total weight 700 g  
**No. 730019**



### F PLASTIC MALLET

Extremely robust, impact-absorbing plastic mallets with full-length handle of untreated American maple. The high-quality plastic hammer heads are completely wear-resistant and protect the handles of your tools. The heavier mallets with the same head shape have a lead core for additional weight and momentum.

**1 Head diameter 70 mm**  
Overall length 270 mm  
Total weight  
400 g **No. 730040**  
540 g **No. 730041**

**2 Head diameter 85 mm**  
Overall length 270 mm  
Total weight  
600 g **No. 730042**  
800 g **No. 730043**



**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



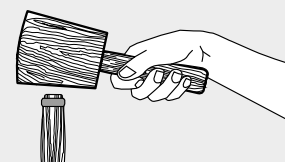
Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

### Shape of the mallet

The round shape of the mallet is essential for its use in sculpting because it allows you to control the impact in different directions. The head widens towards the top, which allows an ergonomic grip and precise blows. Since the wrist cannot be angled by 90° in the direction of the blow, the tapering of the mallet head makes up for the extra 10°-15°. This allows an ergonomic grip with maximum striking precision.



**A WHITE BEECH MALLET FROM SINGLE PIECE OF WOOD**  
Robust white beech mallet made in Germany from a single turned piece of wood.  
Head diameter 80 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
Total weight 520 g  
**No. 730048**



**B HATTORI® WHITE BEECH MALLET**  
Solid carver's mallets in traditional German design, made of white beech, one of the hardest European woods. Mortised handle.  
Overall length 270 mm

**1 Size S**  
Head diameter 70 mm  
Total weight 380 g  
**No. 730064**

**2 Size M**  
Head diameter 87 mm  
Total weight 540 g  
**No. 730065**

**3 Size L**  
Head diameter 115 mm  
Total weight 960 g  
**No. 730066**



#### Mortised handles

The most secure way of attaching a handle is with a through mortise. The head sits securely between the turned collar on the handle and the wedge at the top end.

#### DICTUM White Beech Mallet

Designed together with our master sculptor, these mallets are perfectly balanced in their proportions and weight. The head is made from a single piece of fine-grained oiled white beech. The mortised, oiled handle of smoked robinia wood provides a good grip and will resist even the hardest impacts.



**C DICTUM® WHITE BEECH MALLET, LONG**  
Head diameter 70 mm  
Overall length 295 mm  
Total weight 400 g  
**No. 730035**

**D DICTUM® WHITE BEECH MALLET, SHORT, BELL-SHAPED**  
Head diameter 85 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
Total weight 500 g  
**No. 730037**

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



## Carving Knives and Woodcutting Tools

### Central European Type



**E PFEIL® WOODWORKING KNIVES**  
Made of alloyed Swiss steel. Approx. 59-60 HRC, double bevel.  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 160 mm

Blade width  
**1 3.5 mm No. 700401**  
**2 6 mm No. 700402**  
**3 9 mm No. 700403**  
**4 12 mm No. 700404**  
**5 15 mm No. 700405**  
**6 19 mm No. 700406**



#### HERDIM® HSS KNIVES

These HSS blades are extremely hard (approx. 65 HRC), tough and resistant to wear. They are perfect for working hardwoods, veneers, synthetic materials and laminates as well as for making small plane blades. The blades are hardened along their entire length, have

double bevels and rounded edges.

Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 160 mm  
Blade width  
**1 6 mm No. 700371**  
**2 8 mm No. 700373**  
**3 15 mm No. 700375**



**G ALL-STEEL MINI CHISELS, 6-PIECE SET**  
For fine restoration work and model

making. Stainless steel hardened to approx. 50 HRC, coarse finish.  
Blade width 3.5-6.5 mm

Blade length 10 mm  
Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 700430**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

**A PFEIL® WOODWORKING KNIVES, WITH PRECIOUS WOOD HANDLE**  
Made of alloyed Swiss steel.  
Approx. 59-60 HRC, double bevel.  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 160 mm

Blade width  
3.5 mm **No. 700390**  
6 mm **No. 700391**  
9 mm **No. 700392**  
12 mm **No. 700393**  
15 mm **No. 700394**  
19 mm **No. 700395**



**B PFEIL® CHIP CARVING KNIVES**

Ground and polished, ready-to-use chip carving knives with fine oiled cherry wood handles. The form and size are perfectly aligned for freehand carving of small figures, chamfering and wickerwork.  
Overall length 155 mm

	Blade	Blade width	Blade length	
1	Form 12	11 mm	55 mm	<b>No. 700931</b>
2	Form 13	11 mm	60 mm	<b>No. 700934</b>

	Blade	Blade width	Blade length	
3	Form 14	16 mm	60 mm	<b>No. 700889</b>
4	Form 15	12 mm	50 mm	<b>No. 701282</b>
5	Form »Pfeil«	13 mm	35 mm	<b>No. 700921</b>
6	Form 1	9 mm	50 mm	<b>No. 700920</b>
7	Form 4	8 mm	35 mm	<b>No. 700923</b>
8	Form 7	13 mm	50 mm	<b>No. 700926</b>



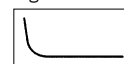
**C PFEIL® CARVING KNIVES, 4-PIECE SET**

You will not want to put these carving knives down. The ergonomic plumwood handles make for excellent control of these knives, enabling fine chamfering work as well as freehand carving of figures and small objects. The set contains four forms (knives with cambered blade and round backs, large and small, knives with straight blade, large and small). Case made of »Schwingerhosen-yarn«.  
Blade length 30-45 mm  
Overall length 160-185 mm  
**No. 700999**



**D PFEIL® CHILDREN'S CARVING TOOL, JUNIOR CARVER**

Carving is not just great fun for children, it also has educational value. The child-friendly handle of oiled beech and the short multifunction blade of proven Pfeil quality make for easy handling. L-form blade.  
Blade width 16 mm  
Blade length 55 mm  
Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 701500**



**E PFEIL® ABEGGLEN DETAIL KNIFE**

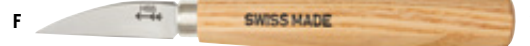
This knife has a round and a hollow ground blade, which means it can be used for deep cuts but also for cutting ornaments and letters. A hexagonal handle of oiled acacia wood provides a comfortable, non-slip grip.



*Small*  
Blade width 11 mm  
Blade length 25 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
**No. 730032**

*Medium*  
Blade width 15 mm  
Blade length 35 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
**No. 730031**

*Large*  
Blade width 15 mm  
Blade length 40 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 730033**



**F PFEIL® CARVING KNIVES, HSS**

The HSS used for the blades of this carving knife is hardened to 62 HRC and ensures a long service life and stability. The straight blade is ideal for chip carving, reliefs and ornamentation.  
Ash handle.  
Blade width 13 mm  
Overall length 165-215 mm  
Blade length  
1 50 mm **No. 730067**  
2 80 mm **No. 730068**







**A** PFEIL® SPOON KNIFE,  
RADIUS 15 MM  
Handy spoon knife with curved blade for hollowing. For very deep hollowing out of spoons and other small objects. Oiled ash handle.  
Overall length 150 mm

**1** For Right-handed Use  
Bevel left  
**No. 730050**  
**2** For Left-handed Use  
Bevel right  
**No. 730051**



**B** PFEIL® SPOON KNIFE,  
RADIUS 25 MM  
Handy spoon knife with curved blade for hollowing. For very deep hollowing out of spoons, bowls or seats. Oiled ash handle.  
Overall length 165 mm

**1** For Right-handed Use  
Bevel left  
**No. 730052**

**2** For Left-handed Use  
Bevel right  
**No. 730053**

## Pfeil® Linoleum and Woodcutting Tools

Compact woodcutting tools with narrow blades for fine cuts in wood and linoleum. Mushroom-shaped handles of untreated domestic pearwood.

### PFEIL® LINOLEUM AND WOODCUTTING TOOLS, 6-PIECE SET

**Price advantage**  
6 knives per set in cardboard box.  
Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 125 mm

Blade  
A **No. 700900**  
B **No. 700901**  
C **No. 700939**  
D **No. 700891**

### C PFEIL® LINOLEUM AND WOODCUTTING TOOLS

Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 125 mm

#### Set A contains the following knives

	Sweep	Blade width	No.
1	L 1 flat	8 mm	No. 700902
2	L 1S flat/skew	8 mm	No. 700903
3	L 1A flat/cranked	8 mm	No. 700904
4	L 5	8 mm	No. 700906
5	L 11	3 mm	No. 700911
6	L 12A. V 60°. cranked	4 mm	No. 700913

#### Set B contains the following knives

	Sweep	Blade width	No.
7	L 5	3 mm	No. 700905
8	L 7	6 mm	No. 700907
9	L 7	10 mm	No. 700908
10	L 9	5 mm	No. 700909
11	L 11	1 mm	No. 700910
12	L 12. V 60°	1 mm	No. 700912

#### Set C contains the following knives

	Sweep	Blade width	No.
13	L 8	3 mm	No. 700914
14	L 8	7 mm	No. 700916
15	L 9	2 mm	No. 700917
16	L 11	0.5 mm	No. 700918
17	L 12. V 60°	4 mm	No. 700919
18	L 15. V 45°	2 mm	No. 700936

#### Set D contains the following knives

	Sweep	Blade width	No.
19	L 1 flat	4 mm	No. 700780
20	L 1S flat/skew	4 mm	No. 700781
21	L 5	5 mm	No. 700782
22	L 7	4 mm	No. 700783
23	L 8A. cranked	7 mm	No. 700784
24	L 11	2 mm	No. 700785



**D** PFEIL® LINOLEUM AND WOODCUTTING TOOLS, 12-PIECE SET  
In a beautiful maplewood storage rack.  
Contains 1 x No. 700902-700913.

Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 125 mm  
**No. 700899**

- Blade width 0.5-10 mm
- Blade thickness 5-6 mm

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

#### SET A



#### SET B



#### SET C



#### SET D



## Pfeil® Woodcutting Tools

Their robust design makes these woodcutting tools ideal for wood carvings such as ornaments and reliefs as well as chip carving. Mushroom-shaped handles of untreated domestic pearwood.

- Blade width 6-14 mm
- Blade thickness 7-8 mm

### A PFEIL® WOODCUTTING TOOLS

Blade length 80 mm		
Overall length 140 mm		
Sweep	Blade width	
1 B 1 flat	12 mm	No. 700790
2 B 1S flat/skew	12 mm	No. 700791
3 B 3	12 mm	No. 700792
4 B 5	12 mm	No. 700793
5 B 8A	10 mm	No. 700794
6 B 9	10 mm	No. 700795
7 B 12. V 60°	8 mm	No. 700796
8 B 7	14 mm	No. 700797

### B PFEIL® WOODCUTTING TOOLS

SET A, 8-PIECE SET  
Comes in a beautiful maplewood storage rack. Contains 1 x No. 700790-700797.

Blade length 80 mm  
Overall length 140 mm  
No. 700915



## Northern European Type

## DICTUM

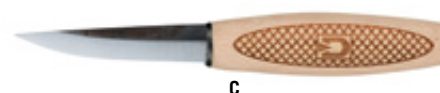
### Carving and Paring Knives

DICTUM carving and paring knives offer sharpness, a long edge life and have an excellent feel. The ready-to-use ground blades of Finnish carbon steel 80CrV2 contain a small amount of chromium and vanadium components (carbide forming) and thus afford an excellent service life as well as a fine-grained steel structure. The forging skin on the blades has been retained because it protects against corrosion. Beech wood handles manufactured in Germany with a diamond-pattern grooved surface ensure a perfect grip and make the knife safe to use.



- Universal Scandinavian bevel without micro bevel s.p. XX

- Diamond-pattern grooved surface ensures a secure grip
- Forging skin protects from corrosion



C



**C** DICTUM® CARVING KNIFE, SHAPE BS/L  
The long and slim blade makes this knife perfect for use as a carving and camping knife.

Blade length 84 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
No. 701701  
Leather sheath No. 715185



D



**D** DICTUM® CARVING KNIFE, SHAPE B/L  
Classic carving knife with curved blade.

Blade length 78 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
No. 701703  
Leather sheath No. 715185




E




**E** DICTUM® CARVING KNIFE, SHAPE BS/K  
General-purpose wood carving knife. Also suitable for use in schools thanks to its short blade.

Blade length 65 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
No. 701700  
Leather sheath No. 715185



**A**




**A** DICTUM® CARVING KNIFE, SHAPE G/K  
The straight blade makes this knife perfect for creating chamfers, ornaments and reliefs.

Blade length 63 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
**No. 701702**  
Leather sheath **No. 715185**




**B**

**B** LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTUM® CARVING KNIVES  
Leather sheath made of vegetable-tanned cowhide with integrated belt loop. Fits DICTUM carving knives No. 701700, 701701, 701702 and 701703.  
**No. 715185**



**C**



**C** DICTUM® HOOK KNIFE, SHAPE AB 25  
Long, wide curved blade. Blade length 65 mm  
Overall length 180 mm

Bevel double bevel  
Curvature radius 25 mm  
**No. 701695**  
Leather sheath **No. 715140**



**D**



**D** DICTUM® HOOK KNIFE, SHAPE AB 14  
Short, narrow curved blade. Blade length 50 mm

Overall length 160 mm  
Bevel double bevel  
Curvature radius 14 mm  
**No. 701696**  
Leather sheath **No. 715140**



**E**



**E** DICTUM® HOOK KNIFE, SHAPE AL 12  
Short, narrow curved blade. Single bevel for right-handed use. Blade length 50 mm

Overall length 160 mm  
Bevel left  
Curvature radius 12 mm  
**No. 701697**  
Leather sheath **No. 715140**



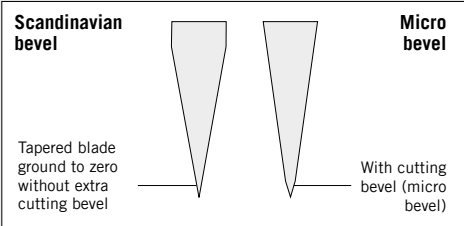
**F**

**F** LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTUM® HOOK KNIFE  
Leather sheath made of fine-quality leather. Fits DICTUM hook knives No. 701695, 701696 and 701697.  
**No. 715140**

### Bevel types for carving knives

With the **Scandinavian bevel** type, the complete bevel width is sharpened, whereas with the **micro bevel** type, the main bevel is given a second bevel.

The Scandinavian bevel has the advantage that the wide bevel can be used as a guide during carving. Many carvers therefore prefer to use this type of bevel. Sharpening a complete bevel is somewhat more demanding. A micro bevel makes it easier to emerge from a cut, but it is more difficult to keep contact with the wood.



The thinner the blade, the more flexible it is. A strong blade can easily handle even large amounts of material removal.

The ideal cutting angle lies **between 20° and 27°**, depending on whether you are working with soft or hard wood. The sharper the angle, the better the knife cuts. The blunter the angle, the longer the edge life, e.g. in hard wood.

Even with a micro bevel, the DICTUM® carving blades still lie within the optimum cutting angle range.


	Cutting angle	Blade thickness	Bevel	
DICTUM® Carving Knives	21°	3 mm	Scandinavian bevel	Page 69
Morakniv® Carving Knives	27°	3 mm	Scandinavian bevel	Page 70
Japanese Carving Knives	30°	1.5 mm	Micro bevel	Page 71
Pfeil® Carving Knives HSS	38°	2.7-3.6 mm	Micro bevel	Page 67




### Mora® Knives

Cutting tools have been forged in the Swedish town of Mora for over 400 years. The Mora Knife, developed by Erich Frost over 100 years ago, is synonymous with functionality and reliability. The blades are made of either carbon steel 1095 or rustproof steel 12C27. The used carbon steel (58-60 HRC) is characterised by its outstanding sharpness, ease of sharpening and long edge life. Some carbon steel blades are offered as a mono steel version (C), others as a triple-coated laminated version (L) that has a more flexible blade. The rustproof blade steel (56-58 HRC) (S) has a slightly longer edge life than the carbon steel. The oiled birch handles are firmly attached to the full-length tang.







**G**




**H**




**I**



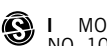
**J**




**G** MORAKNIV® CARVING KNIFE NO. 120 (L)  
Ideal for use in woodworking classes: Allround woodworking knife; also suitable for use in schools due to the compact blade. Plastic sheath included. Blade length 59 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
**No. 701560**



**H** MORAKNIV® CARVING KNIFE NO. 122 (L)  
Straight cutting edge, particularly well suited for chip-carving, reliefs and ornamentation. Plastic sheath included. Blade length 58 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 701565**



**I** MORAKNIV® CARVING KNIFE NO. 106 (L)  
Carving and outdoor knife in the classic, slim Mora design. Plastic sheath included. Blade length 79 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
**No. 701567**

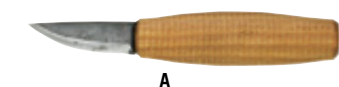


**J** MORAKNIV® CHILDREN'S CARVING KNIFE NO. 73 (C)  
Besides creativity, carving also requires a sense of shape forming and already in childhood makes the educationally important reference head-hand-material. Give your children access to the creative activity of woodworking with this carving knife, which is specially designed for a child's hand. Carbon steel, birch handle with hand guard. Plastic sheath included. Blade length 73 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
**No. 701564**



## Svante Djärv

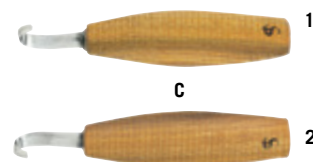
Svante Djärv's carving tools are hand-forged from Uddeholm steel (60 HRC). The textured, Nordic-ash handles fit comfortably in the hand.



**A SVANTE DJÄRV CARVING KNIFE**  
Universal carving knife, ash handle with rifled surface.  
Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
**No. 701570**



**B SVANTE DJÄRV CHILDREN'S CARVING KNIFE**  
The handle is designed for small hands, with integrated hand guard. Short, strong blade.  
Blade length 50 mm  
Overall length 145 mm  
**No. 701574**



**C SVANTE DJÄRV SKEDKNIV HOOK KNIVES**  
With a curved blade for hollow forms.

**1 Right-handed Use**  
Blade length 40 mm  
Overall length 145 mm  
Bevel left  
Curvature radius 10 mm  
**No. 701571**

**2 Left-handed Use**  
Blade length 40 mm  
Overall length 145 mm  
Bevel right  
Curvature radius 10 mm  
**No. 701573**

## Japanese Type

**D CARVING KNIVES**  
Exclusive carving knives with ergonomic cambered handles made of untreated Japanese white oak for perfect cutting control.  
Rustproof A2 steel (approx. 62 HRC).  
Blade length 50-65 mm  
Overall length 180-195 mm  
Double bevel  
Blade shape

- 1 A **No. 710755**
- 2 B **No. 710756**
- 3 C **No. 710757**
- 4 D **No. 710758**
- 5 E **No. 710759**
- 6 G **No. 710763**
- 7 H **No. 710764**
- 8 J **No. 710766**



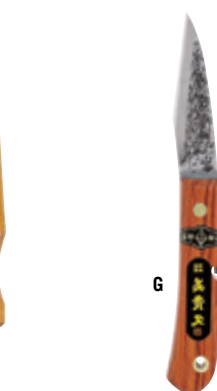
**E CARVING KNIVES, 5-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
5-piece set in case (A, B, C, D, E).  
Blade length 50-65 mm  
Overall length 180-195 mm  
Bevel double bevel  
**No. 710760**



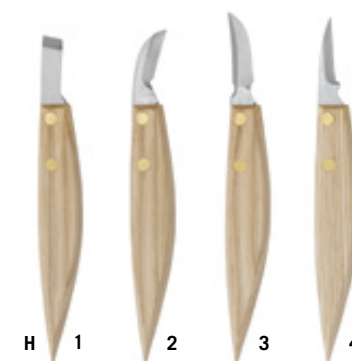
**F POWER GRIP CARVING TOOLS**  
Fine tools with a core layer of Blue Paper Steel for carving masks, reliefs, woodblocks and linoleum. The cutting edges are hardened to 63 HRC and come sharpened and ready to use.  
Blade length 32 mm  
Overall length 146 mm

**7-Piece Set**  
7-piece set in a gift box:  
gouge sweep 9 / 3 mm; sweep 9 / 7 mm;  
sweep 6 / 9 mm; sweep 3 / 9 mm; V-tool  
6.5 mm; straight chisel, 7.5 mm; skew  
chisel 7.5 mm.  
**No. 710258**

**5-Piece Set**  
5-piece set in a plastic box:  
gouge sweep 9 / 3 mm; sweep 9 / 7 mm;  
V-tool 6.5 mm; straight chisel, 7.5 mm;  
skew chisel 7.5 mm.  
**No. 710259**



**G CARVING AND OUTDOOR KNIFE**  
Foldable with locking blade. Handle of precious wood. Cutting edge made of Blue Paper Steel.  
Blade width 25 mm  
Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
**No. 710705**



**H JAPANESE CHIP CARVING KNIVES**  
Very sharp and wear-resistant multi-layered blades. Core made of Blue Paper Steel. Handle of ash wood. Forms A and B bevelled on one side, C and D bevelled on both sides.  
Blade length 30 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
Blade shape

- 1 A **No. 710715**
- 2 B **No. 710716**
- 3 C **No. 710717**
- 4 D **No. 710718**

*Japanese Chip Carving Knives, 4-Piece Set* *Price advantage*  
4-piece set in canvas case (A, B, C, D).  
Blade length 30 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 710719**

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.

**Two free sharpenings**



**A CARVING TOOLS, 9-PIECE SET**  
The most important tools for carving small objects and reliefs in a functional tool roll. Solid carbon steel blades, approx. 62 HRC, sharpened and ready to use. Fitted with teak handle scales. Single bevel. 9-piece

set: knife 9 mm; Kiridashi 12 mm and 21 mm; sweep 6 / 5 mm and 12 mm; flat 10 mm; V 8 mm; saw 75 mm, TS 1.5 mm; files rough and fine, 52 mm. Overall length 150-190 mm  
**No. 710742**



**B CARVING KNIVES, 5-PIECE SET**  
Light as a feather and razor-sharp, traditional Japanese tools for woodcuts, masks and reliefs. Thin, double-layered blades, White Paper Steel (63 HRC), sharpened ready-to-use. Magnolia wood handles. Blade thickness approx. 2 mm. Straight chisel 6 mm; skew chisel 9 mm; gouge sweep 8 / 4.5 mm; gouge sweep 9 / 9 mm; V-tool 4.5 mm. 5-piece set, comes in kiri wood box. Blade thickness 2 mm. Blade length 25-30 mm. Overall length 200-210 mm  
**No. 710753**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings

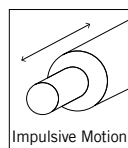


**C CARVING KNIFE WITH CORD HANDLE**  
Similar to the handles of Samurai swords, the handle of this Japanese carving knife is bound with silk cord. Slip-proof in the hand, it can be precisely guided, even with increased application of force. Triple-layered blade, core layer of Blue Paper Steel, hand guard, double bevel. Blade length 55 mm. Overall length 160 mm. Blade  
1 curved  
**No. 710747**  
2 straight  
**No. 710749**

## Electric Carving Tools

### Foredom®

Founded in 1922 in Connecticut (USA), Foredom is the leading manufacturer of flexible shafts and hang-up motors. The company also offers a wide range of special motors, handpieces and accessories of high quality and performance. Foredom tools are suitable for many applications, from making jewellery to woodworking through to dental laboratories.



► For surface texturing and pyrography tools see chapter »Surface Design«, page 268 onwards.

### D FOREDOM® CARVER WITH SHAFT AND HANDPIECE

For fine and medium stock removal: Low-speed hang-up motor with high torque for woodcarving. The powerful, ultra-flexible, 90 cm long shaft allows a large range of movement and access to tight spaces. The manual switch allows you to set the infinitely adjustable speed (up to max. 5000 rpm) and the speed of the hammer action of the carving bits. Comes with carver's handpiece (not suitable for Dremel function), 17 different carving bits and flexible shaft grease.

#### Content:

- Hang-up motor LX Series with a 90 cm-long flexible shaft
- Manual switch with infinitely variable speed regulation
- Carver's handpiece H.50 (not suitable for Dremel function)
- 17 different carving bits
- Machine lubricant for flexible shaft



Motor power 75 W, 230 V.  
3.5 kg  
**No. 711136**

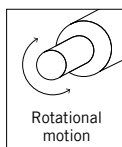
Comes with German and English instructions.



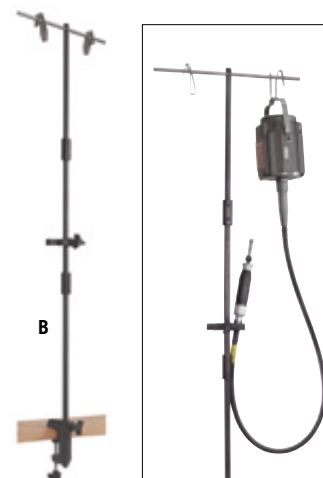


**A FOREDOM® GENERAL PURPOSE HANDPIECE H.30®**  
Three-jaw chuck for milling, drilling or sanding work on the flex shaft. The jaws open up to 4 mm and close without a gap. Comes with chuck key. Suitable for

Foredom Flex Shaft Carver No. 711136 and 711157.  
Overall length 130 mm  
160 g  
**No. 711140**



**B MOTOR HANGER FOR FOREDOM® CARVER**  
Designed for up to two hang-up motors, solid steel support rod with height-adjustable handpiece rest and mounting clamp for attachment to the benchtop (max. 55 mm thick). Two supplied safety clips keep the motors from moving. 3-piece design, max. height 98 cm. 1.3 kg  
**No. 711139**



Foredom® Carver not included!

## Arbortech™

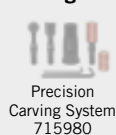
Arbortech was founded in Nannup, Western Australia. In 1988, the company launched the Woodcarver blade with great success. Today Arbortech's powerful products offer interesting and efficient solutions for woodworking.



### Arbortech™ Power Carving Unit



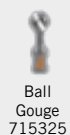
728870



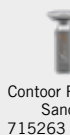
Precision Carving System  
715980  
Sanding Pad 100 mm (included in delivery)



Mini Turbo  
715284  
Turboplane 715247



Ball Gouge  
715325  
Industrial Pro, Set 715232



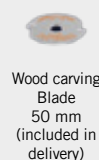
Contour Random Sander  
715263 (online)  
Turbo Shaft 715262 (online)



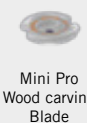
### Arbortech™ Mini Carver



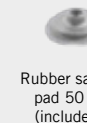
715264



Wood carving Blade 50 mm (included in delivery)



Mini Pro Wood carving Blade 728983



Rubber sanding pad 50 mm (included in delivery)



For more accessories see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**C ARBORTECH™ POWER CARVING UNIT**  
Power Carving redefined - milling, planing and grinding with one machine: This angle grinder guarantees optimum performance and is the ideal drive for all Arbortech tools. Unique and innovative accessories such as the **Chip Catcher** significantly reduce dust and chips during freehand forming and grinding. The newly developed and height-adjustable **Levelling Guide** enables precise levelling with the Turbo Plane (not included) and the **Sanding Pad**. The combination of these tools results in flat and smooth surfaces. The fan under the TurboPlane together with the **Chip Tube** suction hose allow the chips to be discharged directly into a container or onto the floor without any suction device. Motor power 710 Watt, 0-11 000 rpm. Spindle thread M 14.



C

► Matching sanding discs available on page 74

Content:

- Angle grinder
- Levelling guide
- Chip catcher
- Chip tube
- Fan attachment

- Velcro grinding pad
- 3 Velcro grinding discs of each grit 60, 120, 180, 240
- Metal protective cover
- Transport bag



**Video** Application video on the Arbortech™ Power Carving Unit available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Comes with German and English instructions.

Sanding Size Ø 100 mm  
Rated Input 710 W  
Motor 230 V / 50 Hz  
Hose connection Ø 28 mm  
3.5 kg  
**No. 728870**



**D ARBORTECH™ PRECISION CARVING SYSTEM**  
This 4-piece precision carving set allows more intricate power carving. It includes a universal adapter that, when mounted on the Power Carving Unit (No. 728870) or a high-quality M14 angle grinder, acts as base allowing users to interchange the precision carving and sanding bits. These bits make it possible to carve smaller radii, intricate details and fine textures in wood.

• Precision Ball Gouge  
Based on the popular Ball Gouge (No. 715325), this small version allows users to shape smaller radii and get into even tighter spaces.

- Precision Barrel Carver  
The barrel carver's cutting action enables controlled carving in tight spaces. Can be also used to bore down into wood.
- Precision Drum Sander  
Ideal for grinding and polishing after carving with the barrel carver.
- Universal Base  
This base will allow users to easily interchange the precision bits. Its slim design provides the precision bits with additional reach.

Ball Gouge bit Ø 15 mm. Grinding and milling bits Ø 16 mm.

Content:

- Precision Ball Gouge
- Precision Barrel Carver
- Precision Drum Sander
- Universal Base
- Spiral Sanders, grit 60 and 120
- 2 x Allen Keys

**No. 715980**



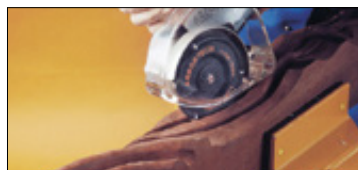




**A ARBORTECH™ TURBOPLANE™**  
Universal wood-shaping blade with three teeth for individual woodworking. For creating large even surfaces that require minimal sanding and for free-formed convex and concave shapes. Excellent control and balance in free-hand sculpting, planing and edging. Tungsten carbide teeth for a long edge life. Easy to sharpen with diamond files (e.g. No. 706282). For angle grinders with disc diameters of 100 / 115 mm. **Comes with German and English instructions.**  
Centre hole 22 mm  
Disc diameter 100 mm  
Max. speed 12 000 rpm  
Number of cutters 3  
**No. 715247**



**B ARBORTECH™ INDUSTRIAL PRO, SET**  
The choice of professionals:  
Blade with three replaceable tungsten carbide teeth and guard for 100 / 115 mm angle grinders. Adjustable guard can be used as a depth gauge or guide for straight cutting.  
**Comes with German and English instructions.**  
Centre hole 22 mm  
Disc diameter 100 mm  
Max. speed 15 000 rpm  
Number of cutters 3  
**No. 715232**  
Replacement Grinding Blade  
**No. 715233**



Angle grinder not included!



**C ARBORTECH™ BALL GOUGE**  
Wooden surface structures that look as if they have been cut by hand:  
This extraordinary »router bit« has excellent controllability, high performance and versatile application in free-hand woodworking. The ball-shaped shaft end is equipped with a 30 mm HSS cutter. The special cutter configuration produces a chiselling instead of a milling turning movement. This makes it possible to create surface structures that look as if they have been cut by hand. With the Ball Gouge that works like a gouge, you can work on smaller bowls and wooden



▶ Arbortech™ Turbo Shaft available online.



www.dictum.com

spoons, as well as small to medium-sized sculptures. Thanks to the chip-thickness limit of the ball-shaped shaft, it is very easy to control the material removal. The ring-shaped cutter sharpens itself during use, which significantly makes the edge and service life longer and it can be rotated if necessary.

Shaft length 90 mm  
Head diameter 30 mm

Fits Power Carving Unit (No. 728870) or every standard 100 to 125 mm angle grinder with M14 screw thread.

Content:  
Ball Gouge with tungsten carbide cutters and hex key.

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

Number of cutters 1  
**No. 715325**



**D ARBORTECH™ VELCRO GRINDING DISCS Ø 100 MM**  
Velcro grinding discs. Suitable for Arbortech Power Carving Unit (No. 728870) and other sanding discs with Ø 100 mm.  
**8-Piece Set**  
Grit  
60 **No. 728874**  
120 **No. 728875**  
180 **No. 728876**  
240 **No. 728877**



**12-Piece Set Price advantage**  
3 of each grit 60, 120, 180, 240.  
**No. 728873**

E



**E SANDERS FOR ARBORTECH™ M5 MINI-CARVER**  
Fit Arbortech Mini Turbo No. 715284, Mini Carver No. 715264 and Contour Random Sanders No. 715263. To be used with Rubber Grinding Pads No. 715285 and Mounting Flange No. 715286.

**Set Price advantage**  
21-piece set. 3 each of 40, 60, 80 120, 180, 240 and 320 grits.  
**No. 715400**

**20-piece set**

Grit  
40 **No. 715391**  
60 **No. 715392**  
80 **No. 715393**  
120 **No. 715394**  
180 **No. 715395**  
240 **No. 715396**  
320 **No. 715397**



**F ARBORTECH™ MINI TURBO™, M5 VERSION**  
A real revolution in wood sculpting: The milling disc can be used either directly on the Arbortech Mini-Carver or with a standard angle grinder with 14 mm spindle (100 mm and 115 mm disc diameter), fitted via the supplied extension shaft. The milling disc allows a smooth and controlled cutting, while the limited side exposure ensures optimum safety for the user. It is ideal for freehand carving and allows a high degree of accuracy when using guides and templates. The Mini Turbo is designed for fast, efficient stock removal and deep internal profiles, and leaves a smooth finish which requires minimal sanding. Perfect wood-shaping blade for small and medium-sized sculpting projects.  
Maximum cutting depth 65 mm.

In the new M5 version, the thread in the shaft extension has been changed from an M4 thread to an M5 thread. This makes the assembling easier.  
Note: The grinding wheels of the M4 version can no longer be used for the M5 version.

Includes:  
Ø 50 mm blade for max. 18 000 rpm with tungsten carbide teeth for a long edge life, extension shaft, 3 x 5 assorted sanding discs with different grits, a soft rubber grinding pad and assembly kit.

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

Disc diameter 50 mm  
**No. 715284**  
Repl. Pad **No. 715285**



F



Angle grinder/Mini-Carver not included!





### A ARBORTECH™ MINI CARVER FG.600.60 WITH VARIABLE SPEED, COMPLETE SET

The Mini-Carver is one of the most versatile power tools for woodworking. This easy-to-use device offers a full range of possibilities, from shaping to detail work. Its shape always ensures good visibility of the workpiece. Suitable for medium to fine material removal on detailed carving work, busts, wood sculptures, totem poles, turned objects and soft stone. The speed regulation enables safer and more comfortable operation. It also means this tool can be used for sanding work. A dust extraction attachment minimises the cleaning required. The vibration-reducing handle increases comfort and control. The router bit is equipped with tungsten carbide cutting edges, giving the tool an extra-long life. Sealed bearings for a long engine life and a V-belt drive for increased safety and minimal kickback. The extended head makes it possible to reach narrow or hard-to-reach areas. Motor power 710 W.



► For matching sanding discs see page 74.

#### Contents:

- Tungsten carbide wood carving blade Ø 50 mm
- Rubber sanding pad
- Sanding discs 3 x 5 pieces (grit 80, 180, 320)
- Dust extraction attachment
- Tool bag

Comes with German and English instructions.

1.5 kg  
**No. 715264**  
 Replacement Grinding Pad  
**No. 715285**  
 Replacement Grinding Blade  
**No. 715240**



### B ARBORTECH™ MINI PRO WOODCARVING BLADE

The MiniPro, with a 50 mm diameter blade, is the ideal power carving tool specifically designed to fit the Mini Carver. Compared to the MiniTurbo, the Pro blade has tungsten carbide teeth all around the circumference. For this

reason, the MiniPro cuts smoothly in any direction. Especially when side-to-side cutting, it enables finest work results. Both the rotatable and exchangeable, hollow ground tungsten carbide teeth ensure an excellent carving feel and a long service life. Ideal for freehand shaping. Disc diameter 50 mm



Number of cutters 2  
**No. 728983**

Mini Carver not included!



► For Auriou rasp blades (page 76) and adapter (No. 728825) to be used with Kutzall® dish wheels and cup rasps on ArborTech Mini-Carver see page 273 onwards.

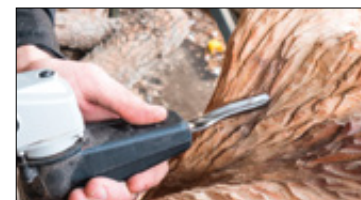


► For adapters (No. 728826 and 728838) to be used with Kutzall® rasp cutters (page 272) on ArborTech™ Mini-Carver see page 77.



### C ARBORTECH™ POWER CHISEL SET

The ultimate woodworker's sidekick: Simply guide the chisel in any direction you want and let the motor do the work. The Power Chisel is so safe and easy to handle that it is suitable for anyone to use, from beginners to professional woodworkers. For free-hand power chiselling and detailed and intricate work such as letters, drawing lines, accentuation etc. The sealed bearings ensure a long motor life, and a click system allows you to change chisels quickly and easily. The slim motor offers a good grip and ensures fatigue-free working. For reasons of safety, the cutting head only moves when pressed onto the wood surface. Comes with 7 chisels (20 mm straight chisel, gouge sweep 7 / 20 mm, 7 / 8 mm,



7 / 11 mm, 20 / 9 mm, V-parting tool 60° / 8 mm and 90° / 18 mm), chisel case and 15 ml oil bottle. Blades made of SK 5. Motor power 710 W.

Comes with German and English instructions.

**No. 728903**

## King Arthur's Tools®

King Arthur's Tools is a small, family-owned business in North Florida that sells products in over 55 countries worldwide. The business is a multi-award winning firm, including recognition for business ethics and innovation. The products are patented and have distinct safety and performance features.



### D KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® GALAHAD CG® DISC

Versatile tungsten carbide disc for hobbyists. For shaping wood parts, cutting bevels, curves or hollowing. Also ideal for trueing and smoothing uneven surfaces. The rasp discs feature patented durable and sharp tungsten carbide grits that move effortlessly through the material,

with or against the grain. Fits 115 mm and 125 mm angle grinders, max. 13 000 rpm.

Comes with German and English instructions.

Centre hole 22 mm  
 Disc diameter 110 mm



Flat Profile  
**No. 715347**



Round Profile  
**No. 715346**





A

**A KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® HOLEY GALAHAD® CARBIDE DISC**  
The patented see-through hard metal disc: Holes in the disc allow you to see the workpiece surface behind the disc while you are working, making work easier and allowing constant control of the surface quality and shape of the workpiece. From bowls to sculptures to log cabins and furniture making, anytime you need a final, smooth shape, whether flat or contoured, Holey Galahad is a great choice. The rasp discs feature patented durable tungsten carbide teeth that move effortlessly through the material, with or against the grain. Made in USA. Fits 115 mm and 125 mm angle grinders with max. 14 000 rpm. All steel discs are 100 mm in diameter and feature tungsten carbide teeth over the entire cutting surface.

**Benefits:**

- Ability to »see through« to the surface being finished
- Durable tungsten carbide teeth
- Round and flat profiles (suited to contoured, concave and flat surfaces)

Holey Galahad discs are also quite effective on fiberglass, plastic, solid rubber, foam core, polyurethane, silicone, soapstone and composite materials.

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

Centre hole 22 mm  
Disc diameter 100 mm  
Max. speed 14 000 rpm

<b>fine</b> (green)	120 teeth per cm <sup>2</sup>
<b>medium</b> (red)	25 teeth per cm <sup>2</sup>
<b>coarse</b> (blue)	15 teeth per cm <sup>2</sup>



**Flat**

grit  
fine **No. 715344**  
medium **No. 715343**  
coarse **No. 715341**



**Round**

grit  
fine **No. 715345**  
medium **No. 715342**  
coarse **No. 715340**



Angle grinder not included!



B

**B HEX WRENCH FOR KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® UNIVERSAL NUT**  
Fits Universal Nut M14 (No. 715339).  
**No. 715338**



C

**C KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® UNIVERSAL NUT M14**  
The universal nut from King Arthur's Tools was specially developed to securely clamp Galahad CG and Holey Galahad rasp discs. For 21 mm wrench. Fits angle grinders with 14 mm spindle.  
**No. 715339**

**D AURIOL RASP BLADES, HAND-CUT**  
Machine-supported rasping allows fast and effective removal of material, creating fine surfaces when working along or across the grain as well as on end grain. Whether concave or convex shapes, edges, profiles or chair seats, the hand-cut teeth of the rasp blade ensure fine and tear-free shaping of the wood.

**1 Ø 50 mm**  
Fits e.g. Arbortech Mini-Carver  
No. 715264. Max. speed 12 000 rpm  
Ø bore 10 mm  
**No. 704544**



**2 Ø 125 mm**  
For angle grinders with 125 mm disc diameter. Max. speed 10 000 rpm  
Ø bore 22 mm  
**No. 704543**



E

**E KIRJES® ORBICUT**  
For use in flexible drives, power drills and cordless screwdrivers. Designed for fast and efficient stock removal, the two replaceable HSS cutters produce extremely smooth surfaces that require minimal sanding. The ball allows smooth and controlled cuts, while the cutter projection of just 0.1 mm ensures optimum safety for the user. A perfect cutting tool for small and medium-sized hollowing projects.

*Kirjes® OrbiCut 20*  
Works quickly and efficiently even at low speed. Ball cutter Ø 20 mm for max. 5000 rpm.  
Shaft diameter 6 mm  
**No. 707546**  
Replacement Cutters  
**No. 707548**

► *The OrbiCut 20 can also be used with the Kirjes® Sanding System, see chapter »Surface Design«.*

*Kirjes® OrbiCut 40*  
Works quickly and efficiently even at low speed. Ball cutter Ø 40 mm for max. 3600 rpm.  
Shaft Ø 11 mm  
**No. 707547**  
Replacement Cutters  
**No. 707549**



Power drill not included!

**Kutzall®**



For over 50 years, Kutzall has been manufacturing quality products based on a simple principle: your tools should help you work better. This is why every Kutzall tool is coated by hand with robust tungsten carbide of the highest quality. The high precision enables fast and uniform material removal, minimal clogging, short cleaning times and a long service life. Made in USA.



Flexible shaft drill not included!



F

**F KUTZALL® TUNGSTEN CARBIDE TIPPED CUP RASP**  
**Possible adapters and drive options:**  
• Clamping mandrel No. 727883 for drilling machines, straight grinders, flexible shafts

- Adapter No. 728823 for angle grinders with M14 spindle thread
- Adapter No. 728824 for Merlin2 long neck angle grinder
- Adapter No. 728825 for Arbortech Mini-Carver

Centre hole 9.5 mm (3/8 inch)

*Original, Ø 45 mm*  
fine **No. 727863**  
medium **No. 727864**

*Original, Ø 50 mm*  
fine **No. 727865**  
medium **No. 727866**

*Original, Ø 65 mm*  
fine **No. 727867**  
medium **No. 727868**  
coarse **No. 727869**

*Original, Ø 75 mm*  
fine **No. 727870**  
medium **No. 727871**  
coarse **No. 727872**

*Original, Ø 90 mm*  
fine **No. 727873**  
medium **No. 727874**  
coarse **No. 727875**

► *For more Kutzall® products see chapter »Surface Design« or check our webshop.*



**A RUBBER INLAYS FOR KUTZALL® CUP RASP**

The insert fits perfectly into the hollow profiles of the cup rasps. This ensures that the pots are aligned exactly with the shank of the adapter or of the machine. The additional momentum increases the stability and chatter-free cutting of the cup rasps. This also prevents any

deformation of the pots, e.g. through rough handling.

Centre hole 9.5 mm (3/8 inch)

Cup Rasp Ø

45 mm **No. 727878**

50 mm **No. 727879**

64 mm **No. 727880**

75 mm **No. 727881**

89 mm **No. 727882**

A

**B ADAPTER FOR KUTZALL®****CUP RASP ON ANGLE GRINDER M14**

Fits all Kutzall cup rasps (with and without rubber insert) on angle grinders with M14 spindle thread. Made of stainless steel.

**No. 728823**

**C ADAPTER FOR KUTZALL®****CUP RASP ON MERLIN2**

Fits Kutzall cup rasps with Ø 45 mm (No. 727863, 727864) on Merlin2 long-neck angle grinder (No. 715407, 715408). Made of stainless steel.

**No. 728824**



B

C

D

E

**D ADAPTER FOR KUTZALL® CUP****RASP ON ARBORTECH MINI-CARVER**

Fits Kutzall cup rasp Ø 45-50 mm (No. 727863-727866) on Arbortech Mini-Carver FG.600.60 with M5 thread (No. 715264). Made of stainless steel.

**No. 728825**

**E ADAPTER FOR KUTZALL® RASP****CUTTER ON ARBORTECH MINI-CARVER**

This special adapter with collet nut for ER11 collet chucks enables the use of shank tools (e.g. rasping cutters, burrs) on the Arbortech Mini-Carver FG.600.60 with M5 thread (No. 715264). This allows the finest details to be worked with

rasp cutters without changing the drive machine, which extends the range of application of the Arbortech Mini-Carver many times over. Made of stainless steel.

Clamping Diameter

3.2 mm **No. 728838**

6.3 mm **No. 728826**



1

2

**F KUTZALL® DISH WHEEL, TUNGSTEN CARBIDE TIPPED**

Kutzall dish wheels are ideal for freehand work on larger sculpting projects. In combination with a high-quality Ø 125 mm angle grinder, the rasp disc opens up new possibilities for rough and detailed work. The **round Kutzall profile** is the perfect tool for concave shapes such as chair seats and large bowls. The **flat Kutzall profile** is ideal for levelling uneven surfaces and convex shapes. Recommended speed range 5000-15 000 rpm.

**Advantages:**

- The closed disc surface offers up to 31 % (round profile) or 37 % (flat profile) more TC tips than comparable perforated discs; this results in a better surface quality, higher durability and a longer service life

- Coated with durable TC tips available in various designs and grit sizes; the perfect disc for every material and surface quality

- Available as round and flat profile (suitable for curved, concave or flat surfaces)

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

Centre hole 22.2 mm

**1 Original, Round, Ø 114 mm**

fine **No. 727767**

coarse **No. 727768**

extra coarse **No. 727769**

**Original, Flat, Ø 114 mm**

fine **No. 727773**

coarse **No. 727774**

extra coarse **No. 727775**

**2 Extreme, Round, Ø 114 mm**

medium **No. 727771**

coarse **No. 727772**

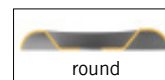
extra coarse **No. 727770**

**Extreme, Flat, Ø 114 mm**

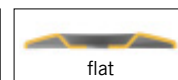
medium **No. 727777**

coarse **No. 727778**

extra coarse **No. 727776**



round



flat

## Sculptor's Hatchets

**G GRÄNSFORS® SMALL SCULPTOR'S HATCHET**

Carving hatchet with medium-weight head for smoothing surfaces and creating wavy surface patterns as well as for rough and fine sculpting. Forged by hand under a spring hammer. Carved, red beech handle with a good grip and a specially shaped end to prevent slippage. Comes with leather sheath.

Head weight 450 g  
Blade length 80 mm  
Overall length 365 mm

**No. 701599**

**H SVANTE DJÄRV CARVING HATCHET TÄLJYXA**

Hand-forged carving hatchet, which is particularly handy for detail work but can also be used for roughly shaping smaller objects. Double bevel. Textured handle.

Head weight 315 g  
Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 310 mm

**No. 701572**



G

H

I

**I GRÄNSFORS® SCULPTOR'S HATCHET**

This sculptor's hatchet was developed together with Swedish sculptor Wille Sundqvist and is forged by hand under a spring hammer. As well as a heavy head, which makes it ideal for rough shaping, it has a long beard which protects the hands when the hatchet is held close to its head for detail work. Curved blade and pointed toe (top end of the blade) allow it to be used for many sculpting purposes.

Double bevel. Serrated handle.

Comes with leather sheath.

Head weight 900 g  
Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 370 mm

**No. 705964**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

## Drawknives

The drawknife is invaluable for boat builders, coopers, wainwrights and chair makers alike. It can be used for trimming and finishing straight and curved workpieces, as well as for rounding and chamfering.



**A PFEIL® DRAWKNIFE, DOWNSWEPT AND CURVED BLADE**  
Ideal for removing large amounts of stock from straight surfaces (like a roughing plane) or working on slightly concave surfaces.

- Forged from carbon steel, therefore easy to sharpen
- Slightly curved blade reduces cutting force

- Blade gets thinner towards the cutting edge for easy re-honing of the bevel and has a torsion-resistant back
- Turned cherry wood handles
- Handles firmly attached by ferrules and full-length tangs
- Fine goatskin sheath

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade width 25 mm  
Overall length 430 mm  
**No. 700966**



**B PFEIL® DRAWKNIFE, STRAIGHT BLADE**

Heavy drawknife for removing large amounts of stock and working on straight and bellied surfaces.

- Forged from carbon steel, therefore easy to sharpen
- Large, turned cherry wood handles

- Handles firmly attached via ferrules and full-length tangs that are fixed to the end by locknuts
- Fine goatskin sheath

Blade length 250 mm  
Blade width 33 mm  
Overall length 430 mm  
**No. 700967**



**C ARNO® DRAWKNIVES**  
Forged in France, these medium-sized drawknives are suitable for both rough stock removal and delicate work.

- Forged from carbon steel, therefore easy to sharpen

- Flattened underside for easy sharpening (back of the blade is narrower), with torsion-resistant back (lacquered)
- Turned ball handles of red beech
- Handles firmly attached with full-length rivets
- Robust leather sheath

### Straight Blade

For working on straight and curved surfaces.

Blade length 145 mm  
Blade width 32 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
**No. 709995**



### Upswept Blade

For working on slightly curved surfaces.

Blade length 145 mm  
Blade width 32 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
**No. 709996**



### Downswept Blade

Ideal for removing a large amount of stock on straight surfaces (like a roughing plane) or working on slightly hollow surfaces.

Blade length 145 mm  
Blade width 32 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
**No. 709997**



**D SVANTE DJÄRV DRAWKNIFE, STRAIGHT BLADE**  
Light drawknife for delicate work.

- Hand-forged from carbon steel with fine-grained steel structure for a long edge life and easy sharpening
- Handy, ribbed hickory handles for a good grip

- Handles attached via inserted, glued tangs

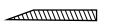
Blade length 135 mm  
Blade width 20 mm  
Overall length 265 mm  
**No. 701569**



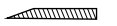
**E PFEIL® MINI DRAWKNIFE**  
Light drawknife for fine smoothing.

- Drop-forged from chrome-vanadium steel, rustproof
- Turned, rounded cherry wood handles
- Handles attached via inserted, glued tangs

**1 Straight**  
Blade length 120 mm  
Blade width 22 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
**No. 700938**



**2 Cranked**  
Blade length 110 mm  
Blade width 22 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
**No. 700937**

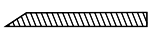


**F GRÄNSFORS® DRAWKNIFE, UPSWEPT AND CURVED BLADE**  
Upswept, curved blade for stripping logs.

- Hand-forged from carbon steel with fine-grained steel structure for a long edge life and easy sharpening
- Curved blade for a comfortable hand position
- Ribbed hickory handles for a good grip

- Handles firmly attached via ferrules and full-length tangs that are fixed to the end by locknut
- Robust leather sheath

Blade length 300 mm  
Blade width 36 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
**No. 705985**



### Tips on the use of drawknives

Pull the drawknife with the bevel to the bottom with an inclination to the workpiece. This allows for better control and reduces the cutting force. For fine material removal you can achieve better control by placing both thumbs on the blade. For work after scribing and heavy material removal, it is advisable to first make several cuts close up to the scribe line and then to cut to size with continuous strokes.



## Adzes

The adze has always been an important and highly versatile tool for carpenters, cabinet makers, boat builders and sculptors alike, and different versions have therefore evolved for different purposes. They are used for hollowing-out, smoothing, through making, and sculpting. The most important detail of a good adze is the right combination of form and length of the handle, which must suit the shape of the head. But also the bevel must be customised for the individual application.

### Inside bevel:

The more elaborate inside bevel allows precise application of the adze and, if the back is swung correctly, ergonomic use from the wrist. An inside bevel is a must whenever you require highly precise strokes, e.g. in sculpting.



### Outside bevel:

This type of bevel changes the geometry of the adze. Similar to a bent back, the outside bevel also changes the angle of the support surface. Material can only be removed with additional hoeing movements. An advantage of this version is that the blade cannot penetrate the workpiece too easily because the back quickly drives it back out. This bevel type is particularly suitable for rough removal of material. It is also easy to sharpen.



### Combined inside and outside bevel:

If the outside bevel is slightly changed by using a very flat bevel, this allows a combination that offers all the advantages of both bevel types: inside bevel for precise application, outside bevel to prevent the adze from catching in the workpiece.



► For detailed techniques on sharpening adzes see [www.perfect-sharpening.com](http://www.perfect-sharpening.com)

### Flat Adzes

Flat adzes are used to level and smooth surfaces. These surfaces may be finished later or keep their characteristic hewn appearance. Therefore these adzes usually have an inside bevel.

#### A PFEIL® TWO-HANDED FLAT ADZE, SWEEP 1

Robust, drop-forged adze with untreated ash handle. Inside bevel for precise cutting action due to straight contact surface. Blade width 75 mm  
Overall length 460 mm  
Total weight 1 kg  
No. 700941

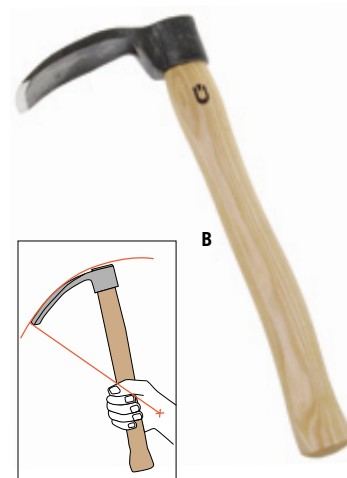


#### B DICTUM® ONE-HANDED FLAT ADZE, SWEEP 3

Hand-forged:

This flat adze is hand-forged and free-formed in a German smithy, based on a design by our master sculptor. The head has a slight curve (sweep 3), which makes smoothing surfaces easier. Inside bevel for precise cutting action due to straight contact surface. Optimally curved head shape. Handmade handle of oiled ash.

Blade width 60 mm  
Overall length 400 mm  
Total weight 620 g  
No. 706065  
Leather Sheath p. 80  
No. 715190



### One-handed Gouge-shaped Adzes


One-handed gouge-shaped adzes are ideal for detail work and use close to the body, such as hollowing out bowls, sculpting or working on chair seats on the workbench.

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



#### Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.

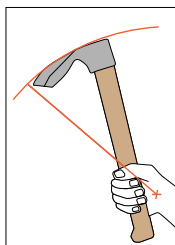
 Two free sharpenings



#### C DICTUM® ONE-HANDED GOUGE-SHAPED ADZE, SWEEP 8

Hand-forged:

This one-handed adze is hand-forged, based on the design of our master sculptor and impresses with its flexible handling and solid construction. The two shaped hand rests on the handmade handle allow you to quickly change from rough material removal to fine detail work (with your hand close to the head of the adze). Ideal for all kinds of sculpting. Inside bevel for precise



cutting action due to straight contact surface. Handmade handle of oiled ash.  
Blade width 70 mm  
Overall length 400 mm  
Total weight 860 g  
No. 706052  
Leather Sheath p. 80  
No. 715191



#### D PFEIL® ONE-HANDED GOUGE-SHAPED ADZE, SWEEP 8

Small drop-forged one-handed adze with untreated ash handle. Inside bevel for precise cutting action due to straight contact surface.  
Blade width 50 mm  
Overall length 275 mm  
Total weight 600 g  
No. 700944



## Two-handed Gouge-shaped Adzes

Gouge-shaped adzes have a wide range of applications and are suitable for hollowing out chair seats and boats as well as for sculpting. The longer handle allows you to work large pieces that are fixed to the floor. Two-handed adzes are often used for tiring work in which the second hand is a welcome support. The second hand also provides more impact.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



A

**A LEATHER SHEATHS  
FOR DICTUM® ADZES**  
High-quality leather sheath made of nappa cowhide leather sewn with a thick thread.

Fits No. 708358  
**No. 715188**  
Fits No. 706053  
**No. 715189**  
Fits No. 706065 + 706066  
**No. 715190**  
Fits No. 706052  
**No. 715191**



Adze not included!



**B PFEIL® TWO-HANDED  
GOUGE-SHAPED ADZE, SWEEP 7**  
Robust, drop-forged adze with untreated ash handle. Inside bevel for precise cutting action due to straight contact surface.

Blade width 70 mm  
Overall length 460 mm  
Total weight 1 kg  
**No. 700942**

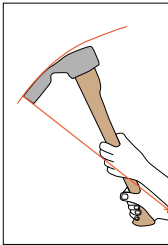


B



**C DICTUM® TWO-HANDED  
GOUGE-SHAPED ADZE, SWEEP 8**

Hand-forged:  
This adze, which is hand-forged based on our design in a German smithy, has an inside bevel which allows precise application because the contact surface is not angled. The wide, slightly curved blade produces a wonderfully fine surface and is therefore ideal for smoothing. Optimally curved head shape. Hand-made handle of oiled ash.



Blade width 80 mm  
Overall length 555 mm  
Total weight 1.3 kg  
**No. 708358**  
Leather Sheath p. 80  
**No. 715188**



C



## Trough Maker's Adzes

These classic one-hand, hammer-forged adzes are produced following the specifications of our master sculptor. They have an ideal shape for carving out troughs and large bowls. Their light weight also makes them suitable for wood sculpting.



D



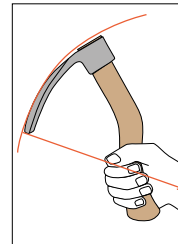
E



**D DICTUM® TROUGH MAKER'S ADZE,  
SWEEP 5**

Hand-forged:  
Hand-forged in Germany based on the design of our master sculptor. With its light weight and specially shaped curved handle, this adze is ideal for carving out deep vessels such as troughs and bowls. The bent handle helps to protect your wrist while working and allows narrow strokes. Inside bevel for precise cutting action due to straight contact surface. Handmade handle of oiled ash.

Blade width 60 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
Total weight 600 g  
**No. 706066**  
Leather Sheath p. 80  
**No. 715190**



**E DICTUM® TROUGH MAKER'S ADZE,  
SWEEP 7**

Hand-forged:  
This small one-handed adze has been forged based on an old model and is a true rarity. The strongly curved handle is ideal for easily carving out narrow bowls and deep troughs. The adze, which is manufactured to a design of our master sculptor, has a high sweep and large width, which also makes it ideal for smoothing surfaces. Inside bevel for precise cutting action due to straight contact surface. Handmade handle of oiled ash.  
Blade width 80 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
Total weight 990 g  
**No. 706053**  
Leather Sheath p. 80  
**No. 715189**

## WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

## TROUGH MAKING



**Content:** After an introduction into three-dimensional shaping with the axe and adze, we will hew versatile and attractive vessels, sized according to their intended use, from a green, split trunk.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



► Pferd abrasive spiral bands for easy sharpening of adzes are available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



# Hatchets and Axes

The oldest known tools  
for woodworking!

Hatchets and Axes | 82

DICTUM® Axes | 82

Gränsfors Bruks® Axes | 90

Hultafors® Axes | 92

Japanese Axes | 93

Japanese Cleavers (Nata) | 94





## Hatchets and Axes

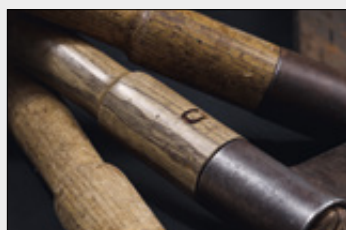
**DICTUM Forest and Outdoor Axes**



### Main features of a DICTUM Axe:

- ▶ Forged by hand
- ▶ Forged of C-60 carbon steel (hardness 56-57 HRC\*)
- ▶ Practical, tried-and-tested axe shapes
- ▶ Robinia handle with a natural Urushi surface for comfortable feel and dirt protection
- ▶ Handle is set by means of a wooden wedge and an additional metal wedge
- ▶ Each axe comes with premium leather sheath made of vegetable-tanned cowhide\*

\* unless otherwise stated



#### Axe handles with Urushi surface

For more than 6000 years, Urushi has been made from the resin of the Asian lacquer tree (*Rhus vernicifera*). It is natural, waterproof, food-safe, resistant to alcohol and solvents, remains permanently elastic, is not susceptible to cracking and it even gains in character when used.

### Video

*Delivery with online  
Video manual*

**»The DICTUM splitting axes are ideal for splitting wood. We have already split numerous cubic metres of firewood quickly and without problems.«**

Campus Galli Team, Meßkirch (DE)



On »Campus Galli« you can witness what a medieval construction site could have looked like 1200 years ago: with the tools and techniques of the 9th century, craftsmen and volunteers are building a monastery complex based on the Plan of Saint Gall. For further information see [www.campus-galli.de](http://www.campus-galli.de)

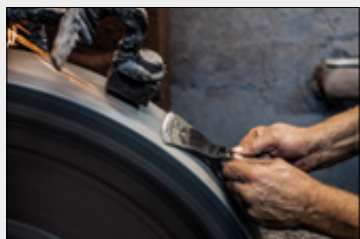
### How DICTUM® axes are produced

Our high-quality axes with practical design are produced in small European forges according to traditional forging techniques.



#### Forging/widening

First the eye for the handle is punched into the raw steel blocks. The heads are then forged with a spring hammer using a hammer forging technique without a forging die. Since the eye can be deformed during forging, it is subsequently realigned by hand on an anvil by means of an eye punch.



#### Grinding

The blade is pre-ground on a 60-grit metal belt grinder. Blacksmiths manage to precisely maintain the cutting angle of each axe type thanks to years of experience. For the grinding finish, a water-cooled magnesite grinding wheel is used.



#### Hardening/tempering

For hardening, the axe head is heated up to approx. 800 °C in the forge. It is quenched by quickly submerging it in an oil bath. The subsequent tempering reduces the tension in the axe head built up through the process of forging and hardening. The axe now has a hardness of 56-57 HRC.



#### Handle production/handle fitting

The robinia wood handles are produced on profile milling machines on the basis of a sample handle. Complex handle shapes (broad axes) are subsequently refinished by hand. When fitting the handle, it is held in place by a wooden wedge and an additional driven-in metal wedge.

Forged by hand

Forged of C-60 carbon steel

Handle is set by means of a wooden wedge and an additional metal wedge







Splitting wedge not included!



**A** **DICTUM® SPLITTING MAUL**  
Solid splitting maul with 2.3 kg head weight for splitting large cross-sections and knotty pieces of wood. The notch on the underside of the head and the bulge on the top are modelled on a historical South German axe shape that can only be forged by hand. The poll used as a hammer head allows you to drive in splitting wedges and to flip the axe and bring it back to the chopping block with

its back down if the blade becomes stuck in the wood. A double-bent crowbar handle ensures fatigue-free working and is perfectly protected against wear thanks to the forged iron mount.

Head weight 2.3 kg  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 805 mm  
**No. 708478**

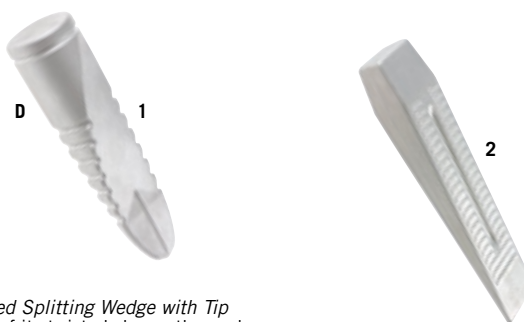


**B** **DICTUM® SPLITTING AXE**  
Thanks to the very rounded head shape, our hand-forged splitting axe is outstanding at splitting. The notch on the underside of the head and the bulge on the upper side are adapted from a historical South German axe shape that can only be forged by hand. The double-bent crowbar handle ensures fatigue-free working and is perfectly protected against wear thanks to the forged iron mounting.  
Head weight 1.8 kg  
Blade length 105 mm  
Overall length 720 mm  
**No. 708472**



**C** **DICTUM® HAND HATCHET**  
Hand hatchet for making kindling and for small jobs around the garden. Thanks to its compact size, it can easily fit in backpacks for outdoor activities.  
Head weight 450 g  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
**No. 708475**

► For a Gann Electrode Moisture Meter for measuring firewood moisture see chapter »Measuring and Inspection Instruments«.



**D** **ALUMINIUM SPLITTING WEDGES**  
In former times, axes were used to cut down trees, but nowadays these have been replaced by chain saws. This rapid development also affected splitting wedges. The oldest models, usually made of wood, have been replaced by low-wear splitting wedges made of steel. Now engineering has taken another step: safety splitting wedges are made of extremely impact-resistant, forged aluminium. They do not splinter and are no risk for chain saws. At the same time they are very light and protected against corrosion.

**1** *Twisted Splitting Wedge with Tip*  
Because of its twisted shape, the wedge angle enlarges while the wedge is being knocked in. This results in higher splitting forces. The tip is easily applied to the wood and forces itself in. Grooves on the side of the wedge bite into the wood and therefore prevent the wedge from recoiling.  
Width 50 mm  
Length 230 mm  
900 g  
**No. 706079**

**2** *Felling and Splitting Wedge*  
An extra-long wedge to fell trees and split large blocks of wood. The scaled surface prevents the wedge from recoiling.  
Lift height 35 mm.  
Width 55 mm  
Length 265 mm  
800 g  
**No. 706074**

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4).



#### Your benefits at DICTUM

When you purchase an axe, you get the following services **for free**:



**Handle-fitting pass**  
One handle fitted free.



#### Inclusive free sharpening pass

Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

For more information see page 4.



**SET**

**A**

**Price advantage!**

**A OUTDOOR SURVIVAL SET**

The set contains:

- DICTUM Outdoor Axe (No. 708474)
- Hultafors Fire Stick (No. 709764).

**No. 708889**



**B DICTUM® POLLED OUTDOOR AXE**  
Hand-forged axe with tomahawk-shaped blade and solid hammerhead. The tapered axe eye and the handle that thickens towards the head ensure a safe joint that can be separated if necessary. In this way, the axe head can be easily transported on your belt (belt case version only), while the handle is packed away in your backpack. The axe head can also be used without its handle as a scraping tool. The upset-forged surface of the hammer head serves for driving in stakes or pegs.  
Head weight 750 g  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 520 mm



**2 With Belt Case**  
**No. 708474**



**C DICTUM® FOREST HATCHET**  
This forest hatchet with typical German head shape, standard since 1935, has a long cutting edge with a slight slope. This ensures a high level of accuracy, making it ideal for limbing small trunks. The double-bent crowbar handle ensures fatigue-free working and can be used safely with one hand thanks to the knob on the end of the handle.  
Head weight 810 g  
Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 460 mm  
**No. 708470**



**D DICTUM® FOREST AXE**  
The heavy version of the forest hatchet with a 980 g head weight and long handle has more than proven itself as a versatile axe for forestry work. The typical German head shape, standard since 1935, with long cutting edge and slight slope backwards enables precision strikes. A double-bent crowbar handle ensures fatigue-free working.  
Head weight 980 g  
Blade length 115 mm  
Overall length 670 mm  
**No. 708471**

**1 With Standard Leather Sheath**  
**No. 708479**

**Vide** Application video available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

For Axe Head Blank No. 740100 see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4).



A



#### A DICTUM® BUSHMAN AXE

This multi-functional hand-forged axe has proved its worth in the wilderness. The small wedge angle at the compact axe head is perfect for felling or limbing small trunks. A straight handle allows precise strokes with the hammer surface. Head weight 600 g  
Blade length 80 mm  
Overall length 550 mm  
**No. 708476**



B



#### B DICTUM® FELLING AXE

Hand-forged felling axe for universal use. The popular Harzer head shape, widely used since 1930, was found to be one of the best head shapes in early forestry tests and was common throughout Germany before the chain saw was invented.



Bent handle shape for more striking force

Our model also features the characteristic rectangular groove, which allows you to pull out your wedged axe using a square metal bar. The handle shape we use was developed in 1935 through intensive practical testing by the former IFFA »Institut für forstliche Arbeitswissenschaft« (Institute for forestal work science). Thanks to the bent handle, and the resulting change of the axe's »slope«, the impact carries enormous power. Head weight 1.25 kg  
Blade length 110 mm  
Overall length 655 mm  
**No. 708477**



C



D

#### Your benefits at DICTUM

When you purchase an axe, you get the following services **for free**:



**Handle-fitting pass**  
One handle fitted free.



**Inclusive free sharpening pass**  
Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

For more information see page 4.



#### Test our axes in our shop!

The head weight, the balance and the ergonomics of the handle make the difference when selecting the right axe. In our shops, you can pick up all our axes and test them before you buy.



#### C DICTUM® SICKLE CLEAVER

This tool is designed for clearing undergrowth and controlling rank growth. Due to its long cutting edge, you can also cut thorny wood with up to 2 cm branch diameter from a safe distance. The handmade ashwood handle with its rounded end allows the tool to be held firmly and safely without slipping. Blade made of flexible, wear-resistant pre-tempered spring steel. Comes without leather sheath. Head weight 990 g  
Blade length 320 mm  
Overall length 870 mm  
**No. 708360**



#### D DICTUM® PICKAROON, HANDFORGED

Hand-forged, solid pickaroon for ergonomically moving small logs and for placing trunks on their end before splitting. The complex head, forged from a single piece, is heated and shaped up to twelve times, giving it enormous strength. In addition, the lashing on both sides provides the largest possible clamping surface for the handle, making the tool a lifetime companion. Weight 2.5 kg.  
Overall length 1.1 m  
**No. 800576**



## DICTUM Carpenter's Axes

»A smith is only as good as the workman who can explain the function of the tool to him«. These high-quality tools are developed in cooperation with our master carpenter and produced in small European forges according to traditional forging techniques.

- Forged by hand
- Forged of carbon steel (hardness 56-57 HRC\*)
- Practical, tried-and-tested traditional axe
- Ash handle with a natural Urushi surface for comfortable feel and dirt protection
- Handle is set by means of a wooden wedge

\* unless otherwise stated



## Vide

Delivery with online  
Video manual



**A DICTUM® SPLITTING KNIFE**  
This splitting knife excels through its shape, which has been developed and improved over many centuries. The turned handle with cross-wedging is fixed in the conical eye of the iron, and due to its shape is very comfortable to hold. The cutting edge, which is made of carbon steel with approx. 55 HRC, easily splits shingles and battens. Splitting knives are hit with a rawhide hammer (No. 705681).

**1 Standard**  
Head weight 1.2 kg  
Blade length 265 mm  
**No. 708361**

**2 Long**  
Head weight 1.5 kg  
Blade length 335 mm  
**No. 708362**



**B LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTUM® SPLITTING KNIFE**  
High-quality cowhide sheath, sewn with thick thread.

*Standard*  
Fits No. 708361.  
**No. 715172**

*Long*  
Fits No. 708362.  
**No. 715173**



**C DICTUM® HAMMER HATCHET**  
Optimally balanced, hand-forged hammer hatchet, whose combination of hammer-head and hatchet blade makes it suitable for many uses - from installing battens to trimming small boards or shingles to size. The solid, smooth hammer face prevents pressure points on lining boards. Without having to change tools, you can easily pull out small nails up to 90 mm long with the nail claw. The straight handle and two grip areas (which allow the hatchet to be held close to the head) provide a good grip in any situation.  
Head weight 600 g  
Blade length 85 mm  
Overall length 360 mm  
**No. 708456**

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested  
for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4).



**D LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTUM® HAMMER HATCHET**  
High-quality, cowhide sheath, sewn with thick thread.  
Fits No. 708456.  
**No. 715175**



► For a matching rawhide hammer see chapter »Hammers«.

### Your benefits at DICTUM

When you purchase an axe, you get the following services **for free**:



**Handle-fitting pass**  
One handle fitted free.



**Inclusive free sharpening pass**  
Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

For more information see page 4.

### WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

## SPLITTING SHINGLES

### Content:

We will split individual shingles from a block of fine-pored coniferous wood along the medullary rays, working in the traditional manner and with traditional tools such as the splitting froe and mallet. Afterwards, the shingles will be dressed or planed on the shaving horse with a drawknife. We will explain and practice shingling on a sample roof. The same splitting technique is used for making wall shingles.



► For workshop dates see  
[www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



### Axe handles with Urushi surface

For more than 6000 years, Urushi has been made from the resin of the Asian lacquer tree (*Rhus vernicifera*). It is natural, waterproof, food-safe, resistant to alcohol and solvents, remains permanently elastic, is not susceptible to cracking and it even gains in character when used.



#### A DICTUM® MORTISE AXES

Designed by our master carpenter based on a historical model, this hand-forged axe is ideal for trimming wood joints and mortises.

- Long blade for deep joints
- Even-ground back and side bevels for precise chiselling
- Slightly curved bevel, designed for heavy-duty use
- Even-ground narrow side for easy alignment
- Slightly conically forged blade for optimum weight
- Bolster between blade and eye reinforces the bent eye and serves as finger rest

#### 1 All-metal

The all-metal design makes the axe extremely robust and hard-wearing. It allows you to insert a carpenter's square and a chisel for putting together the



traditional carpenter's gear (Bundgeschirr, following German tradition).  
Head weight 1.95 kg  
Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 510 mm  
**No. 708369**

#### 2 With Wooden Handle

Ash handle with pleasant surface feel.  
Head weight 1.6 kg  
Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 490 mm  
**No. 708452**



#### B LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTUM® MORTISE AXE

High-quality, cowhide sheath with inlaid cutting protection. Sewn with thick thread.  
Fits No. 708452 and 708369.  
**No. 800481**



### The back of mortise axes

In its basic function, a mortise axe is more like a chisel than an axe. Together, the back and the bevel of this tool form the cutting edge. The back also serves as a contact surface when working. For these two reasons, the back should be as flat as possible. Our DICTUM chisels achieve this flatness by being flat-ground on a surface grinding machine. The user simply has to grind the back on a fine sharpening stone - a time-consuming trueing of the back is not necessary. Normally, the backs of mortise axes are only processed with a belt grinder. While at first glance this appears to give a flat, ground surface, this manufacturing process actual-

ly produces tolerances in the millimetre range. To guarantee high functionality and user comfort with our DICTUM mortise axes, we also grind the back exactly flat on a surface grinding machine in the same way we do with our chisels.



#### C BUNDGESCHIRR *Price advantage*

The Bundgeschirr (German for carpenter's gear) comprises the most important tools used by carpenters. Then and now, journeymen carpenters in Germany carry it with them when they take to the road in time-honoured tradition. With time, however, the tools included in the Bundgeschirr have changed because of the increased use of machines. With our version, we aim to provide carpenters

with traditional tools that also meet the needs of modern carpentry.

The Bundgeschirr includes:

- DICTUM All-metal Mortise Axe (No. 708369)
- German Carpenter's Square (No. 707279)
- DICTUM Chisel, Long Pattern, blade width 30 mm (No. 701373)

- Picard Roofing Hammer (No. 705685)
- DICTUM Square Mallet (No. 730045)
- Protective Guard for Chisel Sides (No. 712952)
- Traditional Charlottenburg Cloth

**No. 714055**



► The chisel and carpenter's square can be inserted and carried in the socket of the mortise axe. As the design of the Charlottenburg cloth changes quite often, we cannot guarantee that the supplied version is identical to the cloth in the picture.



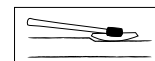
#### A DICTUM® BROAD AXE

Hand-forged broad axe which, over decades of daily use, has proven to be the most effective tool for hewing logs and beams.

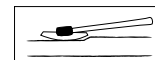
- Blade with large contact surface allows ultra-smooth surfaces even on large beams
- Slightly curved blade allows easy, efficient cutting because only part of the blade penetrates the wood
- Angled eye and handle for free swinging of the axe
- Optimally balanced weight for high impact with minimum fatigue
- Robust ash handle

Head weight 2 kg  
Blade length 320 mm  
Overall length 620 mm

*Left Bevel / for Left-handed Use*  
The beam is to the right of the axe.  
**No. 708451**



*Right Bevel / for Right-handed Use*  
The beam is to the left of the axe.  
**No. 708450**



#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4).



B

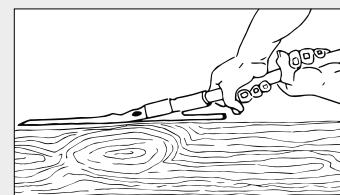
**B LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTUM® BROAD AXE**  
High-quality, cowhide sheath with inlaid cutting protection. Sewn with thick thread.  
Fits No. 708450 and 708451.  
**No. 800480**



#### Hewing tips

Secure the log approximately at knee height and fasten it using log dogs. Make notches in the log down to the desired depth every 30 cm (for green wood) or 50 cm (for dry wood). Always work with the grain.

Use uniform strokes and shearing-type cutting action. The movement of your upper body should follow the rhythmic pattern of the stroke. Use very little effort, allowing the weight of the axe to do the work for you. The thickness of the shavings removed should not be more than 0.5-1 cm. When hewing beams with the



right hand, the axe is held as shown in the figure. Work away from your body. If possible, do not chop off the shaving, but use it as a guide for the next stroke.



C



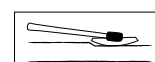
#### C DICTUM® BAROQUE CARPENTER'S HATCHET

Hand-forged:

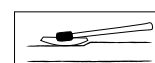
Unusual, versatile carpenter's hatchet, design based on a baroque model from the 17th century. Besides its main use as a hewing axe for small to medium beams and for trimming boards, the forge-welded poll means the axe is also suitable for striking. Thus it is used not only for driving in log dogs, wood nails and wedges, but also for releasing and driving together joints as well as driving heavy mortise chisels. The handmade handle is curved on one side and allows you to swing the hatchet freely when hewing. The well-balanced shape provides an excellent grip.

Head weight 1.45 kg  
Blade length 130 mm  
Overall length 450 mm

*Left Bevel / for Left-handed Use*  
The beam is to the right of the axe.  
**No. 708455**



*Right Bevel / for Right-handed Use*  
The beam is to the left of the axe.  
**No. 708454**



**D LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTUM® BAROQUE CARPENTER'S HATCHET**  
High-quality cowhide sheath, sewn with thick thread.  
Fits No. 708454 and 708455.  
**No. 715176**



D

#### Your benefits at DICTUM

When you purchase an axe, you get the following services **for free**:



**Handle-fitting pass**

One handle fitted free.



**Inclusive free sharpening pass**

Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

For more information see page 4.



**DICTIONUM® Bearded Hand Hatchet:**

This hand-forged bearded hand hatchet is based on an original archaeological find from the administrative district Lüneburg (Dumstorfer hatchet) in Germany dating back to the turn of the 18th and 19th century. The hallmark of the bearded hand hatchet is the strong ridge that extends from the head over the middle of the blade for reinforcement.

**A****A / B****B**

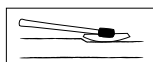
Archaeological find from the administrative district Lüneburg (Dumstorfer hatchet, 18th century).

**A** **DICTIONUM® BEARDED HAND HATCHET WITH CRANKED HANDLE, LEFT BEVEL**

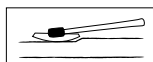
The wedge shape of the ridge, which also has a splitting effect, and the slightly curved eye make the hatchet ideal for trimming all kinds of workpieces. Then and now an excellent tool for splitting out muntins, rails and stretchers when making furniture from green wood.

Head weight 550 g  
Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 370 mm

*Left Bevel / for Left-handed Use*  
The workpiece is to the right of the axe.  
**No. 708458**



*Right Bevel / for Right-handed Use*  
The workpiece is to the left of the axe.  
**No. 708457**

**B** **DICTIONUM® BEARDED HAND HATCHET WITH STRAIGHT HANDLE**

The hatchet is ideal for trimming smaller blocks of wood thanks to the wedged shape of the ridge, which also provides a splitting function. Furthermore, its straight handle makes the hatchet ideal for use as an outdoor axe in a broad range of tasks.

Head weight 550 g  
Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 370 mm  
**No. 708459**

**C**

**C** **LEATHER SHEATH FOR DICTIONUM® BEARDED HAND HATCHET**  
High-quality, cowhide sheath, sewn with thick thread. Fits No. 708457, 708458 and 708459.  
**No. 715177**

**WORKSHOP****BUILDING A LOG CABIN - ROUND LOG BUILDING**

**Content:** Our instructor will pass on his knowledge, showing you practically oriented and with professional expertise the basics of building with round logs. Theory comes before practice, with everything you need to know about log cabin building as well as safety aspects in handling a chain saw.



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



**D** **DICTIONUM® LOG DOGS**  
For securing logs prior to hewing. 20 mm square bar steel with hardened cutting edges which are set perpendicular to one another.  
Head weight 900 g / 1.7 kg

Overall length  
**1** 240 mm  
**No. 705983**  
**2** 480 mm  
**No. 705859**



► Sharpening Set for Axes and Drawknives available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**DAS ZIMMERMANN'SBUCH**  
Theodor Krauth, Franz Sales Meyer:  
This textbook has lost none of its topicality since its first publication in 1895. Even today, any carpenter or restorer interested in the traditional techniques would do well to consult it. From material science to decorative carving, all aspects of the carpenter's craft are discussed in detail.  
512 pages, hardcover, 131 panels, 361 illustrations, 175 x 240 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713799**

**Accessories and replacement parts**

We offer a wide range of replacement parts and accessories, available on request, in order to make our DICTIONUM axes and hatchets life-long lasting - [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**WORKSHOP****SHARPENING OF CUTTING TOOLS**

**Content:** Perfect and gentle sharpening of knives, chisels, plane blades, carving gouges by hand on waterstones.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

**CLASSIC**



## Gränsfors Bruks® Axes

Under the motto »An axe is as good as the smith who made it«, the Swedish company Gränsfors Bruks has been manufacturing top-quality axes for over 100 years.

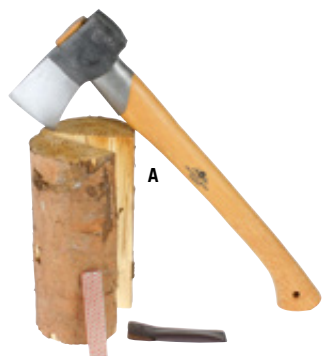
- Forged by hand under a spring hammer
- Forged of 56-57 HRC carbon steel
- Forger's initials on each axe head
- Oiled axe handles of selected hickory
- Handle is set by means of a wooden wedge
- Each axe comes with premium leather sheath
- Comes with manual



## Gränsfors® Splitting Axes



The thick heads of these axes have wide flaring cheeks and progressively increasing wedge angles to ensure maximum splitting power. The shaft has an iron sheath to protect it from wear and is textured at the end to provide a more secure grip.



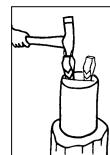
### Price advantage!

**A GRÄNSFORS® SPLITTING AXE AND DIAMOND WHETSTONE SET**  
Splitting axe (No. 701592) and DMT fine-grain diamond whetstone (No. 705386) with virtually infinite service life (also ideal for other cutting tools). Comes in leather case, 111 x 23 x 5 mm.  
**No. 718929**

**B GRÄNSFORS® SPLITTING HATCHET**  
In spite of its small size, this splitting hatchet has great splitting power with its weighty, highly convex 1 kg head. Its handy shape makes it ideal for small to medium rounds and making logs for firewood. The hickory shaft, which is textured at the base for better grip, can also be used one-handed if necessary.  
Head weight 1 kg  
Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 480 mm  
**No. 701592**

**C GRÄNSFORS® SMALL SPLITTING AXE**  
For splitting small and medium rounds.  
Head weight 1 kg  
Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 590 mm  
**No. 705979**

**D GRÄNSFORS® SPLITTING MAUL**  
Heavy axe for splitting large chunks of firewood. The hammer shaped head has wide flaring cheeks and is used to drive a splitting wedge.  
Head weight 2.5 kg  
Blade length 65 mm  
Overall length 800 mm  
**No. 705969**



### E GRÄNSFORS® LARGE SPLITTING AXE

Head weight 2 kg  
Blade length 75 mm

**Standard Handle**  
Standard handle with a slight curve at the end to prevent slippage.  
Overall length 700 mm  
**No. 705962**

**Long Handle**  
Extra-long, straight handle for additional swing or for splitting logs that lay horizontal on the ground.  
Overall length 790 mm  
**No. 705991**

### Your benefits at DICTUM

When you purchase an axe, you get the following services **for free**:



**Handle-fitting pass**

One handle fitted free.



**Inclusive free sharpening pass**

Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

For more information see page 4.



### You will find the full range of Gränsfors products online.

Please bear in mind that the Gränsfors forge has limited production capacities and that there may be delays in the delivery of your products.



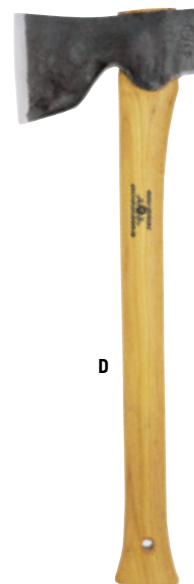
**A GRÄNSFORS® HAND HATCHET**  
Whether for making kindling or for small jobs around the garden, this hatchet is always a handy tool. Thanks to its compact size, it can easily fit in backpacks and toolboxes.  
Head weight 450 g  
Blade length 80 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
**No. 705963**



**B GRÄNSFORS® MINI HATCHET**  
Gränsfors Bruks' smallest axe, perfect for gardening, fishing, trekking or sculpting.  
Head weight 200 g  
Blade length 60 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
**No. 705989**



**C GRÄNSFORS® WILDLIFE HATCHET**  
Handy axe with surprising power, perfect for the full range of outdoor activities.  
Head weight 450 g  
Blade length 80 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
**No. 705960**



**D GRÄNSFORS® CARPENTER'S AXE**  
The thin blade and straight edge of this axe make it perfect for shaping workpieces. The small beard allows the axe to be gripped close to the head.  
Head weight 700 g  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 450 mm  
**No. 705974**



**E GRÄNSFORS® SYNTHETIC SHARPENING STONE**  
Synthetic sharpening stone with coarse 180 grit for pre-sharpening and a fine 600 grit side for honing. The rubber case protects the stone during transport and acts as a handle. Bevelled edges to prevent breakouts. Can be used with water or dry.  
57 x 23 mm  
**No. 705584**



**F GRÄNSFORS® SHARPENING FILE FOR AXES**  
Metal file with a fine cut and two studded surfaces for sharpening axes. The handy beech wood handle, which thickens towards the file blade, allows a comfortable and safe hold. The file can be used dry or with water. Leather sheath included.  
Cross-section 20 x 3 mm  
Cut length 75 mm  
Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 707865**

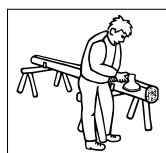


**G GRÄNSFORS® DIAMOND SHARPENING FILE FOR AXES**  
Diamond file with a coarse 230 grain for rough grinding and a fine 400 grain for honing axes. The handy beech wood handle, which widens towards the file blade, allows a comfortable and safe hold. The file can be used dry or with water. Leather sheath included.  
Cross-section 20 x 3 mm  
Cut length 75 mm  
Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 707866**



### Sharpening axes

As axes are mostly used outside the workshop, a mobile sharpening device such as the DMT folding diamond sharpener ► No. 705391 or the Gränsfors sharpening stone ► No. 705584 as well as the sharpening files ► No. 707865 and 707866 are recommended. You lay the blade of the axe on a solid support, such as a tree trunk, and guide the sharpener/stone with uniform strokes across the cutting edge, while maintaining the bevel angle.



### Gränsfors® Side Axe and Broad Axe No. 1900

Two types of axes are traditionally used in joinery: Universal broad axes have symmetrical, double-bevelled blades and straight handles. They are mainly used for making wood joints and notches. Side axes or broad axes have slightly tilted, single-bevelled blades and are used for straightening and smoothing logs and beams. Hybrid models also exist, which are suitable for both types of work.



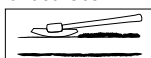
**H GRÄNSFORS® UNIVERSAL BROAD AXE NO. 1900, DOUBLE BEVEL**  
Ideal for joint work. Thin blade with a wide beard, double-bevelled blade and a symmetrical head.  
Head weight 1.3 kg  
Blade length 175 mm  
Overall length 490 mm  
**No. 705986**



**I GRÄNSFORS® BROAD AXE NO. 1900, SINGLE BEVEL**  
Thin blade with a wide beard and a single bevel, slightly tilted blade.

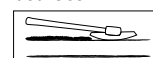
#### Right Bevel / for Right-handed Use

The beam is to the left of the axe.  
Head weight 1.3 kg  
Blade length 175 mm  
Overall length 490 mm  
**No. 705968**



#### Left Bevel / for Left-handed Use

The beam is to the right of the axe.  
Head weight 1.3 kg  
Blade length 175 mm  
Overall length 490 mm  
**No. 705972**



### Accessories & replacement parts



We offer a wide range of replacement parts and accessories online at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## Hultafors® Premium Axes

Hults Bruk forge in south-east Sweden has been manufacturing premium axes and hatchets since 1697. Having bought the forge, Swedish global enterprise Hultafors is continuing this more than 300-year-old tradition.

- Forged by hand under a spring hammer
- Forged of 56-57 HRC carbon steel
- Oiled hickory handles
- Handle is set by means of a wooden wedge and an additional metal wedge
- Each axe comes with premium leather sheath
- Comes with manual




► More Hultafors® axes available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### A HULTAFORS® ÅGELSJÖN MINI HATCHET

This small hatchet has a heavy head and short handle, which ensures high impact even with its compact design. Ideal for the backpack when trekking.

Head weight 500 g  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 235 mm

No. 708461



### B HULTAFORS® HULTÅN HATCHET

This versatile trekking axe for all outdoor activities is excellent value for money. The short curved handle provides a good grip for ergonomic strokes.

Head weight 500 g  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 375 mm

No. 708460



### C HULTAFORS® EKELUND HUNTING AXE

A slightly more powerful axe with medium-long handle for use in hunting. The rounded neck is ideal for skinning game.

Head weight 850 g  
Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 500 mm

No. 708462



### E HULTAFORS® STÅLBERG CARPENTER'S AXE

Carpenter's axe with a thin, straight edge and heavy head for trimming workpieces. The small beard means you can hold the axe close to the head.

Head weight 800 g  
Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 500 mm

No. 708463



### D HULTAFORS® WETTERHALL THROWING AXE

Double-edged throwing axe, designed for Swedish axe-throwing competitions. 1.6 kg head weight and the straight handle ensure optimum balance and allow accurate strokes.

Head weight 1.6 kg  
Blade length 150 mm  
Overall length 760 mm

No. 708464



## Your benefits at DICTUM

When you purchase an axe, you get the following services **for free**:



**Handle-fitting pass**

One handle fitted free.



**Inclusive free sharpening pass**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

For more information see page 4.



## Accessories & replacement parts



We offer a wide range of replacement parts and accessories online at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

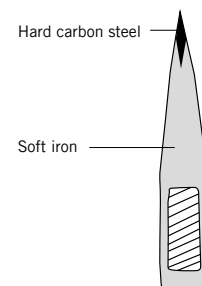


## Japanese Axes

With their laminated forged blades\*, Japanese axes stand for the the fine art of blacksmithing. The durability and sharpness of the steel along with the well-proportioned axe heads and handles are unmatched!

- Forged double-layered blade - very hard cutting edge (58-60 HRC) and impact-absorbing soft iron body\*
- Handles of untreated Japanese white oak
- Handle is set by means of a wooden wedge and an additional metal wedge
- Each axe comes with a handy sheath

\* unless otherwise stated



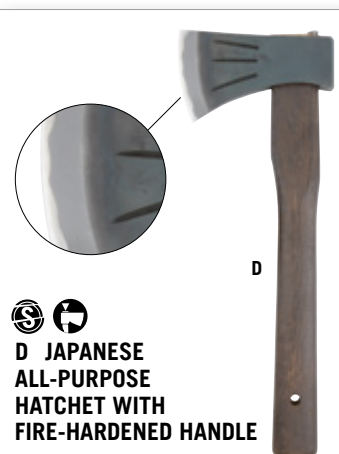
**A SMALL JAPANESE ALL-PURPOSE HATCHET**  
Universal hatchet with small socket and double bevel. Can be used for roughly trimming workpieces due to the straight cutting edge. The long beard protects your fingers when holding near the head. Forged from mono carbon steel.  
Head weight 530 g  
Blade length 108 mm  
Overall length 360 mm  
**No. 710857**



**B LARGE JAPANESE ALL-PURPOSE HATCHET**  
Axe with double bevel and slightly rounded cutting edge. Small socket for better stability. Thanks to the single-sided beard, which protects the fingers, this hatchet can also be held with one hand near the head, for example during finishing work. Forged from mono carbon steel.  
Head weight 750 g  
Blade length 122 mm  
Overall length 390 mm  
**No. 710858**



**C JAPANESE ALL-PURPOSE HATCHET**  
Handy and compact: Lightweight hatchet for woodworking, outdoor activities and woodcarving. Tomahawk-shaped head with a curved blade and hardened poll. Double-bevelled face. Forged of mono carbon steel.  
Head weight 450 g  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 330 mm  
**No. 710821**



### D JAPANESE ALL-PURPOSE HATCHET WITH FIRE-HARDENED HANDLE

This versatile axe is ideal for the outdoors. With a core layer made of carbon steel and a fire-hardened handle, it combines Japanese precision with typical, simple elegance. Due to the double-layered, forged axe head, the axe has a high level of edge retention with bounce-reducing properties. The handle was hardened over an open flame to make it resistant to mechanical stress and soiling.  
Head weight 490 g  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 330 mm  
**No. 710856**



**E JAPANESE SPLITTING AXE**  
For splitting medium and thick cross-sections and driving in wedges. The highly convex head guarantees maximum splitting power. The triple-layered blade with a hard carbon steel core (58-60 HRC) is also suitable for heavy-duty use. Has a large hardened striking surface. Long, unvarnished shaft of Japanese white oak. Comes with premium leather sheath.  
Head weight 1.5 kg  
Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 900 mm  
**No. 701661**

unvarnished shaft of Japanese white oak. Comes with premium leather sheath.  
Head weight 1.5 kg  
Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 900 mm  
**No. 701661**



**F JAPANESE CARPENTER'S AXE**  
Wood crafts in harmony with nature: Hand-forged carpenter's axe with curved head, wide beard and narrow throat for joining work, hewing and trimming trunks as well as beams. The red painted indentation on the blade, which is characteristic of this axe type, has a religious significance in Japan. The irregular recess represents the fallibility of all man-made creation and is an apology for



intervention in perfect and divine nature. The triple-layered forged blade with a core of White Paper Steel is bevelled on both sides. The handle is made of untreated Japanese white oak. Comes with premium leather sheath.  
Head weight 1 kg  
Blade length 130 mm  
Overall length 900 mm  
**No. 701662**





**A BARK SCRAPER »KAWA MUKI«**  
Japanese drawknife for removing bark and smoothing logs. Wear-resistant steel blade, handle of Japanese white oak.

Blade width 45 mm  
Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 730 mm  
**No. 717920**



**B JAPANESE GARDENING HATCHET »EDAUCHI ONO«**  
Original and powerful: Hand-forged garden hatchet, ideal for cutting branches and roots and for sharpening and trimming posts. Triple-layered blade structure with cutting edge of Blue Paper Steel. Untreated, ergonomically

shaped Japanese white oak handle. Magnolia wood sheath, allows axe to be attached to belts.  
Head weight 600 g  
Blade length 160 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
**No. 701657**



## Japanese Cleavers (Nata)

Nata are machete-like axes equipped with extremely sharp forged blades. In Japan, they are mainly used in the garden for limbing and trimming trees and bushes.



**C NATA JIGATA**  
Cleaver made of high-carbon steel for gardening and forestry. The blade has a single right bevel, allowing cuts to be made flush to the trunk. Comes with a

sheath and belt loop.  
Head weight 560 g  
Blade length 210 mm  
Overall length 390 mm  
**No. 710804**



**D NATA AZUMAGATA**  
Powerful cleaver made of carbon steel. Double bevel. Can also be used for splitting wood.  
Head weight 750 g  
Blade length 135 mm  
Overall length 360 mm  
**No. 710803**



**E SILKY® YOKI**  
Robust, ergonomic garden knife for thinning out brushwood and clearing uncontrolled growth. Thanks to a special steel alloy, these knives have a relatively thin and therefore light blade which still withstands heavy-duty use. Removable rubber handle scales reduce the impact on the hand and lower arm by about 60 % because they absorb the blow better than conventional wooden handles. Comes with a high-quality canvas sheath. Double bevel.  
Blade length 320 mm  
Overall length 480 mm  
510 g  
**No. 710828**



## Saji Cleavers

The Japanese master smith Takeshi Saji uses traditional components to create utility knives that have revolutionised the market - not only in Japan. Blades of multi-layered steel make these knives feast for the eyes, while the steel used for the cutting edges lends exceptional sharpness and durability. The size of the handle is also designed for European hands. Saji's knives are characterised by highly functional design and a rustic finish alongside exceptional value for money. The master engraves his signature by hand on each of the blades.



**F SAJI NATA**  
This archaic-looking cleaver with a single bevel is ideal for cutting flush to the trunk. Takeshi Saji welds the shock-absorbing part of the double-layered blade to a cutting layer of White Paper Steel in the fire. The result is a blade that is both resistant and has good edge retention. The blade is securely anchored in the oak handle by a ferrule. Scabbard made of magnolia wood with leather mounts; can be worn on the belt.  
Head weight 330 g  
Blade length 195 mm  
Overall length 360 mm  
**No. 710864**



## Your benefits at DICTUM

When you purchase an axe, you get the following services **for free**:



**Handle-fitting pass**  
One handle fitted free.



**Inclusive free sharpening pass**  
Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

For more information see page 4.





# Planes

Thin shavings - smooth surfaces!

**Veritas® Planes | 97**

**DICTUM® Planes | 100**

**Kunz® Planes | 108**

**Japanese Planes (Kanna) | 111**

**Traditional Chinese Planes | 113**

**Western-style Planes | 115**

**Accessories | 118**

**Scraper Blades and Scrapers | 119**

**Surface and Thickness Planers | 121**



Lie-Nielsen  
**TOOLWORKS**<sup>®</sup>  
INC.

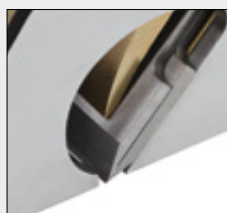
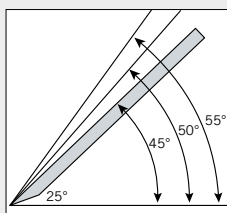
► Planes and accessories available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Three types of METAL PLANE DESIGN

#### »BEVEL DOWN«



##### Cutting angle depends on frog angle

The cutting angle is more easily adjusted in »bevel up« than »bevel down« planes. It depends on the frog angle.

##### Additional weight

Additional weight means the plane sits firmly on the surface. This is particularly advantageous for working with irregular grains and wood that is difficult to plane.

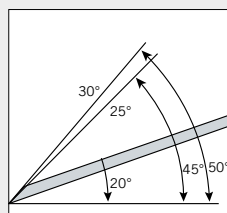
##### Full blade support

The frog provides a smooth and large seat for the whole blade, reducing chatter to a minimum.

##### Adjustment of mouth opening changes cutting depth

Since the frog is moved on an inclined surface, any adjustment to the mouth also affects the cutting depth. This can be counteracted by turning the central adjusting mechanism.

#### »BEVEL UP«



##### Easily adjustable cutting angle

The major advantage lies in the easily adjustable cutting angle. Since the bevel angle on the blade affects the cutting angle, the plane can be optimised by altering the bevel angle on the blade - most easily done with a secondary bevel.

##### Low centre of gravity

One more advantage is the low centre of gravity, which is created by the low-angle frog.

##### Plane body and blade support from a single piece

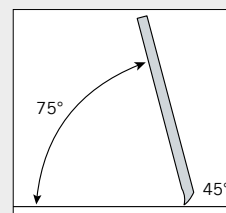
In »bevel down« planes, an additional frog in the plane body supports the blade.

In »bevel up« planes, the plane body and blade support are made from one piece, enhancing overall stability.

##### Simple mouth adjustment

»Bevel up« planes have a screw at the front end for adjusting the mouth opening easily. The cutting depth remains unaffected.

#### SCRAPING PLANES



Scraping planes arose from the idea of embedding a scraper into a plane body for more convenient use.

Usually, a burr on the blade is used for scraping. The blade has to be ground perfectly angular to raise the burr, which is applied to the upper edge of the bevel with the burnisher, much like a scraper. Tools with thick blades (made by Lie-Nielsen) do not require a burr but are also used with one. Those with thinner blades (made by Kunz and Veritas) generally use the raised hook. Their blades still have a bevel (30-45°), which reduces the amount of material needing to be »displaced« when raising the burr.

The principle of scraping with a burr differs greatly from cutting with a blade. Normally, the depth is determined by burr and angle. These planes are required for achieving tear-out-free surfaces on difficult woods and grains (primarily hardwood).



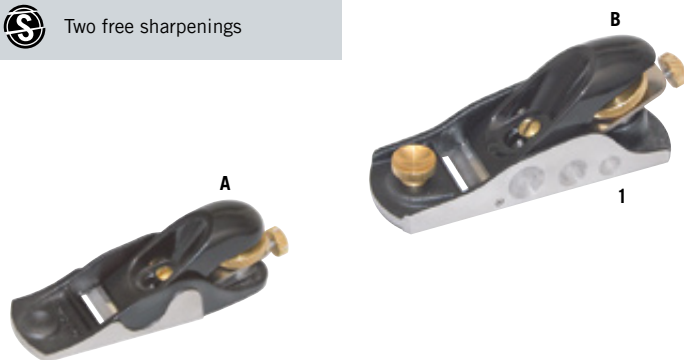
## veritas® Planes

The corporate philosophy of Canadian tool manufacturer Veritas aims to develop new adjustment mechanisms and enhance historic plane design. With bodies made of stress-relieved spheroidal cast iron, these tools are highly resistant to cracking and distortion. Their soles are perfectly plane and trued at right angles to the sides. Their thick blades of high-strength A2 steel are hardened to 60-62 HRC and additionally subjected to a special low-temperature process to achieve a finer grain. Veritas planes are optionally available with PM-V11 blades. (The Custom series models are equipped with PM-V11 blades as standard). Two setscrews on the sides constrain the blade laterally, keeping it in place regardless of the type of stress applied. Unless otherwise stated, the blade is angled at 45°. With their material combination of finely-ground or black-coated cast iron bodies, polished brass setscrews and beautiful torrefied maple handles, these planes are also pleasing to the eye.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



### **A** VERITAS® APRON PLANE, PM-V11™ BLADE

Ideal for cabinetmakers, instrument makers and restorers. Central setscrew for blade depth and lateral adjustment. Non-adjustable mouth. Blade angle 12°, bevel angle 25°. Results in a cutting angle of 37°. Blade width 32 mm Blade thickness 2.5 mm Overall length 140 mm 420 g  
**No. 703891**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703892**

### **B** VERITAS® BLOCK PLANE

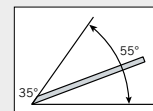
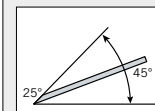
Compact all-round plane for fine shavings. The mouth opening can be adjusted according to the application, using the configurable shoe (for removing thick or thin shavings). The indentations in the sides make it easier to guide this

**1 12°**  
For fine cuts and end grain. Bevel angle 25°. Results in a cutting angle of 37°. Blade angle 12°  
Blade material  
A2 **No. 703693**  
PM-V11™ **No. 703890**

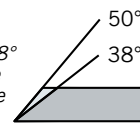
Repl. Blade  
A2 **No. 703694**  
PM-V11™ **No. 702195**

### »Bevel Up« planes

- No chipbreaker required
- Simple adjustment of cutting angle by changing bevel angle



Blades with 38° and 50° blade angle available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Spoilt for choice:

Do you just want to buy a »universal plane« to start with? Or perhaps you want to know which combination of planes would be most useful?

► For further information see pages 104 + 117.

### **C** VERITAS® LOW-ANGLE SMOOTHING PLANE

For planing difficult grain, end grain, cross grain or knotty wood. The front handle allows easy and convenient adjustment of the plane mouth. Thanks to the central adjusting screw, the blade feed and lateral position can be adjusted quickly and precisely. Blade angle 12°. A 25° bevel angle produces a cutting angle of 37°.

Blade width 51 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 265 mm  
1.7 kg  
Blade material  
A2 **No. 703690**  
PM-V11™ **No. 703888**

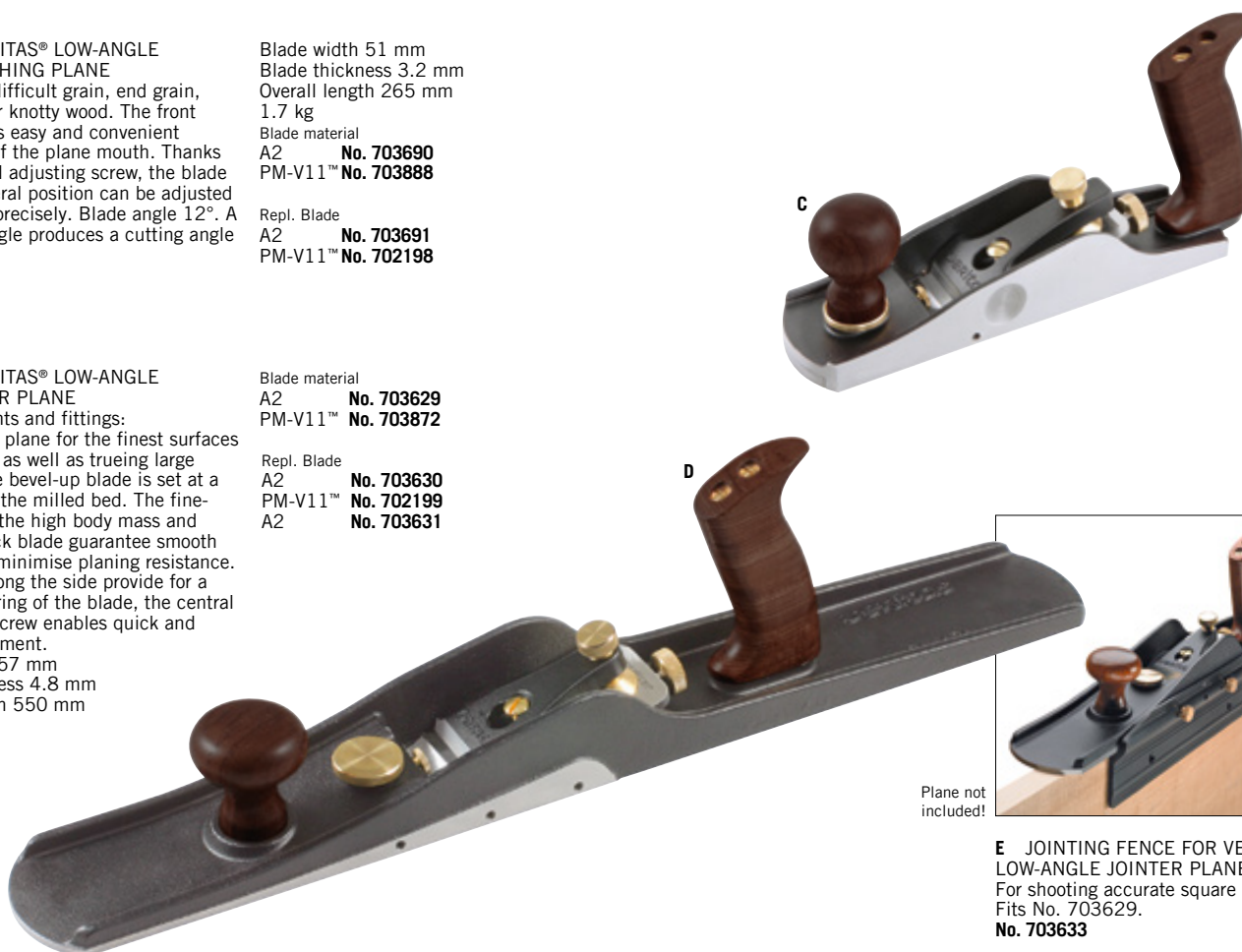
Repl. Blade  
A2 **No. 703691**  
PM-V11™ **No. 702198**

### **D** VERITAS® LOW-ANGLE JOINTER PLANE

For exact joints and fittings. Ultra-precise plane for the finest surfaces when joining as well as truing large surfaces. The bevel-up blade is set at a 12° angle in the milled bed. The fine-lapped sole, the high body mass and the extra thick blade guarantee smooth planing and minimise planing resistance. Setscrews along the side provide for a reliable centring of the blade, the central adjustment screw enables quick and reliable alignment. Blade width 57 mm Blade thickness 4.8 mm Overall length 550 mm 3.5 kg

Blade material  
A2 **No. 703629**  
PM-V11™ **No. 703872**

Repl. Blade  
A2 **No. 703630**  
PM-V11™ **No. 702199**  
A2 **No. 703631**



Plane not included!



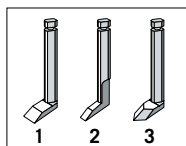
**E** JOINTING FENCE FOR VERITAS® LOW-ANGLE JOINTER PLANE  
For shooting accurate square edges. Fits No. 703629.  
**No. 703633**



**A VERITAS® ROUTER PLANE**  
Precision tool for creating and finishing grooves, flat recesses or any work requiring an area cut to a precise depth. Its generous dimensions and solid construction make this plane very easy to use. A depth stop allows the adjustment of the cutting depth with high precision. The blade can be fixed centrally, enclosed by the sole, or close to the edge with an open sole for cutting in corners. The optional fence (No. 703698) can be used on the right or left side of the plane and will work on straight or curved workpieces.

Includes:  
1 straight blade, blade width 12.5 mm  
1 pointed blade, blade width 12.5 mm

145 x 90 mm



Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Blade material A2  
900 g

**No. 703697**

Repl. Blade

1 straight blade, 12.5 mm

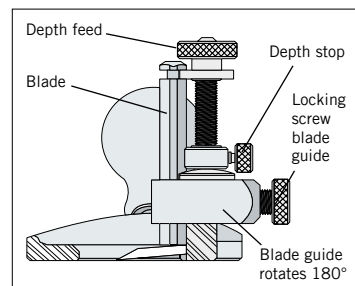
**No. 703803**

2 straight blade, 6.3 mm

**No. 703719**

3 pointed blade, 12 mm

**No. 703804**



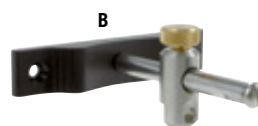
**B FENCE FOR VERITAS®**

**ROUTER PLANE**

Reversible fence with flat and two-point support for straight and curved edges.

Fits No. 703697.

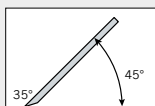
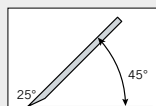
**No. 703698**



Plane not included!

**»Bevel Down« planes**

- Chipbreaker required
- Cutting angle defined by frog angle

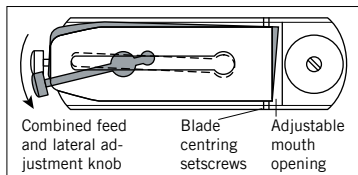


**C VERITAS® SMOOTHING PLANE**  
**NO. 4, PM-V11™ BLADE**

The standard smoothing plane is capable of taking the finest shavings from the most difficult woods. With the central adjusting screw, the blade feed and lat-

eral position can be adjusted quickly and precisely. The rear handle and frog form a movable unit that defines the mouth opening without requiring any re-adjustment of the cutting depth.

Blade width 51 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
2 kg



**D VERITAS® PLOW PLANE,**  
**A2 BLADE**

Traditionally used for drawer bottoms or rear walls, plow planes have almost been forgotten in the age of spindle moulders. This compact plow plane allows you to work with more control and above all more quietly than with a router. The smooth-running lateral and depth fences are easy to adjust by hand using the large brass knurled screws.

Blade width ¼ inch (equals 6.35 mm)  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
840 g  
**No. 703634**

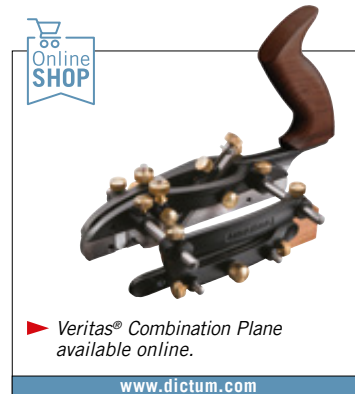


**E REPLACEMENT BLADES FOR**  
**VERITAS® SMALL PLOW PLANES**

Fits No. 703634.  
Blade width  
4 mm **No. 703783**  
5 mm **No. 703784**  
6 mm **No. 703785**  
7 mm **No. 703786**

Blade width  
8 mm **No. 703787**  
10 mm **No. 703788**

**E**



► Veritas® Combination Plane available online.

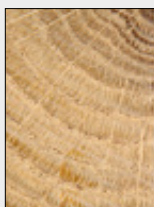
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Cutting angle**

When should the different cutting angles or blade angles be used?

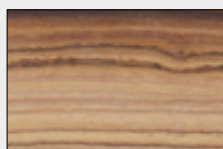
**Cutting angle 36°-38°**

Preferred for end grain, where tear-out is to be expected because the fibres break easily. With this cutting angle, the fibres are actually cut off. When planing along the grain, you should only take fine shavings with a small mouth opening to prevent premature splitting of the wood.



**Cutting angle 43°-46°**

Normal cutting angle for general work with relatively low cutting resistance.



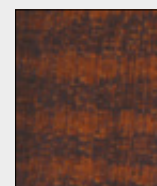
**Cutting angle 50°-60°**

On highly figured wood, this angle creates less tear-out. A disadvantage is that the blade will cut less and scrape more which dulls it more quickly.



**Blade angle 75°-100°**

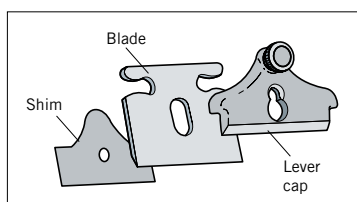
(Cutting angle is defined by a raised burr). At this angle, you scrape instead of cutting (scraping plane). Since this type of planing causes minimal tear-out, it is ideal for wild grain structures and woods that are difficult to plane.



**WORKSHOPS**

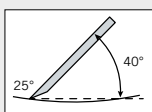
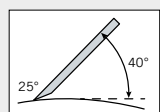
Learn the correct use of hand planes e.g. in our workshop »Planing and Joining«.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



### Spokeshaves

- Large handles for high level of tool control
- For working on straight, convex and concave surfaces



shaves must have hefty bodies and thick cutting blades (3.2 mm). The blade can be adjusted with knurled screws, the mouth opening with supplied shims. The radius of the round version is 44 mm, while the concave version has an inside radius of 33 mm.

Blade width 54 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Blade material PM-V11™  
Overall length 270 mm  
330 g

### A VERITAS® SPOKESHAVES

For fine shavings when working on flat and long curved surfaces such as bows, boats, slats, planks and edges. Since they are guided by hand and are sensitive to the wood structure, spoke-

Sole

1 straight No. 703987

2 rounded No. 703988

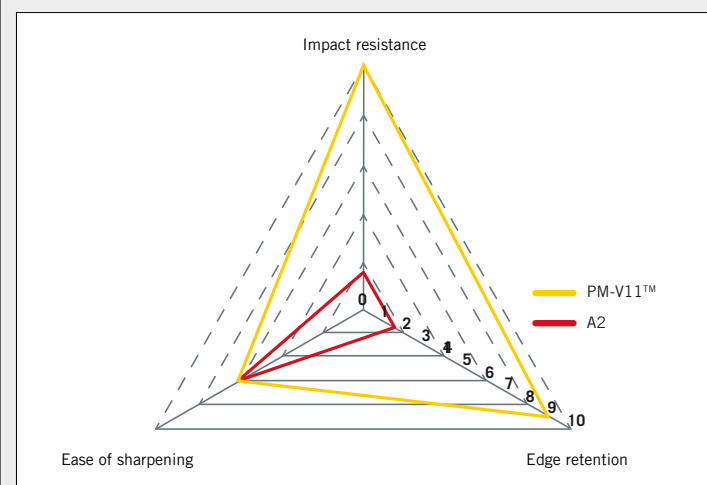
Repl. Blade No. 703886

3 concave No. 703989

Repl. Blade No. 703887

### PM-V11™ steel

PM-V11 steel is made from an innovative powder metallurgy steel alloy. With its ultra-fine and homogeneous material structure and extreme hardness (HRC 61-63), this steel has double the edge-retention capacity of A2 steel. The extremely hard-wearing blades allow a razor-sharp edge and are highly durable even at a bevel angle of less than 20°. All blades come with a 2° micro bevel and can be sharpened on conventional waterstones.



**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

### WORKSHOP

### PLANING AND JOINING

#### SUPER FINE SHAVINGS AND PERFECT SURFACES

**Content:** The best way to practice handling plane and saw is to plane, smooth, and join a board. In this course you will learn to adjust, sharpen, and guide a hand plane as well as practicing different approaches according to the task at hand. We will explain and use metal planes as well as European and Japanese planes.



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



► More Veritas® planes available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### Accessories and replacement parts

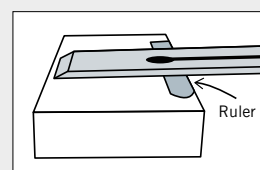


For various accessories and spare parts for Veritas® planes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Sharpening plane blades - the Lie-Nielsen-method

As a manufacturer of premium metal planes, Lie-Nielsen Toolworks in close cooperation with David Charlesworth has created a sharpening system that allows you to achieve the sharpest cutting edges on plane blades quickly and easily.

First, polish the back of the blade with the so-called »ruler trick«. This involves placing a thin steel ruler (e.g. No. 707270) along the long edge of a fine-grit honing stone, which makes it possible to polish the very tip of the back of the blade along the opposite long edge of the stone.



Then, you hone a micro bevel onto the blade. This means that a smoothing plane with a 25° bevel, for example, gets a second bevel (e.g. bevel angle 30°) that is a few degrees less acute.

## DICTUM Planes

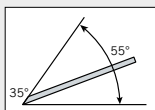
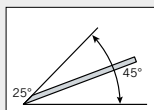
We have developed our DICTUM plane series based on our Herdim planes. We have been making these planes for decades for our violin makers, who require the utmost precision and perfect workmanship. The solid plane bodies made from cast steel\* with precisely ground soles aligned at right angles to the sides, together with the minimum 3 mm thick blades made from SK4 steel (61 HRC) signify top quality. The planes are also available with a Japanese blade made of Blue Paper Steel (63 HRC) or an HSS Cryo (64 HRC) blade. The blade adjuster allows for precise adjustments and the ergonomically shaped handles developed through tests as well as the polished cap irons provide a good grip. Handles of native redbeechwood.

(\* unless otherwise stated)



### »Bevel Up« planes

- No chipbreaker required
- Simple adjustment of cutting angle by changing bevel angle



**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



#### A DICTUM® POCKET PLANE

This handy, light-weight pocket plane fits snugly in your palm because of its convex form, its polished cap iron and the recessed grips. It is ideal for craft carpentry, model making and musical instrument making. Fine shavings due to a narrow mouth opening (not adjustable). Blade adjuster nut and spin wheel made from stainless steel and brass. The cap iron is fixed by a retaining pin. Blade width 32 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 135 mm  
440 g

20°

For processing wood in the direction of the grain. Results in a normal cutting angle of 45° at a 25° bevel angle.

Blade angle 20°

Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703430**

Repl. Blade **No. 703432**

12°

For fine cuts and end grain processing. Bevel angle 25°. This results in a cutting angle of 37°.

Blade angle 12°

Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703431**

Repl. Blade **No. 703432**

*»I wanted to let you know that I really like my DICTUM pocket plane, 20°. With the small mouth, I have nearly eliminated tear out and the dimples on the side make it easy to grip and minimise fatigue. Great job on a nice affordable plane.«*

Andy Denny, luthier at Denny Banjos, USA



#### C DICTUM® RABBET BLOCK PLANES

This plane is ideal for cutting rabbets or trimming tenons to fit. End-grain can also be worked thanks to the low blade angle of 12°. A 25° bevel results in a cutting angle of 37°. Fine blade-adjustment mechanism, non-adjustable mouth. Comes with plane sock made of a jute-cotton blend with drawstring. Blade width 44 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm

Overall length 160 mm  
860 g

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703335**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703345**

HSS Cryo **No. 703443**

Repl. Blade

SK4 steel **No. 703415**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703852**

HSS Cryo **No. 728882**



#### B DICTUM® BLOCK PLANE

Compact, solid block plane, which lies comfortably in the hand due to its polished cap iron. The mouth opening can be precisely adjusted to the respective requirement via an adjustable throat. Fine blade adjustment and cap iron fastening via smooth-running brass screws. Comes with plane bag made of jute-cotton mixture with drawstring. Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 160 mm  
840 g

1 20°

For processing wood in the direction of the grain. Results in a normal cutting angle of 45° at a 25° bevel angle.

Blade angle 20°

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703330**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703340**

HSS Cryo **No. 703361**

Repl. Blade

SK4 Steel **No. 703414**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703851**

HSS Cryo **No. 703441**

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



► DICTUM® Block planes, 12° which have been purchased before 2012 need replacement blade No. 703429. Japanese blades made of Blue Paper Steel or HSS blades are not available for these models.

2 12°

For fine cuts and end grain processing. Bevel angle 25°. This results in a cutting angle of 37°.

Blade angle 12°

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703334**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703344**

HSS Cryo **No. 703362**

Repl. Blade

SK4 Steel **No. 703414**

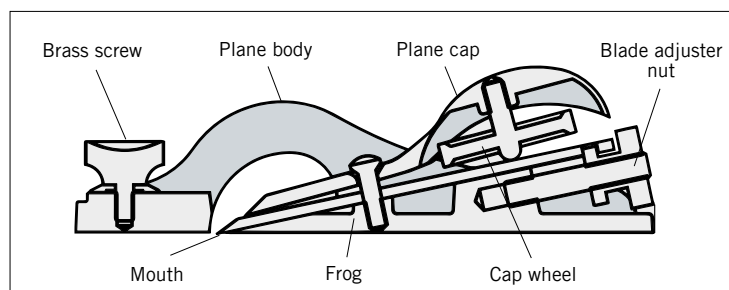
Blue P. Steel **No. 703851**

HSS Cryo **No. 703441**

► For an overview of the different steel materials see page 102.



► All block planes come with a plane sock.







### A DICTUM® RABBET BLOCK PLANES, ADJUSTABLE MOUTH

Universal plane, ideal for finishing rebates, tenons and shoulders. Its low blade angle of 12° makes it suitable for many uses, including trueing and smoothing end grain, difficult grains and long grain, both across and in the direction of the grain, and even working into corners. The movable shoe adjusts the mouth opening for fine shavings or rough stock removal. Bevel angle 25°. Results in a cutting angle of 37°. Smooth fine-adjustment of the blade, comes with

plane sock made of a jute-cotton blend with drawstring.  
Blade width 44 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
740 g

Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703408**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703350**  
HSS Cryo **No. 703444**

Repl. Blade  
SK4 steel **No. 703415**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703852**  
HSS Cryo **No. 728882**



Available April 2021.

**B DICTUM® BLOCK PLANE HOLSTER**  
Leather holster made of cowhide for easy access to block planes on the tool wall or in the tool cabinet. Easy fastening by means of screws (not included in the delivery) through 5 pre-punched holes.

Fits No. 703330, 703340, 703361.  
**No. 715132**

Fits No. 703334, 703344, 703361.  
**No. 715133**

Fits No. 703335, 703345, 703443.  
**No. 715134**



Plane not included!



**C DICTUM® SHOULDER PLANES**  
Ideal plane for precision fitting of rebates, shoulders and grooves. Its high-precision body seats firmly when finishing tenon shoulders. The mouth opening can easily be adjusted with a setscrew. The textured sides provide a

good grip in any situation. Blade angle 15°, bevel angle 25°, resulting in a cutting angle of 40°. Blade thickness 3 mm  
Blade material SK4 Steel

**1 Blade width 13 mm**  
Overall length 135 mm  
350 g  
**No. 703349**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703438**

**2 Blade width 19 mm**  
Overall length 235 mm  
980 g  
**No. 703339**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703424**



### Hardness test for plane blades

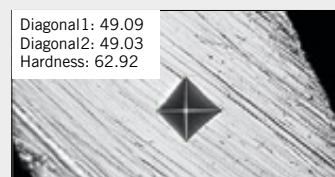
Even slight deviations from the target hardness value of a plane blade can lead to nicks in the blade or reduce the service life of the blade. In spite of a computer controlled hardening process, it is absolutely essential to check the hardness.

The conventional Rockwell hardness test far behind the blade edge basically does not provide any direct information about the hardness value in the blade. The different material thicknesses and the areas that are hardened can result in enormous hardness deviations.

We check the hardness of our DICTUM plane blades using the Vickers hardness testing method, which enables us to take a direct, non-destructive measurement at the cutting edge and thus the operating area of the blade.

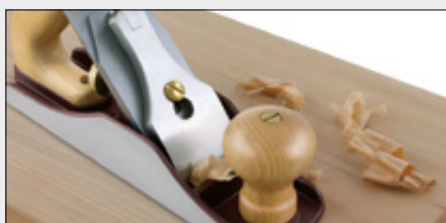


Diagonal1: 49.09  
Diagonal2: 49.03  
Hardness: 62.92



Our DICTUM planes can be equipped and retrofitted with three different kinds of blades:

SK4 Steel



Standard blade with excellent price/performance ratio.

- Good sharpness and easy to sharpen
- Long edge life and good edge retention
- Steel hardness approximately 61 HRC

**We offer free sharpening service on all our plane blades. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings

Blue Paper Steel cutting edge



The effectiveness of our double-layered blades with a Blue Paper Steel cutting edge has stood the test of generations in Japanese planes, chisels, not to mention knives and swords. They combine the following extraordinary properties:

- Excellent sharpness
- Outstanding durability and edge life
- Easy to sharpen
- Vibration-damping effect of the double-layered steel at significant cutting force
- As hard a cutting edge as possible (63 HRC)

Low-temperature treated HSS Cryo steel



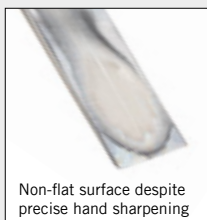
Due to their high hardness (approx. 64 HRC) and toughness, these plane blades are resistant to careless handling, which often occurs during everyday workshop tasks or on-site assembling. This steel also retains its hardness during machine dry grinding.

Ideal for:

- Exotic hardwoods, which frequently contain mineral particles
- Edged-glued wood and particle boards with hard synthetic resin components

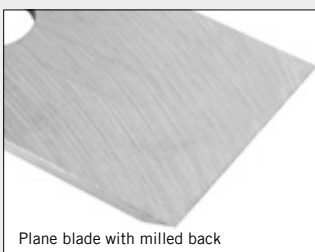
The cryogenic (low-temperature treatment) process increases the service life and makes the blade cutting edge finer and sharper. The back faces is trued using a special method to obtain exact, flat surfaces with minimal grinding marks. Both methods (cryogenic hardening and truing of the back) allow for sharpening the hard steel with minimum time expenditure.

### Flatness and roughness of the back of the blade on chisels and planes



Non-flat surface despite precise hand sharpening

Truing and mirror-grinding the back of chisel and plane blades for the first time after purchase can be a very time-consuming job. However, this process is necessary for the sharpness of the blade. Many manufacturers do not pay much attention to the blade or the plane blade back during production, because either they are not aware of the importance of their function or they just want to save costs. This carelessness often makes the blade unusable. A customer is impressed at first glance by a highly polished surface. However, it only becomes clear when truing the back that this polishing effect is achieved by means of a buffing wheel and that the blade edges can be severely blunted during the process. This results in a long sharpening process or a reduced contact surface of the blade.



Plane blade with milled back

The back of the blade often also shows signs of the milling process. These visible grinding marks take a great deal of time to remove.



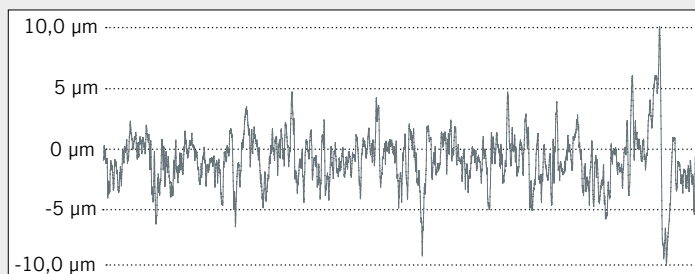
DICTUM HSS Cryo blade

The tools that we ourselves manufacture have, whenever possible, very low roughness and flatness tolerances. We check compliance with these tolerances by random sampling with a roughness measuring instrument and a measuring arm. This minimises the amount of sharpening required by the customer with very hard cutting steels in particular.

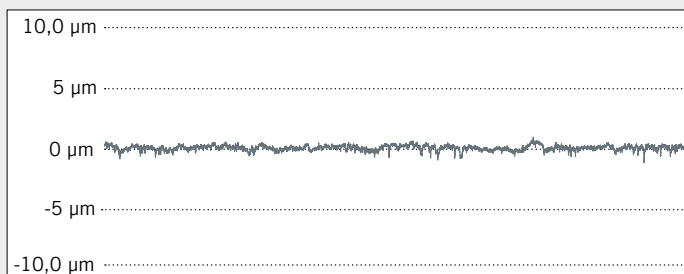


Pride Abrasive sharpening stones for HSS steels available at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Roughness test ( $R_z$ value) on a plane blade showing signs of the grinding process:



### Roughness test ( $R_z$ value) on a DICTUM plane blade:







### A DICTUM® LOW-ANGLE JACK PLANE NO. 62

Because of its length, shape and accessories, the No. 62 is the most universal type of plane and was already very popular in Stanley's time. Apart from finishing, its long design also makes it ideal for trueing surfaces. The blade, whose cutting angle can be easily adjusted by regrinding the bevel, handles even end grain, knotty wood and difficult grain without problems. Once assembled, the supplied »hot dog« (side handle), the indentations and the strong cap iron with finger recesses ensure optimal ergonomic planing. For fine cuts and end grain processing. Blade angle 12°. A 25° bevel angle results in a cutting angle of 37°.



»Hot Dog« ensures ergonomic hand position

Blade width 51 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 355 mm  
2.67 kg

#### Hot Dog right (for Left-handed Use)

Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703419**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703352**  
HSS Cryo **No. 703445**

#### Repl. Blade

SK4 Steel **No. 703421**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703996**  
HSS Cryo **No. 728883**

#### Hot Dog left (for Right-handed Use)

Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703420**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703351**  
HSS Cryo **No. 703446**

#### Repl. Blade

SK4 Steel **No. 703421**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703996**  
HSS Cryo **No. 728883**

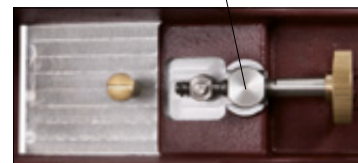
Easy adjustment of the plane mouth via the front handle

A

Main grip tilted downwards for optimum force transmission and balance

Lateral adjustment with setscrew

Body made from cast steel



Optimised design for ergonomic use as a shooting board plane.

B



**B DIGITAL PLANE BLADE SET UP GAUGE**  
For adjusting the cutting depth of plane blades. Magnetic surface, high accuracy of 0.01 mm.  
Measuring range 0-4 mm  
**No. 714184**



Plane not included!

► Instructions on how to set up planes available in our blog at [www.dictum.com/blog](http://www.dictum.com/blog)

C



### C LEATHER CASE FOR DICTUM® PLANE BLADES

High-quality leather case made of fine cowhide to protect or store plane blades with a width of 35-60 mm. The attached strap can be tied through the plane blade and the holes that are punched in the case to prevent the blade itself from slipping out. Fits all DICTUM plane blades, excluding DICTUM rabbit and pocket planes. Also suitable for pierced plane blades of other manufacturers.

**No. 704620**

Plane blades not included!



► All spare parts for DICTUM planes are available separately.

### Cast steel vs. grey cast iron

Planes in the medium and low price segment are often made of grey cast iron. This material is easy to cast but tends to fracture. A breaking test regarding the sides of the plane body shows that the cast steel does not break but only deforms under high pressure.

Deformed plane body, not broken



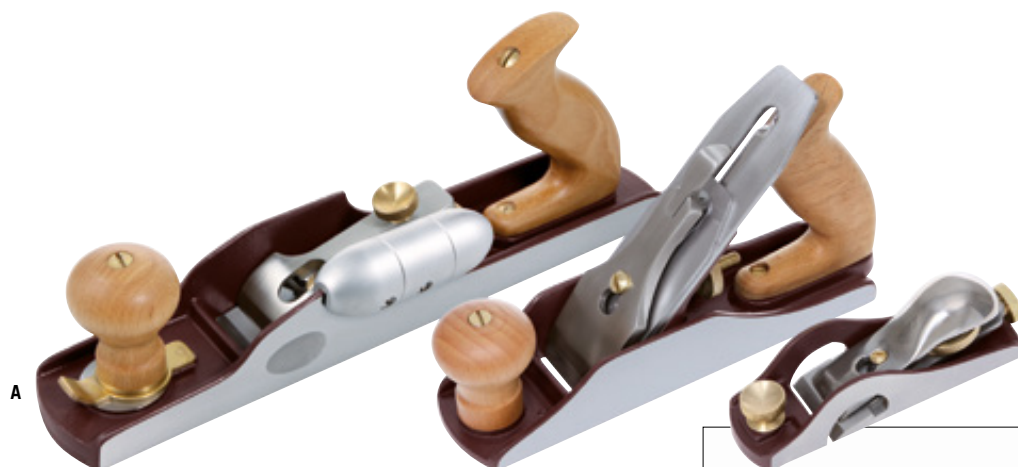
Deformation test with a DICTUM plane body made of cast steel

Broken plane body



Deformation test with a plane body made of grey cast iron



**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



### A DICTUM® ENTRY-LEVEL PLANE SET *Price advantage*

With these three types of planes you are well prepared for most planing tasks.

Long low-angle jack plane for right-handed use (No. 703420, 703351 and 703369) or for left-handed use (No. 703419, 703352 and 703368)

- Finishing
- Joining
- Trueing
- Chamfering

#### Right-handed Use

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703427**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703357**

HSS Cryo **No. 703448**

Smoothing plane No. 4 (No. 703331, 703341 and 703359)

- Finishing and smoothing

Rabbet block plane (No. 703335, 703345 and 703443)

- Working on rebates and tenons
- Smoothing small workpieces (including end grain)

#### Left-handed Use

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703428**

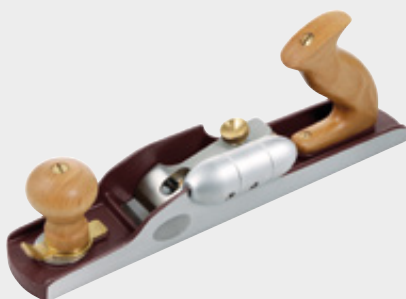
Blue P. Steel **No. 703358**

HSS Cryo **No. 703447**



► For DICTUM® Entry-Level Plane Set in T-Loc Systainer® see p. 106.

### Is there a »universal« plane and which planes would be useful for a beginner?



The most **universal type of plane** is the No. 62 or No. 610 low-angle jack plane.

Sized midway between the standard No. 4 bench plane and the No. 6 fore plane, the longer sole makes this plane suitable for finishing as well as joining and trueing.

The blade sits bevel-up in the plane body. This makes the cutting angle easy to adjust (from normal to difficult-to-plane wood through to end grain) by regrinding the bevel angle. For frequent changes, we recommend a second blade.

The adjustable plane mouth allows both thick and very fine shavings.

With a »Hot Dog« also suitable for planing end grain.

- Lie-Nielsen No. 703706, 703816, online
- DICTUM No. 703420, 703419, p. 103
- Veritas No. 703886, 703896, online

If you want a **second plane**, we recommend a bench plane No. 4 or 4½ for smoothing the preplaned surfaces.

- Lie-Nielsen No. 703712, 703736, 703751, online
- Veritas No. 703680, online
- DICTUM No. 703331, 703409, p. 105
- Kunz No. 703241, 703146, p. 108, 109
- Japanese planes No. 703980, 703981, p. 111
- E.C.E. No. 703105, 703109, p. 116

A **good combination** with the first two planes is a low-angle block plane, preferably with shoulder function for small workpieces as well as bevels and rebates

- Lie-Nielsen No. 703714, 703792, online
- Veritas No. 703693, p. 97
- DICTUM No. 703334, 703335, 703408, p. 100, 101
- Stanley No. 703011, online

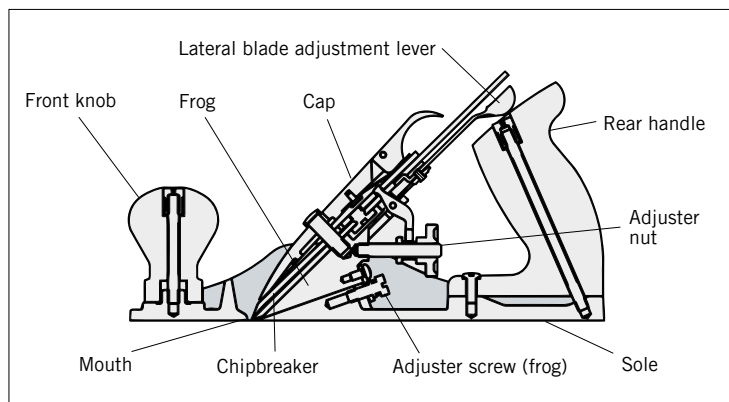
### ► YOUR EXCLUSIVE BENEFIT

**Premium sharpening service**

High classed planes include the **unlimited sharpening service**. Just send us your plane blade whenever you feel it is not sharp enough. You will get it back sharpened free of charge within a few days. All you pay is the postage.

**Sharpening pass**

All planes come with a sharpening pass for **two free sharpenings**. Send us your plane blade and we will return it razor-sharp within a few days. All you pay is the postage.



### DICTUM® Bench Planes

With their »Bedrock« design, these planes allow chatter-free cutting thanks to the fully supported blade and a mouth that can be adjusted without removing the cap iron and blade. The rear handle with its width of 26 mm offers a comfortable grip even for large hands. Lateral blade adjustment through easy-to-reach side lever. Cutting angle 45°.



#### A DICTUM® SMOOTHING PLANE NO. 4

The standard smoothing plane is capable of taking the finest of shavings, even on woods with random grain direction.

Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
2.25 kg

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703331**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703341**

HSS Cryo **No. 703359**

Repl. Blade

SK4 Steel **No. 703411**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703850**

HSS Cryo **No. 703440**



#### B DICTUM® SMOOTHING PLANE NO. 4½

The perfect plane for large surfaces, which are smoothed quickly thanks to the 60 mm wide blade. With its 3 mm thick blade and weight of 2.3 kg, it absorbs vibrations and ensures smooth cutting even on difficult grain.

Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm

Overall length 265 mm  
2.6 kg

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703409**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703376**

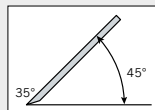
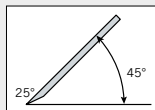
Repl. Blade

SK4 Steel **No. 703413**

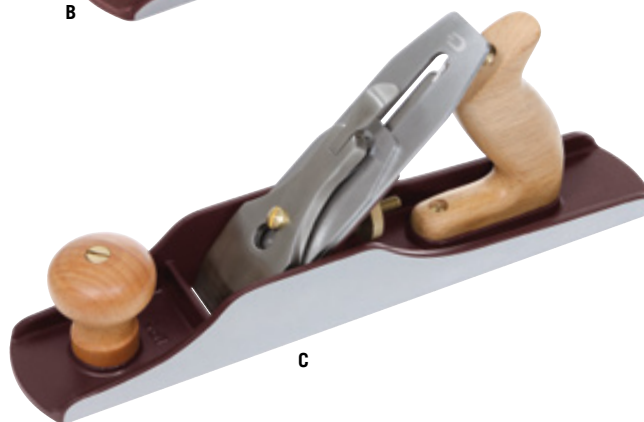
Blue P. Steel **No. 703999**

### »Bevel Down« planes

- Chipbreaker required
- Cutting angle defined by frog angle



NEW:  
with Japanese  
plane blade



#### C DICTUM® JACK PLANES NO. 5

The increased length and weight compared to the No. 4 plane makes this one ideal not only for smoothing but also for levelling surfaces.

Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 355 mm

2.77 kg

Blade material

SK4 Steel **No. 703332**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703342**

HSS Cryo **No. 703360**

Repl. Blade

SK4 Steel **No. 703411**

Blue P. Steel **No. 703850**

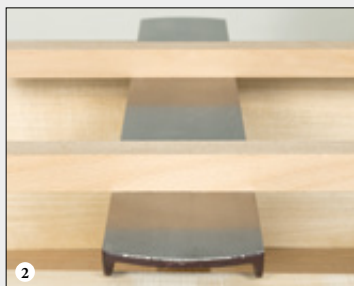
HSS Cryo **No. 703440**

### Checking the evenness of metal plane soles

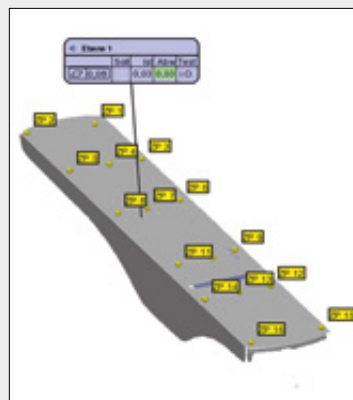
Maintaining evenness tolerances is particularly indispensable when producing long cast iron plane bodies. The user can use a straight-edge at least as long as the plane body and a thickness gauge to get an indication of the evenness of the plane sole. To do this, the plane sole is first held up against the light along with the straight-edge. The thickness gauge can be used at the points where the light shines through to determine the extent of the deviation in these areas. (1)

However, this check does not give any indications concerning potential warping of the plane sole that would adversely affect the planing result. Two machine-planed bars can be placed on top of the plane sole to check this. Deviations can be detected by aligning the plane sole over the surfaces of the bars. (2)

Neither test option provides accurate results, but instead only indicates a potential deviation. We check the



plane soles of our DICTUM planes using a measuring arm. Within just a few seconds, this measuring tool shows the deviation from the nominal dimension in hundredths of millimetres through gridlike scanning of points on the plane sole. (3)





**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)

**A**

**A** DICTUM® FORE PLANE NO. 6  
Mid-size plane ideal for trueing and joining of medium-sized boards.  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 450 mm  
3.73 kg  
Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703333**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703374**

Repl. Blade  
SK4 Steel **No. 703413**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703999**

NEW:  
with Japanese  
plane blade

**B**

**B** DICTUM® JOINTER PLANE NO. 7  
Most popular size of jointer plane, ideal for trueing and producing exact joints and fittings.  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
4 kg

Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703338**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703375**

Repl. Blade  
SK4 Steel **No. 703413**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703999**



*It is a delight to use the Dictum benchplane No.6! I use it for making Greenland paddles. The photo shows Red and Yellow Cedar shavings during flattening and straightening the surfaces for laminating.*

Ruud Nijpjes, Greenland Paddle-maker (Qajaqworks), Netherlands.

**C**

**C** DICTUM® ENTRY-LEVEL PLANE SET, IN T-LOC SYSTAINER®

**Price advantage**

Basic set for all plane work, stowed safely away in a durable systainer made of high-quality polymer with a specially fitted inlay. 396 x 296 x 105 mm

Long low-angle jack plane for right-handed use (No. 703420, 703351 and 703369) or left-handed use (No. 703419, 703352 and 703368)

- Finishing
- Joining
- Trueing
- Chamfering

Smoothing plane No. 4 (No. 703331, 703341 and 703359)

- Finishing and smoothing

Rabbit block plane (No. 703335, 703345 and 703443)

- Working on rebates and tenons
- Smoothing small workpieces (including end grain)

**Right-handed Use**

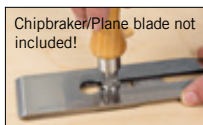
Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703434**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703355**  
HSS Cryo **No. 703450**

**Left-handed Use**

Blade material  
SK4 Steel **No. 703435**  
Blue P. Steel **No. 703356**  
HSS Cryo **No. 703449**

**D**

**D** DICTUM® CHIPBREAKER SCREWDRIVER  
Perfectly fitting screwdriver for setting chipbreakers. The 12.7 mm wide blade is exactly made to fit the slot of the chipbreakers adjustment screw. Fits almost all common chipbreakers of the plane series DICTUM, Lie-Nielsen, Kunz, E.C.E., Ulmia, etc. Stainless steel blade and ferrule, varnished red beech handle.



Exactly fitting blade shape for better safety:

- Optimum force transmission to the screw with minimal effort
- Exact fit of the blade prevents slippage and damage to the slotted screw
- Improved work safety
- Screwdriver is ideal for tightening the double-jaw honing guide No. 711400

Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Blade width 12.7 mm  
Overall length 125 mm  
**No. 717897**



Not included!



► All spare parts for DICTUM planes are available separately.







A

**A SYSTAINER® T-LOC WITH ENTRY-LEVEL PLANE SET INLAY**  
Our systainer and its specially manufactured inlay provide a tailored transport and storage system for the three most common hand planes. Increasingly, building and assembling furniture involves a combination of hand tools and

power tools. The systainer provides a safe place to store the planes, and can be stacked easily in any combination with all power tool systainers (Festool, Mafell) to allow for convenient transportation. 396 x 296 x 105 mm 1.4 kg

No. 718805

B



### B DICTUM® WAX FOR PLANES

The DICTUM wax for planes is not only used to prevent metal planes from rusting with long-lasting effect, but also reduces the friction between the plane sole and the workpiece. The application of stains, oils or lacquers is not affected. Graphite and silicone-free. Temperature range from -10 °C to +270 °C. Comes with application sponge. Content 250 ml

No. 810149

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Plane not included!



### C DICTUM® SPOKESHAVE

This spokeshave from the DICTUM series has a mouth opening of 0.5-0.8 mm when adjusted for fine shavings. This makes it an indispensable tool for bow making as well as for cutting stretchers and rounding edges in furniture making. Radius of round version: 40 mm.

- Precisely adjustable depth feed
- Comfortable large wood handle for easy control of the tool
- Taper-ground cap for full-surface contact pressure without shavings clogging the tool - simplifies rework

Blade width 51 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
320 g

#### 1 Straight Sole

Blade material  
SK4 Steel No. 703336  
Blue P. Steel No. 703346  
HSS Cryo No. 703363

Repl. Blade  
SK4 Steel No. 703416  
Blue P. Steel No. 703995  
HSS Cryo No. 703442

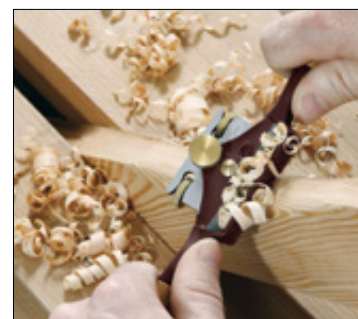
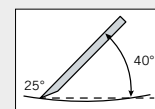
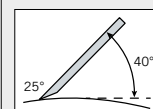
#### 2 Round Sole

Blade material  
SK4 Steel No. 703337  
Blue P. Steel No. 703347

Repl. Blade  
SK4 Steel No. 703417  
Blue P. Steel No. 704055

### Spokeshaves

- Large handles for high level of tool control
- For working on straight, convex and concave surfaces



D



### D DICTUM® METAL SPOKESHAVE, STRAIGHT SOLE

More than 20 variations of this spokeshave model have been produced since 1900 by Stanley and other tool manufacturers. Unlike the original version, our model is cast from stainless steel to permanently protect all handle areas from rust. The spokeshave can be used in all types of workshops where curved pieces are processed - from boat construction, staircase construction and bow making to chair and furniture making.

- Handle recesses on the front and rear side near the blade allow for precise guidance
- Allows for comfortable planing of wide panels due to handle recesses under the handles

- Taper-ground cap for full-surface contact pressure without shavings clogging the tool - simplifies rework

Blade width 51 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
400 g

Blade material  
SK4 Steel No. 703433  
Blue P. Steel No. 703439

Repl. Blade  
SK4 Steel No. 704056  
Blue P. Steel No. 704240

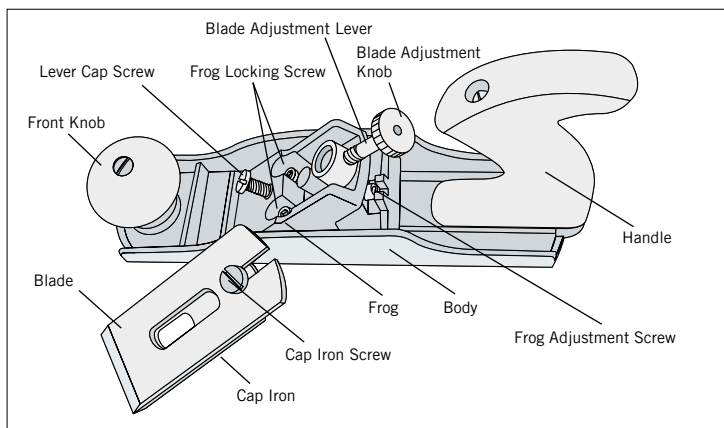


## Kunz® Planes

Kunz is known for its solid planes of wear-resistant grey cast iron and good value for money. The standard tool steel blades are hardened to approx. 62 HRC. For planing extremely hard woods, durable HSS blades (approx. 65 HRC) are available as accessories. Their green surfaces make the Kunz planes, made in Germany, unique.

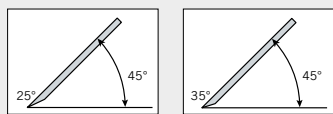
### Kunz® Plus Planes

These planes from the Kunz series »Kunz plus« impress with their precise technology and use of top-quality materials such as domestic cherry wood. The blade is adjusted (lateral and depth) by only one screw, a technique that was first developed with the legendary Norris planes. Kunz uses the cap iron screw as a connection for all adjustments. These planes are very handy due to the low front knob and the low construction. The short, 3.5 mm thick blade gives additional space at the rear handle. Precisely ground bodies made from annealed grey cast iron. Cutting angle 45°.



#### »Bevel Down« planes

- Chipbreaker required
- Cutting angle defined by frog angle



#### **A KUNZ® PLUS SMOOTHING PLANE NO. 4**

The standard smoothing plane is capable of taking the finest shavings even on woods with random grain direction. Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Blade width 50 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
1.8 kg

**No. 703241**

Repl. Blade **No. 703242**

► *Toothed blades for Kunz® Plus planes available online.*



#### **B KUNZ® PLUS JACK PLANE NO. 5**

Universal plane which, thanks to its long sole and extra weight, can also be used for trueing as a jointer plane. Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Blade width 50 mm  
Overall length 345 mm  
2.1 kg

**No. 703245**

Repl. Blade **No. 703242**



#### **C KUNZ® PLUS JOINTER PLANE NO. 6**

Mid-size plane ideal for trueing and joining of medium-sized boards. Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Overall length 455 mm  
2.83 kg

**No. 703247**

Repl. Blade **No. 703248**

#### Spoilt for choice:

Do you just want to buy a »universal plane« to start with? Or perhaps you want to know which combination of planes would be most useful?

► *For further information see pages 104 + 117.*

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings

### A KUNZ® PLUS JOINTER PLANE NO. 7

Most popular size of jointer plane, ideal for trueing and producing exact joints and fittings.

Blade thickness 3.5 mm

Blade width 60 mm

Overall length 560 mm

4 kg

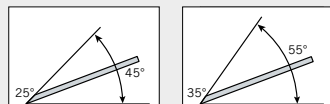
No. 703298

Repl. Blade No. 703248

Available September 2021.

#### »Bevel Up« planes

- No chipbreaker required
- Simple adjustment of cutting angle by changing bevel angle



A

Adjustable mouth opening

B

### B KUNZ® PLUS LOW-ANGLE JACK PLANE NO. 62

This plane easily copes with even the most difficult jobs, such as planing end grain and long-grained or knotty wood. The blade is set bevel-up in the milled bed at a 12° angle. Bevel angle 25°. Results in a cutting angle of 37°. The mouth opening can be adjusted via the moveable shoe.

Blade thickness 3.5 mm

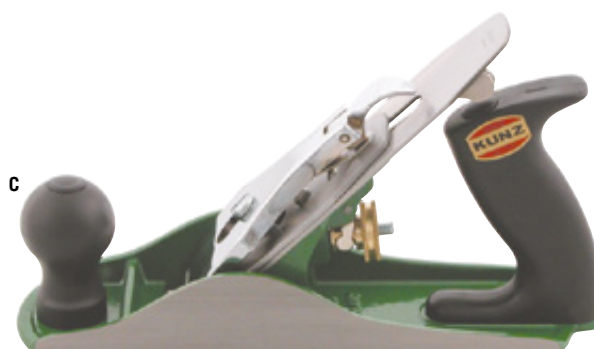
Blade width 50 mm

Overall length 350 mm

2.3 kg

No. 703296

Repl. Blade No. 703297



C

### C KUNZ® SMOOTHING PLANE NO. 4

The standard smoothing plane is capable of taking the finest shavings even on woods with random grain direction. A major argument in favour of this »Bailey« style plane is its cheap price. The cutting depth and lateral blade position can be adjusted with a knurled nut and an adjustment lever. Double blade, blade angle 45°.

Blade thickness 2.5 mm

Blade width 50 mm

Overall length 240 mm

1.5 kg

No. 703146

Repl. Blade No. 703147



D

### D KUNZ® BLOCK PLANE NO. 102

Handy plane for craft carpentry and musical instrument making. Blade angle 25°, bevel angle 25°. Bevel up blade results in a cutting angle of 50° which is suited best for hard woods.

Blade thickness 2.5 mm

Blade width 33 mm

Overall length 130 mm

310 g

No. 703140

Repl. Blade No. 703141

HSS Blade

(40° Bevel) No. 703142

Toothed Bl. No. 703156



E

### E KUNZ® POCKET PLANE NO. 101

Compact block plane, simple design. Cutting angle 38°. No chipbreaker.

Blade thickness 2 mm

Blade width 25 mm

Overall length 85 mm

120 g

No. 703154

Repl. Blade No. 703130

HSS Blade No. 703155

### F KUNZ® POCKET PLANE NO. 100

Same specifications like No. 703154, but with tongue-shaped handle. No chipbreaker.

Blade thickness 2 mm

Blade width 25 mm

Overall length 85 mm

160 g

No. 703120

Repl. Blade No. 703130

HSS Blade No. 703155



F

### G KUNZ® BULLNOSE PLANE NO. 75

For finishing rabbets, shoulders and grooves. Cutting angle 38°. No chipbreaker.

Blade thickness 2 mm

Blade width 26 mm

Overall length 100 mm

250 g

No. 703118

Repl. Blade No. 703138

HSS Blade No. 703157



G

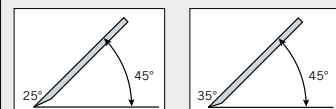


More Kunz® planes available online.

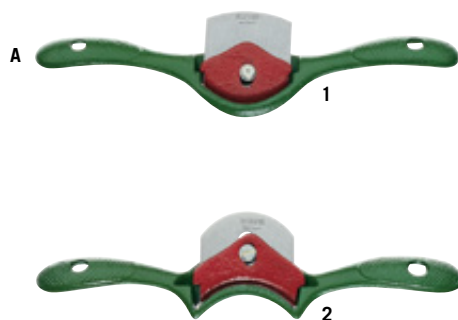
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### »Bevel Down« planes

- Chipbreaker required
- Cutting angle defined by frog angle



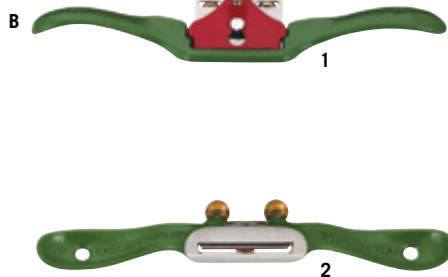




**A KUNZ® SPOKESHAVES WITH-OUT FINE BLADE ADJUSTMENT**  
For concave and convex surfaces, such as chair seats, hand rails or round bars. The concave version No. 55 (350 g) has an inside radius of 48 mm, the convex version No. 50 (250 g) an outside radius of 48 mm.

Blade width 52 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 250 mm

Sole  
**1 convex No. 703124**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703134**  
**2 concave No. 703125**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703135**



**B KUNZ® SPOKESHAVES WITH FINE BLADE ADJUSTMENT**

For fine shavings when working on flat and long curved surfaces. The blade depth can be precisely adjusted. Radius of round version 35 mm.  
Blade width 52 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm

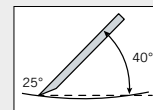
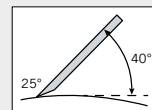
Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

### Spokeshaves

- Large handles for high level of tool control
- For working on straight, convex and concave surfaces



Overall length 250 mm  
320 g

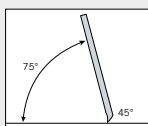
Sole  
**1 straight No. 703127**  
**2 round No. 703129**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703137**  
HSS Blade **No. 703139**



**C KUNZ® CABINET SCRAPER NO. 80**  
For smoothing heavily structured woods and removing glue and paper remnants from veneered surfaces. Includes 1.1 mm thick scraper blade.  
Blade angle 110°.  
Blade width 70 mm  
Overall length 275 mm  
640 g  
**No. 703121**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703131**  
Toothed Bl. **No. 703153**

### Scraping planes

- Scrape surfaces without tear-out, even on difficult woods
- Cut using raised-edge burr (scraper)



### Spoilt for choice:

Do you just want to buy a »universal plane« to start with? Or perhaps you want to know which combination of planes would be most useful?

► **For further information see pages 104 + 117.**

### WIE WIR MÖBEL BAUEN - UND WARUM

Michael Pekovich:

There is a growing appreciation for handmade items and an understanding of the need to fill our lives with fewer objects, that are useful and meaningful. How can carpenters respond to this call? Mike Pekovich explains which projects are worth the time and effort and how they can improve the quality of life. This book provides a lot of important, detailed and clearly illustrated information for designers and furniture makers. In terms of completeness, clarity and presentation, the author covers all the basic aspects of the subject, from essential tips on wood selection, design considerations and working methods to finishing. A series of projects explained in detail completes the book.

218 pages, hardcover, coloured illustrations on every page, 210 x 280 mm.

**In German.**  
**No. 714417**



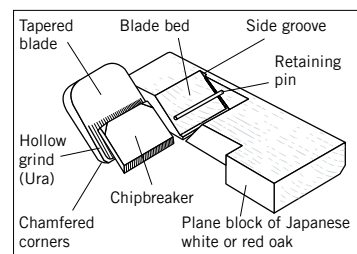
► Bridge City block and bench planes available online.

## Japanese Planes (Kanna)



Japanese planes bring the wood's true inherent beauty to the fore. Kanna have been reduced to their most essential plane functions. The double-layered, tapered blade is much thicker than standard European blades, allowing chatter-free planing. The cap serves as a chipbreaker. The numerous adjustment mechanisms found on European planes are completely absent.

Before using a Kanna for the first time, the blade must be honed and properly fitted in the tapered grooves of the body. To minimise friction, the plane sole can be given a slightly concave profile using a scraping plane. Anyone willing to make the initial effort of setting up and learning how to use these fascinating tools will be rewarded with exceptional results. Unless otherwise stated, the blade angle is 40°. Comes with instructions.



**A JAPANESE MINI PLANE**  
The world's smallest Japanese plane with hand-forged double-layered single blade (cutting edge of Blue Paper Steel) without chipbreaker is not only a real eye-catcher but also fully functional.



Ideal for cabinetmaking and model-building. Plane body of white oak. Comes in a wooden case.

Blade width 13 mm  
Blade thickness 2.6 mm  
Overall length 55 mm  
20 g  
**No. 703069**

### **B ENTRY-LEVEL SMOOTHING PLANE**

Small Japanese smoothing plane for beginners with a cutting edge of Blue Paper Steel. Body made of Japanese white oak. Comfortable handling due to small block size.

Overall length 150 mm  
Blade width 42 mm  
Blade thickness 4.5 mm  
290 g  
**No. 704291**

Overall length 180 mm  
Blade width 42 mm  
Blade thickness 4.5 mm  
330 g  
**No. 704290**



Overall length 210 mm  
Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 4.5 mm  
460 g  
**No. 703981**

Overall length 255 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 6.5 mm  
860 g  
**No. 703980**



Old anchor chain links are excellent material for plane blade bodies.



Before forge-welding, the packet of the soft iron body and the hard steel strip is heated to approx. 1050 °C in the smith's furnace.



**C SMALL SMOOTHING PLANE**  
Handmade plane with cutting edge of White Paper Steel. Japanese white oak body. Comfortable handling due to small block size.  
Blade width 43 mm  
Blade thickness 6 mm  
Overall length 185 mm  
370 g  
**No. 717097**



**D »SMOOTHING PLANE« FOR HARDWOOD**  
Exclusive at DICTUM:  
Ideal for working hardwoods. The steep angle of the blade (45° instead of 40°) reduces the danger of tear-outs when working against the grain. The cutting steel made of the highest-quality powder HSS (66 HRC, very tough) gives the

double-layered blade an outstanding edge life even with other wear-intensive materials, like exotic woods, laminates or glued woods. Japanese white oak block.  
Blade width 55 mm  
Blade thickness 6 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
750 g  
**No. 718088**



**E PREMIUM QUALITY SMOOTHING PLANE**  
Made in a Japanese master workshop. The blade is made of White Paper Steel and very rare soft iron (manufactured before 1900), which thanks to the silicone particles smoothes the waterstone during grinding and opens the pores. Distinguishable by the black spots in the iron. Japanese white oak plane body.  
Blade width 65 mm  
Blade thickness 6 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
1.26 kg  
**No. 717001**

### ► DICTUM® Blog – Setting up a Japanese plane

On our blog, you will learn everything you need to know to set up your Japanese plane, as well as tips and tricks for using Japanese planes and much more.

- Step-by-step instructions by a professional
- Various illustrative pictures
- Videos on setting up and using Japanese planes



[www.dictum.com/blog](http://www.dictum.com/blog)



## Chiyozuru

Chiyozuru is one of the most well-known names for plane blades and other woodworking tools in Japan. Many of these forged tools from current and previous generations are viewed as national cultural treasures in Japan. Furthermore, the tools have also received numerous awards. After a thirteen-year apprenticeship under his master, Chiyozuru Sadahide II (fourth generation) was granted permission to manufacture and sell his own tools bearing the Chiyozuru name.



### A CHIYOZURU PREMIUM QUALITY SMOOTHING PLANE

This outstanding tool is made using Blue Paper Steel (Aogami 1), while its soft layer is made from wrought iron, which has now become rare (manufactured primarily before 1900). Due to the intercalated silicon it contains, soft iron trues the waterstone during grinding and opens its pores. This is indicated by the black dots in the iron. The tool carries an engraving of the name Chiyozuru. Plane body made of Japanese white oak (Kashi). Comes in an elegant wooden casket.

Blade width 70 mm  
Blade thickness 8 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
1.3 kg

**No. 700466**



Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

### Spoilt for choice:

Do you just want to buy a »universal plane« to start with? Or perhaps you want to know which combination of planes would be most useful?

► For further information see pages 104 + 117.



► For a lapping plate and silicon carbide powder for truing the back of plane blades see chapter »Sharpening Devices«.



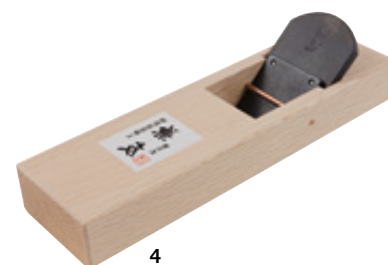
1



2



3



4

## Ready-to-use Japanese Planes with Replaceable Blades

The Kanna's remarkable smoothness is primarily attributable to its particularly thick plane blade, which generally must be sharpened by hand and set into the body before use. The Kanetomo planes allow you to forego these time-consuming steps by using replaceable blades. The blades fit flush into a recess in the back of the heavy, vibration-absorbing blade. The razor-sharp blades will produce first-class surface finishes even when working difficult materials.

### B SMOOTHING PLANE

#### »KANETOMO KANNA«

Japanese white oak body with non-adjustable chipbreaker. Comes with carbon steel blades.

1 Blade width 30 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
330 g

**No. 730753**

Repl. Blades, 5-Piece Set, Carbon Steel  
**No. 730802**

2 Blade width 42 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
475 g

**No. 730754**

Repl. Blades, 5-Piece Set, Carbon Steel

**No. 730803**

Repl. Blades, 5-Piece Set, HSS  
**No. 717075**

3 Blade width 50 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
760 g

**No. 730755**

Repl. Blades, 5-Piece Set, Carbon Steel

**No. 730804**

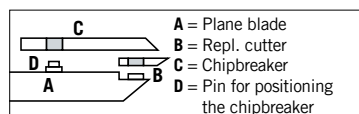
Repl. Blades, 5-Piece Set, HSS

**No. 717019**

1 Blade width 58 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
900 g

**No. 730756**

Repl. Blades, 5-Piece Set, Carbon Steel  
**No. 730805**



The blades can be replaced quickly and easily.





**A SCRAPING PLANE**  
Vertical blade. For trueing the soles of Japanese planes, working very hard woods and thin pieces. Plane across or diagonal to the grain. Japanese white oak body.  
Blade width 42 mm  
Blade thickness 6 mm  
Overall length 155 mm  
400 g  
**No. 717015**



**B COMPASS PLANE**  
The sole is curved along its length and width, making it perfect for shaping seat bottoms, bowls, stringed instrument bodies etc. Japanese white oak body.  
Blade width 36 mm  
Blade thickness 7 mm  
Overall length 155 mm  
340 g  
**No. 717020**

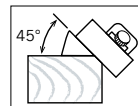


**D CHAMFER PLANE, SKEWED**  
For 45° bevels. The bevel width can be adjusted (0-16 mm). The chipbreaker and the slightly angled blade (skewed cut) allow it to be used even with random grain direction. Japanese white oak body.

Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 5.5 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
435 g  
**No. 717031**



**C CHAMFER PLANE**  
With removable fence for 30°, 45° and 60° bevels. Carbon steel blade, approx. 62 HRC. Screw chipbreaker, Japanese white oak body.  
Blade width 20 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 150 mm  
290 g  
**No. 717033**



#### DIE WERKZEUGE DES JAPANISCHEN SCHREINERS

Toshio Odate:  
Japanese saws and planes  
have different designs  
and uses compared with  
Western tools. Toshio  
Odate, a Japanese joiner and professor



of design, explains the tools and their use in detail, and describes technical and historical aspects. An indispensable reference work for anyone who wants to use Japanese tools properly. 198 pages, hardcover, lavishly illustrated with b/w photographs and drawings, 245 x 310 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713504**

#### WORKSHOP

##### SETTING UP JAPANESE PLANES

**Content:** We will get better acquainted with the nature of the Kanna, this simply constructed yet highly complex tool, through the sharpening and fitting of blade, chipbreaker and handling of the plane body. Handling is practiced on simple and increasingly complex sample pieces. The goal is to be able to cope with problem situations (knots, fibres opposing each other) and the creation of finer and more perfect surfaces. Working with the Kanna itself, the ease of its functionality, the gentle hissing of the unbelievably sharp blade will be a pleasure. Each participant will need a new, unused Kanna that will be set up in class.



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

## Traditional Chinese Planes

The basic design of the Chinese plane is similar to the Japanese Kanna. The major difference is that the Chinese plane can be used on either the pull or the push stroke, whereas the Japanese Kanna can only be used on the pull stroke. The larger Chinese planes have a cross-handle to facilitate push stroke use (which can be removed for use on the pull stroke). The blades are held in place using a wedge or cap. The slightly wave-shaped plane bodies are made of Indonesian redwood\*. The uncoated surfaces are worked using scrapers and are polished. The plane blades are made of wear-resistant HSS (approx. 64 HRC), or forged carbon steel (approx. 58 HRC) for special-purpose planes, which make Chinese planes visually appealing and solid all-round tools. Unless otherwise stated, the blade angle is 40°.

\* unless otherwise stated



**E BLOCK PLANE**  
Compact, rectangular-shaped body, made of Indonesian redwood. HSS blade with chipbreaker, no wedge. Also ideal when working with leather, e.g. to sharpen leather edges.  
Blade width 44 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 105 mm  
210 g  
**No. 703276**  
Repl. Blade **No. 702957**



**F SMOOTHING PLANE, BEVEL UP**  
This Chinese »bevel up« plane features an adjustable cutting angle by changing the micro bevel. Indonesian redwood body. Blade angle 25°, bevel angle 20°. This results in a cutting angle of 45°. Comes with HSS blade and chip-

breaker, without wedge.  
Blade width 44 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
415 g  
**No. 703272**  
Repl. blade **No. 702829**



**DAS HOLZ UND SEINE VERBINDUNGEN - TRADITIONELLE BAUTECHNIKEN IN EUROPA, JAPAN UND CHINA**  
Klaus Zwerger:  
A comprehensive representation of Eastern and Western timber architecture from two millennia in terms of its construction techniques, aesthetic design and ecological dimension. The book covers subjects such as materials and tools, typology and function of wood joints, log, post and roof construction. Elements are connected using wood joints which do not require the assistance of adhesives or metal connectors, but which hold the

wooden pieces together through skilful interlaving. With several hundred examples from Japan and 18 European countries. 320 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w illustrations and three-dimensional drawings, 230 x 304 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713944**



**F**

**F MINI PLANE**  
Indonesian redwood body with polished brass hardware. High-quality HSS blades.  
Blade width 13 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 80 mm



**1 Block Plane**  
Curved body, with horn. Also ideal when working with leather, e.g. to sharpen leather edges.  
65 g  
**No. 703273**  
Repl. Blade **No. 702976**

**2 Edge Plane**  
For working rabbets into the corners.  
40 g  
**No. 703274**  
Repl. Blade **No. 702949**

### **G RABBET PLANE**

Wave-shaped Indonesian redwood body. HSS plane blade with wooden wedge, no chipbreaker.  
Blade width 25 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 150 mm  
190 g  
**No. 703280**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703285**



### **Spoilt for choice:**

Do you just want to buy a »universal plane« to start with? Or perhaps you want to know which combination of planes would be most useful?  
► **For further information see pages 104 + 117.**

## Western-style Planes

### ➤ICTUM Low Plane Smoothers

Particularly during smoothing, the final workstep, it is important to guide the tool as close as possible to the workpiece and to optimally follow the grain. The Low Plane allows a quick change of hand position and pressure shift thanks to its low design without any handles getting in the way. Its light weight makes it easy to guide and reposition on the material, allowing it to be pushed or pulled depending on the situation. A 4.8 mm thick plane blade with additional chip breaker reduces vibration when working and ensures an exceptionally smooth cut.

Pear wood plane body with hard-wearing hornbeam sole. Oiled surface. Delivery includes Hock plane blade with micro bevel and polished back.

Available April 2021.



Milling plane outer contours



Ready-to-use grind with micro bevel

#### Wooden planes without handles

After the Roman planes with lateral openings (cross handles) in the plane body, smoothing planes without handles were already being used to the north of the Alps as early as in the Middle Ages. It was not until the 17th and 18th centuries that most planes were equipped with two handles. In 1975, English cabinetmaker James Krenov favoured a type of wooden plane without handles and described it in detail in one of his books. Thus, this form of hand plane is associated with his name to this day.



A



#### A DICTUM® LOW PLANE ONE HAND SMOOTHER

Compact smoothing plane for small surfaces and curved components, as well as for working edges. The plane body has recesses at the sides of the blade allowing easy adjustment. We recommend a combined plane hammer for adjusting the blade - brass for the plane blade /

wood for wedging and loosening the blade at the end of the plane body (e.g. No. 760119). Cutting angle 40°. Blade width 38 mm Blade thickness 4.8 mm Overall length 165 mm 360 g

**No. 760115**  
Repl. Blade **No. 760121**



#### B DICTUM® LOW PLANE SMOOTHER

For smoothing larger surfaces. The plane body has recesses at the sides of the blade allowing easy adjustment. We recommend a combined plane hammer for adjusting the blade - brass for the plane blade / wood for wedging and loosening the blade at the end of the planer body

(e.g. No. 760119). Cutting angle 45°. Blade width 45 mm Blade thickness 4.8 mm Overall length 235 mm 600 g  
**No. 760116**  
Repl. Blade **No. 760122**



B



C



#### C DICTUM® PLANE HAMMER

Combined plane hammer (brass / wood striking surfaces) for adjusting plane blades, as well as for securing and loosening the blade against the wedge or plane body. The heads can be replaced.

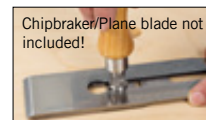
White oak handle.  
Head weight 115 g  
Overall length 300 mm  
**No. 760119**



D

#### D DICTUM® CHIPBREAKER SCREWDRIVER

Perfectly fitting screwdriver for setting chipbreakers. The 12.7 mm wide blade is exactly made to fit the slot of the chipbreakers adjustment screw. Fits almost all common chipbreakers of the plane series DICTUM, Lie-Nielsen, Kunz, E.C.E., Ulmia, etc. Stainless steel blade and ferrule, varnished red beech handle.



Chipbreaker/Plane blade not included!

Exactly fitting blade shape for better safety:

- Optimum force transmission to the screw with minimal effort
- Exact fit of the blade prevents slippage and damage to the slotted screw
- Improved work safety
- Screwdriver is ideal for tightening the double-jaw honing guide No. 711400

Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Blade width 12.7 mm  
Overall length 125 mm  
**No. 717897**



Not included!



**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)





## E.C.E.® Planes

Tried-and-tested cabinetmaker's planes from traditional German manufacturer Emmerich. Unless otherwise stated, the soles are made of extremely wear-resistant lignum vitae wood, whose self-lubricating effect ensures a smooth sliding action. The blades are sharpened and set ready for use. The blade angle and thus the cutting angle is 50° (except toothing plane).

### **A E.C.E.® PRIMUS REFORM SMOOTHING PLANE**

This classic smoothing plane is capable of taking the finest shavings even on woods with wild grain direction. Shaving thickness adjustable with a setscrew free of backlash. Blade pre-tensioning, adjustable mouth opening via a sliding plate and lateral blade adjustment via a rocker. The body and asymmetrical handle (for right-handers) are made of air-dried cherry wood.

Blade width 48 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
1.2 kg

**No. 703105**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703106**



**A**



**B**

### **B E.C.E.® SMOOTHING PLANE**

Traditional German smoothing plane with integrated wedge support for all smoothing and finishing tasks. The wedge can easily be removed by hand. Red beech body, hornbeam sole with toothed joint.

Blade width 48 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
1 kg

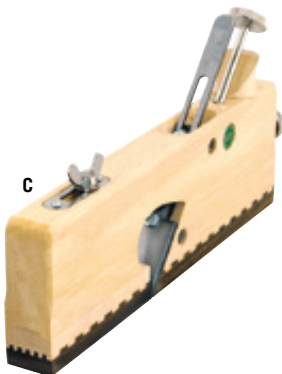
**No. 703109**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703100**

### **C E.C.E.® PRIMUS SHOULDER PLANE**

Ideal for making and finishing rabbets and adjusting tenons and hand rails. Backlash-free blade adjustment with knurled screw. The mouth opening is adjustable via the sliding plate held in a grout and a wing nut. Durable hornbeam body.

Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
840 g

**No. 703092**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703093**



**C**



**D**

### **D E.C.E.® SHOULDER PLANE**

Mouth opening adjustable via sliding plate and wing nut. Hornbeam body and sole.

Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
560 g

**No. 703108**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703110**



**E**

### **E E.C.E.® PRIMUS JOINTER PLANE**

Traditional jack plane for trueing and producing exact joints and fittings. A precise adjustment screw allows you to adjust the thickness of the shavings without backlash. Blade pre-tensioning, lateral blade adjustment via rocker lever.

Red beech body, hornbeam sole with toothed joint.

Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 600 mm  
3.5 kg

**No. 702232**  
Repl. Blade **No. 702233**





► More Ulmia® planes available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



#### A ULMIA® ROUTER PLANE

For making grooves, dovetails and other recessed surfaces. Plane body made of steamed, warp-resistant red beech. Three L-shaped blades, bevel angle 25°. Width 10, 15, 20 mm. Blade thickness 5.8 mm. Overall length 230 mm. 700 g.

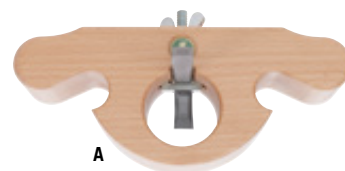
No. 703929

Repl. Blade

10 mm No. 703948

15 mm No. 703949

20 mm No. 703950



A



#### B RADIUS PLANE

For rounding or chamfering solid wood edges, multilayer board, corian etc. The HSS double blades (pre-cut and post-cut) allow clean cuts to be made even when working difficult grain. Maple body with brass fitting on the sole.

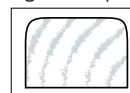
Model Radius 3 mm

Overall length 175 mm

155 g

No. 703095

Repl. Blade No. 703097



B

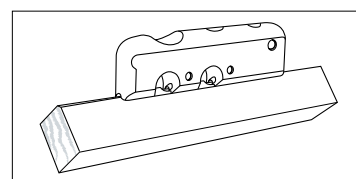
#### Cambered plane blades - Sharpening tips by DICTUM in cooperation with Garrett Hack

The cutting edge on most planes is rectangular, as this is the easiest form to grind and maintain. This blade shape is used for around 95 % of all work. But the problem with rectangular blades is that they leave tiny steps on broader plane surfaces. This is why it is advisable to use a blade with a minimally rounded edge if the workpiece will only be planed, and not sanded afterwards.



**Video** on sharpening cambered plane blades available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening



#### C SMALL BENCH PLANE

This compact smoothing plane is patterned after models manufactured by the Austrian company Weiß & Sohn. It features a blade with a high-quality HSS cutting edge and an asymmetrical horn. Ebony body. Cutting angle 45°.

Blade width 36 mm

Blade thickness 2.8 mm

Overall length 190 mm

680 g

No. 702968

Repl. Blade No. 702969



C

#### Plane types in comparison

##### Wooden planes



##### Advantages

- Warm and pleasant to the touch
- Gentle to workpiece, no discolouration of wood
- Light weight prevents tiring

##### Disadvantages

- High sole wear with heavy loading
- Warping may occur
- Little resilient mass, less smooth operation with difficult grains

##### Japanese planes



##### Advantages

- Operated by pulling: giving good control, gentle to the joints and less tiring
- Smoother operation thanks to thick blade
- High plane blade quality
- Perfect results

##### Disadvantages

- Take longer to set up (does not apply to planes with interchangeable blades)
- Possible warping due to atmospheric influences (does not apply to planes with stabilised bodies and interchangeable blades)
- No mechanical adjustment aids for plane blade and mouth

##### Metal planes



##### Advantages

- High wear resistance of sole and edge of mouth
- No warping of plane body due to atmospheric influences
- High momentum: smooth running, even with difficult grains and knots
- Simple adjustment of plane blade and usually also of mouth opening

##### Disadvantages

- Heavier, so tiring for larger planing jobs
- Can rust (not with bronze planes)

### A PHILIP MARCOU CHAMFERING PLANE BASED ON THE JAPANESE MODEL

Precise chamfers can be easily created using this plane. Thanks to the movable blocks, which form a 45° contact surface, the bevel width can be gradually adjusted. The centre section is able to move freely, so that the blade can be moved left and right, thereby allowing the full width of the blade to be used before having to be resharpened. The plane base is made of wear-resistant brass. High-quality, 59-60 HRC hardened O1 steel is used for the blade, which gives it excellent cutting ability. A solid brass cap iron functions as both a chipbreaker as well as an attachment point for the blades. Afzelia body, stainless steel/brass adjusting screws.

Philip Marcou is known for his custom-made planes well beyond the borders of his native country New Zealand. Created lovingly by hand, he produces first-class precision tools made of high-quality materials.

Blade width 18.5 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 110 mm  
175 g

No. 717040

Repl. Blade  
No. 717061



## Accessories

### B JAPANESE PLANE BLADES FOR RECORD, STANLEY AND ANANT PLANES

Made of double-layered, laminated steel to ensure superior durability, easier sharpening and better vibration control. The exceptionally fine-grained White Paper Steel will hold a razor-sharp edge.

#### 1 For Record, Anant 4 and 5

Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 2-3 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
No. 718070

#### 2 For Stanley and Anant No. 60½

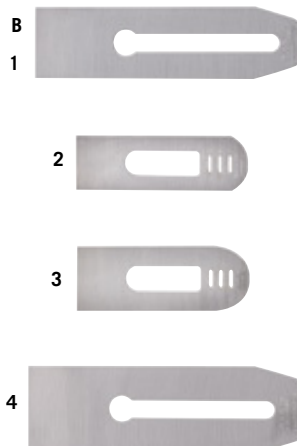
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 2-3 mm  
Overall length 110 mm  
No. 718075

#### 3 For Stanley No. 9½

Blade width 41.5 mm  
Blade thickness 2-3 mm  
Overall length 110 mm  
No. 718073

#### 4 For Stanley, Record and Anant No. 4½, No. 6, 7

Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 2-3 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
No. 718072



### Hock® Tools

Hock Tools from California (USA) specialises in producing plane and knife blades from high-purity carbon steel. The content of chromium and vanadium additives is below 0.5 %, which allows the blade to be ground to extreme sharpness and makes it easier to restore the edge than with conventional high-alloy tool steels. As well as their initial products - blades for their own legendary Krenov-style wood planes - Ron Hock and his staff have made a name for themselves with replacement blades for upgrading old Stanley planes.



### C HOCK® PLANE BLADES WITH CHIPBREAKER

Solid 4.8 mm thick plane blade made of high-purity carbon steel (62 HRC), including chipbreaker for building wooden Krenov-style planes.

Blade width 38 mm  
Overall length 90 mm  
No. 702185

Blade width 45 mm  
Overall length 90 mm  
No. 702187

Blade width 51 mm  
Overall length 90 mm  
No. 702190



### WORKSHOP

## »KERFING PLANE« AND FRAME SAW WITH TOM FIDGEN



**Content:** Whether you produce sawn veneers yourself or simply want to separate thicker boards for thinner furniture components, the kerfing plane and frame saw allow the woodworker, who works exclusively by hand, to separate wood with repeat accuracy. Our three-day course will teach you how to construct these cherished tools. The kerfing plane and the frame saw will open up entirely new opportunities to you if you prefer working with hand tools.



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



For more Hock® plane blades see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



# Scraper Blades and Scrapers

Scraper blades are indispensable for smoothing wooden surfaces, removing marks left by planing and routing, cleaning glued joints and levelling uneven varnish coats. Sharpened properly and burnished with a fine hook, they are capable of removing the finest shavings and leaving a smoother and more precise surface finish than can be attained by grinding. By varying the pressure, angle and curvature of the scraper, you can achieve superb results even against the grain (knotty wood, inlays, parquet etc.). We recommend using a fine-grain waterstone for finishing the cutting edge and a diamond stone or fine flat file for levelling and squaring the edge when necessary.



**A FRENCH SCRAPER BLADES, RECTANGULAR**

- Cold-rolled
- Made of spring steel

150 x 50 mm

Thickness

0.25 mm **No. 703507**

0.40 mm **No. 703502**

0.60 mm **No. 703504**

0.80 mm **No. 703505**

1.00 mm **No. 703506**



**B FRENCH SCRAPER BLADES, GOOSENECK**

- Cold-rolled
- Made of spring steel

130 x 70 mm

Thickness

0.40 mm **No. 703516**

0.60 mm **No. 703510**

0.80 mm **No. 703535**



**C SCRAPERS, 4-PIECE SET**

- Cold-rolled
- Made of spring steel

1 piece each: rectangular 150 x 50 mm, convex/concave 140 x 50 mm, ball-shaped 140 x 70 mm, gooseneck 130 x 70 mm.

Thickness

0.40 mm **No. 703517**

0.60 mm **No. 703518**

0.80 mm **No. 703536**



**D HERDIM® SCRAPER BLADES**

Very even metal structure for a fine burr that is achieved by a special hot rolling process with simultaneous hardening treatment.

- Hot-rolled - the entire material is elastic and has an even structure
- Made of spring steel with a small amount of chrome and therefore light corrosion protection
- Precise 90° longitudinal edges without burr achieved by water jet cutting process

100 x 50 mm

Thickness

0.30 mm **No. 703541**

0.40 mm **No. 703542**

0.80 mm **No. 703543**



**E HERDIM® SCRAPER BLADES, STAINLESS STEEL**

Thanks to the use of stainless steel, this scraper blade is permanently protected against patches of rust caused by hand sweating. It is also three times more durable than spring steel scrapers.

- Hot-rolled - the entire material is elastic and has an even structure
- Made of stainless steel
- Precise 90° longitudinal edges without burr achieved by water jet cutting process

100 x 50 mm

Thickness

0.25 mm **No. 703544**

0.40 mm **No. 703545**

0.80 mm **No. 703546**



**F MINI SCRAPERS, 7-PIECE SET**

- Cold-rolled
- Made of spring steel with a small amount of chrome and therefore light corrosion protection

27 x 45 mm to 50 x 110 mm

**No. 703500**

**G LEATHER CASE**

For protecting sharpened scraper and plane blades from damage. Snap-down flap, belt loop, four pockets.

160 x 80 mm

**No. 703549**



Scraper blades not included!

## Sharpening of scraper blades

### TRUEING THE BLADE

Scrapers are usually punched, which means the edges must be worked with a file to obtain an evenly square edge, using one of the following methods: There are file holders with a 90° fence which allow even less-experienced users to control the file securely. But the simplest and cheapest method is clamping the scraper between two pieces of wood.

- Find two pieces of wood (90° edge at the top) or bits of sheet material with which you can fix the scraper in a vice (alternatively, you can clamp the scraper between these two supports on a large beam with a clamp)
- Let the scraper project by about 1 mm
- Work on the projecting scraper with the file until it is almost flush with the supports
- Make longitudinal or slightly diagonal strokes until the file almost touches the supports
- The wooden supports now provide a large support area that makes it easy to guide the file or stone at a 90° angle

### FINISHING THE BLADE

- Hold the combination stone in your hand and guide it along the support area you have just created (scraper/support combination in the vice)
- A few strokes with the 1000 grit side and then with the 6000 grit side should be enough

### RAISING THE BURR

- Slide the scraper further up between the supports
- How far the scraper should project depends on the required angle (normally 10°-15°)
- To estimate the angle, place the burnisher not only onto the scraper edge but also onto the edge of the support; viewed in profile, you can estimate the angle
- Drawing the burnisher along the edge of the support creates a consistent angle
- Pull the burnisher over the entire edge in a single stroke, applying sufficient pressure (a slightly diagonal stroke enables accurate application, even at the end of the scraper)



### CHECKING THE BURR

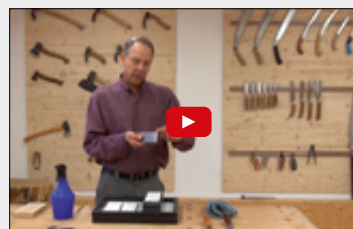
You can now feel the raised burr with your fingertips. Depending on how hard the scraper is and the pressure applied, you may need to burnish the edge again. However, you should not burnish more than three times, as each process may ruin the even burr. The deeper the angle used in burnishing, the larger and more »aggressive« the burr. How large a burr is required depends on the intended use: removing varnishes and coats requires a large burr. Surface finishing requires a small burr.



### RECONDITIONING THE BURR

You can also right the burr with the burnisher and raise it anew, but this process does not usually produce consistent results. We therefore recommend completely removing the burr on worn scrapers with a file (as described in »Trueing the blade«) before raising a new one.

Our Sharpening Primer for sharpening techniques on tools and knives is available free of charge at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com).



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Video** on sharpening and using scraper blades - sharpening tips from DICTUM in co-operation with Garrett Hack available online.

**B SCRAPER**

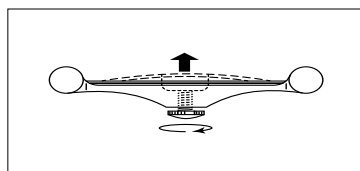
Unpainted red beech handle with two scraper blades, each having two bent cutting edges. The blade can be easily reversed, removed for sharpening or replaced by loosening the two Phillips screws in the handle. Used by joiners and painters for generations, appreciated by boat owners for stripping the hull, a versatile aid in every household. Blade width 60 mm  
**No. 703232**

**C REPLACEMENT BLADES FOR SCRAPER**

One pair, fits No. 703232.  
**No. 703233**

**D VERITAS® SCRAPER HOLDER**

Makes using straight scraper blades easier and reduces the risk of cuts and burns. The scraping blade is tensioned on both sides, holding it particularly securely in place. The tension is centrally adjusted with a screw. Strong,



fibreglass-reinforced plastic body with brass fittings. Only suitable for 150 mm standard-length scrapers. Comes with a super-hard, 0.75 mm thick scraper blade.

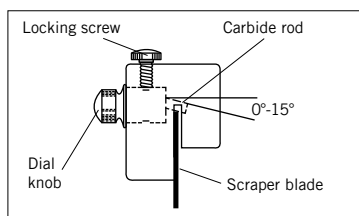
**No. 703527**



**G VERITAS® VARIABLE BURNISHER**  
For safely sharpening the edges of scraper blades. The blade of the scraper is guided along an adjustable tungsten carbide rod to accurately work its edge.

Fibre-glass reinforced plastic body, tungsten carbide sharpening rod, angle adjustable from 0°-15°. With 0.8 mm thick blade.

**No. 703528**

**I SCRAPER SHARPENER, CARBUR 2**

Efficient sharpening tool for scraper blades and scraper-type turning tools, with two differently shaped tungsten carbide inserts made of durable carbides: a rounded one for smoothing at normal deformation pressure and a pointed

one for high deformation pressure and larger burrs. Forged aluminium handle with hand guard. Leather pouch and instructions included.

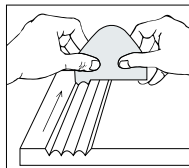
Overall length 150 mm

**No. 703533**

► For Carcut 1, a quick sharpener with a V-shaped insert see chapter »Sharpening Devices«.

**A JAPANESE SCRAPER STEEL**

The same high-quality steel used for Japanese saw blades is now available as a semi-finished product. The sheets are ideal for producing your



own high-quality scraper blades with a long edge life, even when used with the hardest woods. Hitachi steel SK5, basic hardness approx. 54 HRC (can be cut and filed).

Thickness x width x length  
0.5 x 90 x 500 mm

**No. 703523**

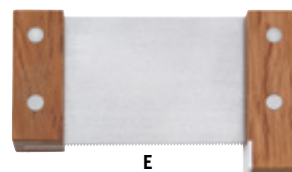
0.7 x 70 x 500 mm

**No. 703524**

**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days.

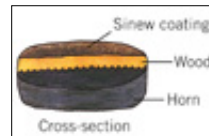
(For more information see page 4)

**E DICTUM® SERRATED SCRAPER FOR BOWMAKERS**

The serrated scraper is used to apply a grooved joining surface between the horn layer and the wooden core of the riser of a composite bow. The grooves

almost double the glueing surface. The entire blade of Japanese carbon steel is hardened to approx. 58-62 HRC and guarantees a long service life. A point angle of 50°

on the teeth allows easy penetration but still makes them robust enough for use on the hard horn material. Two riveted handles of Japanese red oak for precise control along with a T-shaped flush-mounted aluminium fence allow for easy handling. Outer dimensions 140 x 85 mm. Blade thickness 2 mm  
**No. 703239**

**F HATTORI® BURNISHER, Ø 10 MM**

Scraper burnisher made from hardened HSS (62 HRC) with round cross-section for normal burnishing pressure and the use on round scraper edges. The surface is finely polished for a smooth drawing

movement and thus an even burr. A solid stainless steel ferrule joins the blade to the varnished precious wood handle.

Overall length 285 mm

**No. 703521**

**H KUNZ® BURNISHER, THREE-SQUARE**

Scraper burnisher made from hardened tool steel (62 HRC) with triangular

cross-section for high burnishing pressure. Beech handle.

Overall length 240 mm

**No. 703537**

**J PFEIL® BURNISHER, THREE-SQUARE**

Scraper burnisher made from hardened tool steel (62 HRC) with triangular cross-section for high burnishing pressure. The surface is finely polished for a

smooth drawing movement and thus an even burr. A brass ferrule joins the blade to the oiled cherry wood handle.

Overall length 280 mm

**No. 730054**

**A KUNZ® GLUE SCRAPER**  
For removing dried, excess glue and scraping away extra varnish. Designed for heavy-duty use. Solid metal handle for two-handed use. High-quality,

double-edged blade (60 HRC).  
Handle 315 mm.  
Blade length 60 mm  
**No. 703161**  
Repl. Blade **No. 703162**



A



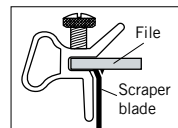
► Sharpening set for scrapers available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



File not included!

**B VERITAS® JOINTER**  
Clamp for flat files to facilitate trueing of scrapers, saw blades (fits file No.



704901) and even ski edges. 90° and 45° fence. Aluminium. Length 140 mm, max. file thickness 5 mm. File not included.  
**No. 703526**

## Surface and Thickness Planers



C



Adjustable bridge guard



Adjustable mitre gauge



Tilt protection (only AH200)

### C SHINKO® SURFACE PLANER AH

Indispensable for the precise dressing of boards, squared timber or strips, as well as for joining boards (producing angled edges for width joints). By using the adjustable mitre gauge, edges of 90° to 45° can be planed.

#### Your benefits:

- Chip removal can be adjusted by means of a hand lever, max chip removal 3 mm
- Adjustable aluminium dressing fence, tiltable from 90° to 45°
- Ground-milled dressing tables made of torsion-resistant cast aluminium
- Entire machine housing made of sheet steel
- Precision-milled spiral cutterblock
- Adjustable bridge guard for safe working
- Display of the set chip removal in mm and inches
- Smooth and high-torque motor with V-ribbed belt
- On/off switch preventing unintentional restart after a power interruption

#### Benefits of spiral cutterblock:

- Pull stroke planing cut
- Lower noise level
- Smooth, satin finish (without the typical planing knocks)
- Less friction = lower power consumption
- Smaller chips for better extraction: no clogging of extraction hoses

Rated Input 1 200 W  
No Load Speed 12 000 1/min  
Max. Planing depth 3 mm

#### AH150

##### Scope of delivery:

- 2 pushboards
- 12 (mounted) inserts made of HSS
- 2 replacement carbon brushes
- Exhaust connector Ø 57/63 mm

Plane width 150 mm  
Dimensions (L x W x H)  
760 x 450 x 320 mm  
18 kg  
**No. 715478**

#### AH200

Incl. integrated tilt protection with fine adjustment at the feed and take-off table with 130 cm jaw opening.

##### Scope of delivery:

- 2 pushboards
- 16 (mounted) inserts made of HSS

- Hose connection adapter Ø 57/63 to 95/100 mm
- Tilt protection with fine adjustment
- 2 replacement carbon brushes

Plane width 200 mm  
Dimensions (L x W x H)  
865 x 500 x 330 mm  
25 kg  
**No. 715479**



**A SHINKO® DH330 THICKNESS PLANER**

One of the most important machines in the woodworking shop. Whether for planing sawed raw boards and planks or giving material the required thickness, the thickness planer is indispensable when processing solid wood. The two carrying handles and a weight of 38 kg also make it possible for the machine to be transported for assembly purposes.

**Your benefits:**

- Robust gear and powerful motor for high-torque drive and even smooth finish
- Chip removal can be adjusted by hand by means of a crank handle incl. a scanner to check the material thickness
- Eight pre-set workpiece thicknesses
- Height adjustment by solid double spindle guide and height lock for clean planing results
- 30 anti-kickback hooks ensure high work safety
- Rubberised infeed and outfeed roller
- Chip guard can be folded up – for short periods of planing without dust extractor
- Overload protection with reset power switch and on/off switch preventing unintentional restart after power interruption
- Overall length with folded-out machine tables 86 cm

- Smooth, satin finish (without the typical planing knocks)
- Less friction = lower power consumption
- Smaller chips for better extraction: no clogging of extraction hoses

**Scope of delivery:**

- 26 (mounted) inserts made of HSS
- 1 hose connection adapter Ø 57/63 to 95/100 mm
- 1 Torx 25 screwdriver
- 1 Allen key 4 mm
- 2 replacement carbon brushes

**Rated Input 1800 W**

No Load Speed 10 000 1/min (cutterblock)

Planing width 330 mm

Planing depth 3-150 mm

Exhaust Nozzle Ø 57 / 63 mm and Ø 95 / 100 mm

Dimensions (L x W x H)

670 x 860 x 500 mm

38 kg

**No. 715477**



- (1) Chip guard can be folded up for short periods of planing without dust extraction  
(2) Quick adjustment of thickness capacity

**B**

*HSS Inserts, 10-Piece Set*  
**No. 715480**

**B INSERTS, 10 STÜCK**

Double-edged inserts suitable for cutterblocks on Shinko surface planers and thickness planers.

*TCT Inserts, 10-Piece Set*  
Carbide cutters last 10 times longer than HSS.  
**No. 715481**



**mafell**  
**FESTOOL**



► Power planer available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Working with the surface planer**

On the path from freshly sawn timber to fashioned workpiece, dressing is the second most important work step after rough cutting. First, we examine the material for direction of growth and distortions. Always push the wood over the planer in the direction of the grain, with the hollow side facing upwards. Chip removal should be between 0.5 and max. 1.5 mm. Make several passes over the planer with the wood until a continuously planed and even surface has been achieved. Now join a longitudinal edge at a right angle on the dressing fence of the planer.

- For more information on dressing and joining with machines see the tutorials category of our DICTUM® Tool Knowledge Blog [www.dictum.com/blog](http://www.dictum.com/blog) or the DICTUM® YouTube channel [www.youtube.com/dictum](http://www.youtube.com/dictum)



# Sharpening Devices

Indispensable!

Bench Stones | 124

Shaped Stones and Shaped Sharpeners | 135

Trueing Blocks | 138

Sharpening Sets | 139

Sharpening Stone Accessories  
and Quick Sharpeners | 140

Sharpening Aids | 140

Abrasive-guided Knife Sharpening Systems | 143

Wet Sharpening Systems | 151

Dry Grinding Machines | 157

Honing and Polishing Products | 163

Accessories for Sharpening Saws | 164

Sharpening Accessories | 165

キング  
#800



## Bench Stones

### King®/Sun Tiger®

Matsunaga is one of the largest manufacturers of sharpening stones in Japan. In the West, these stones are usually known as King stones or Sun Tiger stones. The stones of the King or Sun Tiger series have a relatively soft bond, which allows the abrasives to be continually exposed during use, making the stone highly effective. These stones are ideal for extremely hard, **low-alloy carbon steels** (White and Blue Paper Steel). Before use, soak the stones in water for at least 15 minutes. They can also be stored in water permanently.

► For slipstones and shaped sharpeners see page 135.



#### Coarse Shaping Stones

Coarse-grained stones for abrading large amounts of material. For repairing nicks and chips and changing the bevel angle.

##### A SUN TIGER®

Shaping stone with good sharpening qualities. Green silicon carbide abrasive.

Grit 220  
205 x 66 x 34 mm  
No. 711010

Grit 240  
205 x 75 x 50 mm  
No. 711000



► King® »Hyper« sharpening stone series, 1000 and 2000 grit, with even better material removal properties as with comparable grits of the standard series available online.

www.dictum.com

#### Sharpening Stones

Medium-grit stones for sharpening blunt edges.

B KING®, GRIT 800  
Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
207 x 66 x 34 mm  
No. 711001

KING®, GRIT 1000  
Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
207 x 66 x 34 mm  
No. 711011

KING®, GRIT 1200  
Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
207 x 66 x 34 mm  
No. 711002

#### Honing Stones

Fine-grit waterstones for removing the burr, polishing and honing.

C KING®, GRIT 4000  
Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
210 x 73 x 22 mm  
No. 711021

KING®, GRIT 6000  
Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
185 x 62 x 19 mm  
No. 711003

KING® »GOLD«, GRIT 8000  
Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
185 x 62 x 19 mm  
No. 711004

#### Combination Stones

With two different grits.

D SUN TIGER®, GRIT 250/1000  
For shaping and sharpening. 250 grit side green silicon carbide, 1000 grit side aluminium oxide.  
150 x 50 x 25 mm  
No. 711016



E SUN TIGER®/KING®  
GRIT 1000/6000  
Aluminium oxide abrasive.

Sun Tiger®, 150 x 50 x 25 mm  
No. 711007

King®, 205 x 50 x 25 mm  
No. 711005

King® 207 x 66 x 36 mm  
No. 711006



#### Basic sharpening equipment

##### Combination stone

For sharpening and honing.

For low-alloy carbon steels:

- Japanese chisels and plane blades
- Knives with a core layer of White or Blue Paper Steel
- Axes and hatchets

e.g. No. 711005, 711006 and 711007  
King/Sun Tiger Combination Stone p. 124.

For high-alloy tool steels:

- Western chisels and plane blades
- Knives with a core layer of PM steels or rustproof steels, e.g. VG-10 steel
- Sculptor's gouges from Pfeil

e.g. No. 711237 and 711238  
Kunsuto Combination Stone p. 125.

The size of the sharpening stone should match the size of the blade to be sharpened.

##### Sharpening stone holder or pad

Prevents the stone from slipping during sharpening, e.g. No. 705364 DMT Antislip Pad p. 129 / No. 711101 Sharpening Stone Holder p. 140.

##### Trueing block

For the precise trueing of uneven waterstones, e.g. No. 711115 Trueing Set p. 138.

##### Sharpening aids (optional)

For chisels and plane blades: e.g. No. 711400 Double Jaw Honing Guide p. 142.

For kitchen knives:

e.g. No. 705377 Togeru Sharpening Device p. 142.



##### Shaping stone (optional)

For repairing nicks and correcting the blade angle. e.g. No. 711010 Sun Tiger Shaping Stone p. 124.

#### Synthetic abrasives

##### Silicon carbide

Silicon carbide has especially sharp-edged crystals, but is very brittle. It is mainly used for coarse grits and its structure makes it highly effective.



##### Green silicon carbide

Green silicon carbide is the toughest and purest form of silicon carbide.

##### Corundum

Corundum (aluminium oxide) is the second-hardest mineral after diamond and, thanks to its solid consistency, makes an ideal abrasive. It provides a finer abrasive action than silicon carbide.



##### White aluminium oxide

»White« aluminium oxide is one of the purest abrasives and is also known as »white corundum«.



## Suehiro®

Suehiro is a smaller Japanese company which has been producing sharpening stones for three generations. Kenkichi Okumura, who founded the company, began with selling stones from his own natural stone deposit, which gained high recognition in the whole of Japan. As a result of many years of experience in the field of natural stones, Suehiro has been successfully producing synthetic sharpening stones since 1964.

### Suehiro® Standard Series

The stones from the original Suehiro series have a relatively soft bond and are thus designed for **low-alloy carbon steels** (Blue and White Paper Steel). The stones should be sprayed with water before use. It is not recommended to keep them in water permanently.



**A SUEHIRO® COARSE SHAPING STONE, GRIT 100**  
Very aggressive, hard silicon carbide stone. Also suited for trueing other stones.  
210 x 55 x 27 mm  
**No. 710990**



**B SUEHIRO® COMBINATION STONE**  
Compact stone for sharpening and finishing. White aluminium oxide abrasive.  
130 x 40 x 26 mm  
Grit  
1000 / 3000  
**No. 711533**  
1000 / 6000  
**No. 711267**



► *Cerax® sharpening stone series made by Suehiro® available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Kunsuto® Sharpening Stone Series

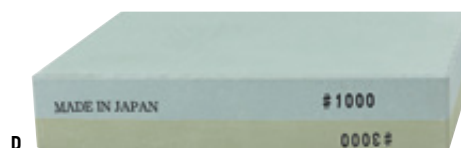
This stone series was developed in cooperation with a Japanese sharpening stone expert. The aim was to create a Japanese stone series suitable for both **high-alloy tool steels and low-alloy carbon steels**. The numerous tests were supported by microscopic images of the cutting edges after sharpening. This stone series has a medium-hard bond, which does not wear out quickly even with tool steels made of alloy components with

a coarse grain structure (e.g. chromium and vanadium). However, both steel types allow good material removal with a pleasant ease of use. The microscopic images show a harmonious surface and a precise cutting-edge form for both types of steel. Before use, soak the stone for at least 10 minutes. Do not keep it in water permanently.



**C KUNSUTO® SHAPING STONE,**  
Coarse-grained stone for material removal, repairs, removing nicks, changing the bevel angle, removing

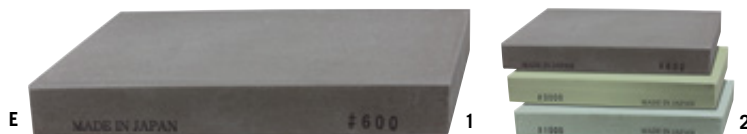
corrosion. Silicon carbide abrasive.  
Grit 220  
205 x 78 x 35 mm  
**No. 711230**



**D KUNSUTO® COMBINATION STONES**  
This stone features two different grit sizes.

*Grit 1000/3000*  
For sharpening.  
205 x 75 x 35 mm  
**No. 711237**

*Grit 1000/6000*  
For sharpening and honing.  
205 x 75 x 35 mm  
**No. 711238**

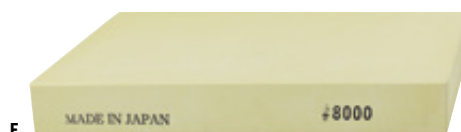


**E KUNSUTO® SHARPENING STONE, GRIT 600**

Stones with medium sized grit for sharpening blunt blades. Abrasive:  
#600 aluminium oxide; #1000 aluminium oxide and white aluminium oxide;  
#3000 white aluminium oxide.  
205 x 78 x 25 mm

**1 Single Stones**  
Grit  
600 **No. 711231**  
1000 **No. 711232**  
3000 **No. 711233**

**2 3-Piece Set *Price advantage***  
Set consists of grits 600 (No. 711231), 1000 (No. 711232) and 3000 (No. 711233). It is ideal for sharpening cutting-tool edges.  
**No. 711248**



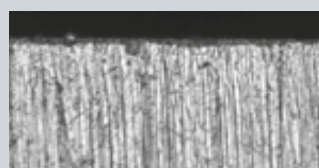
**F KUNSUTO® HONING STONES**  
Fine grain water stones for removing the burr, polishing and honing.  
White aluminium oxide abrasive.  
205 x 78 x 35 mm

Grit  
6000 **No. 711234**  
8000 **No. 711235**  
10 000 **No. 711236**

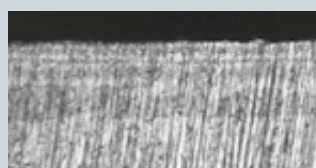
### Microscopic images show the differences between two sharpening stone series depending on the steel of the tool to be sharpened

The microscopic images show the grinding pattern and shape of the cutting edge produced by the 6000 grit stone. The blades have been prepared in the same way (polished back, pre-ground with grit 220, 500, 1000, 3000, 4000). Cutting edges without major indentations are sharper because the overall length of blade being used for cutting is larger.

#### Kunsuto #6000



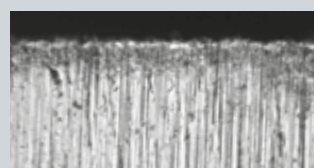
*White Paper steel*



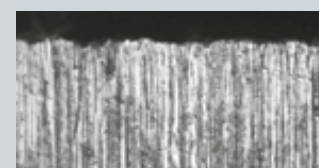
*Chrome-vanadium steel*

Tests have shown that Kunsuto sharpening stones produce equally good results on high-alloy as well as low-alloy carbon steels.

#### Another sharpening stone #6000 (recommended for low-alloy carbon steels)



*White Paper steel*



*Chrome-vanadium steel*

The stones shown here for comparison, designated for use on low-alloy carbon steels, do not achieve optimal results on chrome-vanadium steel.

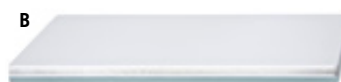
## Glass Stones by Shapton®

The premium range from Japanese company Shapton is the »Glass Stone« series. The sharpening particles are highly pure and homogeneous. This is noticeable when changing to finer grits: the traces from the previous grit are quickly ground out. A special bond allows quick sharpening on a flat surface. The sharpening stone has a base of tempered glass and is thus 100 % warp-free. Conventional sharpening stones may warp at the microstructure level by absorbing water, but Shapton stones solve this problem with their extremely flat base of tempered glass.

Another advantage of the glass base is that the grit rating on the underside is always visible even after long use. Before use, spray the stones with water. It is not recommended to keep them in water permanently. White aluminium oxide abrasive.



**A SHAPTON® GLASS STONES HC, SOFT BOND**  
These stones are particularly suitable for extremely hard, **low-alloy carbon steels** (White and Blue Paper Steel).  
210 x 70 x 10 mm  
Grit  
4000 **No. 711605**  
6000 **No. 711606**  
8000 **No. 711607**



**B SHAPTON® GLASS STONES HR, HARD BOND**  
A hard bond is particularly suitable for **high-alloy tool steels**. The tool steels made of alloy components with a coarse grain structure (e.g. chromium and vanadium) require a stone that does not wear out quickly. 210 x 70 x 10 mm  
Grit  
120 **No. 711630**  
120 **No. 711601**  
120 **No. 711631**  
500 **No. 711602**  
1000 **No. 711603**  
2000 **No. 711604**  
3000 **No. 711612**  
4000 **No. 711616**  
6000 **No. 711617**  
8000 **No. 711618**  
10 000 **No. 711621**  
30 000 **No. 711609**  
  
16 000\* **No. 711608**



**C SHAPTON® SHARPENING STONE HOLDER, WITHOUT STONE**  
**No. 711610**

### Grit according to JIS standard

Grit	Application
220	For nicks, shaping
500	Trueing, coarse shaping
1000	Pre-sharpening
2000	Medium sharpening
4000	Fine sharpening
6000	Taking off the burr
from 8000	Finishing and polishing

\* Selected particle sizes: 6000-20 000.  
In blade sharpening tests there was no noticeable difference in sharpness between a jump 2000 to 16 000 (selected particle sizes) and a standard sharpening procedure.



Knife and Rubber Work Mat not included!

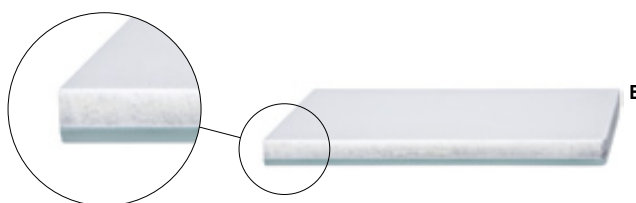


**D SHAPTON® GLASS STONE SET, HR**  
**Price advantage**  
Three sharpening stones with hard bond including sharpening stone holder.  
Grit  
500, 2000, 8000  
**No. 711615**  
1000, 3000, 8000  
**No. 711622**



**»I love my Shapton stones. They need no soaking so they are always ready to use and they cut quickly and smoothly yet wear slowly. With these stones, my sharpening has definitely improved.«**

Garrett Hack, internationally renowned cabinetmaker and author from the USA



**E SHAPTON® GLASS STONE HR, THICK VERSION, HARD BOND**  
This sharpening stone is thicker than the standard version with a longer service life. Comes with plastic case.  
Grit 500  
210 x 70 x 15 mm  
**No. 711623**

## F SHAPTON® GLASS STONE SET

»SEVEN«, HR  
Aesthetic - highly functional - in a class of its own:  
According to the motto »the beauty of the usefulness«, Shapton has again managed to combine the subject of sharpening and the fascination of sharp blades into a natural unit. Plus, the simple, almost artistic product becomes a design object that can be kept effortlessly clean thanks to the high-quality materials.

The set contains:

- 3 compact sharpening stones (HR, 160 x 37 x 12 mm) with grit sequence tailored to kitchen knives
- Anti-slip stone holder made of easy-to-clean glass
- Ultra-flat diamond trueing plate (accuracy of flatness  $\pm 0.005$  mm) for trueing the sharpening stones

Grit 500 (25 micron),  
2000 (6.7 micron),  
approx. 16 000 (0.44 micron)  
**No. 711624**



**Vide** on the Shapton Glass Stone Set »Seven« available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



For single stones and the trueing plate of the Shapton® Glass Stone Set see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Naniwa®

Naniwa is one of the leading Japanese manufacturers of sharpening stones. Since 1941, the company produces precision abrasives for cutting tools.

### Traditional Stone by Naniwa®

This stone series is suitable for sharpening blunt knives and tool blades. The stone has a relatively hard bond, it therefore stays flat for a longer time. It is ideal for **high-alloy tool steels, but also for low-alloy carbon steels**. The tool steels made of alloy components with a coarse grain structure (e.g. chromium and vanadium) require a stone that does not wear quickly. Before use, soak the stone for at least 10 minutes. Do not keep it in water permanently.

### Super Stone by Naniwa®

This sharpening stone series is ideal for the final polishing of knife blades. The stones provide a highly polished effect and stay flat for a long time. When sharpening, however, they provide a pleasant feeling as though working on soft natural stones. They are ideal for sharpening extremely hard **low-alloy carbon steels** (White and Blue Paper Steel). Before use, soak the stone for at least 10 minutes. Do not keep it in water permanently.

#### B NANIWA® COMBINATION STONE, SUPER STONE S1

With two different grits. Ideal grit mix for razors.

Grit 3000/10 000  
210 x 70 x 20 mm

No. 711356



#### D NANIWA® COMBINATION STONE, ECONOMICAL STONE

Combination stone from economy-priced sharpening Naniwa Economical Stone series. Grit 1000/3000  
185 x 65 x 30 mm



No. 711365



For Naniwa® Super Stone S1 series with similar properties but reduced stone thickness as well as Naniwa® Hibiki and Naniwa® Professional Stone series see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



Knife not included!



1

#### A NANIWA® TRADITIONAL STONE

##### 1 Grit 220

Shaping stone with good sharpening qualities. Silicon carbide abrasive. 210 x 70 x 20 mm

No. 711350

##### 2 Grit 1000

White aluminium oxide abrasive. 210 x 70 x 20 mm

No. 711351

##### 3 Grit 6000

White aluminium oxide abrasive. 210 x 70 x 20 mm

No. 711352



2

3



1

#### C NANIWA® SUPER STONE S2, 210 x 70 x 20 mm

##### 1 Single Stones

Grit	No.
220	No. 711330
400	No. 711331
800	No. 711332
1000	No. 711333
2000	No. 711334
3000	No. 711335
5000	No. 711336
8000	No. 711337
10 000	No. 711338
12 000	No. 711339



##### 2 3-Piece Set *Price advantage*

Ideal combination for sharpening knives and cutting-tool edges. Grits 800 (No. 711332), 2000 (No. 711334) and 5000 (No. 711336).

No. 711246

## Nano Hone®

Nano Hone is part of HMS Enterprises Inc., which is headquartered in the USA and has a production site in Japan. Nano Hone has over 40 years of experience in the field of sharpening, dressing and wood-working, and is dedicated to developing outstanding, innovative and high-quality sharpening products.



Chisel, Sharpening guide and Rubber Work Mat not included!

### Nano Hone® Sharpening Stones

These premium sharpening stones by the American manufacturer Nano Hone are produced in Japan. The sharpening particles are highly pure and homogeneous. This can be noticed when changing to finer grains: the grinding marks left by the previous grit are quickly removed. A special bond enables fast grinding on a flat surface. **The sharpening stone is equipped with an aluminium base plate and is therefore 100 % warp-free.** Conventional sharpening stones may warp at the microstructure level by absorbing water. **The extremely flat aluminium base** of the Nano Hone stones solves this problem. Another advantage of the aluminium base is the improved legibility of the grain, which remains visible even after long use. In addition, the different grain sizes can be identified even more quickly by the different base colours. Two bores in the aluminium base allow quick and easy mounting on the Nano Hone sharpening stone holder (No. 711219). The stones should be sprayed with water before use. Permanent storage in water is not recommended. White aluminium oxide abrasive.



1

#### E NANO HONE® SHARPENING STONE, 210 x 75 x 15 mm

##### Single Stones

Grit	Base	No.
200 (70 Micron)	red	No. 711249
400 (35 Micron)	blue	No. 711226
1000 (15 Micron)	golden	No. 711227
3000 (6 Micron)	silver	No. 711256
6000 (2 Micron)	green	No. 711228
10 000 (1 Micron)	black	No. 711257

1



2

##### 2 Nano Hone® Sharpening Stone Set

*Price advantage*

Set consist of sharpening stones with grits 400 (No. 711226), 1000 (No. 711227), 6000 (No. 711228) and the Nano Hone Sharpening Stone Holder (No. 711219).

No. 711229



F

#### F NANO HONE® SHARPENING STONE HOLDER

This sharpening stone holder fixes the Nano Hone sharpening stones with two studs. Due to its relatively high weight and two anti-slip profiles, the sharpening stone holder stays in position on almost any surface. Its height ensures that there is no need to disassemble the jigs when dressing the backs.

No. 711219



## Missarka®

The Missarka sharpening stone is made of white aluminium oxide\* in a vitrified bond created by a sintering process. Thanks to its hard bond, the stone stays flat for longer time. It is ideal **for high-alloy tool steels**. The tool steels made of alloy components with a coarse grain structure (e.g. chromium and vanadium) require a stone that does not wear quickly. It is possible to hone with both water and oil (but after use with oil you can no longer use it with water). The stone can be permanently kept in water.

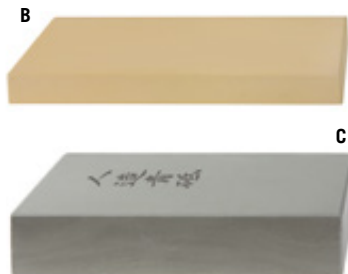
\* Abrasive used for 150 grit = green silicon carbide

## Miscellaneous Manufacturers

### B AWASEDO HONING STONE, GRIT 8000

Traditional Japanese honing stone manufactured in a small batch series. It hardly clogs, has a noticeable abrasive action and yet a high polishing effect. Because of its hard bond, the stone does not wear quickly. Thanks to its large surface, it is also suitable for wide plane blades and large knives. Suited for **low-alloy carbon steels** but also for **high-alloy tool steels**. Before use, soak the stone in water for approx. 10 minutes. It can also be stored in water permanently.

205 x 73 x 24 mm  
No. 711084



### A MISSARKA® COMBINATION STONES

Combination sharpening stone with two different grits.

200 x 60 x 25 mm

Grit  
1 JIS 150/1200 Fepa 150/500

No. 711307

2 JIS 1200/4000 Fepa 150/1200

No. 711306

### Why not use a tool sharpening steel?

A tool sharpening steel is only used to raise a burr on conventional kitchen knives up to a hardness of 58 HRC. It does not sharpen. Tool sharpening steels have a hardness of 60 to 70 HRC. They would only scratch Japanese blades (from 60 HRC) or glide uselessly over the surface.



### D SYNTHETIC CLEANING STONE

»NAGURA«

Synthetic stone for cleaning and unclogging the surface of sharpening stones and for creating a fine polishing paste. 72 x 23 x 19 mm

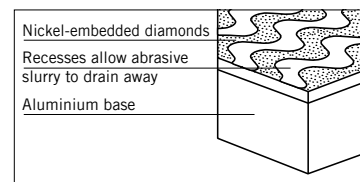
No. 711302



## Nano Hone® Surf Stone Diamond Stones

Sharpening block with monocrystalline diamond-coated surface and wave-shaped pattern, which prevents clogging with abrasion debris and at the same time reduces working time. The sharpening block has an aluminium base plate and is therefore 100 % warp-free. Another advantage of the aluminium base is the good legibility of the grit, which remains visible even after prolonged use. Two bores in the aluminium base allow quick and easy mounting on the Nano Hone sharpening stone holder (No. 711219). The replaceable diamond coating allows the supporting plate to be used for years. Ideal for truing and for sharpening all kinds of cutting tools.

► For further information on Nano Hone® see page 127.



### E NANO HONE® SURF STONE DIAMOND SHARPENING BLOCK

240 x 60 x 20 mm

Grit  
approx. 60 (250 micron) No. 711254  
approx. 120 (110 micron) No. 711252  
approx. 360 (50 micron) No. 711250



### F REPLACEMENT COATINGS FOR NANO HONE® SURF STONE

Fits Nano Hone Surf Stone Diamond Sharpening Block (No. 711254, 711252 and 711250). 240 x 60 x 2 mm

Grit  
approx. 60 (250 micron) No. 711255  
approx. 120 (110 micron) No. 711253  
approx. 360 (50 micron) No. 711251

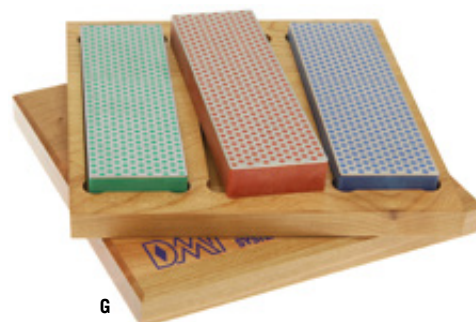
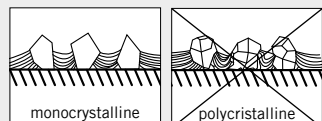
## DMT® Diamond Stones

The American manufacturer Diamond Machining Technology (DMT) is the founder of interrupted surface technology for diamond sharpening stones, and has been the market leader for diamond-coated sharpening equipment for years. The high-quality sharpening tools are manufactured at the company's headquarters in Massachusetts (USA).

- **Monocrystalline** diamond particles guarantee a long service life and excellent material removal
- Uniform grit sizes and dense diamond distribution for even grinding patterns
- Round recesses prevent clogging due to grinding debris
- Permanently flat and warp-free thanks to supporting plates made of steel or warp-free plastic with a nickel matrix
- Colour coding of various grit sizes
- 100 % made in the USA

### Monocrystalline vs. polycrystalline diamonds

Monocrystalline diamonds are significantly more wear-resistant than the polycrystalline diamonds used to make lower quality sharpening tools.



### G DMT® WHETSTONE™

SET **Price advantage!**

The wooden box provides a convenient and elegant way to store the three Whetstone sharpening blocks that are included with the set and to protect

them from damage and dirt. Block size 152 x 50 x 19 mm. Coarse, fine, extra-fine grit. The wooden box is made of cherry tree wood and has non-slip rubber feet. Wooden box 200 x 190 x 40 mm.

No. 706285

**A DMT® WHETSTONE™**

For tools. Plastic case, slip-proof rubber base.

152 x 50 x 19 mm

	Grit	
<b>1</b>	extra-coarse	<b>No. 705365</b>
<b>2</b>	coarse	<b>No. 705366</b>
<b>3</b>	fine	<b>No. 705367</b>
<b>4</b>	extra-fine	<b>No. 705368</b>

<b>Extra extra-coarse (silver)</b>	(grit size 120 µm)	Grit ~120	Trueing
<b>Extra-coarse (black)</b>	(grit size 60 µm)	Grit ~300	Coarse shaping, trueing
<b>Coarse (blue)</b>	(grit size 45 µm)	Grit ~370	Pre-sharpening
<b>Fine (red)</b>	(grit size 25 µm)	Grit ~600	Sharpening
<b>Extra-fine (green)</b>	(grit size 9 µm)	Grit ~1600	Sharpening, honing
<b>Medium extra-fine</b>	(grit size 6 µm)	Grit ~3000	Sharpening, honing
<b>Extra extra-fine</b>	(grit size 3 µm)	Grit ~4000	Honing

**B DMT® WHETSTONE™ WITH CONTINUOUS SURFACE**

For tools. The continuous surface is ideal for sharpening narrow and fine cutting tool edges e.g. chisels with 1.5-8 mm

blade width. Plastic case, slip-proof rubber base.  
152 x 50 x 19 mm  
**No. 706286**



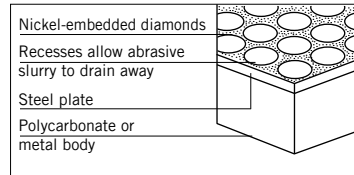
Single diamond whetstones in wooden box available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**A****B**

Chisel not included!

**C DMT® DUO SHARP® COMBINATION STONES**

Diamond stone with two opposite plates of different grits. The stress-free sandwich construction guarantees flatness. Excellent for trueing and for sharpening cutting edges of all kinds. DMT non-skid mat included.

Grit fine/coarse  
250 x 100 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 705375**

Grit coarse/extra-coarse  
203 x 67 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 705370**

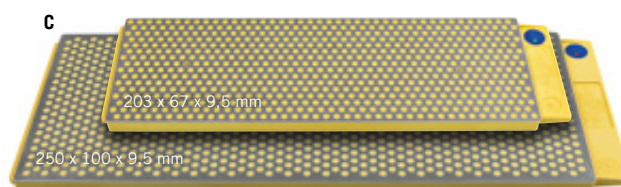
Grit extra-fine/coarse  
203 x 67 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 715204**

Grit fine/coarse  
203 x 67 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 705371**

Grit extra-fine/fine  
203 x 67 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 715203**

**D DMT® DUO-SHARP® PLUS™ SET**  
Combination stone incl. mount. The continuous surface is ideal for sharpening narrow and fine cutting tool edges e.g.

chisels with 1.5-8 mm blade width.  
Grit fine/coarse  
203 x 67 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 705372**

**C****D****E**

**E DMT® NON-SKID MAT**  
Prevents sharpening stone slippage.

100 x 250 mm  
**No. 705364**

**F**

**F DMT® DUO-SHARP® MOUNT**  
Fits No. 715203, 715204, 705370, 705371 and 705375. Stable plastic, han-

dle on underside, anti-slip rubber feet.  
311 x 117 x 57 mm  
**No. 705399**

**G DMT® DIA SHARP® BENCH STONES**  
Continuous surface diamond coating on compact base plate. Ideal for pointed

tools or accurately trueing the backs of tools (extraordinary flatness). Rubber feet.

Grit extra extra-coarse  
203 x 76 x 10mm  
**No. 705382**

Grit fine  
203 x 76 x 10mm  
**No. 705381**

Grit extra-coarse  
203 x 76 x 10mm  
**No. 715206**

Grit extra-fine  
203 x 76 x 10mm  
**No. 706281**

Grit coarse  
203 x 76 x 10mm  
**No. 705358**

Grit medium extra-fine  
203 x 76 x 10mm  
**No. 715205**

Grit fine  
152 x 51 x 6mm  
**No. 705380**

Grit extra extra-fine  
203 x 76 x 10mm  
**No. 705389**

**G**



**A** DMT® DIA-SHARP® BENCH STONE WITH MAGNABASE  
Combination sharpening stone with continuous diamond coating on both sides on a solid steel base plate. The large sharpening surface is ideal for sharpening long knives and wide cutting edges on tools such as plane blades or drawknives. The torsion-re-

sistant plastic base with magnetic surface makes it quick and easy to change the grit.  
305 x 76 x 9 mm  
Grit  
fine/extra-fine  
**No. 706294**  
coarse/extra-coarse  
**No. 706295**



**B** DMT® DUO-SHARP® COMBINATION STONE, FINE/EXTRA-FINE, HARDCOAT™  
For sharpening knives with blades made of ceramic or powder-metallurgical steels, HSS tools as well as tungsten carbide machine tools. Diamond stone with

two opposite plates of different grits. The stress-free sandwich construction guarantees flatness. Including mount.  
Grit fine/extra-fine  
203 x 67 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 706297**

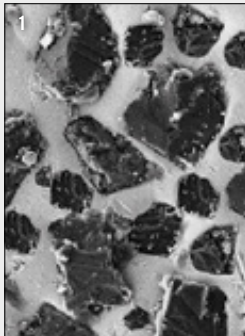
**DMT® Hardcoat™ Surface**

The HC surface offers extremely tough and wear resistant diamond surfaces and therefore considerably elongates the service life of sharpening stones, especially when sharpening very hard cutting materials.

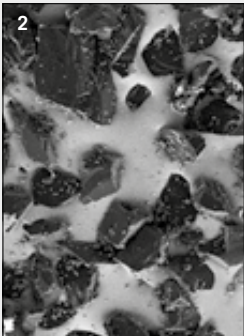
**Comparison of Nano Hone®, DC™ or DMT® and cut-price abrasives**

In the images from a scanning electron microscope, you can clearly see the difference in the diamond distribution and grit sizes. Nano Hone, DC or DMT (pictures 1, 2 and 3) use diamonds with even-sized grains, while the image on the right shows a cut-price abrasive with different-sized grains. Nano Hone, DC or DMT also have a considerably higher distribution density and more even grain sizes. Besides the grain size, the density of the diamond coating is crucial to the durability and effectiveness of the abrasive.

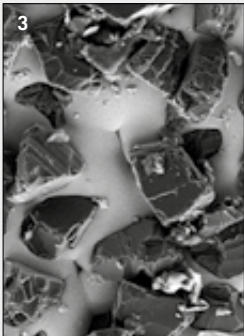
Images from a scanning electron microscope after a wear test (1000 strokes with powder-metallurgical steel).



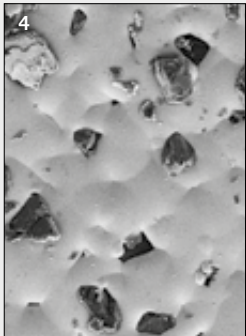
Nano Hone® diamond grain



DC™ diamond grain



DMT® diamond grain



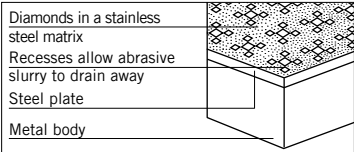
Diamond grain of a cut-price retailer

The bonding of diamond crystals from cut-price retailers is often too hard. Dull and worn-down diamond also have this bond. This produces a very bad effect because the cheaper polycrystalline diamonds wear down extra quickly. In higher-grade bonds the worn-down diamonds come away, enabling the sharp diamonds underneath to remove material. This produces a self-sharpening effect.

**M. Power Tools DC™ Diamond Stones**

Diamond Cross (DC) sharpening stones offer an excellent price/performance ratio with a high manufacturing quality. The lapping of the supporting plates and the strict quality controls are performed at the company's headquarters in England.

- **Monocrystalline** diamond particles guarantee a long service life and excellent material removal
- Uniform grit sizes and dense diamond distribution for even grinding patterns
- Cross-shaped recesses prevent clogging due to grinding debris
- Permanently flat and warp-free thanks to specially lapped supporting plates made of steel with a stainless steel matrix



**C** M. POWER TOOLS DC™ BENCH STONE, EXTRA-FINE/COARSE  
Bench stone with two opposing plates, each with a different grit. Ideal for truing and for the sharpening of cutting

tools. Includes two magnetic, rubber-coated stone holders, cleaning block and storage case.  
203 x 70 x 7 mm  
**No. 740197**

Coarse	(grit size 50 µm)	grit ~ 300	Pre-sharpening
Fine	(grit size 25 µm)	grit ~ 600	Sharpening
Extra-fine	(grit size 15 µm)	grit ~ 1100	Sharpening, honing



Included in delivery

**Monocrystalline vs. polycrystalline diamonds**






















Monocrystalline diamonds are significantly more wear-resistant than the polycrystalline diamonds used to make lower quality sharpening tools.

monocrystalline

polycrystalline



Sharpening Devices												
		Grit		a) Purity grit	b) Recommendation steels	Abrasive	c) Grinding surface (mm)	Thickness (mm)	Wear	Art. No.		Page
(1) Shaping Stones	Suehiro Coarse Shaping Stone	100		low	all steels	Silicon carbide	210 x 55	27	large	710990		125
	Nano Hone Diamond Sharpening Block 250 µm	60		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	240 x 60	0	low	711254		128
	Nano Hone Diamond Sharpening Block 110 µm	120		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	240 x 60	0	low	711252		128
	DMT Dia Sharp Bench Stone extra extra-coarse	120		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	203 x 76	0	low	705382		129
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	120		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711630		126
	Nano Hone Sharpening Stone	200		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 75	12	low	711249		127
	Sun Tiger Shaping Stone	220		low	low-alloy carbon steels	Silicon carbide	205 x 66	34	large	711010		124
	Kunsuto Shaping Stone	220		low	all steels	Silicon carbide	205 x 78	35	large	711230		125
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	220		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711601		126
	Naniwa Traditional Stone	220		low	all steels	Silicon carbide	210 x 70	20	large	711350		127
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	220		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711330		127
	Sun Tiger Shaping Stone	240		low	low-alloy carbon steels	Silicon carbide	205 x 75	50	large	711000		124
	DMT Whetstone, extra-coarse	300		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	152 x 50	0	low	705365		129
	DMT Dia Sharp Bench Stone, extra-coarse	300		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	203 x 76	0	low	715206		129
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	320		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711631		126
	Nano Hone Diamond Sharpening Block 50 µm	360		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	240 x 60	0	low	711250		128
	DMT Whetstone, coarse	370		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	152 x 50	0	low	705366		129
	DMT Dia Sharp Bench Stone, coarse	370		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	203 x 76	0	low	705358		129
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	400		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711331		127
	Nano Hone Sharpening Stone	400		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 70	12	low	711226		127
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	500		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711602		126
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	500		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	10	low	711623		126
(2) Sharpening Stones	DMT Whetstone, fine	600		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	152 x 50	0	low	705367		129
	DMT Dia Sharp Bench Stone, fine	600		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	203 x 76	0	low	705381		129
	Kunsuto Sharpening Stone	600		medium	all steels	Aluminium oxide	205 x 78	25	medium	711231		125
	King Sharpening Stone	800		medium	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	207 x 66	34	large	711001		124
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	800		high	low-alloy carbon steels	Aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711332		127
	King Sharpening Stone	1000		medium	low-alloy carbon steels	Aluminium oxide	207 x 66	23	medium	711011		124
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	1000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711603		126

Sheet Sharpening Devices											
	Grit		a) Purity grit	b) Recommendation steels	Abrasive	c) Grinding surface (mm)	Thickness (mm)	Wear	Art. No.		Page
(2) Sharpening Stones	Naniwa Traditional Stone	1000		medium	all steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	medium	711351	127
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	1000		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711333	127
	Nano Hone Sharpening Stone	1000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 75	12	low	711227	127
	Kunsuto Sharpening Stone	1000		medium	all steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 78	25	medium	711232	125
	King Sharpening Stone	1200		medium	low-alloy carbon steels	Aluminium oxide	207 x 66	34	high	711002	124
	DMT Whetstone, extra-fine	1600		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	152 x 50	0	low	705368	129
	DMT Dia Sharp Sharpening Block, extra-fine	1600		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	203 x 76	0	low	706281	129
	Jinzo Sharpening Stone	2000		medium	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	215 x 75	50	medium	710991	128
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	2000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711604	126
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	2000		high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711334	127
	DMT Dia Sharp Sharpening Block, med. extra-fine	3000		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	203 x 76	0	low	715205	129
	Nano Sharpening Stone	3000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 75	12	low	711256	127
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	3000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711612	126
	Kunsuto Sharpening Stone	3000		medium	all steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 78	25	medium	711233	125
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	3000		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711335	127
(3) Honing Stones	DMT Dia Sharp Sharpening Block, extra extra-fine	4000		high	all steels	Mono. diamond	203 x 76	0	low	705389	129
	King Honing Stone	4000		medium	low-alloy carbon steels	Aluminium oxide	210 x 73	22	high	711021	124
	Shapton Glass Stone Softer Bond	4000		very high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711605	126
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	4000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711616	126
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	5000		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711336	127
	King Honing Stone	6000		medium	low-alloy carbon steels	Aluminium oxide	185 x 62	19	high	711003	124
	Nano Hone Sharpening Stone	6000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 75	12	low	711228	127
	Shapton Glass Stone Softer Bond	6000		very high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711606	126
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	6000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711617	126
	Kunsuto Honing Stone	6000		medium	all steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 78	35	medium	711234	125
	Naniwa Traditional Stone	6000		medium	all steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	medium	711352	127

### Summary table »Sharpening Devices« - Explanatory Notes:

#### (1) SHAPING STONES

Coarse-grained stones for abrading large amounts of material, e.g. for repairing nicks and chips, and changing the bevel angle.

#### (2) SHARPENING STONES

Medium-grit stones for sharpening blunt edges.

#### (3) HONING STONES

Fine-grit stones for honing after sharpening.

#### (4) POLISHING STONES

Ultra-fine grained stones for honing and polishing.

#### a) GRAIN PURITY

The more even (pure) the grain, the better the sharpening result. A mixed or impure grain will always result in less effective abrasion.

#### b) RECOMMENDATION STEELS

##### Low-alloy carbon steels

- Japanese chisels and plane blades
- Knives with a core layer of White and Blue Paper Steel
- Axes and hatchets

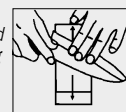
##### High-alloy tool steels





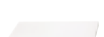
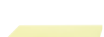



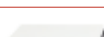
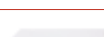
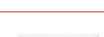

- Western chisels and plane blades
- Knives with a core layer of powder metallurgy steels or rustproof steels e.g. VG-10 steel
- Sculptor's gouges from Pfeil

#### c) GRINDING SURFACE

The grinding surface should always fit the size of the tool to be sharpened although generally speaking: the larger the better.

► To get started, we recommend one **sharpening stone** and one **honing stone** each or a **combination stone**.



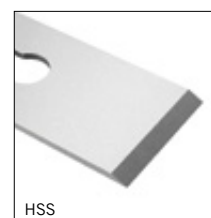
Sharpening Devices												
		Grit		a) Purity grit	b) Recommendation steels	Abrasive	c) Grinding surface (mm)	Thickness (mm)	Wear	Art. No.		Page
(4) Polishing Stones	Awasedo Honing Stone	8000		high	all steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 73	24	medium	711084		128
	King Gold Stone	8000		medium	low-alloy carbon steels	Aluminium oxide	185 x 62	19	medium	711004		124
	Kunsuto Honing Stone	8000		medium	all steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 78	35	medium	711235		125
	Shapton Glass Stone Softer Bond	8000		very high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711607		126
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	8000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711618		126
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	8000		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711337		127
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	10 000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711621		126
	Kunsuto Honing Stone	10 000		medium	all steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 78	35	medium	711236		125
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	10 000		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711338		127
	Nano Hone Sharpening Stone	10 000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	205 x 75	12	low	711257		127
	Naniwa Sharpening Stone	12 000		high	low-alloy carbon steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	20	low	711339		127
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	16 000		medium	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711608		126
	Shapton Glass Stone Hard Bond	30 000		very high	high-alloy tool steels	White aluminium oxide	210 x 70	5	low	711609		126

## Norton®

For more than 125 years, US-based company Norton has been developing industrial abrasives. With separate production facilities for individual divisions in 28 countries, including Germany, France and Japan, the company has become the world leader for abrasives of all kinds.



► *Pride Abrasive sharpening stones for modern tool steels, HSS and exotic steel alloys available online.*



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### A NORTON® INDIA OILSTONES

The gentle, highly pure white aluminium oxide used for manufacturing this stone is much finer than the abrasives of other synthetic oilstones. Additionally, the stone is highly effective and does not clog too quickly. Pre-soaked with oil in the factory, it comes ready for use.



**1 Bench Stone, Coarse**  
Grit coarse (corresponds to grit 220)  
203 x 51 x 25 mm  
**No. 711051**



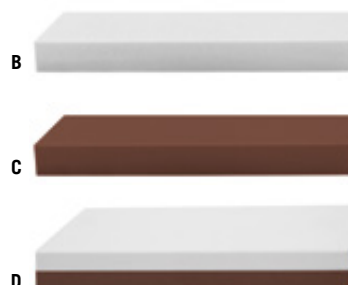
**2 Bench Stone, Fine**  
Grit fine (corresponds to grit 1000)  
203 x 51 x 25 mm  
**No. 711052**



**3 Combination Stone, Coarse/Fine**  
203 x 51 x 25 mm  
**No. 711053**

## Kunsuto® Oilstones

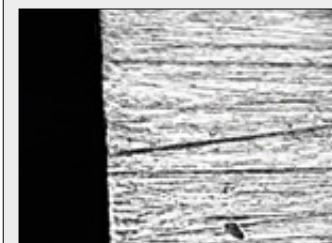
These stones were developed to offer a complete series of sharpening oilstones for sculpting gouges and chisels. Until now, only coarse synthetic oilstones (Norton India) and Arkansas natural stones with very fine grit were available on the market in good quality. The Kunsuto sharpening stones close this gap and allow a continuous sharpening process with oilstones of grit 220 and 1000 (Norton India), the medium grits 2000 and 4000 for shaping the cutting edge (Kunsuto), and the Arkansas natural stone. The development process of the stones made in Germany was supported by microscope images of the cutting edges after sharpening. Pre-soaked with oil in the factory, it comes ready for use. Aluminium oxide abrasive.



**B KUNUTO® SHARPENING OILSTONE, GRIT 2000**  
200 x 50 x 25 mm  
**No. 711195**

**C KUNUTO® HONING OILSTONE, GRIT 4000**  
200 x 50 x 25 mm  
**No. 711196**

**D KUNUTO® COMBINATION OILSTONE, GRIT 2000/4000**  
200 x 50 x 25 mm  
**No. 711197**

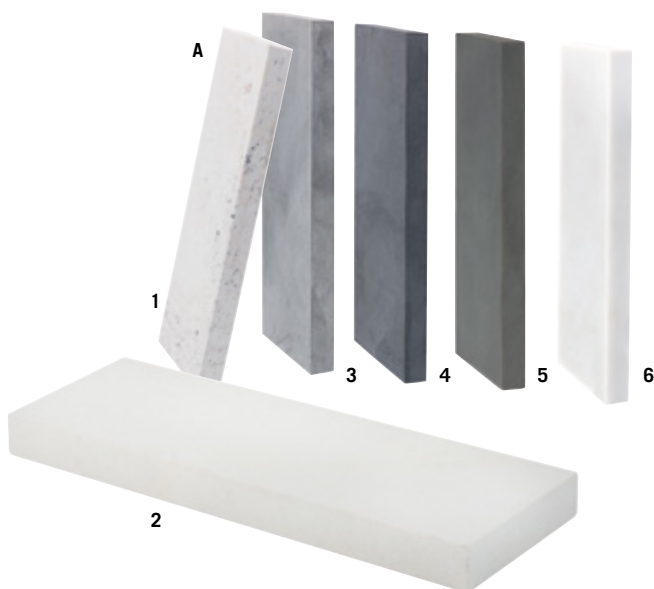


Microscope image of the cutting edge after grinding with the Norton India, grit 1000 (No. 711052), a Kunsuto oilstone, grit 2000 and 4000 (No. 711195 and 711196) and finally an Arkansas oilstone (No. 705258).



## Arkansas Oilstones

Fine-grained, extremely wear-resistant honing stones, for use with an oil lubricant. Due to their high degree of hardness, they are ideal for polishing curved cutting edges. The sharpening stones we offer have a uniform structure and are crack-free. The black stones are slightly harder than the white stones. They originate from quarries in the Ouachita Mountains in Arkansas (USA), which have been largely exploited.



### How do I clean and true oilstones?

Clotted oilstones can be cleaned simply by wiping them with petroleum. In order to get the pores clean, we recommend using a toothbrush. For trueing, it is best to use 100 grit wet/dry sandpaper (No. 706396) with petroleum on a strong glass or stone plate (No. 711294). After cleaning, you should saturate the stone with oil again.

► For a trueing set see page 138.



### A ARKANSAS BENCH STONES

Arkansas stones are available in different hardnesses on the market. They are Soft, Hard, Hard Black, Surgical and Translucent and differ in grit size.

	Dimensions	Grit	
1 Soft	205 x 50 x 13 mm	400-600	No. 711570
2 Hard	205 x 50 x 13 mm	800-1000	No. 711571
3 Hard Black	205 x 50 x 13 mm	2000-3000	No. 711572
4 Surgical Black	205 x 50 x 13 mm	4000-6000	No. 711573
Black Translucent	150 x 48 x 20 mm	6000-8000	No. 705258
5 Black Translucent	200 x 48 x 20 mm	6000-8000	No. 705250
6 Translucent	205 x 50 x 13 mm	8000-10 000	No. 711574

► For honing oil see page 165.

## Japanese Natural Stones

»A blade and sharpening stone must be as perfect a match as bride and groom« according to legendary blacksmith, Shigeoshi Iwasaki. Finding the ideal pairing is no easy task in either case. Despite the excellent performance of synthetic stones, many experienced sharpeners still prefer natural stones for sharpening their finest blades. Japanese sharpening stones are particularly renowned for their effect to harmoniously sharpen hand-forged carbon steels. They can bring a blade's full potential to the fore and allow the sharpening process itself to become a pleasant ritual. The finest stones from the Honyama quarries are becoming increasingly difficult to acquire - we take great pleasure in still being able to offer these rare treasures. Natural Japanese stones may only be used with water and must be kept protected from frost. Please note that the stones may have slight natural imperfections and may vary somewhat in size.



**B JAPANESE NATURAL STONE »AKA«**  
Medium-coarse grit lime sandstone, very open texture, with good honing properties. From the Amakusa region.

150 x 45 x 30 mm  
No. 711534

220 x 60 x 70 mm  
No. 711519



**C JAPANESE NATURAL STONE »BINSUI«**  
Medium-grit lime sandstone from the Kumamoto region for general sharpening. Readily absorbs water, cuts well and easily produces a fine slurry.  
Grit 800-1200  
220 x 60 x 62 mm  
No. 711518



**D JAPANESE NATURAL STONE »JO-HAKU«**  
Fine lime sandstone from the Kumamoto/Sage region with a dense structure and even grain for intermediate grinding.  
Grit 1000-1500  
206 x 60 x 35 mm  
No. 711620



**E QUARRY STONES »HONYAMA«**  
Natural fragments, planed flat on one side. From the point of view of sharpening properties comparable with Belgian bench stones. From the Tanba region.  
Grit 6000-8000  
100-140 x 70-90 x 10-20 mm  
No. 711303

**F JAPANESE NATURAL STONE »TSUSHIMA«**  
Very fine Japanese natural sharpening stone that is cultivated on the seabed (region Tsushima-Nagasaki). This natural sharpening stone cuts well and produces very little slurry. Also suitable for cleaning the structure of sharpening stones and creating a fine polishing paste. Do not keep it in water permanently.  
Grit 3000-5000  
180 x 55 x 50 mm  
No. 711210



**G JAPANESE NATURAL STONES »SHO-HONYAMA«**  
A very fine grit sediment stone from the Kyoto region. Perfect for removing burr and polishing hand-forged plane blades, chisels and knife blades made of carbon steel. Ground flat on one side.



1 Bench stone  
Grit 10 000-15 000  
175 x 60 x 10 mm  
No. 711566

2 Fragment  
Grit 10 000-15 000  
75-95 x 50-80 x 7-13 mm  
No. 711567

## Belgian Coticule Whetstones

The quarrying of Belgian whetstones in the Ardennes is first mentioned in a Roman document. But the story of these natural honing stones goes further back than that. The approx. 480 million-year-old grey yellow sedimentary stones, originating from volcanic ash, are composed of very fine garnet crystals. During honing, these are released from the matrix and, in combination with water and abrasion debris, make a honing paste. The garnets only remove fine shavings from the metal and ensure a good polish. Unique combination of quick abrasive action and grain size.

Interesting fact: To produce 1 kg of sharpening stones approx. 1500 kg of cliff must be removed. The thin yellow slices are glued to a slate base and cut to size. Grit 6000-8000.



**B** BELGIAN WHETSTONE, FRAGMENTS

33-39 cm<sup>2</sup> No. 705564  
48-58 cm<sup>2</sup> No. 705565



**D** BELGIAN WHETSTONE, CLOSER  
75 x 30 x 20 mm  
No. 705557



**A** BELGIAN WHETSTONE, BLOCKS  
150 x 40 x 20 mm  
No. 705556  
250 x 60 x 18 mm  
No. 711293



**C** BLUE BELGIAN WHETSTONE, BLOCK  
Thicker and longer lasting than the cream-coloured stones, but with equally good honing properties.  
250 x 60 x 13 mm  
No. 705570

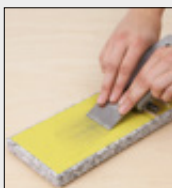
### Quality of natural stones

For many years, the Belgian coticule and Arkansas stones have been synonymous with high-quality whetstones. But these stones are natural products. Due to limited resources, the quality of these stones may increasingly vary. Japanese waterstones with fine grain structures are recommended as an alternative.

## Sharpening with Abrasive Paper

### Lie-Nielsen method - sharpening with abrasive paper

Micro-bevels (secondary bevels) on plane blades tend to get larger and larger with repeated sharpening. To return the cutting edges to their original state, you can true them on the self-adhesive abrasive paper using a honing guide. A simple and time-saving method.



► For more sharpening methods see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**E** MIRKA® GOLD SELF-ADHESIVE ABRASIVE PAPER, ROLL  
For trueing the bevels of cutting edges using the Lie-Nielsen method. It is particularly the case with micro bevels (secondary bevels) on plane blades that they tend to get larger and larger with re-

peated sharpening. To return the cutting edges to their original state, you can true them on the self-adhesive abrasive paper using a honing guide. A simple and time-saving method. The abrasive paper can be stuck to any flat reference surface (stone or glass plate) and removed easily without residue. Available in four grits: P80 for worn blades or blades with break-outs, P180, P220 and P400 for standard sharpening. Width 70 mm, length 36.6 m (length P80 18.3 m).



Grit  
80 No. 718489  
180 No. 718490  
240 No. 718491  
400 No. 718492



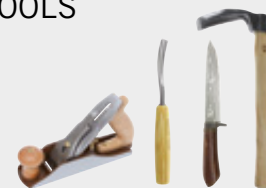
**F** GRANITE STONE PLATE  
Granite stone plate for use in combination with sandpaper for sharpening tool blades or trueing waterstones and oilstones. Anti-slip feet for added

stability. Flatness tolerance  $\pm 0.1$  mm. Colour may vary.  
280 x 130 x 20 mm  
No. 711294

### WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

### SHARPENING OF CUTTING TOOLS



**Content:** Perfect and gentle sharpening of chisels, plane blades, knives, and carving blades using waterstones.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

For waterproof *Klingspor* abrasive paper in finer grits see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

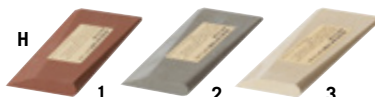
## Shaped Stones and Shaped Sharpeners

### King®/Sun Tiger®

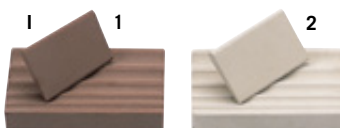
Matsunaga is one of the largest manufacturers of sharpening stones in Japan. In the West, these stones are usually known as King stones or Sun Tiger stones. The stones of the King or Sun Tiger series have a relatively soft bond, which allows the abrasives to be continually exposed during use, making the stone highly effective. These stones are ideal for extremely hard, **low-alloy carbon steels** (White and Blue Paper Steel). Before use, soak the stones in water for at least 15 minutes. They can also be stored in water permanently. Green silicon carbide abrasive is used for 180 grit. For all other grits aluminium oxide is used.



**G** KING® SLIPSTONES, SMALL  
For sculpting tools and turning tools. Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
61 x 22 x 5 mm  
Grit  
1 1000 No. 711204  
2 4000 No. 711205  
3 8000 No. 711206



**H** KING® SLIPSTONES, LARGE  
For sculpting tools and turning tools. Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
100 x 50 x 10 mm  
Grit  
1 1000 No. 711201  
2 4000 No. 711202  
3 8000 No. 711203



**I** KING® MULTIFORM STONES, 2-PIECE SET  
For sculpting tools, set consists of: concave stone, radii of 2.5 / 5 / 8 / 12 / 16 mm, size 105 x 65 x 15 mm; convex stone, radii 2 / 3.5 mm, size 65 x 40 x 6 mm. Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
Grit  
1 1000 No. 711208  
2 4000 No. 711209



**J** KING® CONICAL SLIPSTONES

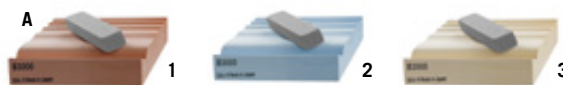
Gouge not included!



With concave and convex surfaces, for gouges. Approx. 145 x Ø 54 x Ø 14 mm. Grit 1000 and 4000: aluminium oxide abrasive. Grit 180: green silicon carbide abrasive.  
Grit  
1 180 No. 711401  
2 1000 No. 711402  
3 4000 No. 711403

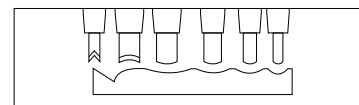
## Suehiro®

Suehiro is a smaller Japanese company which has been producing sharpening stones for three generations. The stones from the original Suehiro series have a relatively soft bond and are thus designed for **low-alloy carbon steels** (Blue and White Paper Steel). The stones should be sprayed with water before use. It is not recommended to keep them in water permanently.



**A SUEHIRO® MULTIFORM STONE**  
Ideal for sharpening and honing of all types of cutting tools: gouges with inside or outside bevel, V-parting tools. The back of the stone can also be used on chisels. Comes with eraser for cleaning. White aluminium oxide abrasive. 98 x 65 x 20 mm

Grit  
**1 280 No. 711536**  
**2 1000 No. 711537**  
**3 3000 No. 711538**

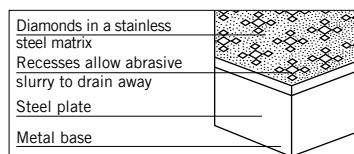


**SUEHIRO® MULTIFORM STONE, 3-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
 Grit 280 (No. 711536), grit 1000 (No. 711537) and grit 3000 (No. 711538) in a set.  
**No. 711539**

## M. Power Tools DC™ Diamond Stones

Diamond Cross (DC) sharpening stones offer an excellent price/performance ratio with a high manufacturing quality. The lapping of the supporting plates and the stringent quality controls are performed at the company's headquarters in England.

- **Monocrystalline\*** diamond particles guarantee a long service life and excellent material removal
- Uniform grit sizes and a dense diamond distribution for even grinding patterns
- Cross-shaped recesses prevent clogging due to grinding debris
- Permanently flat and warp-free thanks to specially lapped supporting plates made of steel with a stainless steel matrix



<b>Coarse</b>	(grit size 50 µm)	Grit ~360	Pre-sharpening
<b>Fine</b>	(grit size 25 µm)	Grit ~600	Sharpening



**B M. POWER TOOLS DC™ DIAMOND FILE**  
Handy, thin file with two opposing plates, each with a different grit. Highly versatile, especially suited for saw blades,

detail work, shears and knives.  
 Grit fine/coarse  
 100 x 25 mm  
**No. 740193**



**C M. POWER TOOLS DC™ DIAMOND ROUTER BIT SHARPENER**  
Handy, thin sharpening card with side handle. Two opposing plates, each with a different grit. Designed for sharpening routers, drills and for detail work. Magnetic stone holders (No. 740196) available as accessory.  
 Grit fine/coarse  
 75 x 25 mm  
**No. 740195**



**D M. POWER TOOLS DC™ DIAMOND SHARPENING CARD WITH HANDLE**  
Practical hand-held sharpener in credit card format. Includes removable side handle and two opposing plates with different grits. Highly versatile. Magnetic stone holders (No. 740196) available as accessory.  
 Grit fine/coarse  
 75 x 50 mm  
**No. 740194**



**E M. POWER TOOLS DC™ MAGNETIC STONE HOLDERS FOR DIAMOND SHARPENING TOOLS, PAIR**  
Non-slip, rubber coated stone holders

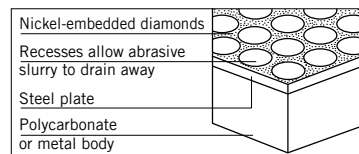
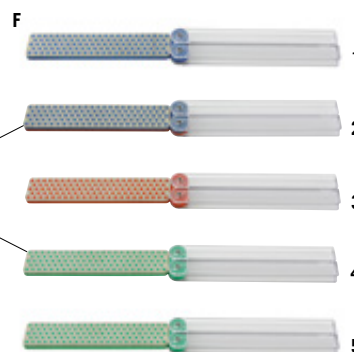
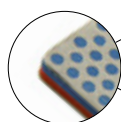


with two magnets which make them easy to attach below the diamond sharpening tool. This ensures a good grip. Fits DC bench stones and No. 740194 and 740195.  
 75 x 40 mm  
**No. 740196**

## DMT® Diamond Stones

The American manufacturer Diamond Machining Technology (DMT) is the founder of interrupted surface technology for diamond sharpening stones, and has been the market leader for diamond-coated sharpening equipment for years. The high-quality sharpening tools are manufactured at the company's headquarters in Massachusetts (USA).

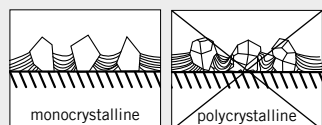
- **Monocrystalline** diamond particles guarantee a long service life and excellent material removal
- Uniform grit sizes and a dense diamond distribution for even grinding patterns
- Round recesses prevent clogging due to grinding debris
- Permanently flat and warp-free thanks to supporting plates made of steel or warp-free plastic with a nickel matrix
- Colour coding of various grit sizes
- 100 % made in the USA



<b>Coarse (blue)</b>	Grit approx. 370	<b>Extra-fine (green)</b>	Grit approx. 1600
<b>Fine (red)</b>	Grit approx. 600	<b>Extra extra-fine</b>	Grit approx. 4000

### Monocrystalline vs. polycrystalline diamonds

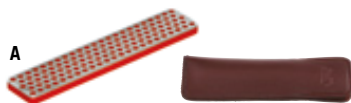
Monocrystalline diamonds are significantly more wear-resistant than the polycrystalline diamonds used to make lower quality sharpening tools.



**F DMT® DIAFOLD® ALL-PURPOSE SHARPENERS**  
For sharpening outdoor knives, garden equipment, axes, shears or tungsten carbide machine tools. The foldable handle serves also as a protective sleeve for the diamond plate. Single or double-sided coating. 110 x 23 mm

Grit  
**1 coarse No. 705374**  
**2 fine/coarse No. 705391**  
**3 fine No. 705369**  
**4 extra-fine/extra extra-fine No. 706284**  
**5 extra-fine No. 705384**





**A DMT® WHETSTONE™ MINI UNIVERSAL SHARPENER**  
Ideal for on the go:  
In a leather sheath, excellent for quick sharpening of router bits, small tools and knives.  
Grit fine  
111 x 23 x 5 mm  
**No. 705386**



**B DMT® MINI-SHARP® POCKET WHETSTONE**  
The sharpener for on the go. Folding case, key ring.  
Grit fine  
70 x 25 x 5 mm  
**No. 705395**



**C DMT® DIA SHARP® MINI HONE® SET**  
The hone-kit for all contingencies:  
Coarse, fine, extra-fine.  
180 x 18 mm  
**No. 706282**



Garden Shear  
not included!

### Cleaning and caring for DMT diamond stones

Rinse the surface of the DMT sharpening stone immediately after use, and then wipe with a damp cloth. Sharpening produces a film on the surface of the stone, which can clog the diamond coating and therefore reduce material removal, if it is not removed.

We recommend using regular scouring powder and a nylon brush to scrub the stone in water from time to time. You can also use liquid detergent, although scouring powder produces a cleaner result.



sharpening stone. Make simple strokes along the dry stone surface as if you would erase a pencil line from a piece of paper.  
Always store the diamond sharpening stone in a dry environment.



► For a nylon brush see chapter »Rasps and Files«.

Once the residue has been removed from its sharpening surface, the stone's sharpening performance will be restored.

We recommend using a regular eraser to remove dry residue from the diamond



**Video** on cleaning and caring for DMT stones available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**D DMT® CONE FILE**  
For gouges, profiled blades, woodturning gouges, tool making etc. Conical cross-section.  
Grit fine  
Ø 3.3-9.5 mm  
File length 100 mm  
**No. 705392**



**E DMT® DIAMOND CONE**  
Conical diamond sharpener for sculpting and turning tools.  
Ø 9.5-19.3 mm  
Overall length 152 mm  
fine **No. 705393**  
coarse **No. 705423**



► More DMT® shaped sharpeners available online.

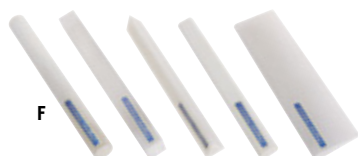
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Quality of natural stones

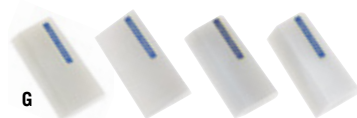
For many years, the Belgian coticule and Arkansas stones have been synonymous with high-quality whetstones. But these stones are natural products. Due to limited resources, the quality of these stones may increasingly vary. Japanese waterstones with fine grain structures are recommended as an alternative.

## Arkansas Oil Stones

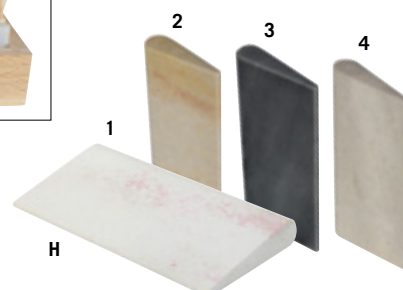
Fine-grained, extremely wear-resistant honing stones, for use with an oil lubricant. Due to their high degree of hardness, they are ideal for polishing curved cutting edges. The sharpening stones we offer have a uniform structure and are crack-free. The black stones are slightly harder than the white stones. They originate from quarries in the Ouachita Mountains in Arkansas (USA), which have been largely exploited.



**F ARKANSAS SLIPSTONES, WHITE, 5-PIECE SET**  
In a wooden case. Round, square, triangular, oval, knife-shaped. Translucent Arkansas (Extra-fine).  
Overall length 100 mm  
**No. 705267**



**G ARKANSAS MULTIFORM SLIPSTONES, 4-PIECE SET**  
In a wooden case. Flat-pointed straight back, flat-pointed round back, knife-shaped, flat-skewed rounded back. Translucent Arkansas (extra-fine).  
58 x 23 x 6 mm.  
white **No. 705260**  
black **No. 705261**



**H ARKANSAS SLIPSTONES**  
Arkansas stones are available in different hardnesses on the market. They can be Soft, Hard, Hard Black, Surgical, Translucent and differ in grit size. Supplied in a protective cover.  
knife-shaped  
100 x 50 x 9.5 mm

Grit  
1 Soft 400-600  
**No. 711575**  
2 Hard 800-1000  
**No. 711576**  
3 Surgical Black 4000-6000  
**No. 711577**  
4 Translucent 8000-10 000  
**No. 711578**

## Belgian Coticule Whetstones

The approx. 480 million-year-old grey yellow sedimentary stones, originating from volcanic ash, are composed of very fine garnet crystals. During honing, these are released from the matrix and, in combination with water and abrasion debris, make a honing paste. The garnets only remove fine shavings from metal and ensure a good polish. Unique combination of quick abrasive action and grain size.



**I BELGIAN WHETSTONE, HALF-ROUND SLIPSTONE**  
75 x 3-7 mm  
**No. 705558**



**J BLUE BELGIAN WHETSTONE, MULTIFORM STONE**  
100 x 40 x 6 mm  
**No. 705571**

## Trueing Blocks

### Nano Hone®

Nano Hone is an entity of HMS Enterprises Inc., which is headquartered in the USA and has a production site in Japan. Nano Hone has over 40 years experience in the field of sharpening, dressing and woodworking, and is dedicated to developing outstanding, innovative and high-quality sharpening products.

Diamond lapping plates have either a full-surface or an interrupted diamond coating. With lapping plates with interrupted diamond coating, not the plate's entire surface is brought to bear but only the virtually indestructible and sharp edges of each of the raised parts of the pattern distributed over the plate's surface.

This design has the following advantages:

- Makes shaping a lot quicker thanks to allowing the abrasive slurry to quickly drain away
- Requires less force thanks to the smaller contact area
- Significantly longer lapping plate service life
- Extremely even surface and hence able to create even surfaces on the stone being resurfaced



**A NANO HONE® LAPPING PLATE BUTTON TECH™**

The heavyweight of lapping plates: In contrast to conventional lapping plates, this product does not have a diamond coated surface, but raised cross-shaped metal buttons that have diamonds dispersed throughout their entire structure. These buttons are virtually indestructible and can be re-calibrated with a grinding machine up to five times even after years of use, for which we offer a corresponding service. This



heavyweight plate weighs 1.3 kilograms and has an extra large surface for maximum ease of use. It is recommended for lapping any sharpening stones in the range of 400 grit to 30 000 grit.

**Flatness tolerance < 0.05 mm** (after diamond coating).  
Approx. grit 220 (50 micron).  
240 x 60 x 20 mm  
**No. 711222**  
250 x 70 x 20 mm  
**No. 711223**

### B NANO HONE® LAPPING PLATE RIDGE TECH™ NL-5



This lapping plate, with its star and hexagon pattern, maximizes the number of edge-material contact points. Recommended for sharpening stones from 1000 to 30 000 grit.

**Flatness tolerance < 0.05 mm** (after diamond coating). Approx. grit 220 (50 micron).  
240 x 60 x 20 mm  
**No. 711221**



**C NANO HONE® LAPPING PLATE RIDGE TECH™ NL-4**

This lapping plate, with its arrow-rake pattern, has long straight edges designed for removing larger amounts of material, which makes it suitable for flattening rougher sharpening stones from 120 to 2000 grit.

 Learn more about Nano Hone® in the blog article at [www.dictum.com/blog](http://www.dictum.com/blog)

- Extraordinary even surface
- Extreme durability
- Excellent price/performance ratio

**Flatness tolerance < 0.05 mm** (after diamond coating).  
Approx. grit 100 (130 micron).  
240 x 60 x 20 mm  
**No. 711220**

### D TRUEING SET *Price advantage*

Excellent-value set for the precise trueing of waterstones and oil stones. For dressing stones and keeping their surfaces flat.

Set includes:

- Granite stone plate, 280 x 130 x 20 mm, **flatness tolerance < 0.1 mm** (colour may vary), No. 711294



- 100 grit wet/dry abrasive paper from Klingspor (20 sheets, 280 x 115 mm), No. 706396
- Anti-slip feet for stone plate  
**No. 711115**



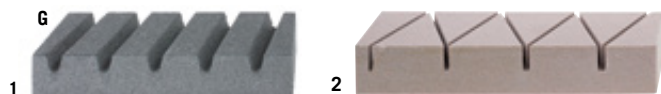
**E DMT® DIA-FLAT LAPPING PLATE**

Trueing block with continuous surface diamond coating on compact steel base plate. Extremely durable due to a novel coating technology. Together with the large contact area and a **flatness tolerance < 0.1 mm** (after diamond coating), this feature enables the precise trueing of sharpening stones with a grit of 120-1000.  
255 x 100 x 10 mm  
**No. 705429**



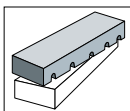
**F SHAPTON® TRUEING BLOCK WITH DIAMOND COATING**

For ultra precise, absolutely flat trueing. Suitable for all water and ceramic stones. **Flatness tolerance of < 0.05 mm** (after diamond coating).  
Grit approx. 240 (54 micron).  
Designed for grits 500 and above.  
253 x 80 x 24 mm  
**No. 711613**



**G NANIWA® TRUEING BLOCK**

Hard ceramic block for trueing Japanese waterstones quickly and accurately. The stones are worked wet on the block until plane. Silicon carbide abrasive.



- 1 Naniwa® 170 x 55 x 30 mm  
Grit 220  
**No. 711300**
- 2 240 x 100 x 40 mm  
Grit 100  
**No. 711299**



**H TRUEING GRILLE FOR SHARPENING STONES**  
Finely woven, silicon carbide-coated grille for trueing uneven sharpening stones. The grille



is placed on a flat surface and the sharpening stones is rubbed over it in a circular motion.  
Grit 80  
140 x 230 mm  
**No. 711297**

### Trueing a sharpening stone: which methods can be used and when?



#### Stone plate with abrasive paper or silicon grille

For trueing all waterstones or oilstones using the corresponding fluid (water or petroleum). The abrasive paper grit should match the stone.  
100 grit for up to 1000 grit sharpening stones  
220 grit or finer for 1000 grit and finer sharpening stones

#### Shapton Trueing Block, DMT Dia Flat Lapping Plate, Nano Hone Trueing Blocks

For frequent and 100 % precise trueing of waterstones of all grits. They are also excellent for ceramic bond stones (Shapton, Kunsuto, Cerax).

#### Hard ceramic blocks

For trueing coarse shaping waterstones (e.g. 220 grit), which can then be used for trueing all other finer-grained stones.

#### Glass plate as base

Generally possible as a base, but not as flat ground as a stone plate.

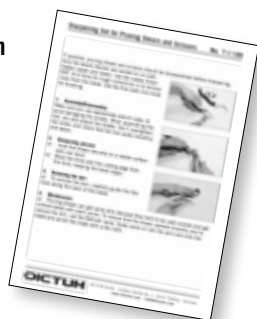
#### Silicon carbide powder as abrasive on glass and stone

Generally possible, however abrasive scratches both glass and stone. Silicon carbide should be used on metal plates (trueing the backs of chisels and plane blades).

# Sharpening Sets

## Sharpening Sets for Selective Application

Each cutting tool needs to be sharpened differently, depending on its design or purpose. However, opinions vary as to the best method and abrasives to use. With our sets, we aim to provide you with the basic equipment necessary for all common tools, with detailed sharpening instructions and photos.



### B SHARPENING SET FOR CHISELS AND PLANE BLADES OF LOW-ALLOY CARBON STEEL »JAPANESE CHISELS AND PLANES«

A rough DMT trueing block (No. 705358) is used for pre-grinding blades with nicks and for trueing the sharpening stone. The King 1000/6000 grit combination stone

(No. 711006) for sharpening and honing rests securely on the non-skid mat (No. 705364). **No. 711104**



**Price advantage!**

**A SHARPENING SET FOR CHISELS AND PLANE BLADES OF HIGH-ALLOY TOOL STEEL »WESTERN CHISELS AND PLANES« II**  
This set comprises a DMT Bench Stone (No. 705358) for rough pre-grinding of blades with nicks or for trueing the sharpening stone. It also contains a Kunsuto 1000/6000 grit combination stone (No. 711238) for sharpening and honing, a non-skid-mat (No. 705364) as well as a double-jaw honing jig (No. 711400) for precise sharpening. **No. 711239**



**Price advantage!**



**Price advantage!**

### C BASIC SHARPENING SET FOR ALL TOOLS

This set provides you with a combination of sharpening stones for most tools (e.g. chisels, plane blades, knives). It contains a Sun Tiger 220 grit coarse shaping stone (No. 711010) for pre-sharpening, King 800 grit and 1200 grit sharpening stones (No. 711001 and 711002)

for sharpening, plus a King 4000 grit stone (No. 711021) and a polishing stone 8000 grit (No. 711084) for honing and polishing. Also included are a trueing set (No. 711115) for trueing the stones and a sharpening stone holder (No. 711101).

**No. 711107**

### D SHARPENING SET FOR KNIVES OF LOW-ALLOY CARBON STEEL »BLUE AND WHITE PAPER STEEL«

For repairing nicks, this set contains a King 220 grit coarse shaping stone (No. 711010). The King 1000/6000 grit combination stone (No. 711006) rests securely on the non-skid mat (No. 705364) and is used for both

sharpening and honing. The set also contains a trueing grille for sharpening stones (No. 711297) and a Togeru sharpening device (No. 705377) which helps maintain the correct angle when sharpening knives.

**No. 711111**



**Price advantage!**

### E SHARPENING SET FOR KNIVES OF HIGH-ALLOY STEELS VG-10, PM STEELS, 440 C, SKD 11 II

This set contains a Kunsuto 220 grit shaping stone (No. 711230) for repairing nicks and a Kunsuto 1000/6000 grit combination stone (No. 711238) for sharpening and honing. Use the trueing

grille (No. 711297) for trueing the stones, the non-skid mat (No. 705364) keeps the stones in place. Also included is a Togeru sharpening device (No. 705377), which helps maintain the correct angle when sharpening knives.

**No. 711240**



**Price advantage!**

## Sharpening Bestsellers as Sets



**Price advantage!**

### F COMBINATION STONE, WITH OIL AND DVD

For sharpening and maintenance of tools and knives.

Set includes: Cerax combination stone grit 1000/6000 (No. 711546); DVD - Das Schärpen japanischer Messer (No. 713806), **in German**; Sinensis camellia oil (No. 705280). **No. 711027**



**Price advantage!**

**G COMBINATION STONE, WITH DIAFOLD® SHARPENER AND OIL**  
This collection of high-quality products includes all the basic equipment for sharpening knives and tools. The included sharpening primer (**in German**) gives instructions on how to proceed. Have fun!

Set includes: Japanese combination stone King, 1000/6000 grit (No. 711007); Non-skid mat (No. 705364); DMT Diafold Sharpener (No. 705374); Sinensis camellia oil (No. 705280); Sharpening Primer. **No. 711029**



**Price advantage!**

**H COMBINATION STONE, WITH STONE HOLDER**  
For sharpening and finishing. King combination stone, grit 1000/6000 (No. 711005); stone holder (No. 711101). **No. 711050**

► For a sharpening set for turning tools see page 158.



## Sharpening Stone Accessories and Quick Sharpeners



**A TOKICO® KNIFE SHARPENER**  
An uncomplicated knife sharpener that is suitable for both Japanese and European knives: Easy to operate, the Tokico allows even inexperienced users to quickly and successfully sharpen all types of cooking knives. The blade simply needs to be moistened and slid 3-5 times in both directions through the slits. Metal is gently removed by two rotating sharpening stones. Comes with instructions.

*The Tokico is not suitable for damaged or worn out blades.*



200 x 45 x 40 mm  
**No. 705373**



**B ANTI-SLIP BLOCKS, 2-PIECE SET**  
Non-slip rubber base for sharpening stones. Length of stone support area: 70 mm per side. Width 80 mm. Support height 15 mm.  
**No. 711102**



**D DMT® NON-SKID MAT**  
Prevents sharpening stone slippage. 100 x 250 mm  
**No. 705364**



hand-sawing or similar.  
300 x 300 mm  
**No. 705759**



**C NANIWA® SHARPENING STONE HOLDER**

- All metal parts made of stainless steel
- Non-slip rubber clamping jaws
- Mid-mounted support bracket for thin stones
- Extra-large rest area

- High rest for more free space when sharpening

Width 75 mm  
Jaw opening 135-220 mm  
Support height 32 mm  
**No. 711118**



**E SHARPENING STONE HOLDER**

- All metal parts made of stainless steel
- Anti-slip rubber clamping jaws
- Mid-mounted support bracket for thin stones

Width 70 mm  
Jaw opening 135-220 mm  
Support height 23 mm  
**No. 711101**



**G CARBUT 1**  
For speedy resharpener of knives (also serrated), axes and scissors. V-shaped, wear-resistant carbide element. Aluminium grip with hand protection. Includes instructions and case. Length 150 mm  
**No. 703534**



**A SPRAY BOTTLE**  
Indispensable aid when sharpening with waterstones. The nozzle on the spray head creates fine mist, for moistening the stones and selective spraying.  
500 ml **No. 800594**  
1000 ml **No. 800593**



### WORKSHOP

### SHARPENING OF CUTTING TOOLS

**Content:** Perfect and gentle sharpening of chisels, plane blades, knives, and carving blades using waterstones.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



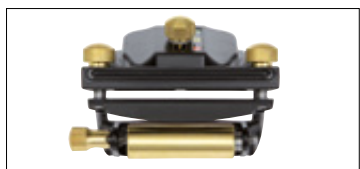
► For a waterproof yet non-slip rubber mat by Tormek® see page 154.

For sharpening instructions for tools and knives see our Sharpening Primer, which is available at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Sharpening Aids



**I VERITAS® SHARPENING SYSTEM II, STANDARD**  
A high-precision guide for accurate and consistent perpendicular sharpening of all straight-edged blades. Also suitable



for short, irregular and tapered Japanese blades. The adjustable brass roller allows for increasing the angle of inclination by up to 2° when creating a micro bevel without unclamping the tool. Aluminium body, easy-gliding brass roller. Quickly adjustable gauge with grip. Instructions included.  
Bevel angle 15°-54°  
Counter chamfer 10°-20°  
Max. blade width 72 mm  
Max. blade thickness 12 mm  
**No. 703666**



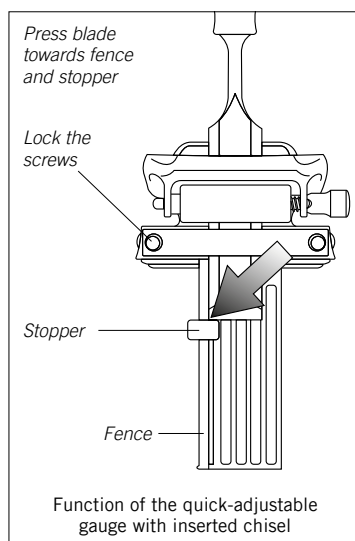
**J CAMBER ROLLER ASSEMBLY FOR VERITAS® SHARPENING SYSTEM II**  
This accessory guide with barrel-shaped roller allows for honing slight curves into plane blade edges whilst still maintaining an accurate and consistent bevel angle. Simply replace the standard roller assembly of the Veritas sharpening system II by this camber assembly and apply gentle pressure to the sides of the blade when sharpening. Slightly cambered



**Video** with Garrett Hack on sharpening cambered plane blades available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

plane blades are mainly used on smoothing planes to avoid planing marks made by projective corners and to produce an even grain. Not suitable for scrub plane blades. Fits Veritas Sharpening System II, No. 703666.  
**No. 703839**



**B VERITAS® ADAPTER FOR SHARPENING SYSTEM II, MORTISE CHISEL**  
This adapter extends the clamping height of the Veritas Sharpening System II for clamping mortise chisels with up to 18 mm blade thickness. By opening the brass screw on the top of the sharpening aid, you can insert the adapter and fasten it with the same screw. Fits Veritas Sharpening System II with Narrow Blade Honing Guide No. 703844.  
**No. 703904**



**A VERITAS® DELUXE HONING GUIDE SYSTEM II, 5-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
Perfectly equipped for any sharpening job! This multifunctional deluxe set allows for the precise and easy sharpening of nearly all tool blades, whether they have straight or slightly rounded cutting edges, whether the blade width is 2 mm or 72 mm.

The set includes:

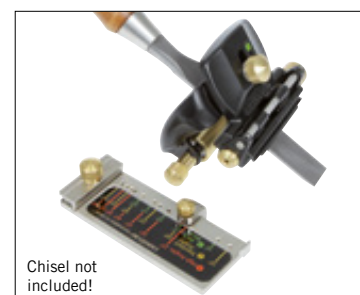
- Standard clamping unit for cutting tool edges up to 72 mm width, also suited for blades with bevel or chamfered edges
- Double jaw clamp, suited for the narrowest chisels, mortise chisels or plane blades; the lateral clamping ensures precise perpendicular sharpening, especially for narrow blades with straight edges; max. blade width 38 mm



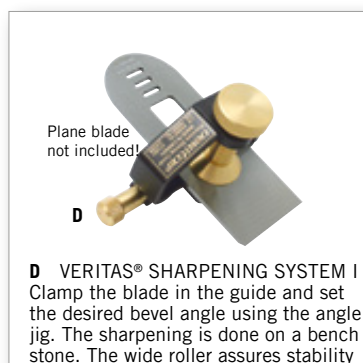
**C VERITAS® SHARPENING SYSTEM II WITH NARROW BLADE HONING GUIDE**  
The self-centring double jaw honing device allows for the quick and easy sharpening of even the narrowest of chisels, mortise chisels or plane blades. The high-precision guide permits precise and consistent perpendicular sharpening, especially for narrow blades with straight edges. Also suitable for short Japanese blades. The adjustable brass roller allows for increasing the angle of inclination by up to 2° when creating a micro bevel without unclamping the tool. Made of die-cast aluminium, easy-gliding brass roller. Includes setting gauge with fence

- Sharpening device with straight roller, suited for sharpening straight edges
- Sharpening device with barrel-shaped roller for sharpening and honing slight curves, e.g. for smoothing plane blades
- Setting gauge with fence for bevel angle 15°-54° (with double jaw honing device 15°-40°), counter chamfer 10°-20°

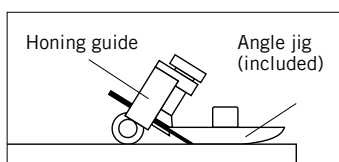
The adjustable brass roller allows for increasing the angle of inclination by up to 2° when creating a micro bevel without unclamping the tool. Made of die-cast aluminium, easy-gliding brass roller.  
Max. blade width 72 / 38 mm  
Max. blade thickness 12 mm  
**No. 703845**



and instruction manual.  
Bevel angle 15°-40°  
Counter chamfer 10°-20°.  
Max. blade width 38 mm  
Max. blade thickness 12 mm  
**No. 703844**



**D VERITAS® SHARPENING SYSTEM I**  
Clamp the blade in the guide and set the desired bevel angle using the angle jig. The sharpening is done on a bench stone. The wide roller assures stability



and preserves the surface of the stone. The tappet screw allows honing to a second (micro-) bevel without having to reclamp the blade. Set, honing guide and angle jig.  
Max. blade width 60 mm  
Max. blade thickness 15 mm  
**No. 707168**



**E VERITAS® SHARPENING DEVICE, FOR SMALL PLANE BLADES**

This mount enables easier sharpening of short blades such as spokeshaves, reversing blades or small violin planes. Two magnets and a moveable fence hold the blades securely, the die-cast aluminium handle extends the blade and enables controlled sharpening, either by hand or with the Veritas sharpening system I (No. 707168).  
102 x 38 x 10 mm.  
**No. 702110**

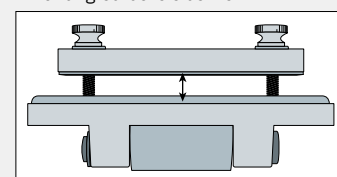
### Sharpening aids with horizontal clamp

The back and upper surfaces are used as reference surfaces

Properties:

- Ideal for handmade chisels and planes that do not have 100 % parallel or angled edges (Japanese chisels)
- Suitable for conical chisels

- Laborious to adjust, as they do not have any angle scale
- For angled bevels as well



**F VERITAS® NARROW BLADE CLAMP FOR VERITAS® SHARPENING SYSTEM II**  
Convert your standard Veritas Sharpening System II (No. 703666) into a self-centring double jaw honing guide. Simply replace the standard clamping unit by the double jaw clamp and you're done! The double jaw honing device allows for

the precise and easy sharpening of even the narrowest chisels, mortise chisels or plane blades while exactly maintaining an angle of 90°. Also suitable for short Japanese blades. Fits Veritas Sharpening System II No. 703666 and Camber Roller Assembly No. 703839.  
Max. blade width 38 mm  
Max. blade thickness 12 mm  
**No. 703843**



► For the Bridge City HG-4 honing guide (No. 728974) see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





#### A SHARPENING GUIDE WITH HORIZONTAL CLAMPING AND WIDE CLAMPING SURFACE

This high-quality cast iron sharpening guide with its large clamping surface is ideal for sharpening Japanese plane blades and very wide chisels. The long

roller prevents tilting during sharpening. Light and comfortable to use, thanks to large winged walnut handles. Max. blade width 78 mm Max. blade thickness 12 mm **No. 708434**



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

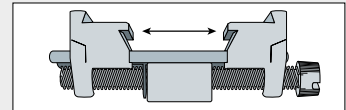
#### Sharpening aids with side clamp

The back and edges of the blade are used as reference surfaces

Properties:

- Only suitable for machine-produced chisels and planes that therefore feature 100 % parallel or angled edges (Western chisels)
- Broad edges cannot be clamped

- Good handling without cumbersome horizontal clamp screws
- Long pressing surfaces to achieve firm attachment



► Lie-Nielsen® honing guide and accessories available online.

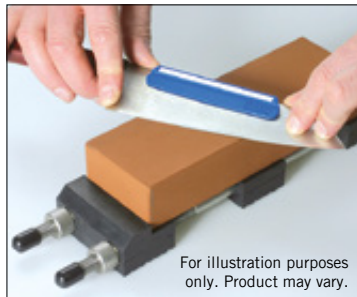
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



B

#### B TOGERU® SHARPENING DEVICE

For keeping the correct angle when sharpening knives manually. Simply put it on the back of the blade - when sharpening, place the incorporated ceramic fence on the honing stone surface. In this way, the bevel angle is quickly determined and warping movements are avoided. Suitable for double-bevelled knives. Max. blade width 30-50 mm

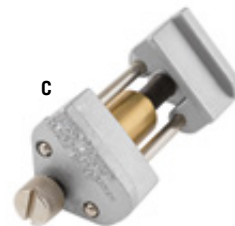


For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

Max. blade thickness 3 mm  
**No. 705377**

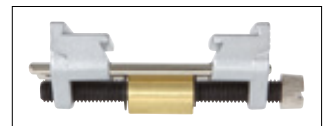
► For workshops on the topic of »Sharpening of cutting tools« see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

C



#### C DOUBLE JAW HONING GUIDE

The blade is centrally held in one of the two grooves in the vice-like aluminium jaws. The 26 mm wide



roller precisely maintains the angle of 90° without tilting. Max. blade width 82 mm Max. blade thickness 7 mm **No. 711400**



► For a matching screwdriver see chapter »Planes« on page 106.



D

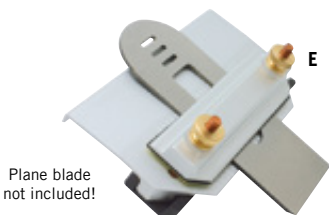
**D BEVEL GAUGE FOR TOOL EDGES**  
For checking bevel angles. Brass coated. 12 angles (15°-120°). Ø 46 mm  
**No. 707261**

#### DAS SCHÄRFEN JAPANISCHER MESSER

A Japanese master blacksmith with a legendary reputation in Japan shows you how to professionally sharpen



kitchen knives on waterstones. He introduces different types of waterstones, shows the correct sharpening motions for sharpening single- and double-bevelled knives and provides information on knife care. Knives that are sharpened following this method not only make the work easier but are also a pleasure to use and allow you to treat your food with respect. DVD, 15 minutes, in German. **No. 713806**



Plane blade not included!

E

#### E UNIVERSAL HONING GUIDE

The wide roller preserves the surface of the stone and prevents tilting. Can be used as an angle jig with grinding machines which have a tool rest. Aluminium body with brass roller. Max. blade width 65 mm Max. blade thickness 10 mm  
**No. 707149**

**F STANLEY® HONING GUIDE SET**  
With plastic rollers and a folding angle gauge, incl. sharpening stone and oil. Max. blade width 65 mm Max. blade thickness 9 mm Grit 120 / 240  
**No. 707166**



Chisel not included!

F



# Abrasive-guided Knife Sharpening Systems

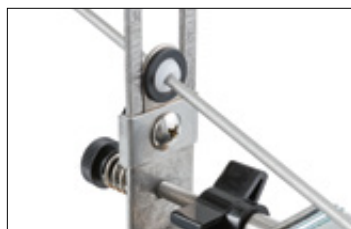
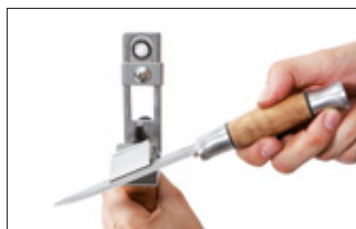
## KME Sharpening System

The KME sharpening system combines a robust construction with high functionality. The sharpening process is quite simple and you hardly need any previous knowledge or experience.

- Stepless sharpening angle adjustment allows for cutting angles of 17-28°
- A 180° rotating knife clamp ensures that both sides are evenly sharpened
- No right or left-handed restrictions
- The system can be held by the pistol-shaped handle for mobile use or slotted into the base
- Robust components made of metal, plastic and cherry wood
- Rubberised knife clamps protect the blade from scratches
- Maximum blade length: 16 cm



A



For illustration purposes only.  
Products may vary.

**A KME SHARPENING SYSTEM, BASIC KIT**  
Set includes:

- Diamond Sharpening Stone, Grit: 140 (No. 720436) 300 (No. 720437) 600 (No. 720438) 1500 (No. 720439)
- Cleaning cloth
- Robust carrying case

**No. 720430**



For accessories for KME sharpening system see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



B

**B KME SHARPENING SYSTEM, DICTUM® KIT** *Price advantage*

The set includes:

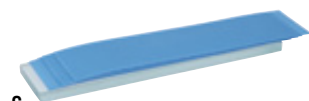
- Accessory Base (No. 720431)
  - Diamond Sharpening Stone, Grit: 140 (No. 720436) 300 (No. 720437) 600 (No. 720438) 1500 (No. 720439)
  - Diamond Lapping Film Set 9 micron (No. 720446) and 3 micron (No. 720444)
  - Stone Thickness Compensator (No. 720433)
  - Sinensis Camellia Oil (No. 705280)
  - Lubricating oil
  - Cleaning cloth
  - Robust carrying case
- No. 720448**

### Grit comparison based on manufacturer's information on KME Diamond Lapping Film vs. grit specifications of JIS standard

KME micron	KME grit	JIS grit
9	1800	approx. 1500
6	3000	approx. 4000
3	6000	approx. 6000
1	16 000	approx. 7000
0.5	60 000	approx. 8000
0.1	160 000	approx. 9000

### Grit comparison based on manufacturer's information on KME Diamond Stones vs. grit specifications of JIS standard

KME grit	JIS grit
100	approx. 50
140	approx. 100
300	approx. 200
600	approx. 500
1500	approx. 800



C

**C KME DIAMOND LAPPING FILM SETS**  
Glass base for diamond lapping films, including 5 strips of self-adhesive abrasive with the respective grit. For polishing knife blades. With increasing fineness the grit is classified as significantly coarser than according to the JIS standard.  
Dimensions: 100 x 25 mm.  
Fits KME sharpening system No. 720448 and No. 720430.

Grit  
9 Micron = Grit 1800  
**No. 720446**  
6 Micron = Grit 3000  
**No. 720445**  
3 Micron = Grit 6000  
**No. 720444**  
1 Micron = Grit 16 000  
**No. 720443**  
0.5 Micron = Grit 60 000  
**No. 720442**  
0.1 Micron = Grit 160 000  
**No. 720441**



D

**D KME DIAMOND SHARPENING STONES**

Diamond sharpening stone suitable for the KME sharpening system. The grit is to be classified coarser than according to the JIS standard. Dimensions: 100 x 25 mm. Fits KME sharpening system No. 720448 and No. 720430.

Grit  
100 **No. 720435**  
140 **No. 720436**  
300 **No. 720437**  
600 **No. 720438**  
1500 **No. 720439**



E

**E KME LEATHER STROPS**

This real-leather strop can be used untreated for homogenising metal or in combination with honing compounds for polishing the cutting edges. Dimensions: 100 x 25 mm. Fits KME sharpening system No. 720448 and No. 720430.  
**No. 720434**



For KME diamond lapping films without glass base see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Edge Pro Sharpening System, Apex

With Edge Pro Apex you can easily create accurate bevels on knives. Even novices can achieve good results with this sharpening aid after a short training period. Entry level model with good price-performance ratio.

- Stepless sharpening angle adjustment allows cutting angles from 6-33°
- Sharpening stone replaced via clamping screw
- For very smooth surfaces (glass, ceramics), good stability is guaranteed; not suitable for wooden surfaces
- Components made of torsion-resistant plastic
- Adjustable tool stop for different blade widths
- Maximum blade length 19 cm



### A EDGE PRO SHARPENING SYSTEM, APEX 1 SET

With Apex 1 you get an inexpensive starter set with which you can achieve good grinding results on most knives. The set can be extended with the multi-purpose sharpening guide (scissor attachment) and is therefore ideal for ambitious hobby sharpeners.

Set contains:

- Sharpening stones, grit 220 (No. 708552) and 400 (No. 708553)
- Cleaning set
- Handy transport bag

Instructions in German, revised by DICTUM, and in English.

No. 708595

Knives not included!



Additional blade stopper for 10-19 cm blade lengths included.

### Grit comparison based on manufacturer's information on Edge Pro vs. grit specifications of JIS standard

Grit 220	approx. 140
Grit 400	approx. 800



Price advantage!



### B EDGE PRO SHARPENING SYSTEM, APEX, DICTUM® SET

The set we have put together includes all the sharpening devices for sharpening kitchen and outdoor knives, closely following a standard sharpening procedure with a 1000/6000 combination waterstone. We recommend to watch the clear video tutorial (DVD included with delivery) for learning how to use the system quickly and easily. Since every sharpening stone needs to be trued from time to time to renew the structure or to ensure a clean edge, the DICTUM version also includes a truing set. Due to its weight and smooth surface, the supplied granite stone plate can also be used as a base plate for the sharpening system to ensure optimum stability. The provided Sinensis camellia oil protects newly sharpened blades from rust and, since it is food safe, is also perfect for kitchen knives.

Includes:

- Sharpening stones, grits 220 (No. 708552), 400 (No. 708553) and 1000 (No. 708555)
- Aluminium support for microabrasive (No. 708559)
- Microabrasive, self-adhesive, grit 2000 (No. 708547)
- Sharpening Stone Truing Set (No. 711115)
- Sinensis Camellia Oil (No. 705280)
- Cleaning set
- Handy transport bag
- DVD (in English) with instruction video

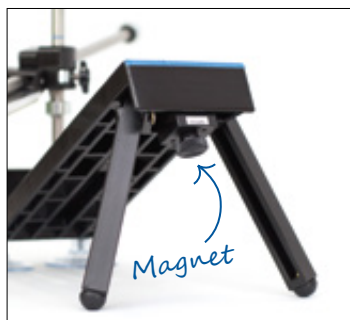
Instructions in German, revised by DICTUM, and in English.

No. 708596



### C EDGE PRO MAGNET FOR APEX, ADD-ON KIT

Magnetizing the blade table allows you to focus on creating a perfect edge instead of holding the knife steady. Where the magnetism will hinder your ability to sharpen, just deactivate the magnet. The add-on kit fits (tightly) under the table. For older models, you may have to replace the leg screws (included). Fits No. 708595 and 708596.  
No. 708599



► For magnifiers for controlling knife edges see chapter »Measuring and Inspection Instruments«.

## Edge Pro Sharpening System, Professional

Edge Pro Professional makes it incredibly easy to create a perfect knife edge. This sharpening device allows even novices to achieve optimal results after a short training period. The high-quality workmanship ensures a long service life and a pleasant sharpening experience.

- Continuously adjustable sharpening angle for cutting angles ranging from 6-33°
- No right-handed/left-handed restrictions thanks to the magnetic and partially magnetic blade securing mechanism
- Sharpening position ergonomically adjustable
- A tension spring mechanism makes it easy to change the sharpening stones
- Patented ramp system that enables sharpening up to the edge of the stone
- A vacuum suction cup ensures good stability on slippery surfaces
- Durable components made of metal and plastic
- Adjustable tool stopper for different blade widths
- Maximum blade length 19 cm

Knives not included!



Additional blade stopper for 10-19 cm blade lengths included.

No right- or left-handed restrictions due to magnetic and partially magnetic blade fixation.



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

A tension spring mechanism allows easy changing of sharpening stones.



### A EDGE PRO SHARPENING SYSTEM, PROFESSIONAL 1 SET

The Professional 1 provides you with a reasonably priced starter set that you can use to achieve good sharpening results on most knives. The set can be expanded with all accessories and is thus ideal for hobbyists.

Set contains:

- Sharpening stones, grit 220 (No. 708552) and 400 (No. 708553)
- Cleaning set
- Robust carrying case
- DVD (in English) with video guide

Instructions in German, revised by DICTUM, and in English.

No. 708550

### B EDGE PRO SHARPENING SYSTEM, PROFESSIONAL, DICTUM® SET

The set we have put together includes all the sharpening devices for sharpening kitchen and outdoor knives, closely following a standard sharpening procedure with a 1000/6000 combination waterstone. We recommend the provided DVD with its clear video tutorial for learning how to use the system quickly and easily. Since every sharpening stone needs to be trued from time to time to renew the structure or to ensure a clean edge, the DICTUM version also includes an alignment set. The provided Sinensis camellia oil protects freshly sharpened blades from rust and, since it is food safe, is also perfect for kitchen knives.

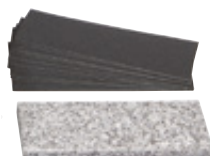
Set contains:

- Sharpening stones, grit 220 (No. 708552), 400 (No. 708553) and 1000 (No. 708555)
- Aluminium base for microabrasive (No. 708559)
- Microabrasive, self-adhesive, grit 2000 (No. 708547)
- Sharpening stone trueing set (No. 711115)
- Sinensis camellia oil (No. 705280)
- Cleaning set
- Robust carrying case
- DVD (in English) with video guide

Instructions in German, revised by DICTUM, and in English.

No. 708558

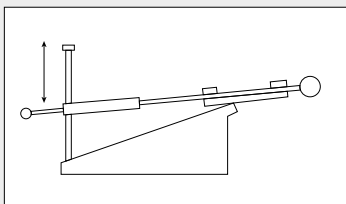
Price advantage!



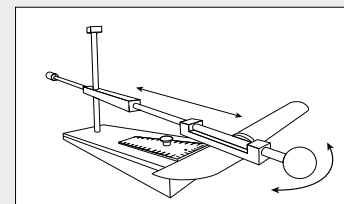
## Benefits of the abrasive-guided knife sharpening systems

- Handling and use do not require any specific knowledge; even novices will achieve very good results
- The fixed support of the knife and the guided sharpening stone enable a precise sharpening angle, which is crucial to producing razor-sharp blades
- No scratches on the back of the blade thanks to the abrasive guide and the localized material removal making it ideal for Damascus knives and etched blades
- The angled sharpening bench and smooth-running grinding arm enable the user to work ergonomically
- Synthetic waterstones ensure cold and gentle sharpening and therefore avoid heat generation on the cutting edges
- Adjustable sharpening angle to reshape bevels

- The hand-guided mechanism ensures a low operating risk



- Transportable; does not require a mains connection







► *Edge Pro Slide Guide for improved blade stabilisation and jigs for smaller knives available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

## SHARPENING HIGH-CLASS KNIVES

**Content:** You will learn how to perfectly sharpen your knives on waterstones while preserving the blade. The course will also feature an introduction to specially developed knife sharpening systems such as the Edge Pro or the Magna-Tec Delta-S, and you will be given the opportunity to test them yourself.

► *For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)*



**A** **EDGE PRO SHARPENING STONES**  
Sharpening stone with aluminium holder, fits Edge Pro sharpening system No. 708550 and No. 708558. Made of aluminium oxide. The grit is to be rated much finer than sharpening stones classified according to JIS standard. 150 x 25 x 4 mm.

Grit  
120 **No. 708551**  
220 **No. 708552**  
400 **No. 708553**  
600 **No. 708554**  
1000 **No. 708555**



**B** **EDGE PRO MICROABRASIVES, SELF-ADHESIVE**  
Self-adhesive abrasive for polishing out scratches on knife blades. Fits glass base of the Edge Pro sharpening system (No. 708550 and 708558). Made of aluminium oxide. The grit should be rated much finer than sharpening stones classified according to the JIS standard. 15 pieces. 150 x 25 mm.

Grit  
2000 **No. 708547**  
3000 **No. 708548**  
6000 **No. 708549**



**C** **EDGE PRO DIAMOND SHARPENING STONES**  
Diamond sharpening stone on aluminium base. For ceramic cutting edges and the rough removal of material in the event of chipped/broken blades. Fits Edge Pro sharpening system No. 708550 and No. 708558. 150 x 25 mm.

Grit  
fine **No. 708556**  
extra-fine **No. 708557**



**D** **EDGE PRO ALUMINIUM BASE**  
Aluminium support for microabrasive (No. 708547, 708548 and 708549). Fits Edge Pro Sharpening System (No. 708550 and 708558). 150 x 25 mm.

**No. 708559**

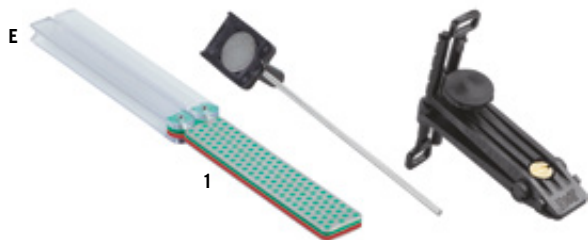
### Grit comparison based on manufacturer's information on Edge Pro vs. grit specifications of JIS standard

Grit fine	approx. 120	Grit 600	approx. 1200
Grit extra-fine	approx. 220	Grit 1000	approx. 2000
Grit 120	approx. 320	Grit 2000	approx. 6000
Grit 220	approx. 400	Grit 3000	approx. 8000
Grit 400	approx. 800	Grit 6000	approx. 10 000



► *For Edge Pro Matrix Diamond Sharpening Stones see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### E DMT® DIAFOLD® MAGNA-GUIDE™ SHARPENING SYSTEM

With the sharpening system from DMT, sharpening knives and tools becomes a breeze. The portable sharpening system has a blade clamp offering 7-angle adjustability, which covers most blade geometries - from outdoor knives to fine cooking knives. A guide rod and magnetic attachment ensure the blade is always at the ideal sharpening angle. The deep clamp holds knives up to 9.5 mm thick without scratching the surface during sharpening. Maximum blade length 12 cm



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

#### 1 3-Piece Set

Set includes:  
Clamp with adjustable guide, guide rod with magnetic attachment, diamond sharpener with folding handle (fine/extra-fine).  
**No. 705428**



#### 2 4-Piece Set

Set includes:  
Clamp with adjustable guide, guide rod with magnetic attachment, diamond sharpener with folding handle (coarse/fine; extra-fine/extra extra-fine). Comes in practical plastic case.  
**No. 706296**



Application video available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

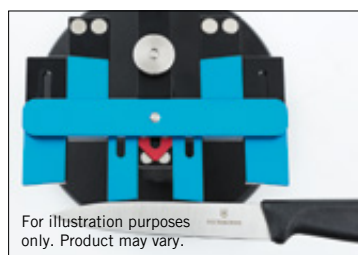
## Magna-Tec® Sharpening System Scorpio

The Scorpio knife sharpening guide from Magna-Tec combines robust construction with high functionality. It enables even sharpening beginners and inexperienced users to achieve impressive results.

- Continuously adjustable sharpening angle allows cutting angles of 9-36°
- No right- or left-hand restrictions due to fixed magnetic blade
- 4-in-1 blade support module for different knife blade lengths from 3 to 25.5 cm
- The system can be used both moving (pistol-type handle) and stationary (base)
- Easy change of sharpening stones due to tension spring mechanism
- Robust components made of metal and high-performance plastic
- Maximum blade length 25.5 cm
- Made in Germany



A tension spring mechanism allows easy changing of sharpening stones



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

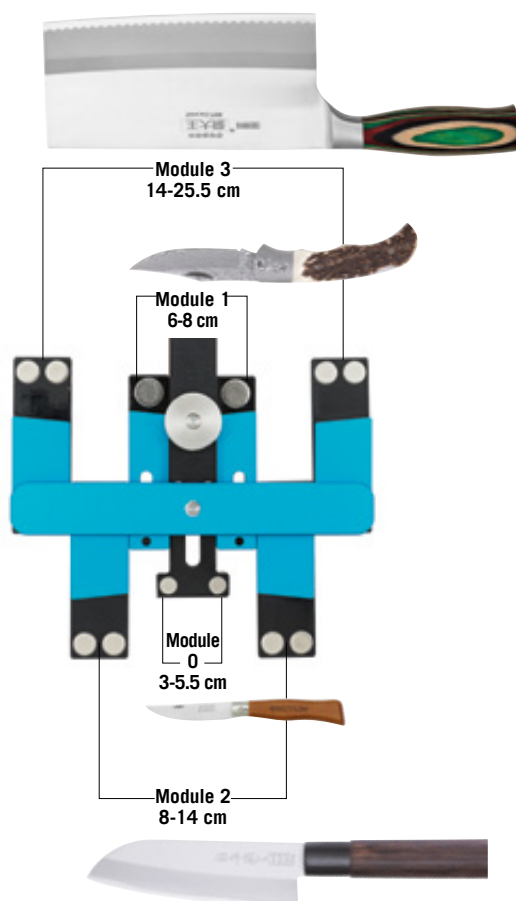


For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

Rotatable tool stop for optimum guidance in all blade shapes and lengths

No right- or left-handed restrictions due to magnetic blade fixation

### 4-in-1 blade support module for different knife blade lengths from 3 to 25.5 cm



Knives not included!



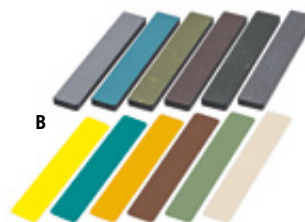
**A** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO SHARPENING SYSTEM »BASIC«

Set includes:

- Magna-Tec Scorpio (5-piece set)
- 1 abrasive each incl. base: aluminium oxide, grit 320 (No. 728907) / grit 700 (No. 728908) / grit 1000 (No. 728909) / grit 2000 (No. 728910) / grit 3000 (No. 728911)

- 1 abrasive each: aluminium oxide, grit 320, 700, 1000, 2000 and 3000
- Sturdy transport case
- DVD with German video manual
- Various small accessories

**No. 728904**



**B** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO SHARPENING SYSTEM »PRO«

Set includes:

- Magna-Tec Scorpio (5-piece set)
- 1 abrasive each incl. base: diamond, grit 320 (No. 728928) / grit 1000 (No. 728929) / grit 2000 (No. 728930) / grit 3000 (No. 728931) / grit 4000 (No. 728932)
- 1 abrasive each: diamond, grit 320, 700, 1000, 2000, 3000 and 4000
- Sturdy transport case
- DVD with German video manual
- Various small accessories

**No. 728905**




**C** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO SHARPENING SYSTEM »PRO PLUS«


Same scope of delivery as Sharpening System »Pro« No. 728905

- + Abrasive incl. base, diamond, grit 6000 (No. 728933)
- + Abrasive, diamond, grit 6000
- + Diamond sharpening stone, grit 220 (No. 728950)


**No. 728906**



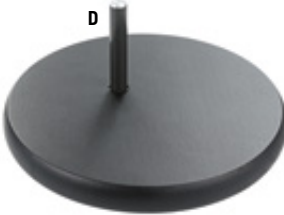
**A** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO ABRASIVE INCL. BASE, ALUMINIUM OXIDE  
Ready-to-use sharpening device consisting of base and attached self-adhesive abrasive, suitable for the Magna-Tec Scorpio sharpening system (No. 728904). Aluminium oxide abrasive, ideal for knives with a hardness under 60 HRC.  
100 x 19 x 5 mm.  
Grit  
320 **No. 728907**  
700 **No. 728908**  
1000 **No. 728909**  
2000 **No. 728910**  
3000 **No. 728911**  
4000 **No. 728912**  
6000 **No. 728913**  
8000 **No. 728914**  
10 000 **No. 728915**  
12 000 **No. 728916**




**B** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO ABRASIVE INCL. BASE, DIAMOND  
Ready-to-use sharpening device consisting of base and attached self-adhesive abrasive, suitable for the Magna-Tec Scorpio sharpening system (No. 728904). Diamond abrasive, ideal for knives with a hardness over 60 HRC.  
100 x 19 x 5 mm.  
Grit  
320 **No. 728927**  
700 **No. 728928**  
1000 **No. 728929**  
2000 **No. 728930**  
3000 **No. 728931**  
4000 **No. 728932**  
6000 **No. 728933**  
8000 **No. 728934**  
10 000 **No. 728935**  
12 000 **No. 728936**



**C** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO DIAMOND SHARPENING STONE  
High-quality diamond sharpening stone, fits Magna-Tec Scorpio sharpening system. The diamond coating is ideal for ceramic knives and coarse material removal.  
100 x 19 x 6 mm.  
Grit  
60 **No. 728947**  
120 **No. 728948**  
180 **No. 728949**  
220 **No. 728950**




**D** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO BASE  
The Magna-Tec Scorpio sharpening system can be optionally attached to this base within a few seconds for stationary sharpening, allowing you to work with one hand. Non-slip due to rubber studs. The rotating bearing allows for ergonomically ideal sharpening and a good view of the knife. Fits Magna-Tec Scorpio sharpening systems No. 728904, No. 728905 and No. 728906.  
**No. 728953**



**E** MAGNA-TEC® SCORPIO GUIDING ROD FOR GRINDING ROUNDED BEVELS  
Using the guide rod, which is slightly curved at the thread, the Magna-Tec Scorpio sharpening system allows you to also sharpen rounded bevels of 3.5°.

This type of bevel is particularly popular with hunting or outdoor knives and ensures a more sturdy cutting edge. Fits Magna-Tec Scorpio sharpening systems No. 728904, No. 728905 and No. 728906.  
**No. 728952**



For Magna-Tec® Scorpio aluminium oxide and diamond abrasives see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

HOW TO REPRODUCE A BEVEL: A DIRECT COMPARISON

Example using a Victorinox vegetable knife:

1. Blade length 100 mm

Magna-Tec® Scorpio

- 1. Measure and note the blade length
- 2. Note the module in use
- 3. Insert the blade and transfer the resting point (measured from the knife tip to the right end of the module stopper, see arrow) onto the blade. Note the distance from the marking point to the tip of the blade
- 4. Note the (relative) sharpening angle indicated by the scale on the shaft

Knife	Blade length	Module	Rest point blade	(Relative) sharpening angle
Vegetable knife	100 mm	2	93 mm	20,25°

Magna-Tec® Delta-S

- 1. Measure and note the blade length
- 2. Note the module in use
- 3. Insert the blade and transfer the scale centre (0) to the blade; note the distance from the marking point to the tip of the blade
- 4. Use the scale to document the position of the tool stopper and the side of the blade stopper currently in use (narrow or broad)
- 5. Note the sharpening angle identified on the digital display

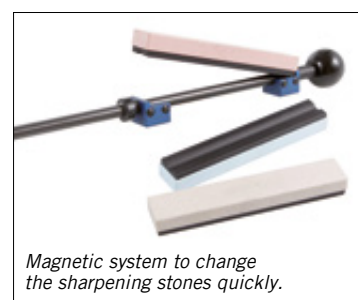
Knife	Blade length	Module	Rest point blade	Position of the tool stopper/orientation	(Relative) sharpening angle
Vegetable knife	100 mm	1	50 mm	5 mm / broad	22,2°

148

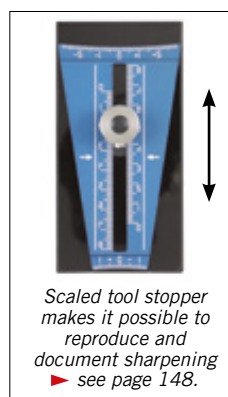




For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.



**Vide** Application video available online.  
www.dictum.com



## Magna-Tec® Sharpening System Delta-S

The Delta-S sharpening system from Magna-Tec combines the proven and traditional principle of sharpening by hand with the advantageous precision of a machine. It is possible to achieve impressive results that are not possible with a conventional knife sharpening device or sharpening by hand after only a short training period. The Delta-S stands out due to its high operating comfort, unique standard of quality and maximum sharpening results.

### A MAGNA-TEC® DELTA-S SHARPENING SYSTEM

- Ball screw drive for fast, smooth and precise sharpening angle adjustment; stepless adjustment via an electronic protractor; possible cutting angles of 9-35°
- Positionable feet and solid weight of 3 kg make it very stable and resistant to slipping on all flat surfaces
- Dampened depth stopper brakes the grinding arm gently, preventing risk of injury and damage to the knives
- Maximum blade length 32 cm
- Metal design milled from a single piece of material
- All individual pieces can be replaced

#### Includes:

- Inclinator with digital display
- Four different blade rest modules
- Sharpening stones, grit 220 (No. 708564) / 400 (No. 708565) / 1000 (No. 708566) / 2000 (No. 708567) / 3000 (No. 708568) / 5000 (No. 708569) / 10 000 (No. 708570)
- Strops, chromium oxide (No. 708584) / zirconium oxide (No. 708585) / untreated (No. 708586)
- Polishing pastes made of chromium oxide (No. 708582) / zirconium oxide (No. 708583)
- Adjustment and testing set
- Sharpening stone alignment set
- Cleaning set
- Robust carrying case
- DVD with German video guide

No. 708560



**A MAGNA-TEC® DELTA-S  
DIAMOND STONES**

High-quality diamond sharpening stone, fits Magna-Tec Delta-S sharpening system (No. 708560). The diamond coating is ideal for ceramic knives and rough removal of material.  
125 x 22 mm.

Grit  
60  
120  
180

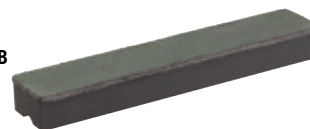
**No. 708561**  
**No. 708562**  
**No. 708563**

**C****C MAGNA-TEC® DELTA-S  
REPLACEMENT STONES**

Original Naniwa Specialty Stone, fits Magna-Tec Delta-S sharpening system (No. 708560). 125 x 22 x 10 mm.

Grit  
220  
400  
1000  
2000  
3000  
5000  
10 000

**No. 708564**  
**No. 708565**  
**No. 708566**  
**No. 708567**  
**No. 708568**  
**No. 708569**  
**No. 708570**

**A****B**

**B MAGNA-TEC® DELTA-S STROPS,**  
Strop made of genuine leather for polishing knife blades. Suitable for the Magna-Tec Delta-S sharpening system (No. 708560).  
25 x 22 mm.

*Chromium Oxide*  
Treated with chromium oxide for fine polishing.  
**No. 708584**

*Zirconium Oxide*  
Treated with zirconium oxide for very fine polishing.  
**No. 708585**

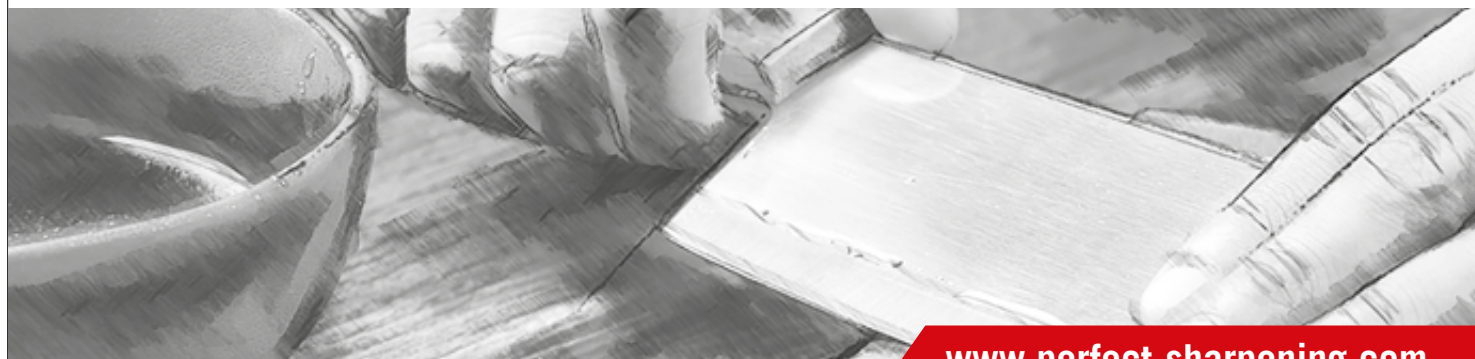
*Untreated*  
Untreated for finalising. No removal of material - metal is homogenised.  
**No. 708586**



For more Magna-Tec® accessories see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

# Everything about SHARPENING

## Techniques, tools and knowledge

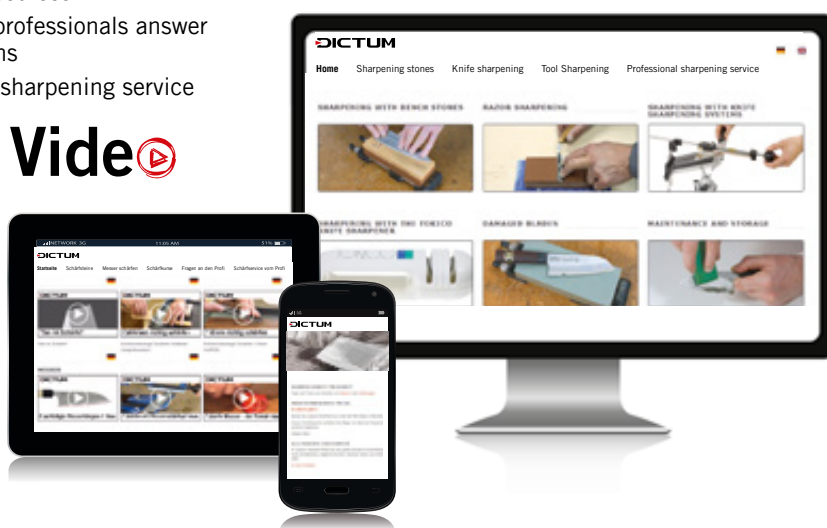


[www.perfect-sharpening.com](http://www.perfect-sharpening.com)

Useful tips and tricks and step-by-step instructions for sharpening knives and tools with the appropriate sharpening devices.

- Practical guide to different sharpening techniques as well as the appropriate sharpening devices
- Sharpening techniques on machines
- Videos and video tutorials
- Sharpening courses
- Sharpening professionals answer your questions
- Professional sharpening service

**Vide**



Videos



Tutorials



Tips



Scan now and discover optimised contents for desktop, tablet or smartphone!

[www.perfect-sharpening.com](http://www.perfect-sharpening.com)

## Wet Sharpening Systems

### Tormek® Sharpening System

Proven for many years and constantly perfected, wet working sharpening machines are the basis of the ingenious Tormek sharpening system. A range of jigs, which can be mounted on the universal support, makes the sharpening of any cutting tool easier. Tormek enables the achievement of exact cutting geometry and consistent results for chisels, turning tools, knives, shears or machine tools. Also suitable for workshops and instructional settings because of safe operation - no sparks are produced and it has an overload safety clutch. The offered grinding wheels assure short sharpening times under all conditions in combination with the greatest possible tool protection. The front end can also be used for plane honing. The leather honing wheel removes burrs quickly and leaves a perfectly polished cutting edge. Robust construction with solid housing and sliding water container.



**A TORMEK® T-4 ORIGINAL**  
»Tormek Original« sharpening wheel, grit 220, Ø 200 x 40 mm; leather honing wheel Ø 145 x 26 mm; solid zinc casting top with universal support with fine adjustment (horizontal and vertical settings). Impact-resistant ABS plastic housing.  
230 V, 120 W  
120 rpm, 8 kg.

Includes:  
• Stone grader (SP-650)  
• Pro Angle Master (WM-200)  
• Honing compound (PA-70)  
• Handbook (HB-10)  
• Instruction video (DVD-1)  
• Edge marker (EM-15)  
• Voucher for free participation in a one-day workshop of your choice or a discount of 100 € for a multi-day workshop

**Comes with Tormek manual in German language.**

**No. 705195**  
Replacement Wheel »Tormek Original« (SG-200)  
**No. 705196**

#### A summary of the advantages of Tormek sharpening machines

##### Longer service life of T-8 and T-4:

- Stainless steel spindle with EzyLock System for easier stone assembling
- Solid zinc cast housing with integrated vertical and horizontal support
- Better motor insulation

##### Additional advantages of T-8:

- Electrophoretic dip painted casing, zinc cast housing frame and robust ABS plastic sides for better corrosion protection
- Silent running, maintenance free motor, designed for continuous operation, 25 000 hour life



- Improved water container with screw lift for easy positioning, overspill rim, drip-off plate, magnetic swarf collector and magnetic cleaning scraper
- Two additional rubber feet to drain off water on the case

**B TORMEK® T-8 ORIGINAL**  
»Tormek Original« sharpening wheel (SG-250), aluminium oxide, Ø 250 x 50 mm, grit 220; leather honing wheel, Ø 215 x 30 mm; universal support, finely adjustable (can be used horizontally or vertically).  
230 V, 200 W, 90 rpm, torque 14.7 Nm, 14.8 kg.

Includes:  
• Square Edge Jig (SE-77)  
• Adjustable Truing Tool (TT-50)  
• Stone Grader (SP-650)  
• Pro Angle Master (WM-200)  
• Honing Compound (PA-70)  
• Handbook (HB-10)  
• Instruction Video (DVD-1)  
• Edge marker (EM-15)  
• Voucher for free participation in a one-day workshop of your choice or a discount of 100 € for a multi-day workshop.

**Comes with Tormek manual in German language.**

**No. 716034**  
Replacement Wheel »Tormek Original« (SG-250)  
**No. 705201**

 For Tormek® replacement parts see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



Learn the professional use of the Tormek machine in our course »Sharpening with the Tormek system«. If you buy a Tormek T-8 or T-4 from DICTUM, you can choose between a voucher for **free participation in a one-day workshop of your choice** or a **discount of €100 for a multi-day workshop**.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



### WORKSHOP

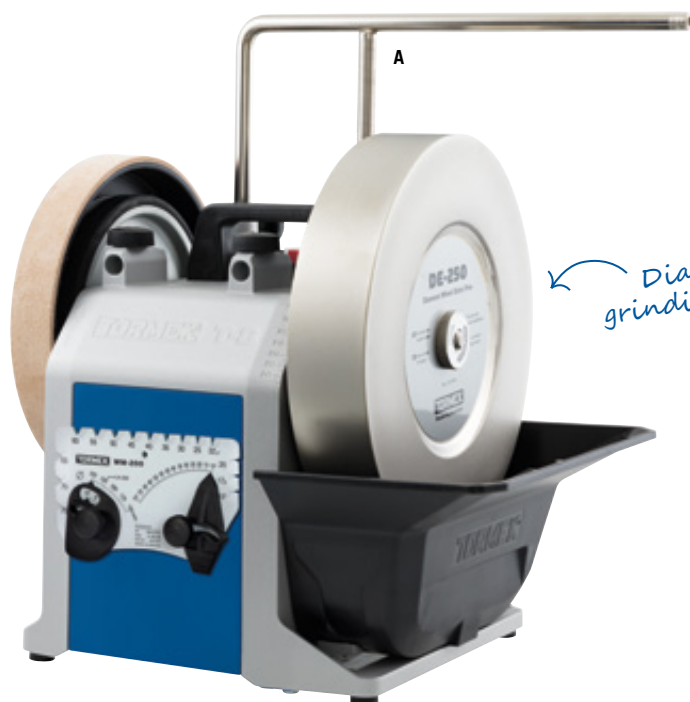
#### SHARPENING FOR WOODTURNERS

**Content:** You will learn how to sharpen tools by hand and using sharpening machines like the Tormek, the Sorby ProEdge or the look-through grinding machine with precision and in a way that protects the tool. This includes learning how to create a reproducible bevel and a traditional or fingernail grind. Special grinds such as the Ellsworth Special Grind will also be covered. Participants will be shown how to sharpen gouges, chisels, parting tools, scrapers, ring tools and hook tools. The course is designed for both novices and experienced woodturners wishing to expand their skills.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)







Learn the professional use of the Tormek machine in our course »Sharpening with the Tormek system«. If you buy a Tormek T-8 or T-4 from DICTUM, you can choose between a voucher for free participation in a one-day workshop of your choice or a discount of €100 for a multi-day workshop.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

### A summary of the advantages of Tormek sharpening machines

#### Longer service life of T-8 and T-4:

- Stainless steel spindle with EzyLock System for easier stone assembling
- Solid zinc cast housing with integrated vertical and horizontal support
- Better motor insulation

#### Additional advantages of T-8:

- Electrophoretic dip painted casing, zinc cast housing frame and robust ABS plastic sides for better corrosion protection
- Silent running, maintenance free motor, designed for continuous operation, 25 000 hour life



- Improved water container with screw lift for easy positioning, overspill rim, drip-off plate, magnetic swarf collector and magnetic cleaning scraper
- Two additional rubber feet to drain off water on the case

#### A TORMEK® T-8 ORIGINAL WITH DE-250 DIAMOND GRINDING WHEEL, GRIT 1200

The Tormek DE-250 diamond grinding wheel with a grit size of 1200 provides a very fine grinding surface and is ideal



for carving tools, knives, chisels or plane blades. Thanks to the additional grinding surface on the side, a straight bevel can be ground into the tool without hollow grinding. For sharpening on the side of the diamond grinding wheel, we recommend the Tormek Multi Base (MB-100) with the appropriate sharpening device for the respective tool.

Sharpening wheel »Tormek DE-250«, grit 1200, Ø 250 x 50 mm; Leather honing wheel Ø 215 x 30 mm; universal support with fine adjustment (can be used horizontally or vertically). 230 V, 200 W, 90 rpm, torque 14.7 Nm, 14.8 kg.

Includes:

- Square Edge Jig (SE-77)
- Adjustable Truing Tool (TT-50) and Stone Grader (SP-650) for purchasing additional standard sharpening wheels (water stones)
- Anti-corrosion Concentrate, 150 ml (ACC-150)
- Pro Angle Master (WM-200)
- Honing Compound (PA-70)
- Handbook (HB-10)
- Instruction Video (DVD-1)
- Edge marker (EM-15)
- Voucher for free participation in a one-day workshop of your choice or a discount of 100 € for a multi-day workshop.

**Comes with Tormek manual in German language.**

#### No. 716053

Replacement Wheel »Tormek Diamond Grinding Wheel« (DE-250)

#### No. 716078

**NEW!** Maximum precision and solid zinc cast housing: TORMEK T-8 takes precision and stability to a completely new level. The new design integrates the previously mounted sleeves for the vertical and horizontal support into the revolutionary fully cast top and frame. The enhanced stability optimizes jig guidance and thus the sharpening accuracy.



Customise as required: For a Tormek® T8 Custom without sharpening/honing wheel or accessories to be customised according to your own requirements see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



#### ► Tormek® T-4 and T-8 available online as part of the following sets

- Tormek T-4 incl. Adjustable Truing Tool (No. 716031)
- Tormek T-4 Bushcraft (No. 716037)
- Tormek T-8 for Woodturners with Blackstone Silicon Sharpening Stone (No. 716056)
- Tormek T-8 for Woodturners with Woodturner's Kit (No. 716057)
- Tormek T-8 incl. Hand Tool Kit (No. 716055)
- Tormek T-8 with Diamond Grinding Wheel, Grit 360 and Woodturner's Kit (No. 716054)

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

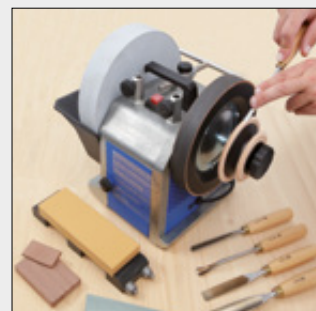
## WORKSHOP

### SHARPENING CARVING AND SCULPTING TOOLS

Sharp tools are essential for successful carving. Carving and sculpting gouges in particular often have a complex blade geometry, for which only a few sharpening jigs are suitable. This makes sharpening very tricky and requires skill and know-how from the sharpener.

#### Content:

In this course you will learn step by step the different techniques and all important aspects of sharpening carving and sculpting tools on both waterstones and machines.



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

## Knives

**A TORMEK® KNIFE JIG**

*Model SVM-45*  
Blade length min. 60 mm.  
Width 45 mm  
**No. 705203**

*Model SVM-140*  
Blade length min. 160 mm.  
Width 140 mm  
**No. 705214**

**B TORMEK® SMALL KNIFE HOLDER**

**SVM-00**  
Enables you to sharpen even the smallest knives like wood carving knives and pocket knives. Used in combination with the Tormek Knife Jig SVM-45.  
**No. 705232**



## Sculpting tools

**C TORMEK® SHORT TOOL JIG SVS-38**

For short gouges and V-blades. Blade length min. 45 mm, blade width max. 38 mm.  
**No. 705239**

**D TORMEK® PROFILED LEATHER**

**HONING WHEEL LA-120**  
For honing and polishing the inside of turning tools, gouges and V-shaped tools, interchangeable wheels.  
**No. 705227**

**E TORMEK® GOUGE JIG SVD-186 R**

For turning tools and hollow gouges, as well as interchangeable cutters for hollowing tools etc., up to 36 mm wide. Adjustable in cutting angle and shape.  
**No. 716033**

**F TORMEK® TURNING TOOL SETTER**

**TTS-100**  
For adjusting bevel angles of turning tools and chisels, independently of wheel diameter. Used in combination with jigs (SVD-186 R and SVS-50).  
**No. 705237**



## Turning tools

**G TORMEK® MULTI JIG SVS-50**

Universal jig for turning tools and carving gouges with straight and curved cutting edges and for skew and straight chisels.  
**No. 705229**

**H TORMEK® TOOL REST SVD-110**

For turning tools (scrapers, scorps, inshaves), chisels, scraper blades etc. »Torlock« locking system.  
**No. 705218**



## Scissors

**I TORMEK® SCISSORS JIG SVX-150**

For all straight scissors' blades. Demountable hedge shears up to max. 200 mm. Blade thickness max. 9 mm  
**No. 705205**



## Axes

**J TORMEK® AXE JIG SVA-170**

For axe heads up to 170 mm in size (larger axes can be sharpened without a jig using the universal support).  
**No. 705228**



## Chisels, plane blades

**K TORMEK® PLANE BLADE**

**JIG SVH-320**  
For blades of any length, minimum blade width 13 mm.  
**No. 705207**

**L TORMEK® SQUARE EDGE JIG SE-77**

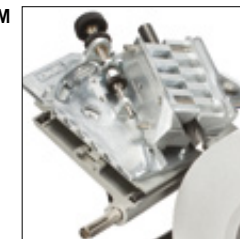
For plane blades and paring chisels. Also suitable for Japanese chisels. Slightly convex cutting shapes can also be sharpened using two setting wheels (included with T-8).  
**No. 716035**



## Drills

**M TORMEK® DRILL BIT SHARPENING**

**ATTACHMENT DBS-22**  
Sharpening the complex tip geometry of a drill by hand requires plenty of practice. Using the Tormek drill bit sharpener attachment, you can now sharpen a 4-facet drill bit with the usual wet grinding method on your drill for maximum precision and service life. The optimum point and clearance angles can be set for any drilling operation with regard to the size of the drill and the material to be worked on. Even drills which are completely blunt and have their tips broken off can be returned to the perfect shape through sharpening. Point angles 90°-150°. Ø 3-22 mm  
**No. 705231**

**N TORMEK® ADJUSTABLE TRUEING**

**TOOL TT-50**  
With diamond tip, for trueing ingrained or unround grinding wheels.  
**No. 705210**

**O TORMEK® STONE GRADER SP-650**

For regrounding and dressing Tormek sharpening stones.  
**No. 705209**



**Vide**

on Tormek® products  
available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**WORKSHOP****SHARPENING WITH TORMEK**

Learn the professional use of the Tormek machine. If you buy a Tormek T-4 or T-8 you may take part in the course »Sharpening with the Tormek System« free of charge.

► For workshop dates see  
[www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



**A TORMEK® MULTI BASE MB-100**  
Base for sharpening on the side of the diamond wheels No. 716078, 716079 and 716080 for completely flat cutting-tool edges without hollow grind. Fits Tormek Knife Jig (No. 705203, 705214 and 705232), Axe Jig (No. 705228), Scissors Jig (No. 705205), Short Tool Jig



(No. 705239), Gouge Jig (No. 716033), Multi Jig (No. 705229), Square Edge Jig (No. 716035) and Tool Rest (No. 705218).  
**No. 716076**

#### B TORMEK® ROTATING BASE

Enables you to easily rotate the machine 180° and lock it with complete stability. It makes it easy to alternate between sharpening/honing or sharpening towards or away from the edge. Fits all models.  
**No. 705221**



#### C TORMEK® HAND TOOL KIT HTK-806

##### Price advantage

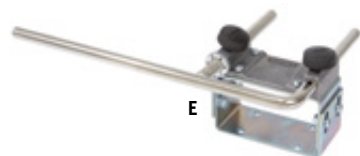
Short jig, axe jig, knife jig, small knife holder, long slender knives jig, scissors jig. Comes in practical plastic box with hard foam inlay.

**No. 705223**



#### D TORMEK® WOODTURNER'S KIT TNT-808

Grinding jig for woodturning tools, additional adapter for cutters, additional multi-tip adapter, multi jig, tool rest, leather honing wheel, turning tool setter, machine dust cover and instruction box for woodturners (in English). Comes in practical plastic box with hard foam inlay.  
**No. 705454**



#### E TORMEK® BENCH GRINDER MOUNTING SET BGM-100

Though primarily designed for turners, this mounting set, in combination with the gouge jig (SVD-186 R), the multi jig (SVS-50) and the tool rest (SVD-110), allows you to sharpen all turning tools with the Tormek system also on a double-wheeled bench grinder. This makes the rough pre-sharpening of hard steels much easier. Using the turning tool setter, you can transfer the same blade geometries to the Tormek machine for honing. Comes with Tormek universal support with fine adjustment, horizontal



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

support rest, adjustable platform made from galvanized steel and English guide to sharpening turning tools.

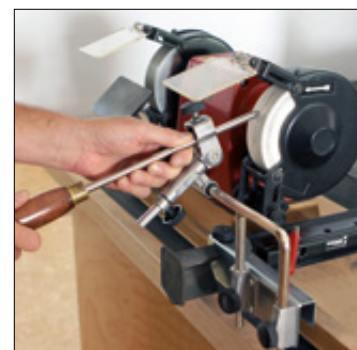
**No. 705225**



#### F TORMEK® CONVERTER OWC-1

Attachment to adapt the Tormek bench grinder mounting kit BGM-100 (No. 705225) directly to a Wolverine V-arm. It allows to use any Tormek honing guide on double-wheeled grinders with the Wolverine system.

**No. 705353**



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.



#### G TORMEK® HONING COMPOUND PA-70

For leather honing wheels No. 705212 and 705197.

70 g.

**No. 705213**

#### Tormek® accessories

Suitable for models 2000-2006, 1200-1206, T-3, T-4, T-7 and T-8 unless otherwise stated.



#### H TORMEK® ACC-150 ANTI-CORROSION CONCENTRATE

For cleaning diamond grinding discs and protecting them against corrosion if not used for a long time.

2 x 150 ml.

**No. 716077**



**I DUST COVER FOR TORMEK® SHARPENING SYSTEM MH-380**  
Linen, suitable for Tormek T-7 and T-8.  
**No. 705215**



#### J TORMEK® RUBBER WORK MAT RM-533

This waterproof yet non-slip rubber mat is ideal as a workpad for sharpening machines as well as for sharpening by hand using waterstones. The raised rim and

all-round groove will retain any water spillage. The relatively soft material also protects freshly sharpened tools placed on the mat.

533 x 343 mm.

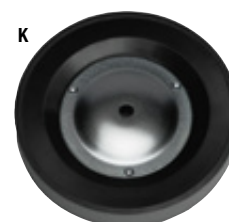
**No. 705198**

#### K TORMEK® CW-220 COMPOSITE HONING WHEEL

The composite honing wheel has an integrated polishing agent and is easy to handle. An advantage over the leather honing wheel is that the composite wheel can be used in clean environments and no honing paste has to be applied.

Ø 220 mm  
Width 31 mm

**No. 716194**





### Wheels for Tormek® T-4

Fits models 1200-1206, T-3 and T-4.  
Approx. Ø 200 x 40 mm, bore 12 mm.

#### A TORMEK® ORIGINAL REPLACEMENT WHEEL SG-200, GRIT 220

This hard-bond stone is suitable for pre-sharpening double-layered blades as well as chrome-vanadium steel and HSS.  
**No. 705196**



#### B DICTUM® JAPANESE SHARPENING WHEEL, GRIT 1000

Suitable for HSS as well as carbon steel and double-layered steel. Hard bond for highly effective polishing with little abrasion.  
**No. 716040**



### Wheels for Tormek® T-7 und T-8, as well as Record, Jet and Triton Models with wheel diameter 250 mm

Fits models 2000-2006, T-7 and T-8.  
Approx. Ø 250 x 50 mm, bore 12 mm.

#### DICTUM® Ultra-Speed Grinding Wheels

For our Ultra-Speed grinding wheels we use single-crystal-based aluminium oxide, manufactured in Germany, which is one of the most effective ultra-fine abrasives on the market. During the numerous tests carried out with microscope images, we have improved its composition to achieve an optimum compromise between a fine grinding pattern and fast material removal.

#### D DICTUM® ULTRA-SPEED GRINDING WHEEL

For grinding double-layered blades as well as chrome/vanadium steels and HSS. Hard bond. Aluminium oxide abrasive.

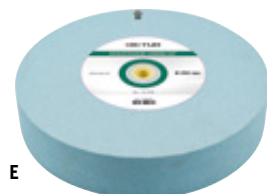
Grit  
220 **No. 727847**  
1000 **No. 727849**  
3000 **No. 727850**

Available April 2021.



#### E DICTUM® GRINDING WHEEL CARBON CUT, GRIT 80

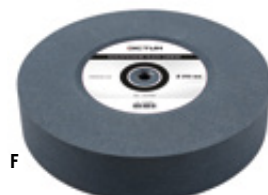
Extra-coarse wheel with hard bond for repairing damaged tool blades. Primarily suitable for double-layered blades and carbon steel. Aluminium oxide abrasive.  
**No. 716030**



#### F DICTUM® BLACK CARBIDE GRINDING WHEEL, GRIT 220

Black silicon carbide is ideal for grinding hard materials such as HSS and carbon steels. Woodturners especially appreciate this abrasive for its fast material removal properties as well as its long service life. Black silicon carbide abrasive.  
**No. 727848**

Available April 2021.



### Accessories and replacement parts



For the full range of Tormek® replacement parts and accessories see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### C TORMEK® HONING WHEEL SJ-200, GRIT 4000

Extreme polishing performance for mirror surfaces, thanks to hard bond. Particularly recommended for chrome-vanadium steel but also for HSS blades and double-layered steel.  
**No. 705458**

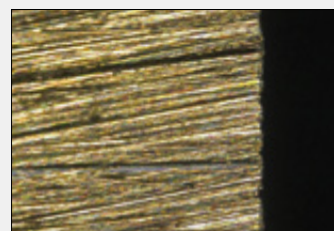
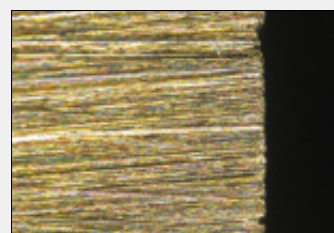


### DICTUM® microscope tests for the development of our Ultra-Speed Grinding Wheels

In the course of the development of the DICTUM® Ultra-Speed grinding wheels, our specialists carried out various test grinding operations and compared the results under the microscope.

Sharpening only the bevel on new woodworking tools such as chisels or plane blades without paying attention to the back of the blade leaves the degree of sharpness to chance or the diligence of the tool manufacturer. The blade back, however, cannot be ground with a wet grinding machine.

**300x magnification of the chisel blade.  
Back face ground on waterstones up to grit 6000:**



For the tests, the backs of chisel blades were pre-sharpened on bench stones up to grit 6000. The aim was to show the cutting edge formation that can be achieved with a standard 220 grit sharpening wheel.

By polishing on a leather disc, the sharpening result can be slightly improved; the coarse grinding marks, however, cannot be removed. With a lot of pressure and time on the leather disc, even deep scratches can be largely removed. This procedure, however, rounds off the cutting edge and thus reduces its service life.

#### Comparison

Bevel ground with 1000/6000 grit bench stone (combination stone) by hand with a sharpening guide. In order to achieve similar results on the wet grinding machine, a finer grinding disc, e.g. DICTUM® Ultra-Speed Grinding Wheel (grit 1000 or 3000) must be used.

#### DICTUM® Ultra-Speed Grinding Wheel

Bevel ground with DICTUM® Ultra-Speed Grinding Wheel, 220 grit. The result: Finer grinding marks than with a conventional grinding wheel with 220 grit. This procedure is therefore a good compromise between sharpening time and sharpening outcome, but results in a much coarser shaped cutting edge than with manual grinding up to grit 6000 or the use of a DICTUM® Ultra-Speed Grinding Wheel with grit 1000 or 3000.

#### Conventional grinding wheel

Bevel ground with a conventional grinding wheel with 220 grit.

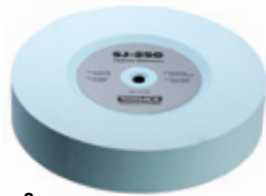
**A TORMEK® ORIGINAL REPLACEMENT WHEEL SG-250, GRIT 220**  
This hard-bond stone is suitable for pre-sharpening double-layered blades as well as chrome-vanadium steel and HSS.  
**No. 705201**



**B TORMEK® SHARPENING WHEEL BLACKSTONE SILICON SB-250, GRIT 220**  
Ideal for exceptionally hard materials such as HSS, but also carbon steel. The hardness, shape and size of the abrasive make it highly effective. Black silicon carbide abrasive.  
**No. 705456**



**C TORMEK® HONING WHEEL SJ-250, GRIT 4000**  
Extreme polishing performance with hard bond. Particularly recommended for chrome-vanadium steel but also for HSS blades and double-layered steel.  
**No. 705457**



## Recycling pass

When you buy CBN grinding wheels, you get a recycling pass. Just send the used item back to us, and you will receive a recycling bonus when you buy a new CBN grinding wheel. The bonus rate in euros is visible in the recycling symbol.

**D DICTUM® CBN GRINDING WHEEL BLACK CRYSTAL**  
This CBN grinding wheel has been specifically designed for use on wet grinding machines such as the Tormek T-7/T-8. The CBN-coated, precisely balanced aluminium body allows grinding without water or coolant. This saves time and keeps the workstation dry. With only slight pressure you can achieve an excellent rate of stock removal and stunning grinding results. There is no risk of annealing with HSS and hardened steels. Coated with black CBN crystals for extra long service life when sharpening hardened tool steels.  
Ø 250 mm, width 50 mm, centre hole 12 mm, 4.9 kg

**B46**  
Comparable to Tormek Diamond Grinding Wheel 1200 or JIS 325.



- 1 Coating around the circumference  
**No. 715416**
- 2 + Side coating  
**No. 715418**
- 3 + Double side coating  
**No. 715420**



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

**B54**  
Comparable to Tormek Diamond Grinding Wheel 600 or JIS 270.



- 1 Coating around the circumference  
**No. 715417**
- 2 + Side coating  
**No. 715419**
- 3 + Double side coating  
**No. 715421**

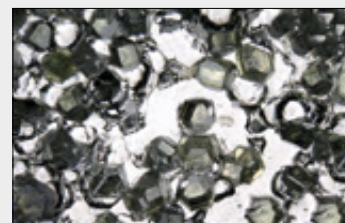


## Advantages of CBN in comparison with diamond:

- CBN contains robust crystals that are more stable and remain sharp for a long time
- CBN does not require cooling during sharpening



The CBN crystal shape has a structure analogous to a tetrahedron with sharp angles providing sharp tips for good removal (ideal for hardened blades)



The diamond crystal shape has a structure analogous to an octahedron with one more tip but also more obtuse angles and is therefore not as aggressive as the tetrahedron-shaped CBN

## CBN coating

CBN stands for Cubic Boron Nitride, an abrasive grain that is nearly as hard as diamond but much better suited for sharpening hardened steel. Sharpening on diamond wheels produces heat, and from around 170 °C causes a chemical reaction between the diamond grain and the steel alloys which destroys the diamond grain. CBN, on the other hand, only reacts at above 400 °C, and is only destroyed at 700 °C and above.

**E TORMEK® DIAMOND GRINDING WHEEL DC-250**  
In combination with the Tormek multi base MB-100 (No. 716076), the coated sides allow flat grinding of turning tool cutting edges. Incl. Tormek ACC-150 anti-corrosion concentrate, 150 ml (No. 716077). Fits models 2000-2006, T7 and T8.

**DC-250, Grit 360**  
Diamond grinding wheel for quick and effective material removal, ideal for pre-grinding dull blades or for blades with nicks.  
**No. 716080**

Repl. Anti-corrosion Conc. ACC-150, 300 ml  
**No. 716077**



**DF-250, Grit 600**  
Universal diamond grinding wheel, combines effective material removal and fine finish. Ideal for chisels and plane blades.  
**No. 716079**

Repl. Anti-corrosion Conc. ACC-150, 300 ml  
**No. 716077**

**DE-250, Grit 1200**  
Diamond grinding wheel for a very fine finish. Ideal for carving gouges and knives.  
**No. 716078**

Repl. Anti-corrosion Conc. ACC-150, 300 ml  
**No. 716077**



**A SHINKO® SHARPENING MACHINE, STONE INCLUDED**

The Shinko sharpening system enables you to achieve professional sharpening results. Clogging rarely occurs with open-pored Japanese waterstones. Water cooling and flat grinding produces long-lasting and strong edges. Since no heat is generated, the blade can be held very close to its edge and guided very accurately. No sparks are produced, allowing the device to be safely operated in workshops and instructional settings. The surrounding foam ring is easily pressed down when sharpening long blades.

**Sharpening wheel:**

Japanese waterstone, grit 1000,  
Ø 180 x Ø 70 mm, thickness 20 mm,  
steel mount, wheel nut, splashguard.

**Motor:**

230 V, 125 W, 50/60 Hz, 450 rpm,  
gear-driven.

**Casing:**

Plastic, tool rest adjustable in height  
and angle. Water container with valve,  
drain tube.

Overall weight approx. 5.5 kg.

**No. 716020**

*Shinko® Sharpening Machine,  
Set with 3 Stones* **Price advantage**  
Machine including three waterstones  
(grits 280, 1000 and 6000).

**No. 716024**

**B REPLACEMENT STONES FOR SHINKO® SHARPENING SYSTEM**

- Grit  
1 280 **No. 716021**  
2 1000 **No. 716022**  
3 6000 **No. 716023**

**Trueing Shinko sharpening stones**

For trueing Shinko sharpening stones we recommend the DMT Diamond Whetstone, Coarse No. 705366 on page 129.



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

## Dry Grinding Machines

**DICTUM®**

The DS 150 L is specially designed to meet your tool sharpening needs.

**C DICTUM® LOW-SPEED GRINDER DS 150 L**

- **Low-speed grinder:** due to a speed range of 1450 rpm, the risk of overheating is significantly reduced; conventional double-wheeled grinders usually operate with 3000 rpm
- Wheel width 40 mm, an unbeatable advantage, especially when sharpening larger turning gouges with a rounded cross-section or grinding plane blades
- Machine housing, base, brackets and tool rests made of robust steel and die-cast aluminium
- Balanced shaft and special flanges for exemplary running smoothness and long life
- Low vibration/low noise
- Easily adjustable, solid spark protection and protective screens
- Solid swivel tool rests made of die-cast aluminium
- Cast iron base with openings for workbench mounting

**Includes:**

- White aluminium oxide grinding wheel, 150 x 40 x 32 mm, 60 grit
- White aluminium oxide grinding wheel, 150 x 40 x 32 mm, 100 grit
- Safety goggles
- Diamond truer
- Integrated tray for e.g. coolants or small parts
- Open-ended spanner



Tools not included!

Centre hole 12.7 mm  
No load speed 1450 rpm  
Rated input 370 W  
Motor 230 V  
420 x 260 x 185 mm  
14 kg  
**No. 720782**

**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



32 mm clamping flange for exemplary running smoothness

**Pros and cons of wet or dry grinding**

There are all kinds of different opinions on the relative pros and cons of wet or dry grinding. The main argument in favour of **wet grinding** is the low heat generation. This prevents any potential loss of hardness. In most cases, the

use of abrasives similar to natural stone also produces finer grinding patterns. The main argument in favour of **dry grinding** is the rapid material abrasion, which is as good as impossible when using a wet grinding procedure with certain types of steel. This also reduces the sharpening time.





**A** DICTUM® LOW-SPEED GRINDER DS 150 L WITH DICTUM® CBN GRINDING DISC *Price advantage*  
This wheel selection leaves no wish unfulfilled:

The grinding wheel made of high-quality white aluminium oxide with coarse grit removes material quickly and with a cool grind. When fine grinding on the CBN grinding wheel, there is no need to true the stone and consequently the wheel diameter does not change. This ensures 100 % accurate reproduction of grinds e.g. when sharpening turning tools with a jig. The relatively fine CBN grinding wheel (B91/conventional grit 180) enables fast removal and cool grinding. The finish is, however, still fine enough so that after grinding, turning tools can be directly used on the lathe, for instance.

Same Scope of delivery as No. 720782

**+ CBN Grinding Wheel (not mounted):**  
150 x 40 x 32 mm, grit B91  
(conventional grit 180),  
incl. adaptor flange and clamping sleeve.

Centre hole 12.7 mm  
No load speed 1450 rpm  
Rated input 370 W  
Motor 230 V  
420 x 260 x 185 mm  
14 kg  
**No. 711241**



**B** SHARPENING SET FOR WOOD-TURNING TOOLS WITH DICTUM® LOW-SPEED GRINDER DS 150 L

*Price advantage*

This set gives you all you need for sharpening turning tools. The low-speed DICTUM grinder DS 150 L (No. 720782) for cool grinding ideally complements the Wolverine sharpening system which consists of the Basic Set (No. 702170) and Vari Grind (No. 702171). Also included is a diamond truer (No. 705269) for truing the stones. The diamond sharpener (No. 707399) can be used to sharpen hooks and ring tools.

**Set includes:**

- White aluminium oxide grinding wheel, 150 x 40 x 32 mm, 60 grit
- White aluminium oxide grinding wheel, 150 x 40 x 32 mm, 100 grit
- Safety goggles
- Diamond truer
- Tray e.g. for coolant or small parts
- Open-ended spanner
- Diamond sharpener (No. 707399)
- Oneway Wolverine Sharpening System, Basic Set (No. 702170)

- Oneway Wolverine Sharpening System, Vari Grind (No. 702171)

Centre hole 12.7 mm  
No load speed 1450 rpm  
Rated input 370 W  
Motor 230 V  
420 x 260 x 185 mm  
14 kg  
**No. 711242**

*Sharpening Set Woodturning with DICTUM® CBN Wheel* *Price advantage*  
The CBN grinding wheel does not need to be trued, thus the wheel diameter remains constant. This ensures 100 % accurate reproduction of grinds e.g. when sharpening turning tools with a jig.

Same Scope of delivery as No. 711242

**+ CBN Grinding Wheel (not mounted):**  
150 x 40 x 32 mm, grit B91  
(conventional grit 180),  
incl. adaptor flange and  
clamping sleeve.

**No. 711243**



## Creusen

The Dutch company Creusen has been developing and producing high-quality metal grinding machines for the professional market since 1945.

### C CREUSEN DOUBLE-WHEELED GRINDER 7500 TS

The 7500 TS model combines a powerful, speed-reduced engine with a sturdy block-like construction.

- **Low-speed grinder:** due to a speed range of 1450 rpm, the risk of overheating is significantly reduced; conventional double-wheeled grinders usually operate with 3000 rpm
- Wheel width 40 mm, an unbeatable advantage, especially when sharpening larger turning gouges with a rounded cross-section or grinding plane blades
- Robust design
- Cast iron base with openings for workbench mounting
- Low vibration/low noise

**Includes:**

- White aluminium oxide grinding wheel, 150 x 40 x 15 mm, 60 grit
- White aluminium oxide grinding wheel, 150 x 40 x 15 mm, 100 grit

Shaft diameter 15 mm  
No load speed 1450 rpm  
Rated input 350 W  
Motor 230 V  
410 x 210 x 170 mm  
10.5 kg  
**No. 716025**



### D DIAMOND TRUER

This compact diamond truer is used for truing, cleaning and dressing silicon carbide and aluminium oxide grinding wheels of double-wheeled grinders. You simply place the tool on the tool rest and press it against the grinding wheel. The textured handle ensures a secure grip. Coated area 40 x 10 mm.  
**No. 705259**



Machine not included!



#### A CREUSEN DOUBLE-WHEELED GRINDER 7500 TS WITH DICTUM® CBN GRINDING WHEEL

This wheel selection leaves no wish unfulfilled:

The grinding wheel made of high-quality white aluminium oxide with coarse grit removes material quickly and with a cool grind. When fine grinding on the CBN grinding wheel, there is no need to true the stone and consequently the wheel diameter does not change. This ensures 100 % accurate reproduction of grinds e.g. when sharpening turning tools with a jig. The relatively fine CBN grinding wheel (B91/conventional grit 180) ena-

bles fast removal and cool grinding. The finish is, however, still fine enough so that after grinding, turning tools can be directly used on the lathe, for instance. The 7500 TS model combines a powerful, speed-reduced engine with a sturdy block-like construction.

#### Includes:

- 2 white aluminium oxide grinding wheels (mounted), 150 x 40 x 15 mm, grit 60
- **CBN grinding wheel (included)**, 150 x 40 x 32 mm, grit B91 (conventional grit 180) incl. adaptor flange.

Shaft diameter 15 mm  
No load speed 1450 rpm  
Rated input 350 W  
Motor 230 V  
410 x 210 x 170 mm  
10.5 kg

**No. 716028**

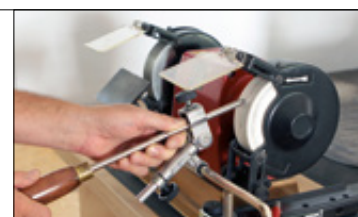


#### Recycling pass

When you buy CBN grinding wheels, you get a recycling pass. Just send the used item back to us, and you will receive a recycling bonus when you buy a new CBN grinding wheel. The bonus rate in euros is visible in the recycling symbol.



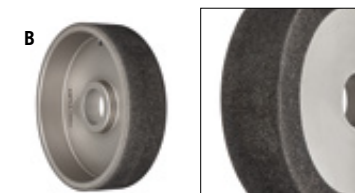
► For Tormek® bench grinder mounting sets see page 154.



#### B DICTUM® CBN GRINDING WHEEL BLACK CRYSTAL, Ø 150 MM, + SIDE COATING

With the CBN grinding wheels you can sharpen even HSS (also powder metallurgically produced) and hardened steel on the slowly running double grinder without the risk of the steel getting too hot. A special process allows grinding without coolant. With only slight pressure you achieve an excellent rate of stock removal and stunning grinding results. Coated with black CBN crystals for extra long service life when sharpening hardened tool steels. The wheels are made of steel and exactly balanced. Optimal speed range 1700 up to max. 3000 rpm. Can be used on e.g. DICTUM low-speed grinder (Clamping sleeve No. 707837 needed, available online) or Creusen double-wheeled grinder.

Ø 150 mm  
Width 40 mm - an unbeatable advantage, especially when grinding larger turning gouges.  
Centre hole 32 mm  
2.3 kg



Coated with black CBN crystals for extra long service life when sharpening hardened tool steels.

Grit  
B91, comparable to JIS 170.  
**No. 715287**  
B54, comparable to JIS 270.  
**No. 715288**  
B46, comparable to JIS 325.  
**No. 715289**



#### C DICTUM® SUPERFLANGE WITH PRECISION DISK

The flange allows to adjusting the 32 mm standard bore of the CBN grinding wheels to the shaft diameter of the different sharpening machines. Made of aluminium.

#### Bore 15 mm

For DICTUM CBN Grinding Wheels No. 715287. Fits Creusen double-wheeled grinders and other products with 15 mm diameter shafts. Inner Ø 15 mm / outer Ø 32 mm  
**No. 704848**

#### Bore 12.7 mm (½ Inch)

For DICTUM CBN Grinding Wheels No. 715287. Fits DICTUM low speed grinder and other models with 12.7 mm (½ inch) shaft. Inner Ø 12.7 mm / outer Ø 32 mm  
**No. 704850**

#### CBN coating

CBN stands for Cubic Boron Nitride, an abrasive grain that is nearly as hard as diamond but much better suited for sharpening hardened steel. Sharpening on diamond wheels produces heat, and from around 170 °C causes a chemical reaction between the diamond grain and the steel alloys which destroys the diamond grain. CBN, on the other hand, only reacts at above 400 °C, and is only destroyed at 700 °C and above.

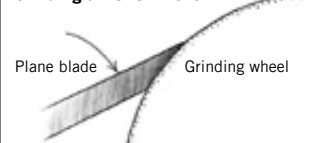
#### Hollow grinding of chisel and plane blades - sharpening tips by DICTUM in cooperation with Garrett Hack

The bevel cut by a small-diameter grindstone is ground hollow, whereas the bevel shaped with a stone is not (see drawing).

The advantage of hollow grinding is the speed with which the actual cutting bevel can be honed, without having to remove metal across the entire bevel. Every time you resharpen, the hollow is slowly honed away or grows so small that eventually the bevel needs to be reground. Woodworkers who do not hollow-grind believe that the cutting edge is stronger since it is fully supported by a bevel the whole thickness of the iron.

There will be no problems hollow grinding a chisel made of mono steel alloy. It will not be susceptible to chipping, provided the distance to the cutting edge is sufficiently large.

#### Grinding a Hollow Bevel



A hollow-ground edge tends to be weak, but it is easy to hone.

A straight bevel has a strong edge, but the entire bevel needs to be honed when sharpening.

The best compromise: a strong edge and a hollow grind for easier honing.

#### Sharpening Primer



For sharpening instructions for tools and knives see our Sharpening Primer, which is available free of charge at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Video** A video showing this technique and more sharpening tips and techniques available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





**A SILICON CARBIDE GRINDING WHEELS, 150 X 40 X 32 MM**  
Silicon carbide has especially sharp-edged crystals. Its structure makes it highly effective. Fits low-speed grinder DS 150 L.  
Centre hole 32 mm  
Wheel width 40 mm  
Wheel diameter 150 mm

Grit  
60 **No. 820891**  
80 **No. 820892**  
100 **No. 820893**  
120 **No. 820894**

**B WHITE ALUMINIUM OXIDE GRINDING WHEELS, 150 X 40 X 32 MM**  
White aluminium oxide is one of the purest abrasives. It allows for fine surfaces and removes material quickly. Fits low-speed grinder DS 150 L.  
Centre hole 32 mm  
Wheel width 40 mm  
Wheel diameter 150 mm

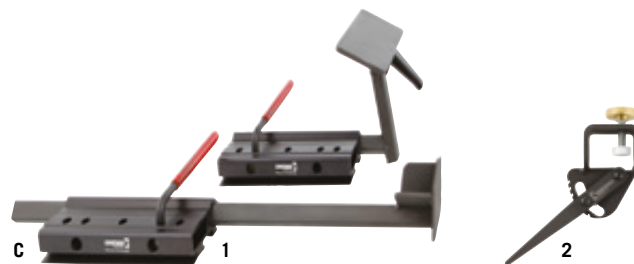
Grit  
60 **No. 820895**  
80 **No. 820896**  
100 **No. 820897**  
120 **No. 820898**

► Adapter flange outer diameter 32 mm, bore 12.7 mm suitable for DICTUM® low-speed grinder DS 150 L available online.

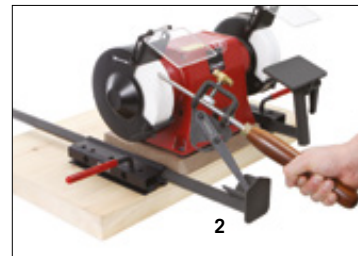


**D WHITE ALUMINIUM OXIDE GRINDING WHEELS, 150 X 40 X 15 MM**  
Width 40 mm, Centre hole 15 mm

Grid  
60 **No. 716027**  
100 **No. 716026**



**C ONEWAY WOLVERINE SHARPENING SYSTEM, BASIC SET**  
The Oneway sharpening system was specially designed for woodturning tools but, with its two different jigs, is also suitable for chisels and plane blades as well as other tools. The arm is fitted to a double-wheeled grinder using a base system (fits all common models).



Turning tool and sharpening machine not included!

#### 1 Model Basic Set

Thanks to the wide flat rest with adjustable angle, this system is suitable for scrapers and parting tools as well as chisels and plane blades. Includes a left and right base with eccentric locking mechanism, arm rest and flat rest. Flat rest 126 x 76 mm.  
**No. 702170**

#### 2 Model Vari Grind

As a supplement, this jig, which can be rotated in any direction, is designed for sharpening turning and profile gouges. The angle can be accurately adjusted using the hole matrix. Notches on the back indicate the set angle. Max. intake Ø 19 mm.  
**No. 702171**

### Properties of different abrasives

#### Silicon carbide

Properties:  
• Heat-resistant up to approx. 1600 °C  
• Very hard (only inferior to CBN and diamond)  
• Diamond particles on lapping plates wear more quickly during lapping  
• Less tough (more brittle) than corundum

- Sharp-edged crystals enable very good material removal

Areas of application:  
High-alloy steels and steels with high carbon content up to 65 HRC, non-ferrous metals, ceramic and mineral materials

#### Corundum (Aluminium oxide)

The corundums are divided into semi-friable aluminium oxide, white aluminium oxide, etc., whereby white aluminium oxide is considered to be one of the purest abrasives.

Properties:  
• Heat-resistant up to approx. 2000 °C

- Hard
- Good lapping properties
- High toughness allows higher pressure on the workpiece
- Enables cool grinding

Areas of application:  
Unalloyed and low-alloy steels up to 63 HRC, cast steel, grey cast iron

## Robert Sorby™

The Robert Sorby company has been known for its range of high-quality woodworking tools for over 200 years. In Sheffield (England), traditional working methods are combined with technical expertise. This guarantees sophisticated tools with a quality that speaks for itself.



#### E SORBY™ PROEDGE GRINDING MACHINE

The ProEdge is a revolutionary grinding system that has been used for decades in the workshops of Robert Sorby for sharpening turning tools. And this tried-and-tested system is now available in compact form for every home workshop. Central to the system is a long-lasting abrasive belt. It ensures quick and effective abrasion and creates sharp edges on any tool. The low-friction running band releases heat quickly and prevents overheating of the cutting edge. With the help of an angle-adjustment gauge and a raster system, you can easily and repeatedly grind standard cutting angles. The variable grinding arm ensures the ProEdge is user-friendly and has a great range of movement. This makes it a good choice for hand grinding and producing unusual edges. But it is also ideal for sculpting and carving tools, chisels, knives, turning tools, drills, plane blades and garden tools. The machine comes ready to go.

Band speed 220 m/min, motor 375 W, 230 V

#### 1 Basic

- Abrasive belt, aluminium oxide, grit 120 (No. 720386)
- Abrasive belt, zirconium, grit 60 (No. 720388)
- Support table
- Angle table in German/English
- Assembly tool, hexagonal screwdriver with T-handle

**German instructions created by DICTUM and English operating instructions**

**No. 720383**

#### 2 Deluxe *Price advantage*

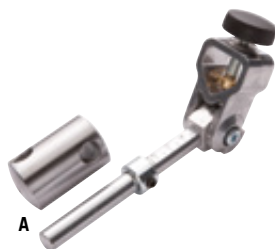
- Abrasive belt, aluminium oxide, grit 120 (No. 720386)
- Abrasive belt, aluminium oxide, grit 240 (No. 720385)
- Abrasive belt, zirconium, grit 60 (No. 720388)
- Support table
- Fingernail grinding jig (No. 720389)
- Grinding jig for gouges (No. 720390)
- Grinding jig, 45° for skew chisels (No. 720392)
- Angle table in German/English
- Assembly tool, hexagonal screwdriver with T-handle

**German instructions created by DICTUM and English operating instructions**  
**No. 720384**





For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.



**A SORBY™ PROEDGE FINGERNAIL GRINDING JIG**

This grinding jig allows balanced and controlled grinding of turning gouges on the Sorby ProEdge. It is ideal for all types of fingernail grinds.

**No. 720389**



**B SORBY™ PROEDGE FINGERNAIL GRINDING JIG EXTENDER**

This extender can be attached to the fingernail grinding jig for Sorby ProEdge (No. 720389). The three grid holes allow a straight bevel, a fingernail grind and a far-back fingernail grind.

**No. 720391**



**C SORBY™ PROEDGE GRINDING JIG, 45° FOR SKEW CHISELS**

This jig is placed onto the Sorby ProEdge support table. It allows you to grind a 45° angle without time-consuming angle setup and measurement.

**No. 720392**



**D SORBY™ PROEDGE GRINDING JIG, 90° FOR PLANE BLADES AND CHISELS**

This guide makes it possible to grind a precise 90° angle on a blade. The two slot holes in the stopper fastening also make it possible to modify the 90° angle. This provides greater flexibility with the type of bevel and for the shape of the blade. The stopper can be mounted on either the left or right. This guide is inserted into the Sorby ProEdge support table.

**No. 720393**



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.



**E SORBY™ PROEDGE GRINDING JIG FOR GOUGES**

This V-shaped jig is laid on the Sorby ProEdge support table and guarantees perfect guidance when sharpening gouges.

**No. 720390**



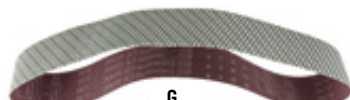
For sharpening instructions for turning tools see our Sharpening Primer Woodturning, which is available free of charge at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**F SORBY™ PROEDGE ABRASIVE BELT, ALUMINIUM OXIDE**

This aluminium oxide abrasive belt is suitable for all HSS and carbon steels, such as chisels, plane blades, sculpting and turning tools. Dimensions 780 x 50 mm. Fits Sorby ProEdge No. 720384 and 720383.

Grit  
60 **No. 701730**  
120 **No. 720386**  
240 **No. 720385**



**G SORBY™ PROEDGE ABRASIVE BELT, TRIZACT™ CF**

Outstanding service life and extremely even grinding pattern: Abrasive belt with cuboid or pyramid-shaped\* structure made of aluminium oxide layers which regenerate during sanding, thus ensuring a long service life and a very even finish. The flexible fabric base is hard-wearing and tear-resistant. Ideal for intermediate and fine sanding of all hard metals, such as carbon steel, stainless steel and high-alloy stainless steel, nickel, titanium and cobalt and thus also for HSS and PM steels. Fits Sorby ProEdge No. 720384 and 720383.

\* depending on the grit.  
Grit  
600 **No. 701731**  
1200 **No. 701732**  
3000 **No. 701733**



**H SORBY™ PROEDGE POLISHING WHEEL**

Fits Sorby ProEdge. The cotton fabric, in combination with polishing paste No. 720397, creates a great polish for steel. Mount No. 720395 is required to use this product.

Ø 100 mm  
Width 10 mm  
Centre hole Ø 10 mm  
**No. 720396**



**I SORBY™ PROEDGE HONING WHEEL**

Fits Sorby ProEdge. Used with mount No. 720394.

Ø 70 mm  
Width 15 mm  
Centre hole Ø 10 mm  
**No. 720398**



**J SORBY™ PROEDGE ABRASIVE BELT, ZIRCONIUM**

The special structure of this belt gives it a significantly longer service life than aluminium oxide abrasive belts. It is therefore ideal for rough grinding and powder-metallurgical steels (e.g. PRO-PM), but also for HSS and carbon steels. Dimensions 780 x 50 mm. Fits Sorby ProEdge No. 720384 and 720383.

Grit  
60 **No. 720388**  
120 **No. 720387**



**K SORBY™ PROEDGE MOUNT FOR POLISHING WHEEL**

This mount allows polishing wheel No. 720396 to be mounted on the Sorby ProEdge.

**No. 720395**



**L SORBY™ PROEDGE MOUNT FOR HONING WHEEL**

This mount allows honing wheel No. 720398 to be mounted on the Sorby ProEdge.










**No. 720394**



**M SORBY™ PROEDGE POLISHING PASTE**

A very fine polishing paste developed for use with polishing wheel No. 720396 on the Sorby ProEdge. This polish can be

mixed with water to make a paste and used as a cleaning and polishing agent. 100 x 35 x 20 mm  
**No. 720397**

Overview Sharpening Machines and Systems										
		Japanese chisels	Western chisels	sculpting tools	carving knives	Western plane blades	turning tools (gouges)	turning tools (scrapers/chisels)	drills	kitchen and outdoor knives
Wet Sharpening Systems	 Tormek Sharpening System	with guide (depending on the shape)	with guide	with guide	with guide	with guide	with guide	with guide	with guide	with guide
	 Shinko Sharpening Machine	freehand with support rest	freehand with support rest	freehand with support rest	freehand	freehand with support rest	X	X	X	freehand
	 KME Sharpening System	X	X	X	with guide	X	X	X	X	with guide
	 Edge Pro Sharpening System	X	with multi jig	with multi jig	with guide	with multi jig	X	X	X	with guide
	 Magna-Tec Delta-S Sharpening System	X	X	X	with guide	X	X	X	X	with guide
	 Magna-Tec Scorpio Sharpening System	X	X	X	with guide	X	X	X	X	with guide
Dry Grinding Machines	 Creusen Double-wheeled Grinder	X	freehand with support rest	X	X	freehand with support rest	freehand or with Wolverine Sharpening System	freehand with support rest	freehand	X
	 DICTUM Low-speed Grinder DS 150 L	X	freehand with support rest	X	X	freehand with support rest	freehand or with Wolverine Sharpening System	freehand with support rest	freehand	X
	 Sorby ProEdge Grinding Machine	X	freehand with support rest or guide	freehand with support rest	freehand	freehand with support rest or guide	freehand or with guide	freehand or with guide	freehand	X

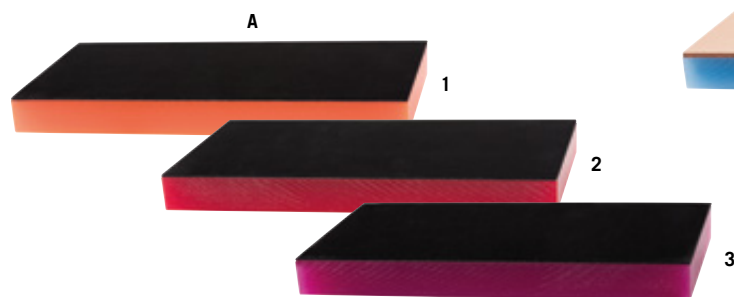
**Sheet explanation**

X means that we do not recommend using this machine for this type of tool/knife.

The reasons are:

- The machine's suitability for this purpose (no guides and/or freehand grinding options)
- The properties of the tool may be harmed by grinding on this machine (the steel is susceptible to annealing/the finish may be too rough)

# Honing and Polishing Products



## A JENDE NANOCLOTH ACRYLIC STROP BLOCKS

This strop block is ideal for polishing (stropping) cutting edges of knives and razors, as well as chisels or plane blades. The synthetically produced surface has no wave, and so the tools can be honed in all directions. Thanks to the different colour coding and grit specifications that are laser etched on the underside of the acrylic strop block, the polishing emulsion that is to be used on the surface can be immediately identified. The colour of the label on the bottle of the different polishing emulsions corresponds with the colour of the related strop block. Comes without poly emulsion. 210 x 70 x 20 mm

	Grit indication	Base
1	0.025 Micron <b>No. 729594</b>	orange
	0.10 Micron <b>No. 729593</b>	yellow
	0.25 Micron <b>No. 729592</b>	green
2	0.5 Micron <b>No. 729591</b>	red
	1 Micron <b>No. 729590</b>	blue
	2 Micron <b>No. 729589</b>	purple
3	4 Micron <b>No. 729588</b>	pink

**C JENDE POLY DIAMOND EMULSIONS**  
Polishing emulsion with diamond particles for polishing or stropping knives and razors, as well as chisels or plane blades. Fits Jende Nanocloth acrylic strop block or leather honing strop block. To apply the emulsion, we recommend removing the pump cover, tipping the emulsion onto the strop block and spreading it evenly with a finger.



1	25 ml	
	Grit indication	
	0.025 Micron	orange
	<b>No. 729587</b>	
	0.10 Micron	yellow
	<b>No. 729586</b>	
	0.25 Micron	green
	<b>No. 729585</b>	
	0.5 Micron	red
	<b>No. 729584</b>	
	1 Micron	blue
	<b>No. 729583</b>	
	2 Micron	purple
	<b>No. 729582</b>	
	4 Micron	pink
	<b>No. 729581</b>	

2	50 ml	
	Grit indication	
	0.025 Micron	orange
	<b>No. 729580</b>	
	0.10 Micron	yellow
	<b>No. 729579</b>	
	0.25 Micron	green
	<b>No. 729578</b>	
	0.5 Micron	red
	<b>No. 729577</b>	
	1 Micron	blue
	<b>No. 729576</b>	
	2 Micron	purple
	<b>No. 729575</b>	
	4 Micron	pink
	<b>No. 729574</b>	



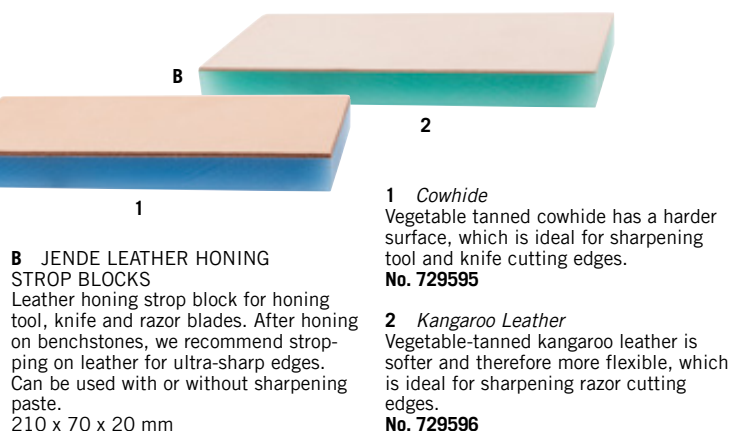
## D PADDLE STROP, TWO-SIDED

These strops can be used with or without paste to polish tool blades. If necessary, you can use finishing paste on the black (rougher) side; the fine brown side is usually used for stropping without paste. Can be held by the handle or screwed to a worktop through the two holes. 415 x 75 x 18 mm  
**No. 709162**

## E POLISHING PASTES

These wax-like polishing pastes are applied to felt buffing wheels and smooth leather sides of strops. No. 705265 only for steel/stainless steel, No. 705264, No. 705266 and No. 705459 also for aluminium. 35 x 45 x 80 mm  
180 g

	Grit
1	extra-fine <b>No. 705459</b>
2	fine <b>No. 705266</b>
3	medium <b>No. 705264</b>
4	coarse <b>No. 705265</b>



## B JENDE LEATHER HONING STROP BLOCKS

Leather honing strop block for honing tool, knife and razor blades. After honing on benchstones, we recommend stropping on leather for ultra-sharp edges. Can be used with or without sharpening paste. 210 x 70 x 20 mm

### 1 Cowhide

Vegetable tanned cowhide has a harder surface, which is ideal for sharpening tool and knife cutting edges.

**No. 729595**

### 2 Kangaroo Leather

Vegetable-tanned kangaroo leather is softer and therefore more flexible, which is ideal for sharpening razor cutting edges.

**No. 729596**

## What are the benefits of polishing cutting edges?

### Prevention of rust:

In principle, the smoother a metal surface is, the less susceptible it is to rust. Polishing considerably reduces scratches on cutting edges. It is therefore quite useful, especially with blades made of classic, non-rustproof carbon steel (i.e. many Japanese kitchen and outdoor knives).

### Increasing the mechanical resilience:

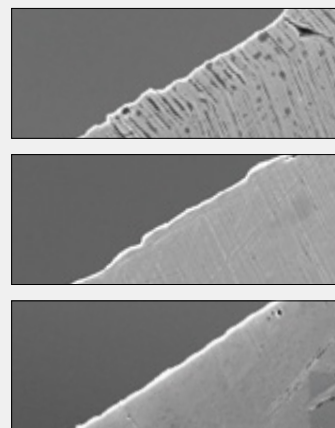
The micro-relief structure on the cutting edge is reduced by polishing. The cutting edge is more compact and less prone to breaking out. However, this also depends on the tool type and

the material to be cut. For kitchen knives and woodworking tools, polishing increases the mechanical strength. For sailing knives (e.g. for cutting ropes) an unpolished blade is more stable. When cutting ropes or cables, a polished blade slips off more easily, and the cutting process therefore requires more pressure.

### Improving the sharpness:

If more points meet at the cutting edge, the blade is sharper. However, if the polishing time is too long or the polishing agents are too soft, the cutting edge will be rounded off.

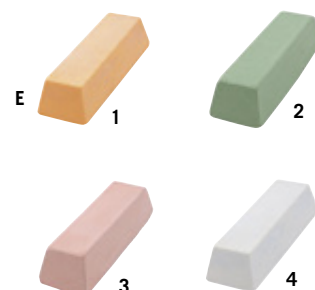
## 1000x magnification of a knife blade with a cutting layer of VG-10 steel:



1000/6000 grit and polished on leather without paste.

1000/6000 grit and polished with Jende Nanocloth Acrylic Strop Block and Jende Poly Diamond Emulsion, 4 Micron.

1000/6000 grit and polished with Jende Nanocloth Acrylic Strop Block and Jende Poly Diamond Emulsion, 4 and 0.5 Micron.



## F GUNDEL-PUTZ® POLISH AND WHETTING PASTE

Proven cleaning and polishing agent for all shiny metals (steel, stainless steel, aluminium, brass, copper, silver, gold, nickel, chromium etc.). Ideal for honing blades on leather, e.g. Tormek sharpening system, strops, etc. Non-toxic, acid and formaldehyde-free.

100 ml

**No. 705262**



### A FELT POLISHING WHEEL, STRAIGHT

Extra hard, wear-resistant felt for minor rounding off of sharpened edges. Fits mandrel for felt wheel (No. 705491).  
 Ø 150 mm  
 Width 20 mm  
 Centre hole 20 mm  
**No. 705490**



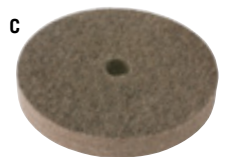
### B BUFFING WHEEL, SISAL

Approx. 70 layers of especially evenly woven sisal, double sewn, for fine polishing. Fits mandrel for felt wheel (No. 705491).  
 Ø 150 mm  
 Width 20 mm  
 Centre hole 20 mm  
**No. 705496**



### C FELT POLISHING WHEEL, MIXED WOOL FELT, STRAIGHT

Smoother felt, takes more polishing paste, enables more intense abrasion. Fits mandrel for felt wheel (No. 705491).  
 Ø 150 mm  
 Width 20 mm  
 Centre hole 20 mm  
**No. 705493**



### D MANDREL FOR FELT WHEEL

Mandrel with washer, nut and adapter sleeve Ø 20 / 8 mm. Suitable for felt wheels and cloth wheels with 8 and 20 mm bores. Hexagonal shaft 9.5 mm.  
**No. 705491**



► For a fitting clamping arbor No. 729030 for Kirjes chucks see page 272.



► For DICTUM® Mini Polishing Motor PM 75 and Kirjes Motor see chapter »Surface Design« page 269.



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

## Accessories for Sharpening Saws



### E DICTUM® SAW VICE

Sturdy, solid wood vice made in the time-honoured tradition. Essential for resharpener expensive and much-loved back saws. The warp-resistant jaws can alternatively be fitted with the included cork strips for an even better grip. They hold the saw blade without vibration

and enable precise filing right up to the blade. The square post allows a comfortable working position while seated or standing. By using it on the tail vice of a workbench, you can also clamp at



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

an angle. Self-opening mouth via inner compression spring. Made of ash wood. Max. mouth opening 20 mm, mouth width 320 mm, mouth depth 150 mm, total height 485 mm.  
**No. 730490**



### F DIAMOND SAW FILE

Saw file with wear-resistant, diamond-coated surface, especially for very hard, tip-hardened teeth.

Cross section 2.8 mm  
 Width 20 mm  
 Cut length 100 mm  
**No. 712802**



### G SAW FILES

Diamond-shaped precision files for sharpening Japanese saw blades without tip-hardened teeth (Deluxe saws with full-hardened, non-exchangeable blades). Single cut.

*Cut Fine*  
 Cross section 3 mm  
 Width 20 mm  
 Cut length 100 mm  
**No. 712814**

*Cut Very Fine*  
 Cross section 2.5 mm  
 Width 17 mm  
 Cut length 75 mm  
**No. 712813**

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
 (For more information see page 4)



► For matching handles see chapter »Rasps and Files«



**A F.D.® TRIANGULAR SAW FILES**  
Triangular files with round edges for sharpening European-style saws. The round edges maintain the slightly rounded gullet between the saw's teeth and thus prevent cracks between the teeth (sharp angles crack more easily than curved transitions).  
Cut 2

Width 4 mm - Cut length 100 mm  
**No. 704437**  
Width 5 mm - Cut length 125 mm  
**No. 704438**  
Width 6 mm - Cut length 150 mm  
**No. 712810**  
Width 7.5 mm - Cut length 150 mm  
**No. 712811**  
Fits handle No. 704960.



**B F.D.® FINE SAW FILE**  
Knife file for sharpening fine saws.  
Cut 3  
Width 5 mm  
Cut length 110 mm  
**No. 704436**  
Fits handle No. 701618.

 For more widths and cuts see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Sharpening Accessories



**C LAPPING PLATE**  
Milled steel plate for lapping the backs of chisels and plane blades. Needs to be screwed to a wooden base. The blade is worked with the help of a piece of wood

applied with pressure. Used with silicon carbide powder No. 713603 and water.  
240 x 60 x 7 mm  
**No. 713600**



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

**D SILICON CARBIDE POWDER**  
Use this powder to true up and polish the back of chisel blades and plane blades. Put a small amount of powder mixed with a drop of water onto an even steel plate. Now grind the blade until you get an even surface and consistent microsection.  
150 g  
Grit 50  
**No. 713603**  
Grit 180  
**No. 713604**



**E HONING OIL**  
Light mineral oil for Arkansas and other oil stones. Also suitable for lubrication purposes.  
*Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*  
125 ml  
**No. 705263**

**F OIL POT »ABURATSUBO«**  
Oil pot, including absorbent cotton, fitted with a wick. For protecting blades and for greasing when chiselling out mortises. Use with camellia oil (not included). Capacity 100 ml.  
**No. 713810**



**G BAMBOO OIL POT »ABURATSUBO«**  
Bamboo pot with lid (without content). Filled with cotton wool, it can be used as an Aburatsubo. Use with camellia oil (not included). This naturally shaped container is also ideal for the storage of small and valuable objects.  
50 x 110 mm  
**No. 713812**



**H KLINGSPOR ABRASIVE FLEECE**  
Abrasive fleece is probably the most flexible abrasive and can be used for a wide variety of jobs: different kinds of sanding work, matting glossy surfaces, smoothing wood and other surfaces and roughening various materials for a better adhesion of paint and varnish. Effortless derusting of chisels, saws, metal planes or knives.  
152 x 229 mm

*Medium*  
Grit 120-150  
Quantity  
1 piece **No. 727844**  
20 pieces **No. 727841**

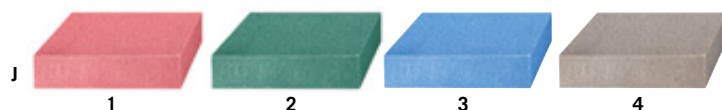
*Fine*  
Grit 180-220  
Quantity  
1 piece **No. 727843**  
20 pieces **No. 727840**

*Very Fine*  
Grit 240-320  
Quantity  
1 piece **No. 727842**  
20 pieces **No. 727839**

**I CORROSION INHIBITOR VCI PAPER, 10 SHEETS**  
Perfect protection from corrosion: This smooth, impregnated packaging paper with anti-corrosion additives protects your tools from moisture, rust and verdigris. A waterproof PE coating on one side provides additional protection and ensures that the emitted VCIs (vapour corrosion inhibitors) reach the metal, where they prevent possible oxidising reactions. For directly packing metal parts and for lining storage containers. Depending on the additional packaging,



protection lasts from 10 months to several years. For steel, iron and aluminium parts. Paper thickness 63 g/m<sup>2</sup>, 800 x 600 mm sheets.  
**No. 711295**



**J RUST ERASERS**  
These rubberised abrasive blocks provide an effective means of removing surface rust from valuable knives without damaging the blades. Using water as a lubricant, the rust is »erased«.



The blocks are also excellent for removing tough stains from pots, taps, sinks, antiques and automotive parts.  
80 x 50 x 20 mm  
Grit  
1 fine **No. 711160**  
2 medium **No. 711161**  
3 coarse **No. 711162**  
4 extra-coarse **No. 711163**

## A WEICON® RUST LOOSENER AND CONTACT SPRAY

The Rust Loosener and Contact Spray is indispensable for repairs, maintenance and servicing. Thanks to its excellent creeping capacity, the Rust Loosener and Contact Spray reaches even the smallest intermediate spaces. The 3-way spray valve makes it possible to work in any position (even overhead).

- Loosens rusted and stiff parts, screws, bolts, joints and hinges
- Protects against corrosion and oxidation
- Repels moisture and reduces electrical resistance in contacts
- Secures the function of mechanical parts and contacts



A

- Provides lubrication, cleans and cares for metal surfaces, mechanical parts and electrical systems

*Extremely flammable aerosol. Pressurised container: May burst if heated. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

400 ml  
No. 450420



B

## B RUST REMOVER

Effective anti-rust formula:

Simply mix the non-acidic formulation with water and submerge your rusty tools. It will not attack wood, wooden materials and most synthetic substances. The formula is bio-degradable, 500 ml make up a solution of ten litres. After the initial rust has been removed, the tools are protected from further corrosion.

*Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye damage.*

500 ml  
No. 705487



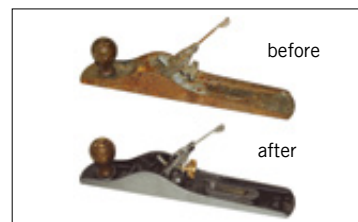
C

## C RUST REMOVER, GEL

With this gel-like rust remover you can remove rust easily and quickly. Apply the undiluted gel on the surface with a kitchen sponge and simply rub off the rust. Can also be used for large surfaces. This gel does not stain wood and most synthetic substances. Bio-degradable.

*Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye damage.*

250 ml  
No. 705488



Plane not included!



D

## D JAPANESE CAMELLIA OIL

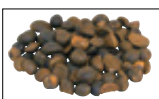
This extremely light oil is extracted from the leaves of the Japanese camellia tree and a superb corrosion inhibitor for tools of all kind. Camellia oil is not susceptible to resinification and may also be used for cleaning, sharpening and lubrication purposes. The oil contains a small amount of high-purity liquid paraffin. Thus the oil is water-repellent and shows an extreme resistance against acids e.g. hand sweat. It is non-toxic (paraffin is often used in the cosmetic industry) but not food-safe. Not suitable for direct contact with food and Japanese kitchen knives. For that purpose we recommend the food-safe Sinensis Camellia oil (No. 705280, 705281, 705282 and 705294).

1 100 ml  
No. 713800  
2 250 ml  
No. 713801



## E SINENSIS® CAMELLIA OIL

Versatile, light oil from the seeds of the camellia tree.



### Corrosion protection:

Camellia oil is acid-free, non-volatile and not susceptible to resinification, making it the ideal oil to protect tools, knives and weapons from rust. Made from pure natural plant products and food safe, it is ideal for preserving of kitchen knives made of carbon steel.

**Wood protection:** When applied to wooden surfaces, it is absorbed quickly due to its low viscosity. Once absorbed, it helps protect the wood from damage by moisture, dirt and UV light. Clear, not discolouring, it accentuates the wood's natural beauty. Non-hardening.

**Body care:** Camellia oil makes an excellent base for the preparation of lotions, creams and soaps for cosmetic use. As a massage oil or hair oil, it has for ages been found irreplaceable by Japanese geishas.

1 100 ml  
No. 705280  
2 250 ml  
No. 705281  
3 1 L  
No. 705282

## F SINENSIS® CAMELLIA OIL IN SPRAY BOTTLE

With thin spray jet, thus allowing accurate application.  
250 ml  
No. 705294



G

## G BALLISTOL® RESIN SOLVENT, PUMP-SPRAYS

For cleaning resinified tools and all types of woodworking machinery. Simply spray and the resin can be removed easily and without residue.

- Effective cleaner for burned-in resin residue
- For saw blades, plane blades, chisels and other resinified tools
- Extremely economical and easy to use
- Foams - no dripping
- Spray - wipe - done

After cleaning, apply Ballistol all-purpose oil to neutralise the resin remover and help preserve the tool.

*Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation.*

1 150 ml  
No. 708538  
2 750 ml  
No. 708539



H

## H BALLISTOL® ALL-PURPOSE OIL

Ballistol provides reliable rust protection, cleans and oils metals, impregnates and preserves leather and wood surfaces, and is even suitable for the disinfection of minor cuts. In the garden it can be used to treat tree cancer and to combat aphids (in a 3 % solution with water). Ballistol is based on pure medical white oil, spiked

with natural plant products. It is thus ecologically-friendly and bio-degradable.

1 50 ml  
No. 705270  
2 200 ml  
No. 705445  
*Extremely flammable aerosol. Pressurised container: May burst if heated.*  
3 500 ml  
No. 705440

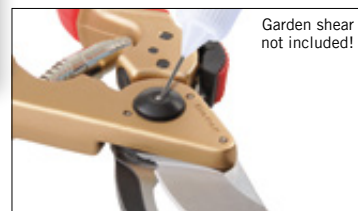


► For an empty spray bottle see page 140.



## I OIL APPLICATOR

Synthetic high-tech oil for instrument and tool care. Odourless, transparent, silicone-free. No blotches or crusting, unlike with mineral oils. The 7 mm long V2A stainless steel tip allows precise dosage even on large surfaces, e.g. all types of scissor and shear blades.



Garden shear not included!

- Anti-drip valve for precise dosage, no dripping
- Vapour-permeable, resists temperatures of up to 260 °C
- Drips best at room temperature
- Approved for food by USDA\* and FDA\*
- Physiologically safe according to DAB\* and LFGB\*
- Also ideal for folding knives, weapon care, cosmetic instruments

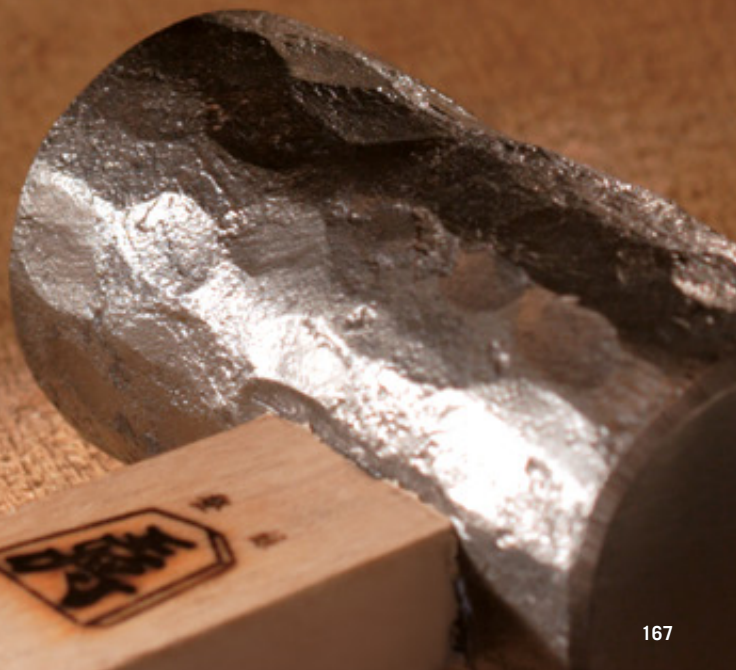
\* USDA - United States Department of Agriculture  
FDA - Food and Drug Administration  
DAB - Deutsches Arzneibuch (German Pharmacopoeia)  
LFGB - Lebensmittel- und Futtermittel-gesetzbuch (German Food and Feedstuff Code)

10 ml  
No. 708540



# HAMMERS NAILS PRY BARS

Powerful and bounce-free!



Japanese Hammers | 168

Western Hammers | 170

Mallets | 171

Soft Face and Rawhide Hammers | 172

Accessories | 173

Nail Pullers and Pry Bars | 173

## Japanese Hammers

The simple outward appearance of the Japanese hammer (Genno) conceals its inner sophistication. Perfect balance and effective striking force are only two of the features that distinguish a Japanese hammer. The selectively hardened head faces allow the full force of a blow to be transferred while simultaneously dampening vibrations and reducing the hammer's »bounce«. One face of the hammer is flat while the other is slightly curved, making it especially useful for driving nails flush with a surface. The Genno's high efficiency means you can generally select a lighter weight in comparison to conventional European carpenter's hammers. Replacement handles are available upon request.



### A DAMASCUS STEEL HAMMER

A triumph of Japanese blacksmithing:

This attractive Damascus steel hammer proves that a highly sophisticated implement can be produced from mankind's oldest tool, despite its archaic appearance. The selectively hardened striking surfaces are forge-welded to the soft basic body of the hammer. This reduces the hammer's »bounce« and therefore minimizes stress on the wrist. The master blacksmith plays with the delightful colour-contrast of the polished layers of Yellow Paper Steel and the softer centre made of 25-layered Damascus steel. The plainly grained ebony handle completes the understated Japanese aesthetics and leaves the focus on the head, which bears the engraved signature of the master. Flat and curved faces. Comes with high-quality wooden case.

Head weight 375 g  
Overall length 360 mm

No. 705692



### B GENNO WITH DRAGON ENGRAVING

Dragons are considered the oldest and most powerful mythical creatures in Japan and often revered as a talisman and the symbol of imperial power. The head of this hammer is the combination of the work of a Japanese master blacksmith and an experienced engraver. After the blacksmith has forged the blank in the fire and then selectively hardened it, the engraver engraves the matt finish, impact-absorbing middle part on one side with hammer and graver. In order to achieve a vivid effect, the Ryu (dragon) engraving is gone over several times until reaching its final depth. A handle made of Japanese red oak complements this exceptional hammer. Flat and curved faces. Each hammer head bears the signature of the master blacksmith. Comes with red cotton pouch.



Head weight 375 g  
Overall length 360 mm  
No. 714206



### C SQUARE HAMMER, MATT FINISH

Hand-forged Genno from a hammer blacksmith in Japan, whose shape embodies the simple elegance of Japanese style. The distinction between the fire forged, matt basic body and the hardened, highly-polished striking surfaces gives an insight into its manufacture and contributes to the elegant design. Each head is engraved with the name of the master blacksmith. Flat and curved

faces, selectively hardened. The handle is pre-mounted and must be wedged into the head by the user according to Japanese tradition. Instructions included.

Head weight 375 g  
Overall length 360 mm  
No. 714123



### D SQUARE HAMMER, ENGRAVED

An attractive tool and a beautiful gift: Those who are fond of attention to detail will certainly appreciate Master Sato's hand-engraved Genno. To highlight the



mythological animal motifs engraved on both sides of the hammer head, the surface is copper-patinated. Flat and curved faces, selectively hardened.

Head weight 375 g  
Overall length 340 mm  
No. 714203



Large striking area -  
easy working

A

**A NOMI GENNO**

Easy-to-handle hammer for driving Japanese chisels and carving tools. Round head with large striking area for more accurate strokes. Flat and curved faces, selectively hardened.

Head weight 375 g  
Overall length 240 mm  
**No. 714011**

B

**B JAPANESE HAMMERS »KOZUCHI«**

Maximum efficiency: These hammers are made in a Japanese master forge and allow practically effortless hammering with a high driving force and perfect balance. The harmoniously proportioned head and the ergonomic handle yield a wonderfully organic tool which you simply will not want to put down. The asymmetrical construction allows maximal directional stability during use. Both faces are curved and selectively hardened.

Overall length 310 mm  
Head weight 290 g **No. 714322**  
600 g **No. 714323**

C

D

**C JAPANESE MINI HAMMER****»DARUMA«**

The compact Daruma-style hammer is primarily used for striking Japanese chisels. The round head with a large striking surface allows accurate strokes. Flat and curved faces.

Head weight 225 g  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 714207**

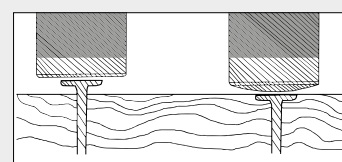
**D JAPANESE MINI HAMMER****»KOZUCHI«**

Thanks to its compact size and the harmonious proportions, the hammer guarantees an excellent grip. The asymmetrical design ensures high directional stability.

Head weight 250 g  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 714208**

**Japanese hammers with flat and curved faces**

A Japanese hammer (Genno) generally has a flat and a curved face. The flat face is suitable for fitting work or for striking chisels. The curved face is used for driving nails. First tap the nail in up to the neck with the flat face of the Genno, then seat it with one sharp tap of the curved



face. The curved face prevents the surface of the wood from being damaged.

E

**E GENNO, HAMMERED LOOK**

This archaic-looking Genno is forged by hand in one of the last big hammer forges in Japan. The soft body is selectively hardened, then given a kind of hammered look. Heating the soft steel to varying temperatures (250-300 °C) results in a coloured, shimmering surface. Each head is engraved with the name of the master blacksmith. Flat and curved faces. The handle is pre-mounted and must be wedged into the head by the user according to Japanese tradition. Instructions included.

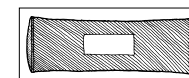
Head weight 375 g  
Overall length 360 mm  
**No. 714122**

F

**F SQUARE HAMMERS**

All-purpose hammer with particularly good directional stability, ideal for assembly work, driving nails etc. A Genno with a head weight of 375 g is suitable for striking Japanese chisels. Square-headed, rounded edges. Selectively hardened, flat and curved faces.

Head weight	Overall length	
115 g	305 mm	<b>No. 714101</b>
225 g	335 mm	<b>No. 714102</b>
375 g	335 mm	<b>No. 714103</b>
570 g	370 mm	<b>No. 714104</b>
750 g	370 mm	<b>No. 714105</b>

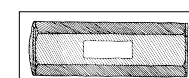


G

**G OCTAGONAL HAMMERS**

Octagonal-headed hammer with flat cheeks, ideal for adjusting and fitting work. The cheeks can also be used as striking surfaces. Selectively hardened, flat and curved faces.

Head weight	Overall length	
115 g	305 mm	<b>No. 714001</b>
225 g	335 mm	<b>No. 714002</b>
375 g	335 mm	<b>No. 714003</b>
570 g	370 mm	<b>No. 714004</b>



H

**H HATTORI® GENNO**

Japanese-style hammer for driving chisels and nails. Round head with selectively hardened flat and curved faces.

Head weight 350 g  
Overall length 300 mm  
**No. 700975**







## Western Hammers

### DICTUM® hammers

Black varnished hammer head, matt polished pane and face with precision-ground bevel. Waxed hammer handle made of robust Hickory wood. Face and pane are hardened to approx. 52-58 HRC.

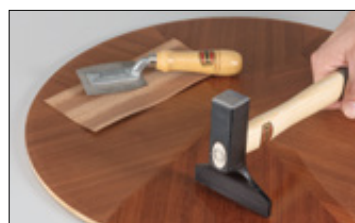


**C DICTUM® CABINETMAKER'S HAMMER**  
French design with rectangular striking surface. The narrow pane is ideal for hammering in small nails. Secured with annular wedge.  
Head weight Face Overall length  
250 g 20 x 22 mm. 300 mm **No. 715486**  
350 g 23 x 26 mm. 330 mm **No. 715487**

**D DICTUM® LOCKSMITH'S HAMMER WITH HANDLE PROTECTOR**  
For universal use in the workshop, assembly work or repairs. A handle protection sleeve prevents the handle from being damaged. German design compliant with DIN 1041 standard. Secured with annular wedge..  
Head weight Overall length  
300 g 300 mm **No. 715482**  
400 g 300 mm **No. 715483**

**E DICTUM® WARRINGTON HAMMER**  
Cabinetmaker's hammer of English design with slightly rounded striking face. For universal use in the workshop and assembly work. Secured with wooden and steel wedge.  
Head weight Overall length Head diameter  
100 g 320 mm 16 mm **No. 715490**  
285 g 300 mm 25 mm **No. 715491**  
340 g 300 mm 25 mm **No. 715492**

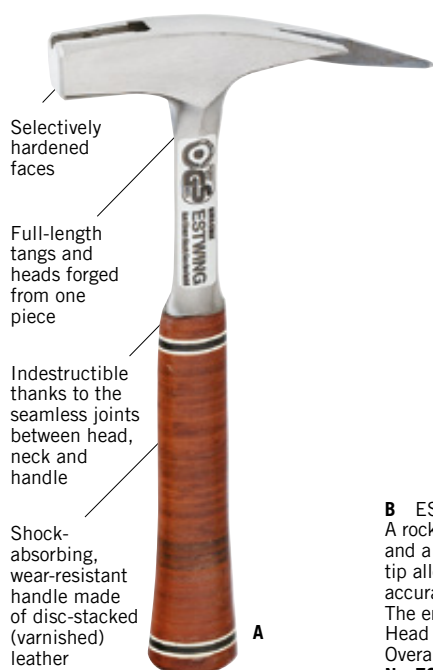
**F GERMAN VENEER HAMMER**  
Hammer veneering is a proven technique for making and restoring veneers as well as inlays with hot glue. The pre-steamed and ironed veneer is pressed down using the warmed veneer hammer. Working from the middle of the piece outwards, the hammer is moved back and forth across the piece to force bubbles and excess glue out. The rounded face distributes pressure efficiently and equally. Solid steel head, ash handle.  
Head weight 520 g  
Overall length 320 mm  
Peen width 90 mm  
**No. 705689**



**G PICARD® WARRINGTON HAMMERS**  
All-purpose hammer with classic head shape for assembly and inlay work. The fin is rounded, the face slightly curved in order to prevent marks on the surface. Ash handle.  
Head diameter 25 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
Head weight  
180 g **No. 705682**  
300 g **No. 705683**



## Estwing® Hammers



**A ESTWING® ROOFING HAMMERS**  
The point can be driven into the wood, and so is used for moving beams and keeping the hammer on the roof. With magnetic nail claw.  
Head weight 600 g  
Overall length 330 mm  
checkered face **No. 714132**  
smooth face **No. 705699**



**B ESTWING® ROCK PICK**  
A rock pick is a combination of a hammer and a pick. The long, hardened, pointed tip allows stones to be struck with extreme accuracy, and thus split with precision. The end of the handle is riveted  
Head weight 390 g  
Overall length 320 mm  
**No. 705697**



**C ESTWING® CLAW HAMMER**  
With their round, smooth, bell-shaped head with slightly curved face and the curved nail claw, claw hammers are ideal for driving in and loosening nails while protecting the surface. The end of the handle is riveted  
Head weight 560 g  
Overall length 315 mm  
**No. 705698**

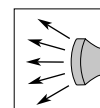
## Face designs of roofing hammers

The face of roofing hammers is checkered to prevent slipping when hammering nails. For removing formwork, use hammers with a smooth face to avoid damaging the form boards.



► Hultafors® locksmith's, cross-peen and claw hammers available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**D CHASING HAMMER**  
Chasing hammer with a large, slightly curved face for driving gravers and small punches as well as a ball-peen side for creating a hampered look. Chasing refers to the decorative texturing of metal surfaces. Ash handle.  
Ø 28 / 14 mm  
Head weight 110 g  
Overall length 270 mm  
**No. 705333**

## Mallets



Second gripping area near the head



**E DICTUM® SQUARE MALLETS**  
These mallets are ideal for both assembly work and driving chisels. The hard, single-piece head of domestic white beech has a trapezoid shape for precise, ergonomic strokes. All edges are slightly bevelled to prevent damage to the workpiece. The smoked robinia handle has a double curve to perfectly fit the shape of the hand and is securely wedged to the head.

Head width 65 mm  
Overall length 330 mm  
300 g  
**No. 730044**

Head width 75 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
600 g  
**No. 730045**



## Mortised handles

The most secure way of attaching a handle is with a through mortise. The head sits securely between the turned collar on the handle and the wedge at the top end.



**F HATTORI® SQUARE Mallet**  
Simple square-headed mallet offering good value for money. For driving chisels, sculptor's gouges and for all tasks that require a wide striking face. With impact-resistant red beech head with bevelled edges, and ash handle wedged to the head. The oval shape of the handle makes it easy to align the striking face with the workpiece or tool.  
Head width 65 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
440 g  
**No. 730047**

## DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



## Soft Face and Rawhide Hammers

**A THOR RAWHIDE HAMMER**

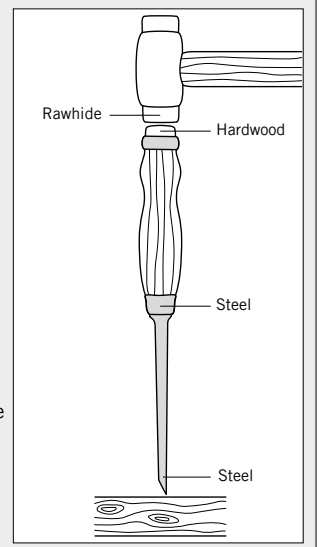
This perfectly balanced hammer is ideal for driving chisels and light assembly work. The solid cast iron gives the hammer the necessary head weight and the rawhide inserts can be replaced after years of use. Durable hickory handle.

Head diameter 25 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
Total weight 285 g  
**No. 714133**  
1 Repl. head **No. 714134**

► *Replacing the rawhide inserts: the inserts must be drilled out and pressed in again using a vice.*

**Why use a rawhide hammer for driving chisels?****Striking process on a chisel:**

The chain of materials that is involved in the striking process often includes exclusively hard materials, from the hardened cutting steel of the chisel to the ferrule, from the end grain on the end part of the hardwood handle to the hammer (made of steel for Genno, and of hardwood end grain sides for mallets). The cutting edge of the chisel is the thinnest cross-section in this chain and is therefore at risk of cracking. On Japanese chisels made of double-layered steel, the laminated soft iron is shock-absorbent. Most western chisels do not feature a double-layered steel structure and the cutting edge is therefore subjected to high stress. One solution would be using a hammer made of soft material. However, while a soft-material hammer absorbs the strike, it does not transfer the impact energy. Rawhide is one of the few natural materials that perfectly combines toughness - and thus wear resistance - with a shock-absorbing effect and good energy transfer of impact.

**B WHITE RUBBER HAMMERS**

Protect delicate surfaces from hammer marks. The advantage which these hammers (with heads made of white rubber) have over their black counterparts is that they do not leave unattractive marks on light coloured surfaces. Slightly convex head, solid red beech shaft in conical socket. Head diameter 64 mm Overall length 340 mm

330 g **No. 705679**  
610 g **No. 705680**

**C WIHA® SOFT FACE MALLETS**

This hammer is used for assembly work and fitting parts together. The yellow face is medium hard and made of colourfast and wear-resistant polyurethane. It is suited for assembly and fitting work. Soft materials can be hammered using the blue face, which is made of soft, colourfast and wear-resistant elastomer. The durable housing is made from malleable cast iron. A comfortable to hold hickory handle completes this product. Head diameter 40 mm Overall length 325 mm

300 g **No. 717865**  
640 g **No. 717869**

**D RAWHIDE HAMMERS WITH LEAD CORE**

American buffalo hide (rawhide) coiled around a lead core dampens the blow and simultaneously protects the surfaces of sensitive pieces from damage. Ideal for furniture assembly, interior, restoration, parquet and tiling work. The rawhide heads are highly resistant to wear and can also be used for striking chisels and carving tools. Hickory handle. Head diameter 45 mm Overall length 290 mm

260 g **No. 714327**  
450 g **No. 714328**

**E RAWHIDE HAMMER**

This rawhide hammer is a specialised tool for the purpose of splitting wooden shingles together with a splitting knife. The head of the hammer is made of water buffalo skin, which is rolled and compressed thrice. Then the hammer head has to rest for months. It is very tough and shock-absorbing. As the head is made of rawhide, it has a large diameter and is very effective while at the same time being lightweight. The handle is made of lacquered ash. Head diameter 90 mm Overall length 360 mm Total weight 1250 g **No. 705681**

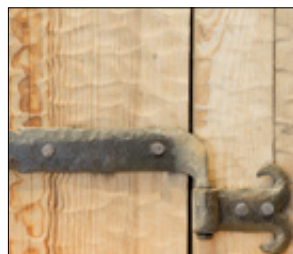




## Accessories

### Forged Nails

Due to their square shafts (larger surface area than conventional round nails) and coarse surfaces, forged nails are more difficult to pull out than the conventional round nails commonly used today. Their shafts are tapered, resulting in an equal distribution of pressure along the length of the nail, which also makes it harder to pull out and reduces the risk of splitting the wood. The nails are primarily used in carpentry, boat building and restoration.



#### A PLANK NAIL

Large four-faceted head, thick shaft, for larger dimensions. Cold-drawn, blued steel. 1 pack = approx. 100 pieces.

Length	Shaft	
50 mm	3.1 mm	No. 830123
60 mm	3.2 mm	No. 830124
70 mm	3.4 mm	No. 830125



#### B DOOR NAIL

Large four-faceted head, slender shaft, also suitable for decorative purposes. Cold-drawn, blued steel. 1 pack = approx. 100 pieces.

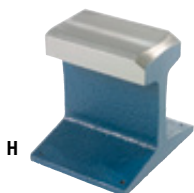
Length	Shaft	
30 mm	2.5 mm	No. 830113



#### F JAPANESE PRECISION WOODEN NAILS

For decorative corner, T or L joints which are exposed to high mechanical loads, conical wooden nails are the first choice. After pre-drilling with an appropriate conical drill, the nails are put in with a gentle hammer stroke and a little glue. Also ideal for restoring furniture, music instruments, historical fitted features or to fill small imperfections.

Quantity	Material	Ø	Length	
20	Birch	3.5 / 1.8 mm	35 mm	No. 717528
300	Birch	3.5 / 1.8 mm	35 mm	No. 717524
20	Beech	4.7 / 2.2 mm	45 mm	No. 717529
300	Beech	4.7 / 2.2 mm	45 mm	No. 717525
12	Beech	5 / 2.5 mm	60 mm	No. 717530
180	Beech	5 / 2.5 mm	60 mm	No. 717526
6	Beech	6 / 3 mm	88 mm	No. 717531
90	Beech	6 / 3 mm	88 mm	No. 717527



#### H BLACKSMITH'S ANVIL

This easy-to-transport anvil, cut from a railway track, is suitable for small blacksmithing works. Face milled flat and chamfered on two sides.

Face 100 x 60 mm.  
120 x 100 x 115 mm  
3.4 kg

No. 706566



#### I PREBENA® HAMMER TACKER

This hammer tacker has a reliable, easy-to-feed loading system and a robust metal housing, which guarantees a long life. It requires minimal effort to use. Its non-slip handle and easy dismantling without tools make this hammer tacker an ideal

companion on site. Ideal for shingles, tarred board, insulation material etc. For staples with a length of 6-9 mm. Length 300 mm  
900 g

No. 717318



#### J STAPLES FOR PREBENA® HAMMER TACKER, 5000-PIECE SET

Fits Prebena hammer tacker No. 717318. Zinc-coated. Staple length 9 mm, back width 10.6 mm.

No. 717319



#### C SHAKER NAILS

Manufactured using traditional methods:

These decorative copper nails are beaten in the USA on original machines dating from the 19th century. They are used to rivet the frames of shaker boxes, for delicate craftsmanship work, model construction, leather applications, or for ornamental purposes.

Length	Quantity	
5 mm	350	No. 830142
8 mm	300	No. 830143



#### D BRASS RIVETS

For the widest variety of materials, in particular to assemble handle scales, join thin components made of wood, metal, plastic, leather, or for decorative purposes. If necessary, the rivets can be cropped, and the heads can be rounded off. They are driven with a hammer (or with a dimpling punch, if necessary).



1 pack = 50 capsules and 50 bolts.

Shaft diameter 4 mm

Ø Head Thickness

6 mm 11\* mm No. 830150

6 mm 15\* mm No. 830151

8.5 mm 25\* mm No. 830152

\* maximum thickness of the materials which are to be joined together



E

#### E JAPANESE DRIVERS, 4-PIECE SET

To drive nails, pins, splints etc. Chrome-plated surface, octagonal shaft.

Ø 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 mm

Working length 50 mm



Overall length 150 mm

No. 710851



► Novus® handheld tacker for driving in brackets and nails up to 16 mm length into softwood available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Nail Pullers and Pry Bars



K

#### K PRY BAR, SPRING STEEL

Reliable pry bars forged from Swedish spring steel and therefore particularly light despite the long size. The wide,

precision-ground claws at both ends allow the bar to be easily wedged without damaging the surface of the piece.

1	Overall length 270 mm
	Max. nail shaft diameter 8 mm
	340 g
	No. 705975

	Overall length 500 mm
	Max. nail shaft diameter 10 mm
	950 g
	No. 705966

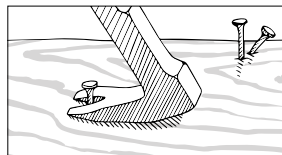
	Overall length 600 mm
	Max. nail shaft diameter 10 mm
	1.3 kg
	No. 705976

	Overall length 700 mm
	Max. nail shaft diameter 13 mm
	1.8 kg
	No. 705977

	Overall length 900 mm
	Max. nail shaft diameter 13 mm
	2.4 kg
	No. 705978

### Japanese Nail Pullers and Pry Bars

Compact, highly efficient tools for pulling nails and disassembling components. The perfectly designed claws and smoothly curved faces prevent the workpiece from becoming damaged during disassembly. The flat face on the back of the claw can be used to drive the claw under a nail or as a hammer. Made of drop-forged steel with case-hardened working surfaces.



#### A NAIL PULLER

- For cabinet making and carpentry
- Double-sided claw

Overall length 360 mm  
Max. nail shaft diameter 5 / 6 mm  
690 g  
**No. 714314**



#### B PRY BAR

For heavy-duty use.  
Overall length 450 mm  
Max. nail shaft diameter 6 mm  
Shovel 35 mm  
850 g  
**No. 714308**



#### C NAIL PULLERS, WIDE CLAW

The precision-ground claw is wide and thin, allowing pieces to be gently eased apart without damaging their surfaces.

**1** Overall length 150 mm  
Max. nail shaft diameter 2 / 2.5 mm  
Shovel 37 mm  
110 g  
**No. 714298**

**2** Overall length 190 mm  
Max. nail shaft diameter 2 / 2.5 mm  
Shovel 45 mm  
185 g  
**No. 714311**

**3** Overall length 300 mm  
Max. nail shaft diameter 2 / 2.5 mm  
Shovel 49 mm  
375 g  
**No. 714309**



#### Use of pry bars

A pry bar is often thought of as a rough tool used for stripping. But the smaller bars in particular are an indispensable aid for restoring furniture, doors and windows. Due to the low surface pressure, a wide blade, for example, can be used to remove parts from a work-piece without damaging it.

#### E PRECISION NAIL PULLER, S-TYPE

For furniture and fine work.  
Overall length 160 mm  
Max. nail shaft diameter 2 / 2.5 mm  
90 g  
**No. 714310**



#### F DICTUM® NAIL PULLERS

Handy nail puller with two solid forged claws. For removing metal nails and for levering.

	Max. nail shaft-Ø	Overall length	Weight
<b>1</b>	3,5 mm	250 mm	300 g
<b>2</b>	4 mm	360 mm	590 g

**No. 715495**  
**No. 715496**



#### G OSBORNE NAIL PULLER

Robust drop-forged tool with a head for nails, maximum diameter 2.5 mm. Red beech handle with hoop and ferrule.  
Overall length 230 mm  
**No. 705665**



#### D HULTAFORS® ADJUSTABLE PRY BAR, RUBBERIZED HANDLE

The articulated claw can be adjusted to nine positions, so that this innovative pry bar always provides the correct leverage, thus saving effort. Ideal for use in narrow spaces, when working overhead as well as standing or kneeling. The rubber cladding on the ergonomic handle provides increased safety and comfort for heavy work. Forged from extremely hard-wearing Swedish steel, durable teeth, also ideal for prying and levering work.  
Overall length 670 mm  
Max. nail shaft diameter 10 mm  
1.7 kg  
**No. 714331**



#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)





# Woodturning Tools

Let's take turns!

**Lathes** | 177  
**DICTUM®** | 177  
**Axminster** | 178

**Chucks** | 179  
**Teknatool®** | 179  
**Oneway** | 180  
**Axminster** | 180

**Standard Turning Tools** | 181  
**Henry Taylor®** | 181  
**Crown®** | 183  
**Hattori®** | 189

**Hollowing Tools** | 190  
**Crown®** | 190  
**Henry Taylor®** | 192  
**Easy Wood Tools™** | 192



# EVERYTHING ABOUT WOODTURNING

## Tools, materials and knowledge

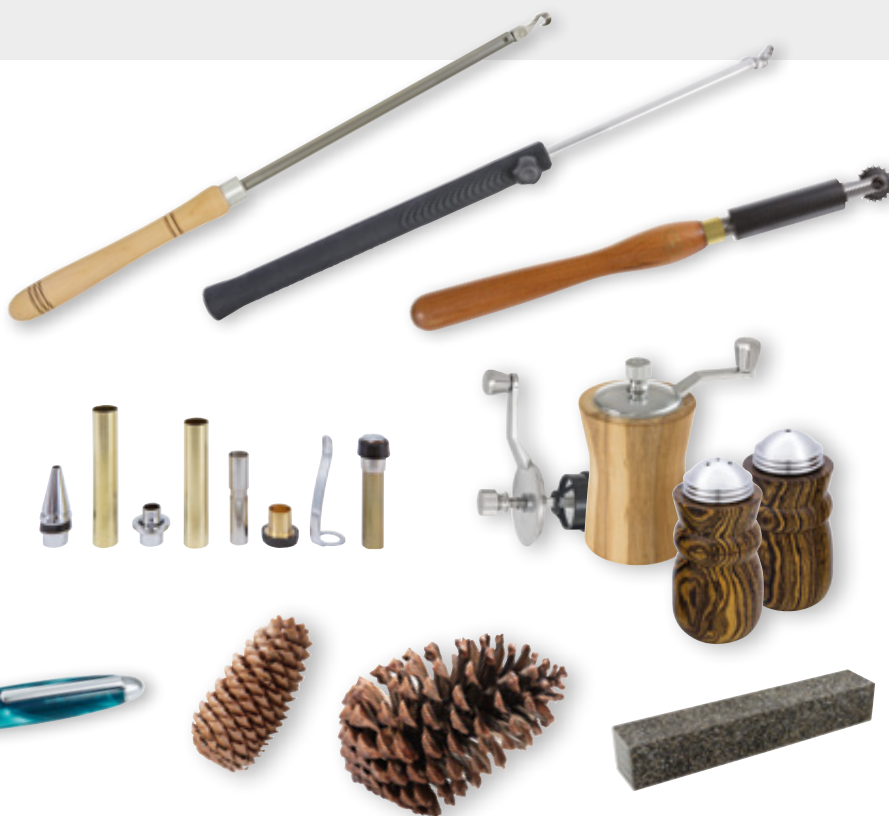
Tradition, sharpness, and durability are the hallmarks of our woodturning tools. This was also our motto when we compiled premium woodturning tools to meet your highest demand.

### TURNING TOOLS

- Hollowing Tools
- Special Tools

### WOODTURNING PROJECTS AND KITS

### SPECIAL MATERIALS



For the full range of wood turning tools see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### WORKSHOP

#### TURNING OBJECTS

**Content:** Over the two days, Jimmy Clewes will accompany you step-by-step through a project of your choice. Whether spindle or faceplate turning, special surface techniques, creating your object of desire or the sharpening of turning gouges, the internationally known, experienced woodturner will advise you individually.



He will give you specific tips, how to reach your goal fast and safely. Whether hollow designs, winged bowls or jars with lid, the experienced woodturner will help you with useful tips.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

### WORKSHOP

#### WOODTURNING PINE CONES, HORN AND SYNTHETIC MATERIALS



**Content:** In addition to wood, many other natural and synthetic materials can be processed on a lathe. Each material reacts differently and requires a different cutting bevel or tool guide. The course teaches the required techniques and, above all, the instinctive feeling for the correct processing of e.g. Banksia cones, nuts (tagua and thika), cow and buffalo horn, as well as acrylic and polyester. Further materials can be brought to the course to discuss their workability.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

# Lathes

**DICTUM** The DICTUM turning lathe is a combination of a tried-and-tested construction with technical innovations and improvements. We develop and test lathes in cooperation with our trainers and professional woodturners. During the design process, customer requirements and needs from beginners to experts are taken into account.



## A DICTUM® LATHE S 175

High-grade benchtop lathe:

This table lathe impresses with its robust cast iron construction and interesting additional functions. The frequency converter for the electronic speed regulation is optimally protected against damage by a sheet steel housing. A triple pulley provides maximum torque at any speed. LED speed display in rpm.

The highlight: the tailstock quill is equipped with a thread and a clamping nut to clamp drills without additional drill chucks with a #2 MT direct collet chuck (No. 727653-59 / 727696). This does not unnecessarily reduce the centre distance. Optionally, a depth setting gauge (No. 707789) with mm scale and depth limiter can be mounted. The control box with on/off switch, speed controller and reversing switch (left/right rotation) can be attached anywhere on the machine by its magnetic base. Two openings on the cast bed allow the installation of an optional, height-adjustable shelf (No. 707788) in which the control box can be quickly, easily and accessibly placed.

### Specifications:

- Height of centre over bed 175 mm
- Distance between centres 350-400 mm
- Speed ranges 80-800, 170-1700, 350-3700 rpm
- Hollow spindle Ø 20 mm (#2 MT inner cone) with M33 x 3.5 DIN 800 thread and two bearings
- Spindle indexing 24 x 15°
- Hollow tailstock (10 mm bore) with #2 MT quill (95 mm travel)
- Motor 0.75 kW (1 hp)
- Motor rating 230 V
- Length 895 mm
- Width 365 mm
- Height 415 mm
- Weight 47 kg

### Basic configuration:

- Tool rest 150 mm
- Tailstock quill with thread and clamping nut
- Tailstock with mounting base for depth setting gauge (No. 707789)
- #2 MT four-tooth spur driver Ø 25 mm
- 80 mm face plate
- #2 MT revolving centre
- Knockout rod
- Screw holes on the cast iron feet for mounting on bench plates or underframe
- Assembly openings for height-adjustable shelf (No. 707788)

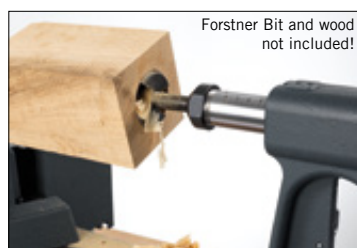
Comes with German and English instructions

No. 707783

 **Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



For mounting on the tailstock. Facilitates precise depth adjustment during drilling. The drilling depth can be limited by the stopper supplied. Scale 0-100 mm. Fits DICTUM Lathe S 175 (No. 707783, 707847).



## B DEPTH SETTING GAUGE FOR DICTUM® LATHE S 175

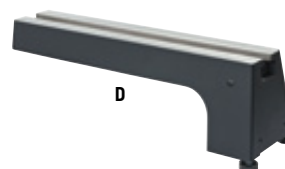
For mounting on the tailstock. Facilitates precise depth adjustment during drilling. The drilling depth can be limited by the stopper supplied. Scale 0-100 mm. Fits DICTUM Lathe S 175 (No. 707783, 707847).

No. 707789



## C DICTUM® SHELF FOR LATHE SWITCH UNIT

For mounting on the lathe bed. An articulated arm enables the individual positioning of the support shell. This allows the control box to be attached quickly and easily at a readily accessible position. Fits DICTUM Lathe S 175 (No. 707783, 707847). Note: the S 175 already has two assembly openings in the bench bed. No. 707788



## D BED EXTENSION 600 MM FOR DICTUM® LATHE S 175

- Provides 1000 mm distance between centres
  - For turning of table legs, standard lamps, etc.
  - Solid cast iron construction
  - Supplied with fixing bolts
  - Weight 11 kg
- Fits DICTUM Lathe S 175 (No. 707783). No. 707784



## E DICTUM® LATHE S 175 **Price advantage**

Includes bed extension No. 707784 for distance between centres 1000 mm, base frame No. 707786 and base frame for bed extension No. 707787 for working height/axis centre 1120 mm. No. 707847

 **Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



► **Accessories for DICTUM® lathes available online.**

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



The inexpensive Axminster Craft machine range is ideal for beginners. When it comes to functionality, the Craft series offers almost the same as expensive professional machines, but is designed for lighter work and approx. 100 hours of use per year. The quality and performance of the machines fit the requirements of most hobby applications. All machine parts are also available as spare parts.



**B BED EXTENSION FOR AXMINSTER LATHE CRAFT AC305WL**

- Providing 1100 mm between centres
- Enables turning of table legs, standard lamps etc.
- Solid cast iron construction



- Supplied with fixing bolts and rubber feet
- Length 675 mm
- Weight 10.5 kg

**No. 706525**

#### A AXMINSTER LATHE CRAFT AC305WL

High functionality on a budget:

For beginners and hobbyists who are looking for a low-cost solution. This small, yet robust benchtop lathe offers much of the functionality of large lathes. Variable spindle speeds with electronic speed control from 500 to 4080 rpm, cast iron bed for minimal vibrations during operation, cast iron headstock and tailstock provide rigidity, strength and long service life, quick-release levers for easy positioning of the tool rest and tailstock. An additional bed extension (No. 706525) allows a distance between centres of 1100 mm. The machines come with an adapter so you can use the UK plugs in Europe.

#### Specifications:

- Height of centre over bed 152 mm
- Distance between centres 370 mm
- Speed ranges 500-2040 / 1000-4080 rpm
- Hollow spindle Ø 30 mm (#2 MT inner cone) with 1 inch x 8 tpi thread and two bearings
- Hollow tailstock (10 mm bore) with #2 MT quill (50 mm travel) and measuring scale
- Motor 0.55 kW (0.75 hp)
- Motor rating 230 V
- Length 820 mm
- Width 280 mm
- Height 440 mm
- Weight 40 kg

#### Basic configuration:

- Tool rest 150 mm and tailstock
- #2 MT four-tooth spur driver Ø 25 mm
- 75 mm faceplate
- #2 MT revolving centre
- Knockout rod

**Comes with German and English instructions**

**No. 706520**

**Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



#### C AXMINSTER LATHE CRAFT AC370WL

This lathe will have you working like a professional. The swivelling headstock (indexed at 45° and 90°) means you can turn even larger bowls while standing directly in front of the workpiece. The headstock is free to slide along the length of the bed. Variable spindle speed from 500 to 2000 rpm without belt change; bed, headstock and tailstock made of cast iron for more rigidity, strength and a long service life; underframe of 2 mm thick steel with tool rest. Quick-release levers allow easy positioning of tool rest and tailstock. Spindle indexing 24 x 15°. The machines come with an adapter so you can use the UK plugs in Europe.

#### Specifications:

- Height of centre over bed 185 mm
- Distance between centres 1100 mm
- Speed range 500-2000 rpm
- Hollow spindle Ø 24 mm (#2 MT inner cone) with 1 inch x 8 tpi thread and three bearings
- Hollow tailstock (10 mm bore) with #2 MT quill (50 mm travel)
- Motor 0.75 kW (1 hp)
- Motor rating 230 V
- Working height/axis centre 1080 mm
- Length 1680 mm
- Width 470 mm
- Height 1155 mm
- Weight 97 kg

#### Basic configuration:

- Tool rest and tailstock with eccentric clamp
- Tool rest 300 mm and tailstock, incl. tool rest swinger
- #2 MT four-tooth spur driver Ø 25 mm
- 150 mm faceplate
- #2 MT revolving centre
- Knockout rod

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

**No. 706521**

For accessories for Axminster lathes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Plus €50 freight forwarding costs.** Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



► More lathes available in our »Woodturning Catalogue« or online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**AXMINSTER**  
**Trade**

The Trade series offers machines in the medium price range with high performance and robust design. Suitable for workshops of ambitious hobbyists and professionals alike with approx. 1000 hours of use per year. The good workmanship, precision and stability of the machines are also appreciated by many professionals. All machine parts are also available as spare parts.



#### A AXMINSTER LATHE TRADE AT406WL

A sound choice:

This lathe from the Axminster Trade series has a heavy grey cast iron construction and leaves virtually nothing to be desired. The machine offers high performance, comprehensive features and excellent workmanship. The heavy, solid construction ensures high rigidity, strength and a long life. The swivelling headstock (indexed at 45°, 90°) is free to slide along the length of the bed. Vibration-free running thanks to heavy cast iron construction (156 kg), well machined bed and precisely aligned centres, electronic variable speed with inverter technology, 50-3750 rpm in two speed ranges, powerful 2 hp motor, LED digital read-out of the lathe speed in rpm. The magnetic control console with start/stop, speed control and forward/reverse can be conveniently positioned where required. The machines come with an adapter so you can use the UK plugs in Europe.

#### Specifications:

- Height of centre over bed 203 mm
- Distance between centres 710 mm
- Speed ranges 50-1250, 150-3750 rpm
- Hollow spindle Ø 35 mm (#2 MT inner cone) with M33 x 3.5 DIN 800 thread and three bearings
- Spindle indexing 36 x 10°
- Hollow tailstock (10 mm bore) with #2 MT quill (100 mm travel) and measuring scale
- Motor 1.5 kW (2 hp)
- Motor rating 230 V
- Working height/axis centre 1155 mm
- Length 1150 mm
- Width 560 mm
- Height 1250 mm
- Weight machine 96 kg, leg stand 60 kg

#### Basic configuration:

- Tool rest 350 mm and tailstock
- #2 MT four-tooth spur driver Ø 25 mm
- 150 mm faceplate
- #2 MT revolving centre
- Knockout rod
- Adjustment tool
- Solid cast iron leg stand

Comes with German and English instructions

No. 706524

**Plus €80 freight forwarding costs. Other countries on request.**  
 Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902

For more Axminster lathes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Chucks

### Teknatool®

Teknatool has been producing innovative machines and woodworking tools since 1980. In 1983, the company developed one of the first modern jaw chucks for woodturners. Since then, Teknatool has gained a reputation worldwide in particular for its four-jaw chucks. Sold under a renowned international brand, these chucks are now being used by tens of thousands of woodturners and distinguish themselves through their robustness and extensive range of jaws. Teknatool chucks are considered especially safe because the jaws do not protrude beyond the base body and are secured against accidental unscrewing or exceeding the maximum clamping distance.



#### B TEKNATOOL® SUPERNOVA2™ PRO-TEK CHUCKS

The SuperNOVA2 chuck is self-centring when clamping and expanding. The new single-handed operation, which can be used at any angle, makes the work easier as the other hand remains free for manipulating the workpiece. Suitable for use with all Teknatool jaws, which makes the chuck universally expandable. No

**Online SHOP**

► For our full range of chuck accessories as well as chuck jaws see the DICTUM online shop.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### 1 Without Jaws

- Includes:
- Wrench
  - Screws kit
  - Wrench for screws kit

No. 720671

#### 2 With 50 mm Dovetail Jaws

- Same scope of delivery as No. 720671 along with:
- + Screw-on mandrel screw chuck, short
  - + PRO-TEK serrated dovetail jaws
  - + Care hand towel

External chucking 42-65 mm  
 Internal chucking 52-75 mm  
 No. 720670

mounting disc is required. The chuck is equipped with an integrated connection thread, which makes it lighter. The rear of the chuck features a 24-step indexing disc, no further indexing device is needed.

Model M33 x 3.5 DIN 800  
 Ø 100 mm

## ONEWAY EUROPA Chucks

All chucks of the trademark Oneway are produced in Canada to guarantee high quality and accuracy. For both chucks Talon and Stronghold many accessories are available, from which you can choose according to your needs. The bodies are manufactured in one continuous operation in order to guarantee the highest-possible true running accuracy.



### A ONEWAY CHUCKS TALON, WITH PREMIUM PROFILED JAWS SIZE 2

The Oneway Talon chuck is a self-centring four-jaw chuck. Suitable for almost all turning needs, it is the standard chuck for the turner. It can be easily operated with one hand by using the included chuck key. This way you can use your other hand to position the workpiece. The body, manufactured out of one piece, is vibration-resistant and rotates accurately. A nickel coating protects the chuck from rust. The casehardened jaw slides, made from chrome-nickel steel, are extremely wear resistant and run smoothly and exactly in the toothed guiding. Recommended for lathes with a height of centre over bed up to 200 mm. The set contains a taper lock adapter, premium profiled jaws size 2, chuck key, woodworm screw, hex key. Jaws size 2: external chucking 41-73 mm / internal chucking 51-90 mm.



Model M33 x 3.5 DIN 800  
Ø 85 mm  
No. 702159

Model 1 inch x 8 TPI  
Ø 85 mm  
No. 702160



### Safety guide pin

The Oneway jaws are equipped with a guide pin on the underside of the jaws which engages in a guide groove in the chuck body. This is an important safety feature which prevents the base and clamping jaws from coming off the body in an uncontrolled manner by exceeding the maximum clamping path or unintentional unscrewing!

For information on how to determine the thread size of your main lathe spindle see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► Jaws for chucks of all manufacturers available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### B ONEWAY CHUCK STRONGHOLD, WITH PREMIUM PROFILED JAWS SIZE 2

The advantage of this self-centring four-jaw chuck lies in its heavy design. Suitable for large objects, this chuck offers security in almost all clamping situations. It can be easily operated with one hand by using the included chuck key. This way you can use your other hand to position the workpiece. The body, manufactured out of one piece, is low vibrating and rotates accurately. A nickel coating protects the chuck from rust. The casehardened jaw slides, made from chrome-nickel steel, are extremely wear resistant and run smoothly and exactly in the toothed guiding. Recommended

for lathes with a height of centre over bed from 200 mm on. The set contains a taper lock adapter, premium profiled jaws size 2, chuck key, woodworm screw, hex key. Jaws size 2: external chucking 44-82 mm / internal chucking 60-101 mm. Model M33 x 3.5 DIN 800 Ø 105 mm  
No. 702158

### Other adaptors needed?

No problem: We have a whole series of special adapters available on request.



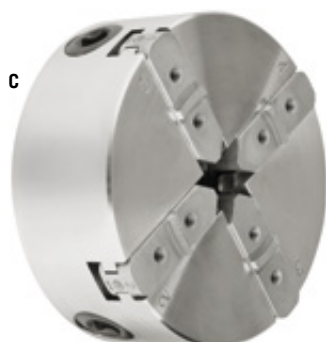
## Axminster

Axminster has been producing four-jaw chucks for woodturning lathes since 1984. The English company offers a suitable chuck size for every application, not to mention excellent value for money. The chucks along with all accessories are made in England on CNC machines and have been developed over years working closely with experienced turners.

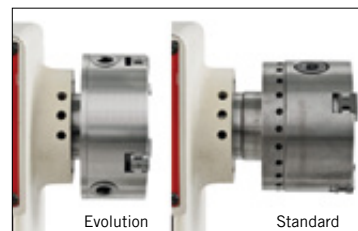


### C AXMINSTER CHUCK EVOLUTION SK114, SOLO

This chuck features a super-slim stainless steel body incorporating a new design of longer accessory mounting jaws. Max. jaw movement 22 mm (plus safety capacity). Fully compatible with all Axminster jaws. Includes chuck key for one-handed operation. Model M33 x 3.5 DIN 800 Ø 114 mm  
No. 702238



Due to their super-slim body, these jaws fit deeper in the chuck and offer a greater contact area within the slide ways of the chuck, thus minimising vibration during use.



The ultra-compact design keeps the workpiece as close as possible to the headstock of your lathe to reduce the load on the bearings and prevent unwanted vibration.

For safety, the maximum jaw movement is limited so that when the chuck is fully opened, the threads of the scroll engage still sufficiently in the jaws.

#### A AXMINSTER CHUCK CLUBMAN

Excellent value for money:

Equipped with universal accessory mounting jaws, this chuck fits a wide range of Axminster accessories and jaws. The self-centring four-jaw chuck is highly robust and versatile. Its extreme stability is supported by large threads in the scroll and jaws. The chuck body is made of stainless steel, which allows closer manufacturing tolerances. This ensures better concentricity and minimises vibrations. The max. jaw movement is 25 mm (plus safety capacity). Includes chuck key for one-handed operation.

A



1

**1 SK80, with Type C80 Jaws**  
Model 1 inch x 8 tpi  
Ø 80 mm  
External chucking 34-68 mm  
Internal chucking 51-86 mm  
1.3 kg  
**No. 702274**



2

**2 SK100, SOLO**  
Model M33 x 3.5 DIN 800  
Ø 100 mm  
1.6 kg (solo)  
**No. 702241**



3

**3 SK100, with Type C Jaws**  
Model M33 x 3.5 DIN 800  
Ø 100 mm  
External chucking 52-66 mm  
Internal chucking 66-80 mm  
1.6 kg (solo)  
**No. 702240**

## Standard Turning Tools



### Henry Taylor® Turning Tools

For over 150 years, turning tools of the finest quality have been manufactured by Henry Taylor in Sheffield (England). The company combines traditional manufacturing techniques such as forging by hand with modern hardening and tempering treatments. Only the best Sheffield steel (HSS) is used for all blades, which are attached to the heavy, dark stained handles of English hardwood with solid brass ferrules. Henry Taylor Tools design their tools in cooperation with world-leading woodturners such as Roy Child, Richard Raffan, Dale and Darrel Nishi and David Ellsworth - which is reflected in the high quality of the tools.

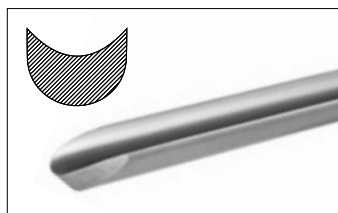


► Henry Taylor® Kryo woodturning tools available in our »Woodturning Catalogue« or online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### Spindle Gouges

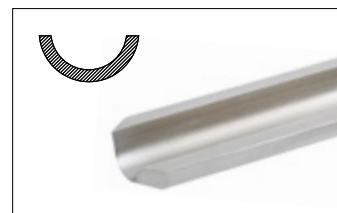


HENRY TAYLOR® »ENGLISH-STYLE« SPINDLE GOUGES, DIAMIC  
For cutting deep profiles along the grain (chamfers, curves, grooves). Fingernail grind.

Blade width	Overall length	
6.5 mm	330 mm	<b>No. 702031</b>
10 mm	400 mm	<b>No. 702029</b>
13 mm	400 mm	<b>No. 702030</b>

Vide

### Roughing-out Gouges

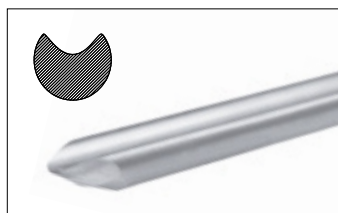
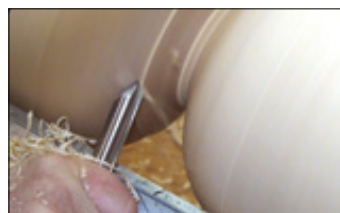


HENRY TAYLOR® ROUGHING-OUT GOUGES, DIAMIC  
For removing large amounts of stock during preliminary rounding. Drop-forged, deep fluted blades with straight grind.

Blade width	Overall length	
27 mm	460 mm	<b>No. 702019</b>
36 mm	580 mm	<b>No. 702021</b>
50 mm	580 mm	<b>No. 702020</b>

Vide

### Detail Gouges

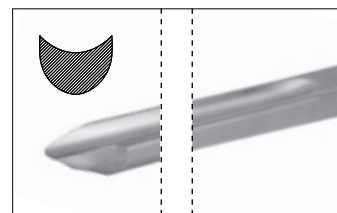


HENRY TAYLOR® DETAIL GOUGE, ROUND CROSS-SECTION, DIAMIC

Often used by professional spindle turners as an alternative to a spindle gouge. The shallow flute allows excellent stability, even in work where the blade protrudes well above the hand rest. Fingernail grind with secondary bevel.

Blade width	Overall length	
13 mm	590 mm	<b>No. 702288</b>

Vide



HENRY TAYLOR® DETAIL GOUGES, RECTANGULAR CROSS-SECTION, DIAMIC

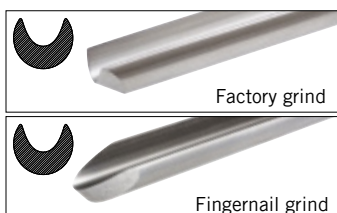
Genuine detail gouge with a shallow flute and rectangular cross-section for optimum access to the narrowest recesses. Fingernail grind with secondary bevel.


Blade width	Overall length	
10 mm	540 mm	<b>No. 702286</b>
13 mm	550 mm	<b>No. 702287</b>

Vide



## Bowl Gouges



 **HENRY TAYLOR® SUPERFLUTE BOWL GOUGES**  
The original Superflute gouge, designed by Roy Child, is one of the most famous bowl gouges ever. The slightly opened elliptical profile allows universal use.

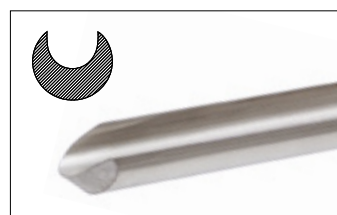
**Vide** 


*Factory grind*

Blade width	Overall length	
10.3 mm	530 mm	<b>No. 702027</b>
13 mm	530 mm	<b>No. 702025</b>
16 mm	650 mm	<b>No. 702026</b>
20 mm	640 mm	<b>No. 702028</b>

*Fingernail grind*

Blade width	Overall length	
10.3 mm	530 mm	<b>No. 702488</b>
13 mm	530 mm	<b>No. 702489</b>
16 mm	650 mm	<b>No. 702490</b>
20 mm	640 mm	<b>No. 702491</b>



 **HENRY TAYLOR® BOWL GOUGES, U-SHAPE**  
Primarily for working the outside of bowls. Traditional grind.

**Vide** 


Blade width	Overall length	
10.3 mm	530 mm	<b>No. 702023</b>
13 mm	530 mm	<b>No. 702022</b>
16 mm	645 mm	<b>No. 702024</b>

*»I have been using Henry Taylor tools for more than 25 years. They are some of the best tools in the world.«*

Nick Agar, internationally renowned master turner

## Parting Tool




 **HENRY TAYLOR® ELLSWORTH GOUGE**  
A bowl gouge designed by top master turner David Ellsworth. Can be used universally for both finishing and rough cuts on either the inside or outside of the vessel. Ellsworth special grind.

**Vide** 

Blade width	Overall length	
16 mm	640 mm	<b>No. 702014</b>




 **HENRY TAYLOR® PARTING TOOL, DIAMOND SHAPE**  
Taper-ground profile for reduced friction on the sides. Double bevel.

Blade width	Overall length	
5.5 mm	420 mm	<b>No. 702017</b>


## Chisels



 **HENRY TAYLOR® CHISEL, ROUND CROSS-SECTION**  
Due to its round profile, this tool allows the blade to move freely along the tool rest for making profile cuts.


Blade width	Overall length	
13 mm	580 mm	<b>No. 702018</b>



 **HENRY TAYLOR® OVAL SKEW CHISEL**  
For fine cutting along the grain. Less friction on the tool rest, easier control and turning than with a square profile. Skew-ground double bevel.


Blade width	Overall length	
21 mm	420 mm	<b>No. 702016</b>
25 mm	420 mm	<b>No. 702015</b>

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**

 Two free sharpenings

 **A HENRY TAYLOR® TURNING TOOLS, 5-PIECE SET**

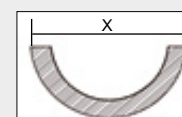
Roughing-out gouge, 27 mm;  
bowl gouge, 10 mm;  
parting tool, 3 mm;  
round nose scraper, 19 mm;  
oval skew chisel, 19 mm.  
Overall length 390-415 mm,  
handle length 240 mm.  
Parting tool 3.5 mm:  
Overall length 290 mm,  
handle length 175 mm.  
**No. 702010**

**Vide**  Application videos on the different types of gouges and cutting techniques available online.

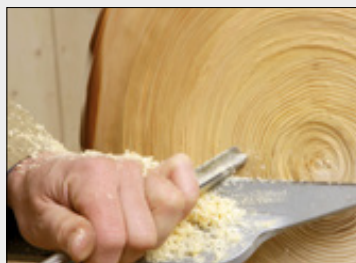
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Blade width measuring

We always state the outer diameter of the tools.



## ► FACEPLATE TURNING



The wood fibres run perpendicular to the spindle axis, which means you have to work on crossgrain twice per revolution. Tools for faceplate turning are somewhat more solid than tools for spindle turning to accommodate the forces during cutting.

Examples: bowls, boxes, plates...

### TOOLS FOR FACEPLATE TURNING:

- **Bowl gouges** for working across the grain are as versatile in their application as the turning gouges for working along the grain. This tool can be used for turning the outside and inside of bowls and hollow bodies.

- **Scrapers** are preferred for finishing surfaces because they allow the best surface quality. But this is not their only use - they are also suitable for creating profile edges.

## Crown® Turning Tools

Hand-forging and high-grade steels make Crown Tools one of the leading manufacturers of turning tools worldwide. All of their tools are made in Sheffield, England, following a long tradition. The blades are made of ultra-edge-retaining M2-HSS as well as M42-HSS and PRO-PM steel for heavy-duty use and ultimate edge life.



The oiling of the handles involves a special drum technique which creates a hard, homogeneous and therefore dirt-resistant surface.



### M2 HSS Turning Tools with ready-to-use bevel

Blade made of ultra-edge-holding M2 HSS. The version with oiled ash handle, exclusively developed for DICTUM, comes with a bevel sharpened ready to use. Approx. 62 HRC.



### M2 HSS Turning Tools with factory ground bevel

Crown standard version, blade made of ultra-edge-holding M2 HSS. Stained beech handle. Approx. 62 HRC.



### Cryogenic M2 HSS Turning Tools

Improved edge life and sharpness without compromising the sharpening process: Cryogenic hardening is a technically complex, computer-controlled process in which the steel is cooled down to -185 °C after hardening. After this treatment, the steel contains finer carbides, which cannot develop in the normal hardening process. This results in excellent properties such as a longer edge life than with conventional hardening, a fine cutting edge producing very few burrs, and easier sharpening. The tools come with a ready-to-use bevel and black stained ash handles. Approx. 62 HRC.



### Cryogenic M42 HSS Turning Tools – extra-hard HSS-cobalt alloy

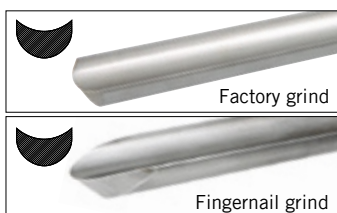
Extremely long service life and razor-sharp cutting edges: Originally developed to meet the requirements of metal processing, M42 steel cuts even exotic hardwood or composite materials effortlessly. The steel provides an exceptionally long service life thanks to the addition of 10 % cobalt as well as the cryogenic treatment it undergoes at -185 °C during the tempering process. This causes fine carbides to form, which help increase the service life and sharpenability of the steel long-term. Come with ready-to-use bevel and black stained ash handles. Approx. 65 HRC.





### PRO-PM Turning Tools – ultra-hard sintered steel


The ultimate turning tools: PRO-PM is the best steel for exotic hardwoods, resins, laminates or wood with mineral inclusions. Alloy steels have limited properties due to the different melting points. During sintering, powder steel is subjected to heat and pressure to create a new type of steel, which would not be miscible in the liquid state. The very high proportion of cobalt (8 %) and tungsten (10.5 %) makes the edge life at least five times longer compared to HSS. The tools come with a ready-to-use bevel and black stained ash handles. Approx. 62 HRC.


## Spindle Gouges





 **CROWN® »ENGLISH-STYLE« SPINDLE GOUGES**  
Milled from round material. Well-priced alternative to the »European-style« spindle gouge for cutting deep profiles along the grain. Shorter flute for added rigidity. **Vide** 

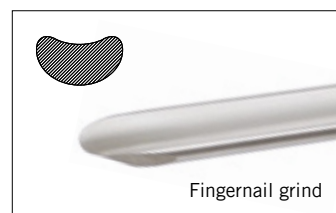




 **HSS/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
6 mm 400 mm **No. 729600**  
9 mm 400 mm **No. 729601**  
12 mm 400 mm **No. 729602**

 **HSS-Cryo/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
6 mm 438 mm **No. 701905**  
9 mm 438 mm **No. 701906**  
12 mm 438 mm **No. 701907**


 **M42-HSS-Cryo/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
6 mm 438 mm **No. 728840**  
9 mm 438 mm **No. 728841**  
12 mm 438 mm **No. 728842**


 **PRO-PM/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
6 mm 495 mm **No. 701810**  
10 mm 495 mm **No. 701972**  
12 mm 495 mm **No. 701973**




 **CROWN® »EUROPEAN-STYLE« SPINDLE GOUGES**  
The standard gouge for spindle work. The drop-forged flutes run the entire length of the blades, even excessively worn gouges with shortened blades can therefore be clamped to sharpening systems like Vari Grind (No. 702171). **Vide** 

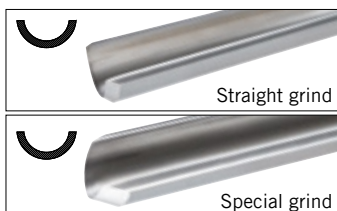
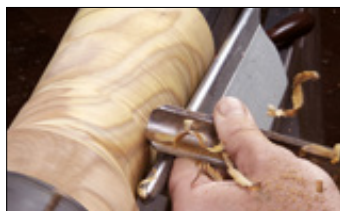




 **HSS/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
7 mm 380 mm **No. 729603**  
9 mm 380 mm **No. 729604**  
12 mm 380 mm **No. 729605**  
18 mm 380 mm **No. 729606**  
24 mm 380 mm **No. 729607**  
32 mm 520 mm **No. 729608**


 **HSS-Cryo/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
7 mm 418 mm **No. 701936**  
9 mm 418 mm **No. 701937**  
12 mm 418 mm **No. 701938**  
18 mm 418 mm **No. 701939**  
24 mm 418 mm **No. 701940**  
32 mm 520 mm **No. 701941**


 **M42-HSS-Cryo/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
9 mm 418 mm **No. 728854**  
12 mm 418 mm **No. 728855**  
18 mm 418 mm **No. 728856**


## Roughing-out Gouges




 **CROWN® ROUGHING-OUT GOUGES**  
For removing large amounts of stock during preliminary rounding. Drop-forged, deep fluted blade. **Vide** 

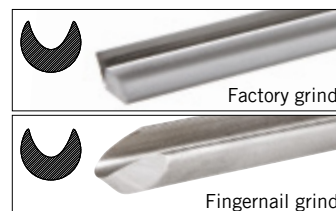
 **HSS/special grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
30 mm 380 mm **No. 729609**  
35 mm 530 mm **No. 729610**



 **HSS-Cryo/special grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
30 mm 418 mm **No. 701901**  
35 mm 530 mm **No. 701902**


 **M42-HSS-Cryo/special grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
30 mm 418 mm **No. 728843**


 **PRO-PM/special grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
30 mm 485 mm **No. 701954**


## Bowl Gouges




 **CROWN® HEAVY-DUTY BOWL GOUGES**  
Primarily for large-scale facework. Made of round stock with milled, deep flutes. **Vide** 

 **HSS/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
9 mm 610 mm **No. 729611**  
13 mm 610 mm **No. 729612**  
16 mm 610 mm **No. 729613**

 **HSS-Cryo/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
9 mm 610 mm **No. 701909**  
13 mm 610 mm **No. 701910**  
16 mm 610 mm **No. 701911**  
16 mm 610 mm **No. 701912**

 **M42-HSS-Cryo/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
9 mm 610 mm **No. 728844**  
13 mm 610 mm **No. 728845**  
16 mm 610 mm **No. 728846**

 **PRO-PM/fingernail grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width Overall length  
13 mm 485 mm **No. 728847**  
13 mm 475 mm **No. 701811**  
13 mm 665 mm **No. 701975**  
16 mm 665 mm **No. 701976**  
18 mm 665 mm **No. 701160**  
23 mm 665 mm **No. 701812**

## Forged/milled gouges

Forged gouges have a longer service life compared to milled gouges. Forging makes the microstructure of the steel additionally denser and thus even more wear resistant. Gouges milled from raw material are merely hardened.



## ► SPINDLE TURNING



The wood fibres run parallel to the spindle axis.

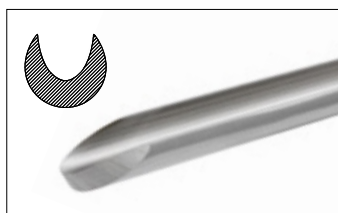
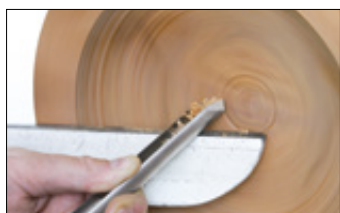
Examples: chair legs, newels, tool handles, vases, tumblers...

## TOOLS FOR SPINDLE TURNING:

- **Roughing-out gouges** are usually required to make edged workpieces round or to remove bulk material.
- **Spindle gouges** are all-purpose tools for cutting profiles, recesses, fillets, V-slots and curvatures, which can also give a high surface quality.
- **Detail gouges** have a less-deep flute in contrast to spindle gouges and therefore more material under the cutting edge. This means you can safely create a second bevel, allowing you to also reach into very narrow recesses.
- **Parting tools** are used for cutting off (parting) finished work. Primary uses also include working on or backcutting end grain in spindle turning, and cutting grooves.
- **Hollowing tools** mostly are cranked and thus suitable for hollowing end grain in vessels with narrow openings.
- **Hook tools** are versatile tools for hollowing out workpieces. Thanks to the complex blade geometry, it is equally suitable for bulk wood removal and finishing end grain.

- **Chisels** are proper for smoothing straight, curved, hollow and slightly profiled surfaces and for cutting narrow profiles and notches.
- **Ring tools** are used for cutting endgrain on tumblers and vases. If used correctly, you can achieve fine surfaces with it.

## Bowl Gouges



**CROWN® ELLSWORTH GOUGE**  
Designed by master woodturner David Ellsworth, these versatile bowl gouges are for rough and finish shaping of the inside and outside of hollow forms.

**HSS/Ellsworth special grind**  
Blade width 16 mm Overall length 690 mm **No. 729614**

**PRO-PM/Ellsworth special grind**  
Blade width 16 mm Overall length 665 mm **No. 701955**

Video

## Scrapers



**CROWN® DOVETAIL SCRAPER**  
For cutting the recess to accommodate the jaws of a dovetail chuck.

**HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width 13 mm Overall length 340 mm **No. 729633**

**M42-HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width 19 mm Overall length 380 mm **No. 728852**



**CROWN® SIDE CUTTING SCRAPER, ROUND**  
For finishing the bottoms and inner surfaces of hollow forms and for undercutting.

**HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width 19 mm Overall length 380 mm **No. 729617**

**HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width 19 mm Overall length 380 mm **No. 701159**



**CROWN® HOOK NOSE SCRAPER**  
Also suitable for finishing undercuts.

**HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)**  
Blade width 25 mm Overall length 500 mm **No. 729618**

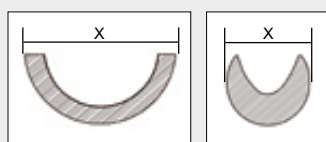
**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**

**Two free sharpenings**

▶ Application videos on the different types of gouges and cutting techniques available at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Blade width measuring

We always state the outer diameter of the tools.



## Crown® single chisels - available versions:



**Handle:** oiled ash  
**Blade:** HSS, ready-to-use bevel

(Further information on page 183)



**Handle:** black stained ash  
**Blade:** cryogenically hardened HSS, ready-to-use bevel



**Handle:** black stained ash  
**Blade:** cryogenically hardened M42 HSS, ready-to-use bevel



**Handle:** black stained ash  
**Blade:** PRO-PM (sintered steel), ready-to-use bevel



**Handle:** stained beech  
**Blade:** HSS, factory ground bevel (available online)

## Scrapers



**CROWN® BOWL FINISHING SCRAPER, ROUND**  
Heavy-duty scraper for finishing the inside of large hollow forms.



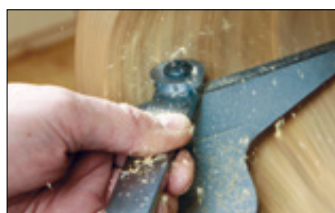
*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 25 mm Overall length 550 mm **No. 729619**



*M42-HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 25 mm Overall length 550 mm **No. 701205**



**CROWN® MULTI-TIP SCRAPER**  
Versatile tools for finishing the inner and outer surfaces of any shape. With three exchangeable, taper-ground M2-HSS cutters: round, pear-shaped and square.



Blade width 27 mm Overall length 380 mm **No. 729620**

Replacement Cutter

Round   
Pear-shaped   
Square

**No. 701945**  
**No. 701946**  
**No. 701944**

## Cryogenic (cryo) scrapers

Normally, scrapers cut via a burr on the cutting edge. This burr can be created in a similar way to the burr on a scraper blade, but it usually forms naturally during sharpening. Cryogenic turning tools have the advantage that they do not often form burrs, which is desired on gouges, chisels and parting tools. The burr on cryogenic scrapers has to be created in a second work step. However, due to this controlled formation and the fine cutting edge (cryogenic treatment) the burr is very even. Since most turners do not like the additional work step, we only offer the cryogenic version scraper on special order. For special orders please contact our customer service. Phone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902.



## Parting Tools



**CROWN® DIAMOND PARTING TOOLS**  
Double bevel, taper-ground, »English-style«.



*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 5 mm Overall length 400 mm **No. 729623**



*HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 5 mm Overall length 438 mm **No. 701928**



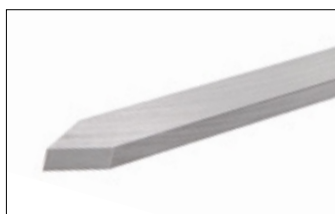
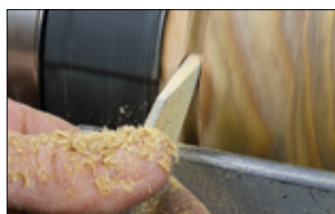
*M42-HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 5 mm Overall length 438 mm **No. 728848**



*PRO-PM/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 5 mm Overall length 490 mm **No. 701813**



**CROWN® TRIANGULAR PARTING TOOLS**  
Double bevel.



*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 3 mm Overall length 365 mm **No. 729624**  
Blade width 6 mm Overall length 380 mm **No. 729625**



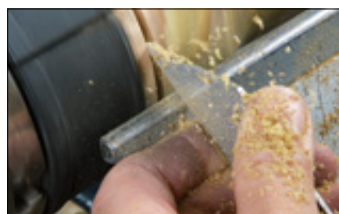
*HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 3 mm Overall length 403 mm **No. 701926**  
Blade width 6 mm Overall length 418 mm **No. 701927**



*M42-HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 6 mm Overall length 418 mm **No. 728849**



**A CROWN® PARTING TOOLS, KNIFE-SHAPED**  
Thin, very rigid blade for making fine grooves and parting cuts. Height 30 mm.



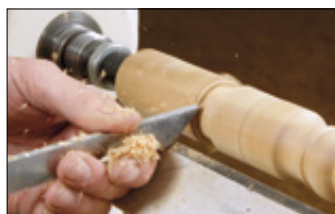
*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 1.6 mm Overall length 210 mm **No. 729621**



*HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 1.6 mm Overall length 210 mm **No. 728885**



**CROWN® »EUROPEAN-STYLE« PARTING TOOLS**  
Single bevel.



*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

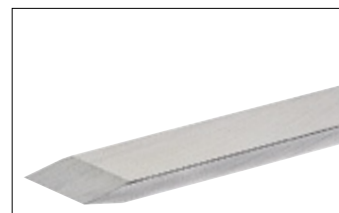
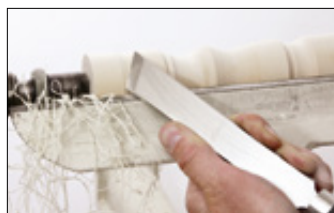
Blade width 6.5 mm Overall length 400 mm **No. 729622**



*HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width 6.5 mm Overall length 438 mm **No. 701929**

## Chisels



**CROWN® ROUND CHISELS**  
The rounded support edge facilitates finer movements and prevents the cutting edge from becoming embedded.



*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
19 mm 418 mm **No. 729629**



*HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
19 mm 380 mm **No. 701987**



*M42-HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
19 mm 380 mm **No. 728850**



*PRO-PM/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
19 mm 485 mm **No. 728851**



**CROWN® OVAL SKEW CHISELS**  
For spindle turning and facework. Specially designed to reduce friction between the blade and tool rest to allow them to be easier to guide than chisels made of rectangular stock. Skew edged, double bevel.



*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
19 mm 380 mm **No. 729630**  
25 mm 380 mm **No. 729631**



*HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
19 mm 380 mm **No. 701917**  
25 mm 380 mm **No. 701918**



**CROWN® SKEW CHISELS**  
Standard tool for smoothing both flat and curved surfaces. Skew edged, double bevel.



*HSS/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
13 mm 380 mm **No. 729626**  
19 mm 380 mm **No. 729627**  
25 mm 380 mm **No. 729628**



*HSS-Cryo/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
13 mm 418 mm **No. 701914**  
19 mm 418 mm **No. 701915**  
25 mm 418 mm **No. 701916**



*M42-HSS-Cryo/Fingernail Ground Joint (ready for use)*

Blade width Overall length  
19 mm 418 mm **No. 701157**



*PRO-PM/factory grind (ready-to-use)*

Blade width Overall length  
13 mm 485 mm **No. 701814**  
19 mm 485 mm **No. 701977**  
25 mm 485 mm **No. 701815**

## WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

## GREEN WOOD TURNING

Free-hand forming of exquisitely fine objects from green wood by using a spindle gouge is the highest achievement in the craft of wood turning.



## Content:

- Introduction to the basics of green wood turning
- Design of the workpiece and selection of the tools
- Cutting and clamping techniques
- Sharpening of turning tools
- Turning the workpiece under professional guidance
- Special techniques like bowl-in-bowl turning
- Finishing and proper drying

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



For sharpening instructions for tools and knives, see our Sharpening Primer, which is available free of charge at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

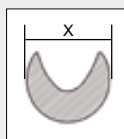
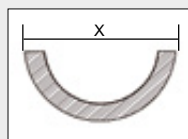
**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings

## Blade width measuring

We always state the outer diameter of the tools.



## Crown® single chisels - available versions:



**Handle:** oiled ash  
**Blade:** HSS, ready-to-use bevel

(Further information on page 183)



**Handle:** black stained ash  
**Blade:** cryogenically hardened HSS, ready-to-use bevel



**Handle:** black stained ash  
**Blade:** cryogenically hardened M42 HSS, ready-to-use bevel



**Handle:** black stained ash  
**Blade:** PRO-PM (sintered steel), ready-to-use bevel



**Handle:** stained beech  
**Blade:** HSS, factory ground bevel (available online)





**A** CROWN® MINI TURNING TOOLS, 5-PIECE SET  
Two »English-style« spindle gouges, 3 and 6 mm; skew chisel, 6 mm; round nose scraper, 6 mm; parting tool, double bevel, 2.3 mm. In wooden case.

*HSS/factory grind*

Overall length 260 mm  
Handle length 160 mm  
**No. 729635**

**B** CROWN® PEN TURNING TOOLS, 3-PIECE SET  
M2-HSS tools for pen turning. Gouge 9 mm; oval skew chisel 13 mm; parting tool 3 mm.

*HSS/factory grind*

Overall length 230 mm  
Handle length 140 mm  
**No. 729636**



**D** CROWN® TURNING TOOLS, 4-PIECE SET *Price advantage*  
Basic turning tool set for beginners:  
Roughing-out gouge, 30 mm; flat chisel, 13 mm; »English-style« spindle gouge, 9 mm; triangular parting tool, 6 mm.

1 *HSS/factory grind*

Overall length 390 mm  
Handle length 220 mm  
**No. 728884**

2 *HSS-Cryo/factory grind*

Overall length 428 mm  
Handle length 254 mm  
**No. 701807**



**C** CROWN® TURNING TOOLS, 5-PIECE SET *Price advantage*  
Roughing-out gouge, 30 mm; heavy-duty bowl gouge, 13 mm; »English-style« spindle gouge, 10 mm; diamond parting tool, 5 mm; skew chisel, 19 mm.

1 *M42 HSS-Cryo/factory grind*

Overall length 420 mm  
Handle length 254 mm  
**No. 728853**

2 *PRO-PM/factory grind*

Overall length 490 mm  
Handle length 320 mm  
**No. 701980**



**E** CROWN® STANDARD TURNING TOOLS, 8-PIECE SET *Price advantage*  
Roughing-out gouge, 30 mm; two »English-style« spindle gouges, 6 mm and 12 mm; »European-style« spindle gouge, 18 mm; skew chisel, 13 mm; oval skew chisel, 25 mm; triangular parting tool, 3 mm; diamond parting tool, 5 mm. In wooden case.

1 *HSS/factory grind*

Overall length 390 mm  
Handle length 220 mm  
**No. 729634**

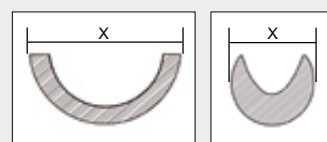
2 *HSS-Cryo/factory grind*

Overall length 428 mm  
Handle length 254 mm  
**No. 701994**



### Blade width measuring

We always state the outer diameter of the tools.





## Crown® Tungsten Extreme Carbide Tools

The replaceable cutters with a hardness of 93 HRC and a careful and elaborate cutting geometry offer a simple, reliable, and effective option for turning. The sharp cutters with a long service life are rotated until all edges are blunt. Once all cutting edges are used up, the carbide cutter is replaced. Black stained ash handle with Tungsten Extreme logo.

**Comes with German and English instructions**



A smaller version of Crown® Tungsten Extreme Cutter Tools for pen turning is available in our Woodturning Catalogue or at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

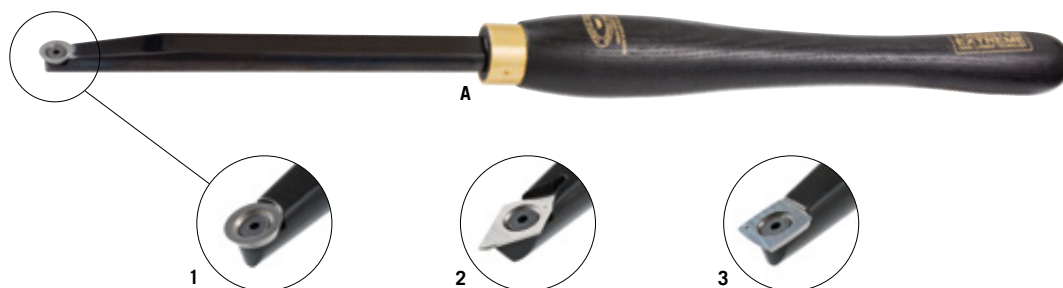
### A CROWN® TUNGSTEN EXTREME CARBIDE TOOLS

These tools make it possible to perform the work that is traditionally done by means of a roughing-out gouge, spindle gouge, chisel, bowl gouge and scraper. Easy-to-handle, lightweight yet very robust tool for removing large quantities of material from deep hollow bodies. The structure of the rectangular shaft provides maximum torsional and vibration resistance with a shaft that is as thin as possible. The contact surfaces are rounded, allowing the tool to be used in the same manner as a round section shank.

Shaft diameter 19 x 13 mm  
Overall length 530 mm

#### Advantages:

- Reduces kick-back significantly
- No complex cutting angles needed - use the scraper flat on the tool rest
- Suitable for both spindle and faceplate work
- No resharpening required - worn carbide edges are simply rotated



#### 1 Round-shaped

Round shape for fine internal and external bowl turning.

Blade diameter 15 mm

**No. 720887**

Replacement Cutter

**No. 720891**

#### 2 Diamond Shape

Diamond shape for turning fine and tight contours, undercuts, delicate notches, and concave and pointed fillets.

Blade width 15 x 30 mm

**No. 720889**

Replacement Cutter

**No. 720893**

#### 3 Rounded Square-shaped

Rounded square shape for coarse material removal when working on the outside of bowls and spindle turning.

Blade width 15 x 15 mm

**No. 720888**

Replacement Cutter

**No. 720892**

## Hattori® Turning Tool Sets

Cost-effective, robust turning tools made of heat resistant HSS steel (63 HRC). Ergonomically formed hardwood handles, finely polished surfaces, no sharp edges, and generously proportioned brass hoops. Each set is supplied in a wooden case. The listed specifications are approximate.



### B HATTORI® HSS TURNING TOOLS, MINI, 5-PIECE SET

For small scale spindle and faceplate turning. Gouges, 3 and 6 mm; round nose scraper, 6 mm; skew scraper, 6 mm; standard parting tool, triangular, 2 x 6 mm.

Overall length 260 mm  
Handle length 155 mm

**No. 701853**



### C HATTORI® HSS TURNING TOOLS, MIDI, 8-PIECE SET

Versatile set of compact gouges for spindle turning and small scale faceplate turning. Roughing-out gouge, 19 mm; 2 gouges, 10 mm; spindle/bowl gouge; oval chisel, 13 mm; scraper, 13 mm; round nose scraper, 13 mm; standard parting tool, triangular, 4 x 13 mm; diamond parting tool, 4 mm.

Overall length 290 mm  
Handle length 195 mm

**No. 701851**



### D HATTORI® HSS TURNING TOOLS, MAXI, 6-PIECE SET

The basic assortment of tools for spindle and faceplate turning. Roughing-out gouge, 22 mm; gouges, 10 and 13 mm; oval chisel, 25 mm; round nose scraper, 19 mm; diamond parting tool, width 5 mm.

Overall length 470 mm  
Handle length 300 mm

**No. 701850**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings

## Hollowing Tools

### Crown® Hollowing Tools

The tools forged by Crown are designed for various hollowing tasks and offer an excellent price/performance ratio. The blades are made of carefully tempered, extremely durable M2-HSS.

#### A CROWN® REVOLUTION

For specialised use in cutting along and across the grain. The fully depth-adjustable head (Super Ring) enables this tool to be used securely in extremely undercut hollow forms such as vases and other deep vessels, even when it is difficult to see. The tool is also suitable for discontinuous cuts and burl wood. The depth of the cut can be set individually. Thanks to the modular articulated design, the tool can be optimally adjusted to the workpiece. The pleasantly soft, foam-cushioned main grip, along with a small brass side handle providing additional control. Vibration absorbing 16 mm shaft. The set also contains five different cutters for finishing surfaces. All cutters are made of cryogenically hardened M2-HSS.



Comes with German and English instructions

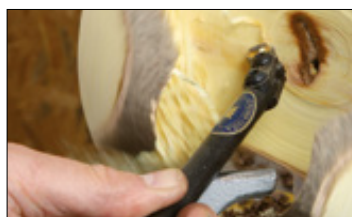
Includes:

- Main handle
- Side handle
- Articulated shaft and fully depth-adjustable head (Super Ring)
- Replacement ring tip
- Collet
- Key cutter
- Fat key cutter
- Heart scraper
- Egg scraper

Shaft length 340 mm  
Shaft diameter 16 mm  
Handle length 455 mm  
**No. 702060**

A

Vibration  
absorbing  
16 mm shaft



**B CROWN® FAT KEY CUTTER**  
Compatible with the Crown Cryo Turning Tool or Crown (Mini) Revolution. Cryogenically hardened M2-HSS.

**1 Fat Key Cutter**  
Blade width 9 mm  
**No. 702069**

**2 Key Cutter**  
Blade width 5 mm  
**No. 702068**

**3 Egg Scraper**  
Blade width 13 mm  
**No. 702067**

**4 Heart Scraper**  
Blade width 19 mm  
**No. 702066**



#### C CROWN® NEGATIVE RAKE SCRAPING TIP

For smooth finishing of both inside and outside surfaces of a workpiece. The negative rake setting prevents the blade from catching in the workpiece. Compatible with the Crown Cryo Turning Tool or Crown (Mini) Revolution. Cryogenically hardened M2-HSS. Blade width 28 mm  
**No. 702061**



#### D CROWN® PROBE

Ideal for hollowing out deep vessels made of very hard woods and for delicate cuts. Compatible with the Crown Cryo Turning Tool or Crown (Mini/Midi) Revolution. Cryogenically hardened M2-HSS. Blade width 3.5 mm  
**No. 702064**  
Replacement Probes, 2-Piece Set  
**No. 702059**



**E CROWN® SHARPENING STICK FOR CUTTERS**  
This long brass sharpening stick will hold two cutters securely during the sharpening process.  
Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 702062**

### Cryogenically hardened steel

A super-cold treatment at -185 °C after hardening gives the steel an even finer structure and vastly improves edge retention.



G

#### G CROWN® MIDI REVOLUTION

The larger version of the Crown Mini Revolution. Impressively versatile tool for cuts along and across the grain. All cutters are made of cryogenically hardened M2-HSS. Stained ash handle.

Comes with German and English instructions

Includes:  
Handle with articulated shaft and fully depth-adjustable head (Super Ring), egg scraper.

Shaft diameter 16 mm  
Blade diameter 13.5 mm  
Overall length 570 mm  
**No. 702169**

#### F CROWN® MINI REVOLUTION

This compact version of the original Crown Revolution is an impressively versatile tool for cuts along and across the grain and offers an excellent price/performance ratio. Thanks to the fully depth-adjustable head (Super Ring), the tool can be used with confidence in small undercut hollow forms such as vases and other deep vessels, even when it is difficult to see. It is also suitable for discontinuous cuts and burl wood. The depth of the cut can be set individually. With its modular articulated design, the tool can be optimally adjusted to the workpiece.

All cutters are made of cryogenically hardened M2-HSS. Stained ash handle.

Comes with German and English instructions

Includes:  
Handle with articulated shaft and fully depth-adjustable head (Super Ring), egg scraper.

Shaft diameter 13 mm  
Blade diameter 13.5 mm  
Overall length 435 mm  
**No. 702120**



**H CROWN® REVOLUTION CARBIDE CUTTER ATTACHMENT**  
This carbide cutting attachment can be mounted onto the Crown Revolution (Mini/Midi), allowing the Crown Revolution to be also used with replaceable carbide cutters.  
Blade diameter 8 mm

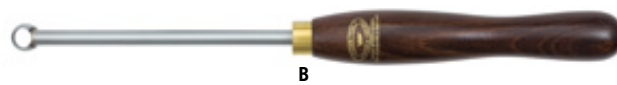
**No. 702211**  
Replacement Cutter  
**No. 702210**



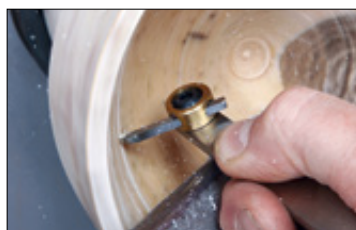




A



B



**A CROWN® CRYO HOLLOWING TOOL**  
Hollowing tool for fine finishing. The probe is well-suited for hard woods, for cutting grooves and sharp undercuts as well as making delicate cuts, while the included scrapers are used for finishing already cut surfaces. All cutters are made of cryogenically hardened M2-HSS. Set includes: Handle, probe with collet (blade width 3.5 mm), heart scraper, egg scraper, replacement probe.

Stained ash handle.  
Handle length 255 mm  
Overall length 440 mm  
**No. 702049**  
Replacement Probes, 2-Piece Set  
**No. 702059**



**B CROWN® RING TOOL**  
Ideal tool for hollowing into end grain on thin-walled wet-wood objects such as cups and vases. Thin double-bevelled M2-HSS ring, designed for light-duty use. Stained beech handle. Overall length 400 mm  
Blade diameter 12 mm **No. 701931**



## Crown® Tungsten Extreme Hollowing Tools

The hollowing tools from Crown are specially designed for hollowing out vessels. The carbide cutter ensures safe and clean working, even with poor visibility in hollow bodies. The replaceable cutters with a hardness of 93 HRC as well as a careful and elaborate cutting geometry offer a simple, reliable, and effective option for turning. The sharp cutters with a long service life are rotated until all edges are blunt. Once all cutting edges are used up, the carbide cutter is replaced. Black stained ash handle with Tungsten Extreme logo.

**Comes with German and English instructions**



C

### C CROWN® TUNGSTEN EXTREME HOLLOWING TOOLS

The hollowing tools from Crown are specially designed for hollowing out vessels. The carbide cutter ensures safe and clean working, even with poor visibility in hollow bodies.

#### Advantages:

- Safe guidance - ideal for woodturning beginners
- No adjustment of the cutting depth necessary, unlike with many conventional hollowing tools
- No resharpener required - worn carbide edges are simply rotated

Shaft diameter 13 mm  
Blade diameter 8 mm  
Overall length 540 mm

#### 1 Straight

For turning hollow shapes.

**No. 720825**

Replacement Cutter  
**No. 702210**

#### 2 Cranked

Gooseneck, for turning undercuts on hollow shapes.

**No. 720824**

Replacement Cutter  
**No. 702210**

#### 3 Articulated Head

With its modular articulated design, the tool can be optimally adjusted to the workpiece.

**No. 720826**

Replacement Cutter  
**No. 702210**

1

2

3



► For a wide range of woodturning and pen turning kits see our Woodturning Catalogue or our online shop.

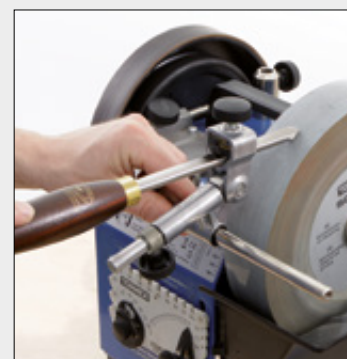
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## WORKSHOP

### SHARPENING FOR WOODTURNERS

Sharpening is an important component of successful turning. The right cutting angle and the ideal grind contribute in no small way to a clean surface.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



## Henry Taylor® Hollowing Tools

Distributed under the brand name Hamlet Craft Tools, Henry Taylor manufactures high-quality products providing an attractive price/performance ratio. Professionals especially appreciate the hollowing tools, which rank among the best on the market. The blades are made of durable M2-HSS.



### A HAMLET CRAFT TOOLS BROTHER SYSTEM 2

Compact design for use in spindle and faceplate work. Simple adjustment of the shaft and fast, effective hollowing. The new blade design with full depth adjustment allows you to set the depth of the cut individually. This ensures safe cutting even in undercut hollow forms and burl wood. The rubberised tool handle with metal core provides a non-slip grip and reduces vibrations thanks to its heavy weight. 16 mm vibration absorbing shaft. Inside thread for inserting an additional side handle. Comes with DVD »How to sharpen, set and cut« by Tracy Owen. Made by Henry Taylor Tools. Shaft length 345 mm. Shaft diameter 16 mm. Handle length 465 mm. **No. 702118**



### B HAMLET CRAFT TOOLS LITTLE SISTER

This compact version of the Brother System 2 offers good value for money and can be used for cutting both along and across the grain. The new blade design with full depth adjustment allows you to set the depth of the cut individually and so ensures safe cutting even when hollowing vases and other undercut hollow forms. The tool is also suitable for discontinuous cuts and burl wood. The small swivel tip and conical shaft allow optimum adjustment to the workpiece and hollowing through 13 mm openings with ease. Dark stained handle of English hardwood. Comes with DVD »How to sharpen, set and cut« by Tracy Owen. Made by Henry Taylor Tools. Blade diameter 10 mm. Shaft diameter 13 mm. Overall length 475 mm. **No. 702119**

## Easy Wood Tools™ Hollowing Tools

The hollowing tools from Easy Wood Tools allow a controlled guiding for woodturning novices as well as professionals and require neither adjustment of the cutting depth nor sharpening.

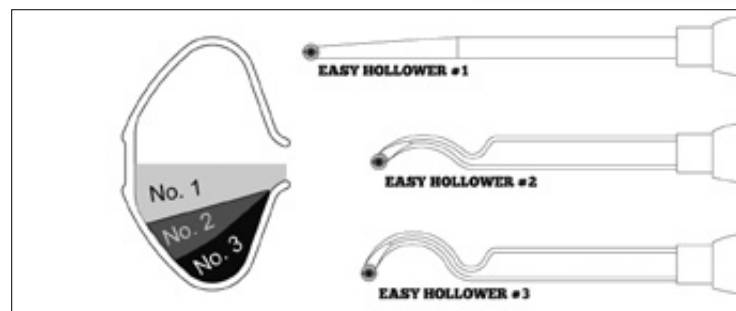


For undercutting hollow forms. Available in three shapes, depending on the difficulty of the undercut: straight, slightly curved or with a true curve. The replaceable carbide cutters with 93 HRC and meticulously designed blade geometry open up a simple, safe and effective way of turning, unequalled by any other turning tool. The ultra-sharp blades with an extra-long edge life are rotated until all edges are dull. Once all edges are used up, the carbide cutter is replaced. Overall length 570 mm. Blade diameter 9 mm.

**1 No. 1, Straight**  
**No. 702325**  
Replacement Cutter  
**No. 702328**

**2 No. 2, Slightly Curved**  
**No. 702326**  
Replacement Cutter  
**No. 702328**

**3 No. 3, True Curve**  
**No. 702327**  
Replacement Cutter  
**No. 702328**





# RASPS. FILES.

Handmade quality!

**Hand-cut Rasps | 194**

**Machine-cut Rasps | 196**

**Dreadnought Rasps, Plane and Saw Rasps | 197**

**Files for Wood and Wood-based Materials | 198**

**Files for Metal and Wood | 199**

**Files for Knife Makers | 201**

**Diamond Files | 203**

**File Accessories | 203**

**Sets and Handles | 203**



## Hand-cut Rasps

Cut by masters, cherished by experts: until the early 20th century, the teeth of rasps were cut exclusively by hand (using a special pointed punch and hammer) into the body of the rasp before it was hardened. Due to the slightly varying depths and distances of the individual teeth, the work face is slightly inhomogeneous in texture. This leads to a smoother cutting performance on fibrous material such as wood (no »chattering«). For this reason, professionals still prefer hand-cut rasps even today.



### *Herdim* Herdim® Precision Rasps

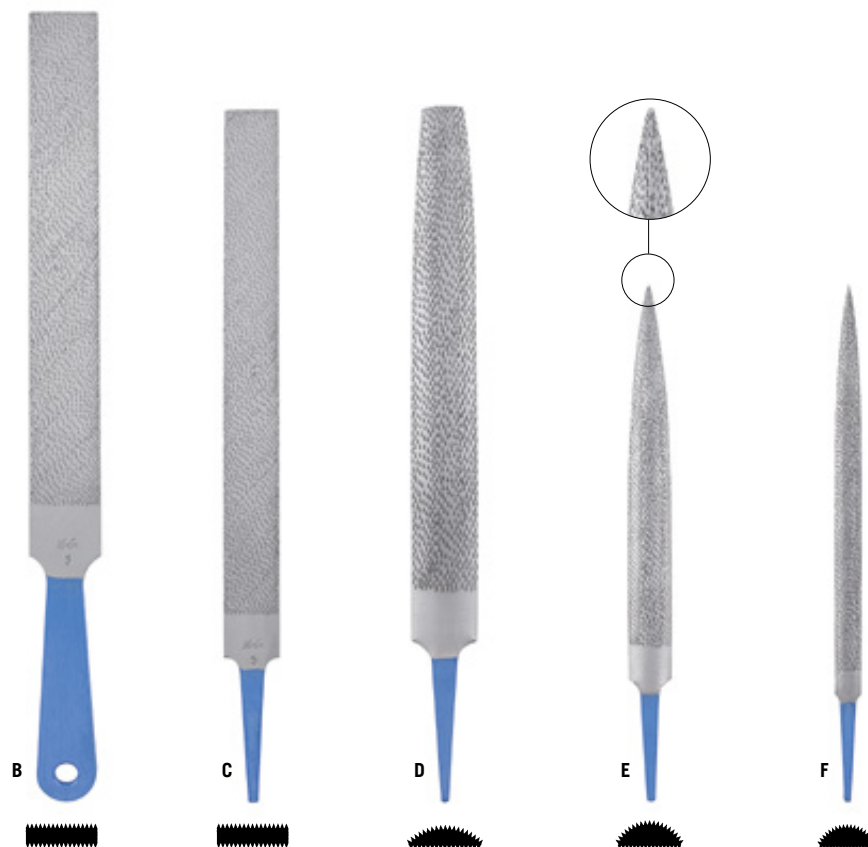
Herdim rasps are hand-cut rasps which are manufactured in countless worksteps by the »last of their craft«. The smoothing and shaping of the blank, cutting of the teeth, meticulous hardening, annealing and trueing are typical manufacturing steps of the handmade rasp. Up to 10 000 teeth, each one raised individually with a hammer and special pointed punch, ensure smooth results without becoming clogged. Made of hardened carbon steel, the rasps are highly durable. The tangs are annealed.



#### **A** HERDIM® PRECISION RASP, CABINET, WITH BIRCH BARK HANDLE

Multi-purpose precision cabinet rasp (No. 704722) with a fine cut. Comes with fitted birch bark handle. Birch bark is naturally anti-fungal and anti-bacterial, water-repellent, highly moisture-resistant and slip-proof even when wet. The handle provides a good grip even in perspiring hands. Comes in cotton pouch. Cut 5, cut length 200 mm

**No. 704728**



#### **B** HERDIM® PRECISION RASPS, FLAT, WITH HANDLE TANG

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	
3	25 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704505</b>
4	25 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704506</b>
5	25 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704507</b>

#### **C** HERDIM® PRECISION RASPS, FLAT

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	
5	10 x 4 mm	125 mm	<b>No. 704502</b>
5	16 x 4 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 704704</b>
5	20 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704707</b>

#### HERDIM® PRECISION RASP, FLAT, »ULTRA« Up to 10 000 teeth.

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	
10	20 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704709</b>

#### **D** HERDIM® PRECISION RASPS, CABINET

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	
3	27 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704720</b>
4	27 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704721</b>
4	30 x 6 mm	250 mm	<b>No. 704727</b>
5	17 x 4 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 704716</b>
5	24 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704722</b>

#### HERDIM® PRECISION RASP, CABINET, »ULTRA« Up to 10 000 teeth.

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	
10	24 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704724</b>

#### **E** HERDIM® PRECISION RASPS, HALF-ROUND

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	
3	20 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704755</b>
5	16 x 6 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 704732</b>
5	20 x 6 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 704733</b>

#### **F** HERDIM® PRECISION RASPS, HALF-ROUND, SLIM

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	
3	10 x 4 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 704757</b>
5	10 x 4 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 704741</b>





**A HERDIM® RIFFLERS, 8-PIECE SET**  
Crafted and hardened with great care by master craftspeople. For shaping convex and concave surfaces. The teeth are cut on both sides, the ends bent in opposite directions. Square mid-section. Comes in a leather roll.  
Flat, warding, trapezoid, square, three-square, half-round, crossing, round.  
Cut 4  
Cut length 55 mm  
Overall length 185 mm  
**No. 704599**



#### Tips for care:

- When storing, avoid contact with other rasps and metal tools
- Do not hang on magnetic bars
- Store individually in a wooden rack
- If possible, wear thin cotton gloves when working, as the teeth edges corrode when they come in contact with sweat from your hands
- Clean rasps with a brass brush ► No. 705091, page 203
- Remove residual resin by dipping the rasp in turpentine oil ► No. 705288, page 281

## Hattori® Rasps

Our portfolio of Hattori rasps, which are cut in small batches by hand, is unique throughout Europe. Due to their special shape, they can be used universally and offer a good price/performance ratio. The staggered arrangement of the teeth makes these rasps incredibly effective and provides smooth results. Blades made of C45 carbon steel.



**B HATTORI® FLAT RASP, EXTRA WIDE**  
Cut 4  
Cross-section 40 x 4 mm  
Cut length 240 mm  
**No. 704682**

**C HATTORI® SHOEMAKER'S RASP, 4 VARIATIONS**  
Half-round, flat, each with a coarse rasp and file cut. For leather and wood.  
Cross-section 23 x 5 mm  
Cut length 90 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 704688**

**D HATTORI® RASP, FLAT, WITH HANDLE TANG**  
Cut Cross-section Cut length  
3 24 x 4 mm 200 mm **No. 704571**

**E HATTORI® RASP, FLAT**  
Cut Cross-section Cut length  
4/6 20 x 4 mm 210 mm **No. 704671**  
7 10 x 3 mm 120 mm **No. 704670**

**F HATTORI® RASP, CABINET SPECIAL**  
Extra long, very thin cabinet rasp with a fine cut.  
Cut Cross-section Cut length  
4 30 x 4 mm 350 mm **No. 704679**

**G HATTORI® RASP, CABINET**  
Cut Cross-section Cut length  
3 25 x 5 mm 200 mm **No. 704572**  
4 25 x 5 mm 210 mm **No. 704672**

**H HATTORI® RASP, CROSSING**  
Cut Cross-section Cut length  
5 15 x 3.5 mm 130 mm **No. 704674**  
5 25 x 4.5 mm 200 mm **No. 704675**  
7 10 x 3.5 mm 100 mm **No. 704673**

**I HATTORI® RASP, ROUND**  
Cut Ø Cut length  
2 8 mm 240 mm **No. 704678**  
3 6 mm 160 mm **No. 704574**

**J HATTORI® RASP, HALF-ROUND**  
Cut Cross-section Cut length  
6 15 x 4 mm 130 mm **No. 704677**  
7 8 x 2.5 mm 100 mm **No. 704676**



*small*  
Cut length 50 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 704680**

*medium*  
Cut length 50 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 704559**

*large*  
Cut length 70 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
**No. 704578**



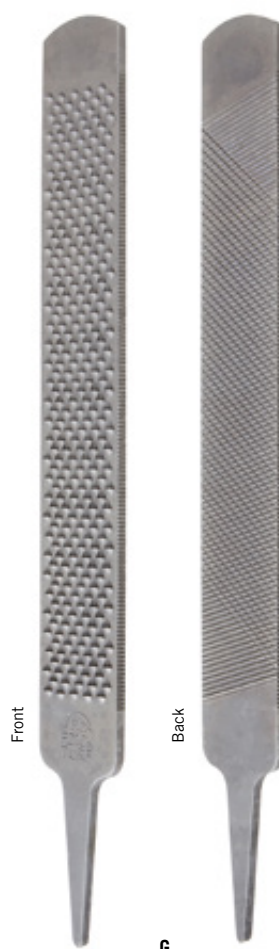
**1 Flat rasp**  
Cross-section 20 x 5 mm  
Cut length 200 mm  
**No. 704601**

**2 Half-round rasp**  
Cross-section 25 x 7 mm  
Cut length 250 mm  
**No. 704602**

**3 Cabinet rasp**  
Cross-section 24 x 5 mm  
Cut length 200 mm  
**No. 704603**

**4 Round rasp**  
Cross-section Ø 8 mm  
Cut length 180 mm  
**No. 715107**

## Machine-cut Rasps





# Dreadnought Rasps, Plane and Saw Rasps



## Microplane® Rasps

Unbeatable removal of material thanks to hundreds of fine blades. In a patented chemical process, a grid of teeth is etched from the raw blade material. Unlike punched teeth, the teeth created in this process are burr-free and sharp. The stainless steel blades are hardened to 60 HRC for a long edge life.

### Use:

- Universal use for sculpting and cabinetmaking

### Advantages:

- Dust-free working
- Effective abrasion



**A MICROPLANE® SNAP-IN RASP, BASIC SET**  
Snap-in handle with replaceable blades for use on the push or pull stroke. Includes two flat blades, coarse and fine. Cross-section 26 x 9 mm. Cut length 200 mm. Overall length 380 mm.  
**No. 704203**

**B MICROPLANE® SNAP-IN RASP SET WITH COARSE BLADE**  
Snap-in handle with replaceable blade, which can be used to work on the pull or push stroke. Coarse blade insert included. Cross-section 26 x 9 mm. Cut length 200 mm. Overall length 380 mm.  
**No. 702483**

**C MICROPLANE® PLANE RASP, ROUND, LARGE**  
Coarse teeth. Ø 16 mm. Cut length 200 mm. Overall length 325 mm.  
**No. 704200**

**D MICROPLANE® SNAP-IN HANDLE**  
Snap-in handle for the use of Microplane snap-in blades No 704204, 704205, 704207, 702484. Overall length 380 mm.  
**No. 702482**

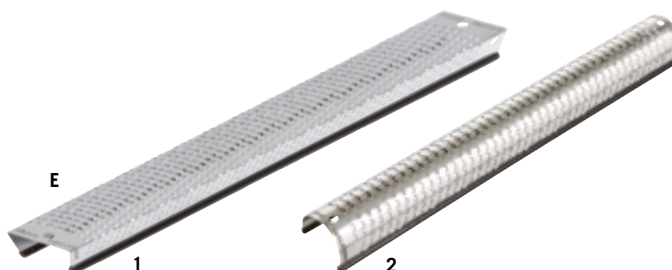
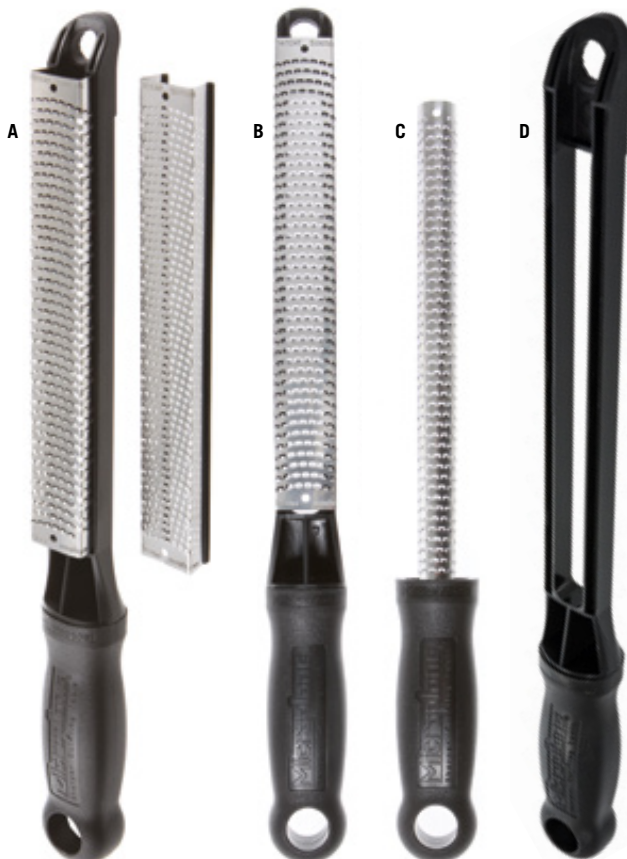
**E MICROPLANE® SNAP-IN BLADES**  
Fit snap-in handle No. 702482.

**1 flat - coarse**  
Cross-section 26 x 9 mm  
**No. 704207**

**flat - fine**  
Cross-section 26 x 9 mm  
**No. 704204**

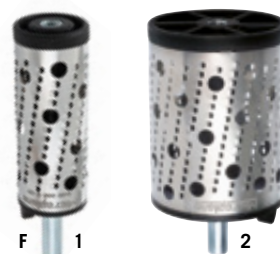
**2 round - coarse**  
Ø 25 mm  
**No. 704205**

**round - fine**  
Ø 25 mm  
**No. 702484**



**»Microplane rasps are ideal for making bows. They cut faster than any other rasp and leave a clean surface behind.«**

Michael Wolf, bow maker



**F MICROPLANE® ROTARY SHAPER**  
Shaping head for use in drills, aluminium body with cutter insert. Perfect for use with the Kirjes Sanding System. Shaft diameter 8 mm. Cutting length 50 mm. Shaft diameter 8 mm. Overall length 100 mm



**1 Rotary Shaper, Ø 25.5 mm**  
**No. 702480**  
Repl. Blade **No. 702481**

**2 Rotary Shaper, Ø 50 mm**  
**No. 704988**  
Repl. Blade **No. 704989**

## Kutzall® Rasp, Tungsten Carbide Tipped

These tungsten carbide tipped rasps with randomly arranged and densely distributed tips are ideal for producing fine surfaces.

Application video available at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Use:

- For processing wood, composite materials, fibreglass, plastics, solid rubber, foam core, polyurethane, silicone and soapstone

### Advantages:

- Extremely sharp tips
- Long service life

**G KUTZALL® RASP, TUNGSTEN CARBIDE TIPPED, FLAT**



**1 Flat, Original Fine**  
Approx. 130 tips per cm².  
Width Length Cut length  
15 mm 275 mm 150 mm **No. 704462**  
20 mm 325 mm 200 mm **No. 704464**



**Flat, Original Coarse**  
Approx. 50 tips per cm².  
Width Length Cut length  
15 mm 275 mm 150 mm **No. 704463**  
20 mm 325 mm 200 mm **No. 704465**



**Turbo Saw Rasps**  
rasps available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Superhard File Rasps

Robust rasps for working on hard materials. The sharp, curved blades remove material effectively and divert the chips towards the side. Hardened to over 60 HRC for extremely long edge lives.

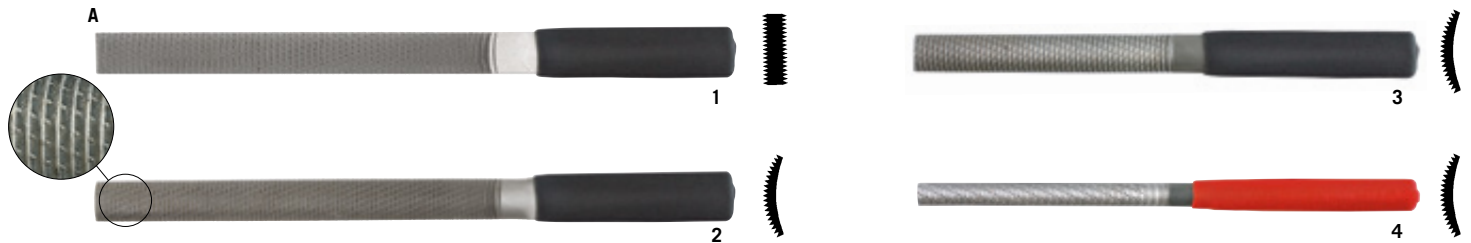
For more Superhard file rasps see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Use:

- Composites, synthetic materials
- Rough shaping in sculpting

### Advantages:

- Allow working on glued joints
- Effective abrasion



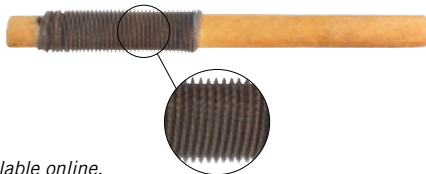
### A SUPERHARD FILE RASP

**1** Standard Version, Flat, Coarse/Medium  
Double-sided cut.  
Cut length 180 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
Width 19 mm  
**No. 718091**

**2** Standard Version, Half-Round, Medium  
Single-sided cut.  
Cut length 180 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
Width 19 mm  
**No. 718093**

**3** Compact Version, Half-Round, Medium  
Single-sided cut.  
Cut length 120 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
Width 16 mm  
**No. 711071**

**4** Compact Version, Half-Round, Ultrafine  
Single-sided cut.  
Cut length 110 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
Width 10 mm  
**No. 711074**



► Saw rasps available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

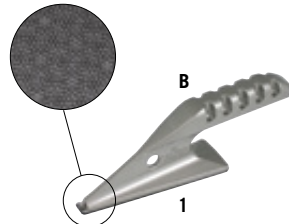


► For Arbortech TurboPlane™ Carving Blade, Auriou Rasp Blades and other tools for quick abrasion see chapter »Sculpting Tools«.



### B PRECISION HAND GRINDERS NT

Lasts 50 times longer than sandpaper: For fine work in making models and musical instruments, also suitable for deburring aluminium and plastic parts. Ideal for controlled removal of material in hard-to-reach areas, grinds in both directions. Sturdy die-cast aluminium handle, shoe with easy to remove and replaceable hardened steel grinding plate. Sand on a sample piece first. Surface of the sanding pad may leave black stains during first use (anti-corrosion coating). This is no sign of bad quality and only occurs during first contact with wood. Grit approx. 320.



**1** Sanding Shoe Triangular, Pointed  
Length 80 mm  
Width 7-28 mm  
**No. 705126**  
Replacement Grinding Plate  
**No. 705129**



**2** Sanding Shoe Rectangular, Slim  
Length 150 mm  
Width 24 mm  
**No. 705127**  
Replacement Grinding Plate  
**No. 705130**



**3** Sanding Shoe Rectangular, Broad  
Length 150 mm  
Width 50 mm  
**No. 705128**  
Replacement Grinding Plate  
**No. 705131**

## Files for Wood and Wood-based Materials



### C F.D.® WOOD FILES, CABINET

The classic file for cabinetmakers. Cut 1.

**1** Cut length 250 mm  
Cross-section 29 x 5.3 mm  
**No. 704430**

Cut length 300 mm  
Cross-section 35.5 x 6 mm  
**No. 704431**

### D F.D.® WOOD FILES, HALF-ROUND

Special knife cut for high efficiency. Cut 0.

**1** Cut length 200 mm  
Cross-section 21 x 6 mm  
**No. 704433**

Cut length 250 mm  
Cross-section 25 x 7 mm  
**No. 704432**



## Files for Metal and Wood

**Glardon/Vallorbe®**

The traditional Swiss company Glardon/Vallorbe makes top-quality precision files which meet the high quality standards of the watch industry. 200 years of experience come to the fore in excellent durability and sharpness. The files are designed for working steel, but they are equally suitable for fine working of wood, aluminium, brass and hard plastics. Hardened to 64-65 HRC.

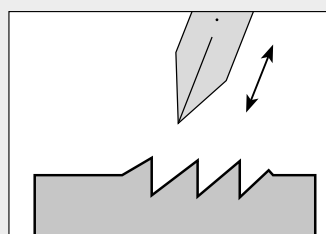
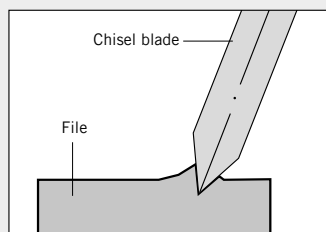
While the German system of cuts uses mainly cut 1 to 5, Glardon in Vallorbe produces a globally unique range of coarser cuts starting from »000«, which are especially popular for woodworking. The long-established Swiss company also manufactures files with extremely fine cuts beyond the familiar cut 5 - they go up to cut 8. »Glardon/Vallorbe« files are distinguished from other products by their regular tooth profile up to the edge, quality of hardness, long service life and meticulous workmanship. And all files have something else in common: they are manufactured in Switzerland, with unrivalled precision since 1899.

**The cut specifications for Glardon/Vallorbe files are in accordance with the Swiss norm**

Cut table	Cut	
		
extra-coarse (for wood)	000	1
very coarse (for wood)	00	1
coarse (for wood)	0	1
medium (for wood)	1	2
fine (for wood/metal)	2	3
very fine (for metal)	3	4
extremely fine (for metal)	4	5

**Creating a hewn file tooth**

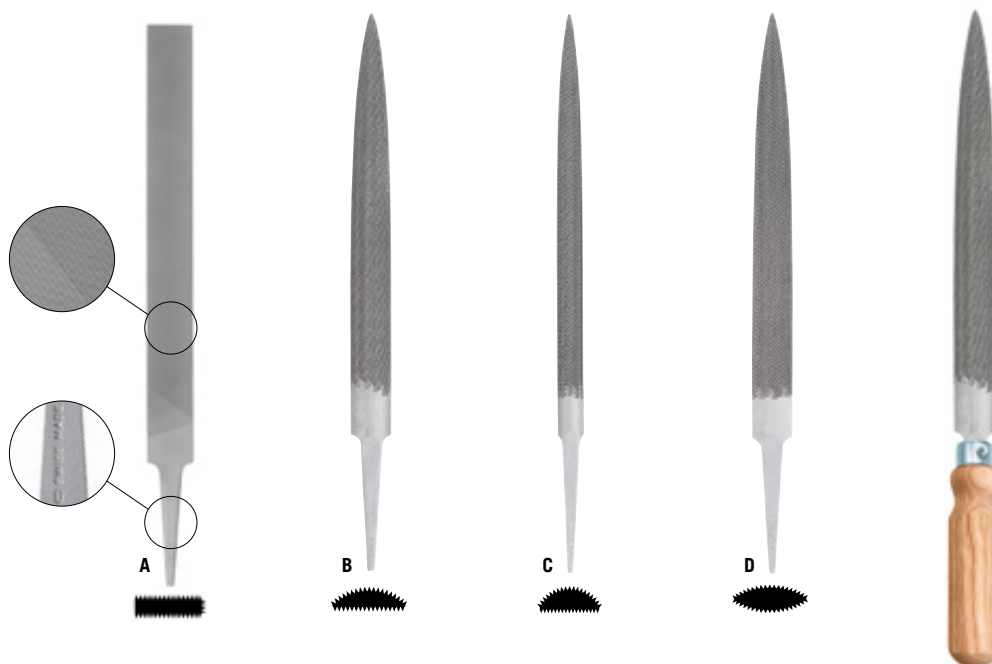
To create a single tooth, a wedge-shaped chisel blade cuts into the file body, raising a tooth profile by displacing the file material on both sides behind the chisel blade.



The raised profile and the depth and angle of the teeth depend on various factors, such as the impact, chisel angles and striking speed as well as the subsequent hardening process.



For more warding files and further file variations see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)


**A GLARDON/VALLORBE® FLAT FILES**

One narrow side cut. Double cut. Optionally with oiled and **mounted** octagonal ash handle (No. 701677 or 701627).

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	without handle	with handle
000	22 x 5.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705012	No. 708750
00	17 x 2.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705003	No. 708765
00	19 x 4.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705192	No. 708766
00	22 x 5.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705006	No. 708751
0	17 x 2.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705004	No. 708767
0	19 x 4.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705193	No. 708768
0	22 x 5.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705007	No. 708752
1	17 x 2.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705005	No. 708769
1	19 x 4.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705194	No. 708770
1	22 x 5.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705008	No. 708753
2	17 x 2.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705078	No. 708771
2	22 x 5.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705013	No. 708754
3	22 x 5.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705014	No. 708755
4	22 x 5.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705035	No. 708756

**B GLARDON/VALLORBE® HALF-ROUND FILES**

Double cut. Optionally with oiled and **mounted** octagonal ash handle (No. 701677 or 701627).

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	without handle	with handle
000	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705086	No. 708757
00	15 x 4.5 mm	150 mm	No. 705022	No. 708772
00	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705025	No. 708758
0	15 x 4.7 mm	150 mm	No. 705023	No. 708773
0	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705026	No. 708759
1	15 x 4.5 mm	150 mm	No. 705024	No. 708774
1	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705027	No. 708760
2	15 x 4.5 mm	150 mm	No. 705068	No. 708775
2	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705087	No. 708761

**C GLARDON/VALLORBE® HALF-ROUND FILES, SLIM**

Files for bow tips, violin f-holes. Double cut. Optionally with oiled and **mounted** octagonal ash handle (No. 701677 or 701627).

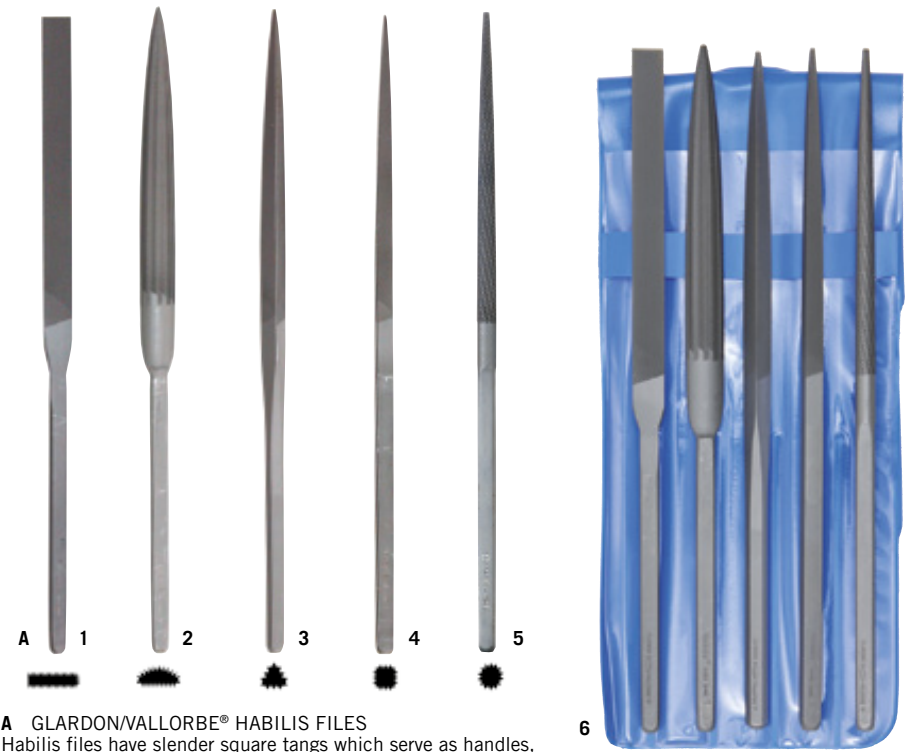
Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	without handle	with handle
0	10 x 3.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705028	No. 708778
2	10 x 3.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705029	No. 708779

**D GLARDON/VALLORBE® CROSSING FILES**

Double cut. Optionally with oiled and **mounted** octagonal ash handle (No. 701677 or 701627).

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	without handle	with handle
00	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705032	No. 708762
0	15 x 4.5 mm	150 mm	No. 705030	No. 708776
0	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705033	No. 708763
1	15 x 4.5 mm	150 mm	No. 705031	No. 708777
1	21 x 6.0 mm	200 mm	No. 705034	No. 708764





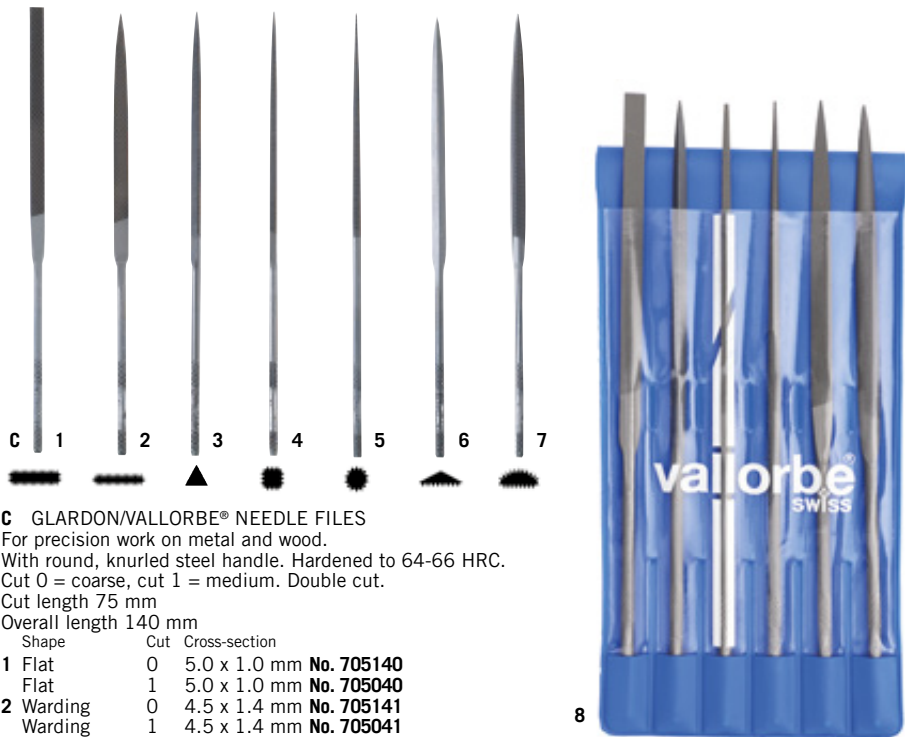
**A GLARDON/VALLORBE® HABILIS FILES**  
Habilis files have slender square tangs which serve as handles, making them suitable for particularly delicate work.  
60-64 HRC. Double cut. Cut 1.  
Cut length 105 mm  
Overall length 215 mm

Shape	Cross-section	No.
1 Flat	10.0 x 2.6 mm	No. 704930
2 Half-round	12.2 x 3.4 mm	No. 704931
3 Three-square	9.4 mm	No. 704932
4 Square	5.8 x 5.8 mm	No. 704933
5 Round	6.5 mm	No. 704921

**6 Glardon/Vallorbe® Habilis Files, 5-Piece Set** *Price advantage*  
5-piece set in case: flat, half-round, three-square, square, round.  
Cut length 105 mm  
Overall length 215 mm  
**No. 704935**

**B GLARDON/VALLORBE® ROUND FILES**  
Highest precision files, cut extends right to the tip. Double cut.

Cut	Cross-section	Cut length	No.
1 0	4.0 mm	150 mm	No. 705097
2 1	1.5 mm	75 mm	No. 705094
3 1	3.3 mm	90 mm	No. 704926
4 1	3.6 mm	100 mm	No. 704927
5 2	0.8 mm	38 mm	No. 705092
6 2	1.0 mm	50 mm	No. 705093
7 2	1.5 mm	55 mm	No. 705066
8 2	2.0 mm	65 mm	No. 705057



**C GLARDON/VALLORBE® NEEDLE FILES**  
For precision work on metal and wood.  
With round, knurled steel handle. Hardened to 64-66 HRC.  
Cut 0 = coarse, cut 1 = medium. Double cut.  
Cut length 75 mm  
Overall length 140 mm

Shape	Cut	Cross-section	No.
1 Flat	0	5.0 x 1.0 mm	No. 705140
Flat	1	5.0 x 1.0 mm	No. 705040
2 Warding	0	4.5 x 1.4 mm	No. 705141
Warding	1	4.5 x 1.4 mm	No. 705041
3 Three-square	0	3.0 mm	No. 705142
Three-square	1	3.0 mm	No. 705042
4 Square	0	2.3 mm	No. 705143
Square	1	2.3 mm	No. 705043
5 Round	0	2.8 mm	No. 705144
Round	1	2.8 mm	No. 705044
6 Barrette	0	4.6 x 1.4 mm	No. 705145
Barrette	1	4.6 x 1.4 mm	No. 705045
7 Half-round	0	5.0 x 1.8 mm	No. 705146
Half-round	1	5.0 x 1.8 mm	No. 705046

**8 Glardon/Vallorbe® Needle Files, 6-Piece Set, Cut 1** *Price advantage*  
6-piece set in case: flat, half-round, three-square, square, round, barrette.  
Cut  
0 **No. 705054**  
1 **No. 705053**

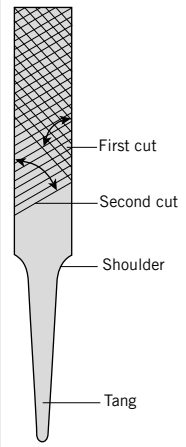


**D KEY FILES WITH WOODEN HANDLES, 6-PIECE SET**

Set of six key files with wooden handles in a traditional metal case. Ideal for precise work on metal and wood.  
Set contains:  
Flat, warding, three-square, square, half-round and round.  
Cut 2  
Cut length 100 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 704447**

**Double cut**

First, parallel flutes are cut in the surface of the file, as with a single cut file, and then it is cut crosswise again. This is referred to as first cut and second cut. The first cut forms the cutting teeth, while the second cut divides them and acts as a chipbreaker.



**Use:**

- Universal use

**Advantages:**

- File stays true
- No clogging

**A F.D.® FLAT FILES, SINGLE CUT**

Precision flat file made by long-established German company Friedrich Dick. Single cut design for high surface quality. Narrow sides cut. German cut 2.

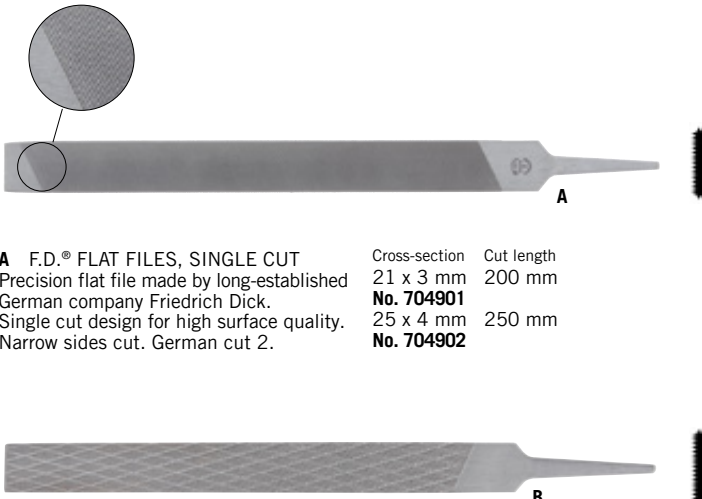
Cross-section 21 x 3 mm  
Cut length 200 mm  
**No. 704901**

Cross-section 25 x 4 mm  
Cut length 250 mm  
**No. 704902**

**B F.D.® CHIPBREAKER FILE, SINGLE CUT**

The special diamond pattern ensures smooth gliding strokes, resulting in a smooth surface with high chip removal. The pattern also acts as a chipbreaker.

Suitable for wood and soft metals such as cast iron, bronze and brass, but also for untempered steel. One narrow side cut. Cross-section 20 x 4 mm  
Cut length 200 mm  
**No. 704446**



**Single cut**

The single cut file has parallel flutes (teeth), extending diagonally across the face of the file.

**Use:**

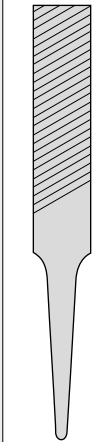
- Sharpening saw blades
- For an extremely fine finish

**Advantages:**

- No clearance between teeth, meaning low cutting pressure, which is an advantage with thin materials
- No clearance between teeth produces very smooth surfaces

**Disadvantage:**

- File does not stay true as easily



Single cut file

## Files for Knife Makers

### Oyakata® Carbide Cut

Outstanding service life and corrosion protection:

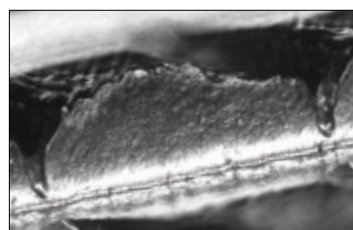
These files, manufactured in Japan, are coated with metal carbides using a specially developed process. The surface hardness after this coating is approx. 65-67 HRC.

- For materials that are difficult to file, such as stainless steel, carbon, cast metal
- 3 times longer service life compared to conventional files
- Rust protection through carbide coating
- No clogging (adhesion of chips is prevented by closed surfaces)

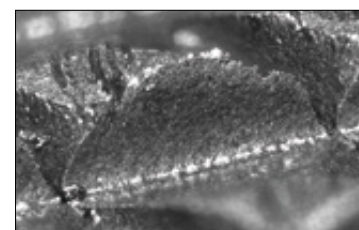
#### Ideal for:

- Knife making (shaping of rustproof knife steels and head plate processing of non-ferrous metals without clogging)
- Wood- and metal workers who often use different materials

Cut indication approximately follows the Swiss standard.



File with carbide-coated teeth



File with uncoated teeth

#### C HALF-ROUND FILE

Double cut.

*Cut 0*

Cross-section	Cut length	
16 x 4.5 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 711272</b>
21 x 6 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 711278</b>

*Cut 1*

Cross-section	Cut length	
16 x 4.5 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 711273</b>
21 x 6 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 711279</b>

#### D FLAT FILE

Double cut. One narrow side cut.

*Cut 0*

Cross-section	Cut length	
16 x 4 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 711270</b>
21 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 711276</b>
25 x 6 mm	250 mm	<b>No. 711282</b>

*Cut 1*

Cross-section	Cut length	
16 x 4 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 711271</b>
21 x 5 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 711277</b>
25 x 6 mm	250 mm	<b>No. 711283</b>

#### E ROUND FILE 150 MM

Double cut.

*Cut 0*

Ø	Cut length	
6 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 711274</b>
8 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 711280</b>

*Cut 1*

Ø	Cut length	
6 mm	150 mm	<b>No. 711275</b>
8 mm	200 mm	<b>No. 711281</b>



## Glardon/Vallorbe® Valtitan Files

The perfect files for knife makers: The hardest of all toothed files.

They allow materials which have been considered impossible to file, e.g. hardened steel, to be filed without breaking teeth.

Other advantages: Valtitan files do not clog, they are largely rustproof and even more powerful.

They impress users with greater chip removal and longer service life.



**A** GLARDON/VALLORBE® VALTITAN ROUND FILE  
Double cut. Cut 0.  
Ø 7.5 mm      Cut length 200 mm      **No. 704403**



**B** GLARDON/VALLORBE® VALTITAN HALF-ROUND FILE  
Double cut. Cut 0.  
Cross-section 21.4 x 6.3 mm      Cut length 200 mm      **No. 704407**  
15.3 x 4.7 mm      150 mm      **No. 704402**



**C** GLARDON/VALLORBE® VALTITAN THREE-SQUARE FILE  
Double cut. Cut 0.  
Width 14.2 mm      Cut length 200 mm      **No. 704408**



**D** GLARDON/VALLORBE® VALTITAN PILLAR FILES  
Double cut. Cut 0.  
Cross-section 14.5 x 4.5 mm      Cut length 200 mm      **No. 704401**  
12.0 x 4.0 mm      150 mm      **No. 704406**



**E** GLARDON/VALLORBE® VALTITAN FLAT FILES  
Double cut. Cut 0. One narrow side cut.  
Cross-section 25.3 x 6.3 mm      Cut length 250 mm      **No. 704405**  
21.4 x 4.8 mm      200 mm      **No. 704400**  
18.5 x 4.0 mm      150 mm      **No. 704404**

### WORKSHOP

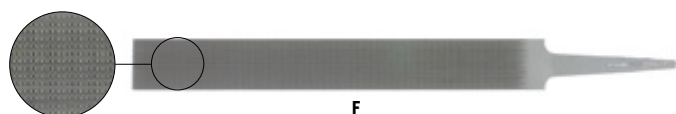
#### KNIFE MAKING

**Content:** Compose your very own, individual kitchen knife. A wide range of high-quality Japanese multi-layered steel blades with 3 to 32 layers will be provided. You will design the handle and ferrule and learn to fit the blade into the handle, to grind and to sharpen the blade.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



CLASSIC



**F** GLARDON/VALLORBE® CHECKERING FILE  
To prevent the fingers from slipping, checkerings are cut into knife handles and on the backs of blades. The checkering file is ideal for this task. The extraordinary cut originates through



lengthwise grooves in the blade which are crossed by 90° grooves. In this way, small teeth are formed which cut on the push stroke. In order to produce the checkering, the file is moved in one spot forward and backwards. Suited for wood, non-ferrous metals and unhardened steel. Cut 00.  
Cross-section 19 x 5.2 mm  
Cut length 150 mm  
**No. 704410**



**G** F.D.® MILL SAW FILE  
The ideal file for the ambitious knife maker, who makes his own blade. The round edges help to file the transition from the blade to the ricasso, an area which is an important attribute of a high quality blade.



Cut 3  
Cross-section 20 x 3.5 mm  
Cut length 200 mm  
**No. 704411**



## Diamond Files

### Diamond Files, Polycrystalline

Simple standard diamond files for working hard materials such as hardened steel, glass or ceramics.



**A** DIAMOND NEEDLE FILES, POLYCRYSTALLINE, 5-PIECE SET  
Flat 9 x 2.3 mm, half-round 9 x 3 mm, square 4.5 mm, three-square 6 mm, round 5 mm. Grit D107 \*\*. Coating length 70 mm Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 711045**



**B** DIAMOND NEEDLE FILES, POLYCRYSTALLINE, 10-PIECE SET  
Flat 6 x 1.5 mm, half-round 5 x 2 mm, square 2.5 mm, three-square 3.5 mm, round 3 mm, warding 5 x 1.5 mm, knife-shaped 5 x 1.5 mm, barrette 5 x 2 mm, crossing 5 x 2 mm, crossing 3.5 x 2.5 mm. Grit D107 \*\*. Coating length 50 mm Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 711044**

### Diamond Files, Monocrystalline

High-quality diamond files with monocrystalline diamond coating for long edge life and even, effective abrasion. This diamond shape is similar to that of natural diamonds, ensuring the highest hardness of all materials. It is suitable for working hardened steel, hard metal, glass, ceramics etc.



**C** DIAMOND FILES, MONOCRYSTALLINE, WITH TANG  
This robust file with handle tang is ideal for fast and effective removal of material on large surfaces, e.g. on hardened knife blanks.

Flat 10.5 x 3 mm  
Coating length 100 mm  
Overall length 225 mm

Grit D126 \*\*\*  
**No. 704418**

Grit D91 \*  
**No. 704424**

### Monocrystalline vs. polycrystalline

Basically, there are two different manufacturing processes in which either monocrystalline (similar structure to a natural diamond) or polycrystalline diamonds are created.

#### Monocrystalline:

- Higher wear-resistance, ensuring a long edge life
- Higher microblade quality, producing smooth results
- Hardest material, allowing you to work on all materials

#### Polycrystalline:

- High resistance to pressure
- Under pressure, the diamond coating breaks up to form smaller, even-sized abrasive particles which remove less material and reduce the edge life

#### Grit comparison:

\* D91 = Grit P 170-200 | \*\* D107 = Grit P 140-170 | \*\*\* D126 = Grit P 120-140

► More monocrystalline diamond files and key file sets available online.

## File Accessories



**D** SAW AND FILE BRUSH  
Robust Japanese brush for cleaning wet wood saws for garden and carpentry as well as all types of files. The flexible

plastic bristles prevent damage to scratch-sensitive teeth.  
Length 220 mm  
**No. 716119**



**E** FILE CLEANER  
For cleaning file and rasp teeth. Beechwood with brass bristles.

Head 40 x 100 mm.  
Length 250 mm  
**No. 705091**

## Sets and Handles

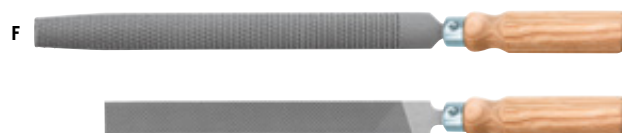
### F FILE AND RASP, 2-PIECE SET

Practical set for work in the field and in the workshop, consisting of the two standard tools metal file and rasp. Comes with already fitted file handles made of oiled ash. In cotton pouch.

Set contains:

- Standard half-round rasp, 250 mm, for rough shaping of wood, No. 704602
- Flat file, double cut, 200 mm, for working metal and hard plastic, No. 705007

**No. 705090**



### G FILES AND RASPS, 3-PIECE SET

This set comprises the three most common file and rasp models for working wood, metal and plastic and is thus a must for every workshop. A simple tool roll protects the tools from dirt and damage during transport. Handles included.

Set contains:

- Standard half-round rasp, 250 mm for rough shaping, No. 704602
- Classic cabinet wood file, 250 mm for finishing wood and soft plastic, No. 704430
- Flat file, double cut, 200 mm for working metal and hard plastic, No. 705007

**No. 705100**



### H FILE AND RASP WITH BIRCH BARK HANDLE, 2-PIECE SET

Tried-and-tested file/rasp combination, including high-quality fitted birch bark handles. Birch bark is naturally anti-fungal and anti-bacterial, water-repellent, highly moisture-resistant and slip-proof even when wet. The handle provides a good grip even in perspiring hands. Comes in cotton pouch.

Set contains:

- Standard half-round rasp, 250 mm, for roughly shaping wood, No. 704602
- Flat file, double cut, 200 mm, for working metal and hard plastic, No. 705007

**No. 711091**




**A BIRCH BARK FILE HANDLE**  
Birch bark is naturally anti-fungal and anti-bacterial, water-repellent, highly moisture-resistant and slip-proof even when wet. The handle provides a good grip even in perspiring hands. Hornbeam handle core. Solid, turned steel ferrule at the handle join.  
Ø Ferrule 18 mm  
Length 130 mm  
**No. 760113**





**B BOXWOOD HANDLES, BALL-SHAPED**  
Polished boxwood, solid ferrule.  
Ø Ferrule      Length  
18 mm      105 mm      **No. 701601**  
20 mm      105 mm      **No. 701602**  
22 mm      105 mm      **No. 701603**



**C BOXWOOD HANDLE, DROP-SHAPED**  
Polished boxwood.  
Ø Ferrule      Length  
16 mm      70 mm      **No. 701604**



**D FILE HANDLES, SCREW-IN**  
For files with pointed tangs, fastening via internal threads, plastic.  
Ø Internal thread      Length  
7 mm      105 mm      **No. 704955**  
11 mm      120 mm      **No. 704956**



**E UNIVERSAL HANDLES, ASH**  
Octagonal, with a round neck. Smoothly sanded, untreated ash.  
Ø Ferrule      Length  
15 mm      90 mm      **No. 701677**  
19 mm      120 mm      **No. 701627**



**F ASH HANDLES, SLIM DROP-SHAPED**  
Patterned after old English models and turned from ash, smoothly sanded surface.  
Ø Ferrule      Length  
15 mm      85 mm      **No. 701678**  
18 mm      90 mm      **No. 701679**



**G ASH HANDLES, BALL-SHAPED**  
Smoothly sanded ash handle with a solide ferrule.  
Ø Ferrule      Length  
18 mm      105 mm      **No. 701673**  
20 mm      105 mm      **No. 701674**  
22 mm      105 mm      **No. 701675**



**H PRECIOUS WOOD HANDLES**  
Patterned after old English models. Polished surface.

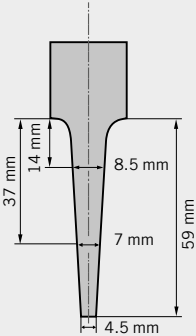
**1 Slim Drop-shaped Design**  
Ø Ferrule      Length  
15 mm      85 mm      **No. 701618**  
18 mm      90 mm      **No. 701619**

**2 Octagonal-shaped design**  
Ø Ferrule      Length  
15 mm      130 mm      **No. 701616**  
18 mm      130 mm      **No. 701617**

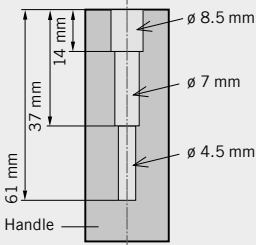
**Fixing the handle by incremental drilling**

Centrally fixing a file handle is often not quite so easy. A precise and workable solution is to drill stepped holes, taking into consideration the dimensions of the tang.













Example with the following common tang, file No. 705007 and common file handle No. 701627:



Clamp the handle into a vice and drill the following stepped holes using wood drills - ideally a bench pillar drill or a drill rig, but freehand if necessary.



Begin with the largest hole and use the centring tip of the wood drill to make the following holes.

Handle chart for rasps and files: Multiple references possible for each item.											
											
701618 fits No.	701619 fits No.	701616 fits No.	701617 fits No.	701677 fits No.	701627 fits No.	701604 fits No.	701601 fits No.	701602 fits No.	701603 fits No.	704955 fits No.	704956 fits No.
704502	704406	704403	704400-07	704402	704400-01	704502	704401-04	704400-01	704400-01	704402	704405
704670	704502	704406	704410-11	704404	704403	704574	704406	704403	704405	704406	704502
704673	704574	704455	704430	704406	704406-08	704673	704414	704407-08	704407	704572	704674
704676	704670	704551	704432	704574	704410-11	704676	704455	704410-11	704430	704720-22	704709
704741	704673-74	704678	704446	704602	704430	704733	704551	704455	704432	704724	705010
704757	704677	704704	704572	704673	704432	704741	704677-78	704572	704446	704901	705028-29
705029	704704	704716	704576	704676-77	704446	704757	704704	704574	704572	705022-24	705031
	704733	704732	704601-03	704704	704572	704923-24	704716	704576	704576	705030-31	705039
	704741	705003-05	704671-72	704733	704576	704999	704732	704601-03	704602	705068-69	
	704757	705078	704675	704755	704585	705028-29	704755	704671-72	704685	705192-94	
	704923-24		704678	704757	704601-03		704923-24	704675	704707	704677	
	705000		704682	704999	704671-72		705003-05	704678	704720-22	704923-24	
	705002		704685-86	705006-08	704675		705022-24	704727	704727	715107	
	705022-24		704707	705020	704678		705030	704707	704901-02		
	705028		704720-22	705022-24	704682		705068-69	704720-22	705006-08		
	705030-31		704724	705030-31	704686		705192-94	704724-25	705012-14		
	705068-69		704755	705068-69	704704			704901	705025		
	705097		704901-02		704707			704922	705027		
			705006-08		704720-22			705003-07	705032		
			705012-14		704724			705022-27	705086-87		
			705025-27		704727			705030	711072		
			705032-35		704755			705032-34	715107		
			705086-87		704901			705068-69			
			705192-94		705006-08			705086-87			
			711072		705012-14			705192-94			
			715107		705025-27						
					705032-35						
					705086-87						
					705192-94						
					711072						
					711087						
					715107						

# MEASURING AND INSPECTION INSTRUMENTS

Precision provides safety!

**Measuring Instruments | 206**

Rules | 206

Folding Rules and Tape Measures | 207

Protractors | 209

Callipers | 210

**Tools for Checking Squareness,**

**Flatness and for Marking | 211**

Squares and Marking Tools | 211

Sliding Bevels and Profile Gauges | 216

Flatness Inspection, Set-up Blocks | 217

Spirit Levels | 218

**Inspection Instruments | 218**

**Wood Moisture Measurement | 220**





# Measuring Instruments

## Rules

Highly wear-resistant rules made of hard-chromed stainless steel.  
Hardened with milled edges. Matt finish and deep-etched millimetre scale.



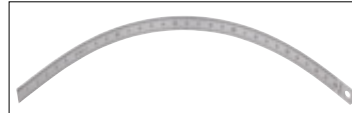
**A** PRECISION RULE,  
SEMI-RIGID VERSION  
Thickness 1 mm  
Width 25 / 30 / 35 mm

Length  
300 mm **No. 707255**  
600 mm **No. 707256**  
1000 mm **No. 717127**



**B** SHINWA® PRECISION RULE,  
FLEXIBLE VERSION  
Thickness 0.5 mm  
Width 15 mm

Length  
150 mm **No. 707263**  
300 mm **No. 707264**  
600 mm **No. 717129**  
1000 mm **No. 717128**



**C** PRECISION RULE,  
ULTRA-FLEXIBLE VERSION  
Measure along the curve:  
Highly flexible rule for measuring and  
marking curved surfaces and small  
angles, e.g. when turning, in model  
construction, boat building etc.

Thickness 0.2 mm  
Width 13 mm  
Length  
200 mm **No. 707270**  
300 mm **No. 707271**  
600 mm **No. 707272**



**E** SHINWA® PRECISION RULES PICKUP  
The precision rule with easy pick-up:  
Thanks to the upturned right end, this  
ruler is easy to pick up from smooth sur-  
faces. Matted and deep-etched millimetre  
scale with large numbers for easy reading.

Thickness 0.5 / 1.0 mm  
Width 15 / 25 mm  
Length  
150 mm **No. 707840**  
300 mm **No. 707841**



**F** SHINWA® PRECISION RULE,  
FLEXIBLE VERSION, 150 MM,  
INCL. STOPPER  
Precision ruler and 15 mm stopper in a  
set. A 150 mm ruler with a matt finish

and deep-etched scale on the front.  
Conversion table from inch to mm, along  
with a thread table on the back.  
Thickness 0.5 mm  
Width 15 mm  
Length 150 mm  
**No. 717445**

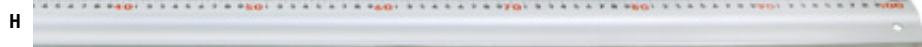


**G**

**G** SHINWA® RULE STOPPER  
Robust steel stopper with a locking  
screw for marking and examining repeat  
measurements.

*Rule Stopper, 15 mm*  
For ruler widths of 15 mm.  
Fits No. 707263, 707264, 717129,  
717128, 707840.  
**No. 717329**

*Rule Stopper, 25 mm*  
For ruler widths of 25 mm.  
Fits No. 707255, 707841.  
**No. 717309**



**H** SHINWA® CUTTING RULE  
Rigid aluminium cutting rule with hard-  
ened steel edge for protection against wear.  
Deep-etched millimetre scale, rubber pad.  
Width 56 mm  
Length 1000 mm  
**No. 717124**



**I** SHINWA® CUTTING RULE  
WITH HANDLE  
Aluminium cutting rule with deep-  
etched millimetre scale on both sides  
and firm steel edge. The rubber pad  
on the underside prevents slipping  
and the rubber-coated handle provides  
protection from incision wounds while  
also allowing the tool to be used in a  
vertical position.  
Width 60 mm  
Length 1000 mm  
**No. 707157**



► More Woodpeckers® rules and accessoires available online.

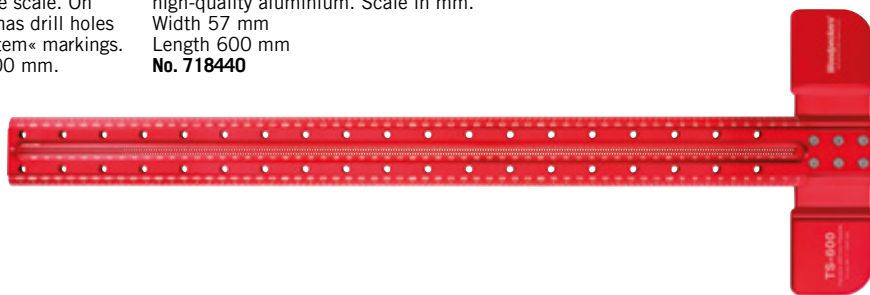
**A WOODPECKERS® T-SQUARE MARKING RULE, 600 MM**  
Thanks to the holes at 2-mm intervals, you can create very precise markings. The measuring edge is chamfered by

30° for a more precise reading and has a laser-engraved millimetre scale. On the top, the marking rule has drill holes based on the »32 mm System« markings. Accuracy 0.02 mm per 600 mm.

Comes with MDF wall mount. Made of high-quality aluminium. Scale in mm.  
Width 57 mm  
Length 600 mm  
**No. 718440**

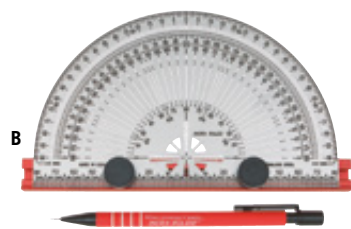


A



### Incra® Precision Marking Rules

With these marking rules you are guaranteed accurate marking. As well as the conventional scale, these rules have marking holes or slots which allow accurate guidance of a sharp pencil or a 0.5 mm mechanical pencil for precise markings. The thin stainless steel rules have a matt anti-reflective surface for high reading accuracy.



#### B INCRA® PRECISION PROTRACTOR

- Removable fence
- Length scale with marking holes
- Protractor with marking holes
- Two protractors with marking slots for drawing a pencil
- Includes a 0.5 mm mechanical pencil



Length 160 mm  
**No. 707522**

C



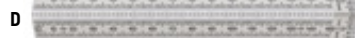
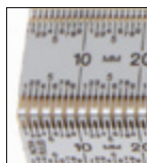
#### C INCRA® PRECISION T-RULE

- Removable fence
- Length scale with marking holes
- Length scale with marking slots for drawing a pencil
- Depth scale for depth markings
- Additional holes at increments of 2.5 tenth of a millimetre allow extremely accurate markings

Width 50 mm  
Length  
75 mm  
**No. 707747**  
150 mm  
**No. 707520**  
300 mm  
**No. 707521**

#### D INCRA® PRECISION BEND RULE

- Length scale with marking holes
- Edge scale for transferring markings, e.g. for dovetail joints
- Depth scale for depth markings



Width 2 x 22 mm  
Length  
150 mm **No. 707518**  
300 mm **No. 707519**

E

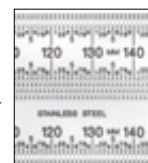


#### E INCRA® PRECISION MARKING RULE

- Length scale with marking holes
- Length scale with marking slots for drawing a pencil

- Additional holes at increments of 2.5 tenth of a millimetre allow extremely accurate markings

Width 38 mm  
Length  
150 mm **No. 707516**  
300 mm **No. 707517**



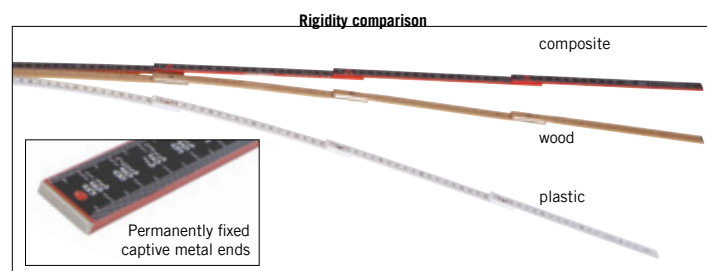
## Folding Rules and Tape Measures



#### F WIHA® LONGLIFE® PLUS COMPOSITE FOLDING RULE

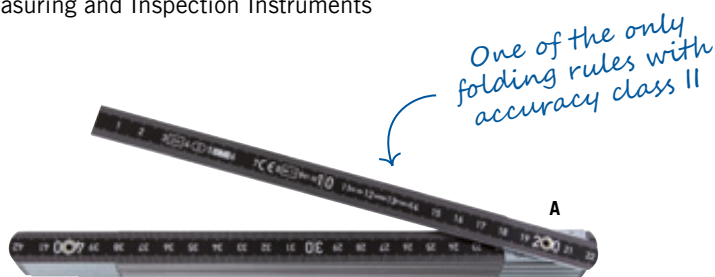
The plastic blades with top layers made of longitudinal glass fibres absorb bending forces and ensure unmatched rigidity. This allows perfect, easy horizontal and vertical measuring with fully opened folding rule.

- Accuracy class II ( $\pm 0.7$  mm per 2 m)
- Weather-, chemical- and temperature-resistant plastic
- Deep-embossed numbers
- Readable from both sides through a second, backwards-running scale



- Wear-free and dirt-resistant patented joints with pre-tensioned spring pins for constant tension
- Minimum play over the entire lifetime, test: 20 000 cycles
- All joints lock firmly in position at 90°

and 180°  
• Captive metal ends  
Width 15 mm  
Length 2 m  
**No. 717876**



**A BMI® ALUMINIUM FOLDING RULE**  
The special aluminium alloy with matt black anodised surface and high-contrast scale ensures non-glare reading. The deep-etched numbers and graduations are extremely wear-resistant, weather-proof and resistant to chemicals, grease

and oils. Precisely engaging nickel-plated steel springs. Rounded edges.  
Accuracy class II ( $\pm 0.7$  mm per 2 m).  
Width 14 mm  
Length 2 m  
**No. 708060**

**B WOOD STOCK® FOLDING RULE**  
Every segment of this folding rule is made from a different type of wood. The front side has a scale and the rear side provides information on the distribution, characteristics and use of each type of wood. The folding rule not only provides correct measurements but also offers a playful introduction to the world of wood. All wood used is FSC-certified, the rule comes in an attractive black sliding box. Our tip: Also ideal as a present – not only for craftsmen!  
Accuracy class III ( $\pm 1.4$  mm per 2 m).



**1 Native Woods**  
Sycamore, birch, oak, alder, ash, sweet chestnut, cherry, larch, robinia, beech.  
Length 2 m  
**No. 708029**

**2 Brazilian Woods**  
Amapá, jatobá, louro gamela, louro itauba, louro preto, muiracatiara, muirapiranga, pau amarelo, sucupira vermelho, violeta.  
Length 2 m  
**No. 708030**

## Hultafors® Folding Rules

When it comes to professional quality folding rules, there is only one choice: the Swedish folding rule from Hultafors, synonymous for uncompromising quality since 1883.



**C HULTAFORS® DOWNY BIRCH FOLDING RULE**  
Light and break-proof:  
Made of the finest Swedish downy birch, this folding rule has cult status. Despite

its lightweight construction with wooden segments just 2 mm thick, it is extremely resistant to breakage. The flush-fitting pivots are made of hardened Swedish steel, guaranteed to show no signs of



wear, even after years of use. Millimetre markings on both sides. Accuracy class III ( $\pm 1.4$  mm per 2 m).  
Width 17 mm  
Length 2 m



**1 Normal Scale**  
**No. 708024**  
**2 Reverse Scale**  
**No. 708035**



**D HULTAFORS® TALMETER® TAPE MEASURE**  
Precise and indestructible:  
This revised version of the Hultafors bestseller will impress you with its precise functionality and indestructible mechanics. An additional blade that can be opened out with a sliding tab, and a second scale, allow exact measuring of inside dimensions. Combined measuring and marking edges at the end of the scale and casing allow you to directly and accurately transfer the dimensions to the workpiece. High-quality, compact ABS casing with round edges and automatic metal locking mechanism. Steel tape can be easily replaced and is available as a spare part.  
Accuracy class II ( $\pm 0.7$  mm per 2 m).

**1 Tape Measure**  
Comes with an additional scale on the reverse of the steel tape which allows you to measure diameters directly.  
Tape width 16 mm  
Length Case  
2 m 65 x 55 x 24 mm  
**No. 708036**  
3 m 70 x 60 x 26 mm  
**No. 708037**

**2 Tape Measure, 6 m**  
Comes with an additional millimetre scale on the reverse of the steel tape which can be used for depth measurements, belt clip and locking mechanism.  
Tape width 25 mm  
Length Case  
6 m 95 x 70 x 36 mm  
**No. 708039**



**Vide** on the several functions of the talmeter tape measure available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





**A HULTAFORS®  
TAPE MEASURE ERGONOMIC**  
Extremely accurate:  
Ergonomic tape measure with high-impact ABS plastic case and rubber-coated button. Wear-resistant blade with a highly accurate inkjet-printed scale. Smooth blade return with anti-wear function, firm lock reduces tape movement. For easy interior measurements. Metal hole hanger for strap enables safe work at heights.

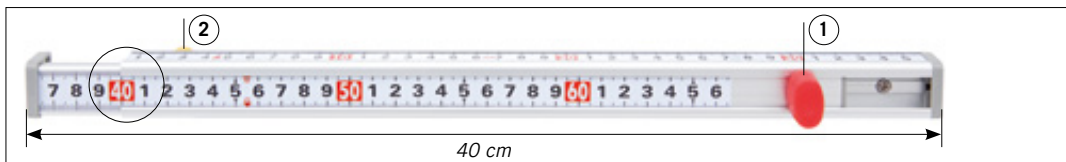
Strong stainless steel end-hook with reinforcement plate.  
Accuracy class I ( $\pm 0.3$  mm per 2 m).  
Tape width 19 mm

Length	Case
1 3 m	65 x 60 x 35 mm No. 701635
2 5 m	75 x 65 x 40 mm No. 701636



**B HARDWOOD TAPE MEASURE**  
Feels good in the hand:  
Handmade cases from selected precious woods. Inch/millimetre scale.  
Case 45 x 45 x 10 mm  
Tape width 7 mm  
Length 2 m

1	Boxwood No. 707161
2	Laurel No. 707160
3	Ebony No. 707158



**C SHINWA® TELESCOPIC MEASURE**  
This telescopic measure is an indispensable aid for measuring clear space during interior refinishing or masonry work. Large numbers allow the scale to be read

even in poor lighting conditions. The measure is equipped with two extendable rail profiles. If the rail with the red locking screw is fully extended, you can immediately continue measuring using

the second rail (yellow locking screw). This clever measuring system does not require any addition. A fixed centre provides practical, one-handed use. Plastic ends prevent surface scratches.

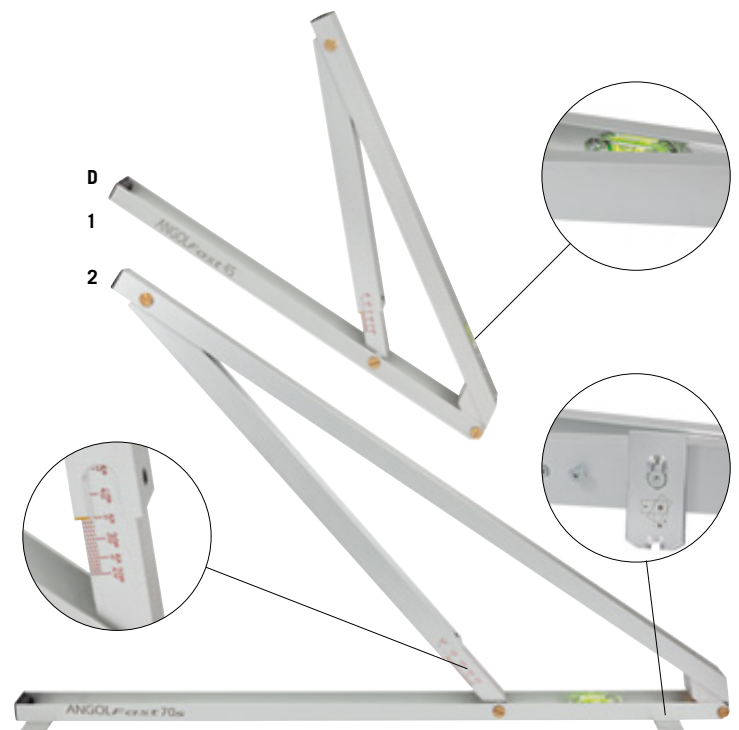
Length  
36.4-97 cm  
No. 717517  
100-281.8 cm  
No. 717518

**Vide** Application video  
available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

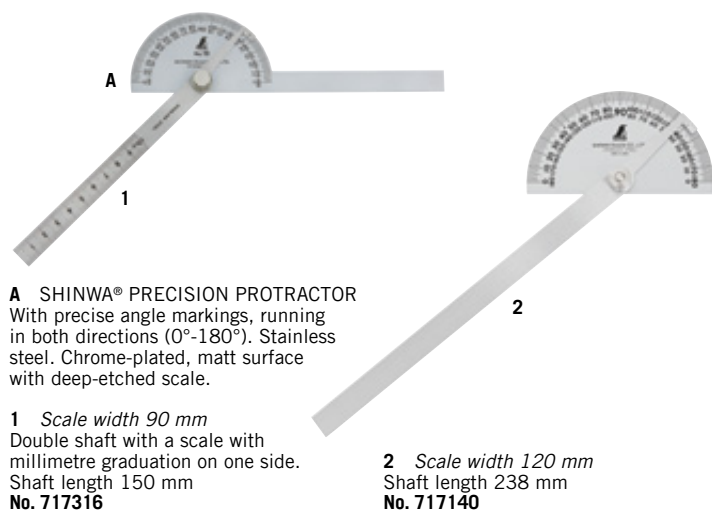
## Protractors

**D ANGOLFAST PROTRACTOR**  
Versatile, accurate, lightweight and robust: Universal protractor made of anodised aluminium for measuring and transmitting angles from 20° to 135°. Easy-to-read graduation thanks to red, deeply etched scale. The incorporated vial allows the horizontal level to be quickly determined; it can be read in both an open and closed position.

Ideal for carpenters, joiners, architects, etc.  
Tongue length  
1 450 mm No. 715453  
700 mm No. 715455  
2 Angolfast Protractor 70S  
With hinged stops.  
Tongue length  
700 mm No. 715454



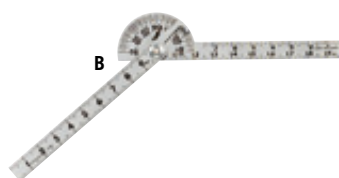
► For Winkelprofi, a mitre guide for measuring any angle, see page 216.



**A SHINWA® PRECISION PROTRACTOR**  
With precise angle markings, running in both directions (0°-180°). Stainless steel. Chrome-plated, matt surface with deep-etched scale.

**1** Scale width 90 mm  
Double shaft with a scale with millimetre graduation on one side.  
Shaft length 150 mm  
**No. 717316**

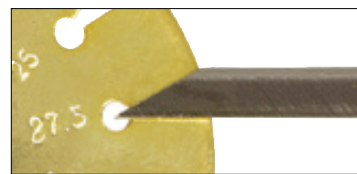
**2** Scale width 120 mm  
Shaft length 238 mm  
**No. 717140**



**B SHINWA® MINI PROTRACTOR**  
Also for measuring bevel angles when sharpening tool blades. With scale markings.  
Shaft length 100 mm  
**No. 717141**

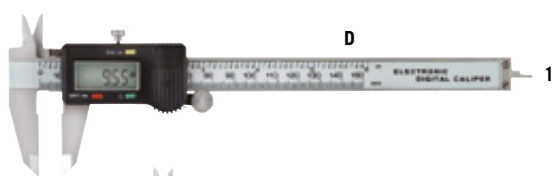


**C BEVEL GAUGE FOR TOOL EDGES**  
For checking bevel angles.  
Brass coated. 12 angles (15°-120°).  
Ø 46 mm  
**No. 707261**



Chisel not included!

## Callipers

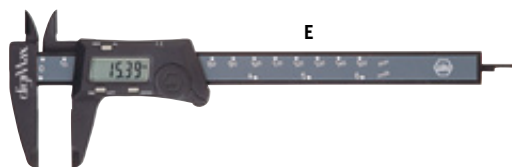


**D DIGITAL CALLIPER**  
Multi-purpose calliper with a large five-digit LCD display for inside, outside and depth measurement. Display can be switched between millimetre and inch. Resolution of 0.01 mm. Display can be zeroed at any position. Stainless steel slide, hardened faces, LR44 battery included, plastic case.

**1** Measuring range 150 mm  
Tip length 40 mm  
**No. 707170**



**2** Measuring range 100 mm  
Tip length 30 mm  
**No. 707258**



**E WIHA® DIGIMAX® DIGITAL CALLIPER**  
Swiss-precision digital calliper of high-tech fibre-glass material for all inside, outside and depth measurements. The anti-magnetic material mix does not attract any metal cuttings, which increases measuring accuracy and, thanks to the fibre-glass tips, is also suitable for scratch-free measurements on sensitive surfaces. Thanks to the anti-corrosion

material, the calliper is also ideal for use in humid conditions. 0.01 mm display accuracy, can be switched to inch display. Integrated automatic switch-off, zero setting possible in any position. Comes with SR44 battery and plastic case.

Measuring range 150 mm  
Tip length 40 mm  
**No. 717877**

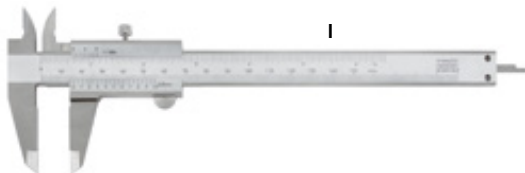


**F DIAL CALLIPER**  
A sturdy dial calliper with a shock- and dust-proof analogue dial indicator, ideal for workshop use. Stainless steel slide and dial, with hardened faces, two screws for locking the slide and

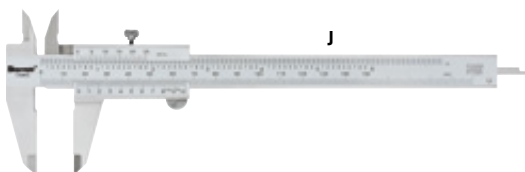
calibration ring in place; display accuracy 0.01 mm, plastic case.  
Measuring range 150 mm  
Tip length 40 mm  
**No. 707259**



**G SHINWA® PLASTIC DIAL CALLIPER**  
Extra-light and durable GRP dial calliper which is gentle on the workpiece. Recommended for mobile use and for measuring sensitive parts, e.g. in restoration work. External, internal and depth measurements. 0.1 mm display accuracy, with wall bracket.  
Measuring range 150 mm  
Tip length 40 mm  
**No. 707225**



**I ANALOGUE CALLIPER**  
Bevelled scale in mm and inch for parallax-free reading. Deep-etched stainless steel, slide with 0.05 mm vernier and locking screw.  
Measuring range 150 mm  
Tip length 40 mm  
**No. 707303**



**J STARRETT® CALLIPER**  
This Starrett precision calliper is characterised by its very high accuracy of +/- 0.02 mm. The scale is anti-reflective and deep-etched with mm and inch. Stainless steel slider with 0.02 mm

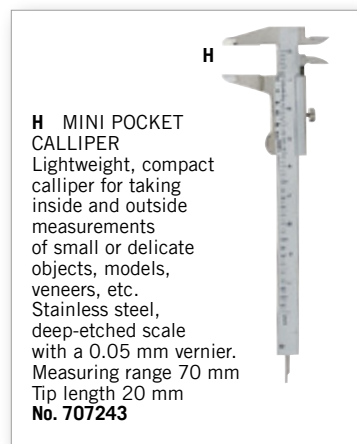
vernier and locking screw. Delivered in storage box.  
Measuring range 150 mm  
Tip length 40 mm  
**No. 718858**



**K CALLIPER IN CARD FORMAT**  
Extra-thin stainless steel calliper in credit card format for on-the-go. Fits in any wallet or jacket pocket and is always to hand. Deep-etched scale with 0.05 mm vernier.

A copy of this tool has been added to the collection of the Museum of Modern Art (MOMA) in New York.  
Dimensions: 86 x 54 x 0.3 mm.

Measuring range 50 mm  
Tip length 32 mm  
Material Stainless steel  
**No. 718067**



**H MINI POCKET CALLIPER**  
Lightweight, compact calliper for taking inside and outside measurements of small or delicate objects, models, veneers, etc.  
Stainless steel, deep-etched scale with a 0.05 mm vernier.  
Measuring range 70 mm  
Tip length 20 mm  
**No. 707243**

# Tools for Checking Squareness, Flatness and for Marking

## Squares and Marking Tools

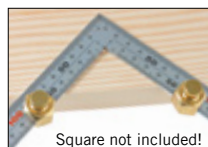


A

### A ANGLE END STOPS, 2-PIECE SET

Transforms your carpenter's square into a try square: the hexagonal end stops made of brass are quickly and easily fitted onto the carpenter's square with knurled screws. The end stop facilitates the repeated marking of bevels, e.g. in roofing beams. Blade/tongue thickness max. 6 mm.

No. 708096



Square not included!

B

### B SHINWA® MINI-SQUARE

Stainless steel mini-square, good value for money. For checking edges or rabbets of small workpieces. Deep-etched scale on both sides, rounded front edges. Accuracy 0.1 mm per 100 mm.

Thickness 1.2 mm  
Width 10 mm  
160 x 80 mm

No. 717228

### C GERMAN CARPENTER'S SQUARE

The standard square for every carpenter is made of stainless spring steel and has a seamless cut. An etched scale on both sides of the square can be used for external and internal measuring. The holes, spaced 5 mm apart, on the short shank are used for parallel marking. For this technique the long shank works as a fence and the oval-shaped holes centre the pencil during pulling. Accuracy 0.5 mm per 100 mm.

Thickness 1.2 mm  
Width 35 mm  
800 x 320 mm

No. 707279

Spring steel



### D SHINWA® CARPENTER'S SQUARE

Rigid stainless steel square for marking fittings and to quickly judge whether squared timber is perpendicular. Deep-etched outer scale and a separate inner scale. Drilled inner corner for precise positioning. Accuracy 0.1 mm per 100 mm.

Thickness 2 mm

Width 20 mm

Stock length

1 160 mm

No. 717266

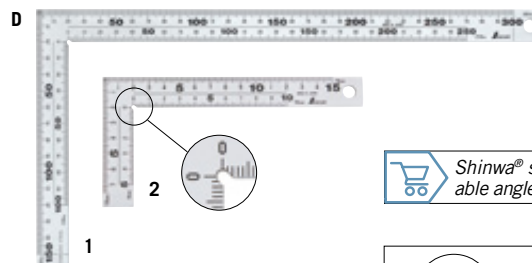
2 85 mm

No. 717328

Tongue length

320 mm

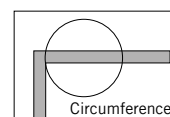
170 mm



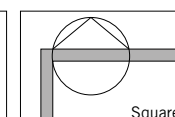
1

2

Shinwa® safety cord and adjustable angle holder available online.



Circumference



Square



### E SHINWA® SQUARE »SASHIGANE«, 510 MM, FLEXIBLE

This light and easy-to-read stainless steel square is used not only as a framing square and scale, but also as an angle of inclination and try square. The blade is 15 mm wide, the standard measurement in Japan for tenons and board thicknesses. The front of the square has a deep-etched millimetre scale. The back has two calibrations: one gives the diameter

(x 3.14) and the other the length of one side of a square inscribed by that diameter (x 0.7). The bevelled edges and slight hollow grind prevent ink markings from being smudged.

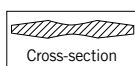
Accuracy 0.1 mm per 100 mm.

Thickness 1.3 mm

Width 15 mm

525 x 262 mm

No. 717130



Cross-section

### F SHINWA® CARPENTER'S SQUARE

Precision square with millimetre graduations permanently etched on both sides of both edges. Stainless steel. Accuracy 0.1 mm per 100 mm.

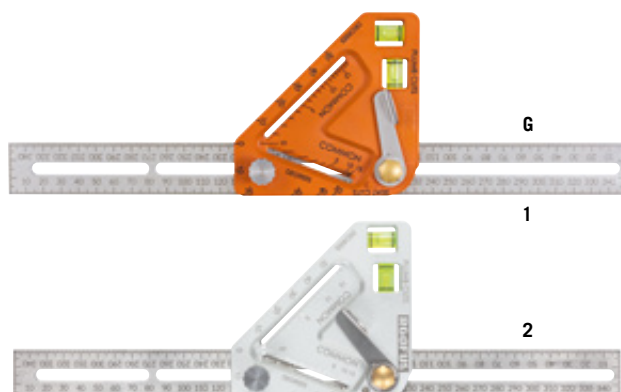
Thickness 2 mm

Width 20 mm

520 x 265 mm

No. 717133

F



G

1

2

### G ROOFUS™ MULTI SQUARE

The all-rounder:

The Roofus Multi Square is a versatile, accurate measuring and marking tool consisting of a 350 mm blade combined with a 45°/90° head piece with built-in spirit level. Thanks to the attached, easily readable scale (1°-55°) on the front and back and the stepless angle adjustment, marking and transferring primary and secondary angles is made quick and easy and saves a lot of time. Available in two versions.

Millimetre scaling.

Tongue length 350 mm

#### 1 Standard

Composite material with deep black angle scale for good legibility in all working conditions.

No. 718630

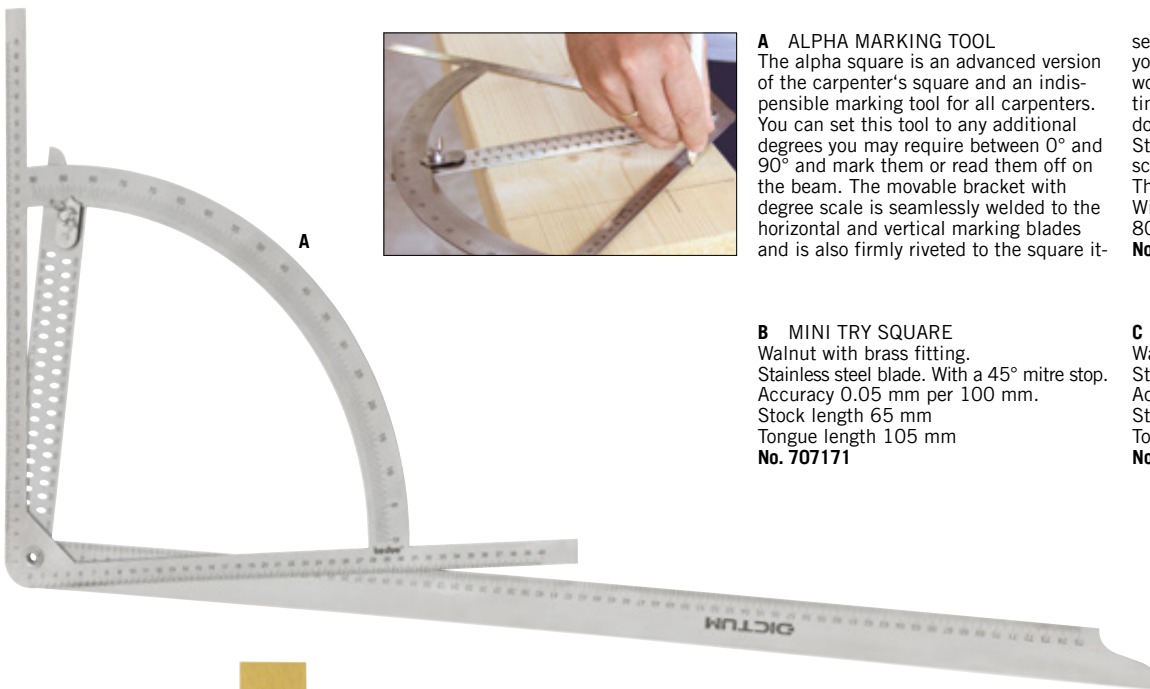
#### 2 Pro

Aluminium with anodised surface.

No. 718631

Vide Application video available online.  
www.dictum.com





#### A ALPHA MARKING TOOL

The alpha square is an advanced version of the carpenter's square and an indispensable marking tool for all carpenters. You can set this tool to any additional degrees you may require between 0° and 90° and mark them or read them off on the beam. The movable bracket with degree scale is seamlessly welded to the horizontal and vertical marking blades and is also firmly riveted to the square it-

self. With careful consideration of where you place the tool along the edges of the workpiece, you can greatly reduce the time required for marking because you do not have to set any opposite angles. Stainless spring steel with deep-etched scale. Scale division 0.5°. Thickness 1.2 mm Width 35 mm 800 x 430 mm

**No. 707316**

#### B MINI TRY SQUARE

Walnut with brass fitting. Stainless steel blade. With a 45° mitre stop. Accuracy 0.05 mm per 100 mm. Stock length 65 mm Tongue length 105 mm

**No. 707171**

#### C CARPENTER'S TRY SQUARE

Walnut with brass fitting. Stainless steel blade. Accuracy 0.03 mm per 100 mm. Stock length 150 mm Tongue length 275 mm

**No. 707172**



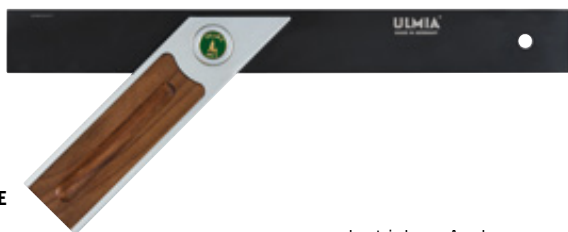
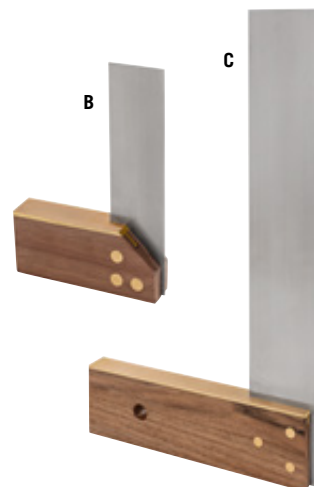
#### D INCRA® GUARANTEED 90° SQUARE

This precision square from Incra is made from a single piece of hardened aluminium, which makes it not only robust but also extremely accurate. Unlike a conventional two-piece square, it remains accurate even if you drop it. The two fences attached on both sides create a

support lip that makes marking easy. Anodised surface. Accuracy 0.01 mm per 100 mm. Stock length 100 or 140 mm Tongue length

140 mm **No. 707525**

185 mm **No. 707526**

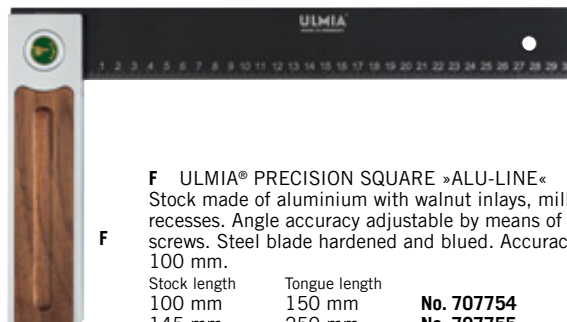


#### E ULMIA® PRECISION MITRE GAUGE »ALU-LINE«

For scribing mitres at angles of 45° and 135°. Stock made of aluminium with

walnut inlays. Angle accuracy adjustable by means of two precision screws. Steel blade hardened and blued. Accuracy 0.02 mm per 100 mm. Overall length 350 mm

**No. 707757**



#### F ULMIA® PRECISION SQUARE »ALU-LINE«

Stock made of aluminium with walnut inlays, milled hand recesses. Angle accuracy adjustable by means of two precision screws. Steel blade hardened and blued. Accuracy 0.02 mm per 100 mm.

Stock length	Tongue length
100 mm	150 mm
145 mm	250 mm
190 mm	350 mm

**No. 707754**

**No. 707755**

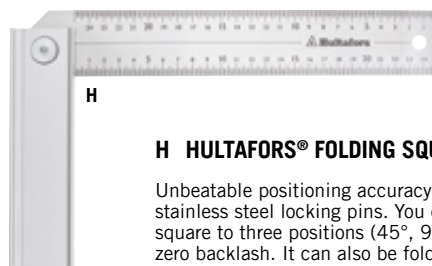
**No. 707756**



#### G SHINWA® TRY SQUARE

Handy and accurate: Precision square with millimetre scale on both sides, inner and outer dimensions. Stock decorated with Japanese motives. Stainless steel. Accuracy 0.1 mm per 100 mm. Stock length 95 mm Tongue length 175 mm

**No. 717115**



#### H HULTAFORS® FOLDING SQUARE QUATTRO 25

Unbeatable positioning accuracy thanks to four stainless steel locking pins. You can set the folding square to three positions (45°, 90° and 135°) with zero backlash. It can also be folded up for storage and fits in any toolbag. Hardened stainless steel blade with deep-etched scale on both sides. Stock made of anodised aluminium. Stock length 160 mm Tongue length 250 mm

**No. 707313**



**A MATSUI PRECISION TRY SQUARE**

Matsui's stainless steel try square impresses with an accuracy of 0.03 mm per 100 mm, 0.035 mm per 150 mm and 0.04 mm per 200 mm. On one side of the blade there is a scale in mm (inner edge) as well as a scale on the Ura-me (outer edge). On the opposite side of the blade there is a scale in mm on the outer edge.

**1 100 mm**

Scale front side 100 mm (outer edge), scale rear side 70 mm (inner edge) and ura-me (outer edge).  
Stock length 70 mm  
Tongue length 115 mm  
**No. 718635**

**2 150 mm**

Scale front side 150 mm (outer edge), scale rear side 120 mm (inner edge) and ura-me (outer edge).  
Stock length 98 mm  
Tongue length 170 mm  
**No. 718636**

**3 200 mm**

Scale front side 200 mm (outer edge), scale rear side 160 mm (inner edge) and ura-me (outer edge).  
Stock length 122 mm  
Tongue length 225 mm  
**No. 718637**

**B SOLID STEEL TRY SQUARE**

Small try square made from tool steel (not rustproof).  
Accuracy 0.08 mm per 100 mm.  
Stock length 80 mm  
Tongue length 125 mm  
**No. 707245**

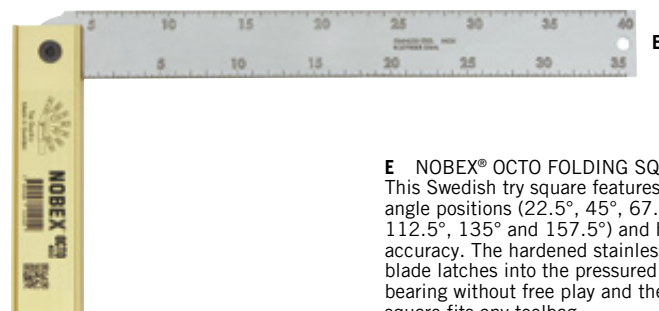
**C CARPENTER'S TRY SQUARE ALUMINIUM**

Reasonably priced try square with stainless steel blade and etched millimetre scale. Stock made of solid aluminium,

chamfered edges for scribing 45° mitres.  
Accuracy 0.2 mm per 100 mm.  
Stock length 145 mm  
Tongue length 250 mm  
**No. 707339**

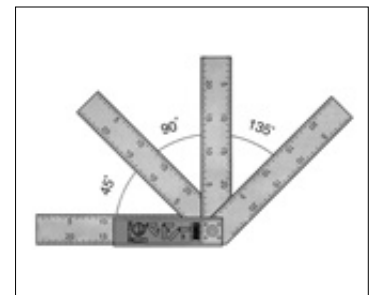
**D JAPANESE MINI TRY SQUARES**

Small Japanese try square with stainless steel blade and brass stock, ground.  
Accuracy 0.1 mm per 100 mm.  
Stock length 38 / 40 / 60 mm  
Tongue length  
45 mm **No. 707274**  
60 mm **No. 717120**  
100 mm **No. 717121**

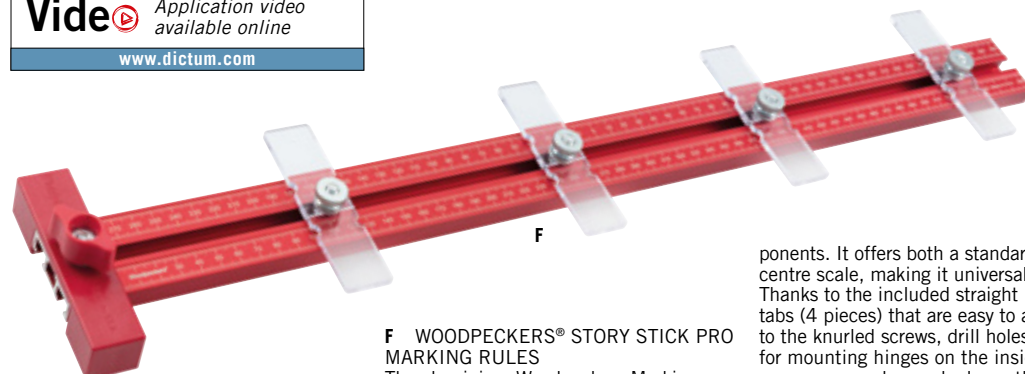


**E NOBEX® OCTO FOLDING SQUARES**  
This Swedish try square features seven angle positions (22.5°, 45°, 67.5°, 90°, 112.5°, 135° and 157.5°) and high accuracy. The hardened stainless steel blade latches into the pressured ball bearing without free play and the try square fits any toolbag.

Scale on both sides.  
Aluminium stock.  
Stock length 135 / 165 / 185 mm  
Tongue length  
200 mm **No. 707297**  
300 mm **No. 707298**  
400 mm **No. 707299**

**Woodpeckers®**

Founded in the USA in 1988, Woodpeckers tools are distinguished by their high manufacturing quality and extreme reliability. All items are made of high-quality materials and therefore offer maximum precision and durability together with extreme ease of handling.



**F WOODPECKERS® STORY STICK PRO MARKING RULES**  
The aluminium Woodpeckers Marking Rule is perfect for the precise transferring of measurements to several identical com-

ponents. It offers both a standard and a centre scale, making it universally usable. Thanks to the included straight Perspex tabs (4 pieces) that are easy to adjust due to the knurled screws, drill holes or holes for mounting hinges on the inside of carcasses can be marked exactly on both sides. The Story Stick Pro saves time and prevents transfer errors.



Millimetre scale.  
Thickness 12 mm  
Width 45 mm  
Length  
600 mm **No. 718443**  
1200 mm **No. 718455**  
Surcharge for bulky goods (1200 mm version only).  
4 Repl. Tabs **No. 718441**

**A WOODPECKERS® STAINLESS STEEL PRECISION SQUARE, 90°**  
Unmatched precision and quality: The combination of ultra-sturdy aluminium and stainless steel makes this square extremely robust and allows precise markings. Thanks to the special manufacturing process it is accurate to 0.01 mm per 100 mm. Thanks to

the double handle on both sides, the square has a support area with scale that enables comfortable handling and the exact marking or adjusting of machines. Diamond-shaped scribing holes are lasered into the tongue to obtain perfect markings when the pencil is guided parallel to the edge. Comes with MDF wall mount. Scale in mm.



**1 Model 642**  
Stock length 100 mm  
Tongue length 150 mm  
**No. 718477**

**2 Model 1282**  
Stock length 205 mm  
Tongue length 300 mm  
**No. 718478**

*Expected to be available from August 2021.*

**B WOODPECKERS® PRECISION SQUARE 90°**  
This precision square from Woodpeckers is made of ultra-sturdy aluminium and is therefore extremely robust. Due to the special manufacturing process, it is accurate to 0.01 mm per 100 mm. Thanks to the double handle on both sides, the square has a support area that enables comfortable marking. The milled slot in the tongue of model 1281 provides an additional grip. Comes with MDF wall mount. Scale in mm.

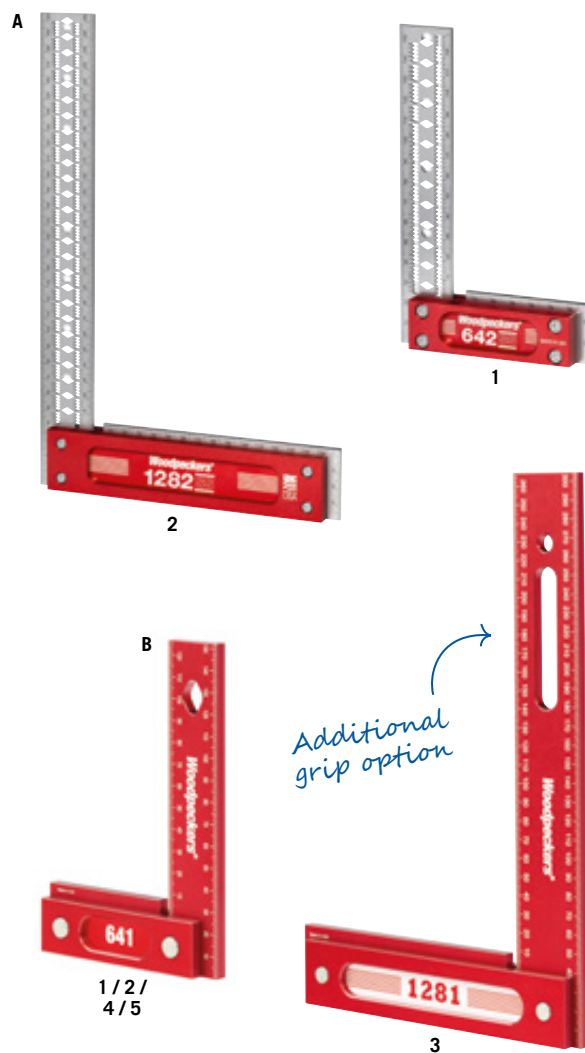
**1 Model 641**  
Stock length 100 mm  
Tongue length 150 mm  
**No. 718456**

**2 Model 851**  
Stock length 130 mm  
Tongue length 200 mm  
**No. 718457**

**3 Model 1281**  
Stock length 205 mm  
Tongue length 300 mm  
**No. 718446**

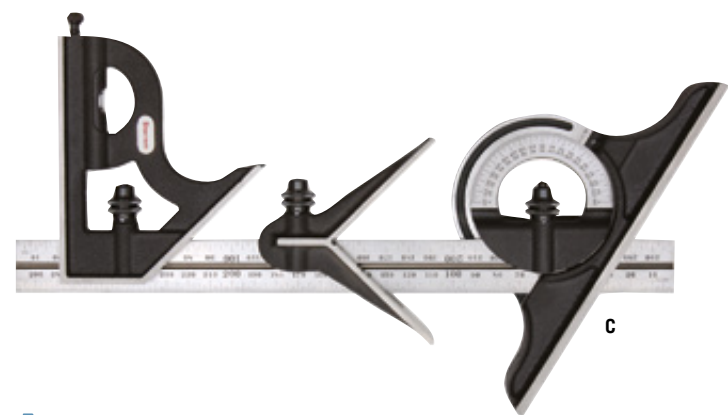
**4 Model 1812**  
Stock length 305 mm  
Tongue length 450 mm  
**No. 718471**

**5 Model 2616**  
Stock length 405 mm  
Tongue length 660 mm  
**No. 718470**



## Starrett®

For over 130 years, Starrett has been designing and manufacturing precision measuring tools for crafts and industry. The US-American company attaches the greatest importance to the precision and durability of their tools.



## C STARRETT® COMBINATION SQUARE, 4-PIECE SET

Highest precision:  
Versatile, precise measuring and marking tool, consisting of a 300 mm precision rule which can be fitted with either a combination 45°/90° square head with integrated spirit level, a locking protractor or a centring head. Hardened, slidable steel rule (not rustproof) with deepetched scale ensures excellent and lasting readability. Scale with 0.5 mm on reverse. Solvent-resistant and weatherproof grey cast iron heads with wrinkle-finish coating. Precision-ground edges.

Scriber included.  
Comes in plastic case.  
Rule length 300 mm.

**Standard Version**  
Standard square with good price/performance ratio.  
**No. 718302**

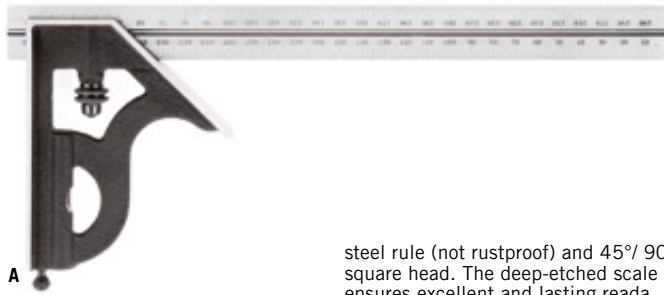
**Satinated Surface**  
The chrome-plated matt surface prevents reflections and ensures precise, non-glare reading of the scale.  
**No. 718305**



► Measuring instruments from Bridge City Tool Works available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





**A STARRETT® COMBINATION SQUARE, 2-PIECE SET**



High-quality combination square including a built-in marking scribe and level which makes it a versatile tool for all common scribing and measuring tasks. Slidable, hardened

steel rule (not rustproof) and 45°/90° square head. The deep-etched scale ensures excellent and lasting readability. Scale with 0.5 mm on reverse. Solvent-resistant and weatherproof grey cast iron heads with wrinkle-finish coating. Precision-ground edges. Rule length 300 mm.

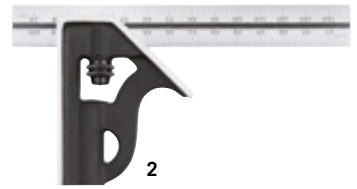
**Standard Version**  
Standard square with good price/performance ratio.  
**No. 718301**

**Satinated Surface**  
The chrome-plated matt surface prevents reflections and ensures precise, non-glare reading of the scale.  
**No. 718304**



**B STARRETT® COMPACT COMBINATION SQUARE**

A small precision square ideal for scribing and as a precision rule for planed wood workpieces. Slidable, hardened steel rule (not rustproof) and 45°/90° square head. The deep-etched scale ensures excellent and lasting readability. Scale with 0.5 mm on reverse. Solvent-resistant and weatherproof grey cast iron heads with wrinkle-finish coating. Precision-ground edges. Rule length 150 mm.



**1 Satinated Surface**

The chrome-plated matt surface prevents reflections and ensures precise, non-glare reading of the scale. Including a built-in marking scribe and level.

**No. 718306**

**2 Economy Version**

Economy version delivered without scribe and spirit level.

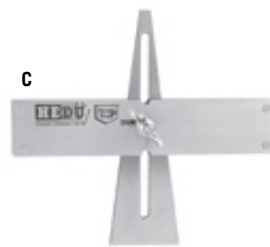
**No. 718303**



**C DOVETAIL GAUGE**

For marking straight and angled dovetail joints, 1:8 ratio. Adjustable width (6-40 mm) and angle, stainless steel. Blade and guide length 150 mm.

**No. 707179**



**D VERITAS® SLIDING SQUARE**

Innovative:

The carefully conceived sliding square proves to be the ideal aid for scribing hinges, fittings and mortise joints. The stainless steel plate is graduated along three sides. The right side of the blade can be inscribed by users due to the matt finish. Slip-proof light metal end stop with brass locking screw. Two diamond-shaped openings make parallel marking easier. Measuring scale 0-100 mm.

**No. 703647**

**E VERITAS® POCKET LAYOUT SQUARE**

Machined from solid aluminium, anodized and laser etched on both sides, this layout square is only 38 mm on a side. The base has a 3.2 mm offset on one edge and 6.4 mm on the other. The square has a rule scale in inch as well as angle graduations in 10°.

**No. 728867**



**F DOVETAIL MARKING JIG**

This marking jig facilitates scribing dovetail joints. One side 1:5 (outside) and 1:6 (inside) for softwood, the other side 1:8 (outside) and 1:10 (inside) for hardwood. Shaft length 27 mm.

**No. 715433**



**G SHINWA® MITRE SQUARE**

Stainless steel square for marking 45° and 90° angles with deep-etched millimetre scale. Cutouts in the square allow marking of opposite angles or parallel translation.

Precision-ground fence and edges. 170 x 100 x 15 mm

**No. 717147**



**H SHINWA® 3-D MITRE SQUARES**

Time-saving and precise: Can be used for marking 45° and 90° mitres on battens or counterbattens. This saves time and increases precision in making mitre joints or cross cuts. Cutouts in the square allow marking of opposite angles or parallel translation. Made of anodised aluminium, with permanently etched scale markings.

**H**



**1**



**2**

**1 45°/90° Square**

169 x 63 x 73 mm. For mitres and crosscuts.

**No. 717122**

**2 45°/45° Square**

200 x 63 x 73 mm. For marking pairs of mitres.

**No. 717123**



**I VERITAS® DOVETAIL MARKER**

Precision tools for marking dovetails. Aluminium, black anodised, extra-long stock, relieved inside corner.

**1:6 (softwood)**

40 x 50 x 65 mm

**No. 703654**

**1:8 (hardwood)**

40 x 50 x 65 mm

**No. 703655**

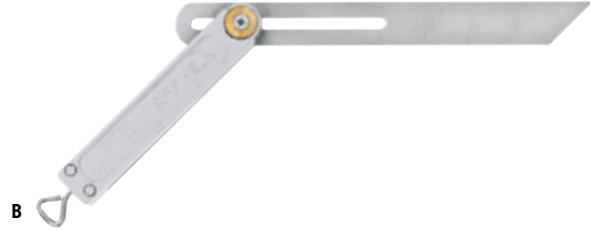


## Sliding Bevels and Profile Gauges



**A** ENGLISH SLIDING BEVEL, WALNUT  
Stock made of walnut with brass fittings. Angles are fixed through an adjustment screw, which is not in the way like a lever when marking or transferring angles.

Blued and hardened steel blade.  
Stock length 150 mm  
Tongue length 230 mm  
**No. 707327**



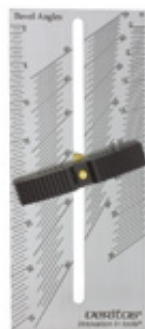
**B** SHINWA® SLIDING BEVEL  
Japanese precision sliding bevel with aluminium stock. Chrome-plated steel blade. The locking mechanism is positioned in the upper part of the stock to

prevent it from interfering during use.  
Stock length 125 / 150 mm  
Tongue length  
200 mm **No. 717144**  
250 mm **No. 717146**



► *Ulmia® Sliding Bevel »Alu Line«*  
(No. 707758) available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**C** VERITAS® BEVEL SETTER

Set bevels faster:  
This is an ingenious tool for setting angles when lining up and for marking or measuring workpieces. Pieces can be positioned freely in line with the etched markings or with the help of the fence. Special dovetail and polygon markings are on the back, as well as a millimetre scale.  
75 x 180 mm  
**No. 703667**

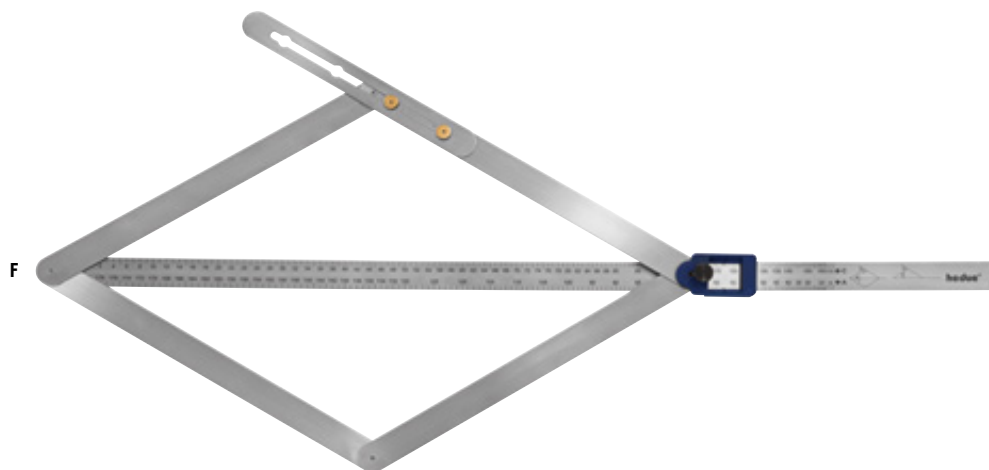


**D** MINI SLIDING BEVEL  
Stainless steel blade. Handle made of warp-free bamboo composite material.  
Stock length 65 mm  
Tongue length 95 mm  
**No. 707176**

**E** SHINWA® CARPENTER'S SLIDING BEVEL WITH DEGREE SCALE, 300 MM  
This carpenter's sliding bevel combines the functions of sliding bevel and graduated. On the inside of the stop is a metric scale and on the outside a degree scale for precise angle setting. The tongue can be swivelled through the 180° point. You can draw pencil markings on the aluminium surface that are easy to remove with your finger.  
Stock length 355 mm  
Tongue length 315 mm  
**No. 717227**



**F** MITRE GUIDE  
Saves time and avoids inaccuracies:  
Mitre guide for measuring any external or internal angle and transferring it directly to the workpiece or saw. With angle and bisectrix markings for perfect mitre cuts. Folds to the width of steel rule. Stainless spring steel. Scale 0°-160° / 15°-180°. Overall length 770 mm. Shaft length 300 mm  
**No. 707929**



**G** M. POWER TOOLS POINT.2.POINT  
For laying out equal spacings, e.g. dovetails, dowels, etc. Extends to 600 mm and can be locked in any position to transfer up to seven position markings (six equal spacings) to the workpiece. Stainless steel, brass screws. Not suitable for high-precision applications.  
Max. length 600 mm  
**No. 707267**



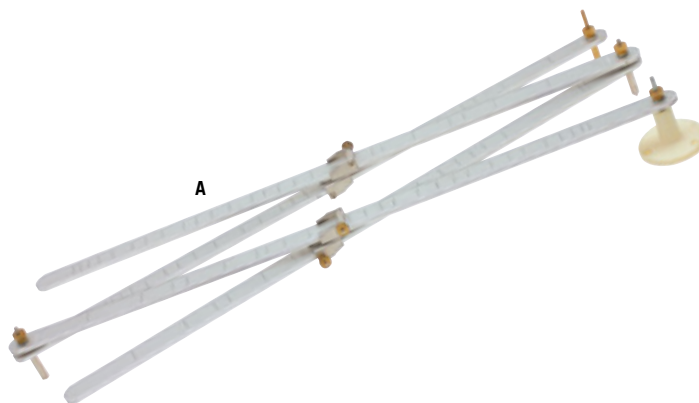
**A PANTOGRAPH**

Classic tool

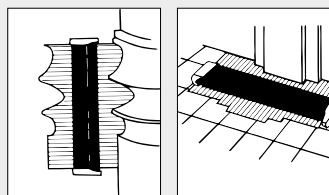
The pantograph (Greek for «all-round writer») transfers drawings, contours and profiles in the same, larger or smaller scale from the plan to the workpiece and thus saves a detour via computer or photocopier. With the help of the milled scale and fixing nuts made of solid brass, the transfer ratio can be adjusted from tenfold enlargement to tenfold reduction. Not suitable for high-precision applications.

Length 500 mm

No. 708095

**Profile gauges**

Profile gauges create a positive and negative image of any profile by pressing. The ease of use is only surpassed by the wide range of possible applications. Restorers and turners use this tool for copying profiles, floor layers use it for fitting work, boat builders and violin makers for checking arches.

**B****B PROFILE GAUGE WITH PLASTIC BLADES**

For measuring and transferring profiles. No offset necessary, as blades are flush with the frame. Blade thickness 1.3 mm.

Overall length

1 125 mm **No. 707145**2 255 mm **No. 707147**

Extension for Profile Gauge  
Fits No. 707145, 707147.  
**No. 707146**

**C****C PROFILE GAUGE WITH STAINLESS STEEL PINS**

With fine stainless steel pins for particularly accurate results. Needle diameter of 0.75 mm. Specified in millimetre.

Working depth 50 mm,  
Overall length 150 mm  
**No. 707167**

Working depth 105 mm,  
Overall length 300 mm  
**No. 717142**

**D STAIR SPIDER**

Six »legs« (calliper gauges) of hardened spring band steel easily transfer even the most complex stair shape for making templates or directly to the raw material for the next step. Locked with a wing nut.

Comes in a wooden box.

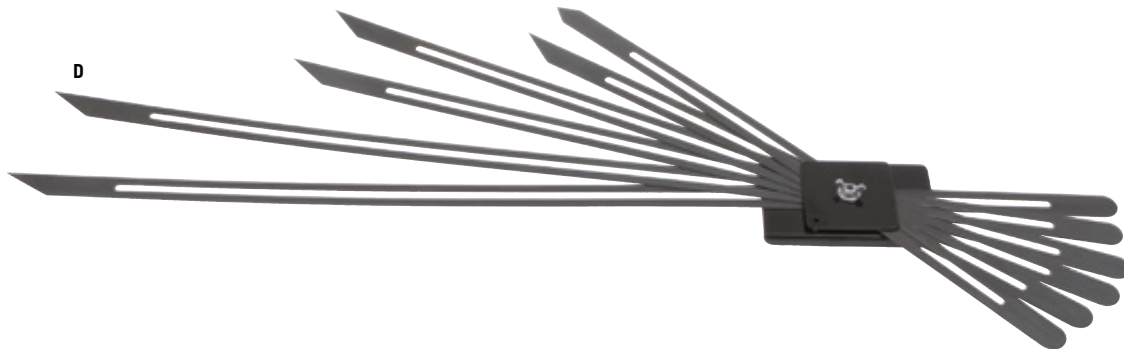
Callipers 2 x 600 mm; 2 x 800 mm;

2 x 1000 mm.

Overall length 1000 mm

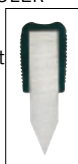
910 g

No. 707318

**D****Flatness Inspection, Set-up Blocks****E****E PRECISION KNIFE EDGE RULER**

Highest precision:

The best way of checking if a surface is flat is with this straight edge, using the light-gap method. The rules are bevelled on the measurement edge and have a textured rubber grip. Stainless steel, accuracy grade 00 in



accordance with DIN 874, supplied in a protective case.  
Tolerance 0.002-0.004 mm.  
Thickness 8 mm  
Overall length  
100 mm **No. 707290**  
300 mm **No. 707291**  
500 mm **No. 707292**

**F****F VERITAS® ALUMINIUM STRAIGHTEDGES**

Extremely lightweight flat rule, wide enough to stand on edge unsupported. Very useful for setting up devices such as machine tables, router stops or to control flatness. Accuracy 0.075 mm over the entire length.



Note: Better use a high-precision straight-edge rule (e.g. No. 707292) to control the flatness of plane soles. Anodised aluminium, serrated gripping surface.  
Cross-section 44.5 x 11 mm.  
Overall length  
457 mm **No. 703860**  
610 mm **No. 703861**  
965 mm **No. 703862**



**A PRECISION KNIFE EDGE SQUARE**  
For checking the squareness of an edge, using the light-gap method. The blade is bevelled on both sides. Blade cross-section 18 x 5.5 mm, stainless steel. Accuracy grade 00 in accordance with DIN 875, squareness tolerance of 0.004 mm, supplied in a protective case. Stock length 70 / 130 mm  
Tongue length  
100 mm **No. 707280**  
200 mm **No. 707281**



**B VERITAS® METRIC SET-UP BLOCKS, 9-PIECE SET**  
Ideal for adjusting spaces, e.g. between parallel fences or depths, e.g. when working with circular saws, routers, table routers or drills. Combined with the steel block, the eight different set-up blocks, which are accurate within 0.05 mm, stack from 0.5 up to 123 mm in 0.5 mm steps.  
• Three vinyl set-up blocks: 2 x 0.5 and 1 x 1 mm

- Five aluminium set-up blocks: 2, 4, 8 and 2 x 16 mm
- Steel set-up block: 25 x 50 x 75 mm, accurate within 0.018 mm; bore diameter approx. 8.8 mm; ideal as multifunctional workshop device, drilling aid, angle or machine stop etc.

Comes in a practical plastic case. Measuring range 0.5-123 mm  
**No. 703854**

## Spirit Levels



**C CRICK® WOODEN LEVEL, 600 MM**  
This unusual wooden spirit level from the USA was developed in the mid-19th century, originally for masonry work. But thanks to its impressive look, feel and precision, it also has what it takes to

become a cult tool among woodworkers. As the wood only minimally absorbs heat or cold, it is comfortable to hold even in extreme temperatures. It also absorbs any blows during alignment and gentle readjustment.

- Double vial with long »bubble travel« for precise measuring of inclination angles
- Scratch-resistant vials prevent plaster from sticking
- Protective stainless steel edges

- Warp-free sandwich construction of American cherry and maple

Accuracy 0.4 mm/m in normal position. 600 x 63 x 30 mm  
**No. 717264**



**D WOODEN LEVEL**  
Fine, compact spirit level in the traditional »torpedo« form. Warp-free bamboo

composite material with brass fittings. 230 x 19 x 38 mm  
**No. 707177**



**E GRADOMETER**  
Compact Japanese level for accurately measuring oblique or inclination angles, e.g. in carpentry, interior construction or plumbing. Rotating bubble level with angle, graduated and inclination scale, 0° to 90°, accuracy ±1°. Aluminium, V-shaped groove (for pipes etc.), rubber impact protection. Overall length 100 mm  
**No. 717158**

**F SHINWA® LINE SPIRIT LEVEL**  
You can use this ultra-light spirit level to check whether a tensioned line guide is level or not. The spirit level is hung on the line by the two eyelets. It can also be used as a normal surface spirit level. Overall length 100 mm  
15 g  
**No. 707226**



**G BRASS PLUMB LINE**  
Plumb bob of varnished brass with nut to fasten the string and replaceable tip of hardened steel. The 3 m braided polyamide string is tearproof and weather-resistant and is cut hot to prevent frizzling. Replacement tip included. Overall length 120 mm, string length 3 m. Ø 28 mm, 220 g  
**No. 707286**



### Acrylic Measuring Tools Diamond

Compact and light measuring tools of unbreakable acrylic glass. Their crystalline appearance is not only elegant but also makes handling easier. The high level of manufacturing precision means that either side can be used for reference.



**H DIAMOND MINI SPIRIT LEVEL, ACRYLIC GLASS**  
With two vials for checking horizontality, verticality or squareness. Accurate to within 0.14°. 15 x 25 x 75 mm  
**No. 717151**



**I DIAMOND CARD LEVEL, ACRYLIC GLASS**  
A credit-card size, 6 mm thick spirit level, with a 45° / 60° / 90° display as well as a deviation indicator (1/100 and 2/100). 54 x 86 mm  
**No. 717155**

## Inspection Instruments



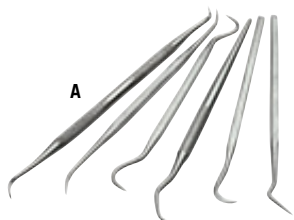
**J PRECISION TWEEZERS, POINTED TIP**  
Stainless steel. Slightly cranked, slim. Overall length 110 mm  
**No. 707141**



**K PRECISION TWEEZERS, ROUND TIP**  
Stainless steel. Cranked. Overall length 110 mm  
**No. 707142**

**L PRECISION TWEEZERS, 6-PIECE SET**  
High-quality tweezers for technical applications. Pointed 120 mm, 150 mm and 180 mm; cranked 175 mm; flat with locking slide 165 mm; reverse action (self locking) 165 mm.  
**No. 707143**



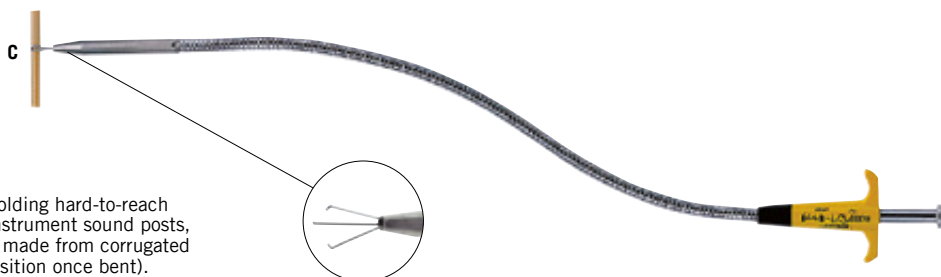


**A HOOKS AND PICKS, 6-PIECE SET**  
Stainless steel dental picks and hooks with fine needle-point tips for picking up, adjusting, marking, or cleaning small objects.  
Overall length 130-160 mm  
**No. 700431**

**B BEND-A-LIGHT®**  
This lamp with a flexible, coated brass shaft provides bright light in hollow and hard-to-reach spaces. The supplied protective tube can also be fitted onto the handle to extend it.

**1 Long**  
Long version with LED bulb and compartment for three AA 1.5 V batteries. Batteries included.  
Head diameter 5 mm  
Shaft length 380 mm  
Overall length 620 mm  
**No. 708005**  
Repl. Bulb **No. 708014**

**2 Short**  
Short version with krypton bulb and compartment for two AA 1.5 V batteries. Batteries included.  
Head diameter 5 mm  
Shaft length 250 mm  
Overall length 400 mm  
**No. 708001**  
Repl. Bulb **No. 708002**

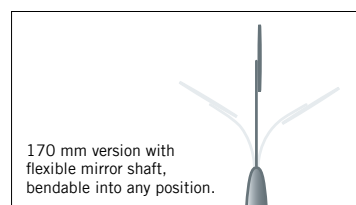


**C RETRIEVER**  
For grasping and holding hard-to-reach objects (stringed instrument sound posts, etc). Flexible shaft made from corrugated hose (retains its position once bent). With three claws.  
Mount approx. 16 mm.  
Ø 9 mm  
Overall length 500 mm  
**No. 717190**

**D EXTENDABLE MAGNETIC PICKUP**  
Tool for retrieving screws or other ferromagnetic objects from narrow recesses and hollows.  
Extendable to a length of 85 cm.  
Lifting power 2.2 kg  
**No. 707378**



**E INSPECTION MIRROR**  
For inspecting hollow bodies and areas that are hard-to-reach.  
170 mm version with flexible mirror shaft, bendable into any position.  
Ø 30 mm  
Overall length  
**1 170 mm No. 707113**  
Repl. Mirror **No. 707115**  
**2 225 mm No. 707111**  
Repl. Mirror **No. 707100**



**F TELESCOPIC MIRROR**  
Double ball-jointed mirror with telescopic handle. Fits into any shirt pocket thanks to its compact length.  
Ø 30 mm  
Overall length 195-690 mm (telescopic)  
**No. 707112**



**G SHINWA® MAGNIFIER, 15X MAGNIFICATION**  
This handy magnifier with base guarantees the optimal distance between object and lens and is therefore ideal for controlling knife and tool edges after sharpening. The focus can be adjusted by rotating the black ABS plastic frame. A scaled 6 mm-long square opening in the bottom of the magnifier provides optimal magnification.  
Scale in increments of 0.1 mm.  
Lens diameter 20 mm.  
**No. 717497**



**H SHINWA® POCKET MICROSCOPE, 60X-100X MAGNIFICATION**  
Compact, efficient, pocket-sized microscope equipped with LED light. This handy microscope provides high resolution and good definition with 60x-100x magnification even in poor lighting conditions. It is perfect for controlling knife and tool edges after sharpening. Two rotary knobs adjust the magnification and focus. Casing made of ABS plastic. Batteries (three LR 1130 1,5 V) and protective case included.  
85 x 35 x 20 mm  
**No. 717317**

## Wood Moisture Measurement

### A SHINWA® THERMOMETER/HYGROMETER, SET

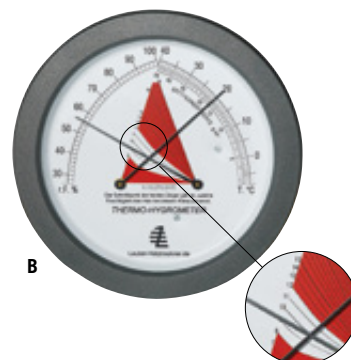
Perfect for monitoring interior room temperature and humidity, e.g. for wood drying or special surface technologies (Urushi). Interior comfort temperatures are marked in colour. Large print scale numbers allow precise and easy measurement. Easily attached to any smooth surface via adhesive pads. Measuring range of thermometer: -30 to +70 °C.



Measuring range of hygrometer: 0 to 100 %  
Material: plastic.  
Diameter: 45 mm.  
**No. 717498**

### B WOOD MOISTURE MEASURING INSTRUMENT

With this measuring instrument, you can determine the wood humidity set in a room. The two indicators show temperature and relative air humidity. The intersection of the indicators determines the anticipated wood balance humidity. This value is decisive for the swelling and shrinking of the wood. The measuring instrument is used to monitor the drying of wood or to check the room climate in workshops, storerooms and new buildings with regard to the wood humidity. This is the only way to guarantee gentle drying or the right wood humidity for using the wood.



Ø 150 mm  
**No. 707133**

### C GANN ELECTRODE MOISTURE METER, MEASURING RANGE 5-20 %

The wood and plaster moisture meter functions using two measuring electrodes which are pushed into the material. The device measures the electrical resistance (and therefore the level of moisture) of the wood, wood-based material, plaster or mixed plaster. Made by Gann in Germany, the maximum measuring depth is 20-25 mm. Measuring range for wood moisture: 5-20 %, measuring range for plaster moisture: 0.3-3.5 %. Two settings for corrections due to wood type. Includes a standard 9 V PP3 battery and five pairs of replacement tips.

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

130 g  
**No. 707314**  
Repl. Tips (1 Pair)  
**No. 727314**



destructive measurement to a depth of 5 cm, needle mode measures to a depth of 1.2 cm. Also suitable for concrete. Measuring range of 0-80 %. Sturdy professional quality in a plastic case with wooden chart. Four AAA 1.5 V batteries included.

180 g  
**No. 707285**

► Replacement tips on request!

### D MOISTURE METER WITH ELECTRODE AND NON-DESTRUCTIVE MODE

Nothing is more irritating than the drying cracks or heavy warping that can occur after working on wood that is too wet. This moisture meter provides assistance with two different measuring modes: search mode provides non-



### Correct determination of wood humidity (in %) according to relative air humidity

The topic of wood humidity is important to every woodworker who works with solid wood. One property of wood is that it absorbs water from the air. Therefore, wood has a relative humidity of 10 % if there is a relative air humidity of 60 %. If the air humidity rises, so does the wood humidity and vice versa. These processes continue until the humidity of the wood and the humidity of the air are in balance.



When wood absorbs moisture (swells), it increases in volume, and when it transpires (shrinks), it reduces in volume. This must be borne in mind when making solid wood furniture and can be resolved with a professional construction process.

Besides being professionally constructed, it is necessary to ensure that the wood becomes acclimatised to the end conditions before and during the furniture making process. We recommend storing the wood (preferably already roughly cut) four weeks prior to construction in similar room conditions. With a thermo- and hygrometer (No. 717498) you can compare the climatic conditions of different rooms.

For obtaining information about the actual wood humidity (in %), a moisture

meter (No. 707285 or 707314) is recommended. Compare these values with the reference values (see below). If the measured wood humidity values lie outside these reference values, the wood has to be stored longer.

Reference values (±2 %) for the wood humidity of closed rooms.

**with** central heating: wood humidity approx. 9 %

**without** central heating: wood humidity approx. 12 %.

The most convenient way to determine the expected wood moisture in a room is by using a wood moisture measuring instrument (e.g. No. 707133).

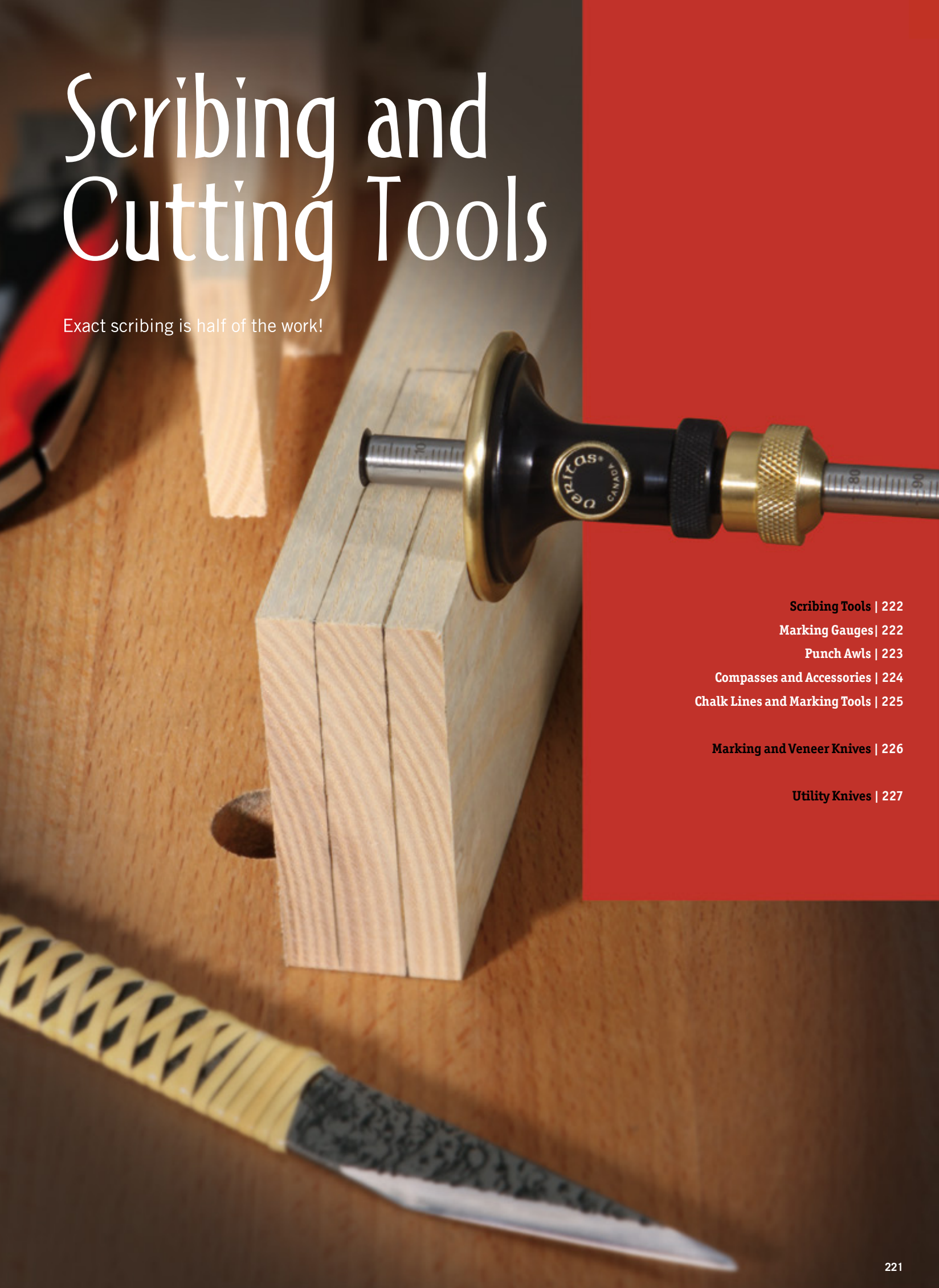


► More analogue and digital thermometers and hygrometers available online.



# Scribing and Cutting Tools

Exact scribing is half of the work!



**Scribing Tools | 222**

**Marking Gauges | 222**

**Punch Awls | 223**

**Compasses and Accessories | 224**

**Chalk Lines and Marking Tools | 225**

**Marking and Veneer Knives | 226**

**Utility Knives | 227**

## Scribing Tools

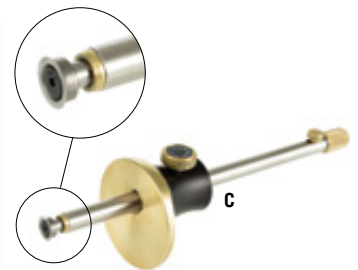
## Marking Gauges



**A VERITAS® MARKING GAUGE, MICRO-ADJUST**

Features a micro-adjustment mechanism for highly accurate markings. The cutting disc of this marking gauge is bevelled on one side only, facilitating accurate and reliable results even when cutting end grain or difficult grain patterns. Steel guide rod, hardened cutter, anodised aluminium head with brass fence and adjustment screw. Deep-etched scale in mm. Working range 0-150 mm

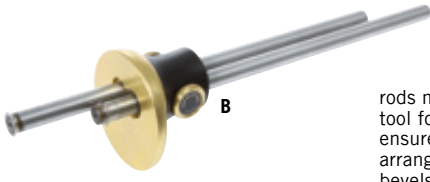
**No. 703656**  
Repl. Blade **No. 707183**



**C VERITAS® MARKING GAUGE WITH SEPARATE MICRO ADJUST**

The separate micro-adjustment mechanism can be set even when the guide rod is locked. Guarantees precise and simple adjustment in micrometre range. The single-bevelled, circular knife delivers clean and reliable results, even with end grain or awkward grain patterns. You can insert the knife all the way into the off-centre stop with large contact surface. Steel guide rod, hardened knife, brass stop and locking screw. Working range 0-110 mm

**No. 717537**  
Repl. Blade **No. 800396**



**B VERITAS® DUAL MARKING GAUGE**

Two independently adjustable guide rods make this marking gauge an ideal tool for mortise and tenon joints. To ensure precise scribing, both knives are arranged in such a way that the knife bevels are always set in the waste of the cut. The eccentric placement of the rods results in a large contact surface and allows the knives to be completely

retracted. This allows you to also work with only one rod, as required. Working range 0-150 mm

**No. 703673**  
Repl. Blade, Outside **No. 800396**  
Repl. Blade, Inside **No. 800395**




**D MINI PRECISION MARKING GAUGE**

Can be used with a needle or scribing knife: This compact marking gauge is an ingenious scribing tool for wood joints, small wooden objects, model making and craft carpentry. It can be fitted with a straight or disc-shaped scribing knife or a needle, according to preference. The

fence, which is locked in place with a clamping sleeve, may also be adjusted with one hand; its asymmetric shape makes precise scribing possible, even on thin workpieces. Includes 12 straight blades, 1 disc blade, 1 needle. Working range 0-85 mm

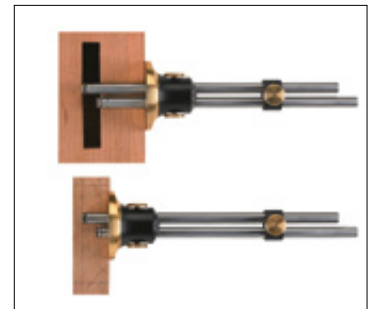
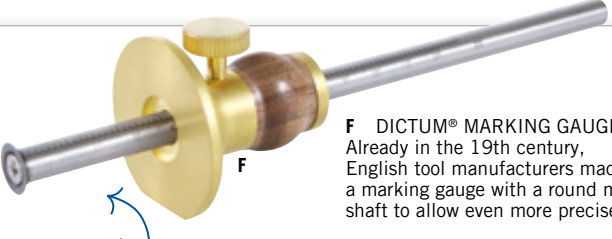
**No. 703645**  
Repl. Disc Blade **No. 707183**  
12 Straight Repl. Blades **No. 703830**



**E SHAFT CLAMP FOR VERITAS® DUAL MARKING GAUGE**

This useful shaft clamp connects the two independently adjustable guide rods of the Dual Marking Gauge No. 703673, allowing the guide rods to be shifted simultaneously and in parallel. This allows you to preserve identical mortise or tenon sizing when joining parts of different thicknesses.

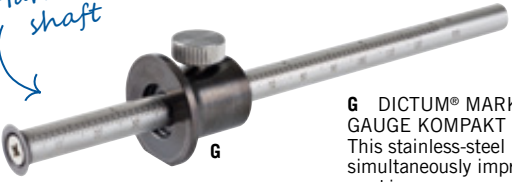
**No. 703604**

**F DICTUM® MARKING GAUGE**

Already in the 19th century, English tool manufacturers made a marking gauge with a round metal shaft to allow even more precise marking


*Hardened shaft*



**G DICTUM® MARKING GAUGE KOMPAKT**

This stainless-steel marking gauge simultaneously impresses with its high marking accuracy and compact form. It is the tool of choice for inlay work and small-format workpieces.

*Micro-adjust*



**H DICTUM® MICRO-ADJUST MARKING GAUGE**

With micrometric fine adjustment for high-precision marking. The single-bevelled, disc cutter ensures clean and

*Available from May 2021.*

of mortises and material thickness. As well as its high marking accuracy, our marking gauge has an impressive rounded wooden insert for a warm, ergonomic grip. To keep the gauge true even on difficult grain, the marking head is designed as a disc blade. A deep-etched shaft scale for quick setup as well as

the roll-stop face on the brass fence complete this high-grade marking tool. Hardened metal shaft. Working range 0-150 mm Length 185 mm

**No. 717175**  
Repl. Blade **No. 717176**

The shaft is hardened and the locking screw has a pressed-in brass pressure pin to prevent pressure marks on the shaft and make the scale permanently legible. Electrochemically treated stainless steel stop (similar to tempering colours)

improves corrosion protection on the main gripping surface. Deeply etched scale for quick adjustment. A roll stop device at the stop prevents the marking gauge from rolling away. Working range 0-130 mm Length 150 mm

**No. 717203**  
Repl. Blade **No. 717176**

reliable results, even with end grain or awkward grain patterns. Milled shaft and stainless steel stop. The adjusting sleeve, also made of stainless steel, is electrochemically treated (similar

to colour annealing), which improves corrosion protection on the main gripping surface. The replaceable cutter is hardened. Deep-etched shaft scale. Working range 0-115 mm Length 185 mm

**No. 717204**  
Repl. Blade **No. 717176**



## WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

## MULTI-DOVETAIL COURSE



**Content:** In this course you will make different types of dovetails on sample pieces using hand tools. You will learn the different methods of marking as well as how to work joints by hand. In addition to half-blind and mitred dovetails, you will learn how to make angled dovetails, corner dovetails at different angles, and special tail shapes like devil dovetails.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

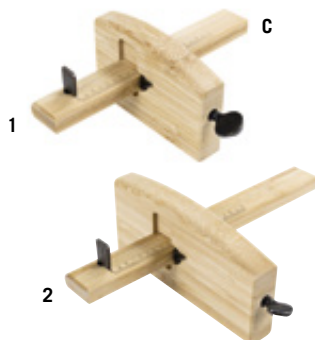


**A ULMIA® DUAL MARKING GAUGE WITH DISC KNIFE**  
Instead of being scratched, the mark is cut with a disc blade, without tearing. While scribes tend to follow the grain, the disc blade holds an exact course even across the grain and with difficult fibre flows. The single-bevel blade is easy to remove and sharpen. Marking gauge head made of hornbeam with inlaid measurement scale

0-150 mm, fence surface with toothed and glued wear-resistant hardwood support, brass locking screw.  
Working range 0-150 mm  
**No. 707164**  
Repl. Blade **No. 800303**



**B TRADITIONAL ENGLISH MARKING GAUGE**  
Walnut marking gauge made in England. Supplied with two scribes, one of which can be adjusted separately by a sliding fastener. Ideal for quick parallel marks (grooves, tenons). Another scribe on the opposite side of the arm is used to produce simple markings.  
Working range 0-120 mm  
**No. 703965**



**C JAPANESE MARKING GAUGE, 1 CUTTER**  
For tear-free, clean marking, also across the grain or on end grain. Japanese marking gauges have single-bevelled cutters and can also be used for pre-cutting thin boards or thick veneers. The long stop prevents tilting. Bamboo body. Measuring scale up to 100 mm.

**1 110 mm**  
Working range 0-110 mm  
**No. 717696**  
**2 140 mm**  
Working range 0-140 mm  
**No. 717697**

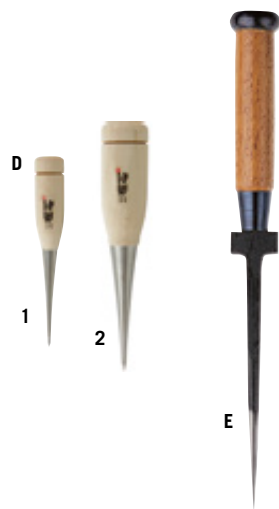
## Punch Awls

**D PUNCH AWL**  
Hardened steel point with white oak handle. Also for marking.

**1 Drift length 55 mm**  
Overall length 105 mm  
**No. 717205**

**2 Drift length 60 mm**  
Overall length 130 mm  
**No. 717206**

**E NAIL STARTER**  
Tool for making pilot holes to start long nails. Forged, hardened steel blade with a hilted tang. Red oak handle, ferruled on both sides.  
Drift length 150 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
**No. 717200**



## BY HAND &amp; EYE

George R. Walker, Jim Tolpin:  
This book provides a deep insight into the world of architecture and design. Instead of complex formulae with magical names like the golden ratio, the authors present simple ubiquitous proportions that were already used in crafts before the industrial revolution. The key to great design is mastering these basic principles. Besides the exercises, the book provides many examples and encourages readers to use simple geometry for better design. The principles described in the book are applied in nine contemporary projects that anybody can recreate. 186 pages, hardcover, colour illustrations on every page. 152 x 228 mm.

**No. 713990**



## F CENTRE MARKER

For exactly marking and punching the screw positions on fittings such as key plates and hinges. The spring-loaded cone centres itself in the screw holes of the fittings when the steel tip is pressed into the wood. This way, the screw heads are always positioned perfectly in the centre so that the fittings cannot shift.



For screw head diameters of 3-6 mm.  
Length 130 mm  
**No. 717218**



► Starrett® centre punches available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**G DICTUM® CENTROFIX**  
The professional fitting tool:  
This revolutionary spring-loaded centre punch allows you to pierce the centre of bored screw holes for fittings such as drawer pull-outs and hinges. When you press the hammer button, the hardened centering tip is punched into the wood and retracted into its original position by a spring. A 45° cone on the tip centres the tool



in the bore hole or the counterbore, allowing it to be used in premounted cabinets without a good view of the screw hole. The tool can be completely disassembled and consists of a stainless steel body, a replaceable centering tip and a walnut handle with protective stainless steel end cap.  
Overall length 143 mm  
145 g  
**No. 717214**



For illustration purposes only.  
Product may vary.

**Vide** on how to use the  
**DICTUM® Centrofix**  
available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)





## Compasses and Accessories

**A WING COMPASS »L'ARC«**

Since as far back as the Middle Ages, the compass has been resplendent on the emblem of the carpenters' guild along with the square and the plane. Since the wing compass allows secure locking of the set measurement, it is considered an improved version of the older dividers. Our French model combines a simple design with functional materials. With legs of gunmetal finished and therefore rust-protected steel, brass hinge and lever for adjustment, hardened tips. In this day and age only a few tradespeople still know the value of a compass. It allows you to evenly divide distances like no other tool (often quicker than a pocket calculator), construct ovals and ellipses, and determine aesthetic proportions based on the »golden ratio«.

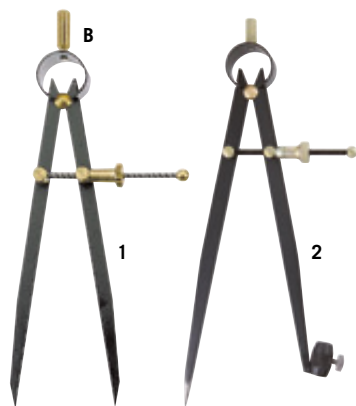


**1 Two Tips**  
Shaft length 160 mm  
Max. opening 180 mm  
**No. 707376**

**2 with Pencil Holder**  
Comes with DICTUM pencil.  
Shaft length 160 mm  
Max. opening 180 mm  
**No. 707377**

**3 with Pencil Holder**  
Comes with DICTUM pencil.  
Shaft length 310 mm  
Max. opening 355 mm  
**No. 707726**

**4 with Carpenter's Pencil Holder**  
Comes with DICTUM-Carpenter's pencil.  
Shaft length 310 mm  
Max. opening 355 mm  
**No. 707727**



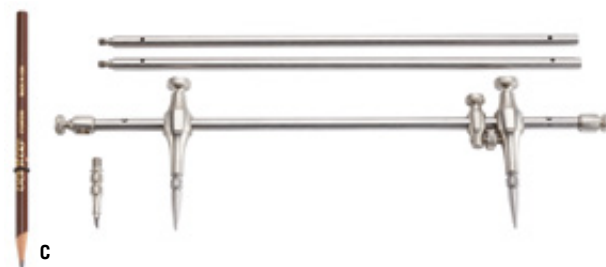
**B FRENCH SPRING DIVIDERS**  
Elegant French spring dividers made of gunmetal finished steel, with hardened points, quick-acting screws.

**1 Shaft Length 150 mm**  
Max. opening 160 mm  
**No. 707150**

**Shaft Length 200 mm**  
Max. opening 215 mm  
**No. 707330**

**2 with Pencil Holder,**  
**Shaft Length 150 mm**  
Max. opening 160 mm  
**No. 707151**

**with Pencil Holder,**  
**Shaft Length 200 mm**  
Max. opening 215 mm  
**No. 707331**

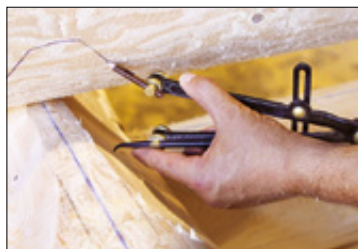


**C VERITAS® BEAM COMPASS**  
Practical stainless steel beam compass for marking large dimensions. The standard use with only one beam allows the sketching of circles with a diameter of 76-610 mm. With the two included additional beams, the diameter can be easily increased up to 1828 mm.

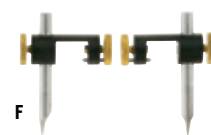
Two options are available for marking: a steel tip for scribing or a holder for standard pens to use for sketching on wood or soft metals. The integrated fine adjustment system allows precise adjustments up to 6 mm. Pencil included.  
**No. 717539**



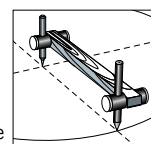
**D VERITAS® LOG SCRIBE »SCRIBER«**  
Essential for building log cabins: For transferring contours to round stock, especially for marking corner joints (log home building). Two built-in levels, two steel pins (with a pointed tip for compass work and a rounded tip for smooth scribing) and a pencil holder. Aluminium body with brass fittings, solid plastic case. Instructions included.  
Max. opening 300 mm  
**No. 707269**



**E VERITAS® TRAMMEL POINTS**  
For making beam compasses. The points score clear lines on any wood, and are also effective on aluminium, brass, bronze and unhardened steel. With the points removed, the trammel bodies double as square gauges, clamping onto a square to make repetitive angle marking easy. Made from stainless steel.  
**No. 701859**



**F VERITAS® BEAM COMPASS HEADS**  
For making beam compasses of any size. Two aluminium heads with pencil holders and steel points, one of which is eccentric to facilitate fine adjustment. Brass hardware. Thin square timbers are suitable as shafts.  
**No. 707231**



## Chalk Lines and Marking Tools



### A SHINWA® INK LINE

Similar to a chalk line, an ink line is used to mark straight lines to wooden components. A fine silk thread is drawn out through ink soaked cotton wool, tensioned and then snapped against the workpiece. This allows you to mark very long (up to 10 m), fine and exceptionally accurate lines, also on uneven workpieces

such as round timber. Can also be used as a plumb line. Unbreakable plastic body, leak-proof, auto-rewind thread. Ink not included. Comes with operating instructions.

180 x 80 x 40 mm.  
Thread length 20 m

**No. 717442**

Repl. Thread **No. 717291**



### B SHINWA® MINI INK LINE

Professional quality, compact ink line. Auto-rewind thread. Ink not included. Comes with operating instructions.

145 x 70 x 35 mm.

Thread length 15 m

**No. 717441**

Repl. Thread **No. 717294**



### C SHINWA® LIQUID INK

For ink lines, water-soluble. Colour blue

200 ml

**No. 730458**

### D SOLA® CLP CHALK LINE INCL. BLUE CHALK POWDER

Robust chalk line device made of die-cast magnesium with signal red powder coating. Blue chalk included.

- 5:1 gear ratio for fastest rewinding
- Freewheel function by pressing the crank axis
- Slide-in compartment for quick filling
- Hand crank and hardened steel hook fold into the case
- Extremely tearproof polyester thread
- Stainless steel belt clip

135 x 85 x 55 mm.  
Thread length 30 m

**No. 718044**



### E SHINWA® CHALK POWDER FOR CHALK LINE

Finely ground powder with good adhesion properties and a high share of colour providing distinct marking lines. Resealable dosing aid.

300 g

**1 red**  
**No. 717444**

**2 blue**  
**No. 717443**

More chalk lines available online.



### F PICA POCKET INCL. CARPENTER'S PENCIL

Keep your carpenter's pencil handy with this sheath with pocket clip. Thanks to the integrated blade, you can sharpen pencils with an oval cross-section easily and safely. The clever locking mechanism holds even the shortest pencil at grip height every time.

Length 24 cm

**No. 707375**



### G AUTOMATIC PUNCH SET

WITH 26 LETTERS AND NUMBERS  
Ideal for marking built-in elements, joints, door casings, etc. Guide it along the reference surface and the adjustable pencil draws the marking line. Can also be used as a compass,

spring-load, you do not need a hammer. Simply insert a letter or number bit into the hexagon socket and press down. Letters are approx. 4 mm high. Comes in plastic box.

**No. 708324**



### H EXPERT DRY ALL-IN-ONE MARKING PEN

The perfect alternative to a conventional carpenter's pencil. Allows you to write on almost any surface, dry or wet. Thanks to its clip-on sheath with integrated sharpening function, the All-In-One Marking Pen is always ready to hand.

Its telescopic refill makes it ideal as a deep-hole marker in tight spaces, e.g. boreholes.

Length 155 mm

**No. 717288**

10 Refills

**No. 717278**



### I PARALLEL MARKER

Unspectacular, but essential: Ideal for marking built-in elements, joints, door casings, etc. Guide it along the reference surface and the adjustable pencil draws the marking line. Can also be used as a compass,

thanks to the steel pin in the lower shaft. Plastic. Removeable steel pin. Marking distance 4-75 mm.

**No. 716152**



# Marking and Veneer Knives



A



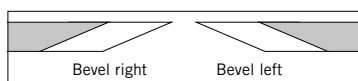
## A MARKING KNIVES

### »KOGATANA« STANDARD

These hand-forged blades made of double- or triple-layered steel are exceptionally sharp, wear-resistant and easy to resharpen. 58 HRC. Blade thickness 2-3 mm Overall length 160-180 mm

#### Double Bevel

Blade width  
3 mm **No. 710205**  
6 mm **No. 710204**  
12 mm **No. 710202**  
15 mm **No. 710206**  
18 mm **No. 710201**



#### Right Bevel

Blade width  
6 mm **No. 710404**  
12 mm **No. 710402**  
18 mm **No. 710401**

#### Left Bevel

Blade width  
6 mm **No. 710304**  
12 mm **No. 710302**  
18 mm **No. 710301**

B



1



2



## B VENEER AND MARKING KNIFE

### »YOKOTE KOGATANA«

Double-layered steel blade with hammered surface. Right bevel.

#### 1 with Handle and Sheath

Magnolia handle.  
Overall length 160 mm  
Blade width 20 mm  
**No. 710708**

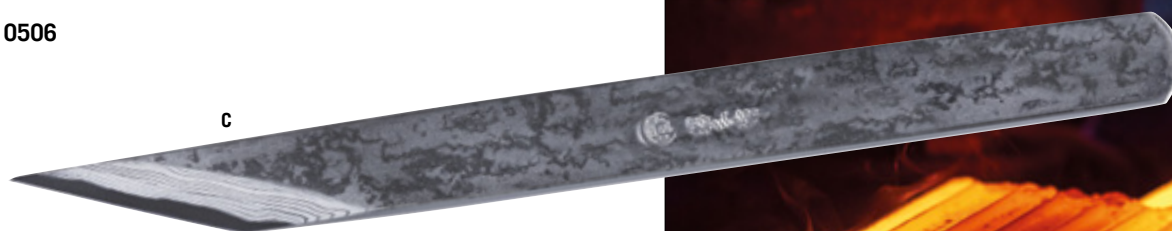
#### 2 Blade without Handle

Overall length 180 mm  
Blade width 20 mm  
**No. 710709**

## MARKING KNIVES »KOGATANA« DELUXE

**No. 710506**

C



## C MARKING KNIVES »KOGATANA« DELUXE

These hand-forged knives made of folded Suminagashi steel (20-30 layers) are notable for their exceptional edge life, even when working with exotic hardwoods. Double bevel. 64 HRC.

Blade thickness 2-3 mm  
Overall length 160-180 mm

#### Blade width

3 mm **No. 710505**  
6 mm **No. 710504**  
12 mm **No. 710502**  
15 mm **No. 710506**  
18 mm **No. 710501**



D



## D VENEER KNIVES »KIRIDASHI«

Hand-forged slim knife made of double-layered steel with embossed surface and rattan binding. Right bevel.

Overall length 200 mm

#### Blade width

9 mm **No. 710530**  
15 mm **No. 710531**

E



## E VENEER AND MARKING KNIFE

### »RYUZO KOGATANA«

Double-layered steel with hammered surface. Right bevel. Magnolia handle

with contrasted end piece.

Overall length 175 mm  
Blade width 15 mm  
**No. 710217**

## WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

## INTARSIA BASIC COURSE

BASICS AND TECHNIQUES FOR MAKING INLAYS

### Content:

Using traditional knife techniques on sample work, we check different veneers and materials for their design characteristics. The individual parts of a picture are either set into recesses cut into the base veneer or fitted together and glued onto a base. You will also practice the three-dimensional representation of designs. Advanced techniques which offer additional shaping possibilities, will also be demonstrated.

► For workshop dates  
see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)







**A CARVING AND VENEER KNIFE**  
Extra-strong blade of XC 75 carbon steel (approx. 62 HRC), pre-sharpened. The handle scales of polished Macassar ebony are fastened with sturdy brass rivets.

Overall length 180 mm  
Blade width 24 mm  
Bevel  
double right  
left  
**No. 700411**  
**No. 700412**  
**No. 700413**



**B PFEIL® MARKING KNIFE**  
The prism-shaped blade of this marking knife allows scribing to the left or right of a guide. The handle of oiled walnut has a hollowed finger area close to the nib for a better grip.

Stick tang blade hardened to 60 HRC. Suitable for both left- and right-handed users. Overall length 180 mm  
Blade width 18 mm  
**No. 717113**



**C PURFLING CUTTER**  
For marking parallel lines and cutting a precise groove for inlay strips. Two parallel blades of double-layered steel.

Adjustable blade distance measured on the outside 2.5-12 mm.  
Overall length 145 mm  
**No. 717110**



**D HATTORI® MARKING KNIFE**  
This handy marking knife with prism-shaped blade is ideal for universal scribing to the left or right of a guide. The blade is hardened to 59 HRC and firmly fastened to the round precious

wood handle with a stick tang. Suitable for both left- and right-handed users. Overall length 160 mm  
Blade width 16 mm  
**No. 717102**



**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**

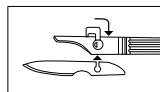


Two free sharpenings



**E SCALPEL HANDLE, PLASTIC, WITHOUT BLADE**  
Plastic scalpel handle with an ergonomic shape that ensures a good grip and precise control. The patented locking

system allows blades to be replaced easily while ensuring that they sit firmly in the handle.  
Overall length 160 mm  
**No. 700450**



**F SCALPEL HANDLE, STAINLESS STEEL, WITHOUT BLADE**  
Strong, easy-care stainless steel scalpel handle with textured shank. The patented locking system allows

blades to be replaced easily while ensuring that they sit firmly in the handle.  
Overall length 160 mm  
**No. 700415**

**G SCALPEL BLADES, 12-PIECE SET**  
The thin, 0.4 mm blades made of carbon steel are extremely sharp and cut wood, paper or plastic with little effort. Fits No. 700415 and No. 700450.

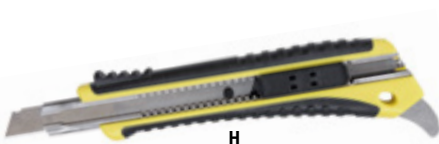
Model  
1 Form 11 **No. 700421**  
2 Form 12 **No. 700453**  
3 Form 21 **No. 700425**  
4 Form 23 **No. 700452**  
5 Form 24 **No. 700427**



► Veritas® carving knives/scalpels available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Utility Knives

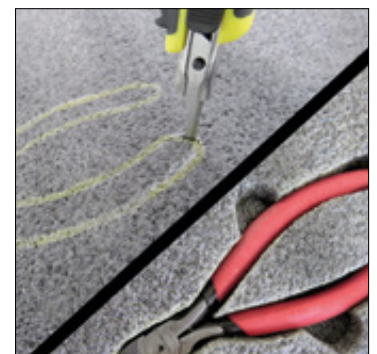


**H CUTTER**  
Versatile cutter with slim blade for a wide variety of materials (paper, carpets etc.), but also for cutting out the Hattori rigid foam insert precisely. Ribs on the upper- and underside ensure a firm grip. At the end of the handle there is an

additional helper for separating the rigid foam layers and/or for opening cardboard boxes. Blade width 9 mm.  
Overall length 130 mm  
**No. 720719**  
10 Repl. Blades  
**No. 715184**



**I ADDITIONAL BLADES FOR CUTTER KNIFE, EXTRA SLIM**  
10 extra slim cutter blades for carving out small tool details in the Hattori rigid foam insert.  
Fits No. 720719.  
**No. 720720**

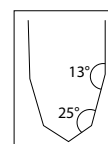




**A CUTTER KNIFE, CAST ALUMINIUM**  
Cutter knife made of robust cast aluminium.

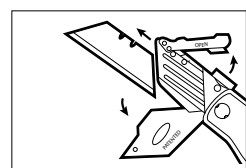


Excellent value for money. Ribs on top and bottom ensure a safe grip. Removable end cap for fast changing of blades. Blade width 18 mm. Overall length 155 mm  
**No. 715178**  
10 Repl. Blades  
**No. 715179**



**B BLACK EVOLUTION BLADES**  
**FOR CUTTER KNIVES, 10-PIECE SET**  
Japanese blades for cutter knives with outstanding durability and sharpness. Conventional blades for cutter knives normally have a hardness of 52-55 HRC, but the Black Evolution blades reach a hardness of 65 HRC. Each blade also

has a micro bevel to ensure the cutting edge is formed evenly. As a result, these blades achieve enormous edge life even with the toughest use. Fits No. 715178. Blade width 18 mm.  
**No. 715180**



**C BESSEY® FOLDING KNIFE**

Cult tools:  
The high-grade spring-loaded folding mechanism that is free of play, the quick blade-release, the ergonomically shaped handle with belt clip and the distinctive appearance are the hallmarks of this knife. It can be used for cutting wood, veneer, cardboard, leather, plastic and flooring materials.

**1 Plastic Handle**

Light, comfortable to hold handle scales with integrated blade compartment (for five blades) and a thumb press on the spine for increased pressure. Overall length 160 mm  
**No. 710540**  
10 Trapezoid Repl. Blades  
**No. 710542**

**2 Wooden Handle**

Handle scales of fine laminated wood. Riveted five times and polished. No blade compartment. Overall length 150 mm  
**No. 710541**  
10 Trapezoid Repl. Blades  
**No. 710542**



**D WORKSHOP KNIFE**  
»KIRIDASHI«, PLASTIC HANDLE  
Double-layered steel blade, cutting edge layer of carbon steel. The rubberised hard plastic handle provides a secure grip at any time. The practical protective cap keeps the blade safe, making the knife ideal for use outdoors and on site. With the sharp-

ened round notch at the base of the blade, you can draw a 4 mm curve on edges. Blade sharpened ready for use. Blade thickness 2 mm. Blade length 55 mm. Overall length 165 mm. Bevel right  
**No. 700446**

**E CARVING AND WORKSHOP KNIFE »KIRIDASHI«, WOODEN HANDLE**

Elegant, sturdy knife with a strong blade of 3 mm thick stainless steel and precious wood handle. The handle scales are riveted to the rustproof, ready-to-use sharpened blade with stainless steel pins.

Blade thickness 3 mm. Blade length 70 mm. Overall length 170 mm. Bevel double.  
**No. 700445**



**F JAPANESE CRAFT KNIVES**  
A sturdy craft knife does not necessarily need to be expensive. This Japanese craft knife can prove it. The 3 mm thick blade of easy-to-sharpen carbon steel (SK5) is mounted in a sturdy steel housing with a strong retention spring. The untreated precious wood handle scales provide a secure grip. A stop prevents the blade from being damaged when closing the knife. This knife is an essential item for every workshop and offers reliability and longevity in outdoor activities. Hardness approx. 58 HRC, not rustproof.

Blade thickness 3 mm. Blade length 70 mm. Overall length 195 mm. Bevel double

**1 Curved Edge**  
For universal use.  
**No. 709045**

**2 Straight Edge**  
For precision cuts, carving, pruning and stripping.  
**No. 709046**



**G JAPANESE PROFESSIONAL GLASS CUTTER**

Extra-long service life: Finely ground, sintered tungsten carbide cutter with unsurpassed lifetime means effortless glass cutting. Permanent lubrication thanks to petroleum reservoir in handle. Maximum glass thickness 8 mm. Overall length 160 mm. Head width 14 mm.  
**No. 716155**



Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



# Router Bits and Drilling Tools

All around the drill!

**Router Bits | 230**

**Wood Twist Drills | 231**

**Forstner Bits | 232**

**Auger Bits | 234**

**Masonry and Metal Drills | 234**

**Countersinks and Countersink Drills | 235**

**Cylindrical and Tapered Cutters | 236**

**Threading Tools and Circle Cutters | 238**

**Drill Chucking Tools | 239**



# OUR THEME WORLD POWER TOOLS

## Machines, consumables and accessories

First-class power tools and machines by brands such as DICTUM, MAFELL, Festool, Lamello, Altendorf, Arbortech, Woodrat and many more. We offer a broad selection of original accessories and consumables.

### SAWING

- Scroll saws, bandsaws
- Panel saws

### ROUTING/Jointing

- Biscuit jointers
- Router tables & router lifts
- Dovetail routers and routing systems
- Router bits and routing templates

### DRILLING/MORTICING

- Drill presses
- Morticers
- Bits and drill devices

### SANDING

- Belt and disc sanders
- Drum sanders

### SUCTION CLEANING

- Mobile extractors



### POWERCARVING

- Angle grinders
- Cutting and rasp discs

### SHARPENING

- Water-cooled grinders
- Double-wheeled grinders
- Sharpening jigs

### WORKSHOP EQUIPMENT

- Multifunction tables
- Cable reels
- Wood moisture meters
- Tool modules

### ACCESSORIES

- Clamp and guide rails
- Care and cleaning agents
- Protective equipment



For the full range of power tools see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Router Bits

### Tungsten Carbide (TC) Tipped Router Bits

- All cutters comply with the EU safety standards EN 847-1 and EN 847-2
- Suitable for hand feed
- Main specifications laser-engraved on shank
- Tungsten carbide ensures high heat- and wear-resistance
- The finest micrograin quality for extra-long service life
- Where technically possible, the cutting edges are mounted at an axial angle
- Precisely ground shafts guarantee concentricity
- Safe grip in the chuck (the eccentricity is indicated on the shaft)
- Perfect guidance along the workpiece due to quality ball bearings
- All ball bearings are replaceable and available as spare parts

#### A DICTUM® TC ROUTER BITS

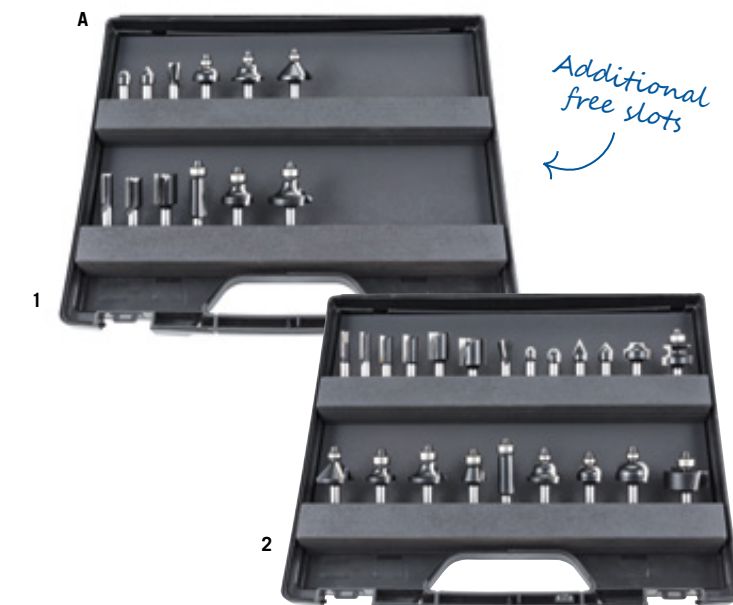
Optimum selection of premium tungsten carbide router bits at a set price. With this combination of the most common router bits almost all tasks can be mastered.

- 1 12-Piece Set, in Carrying Case**
- 3 slot cutters Ø 8 / 12 / 16 mm x 20 mm
  - Flush trim router bit with ball bearing, Ø 12.7 x 25.4 mm
  - 2 rounding router bits with ball bearing R 6, R 10 mm
  - Round nose bit R 6 mm, Ø 12 mm
  - Dovetail bit 14° x Ø 14.3 mm
  - V-groove bit 90° x Ø 12.7 mm
  - Round nose bit with ball bearing R 6 mm
  - Roman profile bit R 4 mm
  - Chamfer bit with ball bearing 45°
- All router bits have an 8 mm shaft.

- 6 additional slots Ø 8 mm in the case make it possible to extend the set with further milling cutters.

**No. 718410**

- 2 22-Piece Set, in Carrying Case**
- 6 slot cutters Ø 6 / 8 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 mm x 20 mm
  - Flush trim router bit with ball bearing, Ø 12.7 x 25.4 mm
  - Quarter circle bit R 5 mm
  - 2 round nose bits R 4, R 6 mm



- 2 rounding router bits with ball bearing R 5, R 8 mm
- Dove tail bit 14° x Ø 14.3 mm
- 2 V-groove bits 60°, 90°
- 2 round nose bits with ball bearing R 5, R 8 mm
- Roman profile bit R 4 mm

- 2 chamfer bits with ball bearing 22°, 45°
  - Rebating bit 9.5 mm with ball bearing
  - Bullnose radius bit R 3.2 mm
- All router bits have an 8 mm shaft.

**No. 718411**



**A** DICTUM® TC SLOT CUTTERS, EXTRA LONG, CENTRE TIP, 6-PIECE SET  
Bottom- and side-cutting slot cutter with soldered-in TC centre tip. For cutting grooves, rebates and slots and for drilling. Suitable for hardwoods, particle boards, MDF and plywood.  
6 router bits, long shaft

Ø 8 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 18 / 20 mm.  
2 additional slots Ø 8 mm in the case make it possible to extend the set with further milling cutters.  
Shaft diameter 8 mm  
Cutting length 30 mm  
Total length 90 mm  
**No. 718414**



**B** DICTUM® TC ROUNDING ROUTER BITS, 6-PIECE SET  
One bit, two profiles  
Using different cutting depths, you can cut soft curves as well as rebated curves (German moulding) with the same bit. 2 additional slots for shaft Ø 8 mm in the case make it possible to extend the set with further milling cutters.  
The set contains six router bits  
R 2 / 3 / 4 / 6 / 8 / 10 mm with ball bearings Ø 12.7 and 8 mm shaft.  
**No. 718412**



► A large selection of single bits and special cutters available online.



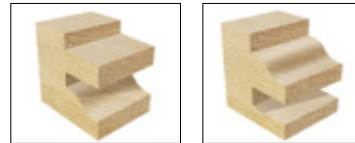
www.dictum.com



**C** DICTUM® TC PROFILE, COUNTER-PROFILE & RAISED PANEL BITS, 3-PIECE SET  
The 3-part bit set eliminates the tedious changing of profile cutters on the arbour, so all you need to do is adjust the height. Classic Roman profile. Compatible raised panel bit with Karnis profile. With the bearing you always guide the bit parallel to the workpiece, even with curved edges. For use on a router table.

Usage: First cut the end tenons on the transverse parts of the frame and rails with the counterprofile cutter. Then adjust the router so that the middle slot cutter is at exactly the same height as the end tenon, then cut all the inside edges with the Karnis profile and groove. Suitable for materials 18 to 22 mm thick.

Shape Roman R 4.76 mm  
Shaft diameter 8 mm



Bearing Ø 22 mm  
Cutting Ø 41 mm  
Cutting length 23.8 mm  
**No. 718413**

### Carrying case with optimal functionality

High-quality injection-moulded case with high stability and optimum functionality for safe storage and transport. The wooden inlay in which the milling cutters are inserted can be removed, e.g. to attach it to a wall, to store it in a drawer or to place it freely on the workbench.



## Wood Twist Drills

### D FISCH® WOOD TWIST DRILL PROFESSIONAL, 5-PIECE SET

*Price advantage*

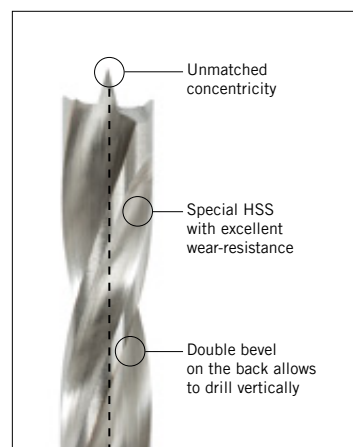
The HSS professional version with excellent service life, unmatched concentricity, and the option of vertical drilling, once in.

- Made of special HSS with excellent wear- and heat-resistance and service life (higher chromium percentage)
- Unmatched concentricity thanks to manufacture in one clamping setup
- Ideal for use in hardwood, glued wood, acrylic or laminated boards
- Cut from one piece for maximum stability
- Double bevel on the back allows you to drill vertically, once in, to make slots, milled recesses for cables and edge holes
- The precision-ground spurs and the centring tip ensure pinpoint positioning and clean edges

Ø 4 / 5 / 6 / 8 / 10 mm,  
comes in clear plastic case.  
Overall length 75-110 mm  
**No. 707041**



► Single drills 3-16 mm available online.



**Vide** Application video available online.  
www.dictum.com



**E** FISCH® BIT WOOD TWIST DRILLS PROFESSIONAL, 5-PIECE SET  
High-quality HSS wood twist drills with hexagonal shaft for quick change of bits. The hexagonal design prevents the shaft from slipping in the case of impact loads, e.g. when drilling into knots.

Comes in plastic case.  
Ø 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 8 mm  
Overall length 70-110 mm  
**No. 707409**



**Longer service life**  
Due to special cutting head geometry or use of extremely wear-resistant steel.



**Premium quality**  
Extremely robust and high-precision for use in industry and crafts.



#### A DRILL STOPS, 7-PIECE SET

Slide-on rings with locking screws for wood and metal drills. They serve as simple and effective depth stops when drilling.

Ø 3.2 / 4.8 / 6.4 / 8 / 9.5 / 11.1 and 12.7 mm, including hex key for locking screw.

**No. 701879**



**B**

#### B FISCH® WOOD TWIST DRILLS ECO, 25-PIECE SET

HSS twist drill with excellent price/performance ratio.

Long Life

10 times the service life of carbon steel:

- Made of wear- and heat-resistant HSS
- For use in hardwood, glued wood, acrylic or laminated boards

- The precision-ground spurs and the centring tip ensure pinpoint positioning and clean edges

25 pieces in a solid plastic case, Ø 1-13 mm in 0.5 mm increments. Overall length 35-150 mm

**No. 717795**



**C**

#### C WOOD TWIST DRILLS, 8-PIECE SET

Primarily for drilling softwood. With two spurs, deep groove. Carbon steel.

Ø 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 7 / 8 / 9 / 10 mm. Overall length 60-130 mm

**No. 706049**



**D**

#### D ADJUSTABLE WOOD DRILL BIT

Wood drill bit for brace, seamlessly adjustable from Ø 22 mm to Ø 76 mm via two sliding cutters. Shaft suitable for three-jaw chuck.

For drilling in softwood, universal for all diameters and intermediate sizes.

Overall length 160 mm

**No. 707181**



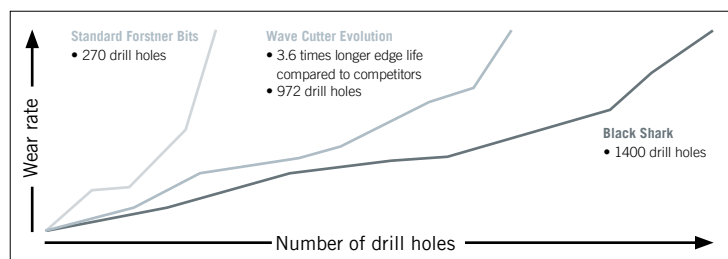
► The UJK Pocket Hole Kit as well as the pocket hole clamp available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Forstner Bits

### Fisch® Black Shark Forstner Bits

Black Shark Forstner bits cut both softwood and hardwood faster, cleaner and more aggressively than all other Forstner bits. Featuring a specially shaped cutting rim, Black Shark Forstner bits provide significantly less dynamic friction, maximum edge life and a 25 percent increase in cutting speed for fast and effortless drilling. Even with edge holes and offset drilling, they produce tear-free, dimensionally accurate blind holes with perfectly smooth sides. Forged drill head with improved chip removal and centring pin. Flat shaft prevents the bit from slipping out of the chuck.



Fisch is one of the few manufacturers worldwide that forge their own Forstner drill bits and then grind them with precision. These manufacturing processes make it possible to enormously increase the strength and the edge life of the bits as well as the possible drilling speed.

#### E FISCH® BLACK SHARK FORSTNER BIT

Drill holes with smoothest ever finish:

Shaft: up to Ø 30 mm = 8 mm,  
from Ø 35 mm = 10 mm

Overall length 90 mm

Long Life Q

#### 1 Single Forstner Bits

Ø 15 mm **No. 708226**  
20 mm **No. 708227**  
25 mm **No. 708228**  
26 mm **No. 708229**  
30 mm **No. 708230**  
35 mm **No. 708231**  
40 mm **No. 708232**  
45 mm **No. 708233**  
50 mm **No. 708234**  
55 mm **No. 708235**  
60 mm **No. 708236**  
68 mm **No. 708237**



1



2

5-Piece Set **Price advantage**  
Ø 15 / 20 / 25 / 30 / 35 mm.  
Comes in beechwood case.  
Cutting length 60 mm  
**No. 708222**

6-Piece Set **Price advantage**  
Ø 20 / 25 / 30 / 35 / 40 / 50 mm.  
Comes in beechwood case.  
Cutting length 60 mm  
**No. 708223**

2 6-Piece Set, incl. Extension Shaft  
**Price advantage**  
Ø 35 / 40 / 50 / 60 / 68 mm.  
Comes in beechwood case.  
Incl. shaft extension and hex key.  
Cutting length 60-350 mm  
**No. 708224**



3

3 10-Piece Set **Price advantage**  
Ø 15 / 20 / 25 / 26 / 30 / 35 / 40 / 45 / 50 / 55 mm. Comes in beechwood case.  
Cutting length 60 mm  
**No. 708225**

**Vide**

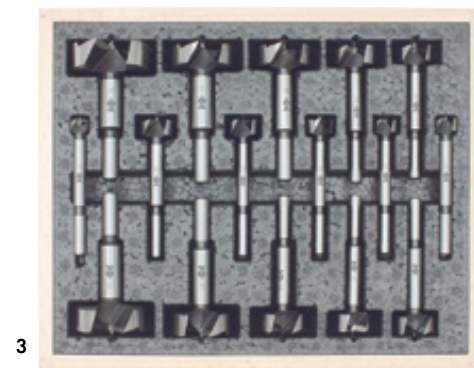
A Video showing the production process available online.



**Fisch® Wave Cutter Evolution Forstner Bits**

This drill cuts particularly easily and produces tear-free, exact blind holes with smooth walls in softwood as in hardwood - even with edge boreholes and angled boreholes. Thanks to patented wave-shaped cutting rims, the friction is reduced, heat build up avoided and a long service life achieved. Forged head with wide chip channel for better chip ejection and brad point tip.

**A FISCH® WAVE CUTTER EVOLUTION FORSTNER BITS**  
 Shaft: up to Ø 30 mm = 8 mm  
 from Ø 35 mm = 10 mm  
 Cutting length 60 mm  
 Overall length 90 mm

**1 Single Forstner Bits**

15 mm **No. 707380**  
 20 mm **No. 707381**  
 25 mm **No. 707382**  
 29 mm **No. 707414**  
 30 mm **No. 707383**  
 35 mm **No. 707384**  
 40 mm **No. 707385**  
 45 mm **No. 707386**  
 50 mm **No. 707387**  
 60 mm **No. 707388**

**2 5-Piece Set Price advantage**  
 Ø 15 / 20 / 25 / 30 / 35 mm.  
 Comes in beechwood case.  
**No. 707389**

**6-Piece Set Price advantage**  
 Ø 20 / 25 / 30 / 35 / 40 / 50 mm.  
 Comes in beechwood case.  
**No. 707474**

**3 16-Piece Set**  
 Ø 12 / 15 / 16 / 18 / 20 / 22 / 24 / 25 /  
 26 / 28 / 30 / 35 / 38 / 40 / 45 / 50 mm.  
 Comes in beechwood case.  
**No. 707396**

► For Fisch® Wave Cutter inch versions see page 238.

**Where does the term »Forstner bit« come from?**

A Forstner bit is one of the few drilling tools not named for its shape or function. It bears the name of its inventor, the American gunsmith Benjamin Forstner, who patented the world-famous drill bit in 1886.



**B FISCH® EXTENSION FOR FORSTNER BITS**  
 With locking screws, hexagonal shaft.  
 Fits Black Shark and Wave Cutter Evolution bits.

Overall length 330 mm  
 For shaft diameter  
 8 mm **No. 707390**  
 10 mm **No. 707391**



► Fisch® Forstner Speed Grinder for sharpening Forstner bits available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**C FISCH® WAVE CUTTER EVOLUTION SET + WOOD TWIST DRILLS, 11-PIECE SET Price advantage**  
 Wave Cutter Evolution  
 Ø 15 / 20 / 22 / 25 / 30 / 35 mm.  
 Shaft: up to Ø 30 mm = 8 mm  
 from Ø 35 mm = 10 mm



Comes in beechwood case.  
 Wood twist drills Ø 4 / 5 / 6 / 8 and 10 mm (No. 707041).  
 Overall length 90 mm / 75-110 mm  
**No. 707473**

**D FORSTNER BITS, 10-PIECE SET**

Forstner bits with conventional straight cutting edges. Primarily for drilling softwood.  
 Ø 6 / 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 22 / 25 / 32 / 35 / 38 mm

Shaft: up to Ø 25 mm = 8 mm  
 from Ø 32 mm = 10 mm  
 Comes in beechwood case.  
 Overall length 90 mm  
**No. 706035**



► **Fisch® Multi-Spur Drill Bit**  
 Ideal for deep bores in timber construction or on the lathe, as well as for drilling end grain, available online. **No. 727460 - 727473**



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**Longer service life**  
 Due to special cutting head geometry or use of extremely wear-resistant steel.



**Premium quality**  
 Extremely robust and high-precision for use in industry and crafts.

## Auger Bits

### A FISCH® AUGER BIT SET, 6-PIECE SET

High-quality wood drills for extra-clean drilling in softwood and European hardwood. Spurs and a screw point ensure tear-free cutting edges and self-feeding. Suitable for drilling through beams and rafters in carpentry work, blockhouse building (inserting through-dowels), ship-building and drilling holes for wood joints. Can be used in braces and adjustable power drills. Ø 6 mm with cylindrical shaft, from Ø 8 mm with hexagonal shaft.

► SDS shaft available on request.



**1 6-Piece Set, 235 mm, Cutting Length 165 mm** *Price advantage*  
Six pieces in wooden box.  
Ø 6 / 8 / 10 / 12 / 14 / 16  
**No. 707057**

**6-Piece Set, 320 mm, Cutting Length 250 mm** *Price advantage*  
Six pieces in wooden box.  
Ø 10 / 12 / 14 / 16 / 18 / 20  
**No. 707058**

**6-Piece Set, 460 mm, Cutting Length 390 mm** *Price advantage*  
Six pieces in wooden box.  
Ø 12 / 14 / 16 / 18 / 20 / 22  
**No. 707059**

A



1

► Single bits available online.

**2 Single Bit 650 mm, Cutting length 580 mm, Ø 40 mm**  
When setting up a raised hide, feet or foot spindles are often used to balance out differences in level. The diameter and length of this bit are ideal for drilling blind holes into raised hide pillars that will later hold the standard thread spindles with a diameter of 38 mm.  
**No. 717796**



2



Auger bits made of carbon steel can be sharpened with warding files (e.g. Needle File No. 705041) or a suitable diamond file.

Only sharpen the **inside of the spurs** and the **cutting edge**.

### B AUGER BITS, 6-PIECE SET

Coiled wood drill bits for cutting clean holes, with screw tips and spurs. Primarily for drilling softwood. Six pieces in wooden case. Ø 10 / 12 / 14 / 16 / 18 / 20  
Overall length 235 mm  
**No. 706023**

B



## Masonry and Metal Drills

### Masonry Drill Bits TX

Solid industrial-quality masonry drill bits suitable for rotary and percussion drilling. The high-temperature soldered hard-metal plate with a tip angle of 130° is ideal for extremely hard materials such as concrete, tiles and ceramics. A specially shaped groove on the head ensures an excellent penetration rate and debris removal. Surface finish burnished and cylindrically ground. Made in Germany.



C

**C MASONRY DRILL BITS TX, 5-PIECE SET**  
Comes in plastic case, Ø 4 / 5 / 6 / 8 / 10 mm  
Overall length 75-120 mm  
**No. 717540**



**D MASONRY DRILL BITS TX, 7-PIECE SET**  
Comes in metal case, Ø 4 / 5 / 2 x 6 / 8 / 10 / 12 mm  
Overall length 75-150 mm  
**No. 717545**

D



E



**E TWIST DRILL »SPEED«, METAL**  
High quality twist drills with a fast drill feed.  
Ideal for power drills.



- Made of high-quality HSS
- 135° point angle
- Resistant cone-shaped grind, easy to sharpen
- Type N with 20-30° helix angle for hard materials
- Milled from solid material (ground drill)
- Suitable for steel up to 900 N/mm², cast materials

19 pieces in a metal case, Ø 1-10 mm in 0.5 mm increments.  
Overall length 35-135 mm  
**No. 718515**

**F FISCH® BIT METAL DRILLS, 5-PIECE SET**  
A small range of metal drills with the most common diameters which should not be missing in any tool box. The hexagonal shank prevents a slipping of the drill.



- Type SN with a 35° helix angle for hard materials
- Milled from solid material (ground drill)
- Suitable for steel up to 900 N/mm², cast materials, aluminium, copper, brass, thin metal sheets

- Made of high-quality HSS
- 118° point angle allows good durability with excellent penetration behaviour
- Split-point grind

5 pieces in a plastic box, Ø 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 8 mm.  
Overall length 60-70 mm  
**No. 707370**



F

► For single drill bits see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**A** TWIST DRILL »ECO«, METAL, 19-PIECE SET  
Simple twist drills with excellent price/performance ratio.



- Made of HSS with TiN coating
- 135° point angle
- Resistant cone-shaped grind easy to sharpen
- Type N with a 20-30° helix angle for hard materials
- Milled from solid material (ground drill)
- Suitable for steel with low tensile strength, cast materials

19 pieces in a metal case, Ø 1-10 mm in 0.5 mm increments. Overall length 35-135 mm  
**No. 717446**



**B** TWIST DRILL »EXPERT«, METAL  
Twist drill for professional use in industry and trades.



- Made of high-quality HSS with TiN coating
- 130° point angle

- Resistant cone-shaped grind easy to sharpen
- Type SN with a 35-40° helix angle allows a thick drilling core for extra-hard materials and high stability
- Milled from solid material (ground drill)
- Suitable for steel up to 1000 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, cast materials, aluminium, copper, brass, thin metal sheets

19 pieces in an ABS case, Ø 1-10 mm in 0.5 mm increments. Overall length 35-135 mm

**No. 717449**



► Weicon® Bio-Cut Cutting Oil available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Countersinks and Countersink Drills



**C** FISCH® 90° COUNTERSINK



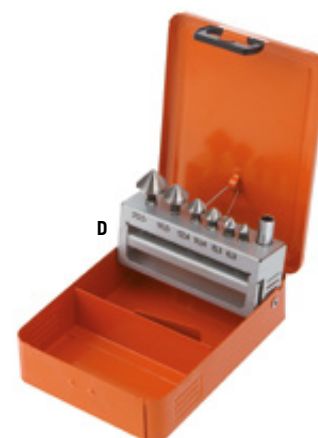
For sinking countersunk head screws, for countersinking and deburring boreholes in wood, non-ferrous metals, alloyed, and unalloyed steels. These 3-flute HSS countersinks are chatter-free and stand out for low heat build up, excellent chip ejection, and high-quality surface finish.

**1** Fisch® 90° Countersink, Ø 12.4 mm  
**No. 707374**

**2** Fisch® 90° Countersink with Bit Holder, 7-Piece Set  
Six countersinks with hexagonal shaft (Ø 6.3 / 8.3 / 10.4 / 12.4 / 16.5 / 20.5 mm) including universal bit holder with quick-change chuck. Comes in sturdy metal case.  
**No. 707392**



**D** 90° COUNTERSINKS WITH BIT HOLDER, 7-PIECE SET  
These HSS countersinks with three blades are suited for steel as well as light metal, for plastic as well as wood. The hexagonal shaft allows safe clamping without slippage and also insertion into quick-change bit holders. Comes in metal case (Ø 6.3 / 8.3 / 10.4 / 12.4 / 16.5 / 20.5 mm), with bit holder.  
**No. 707469**



► Festool Deburring countersink available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



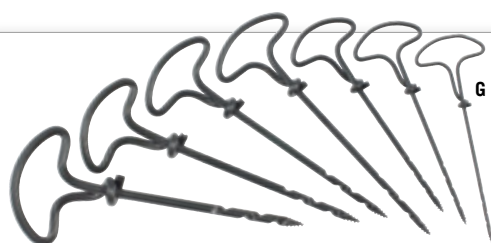
**E** COUNTERSINK BITS, 4-PIECE SET  
For countersinking and covering wood screws. A centring tip on the dowel cutter prevents it from slipping when starting the cut. Pre-cutter Ø 3 / 4 / 5 mm, dowel cutter Ø 12 mm. Pre-cutter length 15 / 20 / 25 mm, max. dowel length 15 mm. Countersink bit with hexagonal shaft, dowel cutter with 10 mm triangular shaft.  
**No. 717219**

**F** FISCH® WOOD TWIST-DRILL BITS WITH ADD-ON HSS COUNTERBORE  
For drilling pilot holes for screws and countersinking screw heads in one go. You can set the depth of the hole without countersink with a grub screw. Add-on counterbore of heat-resistant, hard-wearing HSS, wood twist-drill bit of tool steel, including hex key. For softwood, plastic and medium-dense hardwood. Speed 1500-3000 rpm.



Single Bits  
Countersink diameter 16 mm  
Ø 3 mm **No. 707590**  
4 mm **No. 707591**  
5 mm **No. 707592**

4-Piece Set  
Ø 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 mm  
Countersink diameter 16 mm  
**No. 707594**



**G** AUGER GIMLET, 7-PIECE SET  
Also for children:  
These hand-drills are popular with everybody, not only the nostalgically-inclined. They are light, the drill pulls itself into the wood due to the tapered screw tip and the deep groove guarantees good chip removal. In addition, their slightly tapered shape leads to greater tensile strength of screw joints.  
**No. 701884**



**Longer service life**  
Due to special cutting head geometry or use of extremely wear-resistant steel.

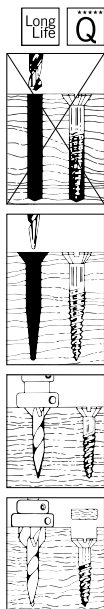


**Premium quality**  
Extremely robust and high-precision for use in industry and crafts.

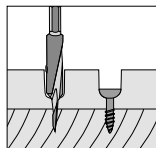




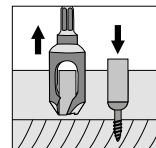
**A STAR-M® ADJUSTABLE COUNTERSINK DRILLS, CONICAL, 7-PIECE SET**  
The pre-drilling of wood screws takes on a different quality with this countersink drill. Greater tensile strength is achieved with the tapered design than with cylinder drills; at the same time the risk of screw breakage is reduced. The drilling depth is exactly adjustable to the borehole depth by means of an adjusting ring. The countersunk head is also adjustable in depth, so that a dowel can be inserted if required (for invisible screw joins). A steep and deep groove prevents plugging and overheating of the drill. Manufactured in Japan from wear-resistant HSS. 7-piece set:  
Ø 3.2 / 3.6 / 4.0 / 4.4 / 4.8 / 5.2 / 5.6 mm.  
Overall length 80-100 mm  
**No. 717327**



**B STAR-M® COUNTERSINK DRILLS, 2-PIECE SET, HSS**  
Japanese precision tools for countersinking and capping wood screws. Pre-cutter length 20 mm, max. plug length 25 mm. Made of heat-proof, wear-resistant HSS. Hexagonal shaft.  
Ø 3 x 9 mm  
Tapered pre-cutter Ø 3 mm, plug cutter Ø 9 mm.  
Overall length 75 mm  
**No. 701871**  
Ø 3.5 x 10 mm  
Tapered pre-cutter Ø 3.5 mm, plug cutter Ø 10 mm.  
**No. 701872**  
Ø 4 x 10.5 mm  
Tapered pre-cutter Ø 4 mm, plug cutter Ø 10.5 mm.  
**No. 701969**



**C STAR-M® COUNTERSINK DRILLS, 2-PIECE SET, STANDARD**  
Japanese precision tools for countersinking and capping wood screws. Pre-cutter length 20 mm, max. plug length 25 mm. Made of unalloyed carbon steel. Hexagonal shaft. Overall length 75 mm  
Ø 3 x 8 mm  
Tapered pre-cutter Ø 3 mm, plug cutter Ø 8 mm.  
**No. 701873**  
Ø 3.5 x 10 mm  
Tapered pre-cutter Ø 3.5 mm, plug cutter Ø 10 mm.  
**No. 701874**  
Ø 4 x 12 mm  
Tapered pre-cutter Ø 4 mm, plug cutter Ø 12 mm.  
**No. 701875**



**D ZENTERFIX, SELF-CENTRING HINGE DRILLING BITS**  
The spring-loaded guide bush is inserted into the screw hole of a hinge or fitting. This automatically centres the HSS core bit in the screw hole. In no time at all you have an accurately centred core hole, which allows you to fasten all types of fittings quickly and easily with no shifting. With standard hexagonal bit shaft.  
Ø 2 mm  
Borehole diameter 2 mm, overall length 84 mm, cutting length 14 mm.  
**No. 706230**  
Ø 2.75 mm  
Borehole diameter 2.75 mm, overall length 86 mm, cutting length 14 mm.  
**No. 706231**  
Ø 3.5 mm  
Borehole diameter 3.5 mm, overall length 95 mm, cutting length 15 mm.  
**No. 706232**

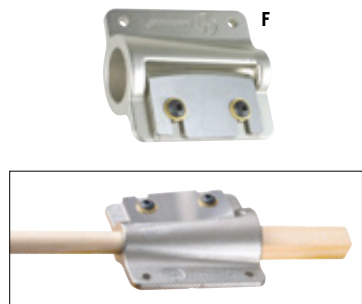


**E FISCH® PILOT DRILL**  
With this pilot drill, you do not have to change bits from drill to countersink when drilling screw holes. You can set the depth of the hole without counter-

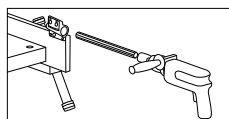
sink to between 10 and 45 mm with a grub screw. The hexagonal shank prevents the drill from slipping through and allows it to be used in bit holders. Countersink diameter 10 mm, for drill

hole diameter 2.8 mm. Countersink diameter 10 mm. For borehole diameter 2.8 mm. Overall length 60-90 mm  
**No. 707408**

## Cylindrical and Tapered Cutters



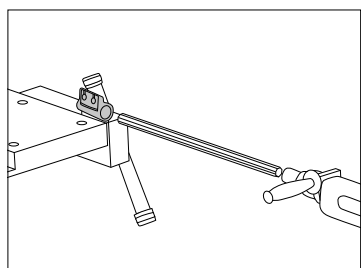
**F VERITAS® DOWEL AND ROD CUTTER**  
This practical tool is used for producing precisely rounded rods and dowels from square stock. Using a hand drill and adapter, the square-shaped wood is driven through the dowel cutter, which is attached to the workbench. For short pieces and for cutting tenons,  
the dowel cutter can also be turned by hand on a firmly clamped workpiece. The curved blade facilitates clean and easy cutting, and by adjusting the blade, the diameter can be fine-tuned. Length of cutters 60 mm. Aluminium body.  
Ø 9.5 mm, **No. 706962**  
¾ inch  
Repl. Cutter **No. 706965**



**G ADAPTER FOR VERITAS® DOWEL CUTTER**  
For rod-square 13 mm. Fits No. 706962.  
**No. 706966**



**I VERITAS® CONE CUTTER**  
For cutting conical ends on cylindrical rods, e.g. Windsor chair legs, rungs, etc. Wedge angle 12.8°, adjustable blade with straight cutting edge 63 mm long, carbon steel (60 HRC), aluminium body. Fits tapered drill bit No. 701867. Ø 15.9 mm (¾ inch) Max. rod diameter 28 mm  
**No. 701882**  
Repl. Cutter **No. 701883**



**H DRIVE SHAFT FOR ADAPTER**  
Fits No. 706966 and No. 706967.  
**No. 706968**



**Long Life**  
Longer service life  
Due to special cutting head geometry or use of extremely wear-resistant steel.

**Q**  
Premium quality  
Extremely robust and high-precision for use in industry and crafts.

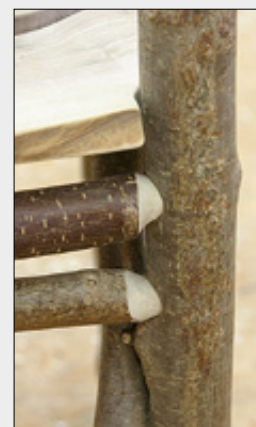
### WORKSHOP

#### GREENWOOD FURNITURE WITH CHARACTERISTICS OF SOLID WOOD

##### Content:

- Joining the natural wood parts with mortise and tenon
- Fastening the solid wood parts with wooden nails
- Do the branches need to be pared and if so, what techniques are there?
- Surface treatment of the finished pieces of furniture with oils and waxes

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)





#### A STAR-M® KNOT REPAIR SET

This precision conical drill and dowel cutter set can be used to repair loose

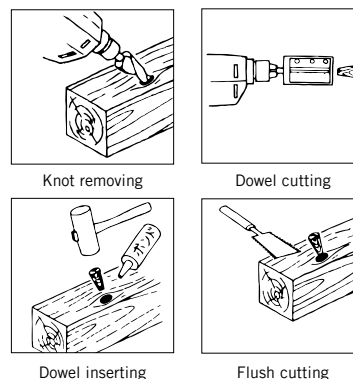


or unsightly knots and other defects in a clean and efficient manner. Conical dowels can be fitted more tightly than cylindrical dowels and do not diminish the strength of the piece when glued in place. We recommend using a Japanese flush cutting saw (e.g. No. 712321) for cutting off the tops of the dowels. Hole diameter 5-25 mm, drill length 80 mm, HSS drill bit, aluminium dowel cutter, resharpenable carbon steel cutter. Made in Japan. With wooden case and instruction booklet.

No. 717255

Repl. Cutter

No. 717256



**B VERITAS® TAPERED DRILL BIT**   
When clamped in a brace with four-jaw chuck, this drill bit conically enlarges cylindrical holes. For boreholes with a diameter of 11-30 mm. Wedge angle 12.8°, fits Veritas cone cutters (No. 701880-701882).

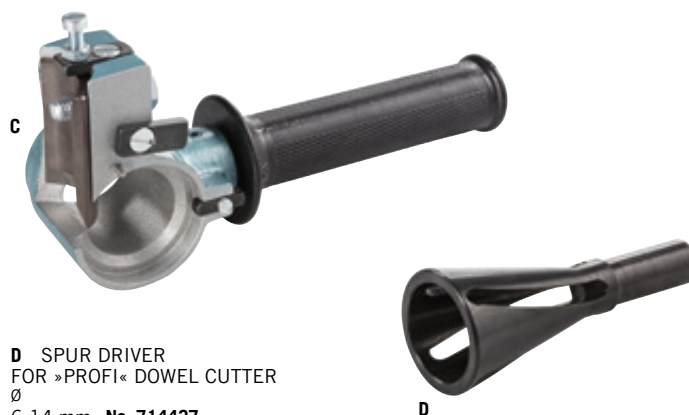
Fitting brace No. 707182/ 707183 with adapter No. 707415.

Overall length 142 mm  
Taper diameter 86 mm

No. 701867

Repl. Cutter

No. 701868



#### C »PROFI« DOWEL CUTTER, BASIC DEVICE WITHOUT INSERT SLEEVE

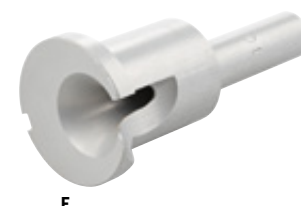
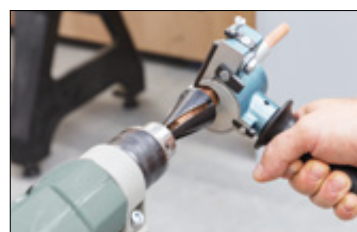
With this rod cutter manufactured in Germany, you can make precise dowels and round bars in all types of wood. Simply make slightly oversized (+ 1-2 mm) square blanks and use a power drill and a suitable drill holder or a lathe and a suitable spur driver (e.g. No. 714437 / 714438) to drive them through the dowel maker. The dowel cutter is guided freehand over the bar with both drive options. The round bar is released from the driver without stopping the machine when no more pressure is applied against the machine. Also ideal for cutting bars that are to be processed with the »Profi« Wood Threading Tool (No. 714139).

No. 714436

Repl. Blade No. 714450

► For a suitable drill holder  
see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**D SPUR DRIVER  
FOR »PROFI« DOWEL CUTTER**  
Ø  
6-14 mm No. 714437  
15-26 mm No. 714438



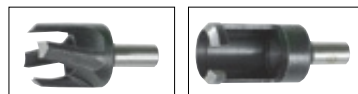
**E INSERT SLEEVE  
FOR »PROFI« DOWEL CUTTERS**  
Made of aluminium. Insert sleeves for other diameters available on request.

Ø  
6 mm No. 714439  
8 mm No. 714440  
10 mm No. 714441  
12 mm No. 714442  
13 mm No. 714443  
15 mm No. 714444  
16 mm No. 714445  
18 mm No. 714446  
19 mm No. 714447  
20 mm No. 714448  
25 mm No. 714449



#### F CYLINDRICAL AND TAPERED PLUG CUTTERS, 8-PIECE SET

For making wooden dowels and plugs for sealing boreholes, restoring knots, etc. The tapered cutters facilitate a seamless tight fit. Set includes four cylindrical and four tapered drills of hardened tool steel (resharpenable) in a wooden case.



Overall length 10-25 mm  
Nominal diameter 8 / 10 / 12 / 16 mm  
No. 701865



#### G CYLINDRICAL TENON CUTTER, 5-PIECE SET

Double function tenon and disc cutter: For cutting cylindrical tenons for mortise jointing as well as for making wooden dowels up to 70 mm in length. Five pieces in a wooden case, carbon steel. Shaft diameter 13 mm. Tenon diameters 10 / 12 / 16 / 20 / 25 mm

No. 701870

**I TAPERED PLUG CUTTERS**  
For cutting slightly conical wooden dowels in order to seal boreholes, max. length 12 mm.

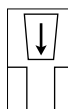
Ø  
6 mm No. 701860

8 mm No. 701861

10 mm No. 701862

12 mm No. 701863

16 mm No. 701864



**H FISCH® TENON CUTTER**   
For drilling very long knot-hole plugs, discs and tenons up to a max. length of 70 mm. The multi-cutting tenon cutters are slightly oversized to ensure the knot-hole plugs fit tightly. For vertical drilling machines. Easy ejection of the tenon and optimum chip removal. Knot-hole plugs for use with Forstner and universal bits. Made from high-quality carbon steel.  
Shaft: up to Ø 30 mm = 13 mm  
from Ø 35 mm = 16 mm  
Ø 15 / 20 / 25 / 30 / 35 mm.  
Cutting length 80-100 mm  
Overall length 140-160 mm

#### 1 Single Cutters

Ø

8 mm No. 707050

10 mm No. 707051

15 mm No. 707052

20 mm No. 707053

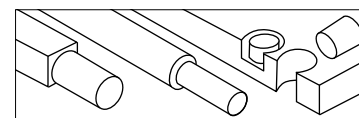
25 mm No. 707054

30 mm No. 707055

35 mm No. 707056



**2 5-Piece Set** *Price advantage*  
Clean cuts in hardwood and softwood: Tenon diameter 15 / 20 / 25 / 30 / 35 mm. In shockproof beechwood case.  
No. 707472







**A VERITAS® TENON CUTTERS, ROUNDED SHOULDERS**  
The mortise and tenon joint is a sturdy wood joint ideal for making chair legs, rungs, frames and other structures. With rustic and green wood furniture they allow elegant, glue-free construction of high durability. Driven by an electric drill or brace (with brace adapter), these Veritas cutters produce smooth precision-cut tenons with rounded shoulders. Well-balanced, anodized aluminium body with a high-performance tool steel cutter. A built-in spirit level facilitates in-line cutting.

Max. tenon length approx. 68 mm, hexagonal shaft 8 mm.  
Tenon diameter  
**5/8 inch / 16 mm**  
**No. 706980**  
**3/4 inch / 19 mm**  
**No. 706981**  
**1 inch / 25 mm**  
**No. 706982**  
**1 1/4 inch / 32 mm**  
**No. 706983**  
**1 1/2 inch / 38 mm**  
**No. 706984**  
**2 inch / 50 mm**  
**No. 706989**  
Repl. Cutter  
**No. 706990**

**Tip:**  
Mortise joints tighten themselves if the timber moisture content of the tenon is lower than that of the counterpart with the mortise hole when it is fitted (green wood carpentry).



**C FISCH® WAVE CUTTER EVOLUTION FORSTNER BITS, INCH**  
Shaft: up to Ø 5/8 inch = 8 mm, from Ø 3/4 inch = 9.5 mm

Overall length 90 mm  
Tenon diameter  
**5/8 inch / 16 mm**  
**No. 707360**  
**3/4 inch / 19 mm**  
**No. 707366**  
**1 inch / 25 mm**  
**No. 707367**  
**1 1/4 inch / 32 mm**  
**No. 707368**  
**1 1/2 inch / 38 mm**  
**No. 707369**  
**2 inch / 50 mm**  
**No. 707359**

**B ADAPTER FOR VERITAS® TENON CUTTER**  
With rectangular shaft for mounting in a brace. Fits No. 706980-82.  
Ø 9.5 mm / 3/8 inch  
**No. 706992**

**D GUIDE BUSHINGS AND SQUARE SOCKETS FOR VERITAS® DOWEL ROD CUTTER**

Ø		
6.3 mm	1/4 inch	<b>No. 703658</b>
7.9 + 9.5 mm	5/16 + 3/8 inch	<b>No. 703659</b>
11.1 + 12.7 mm	7/16 + 1/2 inch	<b>No. 703660</b>
14.3 + 15.9 mm	9/16 + 5/8 inch	<b>No. 703661</b>
17.5 + 19 mm	1 1/16 + 3/4 inch	<b>No. 703662</b>
20.6 + 22.2 mm	1 3/16 + 7/8 inch	<b>No. 703663</b>



**E VERITAS® DOWEL ROD CUTTER**  
An ingenious tool which allows you to make perfectly sized dowel rods from square timber. Simply make slightly oversized (+ 3 mm) square blanks and use a power drill to drive them through the dowel maker. The tool has two blades (pre-cutters and post-cutters), a micrometer adjustment mechanism and square socket. Ideal for making toys, models and furniture and for restoration work.

Anodized aluminium body with screw-on foot, two A2 high-performance steel cutters (pre-cutters and post-cutters) and two guide bushings as well as a square socket drive with power drill adapter. Basic set Ø 25 mm (1 inch).  
**No. 703657**  
Repl. Blade (Pre-Cut)  
**No. 703664**  
Repl. Blade (Post-Cut)  
**No. 703665**



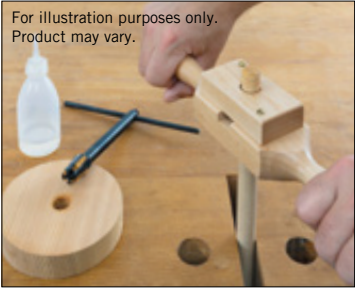
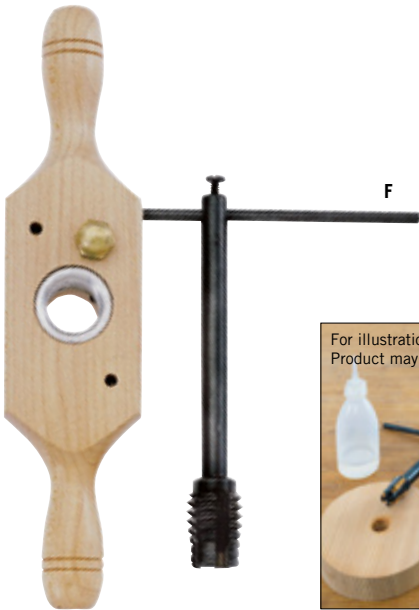
**F WOOD THREADING TOOLS, 2-PIECE SET**  
For making practical wooden threads with a virtually unlimited number of applications for making furniture, racks, toys, nutcrackers, lamps etc. Two-piece set (threading box and tap), for cutting internal and external threads. The stated tap hole diameters are reference values. The ideal diameter in each case should be determined by test drillings depending on the type of wood and preferred fit. Tap made of hardened tool steel, hardwood thread box with a removable hardened steel cutter. The pitch corresponds to the number of thread tips per inch.  
Fits maple dowel rods No. 831548, 831549, 831550, 831551 and 831552.  
Comes with instructions.

Bar diameter	Pitch	
12 mm / 1/2 inch	8	<b>No. 707185</b>
19 mm / 3/4 inch	6	<b>No. 707186</b>
25 mm / 1 inch	6	<b>No. 707187</b>
31 mm / 1 1/4 inch	6	<b>No. 707188</b>
38 mm / 1 1/2 inch	6	<b>No. 707189</b>
Repl. Cutter		<b>No. 707195</b>



Bar diameter	Core hole diameter	Recommended hole drill	Fits wooden dowel
12 mm	9.5-10.5 mm	No. 707831 (online)	No. 701704/831548
19 mm	15.5-16.5 mm	No. 707360 (see p. 238)	No. 701705/831549
25 mm	22-23 mm	No. 707832 (online)	No. 701706/831550
31 mm	29-30 mm	No. 707414 (see p. 233)	No. 701707/831551
38 mm	35-36 mm	No. 707834 (online)	No. 701708/831552

Threading Tools and Circle Cutters





**A »PROFI« WOOD THREADING TOOL, 2-PIECE SET**

This cutting set for internal and external threads is manufactured in Germany and impresses with its high-quality workmanship and sophisticated design. For making practical wooden threads with a virtually unlimited number of applications for the production of furniture, shelves, toys, nutcrackers, lamps, etc.

**Threading box:**

- Generously sized chip removal mouth reduces the risk of clogging and offers visibility of the cutting process
- Wear-resistant aluminium bushing for accurate dowel rod guidance
- Since the back of the blade lies on a thread flank, it can be quickly and precisely positioned on the flight circle and is supported during the cutting process

**Tap:**

- Guiding pin for precise guidance in the drill hole
- Square shaft, for use with tap wrenches (► No. 714154 and 714155), allows for optimum force transmission

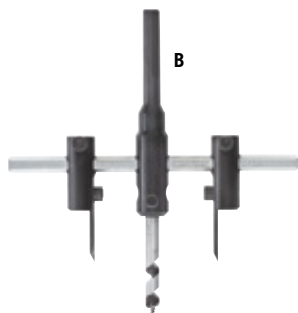


Bar diameter	Pitch	Square shaft	
13 mm	8	8 mm	<b>No. 714139</b>
19 mm	6	8 mm	<b>No. 714140</b>
25 mm	5	8 mm	<b>No. 714141</b>
32 mm	4	13 mm	<b>No. 714142</b>
38 mm	3.5	16 mm	<b>No. 714143</b>

**Male threads** are cut more easily and cleanly if the wooden rods are first laid in linseed oil. Also make sure that the hardwood blocks are well dried out and that your cutting edge is sharp.

► For maple and beech dowels see chapter »Materials«.

Bar diameter	Core hole diameter	Recommended hole drill	Fits wooden dowel
13 mm	11 mm	No. 708328	-
19 mm	16 mm	No. 707402	No. 701705/831549
25 mm	21 mm	No. 708329	No. 701706/831550
32 mm	26 mm	No. 707407	-
38 mm	32 mm	No. 707405	No. 701708/831552

**B STAR-M® CIRCLE CUTTER Ø 30-120 MM**

The inside and outside cutters ensure clean results even in thin or fibrous materials. Adjustable from Ø 30 mm to 120 mm, with an additional arm for holes up to Ø 300 mm. Resharpenable HSS blades, cutting depth of 28 mm (56 mm if cutting from both sides). Anti-slip cylindrical shaft with three chamfers Ø 10 mm for brace or machine, two centring pins. Driven by a drill with speed control. Made in Japan. With instruction booklet. *Note: Additional arms are not included. They have to be ordered separately.*

**No. 716165**  
2 Repl. Blades  
**No. 716166**  
Additional Arm, up to 200 mm  
**No. 716167**  
Additional Arm, up to 300 mm  
**No. 716168**

For illustration purposes only.  
Product may vary.

**C HOLE CUTTER**

WITH KNOB HANDLE, SMALL  
For veneers, guitar sound holes, leather, paper, cardboard, etc. Centring tip, incl. four resharpenable blades in receptacle (knob handle), aluminium body with scale, knob handle with quick-adjustment mechanism.  
Bar diameter 40-210 mm  
**No. 716163**  
10 Repl. Blades **No. 716169**



► More Star-M® circle cutters available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## Drill Chucking Tools

**D ADJUSTABLE TAP WRENCHES**

DIN 1814  
Adjustable tap wrench with die-cast zinc housing and hardened jaws for normal use. Removable side dowel rods for working in tight spaces.

5-12 mm  
For taps M5-M20, square bore 5-12 mm, total length 375 mm.  
**No. 714154**

5.5-16 mm  
For taps M11-M27, square bore 5.5-16 mm, total length 470 mm.  
**No. 714155**



**E QUICK-RELEASE CHUCKS ECO WITH MORSE TAPER**  
Good value for money. Quick-release chuck for craft and hobby use. For use on lathes, power routers and vertical drilling machines. Self-tightening and high-force clamping. No chuck key, tighten and release effortlessly by hand. Jaw opening 0.5-16 mm, jaws

can be fully opened and closed without gaps. Concentricity 0.08 mm, B16 taper shank, internal taper DIN 238. For clockwise rotation. Overall length 215 mm

Morse taper  
#2 MT **No. 705658**  
#3 MT **No. 705659**



**Longer service life**  
Due to special cutting head geometry or use of extremely wear-resistant steel.



**Premium quality**  
Extremely robust and high-precision for use in industry and crafts.

#### A PREMIUM BRACES

Not only is this brace extremely functional, thanks to the materials it is made of, it has a special look that is modelled on the originals manufactured around 1900. The solid steel parts have a black gun-metal finish and thus strongly contrast in colour with the brass sleeves, the brass ball bearing housing on the head and the fine reddish brown hardwood handles made of Kotibé. The chuck is equipped with a ratchet that can be switched between clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation, making it possible to drill or turn screws even in confined spaces. Overall length 360 mm  
1.1 kg

##### Three-jaw chuck

Jaw opening 3.5-16 mm.  
**No. 707728**

##### Four-jaw chuck

Jaw opening 5-16 mm.  
**No. 707729**



#### B BRACES

If there is no power supply or if you have to bore extremely delicate holes, it is advisable to use a brace. This French model works extremely smoothly due to the ball-bearing mounting of its head. The chuck has a right-left adjustable ratchet, which enables drilling and screwing even in confined spaces. Overall length 360 mm  
1.1 kg

##### Three-jaw chuck

Jaw opening 3.5-16 mm.  
**No. 707182**

##### Four-jaw chuck

Jaw opening 5-16 mm.  
**No. 707283**

#### C HAND DRILL WITH BREAST PLATE

Hand-driven drill. Two speeds by inter-changing crank and side handle. Closed housing of hammer-finished die-cast aluminium, hardwood handles, three-jaw chuck (diameter max. 10 mm). Made in Germany. Overall length 360 mm  
1.3 kg  
**No. 717251**



#### D HAND DRILL

Small hand drill with bevel gear drive, made in Germany. Hardwood handle, fast-action chuck (Ø max. 8 mm). Overall length 295 mm  
570 g  
**No. 717249**



#### E ADAPTER FOR BRACE

Fixed to the square bore of the brace chuck of No. 707182/707283, you can also attach short tapered square-section shafts with this adapter, such as Veritas Tapered Drill Bit No. 701867. **No. 707415**



#### F DRILL STANDS WITH CHUCK

Thanks to the integrated geared-rim chuck, this drill stand is ideal for use with cordless screwdrivers.

- Manually adjustable depth-stop rings
- Non-slip rubber base
- V-shaped support for round workpieces on the top of the base

##### 1 Tilting

Large tilting base for drilling at an angle of up to 30°. The stand is locked in position by two solid metal clamping levers. Height 350 mm, base diameter 230 x 200 mm, opening 0-13 mm. **No. 716178**

##### 2 90°

Precise guide for 90° drilling. Height 350 mm, base diameter 130 mm, opening 0-13 mm. **No. 716149**



#### G STAR-M® DRILL STAND WITH CHUCK, ADJUSTABLE

Ideal for use with cordless screwdrivers thanks to the mounted gear rim drill chuck. Large adjustable support base for angled drilling up to 45°. It is locked in place by two plastic knobs. Height 290 mm, support base 90 x 120 mm, jaw opening 0-10 mm.



- Hand-adjustable depth stops
- Needle-point tips on the underside of the support base prevent slipping
- V-shaped groove on the upper side of the bench for round workpieces

**No. 716356**



# Clamps

Binding together!

**All-steel and Spheroidal Cast Iron Screw Clamps | 242**

**Edge Clamps and C-Clamps | 243**

**One-handed Clamps | 245**

**Body Clamps | 246**

**Wooden Clamps | 247**

**Bar Clamps and Clamp Fixtures | 248**

**Mitre Clamps | 249**

**Tape Tensioners | 250**



# All-steel and Spheroidal Cast Iron Screw Clamps



## A DICTUM® ALL-STEEL SCREW CLAMPS

Thanks to the all-steel arms, these clamps are designed for flexible, elastic clamping (metal and wood) and guarantee high strength at a low weight. They have also been proven as industrial clamps for the fixation of welding parts. The galvanised fixed arm and the clamping pad are forged from a single piece. The burnished trapezoidal spindle runs precisely in the guide and allows delicate clamping. Ball-jointed pressure plate, wooden handle.

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight	
1 50 mm	100 mm	200 g	No. 705632
50 mm	300 mm	300 g	No. 705633
2 60 mm	120 mm	300 g	No. 705634
3 80 mm	160 mm	500 g	No. 705635
100 mm	200 mm	900 g	No. 705636
120 mm	250 mm	1200 g	No. 705637
120 mm	400 mm	1970 g	No. 721006
120 mm	500 mm	2180 g	No. 721007
120 mm	600 mm	2390 g	No. 721008
120 mm	800 mm	3270 g	No. 721009
120 mm	1000 mm	3750 g	No. 721010



For attractive scale prices according to the quantity ordered (starting with 4 units) see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► Bessey® malleable cast iron clamps and all-steel clamps available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## B DICTUM® SPHEROIDAL CAST IRON SCREW CLAMPS

This classic glueing clamp ensures effective force transmission while staying rigid and firm. The spheroidal cast iron (ductile iron) used for the clamp arms offers the best mechanical properties of all common cast materials. A powder-coated hollow profile bar combined with a strong trapezoidal thread and corrugated clamp arms allow clamping forces of up to 5000 N. High-quality plastic caps with cross-grooves ensure easy positioning and clamping of round pieces. Ball-jointed pressure plate, wooden handle.

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight	
50 mm	100 mm	290 g	No. 720413
50 mm	200 mm	350 g	No. 720422
60 mm	300 mm	550 g	No. 720423
60 mm	400 mm	620 g	No. 720424
80 mm	160 mm	740 g	No. 720414
100 mm	200 mm	1100 g	No. 720415
120 mm	250 mm	1480 g	No. 720416
120 mm	600 mm	2100 g	No. 720417
120 mm	800 mm	2460 g	No. 720418
120 mm	1000 mm	2810 g	No. 720419

DICTUM® Deep Throat Bar Clamp  
175 mm 400 mm 2330 g

No. 715452

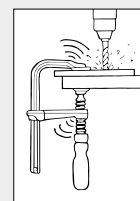


B

## Flexible clamping

### All-steel clamps

Thanks to the flexible fixed and sliding arms, the clamping force is much less affected by vibrations than with rigid malleable cast iron clamps, so the workpiece is held more firmly in place.



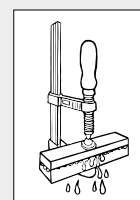
This type of clamping is suitable for:

- Fixing wooden parts which are to be worked on, e.g. with a router, a portable circular saw, rasps etc.
- Fixing of metal parts which are to be welded, cut, filed etc.
- Clamping of machine parts, e.g. fences to table-mounted circular saws, frames to planing machines
- Gluing or clamping of wooden parts which are under strain, e.g. gluing edge strips to round edges, bending wood, clamping of boat frames

## Rigid clamping

### Spheroidal or malleable cast iron clamps

With rigid clamping you can achieve strong clamping forces.

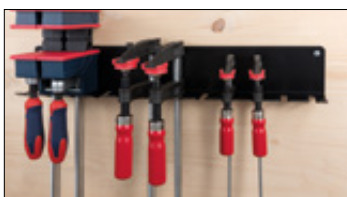


This type of clamping is suitable for:

- Gluing edge-to-edge joints for table-tops, shelves etc.
- Gluing of components which are not under strain during the process of gluing, e.g. gluing edge strips to straight edges, edge-to-face joints etc.

## DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



► For racks for all-steel screw clamps and body clamps see chapter »Workshop Accessories and Toolkits«.



## C BESSEY® EDGE CLAMP DEVICE

Auxiliary device for clamping edgings, veneers, etc. Can be used with most standard screw clamps with a maximum bar thickness of 13 mm. Spindle length 75 mm. 300 g  
No. 705793

C



#### A DICTUM® ALL-STEEL BAR CLAMPS, PIVOT HANDLE

All-steel clamps with faceted and therefore ergonomic hard plastic handle. The handle is simply folded away when space is limited. When folded down, it also offers high power transmission. The clamps are designed for flexible, elastic clamping. The galvanised fixed arm and the clamping pad are forged from a single piece. The tempered, gunmetal-finished trapezoidal spindle runs precisely in the guide and allows delicate clamping. Ball-jointed pressure plate. Jaw depth 80 mm

Jaw opening	Weight	
160 mm	540 g	<b>No. 715448</b>
200 mm	570 g	<b>No. 715449</b>
300 mm	660 g	<b>No. 715451</b>



#### B DICTUM® ALL-STEEL SCREW CLAMPS WITH RATCHET SYSTEM

The innovative ratchet system of this all-steel screw clamp enables you to work quickly even in confined spaces. The sturdy yet smooth ratchet mechanism allows you to clamp without changing your grip. The polyamide handle with comfortable non-slip surface can be turned in both directions and has an extra centre position. This high-quality all-steel screw clamp guarantees high strength at a low weight. The galvanised fixed arm and the clamping pad are forged from a single piece. The tempered, gunmetal-finished trapezoidal spindle runs precisely in the guide and allows delicate clamping. Ball-jointed pressure plate.

Jaw opening	Weight	
300 mm	1.9 kg	<b>No. 720460</b>
400 mm	2.1 kg	<b>No. 720461</b>
600 mm	2.5 kg	<b>No. 720462</b>
1000 mm	3.9 kg	<b>No. 720463</b>



**Vide** Application video available online.

#### C PIHER® MAXI-F HIGH-PERFORMANCE CLAMPS

This solid clamp made of high-grade spheroidal cast iron combines extreme power and a high technical specification. Its enormous clamping pressure puts conventional clamps in the shade. Whether in furniture-making, carpentry or metalworking, the clamp holds together both flat and round workpieces. The main difference compared with conventional clamps is the pressure bolt, which does not turn when the clamp is tightened, so the freshly glued wooden parts do not drift apart.

Benefits of a Piher clamp:

- Fully covered screw thread, thus protected from impact and contaminants (glue, steel swarf, cement, etc.)
- Double thread increases both speed and clamping pressure
- Greasing hole for optimum lubrication of the thread
- Pressure bolt does not turn during tightening, thus preventing freshly glued wooden parts from drifting apart
- Spring-activated brake on the bar keeps the jaws firmly in place
- The surface of the fixed jaw is grooved for easy positioning and maximum grip on round workpieces
- Ergonomic plastic handle for maximum force transmission (approx. 900-1000 kg), foldable (180°), interchangeable and heat resistant up to 100 °C
- The straight back allows the set up of the clamp horizontally without it tilting, which makes it easier to glue large workpieces
- Solid bar cross-section ensures torsion-free clamps, even in extra-long versions
- PVC protective caps prevent pressure points on the wood

Clamping pressure 9000 N (approx. 900 kg)

Jaw depth 120 mm

Jaw opening	Weight	
200 mm	2.1 kg	<b>No. 720400</b>
400 mm	2.6 kg	<b>No. 720401</b>
600 mm	2.8 kg	<b>No. 720402</b>
800 mm	3.4 kg	<b>No. 720403</b>
1000 mm	3.9 kg	<b>No. 720404</b>
1200 mm	4.3 kg	<b>No. 720405</b>

Surcharge for bulky goods (1200 mm version only).



C



► DICTUM® Reverse Screw Clamps with spreading and double clamping function available online.

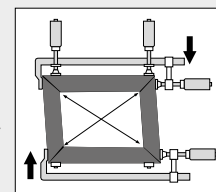
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

B



#### Correcting perpendicularity

When clamping together frames or furniture bodies, you check the four corners for perpendicularity by measuring the diagonals, which must be the same length. If one diagonal is longer, meaning that the frame is not square, attach a pair of clamps to the long sides of the frame parts at an angle to force the distorted frame into a right angle. Alternatively you can attach an additional screw clamp over the longer diagonal from corner to corner to correct the angle.



**Vide** Application video available online.

## Edge Clamps and C-Clamps

#### D ONE-HANDED UNI CLAMP

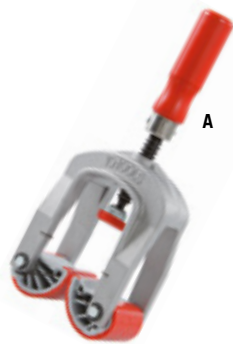
The Uni Clamp not only has amazing robustness, but also a great number of applications. Not only is it an edge, frame, base, mitre and square clamp, but also body clamp. Since the clamp is suitable for round, oblique and staggered components, there is no need for the mostly cumbersome and workpiece-damaging positioning of traditional clamps

on difficult areas. Angles and mitres can be positioned exactly in relation to one another to connect precisely with one another. Also suitable for edge glueing of inner and outer radii and smooth surfaces thanks to the rubberised jaws that prevent slippage or damage to the plate surfaces. Jaw opening 10-48 mm

700 g  
**No. 718460**

D



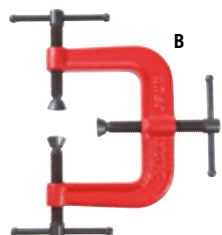
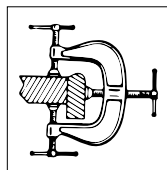
**A ONE-HANDED EDGE CLAMP**

Practical edge clamp for easy application of edging on large workpieces and inside and outside radii. It even makes laminating

using templates easy without help from others. The non-slip jaws even remain in contact with ultra-smooth surfaces (melamine resin boards) without damaging the surface of the board. The one-handed operation allows you to work on extensive workpieces quickly and without help from others.

Jaw opening 10-48 mm  
780 g

**No. 705857**

**B EDGE CLAMP**

Solid 3-way clamp for gluing edges and other rectangular joints. Forged steel clamp arm, zinc-plated.  
Jaw opening  
60 x 60 mm  
450 g

**No. 705758**

**C DICTUM® C-CLAMPS**

These clamps are made of a special steel alloy and achieve the highest clamping forces up to 15 000 N thanks to their C-shaped forged arm. The burnished spindle with tommy bar turns smoothly and precisely. Steel arm with nickel plating, ball-jointed pressure plate.

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight
50 mm	50 mm	430 g
50 mm	75 mm	630 g
60 mm	100 mm	950 g

**No. 705640**

**No. 705641**

**No. 705642**

**D TOOLMAKER'S CLAMP**

These parallel clamps are often used for fixing small metal components during drilling and threading on machines. The clamps are also used in many other areas thanks to their compact and simple design. Powder-coated jaws, gunmetal-finished torsion-resistant spindles.

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight
16 mm	28 mm	90 g
25 mm	40 mm	150 g
35 mm	55 mm	250 g
50 mm	70 mm	450 g
70 mm	105 mm	900 g

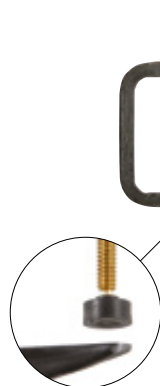
**No. 714149**

**No. 714150**

**No. 714151**

**No. 714152**

**No. 714153**

**E HERDIM® HAND-FORGED REPAIR CLAMPS**

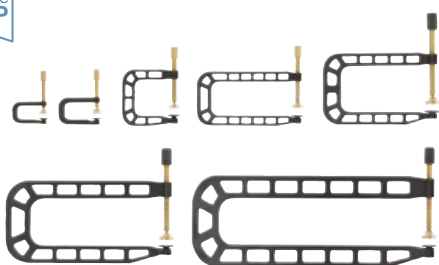
These traditional clamps, designed for the repair of musical instruments, are excellently suited to the construction of models thanks to their compact size. The two larger versions have a wide grip, and are therefore also used by restorers to repair damage to the veneer in the middle of table surfaces and tops. Forged by hand, the steel frames are built to withstand the hard knocks of everyday use in the studio, and have galvanized surfaces that are particularly easy to clean. Smooth-running brass spindle with knurled knob and steep thread. Ball-jointed pressure plate with removable rubber coating. Special silicone pads are available as accessories to protect varnished surfaces.

	Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight	Ø Silicone pad	
1	25 mm	10 mm	11 g	12 mm	<b>No. 735719</b>
2	28 mm	16 mm	18 g	12 mm	<b>No. 735718</b>
3	40 mm	29 mm	35 g	15 mm	<b>No. 735714</b>
4	90 mm	30 mm	75 g	15 mm	<b>No. 735715</b>
5	88 mm	43 mm	115 g	17 mm	<b>No. 735702</b>
6	135 mm	42 mm	170 g	17 mm	<b>No. 735704</b>
7	202 mm	40 mm	300 g	17 mm	<b>No. 735707</b>
8	49 mm	74 mm	105 g	17 mm	<b>No. 735709</b>
9	149 mm	76 mm	205 g	17 mm	<b>No. 735711</b>
10	302 mm	73 mm	720 g	17 mm	<b>No. 735713</b>

*Herdim® Hand-Forged Repair Clamps, 7-Piece Set* **Price advantage**

The set contains one each of No. 735702, 735704, 735707, 735714, 735715, 735718 and 735719.

**No. 735754**



► More Herdim® Repair Clamps and accessories available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## One-handed Clamps



### A DICTUM® LEVER CLAMPS

The advanced version of the all-steel clamp for fast, vibration-resistant clamping, thanks to a plastic-coated, non-slip ratchet-type lever. Galvanised fixed arm



and clamping pad forged from a single piece. Precisely made, wear-resistant catch mechanism for controlled clamping force up to 3400 N.

Jaw depth 100 / 140 mm

Jaw opening

200 mm **No. 705630**

300 mm **No. 705631**

### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.

(For more information see page 4)



B

### B BESSEY® KLIKAMP

Preserves your workpiece: The clamp arms of ultra-light die-cast magnesium can be quickly set to the exact amount of clamping pressure



desired using the ratchet lever. Their exceptionally light weight and protective clamping surfaces make them ideal for delicate workpieces and assembly work. Galvanised steel bar.

Jaw depth 80 mm

300 g

Jaw opening

200 mm **No. 705792**

### C PONY® ONE-HANDED LEVER CLAMP

One-handed lever clamp made of glass-fibre reinforced nylon housing and a steel locking and unlocking mechanism for fast, vibration-proof and delicate clamping. The clamping pressure can be individually adjusted by means of a ratchet mechanism. Thanks to the low weight and the movable plastic jaws, it is ideal for delicate workpieces and assembly work.

Jaw depth 60 mm

Jaw opening 50 mm

215 g

**No. 721028**

C



### D ONE-HANDED C-CLAMPS

Made in Germany:

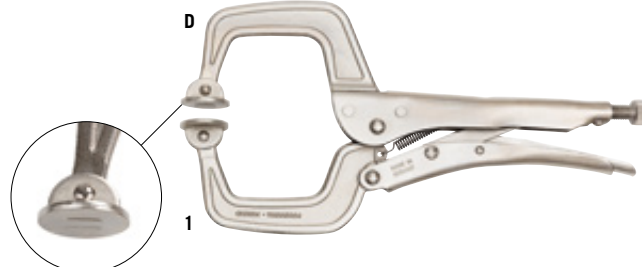
The one-handed operation leaves the second hand free, e.g. to position the workpiece. The contact pressure can be adjusted by a knurled screw. Two movable pressure plates distribute the pressure evenly; the clamp is therefore also suitable for conical workpieces. A locking mechanism prevents unintended loosening of the clamp (e.g. due to vibrations). A lever between the handles releases the lock. Made of heat-treated alloy steel for high stability and a long service life. The optionally available protective caps (No. 729516) serve to protect soft woods from pressure marks.

Jaw depth Jaw opening Weight

1 90 mm 0-100 mm 750 g **No. 729514**

2 235 mm 0-240 mm 1200 g **No. 729515**

3 Protective caps, pair **No. 729516**



D

1



3



2



### E JORGENSEN® ONE-HANDED CLAMPS

Due to the high clamping pressure of 150 kg, this sophisticated one-handed clamp is suitable not only for fixing components but also for glueing. Even sensitive surfaces can be clamped without damage with the long, smooth, soft plastic jaws. In addition to its spreading and clamping functions, the clamp has a patented extension system, making it possible to join two clamps together and thus double the jaw opening. Ergonomic two-component handles with release mechanism.

Jaw depth 80 mm

680, 780, 880, 1000 or 1240 g

Jaw opening

150 mm **No. 720999**

300 mm **No. 721001**

450 mm **No. 721002**

600 mm **No. 721003**

900 mm **No. 721004**



E



Spreading mode

**A PIHER® MAXI QUICK 300 ONE-HANDED CLAMP**

By using nylon, fibreglass and hardened steel, Piher has created a light, one-handed clamp with a clamping force of up to 300 kg. It is easy to handle, and thanks to the patented clamping system, a strong contact pressure can be achieved with little effort, which is suitable not only for fixing components but also for glueing. Pressure reduction stepwise in two steps and reversible for spreading with only one click.

Jaw depth 94 mm

Jaw opening Weight

150 mm 1.1 kg

300 mm 1.2 kg

600 mm 1.4 kg

Replacement caps, pair

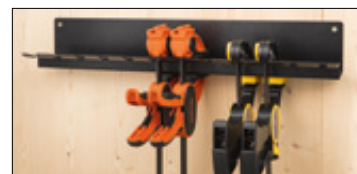
**No. 715436****No. 715437****No. 715438****No. 715440****B ONE-HAND SPREADER CLAMP**

Simple one-hand clamp for fixing quickly any kind of workpieces. Serrated hard plastic jaws equipped with one-sided ball-head mounting. The clamp can also be used for spreading by reversing the arms. Break-proof GRP polyamide arms.

Jaw depth 85 mm

670, 780 or 1000 g

Jaw opening

150 mm **No. 705771**300 mm **No. 705772**600 mm **No. 705774**

► For racks for all steel screw clamps and body clamps see chapter »Workshop Accessories and Toolkits«.

**One-hand Spreader Clamps, 3-Piece Set****Price advantage**

No. 705771, 705772, 705774.

**No. 705770**

For more spring clamps see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**C BESSEY® CLIPPIX NEEDLE NOSE SPRING CLAMP**

This needle nose spring clamp is ideal for applying accurate pressure. The fine pressure pads, just 10 mm wide, transfer high pressure even in tight spaces and with a large jaw depth. Suitable for all repair and assembly tasks. Soft plastic pressure pads to protect the workpiece, arms of break-proof fibreglass-reinforced polyamide.

Jaw depth 110 mm

Jaw opening 70 mm

**No. 703218****D PONY® ONE-HANDED SPRING CLAMP »PROTECTION«**

Versatile metal spring clamp for quick and easy clamping. High contact pressure at the jaw tips over the entire opening range. The jaws are parallel to each other at their maximum opening. PVC-coated jaws and handles prevent pressure marks on the workpiece and lie securely in the hand.

Jaw depth 45 mm

Jaw opening 55 mm

175 g

**No. 721027****E PONY® GORILLA CLAMP**

These inexpensive all-purpose clamps guarantee powerful clamping pressure, yet are extremely lightweight. Their swivel pressure pads adjust to the contours of the workpiece, while their fibre-reinforced arms withstand heavy-duty use.

Jaw opening 35, 50, 65 or 80 mm

150 g

Jaw depth

30 mm

40 mm

60 mm

70 mm

**No. 721030****No. 721031****No. 721032****No. 721033****4-piece Set****Price advantage**

No. 721030-721033.

**No. 721034****14-piece Set****Price advantage**

Includes:

• 6 pcs, jaw depth 30 mm (No. 721030)

• 4 pcs, jaw depth 40 mm (No. 721031)

• 2 pcs, jaw depth 60 mm (No. 721032)

• 2 pcs, jaw depth 70 mm (No. 721033)

**No. 721035**

## Body Clamps

**F BODY CLAMPS**

Clamp with exactly parallel guidance and large clamping faces for glueing furniture bodies and all types of frames. The plastic caps repel glue and prevent pressure points even on sensitive surfaces. The movable jaw runs on a powder-coated hollow profile bar and, by way of an anti-slip system, engages precisely in the desired position. Thanks to the wide back and the support clip at the end of the bar, the clamp can also be placed flat on the workbench. The supplied workpiece supports prevent direct contact between bar and workpiece, thus avoiding damage.

Two-component plastic handle for an ergonomic grip.

Clamping force up to 6900 N.

Jaw depth 95 mm

Jaw opening Weight

800 mm 2.7 kg

1250 mm 2.9 kg

**No. 720420****No. 720421**

Surcharge for bulky goods (1250 mm version only).



**A PIHER® BODY CLAMP PRL 400**

Lightweight and therefore easy to attach body clamp for a variety of worksteps, such as glueing narrow boards, drawers or small furniture bodies. Glue-repellent, exchangeable plastic protective jaws leave no pressure marks, even on sensitive surfaces. The supplied workpiece supports prevent direct contact between bar and workpiece, thus avoiding damage.

Anti-slip brake. Serrated beech handle.

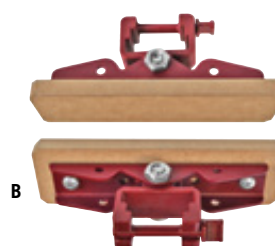
Clamping force up to 3900 N (400 kg).

Jaw depth 85 mm

Jaw opening Weight

600 mm 1.2 kg **No. 721014**

800 mm 1.4 kg **No. 721015**

**B PIHER® TILTING ATTACHMENTS**

2-piece set for PRL parallel clamp:

Swivel attachments as accessories for the PRL400 parallel clamp. These can be easily mounted on the jaws in any position or firmly locked at the tip of the clamping jaw. They have an MDF board (40 x 140 mm) with which both inclined and parallel surfaces can be clamped. It is also possible to replace the MDF boards with a different type of material and shape, so you can clamp with your own attachment profiles such as triangles, curves or similar, depending on the requirements. Fits No. 721014, 721015.

**No. 715435**



## Wooden Clamps

**Klemmsia® Clamps - The original from Germany**

The clamp features slip-resistant, surface-protecting cork pads and is therefore ideal for:

- Glueing of mouldings on panels or frames
- Clamping round workpieces without damaging the profile
- Glueing of overleap and dowelled joints of small workpieces without using support structures

**C KLEMMSIA® LIGHT CLAMPS**

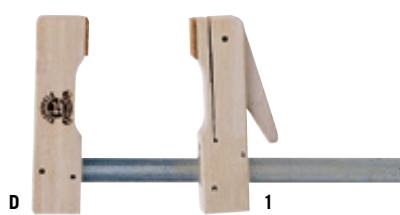
This clamp is much lighter than the Klemmsia standard model and is ideal for use as a repair clamp for instrument or model making. The clamping pressure can be regulated via a cam lever. One movable clamp arm. Anodised aluminium bar with hornbeam clamping arms.

Jaw depth 110 mm

Jaw opening Weight

100 mm 240 g **No. 708120**

200 mm 280 g **No. 708121**

**D KLEMMSIA® CLAMPS**

Light, fast-acting clamps. The clamping pressure can be regulated via a cam lever. Zinc-plated steel bar with hornbeam clamping arms.

**1 One Movable Clamp Arm**

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight	
110 mm	200 mm	440 g	<b>No. 705810</b>
110 mm	400 mm	610 g	<b>No. 705823</b>
110 mm	600 mm	780 g	<b>No. 705812</b>
110 mm	800 mm	915 g	<b>No. 705824</b>
150 mm	200 mm	500 g	<b>No. 705825</b>
200 mm	200 mm	530 g	<b>No. 705811</b>

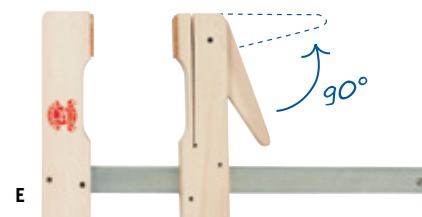
**2 Two Movable Clamp Arms**

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight	
110 mm	1200 mm	1265 g	<b>No. 705818</b>

Surcharge for bulky goods (1200 mm version only).

**3 Assembly Box Complete with 16 Clamps, 110/400 mm**

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight	
110 mm	400 mm	610 g	<b>No. 716345</b>

**E KLEMMSIA® 90° CLAMPS**

Maximum clamping force at 90° position of the eccentric lever. This Klemmsia light clamp version is particularly suitable in tight spaces or when several clamps are attached to a workpiece. The clamping pressure can be regulated via a cam lever. One movable clamp arm. Zinc-plated steel bar with hornbeam clamping arms.

Jaw depth 110 mm

Jaw opening Weight

200 mm 435 g **No. 708122**

300 mm 520 g **No. 708123**

400 mm 600 g **No. 708124**





**A JORGENSEN® HANDSCREW CLAMPS**

High-quality variable-angle wooden clamp. The jaws can be set parallel or at an angle, so you can conveniently clamp non-parallel surfaces as well. Even pressure distribution without torsion forces. The wooden jaws and handles are made of seasoned hard maple. Smooth-running galvanised steel spindles.

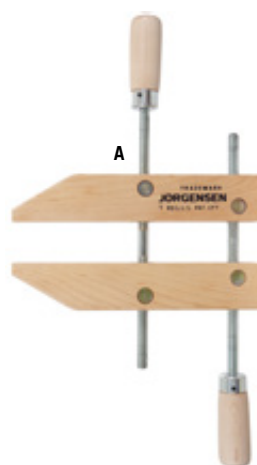
*Single clamps*

Jaw depth	Jaw opening	Weight	
70 mm	75 mm	420 g	<b>No. 708928</b>
100 mm	120 mm	810 g	<b>No. 708929</b>
120 mm	160 mm	1 kg	<b>No. 708930</b>

*3-Piece Set Price advantage*

No. 708928, 708929, 708930

**No. 708933**

**Tip:**

To quickly open hand-screw clamps, hold the handles with both hands and turn them as you would do with a crank.

## Bar Clamps and Clamp Fixtures

**B HEAVY DUTY I-BEAM BAR CLAMP**

Sometimes you need a pressure reserve, e.g. when glueing door frames, staircases or thick panels. With its rigid I-profile, powerful trapezoid thread and robust hand crank, this door clamp is a match for the most difficult challenges.

I-profile 85 x 42 x 4 mm.

Jaw opening 1200 mm

Jaws 55 x 85 mm

Spindle length 150 mm

14.5 kg

**No. 705827**

Surcharge for bulky goods.

**C JORGENSEN® ALUMINIUM BAR CLAMPS**

These lightweight aluminium gluing clamps offer high tensile strength and will not cause glue to stain upon contact. Screw, tail and headpieces made of steel. The bar features notches in 25 mm increments for quick adjustment.

Load capacity max. 7500 N

Bar cross-section 20 x 35 mm

Jaw depth 42 mm

Jaw opening	Weight	
600 mm	1 kg	<b>No. 708906</b>
900 mm	1.2 kg	<b>No. 708907</b>

**D DUBUQUE ALUMINIUM BAR CLAMPS**

These extremely lightweight aluminium gluing clamps are ideal for quick and comfortable working. Due to the U-shaped hollow section, they are sturdy and stay straight even under high tension. The movable expansion chuck has a spring claw which clicks into the carved runner (15 mm spacing). The quick adjustment ensures a save grip and one-handed use. Headpieces and spindle made of aluminium.

Bar cross-section 22 x 35 mm

Jaw depth 37 mm

Jaw opening	Weight	
600 mm	0.9 kg	<b>No. 707690</b>
900 mm	1.1 kg	<b>No. 707691</b>
1200 mm	1.3 kg	<b>No. 707692</b>

Surcharge for bulky goods (1200 mm version only).



U-shaped hollow section

**E OTORO CLAMP FIXTURE SET, ¾ INCH**

Robust glueing clamps, optionally with or without pipe. Compared to standard clamping systems, the thread is attached in front of the pipe and not offset to the side. The force acts directly via the centre axis of the pipe, ensuring even and precise pressure. Especially when you begin clamping, this system has many advantages, it clearly minimises that the pieces to be clamped will initially slip. The tail has a continuous quick multi-plate clutch for rapid adjustment. Set: Head and tail castings, wire ring (with or without pipe).

**1 Solo**  
Without pipe. For pipes with ¾ inch (27 mm) outside diameter.  
Jaw depth 45 mm  
1.4 kg  
**No. 720470**

**2 Incl. Pipe**  
Comes with galvanized pipe ¾ inch diameter and length 1 m, with cut thread at both ends.  
Jaw depth 45 mm  
3 kg  
**No. 715468**

**F OTORO LEATHER PROTECTION PADDINGS, 2-PIECE SET**

The leather protection paddings protect the materials to be clamped against pressure marks. Fits Otoro Clamp Fixture Set No. 720470.  
**No. 720471**

**A PONY® PIPE CLAMP FIXTURE SET**

Robust glueing clamps, optionally with or without pipe. The tail has a continuous quick multi-plate clutch for rapid adjustment. Crank handle. Set: Head and tail castings (with or without pipe).

**Solo**

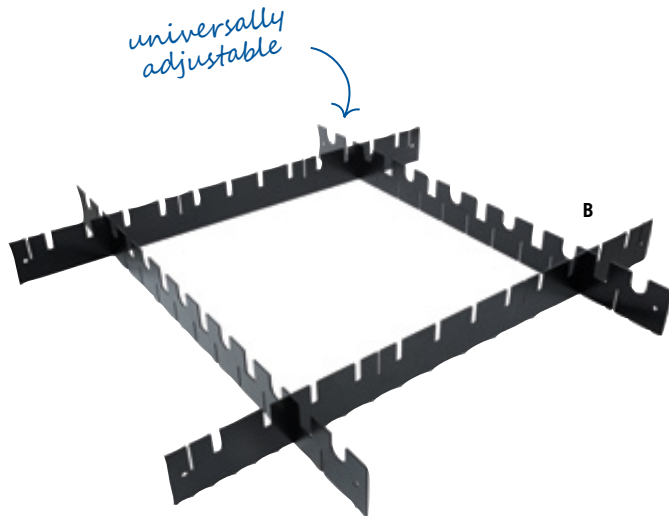
Without pipe.

Pipe size / Outer Ø	Jaw depth	Weight	
1 ½ Inch (21 mm)	38 mm	0.8 kg	<b>No. 708932</b>
2 ¾ Inch (27 mm)	42 mm	1.1 kg	<b>No. 708931</b>
3 ¾ Inch, with Stand	53 mm	1.8 kg	<b>No. 708934</b>

**Incl. Pipe**

Comes with galvanized pipe, length 1 m, with cut thread at both ends.

Pipe size / Outer Ø	Jaw depth	Weight	
½ Inch (21 mm)	38 mm	1.9 kg	<b>No. 715465</b>
¾ Inch (27 mm)	42 mm	2.7 kg	<b>No. 715466</b>
3 ¾ Inch, with Stand	53 mm	3.4 kg	<b>No. 715467</b>

**B GLUEING AID**

This metal glueing aid facilitates and accelerates the glueing of e.g. boards or steps. Thanks to the different recesses, body clamps (e.g. No. 720421), industrial I-bar clamps (e.g. No. 708926), aluminium bar clamps (e.g. No. 708907) as well as pipe clamp fixture sets (e.g. No. 708931) with ¾ inch (27 mm) outer diameter can be used for glueing without the clamps falling over. Length 900 mm  
**No. 746248**



**C BATES® RELEASE AGENT FOR COLD GLUING APPLICATIONS UP TO 38 °C**  
BATES is a silicone-free, water-based wax emulsion that can be used to make non-porous metal surfaces glue-repellent. It prevents glues from adhering to machinery and equipment, thus re-

ducing downtime for cleaning. Regular application prevents the need for harsh cleaning methods. Bates can be very easily applied with a cloth, brush, sponge or spray bottle.

1 l **No. 714178**  
5 l **No. 714179**



**Vide** Application video available online.

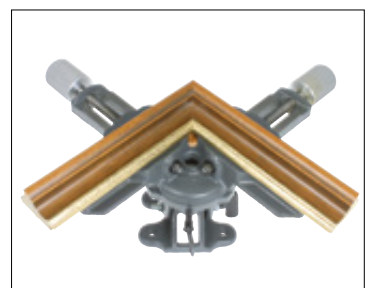
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

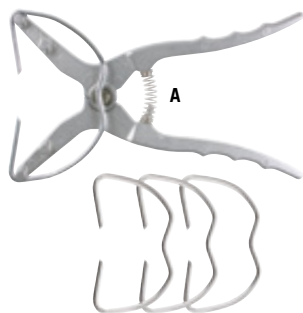
## Mitre Clamps

**D PRECISION MITRE CLAMP**

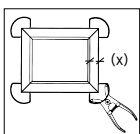
Heavy-duty vice for precise rectangular jointing, working and glueing frames and other profiles. The vice can be turned 360° on its base, angled up to 90° and locked into every position. The central saw slot allows work to be done while the piece is clamped into position. Four holes in the base for securing the vice to a workbench.

Made of cast iron.  
Jaw opening 100 mm  
4.8 kg  
**No. 705769**





**A SPRING MITRE BRACKET SYSTEM**  
 Lightweight spring brackets for quick and easy assembly of frames and other wooden constructions. Only one hand is required to operate the mitre pliers, so the other hand remains free for the work piece. The ends are pointed. Brackets of hardened spring steel. Set includes four brackets.  
 Distance between centres 45 mm  
 For moulding width (x) 35-50 mm  
**No. 705741**



**B REPLACEMENT BRACKETS, 4-PIECE SET**  
 Fits spring mitre bracket system No. 705741.  
 Distance between centres For moulding width (x)  
 15 mm 15-25 mm **No. 705742**  
 45 mm 35-50 mm **No. 705744**  
 55 mm 40-65 mm **No. 705745**  
 30 mm 25-35 mm **No. 705743**

## Tape Tensioners



**C BESSEY® TAPE TENSIONER WITH VARIO ANGLES**  
 Multi-angular structures, cylinders and irregular workpieces are very difficult to glue using clamps; these usually require complex support structures. In such cases you are better served with a tape tensioner: You place the tape, made of tear-resistant polyester, around the workpiece and tension it seamlessly. The second field of application for this tool is when gluing frames cut to mitre. The four supplied Vario angles for angles

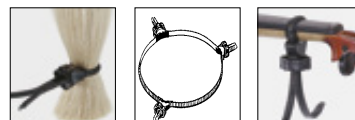


of 60° to 180° exert even pressure on the mitre joints and also ensure the necessary distance from the workpiece. Tensioning scope max. 7 m, with integrated roll up mechanism.  
**No. 705710**



**D MULTI-CLIP**  
 Bonding, pressing and securing: Patented traction clamp for securing wooden parts for assembly or glueing, bundling cables, rods or wires, securing ladders, posts or pipes, etc. Two or more

clamps can be combined to accommodate larger objects. Made of high-strength glue-repellent plastic. Clamping force max. 1 kN. Jaw opening diameter 12-100 mm.  
**No. 705870**



**E PONY® TAPE TENSIONER WITH PLASTIC JAWS**  
 An ideal clamping aid for picture frames, shelves, furniture and other workpieces. The tension is fully adjustable via an eccentric lever. Incl. four plastic jaws and 4 m nylon strap.  
 Band length 4 m  
**No. 708908**



**F PONY® TAPE TENSIONER, FABRIC BELT**  
 This belt tensioner enables the clamping of round and irregular shapes. The strong

linen fabric belt runs self-locking in the roller guides and can be adapted to the workpiece from both sides. The final clamping force is controlled by the handle

of the trapezoidal spindle. Belt width 50 mm  
 Band length 7.6 m  
**No. 721029**







# *Workshop Accessories & Tool Sets*

Working with method!

**Tool Sets | 252**

**Sculptor's Benches and Workbenches | 253**

**Accessories and Clamping Devices | 257**

**Workshop Equipment | 261**

**Useful Aids | 262**

**Occupational Safety and Workwear | 262**



## Tool Sets

### DICTUM Tool Carriers

For easy storage of your tools and a clear work space: DICTUM tool carriers make sure your workshop is tidy and with their mix of design and functionality, they are a perfect example of our company philosophy. Each tool has its own place and is safely protected against damage. When away on an installation job, you will profit from having a light-weight selection of tools that can be used to carry out virtually any type of job. The stable tool carriers made of glue-laminated birch plywood are exclusively manufactured in Germany according to our company guidelines and quality standards. You will benefit from a well-designed, practical tool system to arrange your own tools in an extraordinary orderly

manner for your every day work in the workshop and on site. The suitable plastic Systainers are standardised, durable and stackable (the tool carriers are compatible with plastic Systainers No. IV and V available on the market). The tool set »Cabinet making, interior work« will equip your workshop with a whole range of premium hand tools, perfectly stowed in the DICTUM tool carrier and an optional Systainer.

Your benefits:

- Price advantage compared to the price for single pieces!
- All single tools can be ordered separately

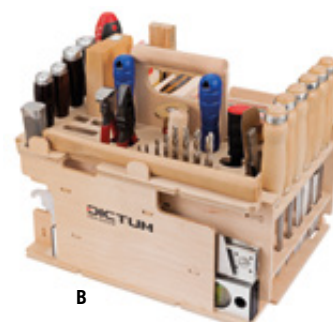


**A** SYSTAINER® T-LOC WITH DICTUM® TOOL CARRIER »CABINET MAKING, INTERIOR WORK«, EQUIPPED, 43-PIECE SET *Price advantage*  
An assortment of basic hand tools for cabinet making and interior work. This carrier also provides two additional compartments for small items.

- Punch awl No. 717206
  - 2 DICTUM pencils No. 707355
- 370 x 263 x 293 mm  
13.1 kg  
**No. 718813**

The tool carrier contains:

- DICTUM chisels No. 701380, -381, -382, -383, -384, -385,
- Saws No. 712848, -478
- Plane No. 703108
- Pliers No. 717822, -808,
- Screwdrivers No. 717800, -801, -803, -804
- Voltage tester No. 800330
- Wood twist drills No. 707005, -080, -081, -082, -835, -083, -836, -084
- DICTUM Folding rule No. 708034
- Parallel marker No. 716152
- DICTUM marking gauge No. 717175
- Folding square No. 707313
- Spirit level No. 717156
- Bit screwdriver sets No. 717851, -878
- Hammer No. 714103
- Titebond wood glue No. 450360,
- 2 DICTUM clamps No. 705635
- File No. 705023 and file handle No. 704955 (not mounted)
- Bessey Cutter No. 710540,
- Sharpening stone No. 711007
- Sanding block No. 707863



**B** DICTUM® TOOL CARRIER »CABINET MAKING, INTERIOR WORK«, EQUIPPED, 42-PIECE SET *Price advantage*  
Fits Systainer T-LOC. For the equipment supplied with the tool carrier see No. 718813. Fits 58 tools and has additional compartments for small items.  
11 kg  
**No. 718812**



**C** SUPPLEMENTARY TOOL SET »SPEZIAL«, 13-PIECE SET *Price advantage*  
For DICTUM tool carrier »Cabinet making, interior work« No. 718812 and Systainer set No. 718813. The tool carrier provides enough space to stow both the basic tool set and the additional tools.

The set contains:

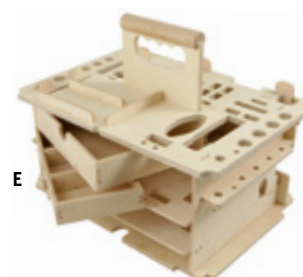
- Saws No. 712845, 712613
- Talmeter No. 708037
- Sliding bevel No. 707327
- Pliers No. 717836, 717826, 717807
- Rasp No. 704732
- File handle No. 704955
- Punch awl No. 717205
- Driver set No. 710851.

**No. 718818**



**D** SYSTAINER® T-LOC WITH DICTUM® TOOL CARRIER »CABINET MAKING, INTERIOR WORK«, WITHOUT TOOLS *Price advantage*  
For 58 items, including two compartments for small items. Without tools.  
4.9 kg  
**No. 718811**

**E** DICTUM® TOOL CARRIER »CABINET MAKING, INTERIOR WORK«, WITHOUT TOOLS  
For 58 items, including two compartments for small items.  
2.6 kg  
**No. 718810**



# Sculptor's Benches and Workbenches



## DICTUM Workbenches

The workbench - one of the most important tools for many handcraft projects - will only become your life-long companion if it is of an extremely solid construction, high-quality workmanship and offers a wide range of functions. Working closely with renowned German workbench manufacturers and based on our many years of experience in the trade, we have incorporated all these characteristics in our workbenches.



For matching bench dogs see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### A DICTUM® WORKBENCH

»DELUXE 2000«  
Heavy, solid multi-purpose workbench for all applications. With this high-quality professional workbench of perfect workmanship, we offer a variety of clamping options to make your work easier. We use high-quality mechanisms for our double-spindle front vices, because their manufacturing tolerance and material thickness make them one of the most durable vice types worldwide.

#### Design:

- Made of selected, slightly steamed beechwood for minimal shrinkage and expansion
- Heavy weight guarantees optimum stability
- The worktop is made of long, single timber beams, that are glued together
- The top is perfectly secured against warping by breadboard ends, 60 mm wide (central carriage bolt and loose tongue)
- Extra high bench apron of 132 mm for larger pressure surface at the jaws
- Workbench base made of solid beechwood
- Top and base untreated

#### Clamping elements:

- Multi-bonded, warp-free jaws
- High-quality vice mechanisms from selected manufacturers
- Made in Germany tail vice, 490 mm long, with durable, low-wear, all-steel guide, maximum opening 210 mm, spindle Ø 28 mm
- Chain drive vice for parallel and clearance-free clamping. Maximum opening 200 mm, jaw length 610 mm, spindle Ø 30 mm, spindle distance 210 mm
- Obliquely joined front vice for maximum surface pressure
- Torsion-resistant tail vice due to

#### multiple glueing

- Six dog holes of Ø 25 mm on bench apron and tail vice for clamping workpieces at the front of the bench top, including two aluminium front bench dogs



- (Removable) workpiece support and fastener on the front vice to prevent pressure marks on the workpiece edge
- Bench support in the frame leg for large workpieces that are clamped in the front of the bench.
- Ten dog holes of Ø 25 mm in front of and on the front vice, including four round, retractable, aluminium bench dogs for clamping irregularly formed workpieces
- 12 dog holes for square bench dogs, incl. two wooden, square bench dogs for clamping delicate workpieces and two square aluminium bench dogs to ensure powerful clamping for rougher work

Worktop thickness 132 / 65 mm  
Worktop dimensions 2000 x 605 mm  
Overall dimensions 2205 x 770 mm  
Height 900 mm  
130 kg

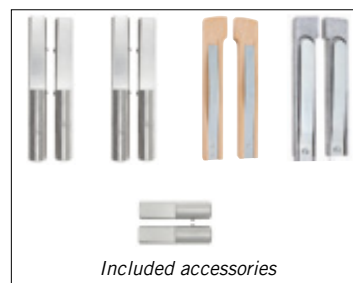
**No. 706440**



**Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



Below shot of front vice



Included accessories



oiled surface

untreated surface



B

### B DRAWER

The slide drawer made with half-blind dovetails is suspended underneath the bench top. For storing add-ons (such as bench dogs and clamping devices) or tools.  
Overall dimension 520 x 320 x 135 mm  
Height under table 140 mm.

**No. 706343**

### C OILED SURFACE

Open-pored surface treatment with toxin-free vegetable oils. The oils contain valuable, natural conditioners, emphasize the grain pattern and give the surface a more vivid structure with a silky gloss. They dry rather slowly, thereby penetrating deeply and thoroughly hardening the surface.

**No. 706344**

Workbenches are delivered unassembled (detailed assembly instructions included).  
Additional features (oiled surface or drawer) only available with workbench order.



## A DICTUM® WORKBENCHES

### »ALLROUND 1700«

This heavy workbench impresses with its tried-and-tested construction, flexible working heights and a wide range of additional clamping options. The insertion clamp allows you to fasten workpieces in the centre of the worktop or at the front of the workbench.

#### Design:

- Made of hard beechwood
- Heavy weight for good stability
- Worktop of serrated timber beams, that are glued together
- Breadboard end optimally protects the worktop against warping (central carriage bolt and serrated joints)
- Base fitted with mortise and tenon joints
- Base with torsion-free stretchers thanks to integrated truss rods and full-length tension screws
- Different bench heights possible
- Waxed top


#### Vices and bench dogs:

- Torsion-resistant tail vice due to multiple glueing, 580 mm, with wear-resistant steel-encased guide, max. opening 250 mm, spindle Ø 28 mm
- Solid classic front vice, 525 mm, with flat iron guide for minimum backlash and additional clamping support, max. opening 200 mm, spindle Ø 28 mm
- Four round, retractable aluminium bench dogs, Ø 30 mm, for clamping objects of any shape
- Two retractable aluminium square bench dogs for easy clamping with the tail vice

#### Possible accessories:

- A wide range of clamping options thanks to additional holes for bench dogs to be used with insertion clamps No. 706320 or No. 706329

Worktop thickness 120 / 65 mm  
Worktop dimensions 1700 x 640 mm  
Overall dimensions 1795 x 830 mm  
Bench vice handle Ø 27 mm  
126 kg  
Height  
870 mm  
**No. 706311**  
900 mm  
**No. 706312**

 **Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



Below shot of front vice



Clamping support



Clamping possibility with insertion clamp



B

## B DICTUM® WORKBENCHES

### »JUNIOR«

The workbench which grows with your kids:

This space-saving workbench provides the same functionality as professional workbenches, and is therefore ideal for craftsmen such as goldsmiths, silver-smiths and knifemakers who work on smaller objects. The legs are available in different lengths and can easily be replaced, which also makes this bench the right choice for children and teenagers.

#### Design:

- Made of steamed beech for minimal shrinkage and expansion
- Worktop made of long, single timber beams, that are glued together
- No design compromises compared with professional workbenches
- Breadboard end optimally protects the worktop against warping (central carriage bolt and tongue)
- Solid base
- Replacement legs available in different lengths, allowing different working heights
- Tool well
- Worktop oiled, base untreated

#### Vices and bench dogs:

- Two German front vices, 400 mm, max. opening 170 mm, spindle Ø 24 mm
- Four cast-aluminium bench dogs

#### Possible accessories:

- Veritas brass bench dogs, hold-down clamps and bench clamps fit the 19 mm holes for bench dogs

Worktop thickness 90 / 45 mm  
Worktop dimensions 1170 x 560 mm  
Overall dimensions 1250 x 640 mm  
50 kg  
Height  
670 mm **No. 706300**  
750 mm **No. 706077**  
860 mm **No. 706302**

 **Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



Central carriage bolt



Worktop secured through breadboard end



Below shot of front vice

Left-handed version available at a 20 % higher price. Please contact our customer service. Phone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



C

**C REPLACEMENT LEGS FOR DICTUM® WORKBENCH »JUNIOR«**  
Height 770 mm  
For bench height 860 mm  
**No. 706303**

**A ULMIA® WORKBENCHES**

A good bench must be solid, have a plane working surface and be fitted with vices that grip pieces of all sizes firmly. These requirements are all fulfilled by this workbench by Ulmia.

**Design:**

- Made of hard beechwood
- Heavy weight for good stability
- Worktop with serrated timber beams that are glued together
- Breadboard end optimally protects the worktop against warping (central carriage bolt and finger joints)
- Base fitted with mortise and tenon joints
- Base with torsion-free stretchers due to integrated truss rods and full-length tension screws
- Waxed top

**Vices and bench dogs:**

- Torsion-resistant tail vice due to multiple glueing, 580 mm, with patented aluminium-encased guide, max. opening 240 mm, spindle Ø 28 mm
- Solid German front vice, 525 mm with round guide, max. opening 140 mm, spindle Ø 28 mm
- Four round, retractable aluminium bench dogs for clamping objects of any shape

**Possible accessories:**

- Allows use of insertion clamps No. 706320 or No. 706329.

**Model 1500**

Worktop thickness 120 / 65 mm  
Worktop dimensions 1500 x 640 mm  
Overall dimensions 1580 x 850 mm  
Height 900 mm  
100 kg  
**No. 706085**

**Model 2000**

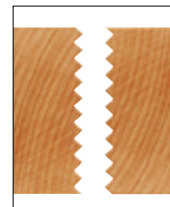
Worktop thickness 120 / 65 mm  
Worktop dimensions 2000 x 640 mm  
Overall dimensions 2080 x 850 mm  
Height 900 mm  
120 kg  
**No. 706087**



**Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902



Below shot of front vice



Serrated worktop



Tail vice (sectional image)



For matching bench dogs see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**B**

1



2

**B HATTORI® WORKBENCH**

The main feature of this workbench is the good price/performance ratio it offers. Its compact size makes it suitable for smaller workrooms.

**Design:**

- Solid beech wood
- Very good stability
- Worktop made of glued timber beams
- Work surface protected against warping by a breadboard end (dovetail joint, three screw bolts)
- Solid wood foot stand
- Oiled surface

**Vices and bench dogs:**

- Torsion-resistant tail vice due to multiple glueing, 460 mm, with all-steel guide, max. opening 145 mm, spindle Ø 28 mm, incl. jaw guard made of felt to prevent marks on the workpiece
- Classic front vice 520 mm with round guide, max. opening 180 mm, spindle Ø 28 mm

- Four round, stepped aluminium bench dogs Ø 19/30 mm for clamping irregular parts
- Four dog holes Ø 19 mm on apron and tail vices for workpiece clamping in front of the worktop
- Eight dog holes Ø 19 mm in front of the front vice and two dog holes on the front vice with a stepped hole Ø 19/30 mm for clamping irregular parts
- Ten stepped dog holes Ø 19/30 mm in front and on the tail vice for clamping longer workpieces

Worktop thickness 130 / 50 mm  
Height 870 mm

**1 Workbench 1200**  
Worktop dimensions 1200 x 620 mm  
Overall dimensions 1410 x 790 mm  
Bench vice handle Ø 28 mm  
77 kg  
**No. 706304**

**2 Workbench 1500**  
Worktop dimensions 1500 x 620 mm  
Overall dimensions 1710 x 790 mm  
Bench vice handle Ø 28 mm  
85 kg  
**No. 706309**



Below shot of front vice



**Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902





**A WORKBENCH CASTER KIT, 4 PIECES**  
All four swivel castors have a foot lever to lift loads, e.g. a workbench, for quick and easy transport. Ideal for the workshop when the workbench needs to be moved. Maximum load capacity with four castors 200 kg. Caster diameter 60 mm. Incl. fastening screws.  
**No. 707867**



**B ADD-ON VICE WITH HANDLE**  
Solid beech wood front vice which can be clamped onto any stable table by means of two lateral grooves. For use as a workbench, the vice can also be permanently attached to a table-top by means of the holes provided. The 80 mm thick plate contains two Ø 19 mm hole lines (also suitable for

Veritas clamping accessories) and is supplied with four (not retractable) round aluminium bench dogs. A setscrew inside the vice (can be used from the left and from the right) allows counterpressure when clamping one side only and prevents the jaw from tilting. Oiled surface. Opening width 120 mm. Spindle diameter 23 mm.



*Worktop Length 310 mm*  
Worktop dimensions 310 x 350 mm  
Overall dimensions 465 x 350 mm  
10 kg  
**No. 726254**

*Worktop Length 470 mm*  
Worktop dimensions 470 x 350 mm  
Overall dimensions 625 x 350 mm  
13 kg  
**No. 726253**



**D DICTUM® MOXON VICE ADD-ON**  
Made of solid, knotless oak, the mobile double spindle or »Moxon« vice is one of the most versatile clamping devices. It was already described by Joseph Moxon back in 1703. It is attached directly to the workbench. This gives an ergonomic working height that makes work easier for a wide range of tasks, such as chiselling dovetails or sharpening saws. The tiltable jaw (approx. 5°) allows you to clamp tapered pieces.



The 25 mm thick plate is secured by dovetail keys that prevent warping. 12 dog holes with a diameter of 19 mm offer sufficient clamping options (comes without dogs or hold down clamps). Thanks to the protruding worktop, you

can also secure longer pieces with a screw clamp. Large 19.8 mm diameter trapezoidal spindles and cast-iron hand wheels with polished rims. Spindles need to be fitted on site. Untreated wood surface.  
Clamping jaw 800 x 140 x 45 mm  
Spindle distance 560 mm  
Worktop dimensions 800 x 380 x 25 mm  
Dimensions without spindle protrusion 950 x 425 x 140 mm  
18 kg  
**No. 716288**



*Dog holes with 19 mm diameter for Veritas clamping devices*



*Tiltable jaw*



*Easily fastened with screw clamps*

**E MOXON VICE SPINDLE SET**  
Spindle set for a mobile collet chuck. Joseph Moxon first described and demonstrated this type of vice in his book »Mechanick Exercises« in 1703. These very simple yet enormously useful double-spindle clamps provide the following benefits:

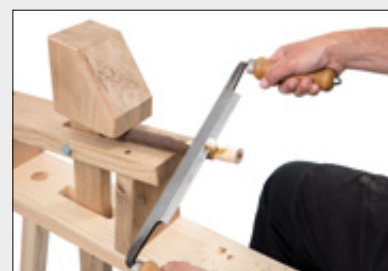
- Optimal use of the workbench
- Free worktop for planing and chiselling
- Ideal working height for sawing dovetails and tenons
- Safe clamping of workpieces of almost any size and shape
- Freestanding design allows it to be easily set aside when not in use
- Simple assembly of the spindle set



Large 19.8 mm diameter trapezoidal spindles with a length of 240 mm make it easy to assemble the vice, because you can use a standard 20 mm auger bit. Comes with cast iron hand wheels with polished rims, diameter 125 mm. Adjustable clamp size (wooden jaws are custom-made by the user).  
**No. 716278**

## WORKSHOP

### SHAVING HORSE



The traditional shaving horse is an indispensable tool when working with drawknives. Rods, rungs, table legs and other long, round or board-shaped parts can be gripped with light pressure on the foot-activated lever mechanism and then shaped with the knife in both hands. This method of working is not only ergonomic, it is absolutely safe. The model that is created in this course is particularly popular for shingle production. The shape of the head makes it possible to clamp the workpiece from the side. The base frame with three legs is made of pine wood; the clamp fixture and support of sturdy oak. Both hand tools and routers are used during production.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



**A** DICTUM® SHAVING HORSE

The traditional shaving horse is an indispensable tool when working with draw-knives. Rods, rungs, table legs and other long, round or board-shaped parts can be gripped with the foot-activated lever mechanism and then freely shaped with the knife in both hands. Shaving horses allow you to work in a position which is ergonomic, reduces stress on the back and most importantly, is absolutely safe. Based on a Swedish model, the workbench presented here is light, sturdy and very versatile due to the adjustable yoke and footrest. Pinewood bench, frame and legs. Supplied unassembled, with assembly instructions.  
Bench height 540 mm  
Max. jaw opening 150 mm



Length 1250 mm

**No. 706080**

Surcharge for bulky goods.

**Vide****C**

**C** DICTUM® SCULPTOR'S BENCH  
Solid high-quality sculptor's workbench for professional use. The tilting bench top offers optimum fixing and working positions and high comfort even when working over long periods. A front vice and 44 holes in the bench top provide the best possible positioning for the workpiece.

## Design:

- Bench top glued from solid beech and efficiently protected against warping by breadboard ends
- Tilting bench top for relief work and supports on both sides for vibration-free working
- High weight for optimum stability
- Underframe of solid beech with shelf for additional weight, e.g. stone slabs
- Bench top and bench frame are untreated

**B**

**B** DICTUM® CARVING SUPPORT  
Rugged high-quality carving support made of steamed beech. The support is clamped into your workbench vice, thus provides safe and ergonomic working conditions for all kinds of sculpting projects. The working position can be set flexibly due to the freely movable joint, the robust double tenon joint and the solid clamping lever ensure precise locking. It comes with a spacer block, which helps to clamp smaller workpieces with a carver's screw No. 705799.  
700 x 160 x 70 mm  
**No. 701047**

## Clamp fixtures:

- Torsion-resistant jaw due to multiple glueing
- Front vice with parallel guide for versatile clamping options, chair legs, relief and ornamental carving; max. opening 160 mm; spindle Ø 30 mm
- A setscrew inside the vice allows counterpressure when clamping one side only and prevents the jaw from tilting
- The 70 mm thick bench top contains five rows of holes for Veritas Ø 19 mm clamping accessories and two rows of holes for Ø 25 mm round bench dogs or insertion clamps
- Four round Ø 25 mm retractable aluminium bench dogs for clamping objects of any shape
- Carver's screw, length 180 mm, Ø 18 mm

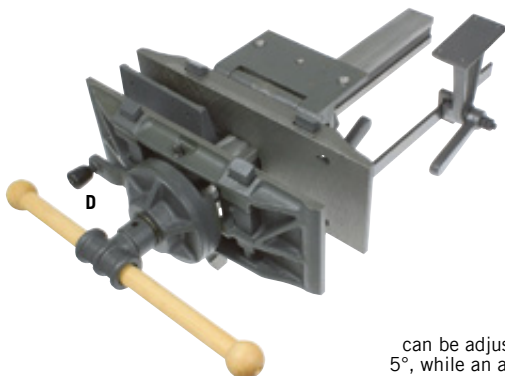
Incl. carving support from solid beech with groove for workpiece rest or carver's screw. The workpiece rest is height-adjustable and can be rotated by 360°. Tilting bench top.

Worktop thickness 70 mm  
Worktop dimensions 780 x 640 mm  
Height 950 / 1900 mm  
87 kg

**No. 706145**

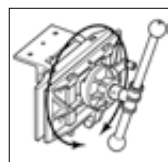
  **Free freight forwarding.**  
Other countries on request.  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902

## Accessories and Clamping Devices

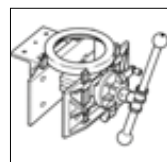


**D** MULTIPURPOSE BENCH VICE  
Multifunctional:  
The most versatile clamping tool for the demanding woodworker: the main jaws

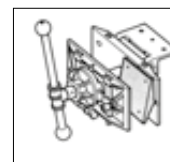
can be adjusted conically up to 5°, while an additional jaw can be swivelled up to 30° on a second axis. Without loosening the clamp, the entire piece can be swung upwards and locked into any position up to 90° and rotated 360°. Four adjustable bench dogs



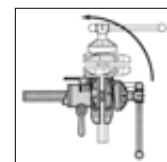
360° swivel action



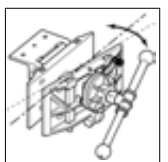
Clamping with bench dogs



Additional jaw with swivel action



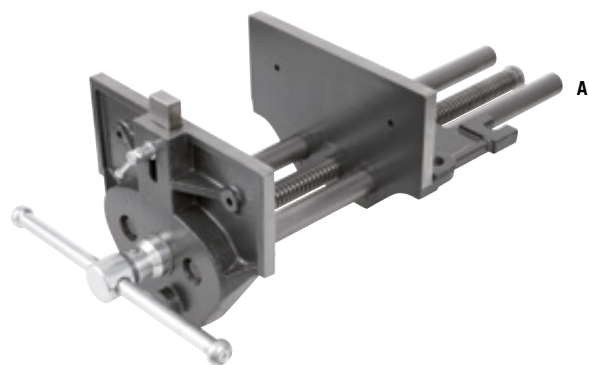
Tilting from a horizontal to a vertical position



Angling the jaw with a cam lever

accommodate pieces of various shapes. The heavy grey cast iron construction holds workpieces securely and reduces vibration, even under higher loads. This vice is easily attached to the workbench by aligning the mounting plate flush with the bench top and tightening the

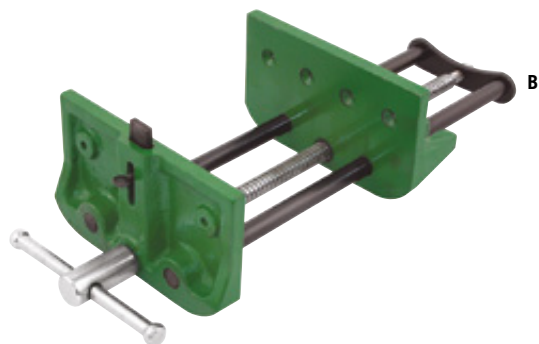
support from below. Instructions included.  
Jaw opening 350 mm  
Jaw width 345 mm  
Jaw height 125 mm  
25 kg  
**No. 705767**

**A HEAVY BENCH VICES**

Solid metal vice enables exact and strong clamping on the workbench. The grey cast iron jaws run on two 25 mm strong steel guide rods virtually free of play. The 24 mm strong, precisely milled spindle has asymmetrically shaped threads to withstand extreme loads. The extendable dog enables clamping of longer objects. Easy installation by screwing the vice to the bottom of the bench plate. Jaw drill holes for fastening wooden blocks.

9 / 16 / 17 kg

Jaw opening	Throat depth	Jaw width	Length	
210 mm	77 mm	178 mm	400 mm	<b>No. 705806</b>
360 mm	105 mm	230 mm	550 mm	<b>No. 705807</b>
390 mm	105 mm	267 mm	605 mm	<b>No. 705808</b>

**B STANDARD BENCH VICE**

Metal vice with double guide tracks, trapezoidal thread and extendable bench dog. Screwed to the bottom of the bench plate (installation height 60 mm), jaw drill holes for fastening wooden blocks.

Throat depth 75 mm  
Jaw opening 300 mm  
Jaw width 180 mm

5.7 kg

**No. 705768**

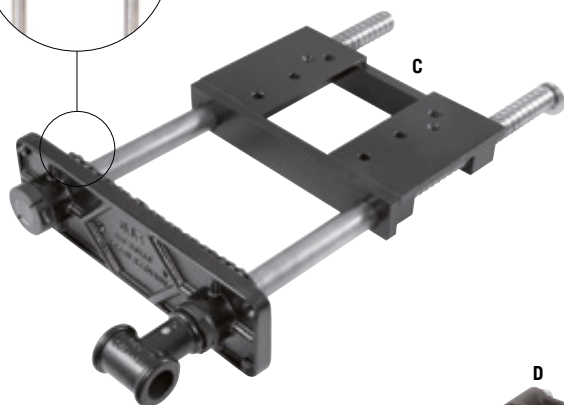


► Lake Erie Toolworks wooden screw thread bench vices and assembly videos available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



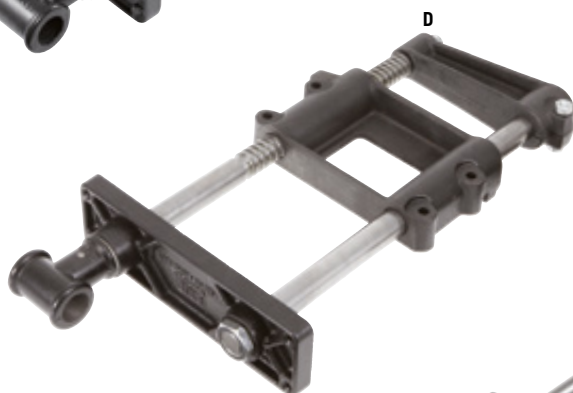
For matching bench vice handles see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**C COMPACT DOUBLE-SPINDLE FRONT VICE, HEAVY CAST VERSION**

The compact design enables quick and easy assembly. The robust mounting plate guarantees a warp-resistant vice mechanism for parallel clamping and even pressure across the entire vice surface. The spindle gap of 210 mm also

allows for the clamping of workpieces between the flat thread spindles. The T-piece can be attached to the left or the right spindle. Diameter of the flat thread spindles 30 mm. Spindle length 500 mm, overall length 640 mm.

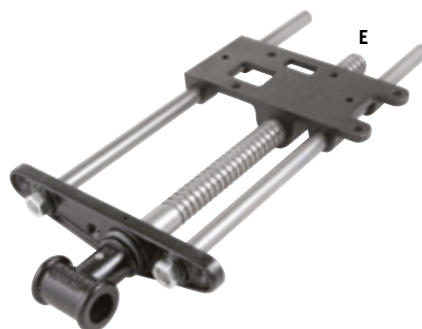
13.5 kg  
**No. 740227**

**D FRONT VICE GUIDE, HEAVY CAST VERSION**

The extremely robust and torsion-resistant vice mechanism is designed in such a way that even pressure is exerted over the entire width of the vice, also when you clamp workpieces in one jaw end only and with maximum pressure. This ensures parallel clamping even for difficult workpieces. German workbench

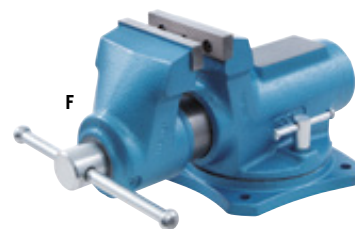
manufacturers such as Ulmia use this front vice guide. Diameter of the square-thread spindle and guide rod 28 mm. Spindle length 440 mm, overall length 580 mm.

12.3 kg  
**No. 740224**

**E FRONT VICE GUIDE**

Solid and robust front vice mechanism for installing in self-made workbenches. Also suitable for modifying or retrofitting existing benches. To ensure parallelism, we recommend installing an end support No. 740223.

Spindle length 410 mm  
Spindle diameter 30 mm  
Guide rod diameter 20 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
8.2 kg  
**No. 740221**

**York®**

A premium-grade clamping tool specialist, the Czech company looks back on a tradition that spans almost 100 years. The York brand is renowned for the outstanding quality of its grey cast iron clamping tools.

**F YORK® HEAVY VICE**

Robust, high-quality vice in GJL30 cast iron for high compressive stress. The trapezoidal thread spindle is fitted inside the precise roller guide, so it stays protected against damage and dirt. The integrated, removable rotary plate swivels the vice by  $\pm 35^\circ$  to enable a consistent, comfortable working position. The

replaceable, ribbed jaws are made from high-quality steel. Large anvil surface for a broad variety of tasks, e.g. straightening and upsetting work.

Throat depth 70 mm  
Jaw opening 100 mm  
Jaw width 100 mm  
12.5 kg

**No. 716270**

► York magnetic protective jaws with grooves, cork padding or felt padding available online.

**A YORK® BALL HEAD VICE**

Thanks to a ball-joint, this solid vice can rotate through three axes. The position can be set to meet the specific demands of the workpiece, the two knob handle screws allow for quick and secure fastening. The base plate can be fastened to the work plate with four screws. The replaceable, ribbed jaws are made of high-quality steel. Hardened anvil surface for straightening and upsetting work. Overall height 255 mm  
Jaw width 80 mm  
Jaw opening 70 mm  
Throat depth 50 mm  
8.6 kg  
**No. 705826**

**B YORK® CLAMP VICE**

The bench clamp, which doubles up as a rotary plate, is used to quickly and conveniently attach the handy and rugged vice to all bench surfaces up to 75 mm thick. It is therefore ideal for mobile use. The trapezoidal thread spindle turns, well protected, inside the snug roller guide. The vice can be swivelled by  $\pm 35^\circ$  to enable a comfortable working position. The replaceable, ribbed jaws are made of high-quality steel. The jaws on the benchtop clamp have an opening of 75 mm. Anvil surface for straightening and upsetting work.  
Jaw width 63 mm  
Jaw opening 55 mm  
Throat depth 45 mm  
4.5 kg  
**No. 716269**

**C YORK® MULTI-ANGLE VICE**

The ball-joint foot can be adjusted to any angle, making the vice extremely versatile. The workpiece is screwed onto the plate from the bottom. The grub screw makes the plate easily detachable from the central mount. Base 140 x 125 mm, height 125 mm. Plate diameter 90 mm  
3.3 kg  
**No. 705830**

**D VERITAS® VICE**

Robust sculptor's vice with a fully rotating, height-adjustable plate. The sturdy arched aluminium body and secure clamping mechanism make this vice suitable for heavy-duty work. The vice can be bolted to the bench or mounted in a dog hole (e.g. with auger bit No. 717235). Base 115 x 90 mm, max. height 240 mm. Plate diameter 87 mm, length 125 mm.  
2.3 kg  
**No. 705929**

**E BISLEY VICE**

Tried and tested:  
This vice has its origin in Bisley, the English home of shooters and hunters. Thanks to its universal fields of application, it is very popular with hunters and knife makers. It can be clamped and fixed in any position in a matter of seconds. Thanks to the large clamping range of the table clamp (23-63 mm), the vice can be attached to almost any table edge.

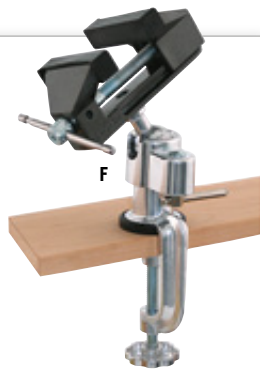
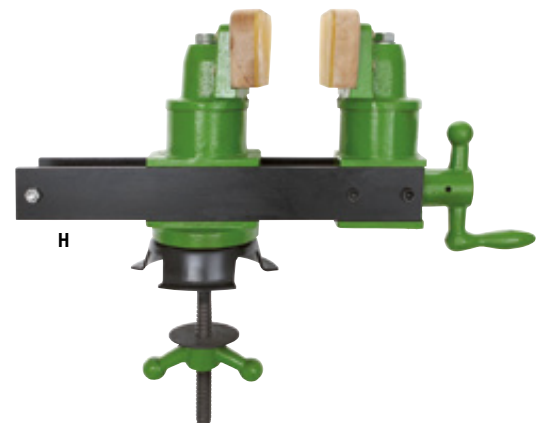


- 16 grid-bound angular positions
- 360° rotatable
- Soft cork jaws
- Parallel clamping steel jaws
- Mobile clamping foot

Throat depth 33 / 50 mm  
Jaw opening 40 / 47 mm  
Jaw width 70 / 100 mm  
approx. 2.5 kg  
**No. 716381**

**F MULTI-ANGLE VICE**

Light aluminium vice, rotatable in all directions, for light assembly or other tasks. Ball-joint with quick locking mechanism. Table clamp max. 53 mm.  
Throat depth 20 mm  
Jaw opening 100 mm  
Jaw width 75 mm  
1.2 kg  
**No. 705796**

**H****H PATTERNMAKER'S VICE**

This multipurpose vice is the most versatile clamping tool on the workbench. The solid grey cast iron construction is equipped with a parallel guide for the jaws that rotate to allow the clamping of pieces of any shape without damaging them. The vice is mounted through a hole or a bench dog hole. Once mounted, it can be easily swivelled a full 360° and locked in place via a winged nut. The swivel base can be either mounted above the bench top (working height 250 mm) or below (working height 215 mm). Grey cast iron body, steel guide rails, trapezoidal threads on the spindle with hand crank, softwood jaws with soft polyurethane linings. Max. bench top thickness 130 mm.  
Jaw opening 150 mm  
Jaw width 125 mm  
14 kg  
**No. 705755**

**G VERITAS® PLANING STOP**

Aluminium stop for fixing boards and flat workpieces on the benchtop. The side positioning eliminates the need for inconvenient hold down clamps that reach into the surface of the workpiece. This allows you to work on the entire surface. The distance between the two posts can be adjusted by sliding in the T-track on the underside of the rail. You can fix the workpiece on all sides by using several planing stops. Maximum distance between holes 230 mm. Stop height 6 mm, length 245 mm, shaft diameter 19 mm.  
**No. 703600**



Plane not included!



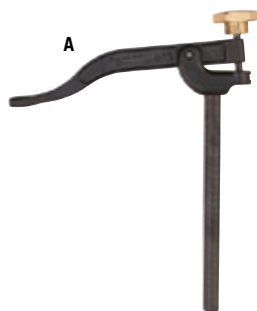
**A VERITAS® HOLD DOWN CLAMP**

A third arm at the workbench:

Workpieces in all forms and shapes, which are hard to clamp down, can now be held in place easily and securely. The toothed rod is inserted into a horizontal or vertical 19 mm hole on the workbench plate. Tightening the nut activates the self-locking mechanism. Arm and body made of aluminium, steel shaft.

Jaw depth 200 mm  
Clamping height 200 mm  
Shaft diameter 19 mm

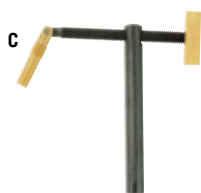
**No. 705760**

**C VERITAS® BENCH CLAMPS**

This clamping tool will make your workbench even more versatile. The shaft can be inserted into a 19 mm dog hole anywhere on the bench's top, front or frame. Irregularly shaped workpieces are no match for this clamping system with its pull-out and rotational action. Shaft and clamping spindle made of steel with gunmetal finish, brass knob handle and jaws.

Spindle length 100 mm  
Jaw width 15 mm  
Jaw height 50 mm  
Shaft diameter 19 mm

Length  
65 mm **No. 705926**  
160 mm **No. 705927**

**E QUICK-ACTION HOLD DOWN CLAMP**

The advantage of this quick-action hold down clamp lies in its extremely compact design without protruding shaft and quick fixing thanks to the lever arm. As a result, it does not obstruct the work and can be moved quickly at any time. The clamping force (up to 2500 N) can be adjusted depending on the application using the set screw in the joint. The hold down clamp automatically adjusts to the height of the particular workpiece (1-40 mm) without manual changing of the clamping pressure. High-quality two-component plastic handle. Knurled steel shaft.

Jaw depth 60 mm  
Clamping height 50 mm  
Shaft diameter 19 mm  
**No. 705762**

**G KLEMMSIA®**

**HOLD-DOWN CLAMP ADAPTER, BASIC, SHAFT 19 MM**

The body of the hold-down clamp is the same as that of the Klemmsia clamps. It can be used for clamping down workpieces or converted into a standard clamp by means of the attached screw mechanism in the perforated stud system. It can also be used with C-slot profile rails thanks to the supplied groove screws (13 mm wide with 8 mm groove). The 40 mm high hornbeam block fitted to the lower end acts as a stopper and prevents the hold-down clamp from slipping. The included extension has the same height as the fitted hornbeam block, which allows even very thin workpieces to be firmly clamped to the workbench. The clamp features slip-resistant, surface-protecting cork pads and is therefore ideal for:

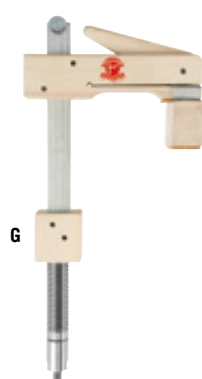
- Holding down workpieces
- Clamping round workpieces without damaging the profile
- Conversion into a standard clamp

Regulation of the clamping pressure via a cam lever. Movable clamp arm. Zinc-plated steel bar. Made of German hornbeam.

Jaw depth 110 mm  
Shaft diameter 19 mm

Clamping height Length  
150 mm 300 mm **No. 708125**  
250 mm 420 mm **No. 708126**

► Klemmsia hold-down clamp with shaft diameter 30 mm available online.

**B INSERTION CLAMP**

Solid clamp for clamping workpieces to the bench top and the front of the bench apron. Also suitable for clamping on the bench support in the base leg of the DICTUM Workbench »Deluxe 2000«. Large diameter 58 mm plastic pad prevents pressure marks on the workpiece. Synthetic handle. Fits DICTUM Workbench »Deluxe 2000« (No. 706440) and DICTUM Sculptor's Bench (No. 706145).

Jaw depth 120 mm  
Clamping height 110 mm  
Shaft diameter 25 mm

**No. 706328**

**D VERITAS® BRASS BENCH DOGS, 1 PAIR**

Cylindrical brass posts (Ø 19 mm) with side springs. The textured jaws have an inward cant (2°) to prevent the workpiece from slipping upwards. Two pieces each. Fits DICTUM workbench »Junior« (No. 706300, 706077 and 706302) and DICTUM Sculptor's Bench (No. 706145).

Suitable auger bit No. 717235.

Length  
1 60 mm **No. 705924**  
2 110 mm **No. 705925**

**F HOLD DOWN CLAMPS**

Quickly fastens all types of workpieces to the workbench top. The rod of the cast ductile iron clamp is slipped into one of the dog holes, self-locking mechanism.

1 Jaw depth 100 mm  
Clamping height 100 mm  
Shaft diameter 17 mm  
**No. 705756**

2 Jaw depth 200 mm  
Clamping height 220 mm  
Shaft diameter 22 mm  
**No. 705757**



# Workshop Equipment

## HATTORI® - DIY TOOL INSERTS

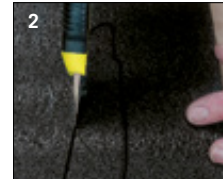
Place your tools in any layout or arrangement, either with an insert for your tool trolley or for wall mounting.

### Benefits:

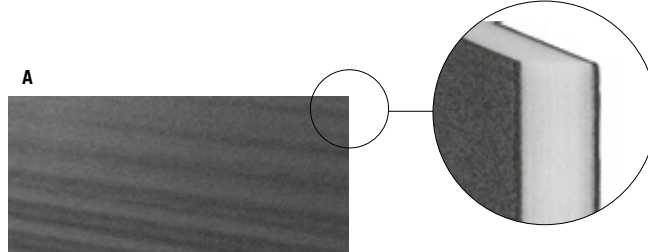
- See at a glance which tool is missing
- Arrange your tools according to your needs
- Allows for the storage of non-standard tools as well
- Also suitable for drawers or toolboxes (Systainer)

### Procedure:

1. Trace the outlines of your tools with a pencil (e.g. Pica Marking Pen No. 727695)
2. Cut out the outlines with a cutter knife (e.g. No. 720719) to the desired depth
3. Remove the individual layers

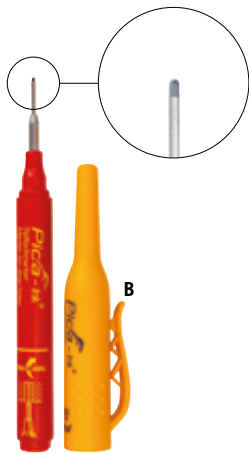


**A HATTORI® HARD FOAM INLAYS, BLACK/WHITE, THICKNESS 57 MM**  
Made of several 5 mm thick layers, this hard foam inlay enables the precise transferring of tool contours. The layers are glued together, but can be removed layer by layer after cutting. White intermediate layers for even clearer contrast.  
390 x 565 mm  
**No. 727694**  
550 x 1100 mm  
**No. 727693**



► Precision milled foam inlays  
»Made in Germany« available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**B PICA MARKING PEN, RED**  
Waterproof ink marker pen with self-adjustable stainless-steel telescopic tip. The tip can be rotated several times by 180° to increase tool durability. The long telescopic tip is ideal for marking high-up tools on Hattori hard foam inlays. Protective sheath included.  
**No. 727695**



Measuring instruments not included!

**C CUTTER**  
Versatile cutter with slim blade for a wide variety of materials (paper, carpets etc.), but also for cutting out the Hattori rigid foam insert precisely. Ribs on the upper- and underside ensure a firm grip. Located at the end of the handle is an additional helper for separating the rigid foam layers and/or for opening



cardboard boxes.  
Blade width 9 mm.  
Overall length 130 mm  
**No. 720719**

**D ADDITIONAL BLADES FOR CUTTER KNIFE, 9 MM, EXTRA SLIM**  
10 extra slim cutter blades for carving out small tool details in the Hattori rigid foam insert.  
Fits No. 720719.  
**No. 720720**



**E DOUBLE-SIDED MAGNETIC TOOL BAR**  
High performance magnetic tool bar. Can be mounted using screws or via its own magnetic power (on ferromagnetic wall surfaces). Chrome-plated metal rails, two mounting brackets.  
Maximum strength 10 kg.  
600 x 25 x 20 mm  
**No. 707222**

### Two frequently asked questions regarding magnetic tool bars:

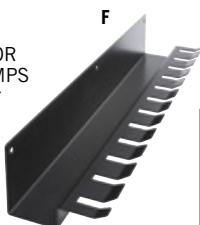
#### Does magnetization negatively affect the sharpness of cutting tools?

No, magnetized steel does not change its crystalline structure. However, it can complicate the resharpening because the magnetized metal particles (swarf) tend to stick to the cutting edge.

#### Are all steels ferromagnetic?

No, pure austenitic stainless steels (including many VA steels) are not magnetic. However, these steels often have ferritic components, meaning that the majority of the steels used to make stainless steel knives do stick to magnetic tool holders.

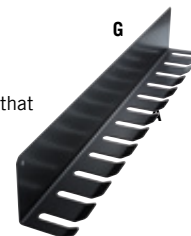
**F CLAMP RACK FOR ONE-HANDED CLAMPS**  
Metal clamp rack for easy storage of 12 clamps. Fits Jorgensen one-handed clamps and one-handed spreader clamps. Max. bar thickness of 7 mm. Suitable for wall mounting.  
600 x 100 x 140 mm  
**No. 728899**



Clamps not included!



**G CLAMP RACK**  
Metal clamp rack that keeps 12 clamps handy. Max. bar thickness of 11 mm. Suitable for wall mounting.  
600 x 100 x 80 mm  
**No. 707725**



Clamps not included!



## Useful Aids



### C MAGNETIC BASE LIGHT

An indispensable workshop accessory that is particularly helpful in delicate turnery. With the long flexible arm and the 180° swivel head, you can optimally illuminate thin-walled objects and green wood work. The magnetic base can be secured to any metal machine part.

Bulb protected from dust without special impact or shock protection class. On/off switch in the light head, arm length 630 mm, overall length 730 mm, reflector Ø 55 mm, 230 V, 12 V halogen bulb, 20 watt, lighting angle 60°.

**No. 705118**



### A BALL TRANSFER UNITS, 6-PIECE SET

These ball transfer units allow you to extend machine tables and move heavy workpieces wherever you need. The steel balls, 25 mm diameter, are fitted in a chrome-plated bearing, which can be fastened easily with two screws.

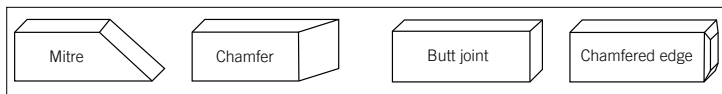
**No. 820205**



### B MITRE TRIMMER

For precise trimming and clean mitre cuts. Simply cut stock slightly oversize and then make the final cut using the mitre trimmer. Ideal for cutting frames, baseboards and also for precision 90°-cutting of scantling, poles etc. The sharp, skewed blades allow high-precision shearing cuts. The gear driven lever allows for effortless use. Heavy-duty, grey iron casting with precisely machined working surfaces. Double-sided guides with two finely adjustable 90° and 45° fences, two hardened tool steel cutting inserts, 6 mm strong, which are detachable for easy sharpening. Length 580 mm, max. stock size approx. 85 x 70 mm, 12 kg.

**No. 705798**



## Occupational Safety and Workwear

### D PELTOR™ OPTIME HEARING PROTECTOR

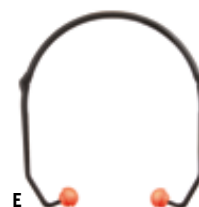
The Peltor Optime earmuffs provide optimum hearing protection with maximum comfort. The generous inside depth of the earcups and wide, soft earmuff cushions combined with the two-point attachment for a low-pressure fit provide the best possible comfort even over long periods. The headbands are fully height-adjustable. The attenuation rating of the ear protectors is indicated as SNR (Single Number Rating) and in dB.



**1 Peltor™ Optime 1 Hearing Protector**  
Despite their comfortable light weight, these all-round ear protectors provide the best conceivable protection for short and long periods of use. For moderate noise exposure in industry, crafts and hobbies. SNR 27 dB. Recommended noise rating 107-112 dB. 180 g  
**No. 707551**

**2 Peltor™ Optime 2 Hearing Protector**  
When exposed to substantial noise, these ear protectors attenuate even extremely low frequencies. For substantial noise in industry, when working with machines on building sites and in agriculture. SNR 31 dB. Recommended noise rating 111-116 dB. 210 g  
**No. 707558**

**3 Peltor™ Optime 3 Hearing Protector**  
Ear protectors with extreme attenuation for very high noise exposure. The double-shell technology offers maximum protection even for high frequencies. Voices and warning signals can still be heard and understood. SNR 35 dB. Recommended noise rating 115-120 dB. 285 g  
**No. 707559**



### E BANDED EARPLUGS

These folding banded earplugs easily fit into any pocket and rest outside the ear canal opening without pressure. The band can be worn in several positions, whether on the head, under the chin or round the neck. The perfect solution for users who are in and out of noisy areas.

**No. 707904**



## Moldex® FFP Fine Dust Masks

Masks for filtering respirable dust, aerosols and smoke. These half masks offer optimum protection by removing solid or liquid particulates from the inhaled air. Suited for protection against inorganic suspended particulates, smoke, soot particles, and organic particles such as pollen, bacteria and fungi. Available in three filter ratings. FFP masks offer no protection against gases or vapors.

Advantages of Moldex FFP masks:

- DuraMesh: strong and durable structure keeps the mask in shape
- ActivForm: automatically adjusts to shape, size and movements of the face
- Ventex-valve (not for No. 707974 and 707977): low pressure valve for optimising air flow, reducing temperature and moisture vapor in the mask
- Pleated filter technology reduces breathing resistance by up to 50 %
- Loop strap for easy handling



### F MOLDEX® DUST MASK FFP2

For protection against harmful and carcinogenic dusts based on water and oil. Protection against all dusts listed under FFP1, plus granite, brake dust, concrete, cotton, lead and wood dust, as well as welding fumes and silicone. Maximum total inward leakage of 11 %. Intended for single use.

With Ventex-valve.

1 piece **No. 707978**

20 pieces **Price advantage**

**No. 707975**



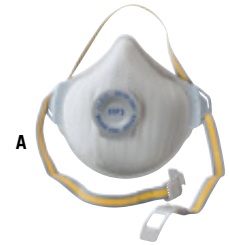
**A MOLDEX® DUST MASK FFP3**

The multi-use mask:  
For protection  
against harmful  
and carcinogenic  
dusts based on  
water and oil. Pro-  
tection against all  
dusts listed under  
FFP2, but at high-  
er concentrations,  
plus ceramic



fibres, chromium, cobalt, nickel, micro organisms and biochemical active aerosols. Maximum total inward leakage of 5 %. For multiple use. With Ventex-valve and pleated filter technology for low breathing resistance.

1 piece **No. 707979**  
5 pieces **Price advantage**  
**No. 707976**

**B****B JSP® POWERCAP® ACTIVE IP**

This fan-assisted respirator visor combines the comfort and safety of a protective visor with the dust and pollen protection of a breathing mask. It provides optimal wearing comfort due to a minimal weight of 720 g.

- Battery-powered fan delivers clean air and allows breathing without resistance in contrast to conventional dust masks
- Visor, filter, fan housing and head protection made of impact-resistant plastic for a high level of protection against flying foreign bodies (woodturning)
- Fog-free visor with free space for glasses and beard and increased medium energy impact resistance in accordance with standard EN 166 B
- Easily accessible battery at the rear of the mask



Constant air flow velocity of 160 l/minute.

The respiratory protection complies with the EN 12941 standards: 1998 + A2: 2008 TH1P and APF 10 therefore have a nominal protection factor of 10.

Includes:

- Lithium-ion battery
- Charger
- Airflow indicator test unit
- Practical lockable plastic container

Battery life 8 hours  
**No. 707531**

REPLACEMENT FILTER SET FOR  
JSP® POWERCAP ACTIVE IP, 1 PAIR  
Fits No. 707531.  
**No. 707534**

REPLACEMENT BATTERY FOR  
JSP® POWERCAP ACTIVE IP, 8 HOURS  
Fits No. 707531.  
**No. 707535**

**C BIONIC FACE SHIELD**

The Bionic face shield combines modern ergonomic design with first-class protection and comfort. The robust catch adjustment mechanism allows you to adjust the visor as desired to suit different situations. With the ratcheting headgear mechanism and adjustable headband, the shield can be adjusted to any head shape and size. A soft, easily removable sweatband and a foam lining to protect the back of the head ensure a comfortable fit. The high-impact, easy-to-replace visor with extended chin and top-of-head protection is also suitable for wearers of glasses and for use with dust masks.

345 g  
**No. 707903**

JSP® VAPOR FILTER A1, F8-110, 1 PAIR  
Activated carbon filters for working with higher concentrations or for longer durations.

Fits No. 707541.  
200 g  
**No. 707896**

JSP® PARTICULATE FILTER P2, F8-002, 1 PAIR  
Filters harmful and carcinogenic dusts based on water and oil. Suitable for up to ten times the legal limit.

Fits No. 707541.  
200 g  
**No. 707542**

Caution: The designation of the combination filter F8-112 is composed of F8-002 and F8-110 and is not printed separately on the filter.

Comes without filter.

- Low resistance breathing with new Typhoon exhalation valve
- Fully adjustable 4-point cradle suspension ensuring effective facial fit
- Durable thermoplastic rubber mask for superior fit
- Reflective strips on the front side for increased visibility and added safety, even in poor light conditions
- Lateral low profile filters for maximum freedom of movement and minimum visual impairment
- Bayonet fitted filter for easy filter change
- Exhalation valve is installed in the filter, making it easy to clean the mask

One size  
290 g  
**No. 707541**



JSP® COMBINATION FILTER  
A1P2, F8-112, 1 PAIR  
Combined activated carbon and particulate filters. Filter grade A1 for protection against organic gases and vapors with a boiling point > 65 °C, a concentration < 0.1 vol. % and particulate filters P2 for protection against harmful and carcinogenic dusts based on water and oil.  
Fits No. 707541.  
200 g  
**No. 707544**

Also for painting work

**E JSP® FILTERS WITH PRESS-TO-CHECK FUNCTION**

The JSP filter with press-to-check function fits the JSP half mask Force 8 (No. 707541) and allows you to check quickly and easily if the mask fits tightly to your face.

**1 P3, F-3103, Compact, 1 Pair**  
For harmful and carcinogenic water- and oil-based fine dust, as well as water-based paint and varnish. Can be used up to 30 times the limit value.  
Recommended usage time: 1 day.  
50 g  
**No. 700125**

**2 P3, F-4003, 1 Pair**  
For harmful and carcinogenic water- and oil-based fine dust, as well as water-based paint and varnish. Can be used up to 30 times the limit value.  
Recommended usage time: 5 days.  
88 g  
**No. 700126**

**3 A2P3, F-4123, 1 Pair**  
Combined activated carbon and particle filters. Filter grade A2 for protection against organic gases and vapours with a boiling point > 65 °C, a concentration < 0.1 vol. % and P3 particulate filters for protection against harmful and carcinogenic water- and oil-based fine dusts. Also suitable for solvent-based paint jobs.  
Recommended usage time: 5 days.  
220 g  
**No. 700127**

**Press to Check™**

When the filter is pressed, no more air flows through it. With this simple test you can check whether you are optimally protected or whether external air is drawn in through leakage points where the mask does not make contact with the face.

**Vide** for an application video see online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**A DICTUM® CAP**

High-quality cap made of robust beige cotton with embroidered DICTUM logo. The head size is adjustable through a band with a metal buckle. Made from 100 % brushed cotton with six embroidered vents.

No. 707770

**C SAFETY GOGGLES, PROFESSIONAL**

High-quality safety goggles with extra-wide, curved lenses for maximum protection of the eyes. Adjustable angle and temple length. The soft, non-slip pads at all touchpoints such as eyebrows, bridge of the nose and temples ensure a comfortable fit. 100 % UV protection, scratch-resistant, anti-fog.

35 g

No. 707901

**D TEGERA® GLOVES CLASSIC**

Durable work gloves for all common craft work, on the building site or in the garden. Sewn from split cowhide with excellent grip, half-lined with cotton. The reflectors around the wrist, the elastic band and reinforced fingertips provide extra protection.

Size

8 No. 707701

9 No. 707703

10 No. 707704

11 No. 707705

**E JAPANESE SOCKS »GUNSOKU«, 1 PAIR**

For Jika-Tabi (No. 707670, -671, -672, -673, -674, -675, -676, -677 and -678) and Japanese rubber boots (No. 707662, -663, -664 and -665). Elastic cotton fabric, reinforced heel and toes.

One size, beige/grey.

No. 707615

**G 5-TOE SOCKS, 4 PAIRS**

Seamless knitted socks with separate toes, in keeping with Japanese tradition, allow better airing. Blended fabric of 85 % cotton and 15 % nylon. One size, black.

No. 707667

**H WORKSHOP APRON**

Durable, dark beige workshop apron for any kind of job, from gluing to sharpening to surface finishing. Small main pocket and yard stick pocket. Adjustable neck strap. 65 % cotton, 35 % polyester.

Size 90 x 80 cm

No. 707507

**B HIGH-PERFORMANCE SAFETY GOGGLES**

For ultimate protection, these safety goggles have high-quality face cushioning and keep off wind, debris and dust. The easily adjustable flame-resistant headband, attached with a simple snap lock, provides an excellent, comfortable fit even in demanding work environments.



Thanks to the anti-fog coating on the inside and the anti-scratch coating on the outside, the lenses last three times longer than conventional ones. 100 % UV protection, scratch-resistant. Comes with strap.

35 g

No. 707902

**F PROHANDS® CUT-RESISTANT GLOVES**

Never cut your hands again when working with sharp tools, sheet metal or glass. Made of extremely durable Dyneema yarn\*, these lightweight gloves are highly resistant to cuts caused by various types of tools. That makes them equally practical for working with glass or wood, using sharp chisels, saws or carving gouges, for gardening, forestry, as well as for locksmiths and plumbers. Very thin and flexible, the backs of these gloves are made of breathable fabric and



\* Dyneema is a high-tech fabric with a tensile strength that is approximately 15 times stronger than steel. It is used for bullet-proof vests among other things.

Size

S No. 707650

M No. 707651

L No. 707652

XL No. 707653

XXL No. 707654

**I JAPANESE WORKING CLOTHES**

Made of high-quality durable and moisture regulating cotton. Suitable for craftsmen, artists, painters, sculptors alike as well as for meditating or simply wearing around the house. Strong cotton cloth, soft and pleasant to the touch. Jacket comes with open, medium-length Kimono style sleeves, one side pocket

and overlapping lapels to tie. Loose-fit trousers with cuffs and three pockets. Colour blue

Size

M No. 707620

L No. 707621

XL No. 707622

XXL No. 707623



**B DICTUM® COTTON APRON**  
The hefty cotton fabric is seamed on all sides, and impregnated to repel water and dirt. The large, sealable front pocket is perfect for tools and materials while the small pouch serves to keep your glasses.  
Colour green  
Size  
60 x 82 cm  
**No. 707505**  
90 x 87 cm  
**No. 707506**



## Filson - since 1897:



Headquartered in Seattle, Washington, and renowned for making products in the USA from fabrics such as heavy-weight Tin Cloth and warm Mackinaw Wool, Filson stands for the highest quality and most durable apparel and accessories available.



## Filson - Product Development

Starting in 1897, Clinton C. Filson listened to his customers.  
»We have obtained our ideas of what is best to wear from the experience of the man from the North - not merely one, but hundreds of them.«  
(C.C. Filson, 1897)

Nothing has changed since then. In fact, most new products are based on customer comments. And, just like C.C. Filson did, the company refines their designs based on customers' and field testers' experiences in the field. Filson works to build comfort, protection, and durability into every product, plus practical features you will need for work or play outdoors.

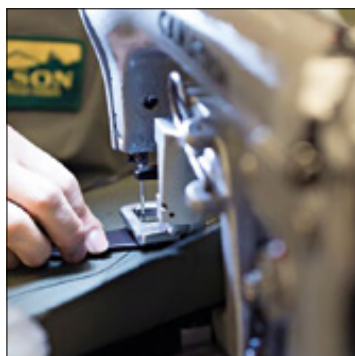


**C FILSON MACKINAW WOOL VEST, FOREST GREEN**  
This classic Mackinaw Wool Vest is warm, breathable and versatile. 100 % virgin wool is naturally water-repellent and insulates even when wet. A roomy fit allows a full range of motion. Size M approx. corresponds to size 50.

- Button-front closure
- Classic Filson vest design
- 1 chest utility pocket e.g. for pens, 1 slotted utility pocket, 2 handwarmer pockets
- Sizes XS (corresponds to ladies size 34/36) and XXL available on special order

Colour forest green  
Material: 24-oz. Virgin Mackinaw wool  
Product Care: Dry clean

Size  
M **No. 818024**  
L **No. 818025**  
XL **No. 818026**



**D FILSON RIDGEWAY FLEECE JACKET, CHARCOAL HEATHER**  
This Ridgeway Fleece Jacket is made of a lightweight, quick-drying Polartec® fleece that is both warm and breathable for comfort in mild to cool weather. Polartec® Thermal Pro® fleece for quick-drying, lightweight warmth.

- Rib knit creates sweater-like texture
- Elastic hem and cuffs for warmth and easy layering
- Zip-closure front
- Zip-closure chest and handwarmer pockets
- Inner storm flap with microfleece-backed chin guard

Colour charcoal heather  
Material: Polartec® Thermal Pro® 100 % polyester rib-knit fleece  
Product Care: Machine wash

Size  
M **No. 818260**  
L **No. 818261**  
XL **No. 818262**



**E FILSON PIONEER SOLID ONE POCKET T-SHIRT**  
This medium-weight, breathable cotton jersey short sleeve outfitter solid one-pocket T-shirt made in the USA is fashioned in one of the classic Filson colors.

- Ribbed crewneck style for comfort
- Righthand chest utility pocket for small items

Material: 6.5-oz. cotton jersey  
Product Care: Machine wash

**1 dark olive**  
Size  
S **No. 821359**  
M **No. 821360**  
L **No. 821361**  
XL **No. 821362**  
XXL **No. 821363**

**2 faded black**  
Size  
S **No. 821364**  
M **No. 821365**  
L **No. 821366**  
XL **No. 821367**  
XXL **No. 821368**

Available April 2021.

For more Filson products see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## Woolpower®

Woolpower AB was established in 1969 in Östersund, Sweden, for the production of nylon tights. In the early 1970s, the company developed a new material in co-operation with the Swedish army: »Ullfrotté Original«. Beside military and police organizations, mainly people who work outside and many others who like to feel warm, are among the customers for clothes made of this fiber.

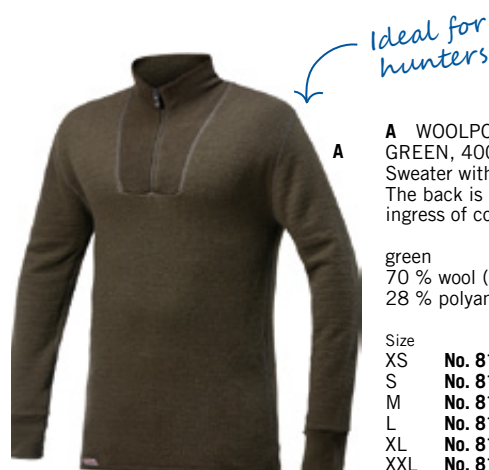
- Woolpower articles are certified by Öko-Tex - an international human ecology label that shows that the garments contain no toxic or harmful substances

- Wool does not retain odor and therefore the clothes keep a pleasant smell even after long periods of use



- Can be machine-washed at up to 60 °C (104 °F) and tumble-dried at medium heat

- Made in Sweden; each garment is labelled with the name of the seamstress



**A WOOLPOWER® SWEATER, GREEN, 400 G/M<sup>2</sup>**  
Sweater with short collar and zipper. The back is longer to prevent undesired ingress of coldness.

green  
70 % wool (merino),  
28 % polyamide, 2 % elastane

Size  
XS **No. 815005**  
S **No. 815006**  
M **No. 815007**  
L **No. 815008**  
XL **No. 815009**  
XXL **No. 815077**

## Woolpower® »Ullfrotté Original«

Unisex thermal underwear for hunting, handicrafts, and outdoor activities.

- »Ullfrotté Original« is a fabric made of two thirds fine merino wool and one third synthetic fibers, thus guaranteeing **optimum elasticity and durability**

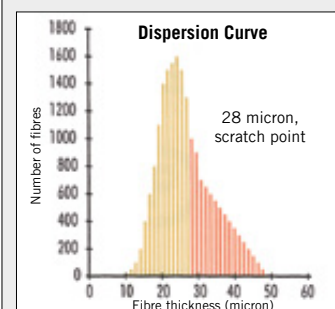
- **Different material thicknesses** are available (200 g/m<sup>2</sup>, 400 g/m<sup>2</sup> and 600 g/m<sup>2</sup>) and can be combined **to ideally suit different temperatures and forms of activity**

- Most »Ullfrotté Original« products are manufactured on circular knitting machines. The advantage of this technology is that the garments worn next to the skin only have **minimal seams**, which results in a **very comfortable fit**

- »Ullfrotté Original« is 80 % air. The lofty terry loops together with the crimped wool structure form a jersey knit that traps large quantities of air and therefore provides **good heat insulation**

## Merino wool does not itch!

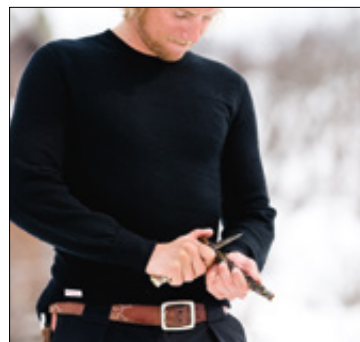
The wool of merinos is very finely crimped. When wool fibers are so thin, they will yield to the skin on contact and therefore not irritate the nerves (no annoying itching). »Ullfrotté Original« is made exclusively from fine merino wool with a fiber thickness of 22 microns, so it provides maximum comfort.



**B WOOLPOWER® CARDIGAN, BLACK, 600 G/M<sup>2</sup>**  
Very warm cardigan with thick collar and a full length zipper. Cuffs have thumb holes. The back is longer to prevent undesired ingress of coldness.

black  
70 % wool (merino),  
30 % polyamide

Size  
XS **No. 815010**  
S **No. 815011**  
M **No. 815012**  
L **No. 815013**  
XL **No. 815014**  
XXL **No. 815078**



**C WOOLPOWER® SPORT SOCKS LOGO, BLACK, 400 G/M<sup>2</sup>**  
These thicker socks enhance heat-insulating, keep your feet comfortably warm and protect against wetness and cold weather.

black  
64 % wool (merino), 32 % polyamide,  
4 % elastane  
Size  
36-39 **No. 815020**  
40-44 **No. 815021**  
45-48 **No. 815022**

## Wool warms even when moist!

During increased activity level or in high ambient temperature, the body generates perspiration to cool down. Wool is hygroscopic, i.e. it is able to absorb moisture from the air, and in this way it also absorbs the moisture vapor from the body. It can absorb up to 30 % of its weight without feeling damp.

Size	XS	S	M	L	XL
for women	36-38	40-42	44-46	48-50	52-54
for men	42-44	46-48	50-52	54-56	58-60
<b>Size chart in cm</b>	<b>S</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>XL</b>	
chest measurement	82-90	90-98	98-106	106-114	114-122
waist measurement	66-74	74-82	82-90	90-100	100-110



## Woolpower® »Lite«

Unisex base layer functional year-round underwear:

- The »Lite« collection has a modern design and is made of a shimmering black fabric highlighted by light green contrast stitching

- The »Lite« collection is made of a new, very light rib knit material with a combination of soft Merino fibers (extra-fine, 19.5 microns) and 20 % functional fibers

- By using Merino wool, the material adapts to temperature and activity level and accordingly either cools or warms the body; the integrated polyamide fibres make the underwear more durable



**D WOOLPOWER® LITE TEE, BLACK, SHORT SLEEVED**  
Short sleeved crew neck undershirt. The back is longer to provide additional protection against the cold. The raglan cut sleeves prevent seam rub.

black  
80 % wool (merino),  
20 % polyamide

Size  
XS **No. 815036**  
S **No. 815037**  
M **No. 815038**  
L **No. 815039**  
XL **No. 815040**  
XXL **No. 815080**



For more Woolpower® products see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



# Leather, Paper and Tools

Leather Working Tools | 296

Leather Care and Glues | 301

Leather | 302

Papercraft Tools | 304

Paper | 305





# Leather Working Tools



**WORKSHOP**

## LEATHER WORKING BASIC COURSE

Introduction to the basic techniques of working with vegetable-tanned leather. We will get to know the necessary tools and materials, as well as the most important techniques for producing your own hand-sewn seams to small workpieces.

**Content:**

- Handling leather working tools, leather, colours, threads, etc.
- Cutting and sewing leather
- Working leather edges, ornamentation and finish

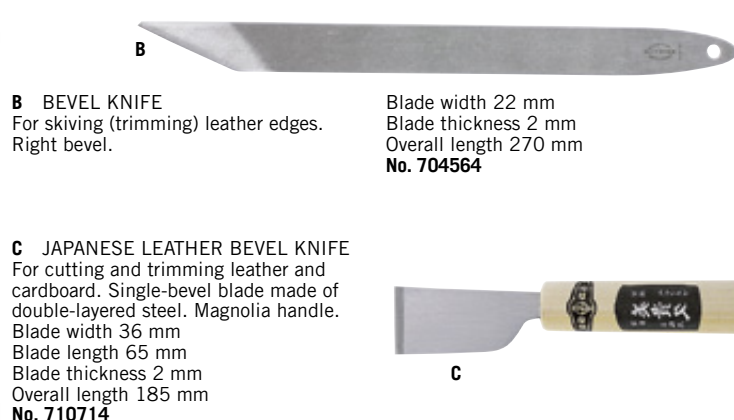
► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



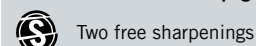
running, continuously adjustable setting mechanism made of brass.  
**No. 708346**  
10 Replacement Cutters  
**No. 708339**



Max. leather thickness 7 mm.  
205 x 165 mm  
**No. 708327**  
5 Replacement Cutters  
**No. 708338**



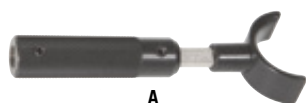
**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



incl. blade. Suitable for leather with max. 3 mm thickness.  
**No. 708536**  
10 Replacement Cutters  
**No. 708339**

Blade length 40 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 708306**  
10 Replacement Cutters  
**No. 708339**



**A****A SWIVEL KNIFE**

This ball-jointed knife is used to pre-cut the outlines of motifs to be punched. Its length can be adjusted to fit any hand size, allowing perfect, comfortable control and thus exact cuts. The knife is manufactured in Japan from high-quality materials. Handle diameter 11 mm. Without blade.

Overall length 70-90 mm

**No. 708428**

**B****B SWIVEL KNIFE BLADE, DELICATE**

For fine, detailed cuts. Made of high-quality carbon steel. This wear-resistant steel has a long edge life and allows accurate leather edges.

Fits No. 708428, 708508 and 708509. Blade width 6.3 mm

**No. 708430**

**C****C SWIVEL KNIFE BLADE, UNIVERSAL**

Classic swivel knife blade for universal use. Made of high-quality carbon steel. This wear-resistant steel has a long edge life and allows accurate leather edges.

Fits No. 708428, 708508 and 708509. Blade width 9 mm

**No. 708429**

**D****D SWIVEL KNIFE ERGONOMIC**

With rubberised handle for continuous, fatigue-free work. With its ball bearing finger rest and adjustable length, this swivel knife adapts perfectly to fit any hand size. Allows for comfortable and precise guidance when pre-cutting contours for punching, even with larger workpieces. Comes with 9.5 mm wide, straight blade. Handle diameter 13 mm. Adjustable overall length with blade from 93 to 103 mm.

**No. 708508**

*»The leather-splitting machines Deluxe and Basic provide everything you need. They offer versatile and easy adjustment options.«*

Herbert Ritter, master saddle and bag maker

**E****E LEATHER-SPLITTING MACHINE DELUXE**

Whether for splitting or sharpening leather pieces, this mechanical splitting machine with hardened blade considerably facilitates work. The deluxe version has an impressively solid design and versatile yet simple adjustment options. The printing roller can be adjusted precisely and securely to the respective leather thickness by means of a large adjusting screw and fixed as required.



The splitting depth is set with the star screw at the top right and left (stop). The roller can be lifted with the wooden handle until the splitting depth is reached. A brass handle helps to insert the leather and prevents pre-splitting. The blade can be easily adjusted using two hex socket screws and removed for sharpening. Blade length 145 mm

240 x 105 x 120 mm

4.6 kg

**No. 708113**

**F****F STAMPS, BACKGROUND STRUCTURE**

With this set of stamps, you can emboss leather with a deeper, more finely structured background, thus producing a more vivid and three-dimensional pattern.

Content:

M886 Round: Ø 8.5 mm

M887 Drop shape: 6 x 3 mm

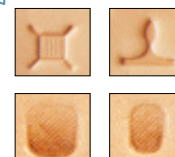
Overall length 110 mm

**No. 708106**

**G****G MODELLING TOOL**

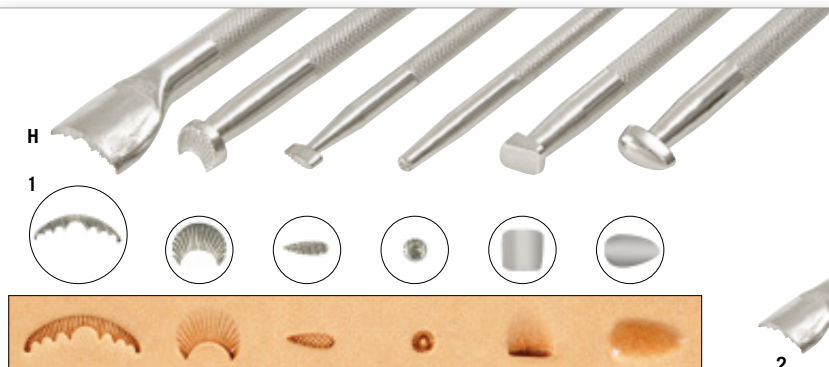
For modelling reliefs as well as stamped borders and patterns on leather. With the spoon tip, you can smooth irregularities on the surface, while the ball tip allows fine details and lines as well as rebates. Ball tip Ø 1.4 mm, spoon width 6.3 mm. Overall length 170 mm

**No. 708438**



► A wide range of stamps is available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**H****1**

**H STAMP SET, BASIC MOTIFS**  
Comprising the six most common motif stamps. With this well-assorted starter set, you can create borders, continuous patterns and pictures on leather. Overall length 110 mm

**1 6-Piece Set**

Content:

V407 sickle,

C431 half moon,

A104 dotted drop,

S705 toothed dot,

B197 plain square for contours,

P206 plain drop.

**No. 708056**

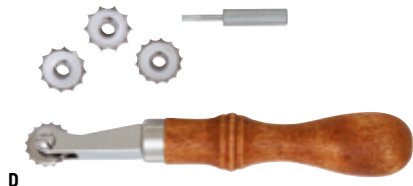
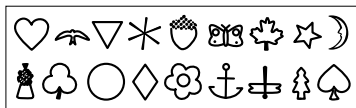
**2****2 7-Piece Set**

Includes a swivel knife, blade width 9.5 mm and six ornamental stamps. For delivery content see No. 708056 and swivel knife (No. 708509).

**No. 708506**



**A ORNAMENTAL PUNCHES, 18-PIECE SET**  
18-piece punch set with different patterns for decorating leather and wooden surfaces. Punches can also be heated for branding technique. Tool steel. Overall length 65 mm  
11 x 11 x 68 mm  
**No. 708311**



**D STITCH MARKER 6-PIECE SET**  
The stitch marker is used to mark the distance between the individual insertion holes of a stitch. The set contains four replaceable marking wheels with seam spacings of 3.5 mm, 4 mm, 5 mm, and 6 mm. Includes a small screwdriver to replace the wheels. Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 708299**

**E LEATHER THONGING CHISELS**  
High-quality Japanese chisels for marking and punching holes. The knurled handles prevent slipping. Tooth spacing 5 mm  
Overall length 110 mm  
1 1 Prong **No. 708435**  
2 3 Prongs **No. 708436**  
3 6 Prongs **No. 708437**



**B GROOVER**  
For sinking seams or gouging decorative grooves. The blade is set off-centre and therefore ideal for cutting accurate parallels along leather edges. The replaceable blade is fully and easily adjustable. The distance between stop and blade can be adjusted between 3 and 33 mm, groove width 1 mm. Solid steel blade holder. Manufactured in Japan from high-quality materials. Overall length 135 mm  
**No. 708421**  
Replacement Cutter  
**No. 708431**



**C GROOVER WITH FREEHAND OPTION**  
Practical and versatile: For parallel sinking of seams and cutting decorative grooves along edges. For working on leather surfaces, the adjustable parallel fence (1-12 mm) can be removed. The supplied steel tip allows it to be used as a creaser, free-hand or with a fence. Solid steel blade holder. Precisely ground, replaceable blade, groove width 1 mm. Manufactured in Japan from high-quality materials. Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 708423**  
Replacement Cutter  
**No. 708433**



**F SADDLEMAKER'S NEEDLES**  
Needles with a short tip. 25 pieces.  
Overall length Thickness Thread diameter  
1 42 mm 0.7 mm 0.2 mm. **No. 708416**  
2 60 mm 1.1 mm 0.6-0.8 mm. **No. 708415**  
3 80 mm 1.4 mm 0.6-1.2 mm. **No. 708417**



► More leather working tools e.g. freehand stitching groovers or point strap end punches available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**G DICTUM® ROUND AWLS**  
For widening stitch holes in repair work or new projects. Precious wood handle with heavy duty brass ferrule. Awl diameter 2 / 2.5 / 3 mm  
Overall length 150 mm  
Awl length  
30 mm **No. 708445**  
45 mm **No. 708446**  
60 mm **No. 708442**



**H DICTUM® SADDLER'S AWL**  
For piercing leather for saddler's seams. Diamond-shaped cross-section 2.7 x 1.4 mm. Precious wood handle with heavy duty brass ferrule. Awl length 25 mm  
Overall length 115 mm  
**No. 708444**



**K LINEN THREADS, UNWAXED**  
Unwaxed linen thread for hand-stitched seams in leatherwork. Is usually drawn through beeswax before use. Colour black.

Thickness 0.6 mm  
Fits saddlemaker's needle No. 708415.  
Overall length 30 m  
**No. 831400**

Thickness 0.8 mm  
Fits saddlemaker's needle No. 708415, 708417.  
Overall length 30 m  
**No. 831402**

Thickness 1.2 mm  
Fits saddlemaker's needle No. 708417.  
Overall length 25 m  
**No. 831404**

**L LINEN THREAD, WAXED**  
Thanks to its waxed surface, this smooth linen thread is water-resistant and keeps its shape. Length 10 m, thickness 0.8 mm. Fits saddlemaker's needles No. 708415, 708417.

1 white  
**No. 709025**  
2 dark brown  
**No. 708085**



**I AWL HANDLE**  
Clamping handle with knurled ferrule. Overall length 95 mm  
**No. 708301**



**J AWL ASSORTMENT, 3-PIECE SET**  
Stabbing awl, curved sewing awl and stitching awl. Fits awl handle No. 708301. Overall length 60 mm  
**No. 708302**



**M SEWING HOLSTER**  
Guard with metal insert for pushing needles through leather, thick fabric and

felt. Strong leather, riveted. Right-handed. 55 g.  
**No. 708300**



► Upholstery tools e.g. the Osborne Magnetic Tack Hammer or webbing stretchers available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



For more linen threads see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Stitching Pony

For holding the trim firmly in place, allowing you to use both hands to control the cutting or sewing tools. This aid greatly reduces the risk of injury when forcing awls or needles through layers of leather. Allows a comfortable working position, whether sitting or standing. Self-opening mouth through pressure spring. Clamps by tightening the wing nut.



**A** **DICTUM® STITCHING PONYS**  
Solid wood stitching pony in an elegant design with integrated aluminium hinge. Practical base plate for clamping on table tops or worktops.  
Max. mouth opening 45 mm, mouth width 90 mm, mouth depth 150 mm, arm length 270 mm.  
Overall length 350 mm  
1.2 kg  
**No. 708171**

► *More DICTUM® stitching ponys available online.*



**B** **WOODEN CREASER**  
For marking seam lines or making decorative grooves along leather edges. Features four different widths: 1.0 / 1.5 / 2.5 / 2.8 mm. Made from untreated beechwood. Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 708503**



**C** **FOLDING BONE**  
Folding bone for smoothing seams, folding and polishing leather edges as well as folding paper. Buffalo bone. 180 x 20 x 5 mm  
**No. 708305**



**D** **GOUGE**  
In order to be able to fold thick pieces of leather, this tool can be used to »chisel out« notches along the folding edges. This enables sharp-edged folds and corners. Also suitable for countersinking seams. The depth stop is adjusted by a knurled nut.

*V-shaped blade for delicate work such as book bindings and portfolios*  
Blade width 4 mm  
Overall length 145 mm  
**No. 708414**



*U-shaped blade for saddlery work*  
Blade width 4 mm  
Overall length 145 mm  
**No. 708412**



► *Belt awl available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**E** **EDGE SLICKER, 4 WIDTHS**  
For burnishing leather edges after skiving with an edge beveller or an edge trimming plane. Use the four U-shaped profiles to slick leather up to 10 mm thick. The edge slicker is ideal for hard-to-reach, tight spaces, perforations and narrow curves.



Overall length 145 mm  
**No. 708504**



**F** **EDGE BEVELLERS, 3-PIECE SET**  
For fine leather edges:  
Ergonomically curved edge beveller for removing shavings and bevelling leather edges. A supplied sharpening set allows easy and precise sharpening. The set contains three edge bevellers for 0.8 mm, 1.0 mm and 1.2 mm wide bevels. Comes with case.



Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 708420**

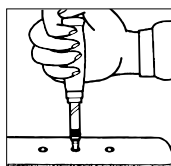


**G** **EDGE BEVELLERS**  
For bevelling and rounding off leather edges. Each tool is ground by hand and tested. Stained maple handle. Overall length 135 mm  
Blade width 4 mm  
**No. 708309**



**H** **LEATHER DRILL PUNCH AWL WITH PUNCH**  
Japanese drill-action punch awl for cutting clean holes in leather, plastic and cardboard. Very sharp, hardened, replaceable punches.

Brass shank, beech handle.  
Ø 3 mm  
Overall length 140 mm  
**No. 716331**



**I** **OSBORNE BRAIDING NEEDLES**  
The braiding needles from Osborne have particularly fine tips. The separable braiding needle with lockable spring-steel clip is ideal for braiding leather.



The leather laces can be inserted and held in the clip. 10 pieces.  
Overall length 57 mm  
**No. 708419**



**J** **RIVETS, 10 PAIRS**  
These rivets are ideal for joining and securing leather pieces. Can be detached thanks to a screw mechanism. Head diameter 10.5 mm, rivet diameter 5 mm.

**1** *Solid brass*  
Clear length 7 mm  
**No. 708108**  
Clear length 10 mm  
**No. 708111**

**2** *Nickel steel*  
Clear length 7 mm  
**No. 708109**  
Clear length 10 mm  
**No. 708110**



**K** **PUNCHES**  
Fits leather drill punch awl  
No. 716331.  
Ø  
**1** 1.0 mm **No. 716332**  
1.2 mm **No. 716333**

Ø  
1.5 mm **No. 716334**  
1.8 mm **No. 716335**  
2.0 mm **No. 716336**  
2.5 mm **No. 716337**  
3.0 mm **No. 716338**  
3.5 mm **No. 716339**  
**2** 4.0 mm **No. 716340**  
4.5 mm **No. 716341**  
5.0 mm **No. 716342**



#### A ARC PUNCHES, 5-PIECE SET

High-quality set of arc punches made in Germany. Comes in sturdy, impregnated cotton bag with quick release strap. Suitable for punching cardboard, leather, rubber and other soft materials. Cutting edge hardened and tempered to HV 480 to 558 kp/mm<sup>2</sup> (HRC 47-52). Polished necks, shank machined and lacquered in red. Ø 6 / 8 / 10 / 12 / 20 mm. Overall length 110-160 mm  
**No. 729473**



A



B



► For single punches see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### C OBLONG HOLE PUNCHES

Oblong hole punches made in Germany, suitable for punching cardboard, leather, rubber and other soft materials. Cutting edge hardened and tempered to HV 480 to 558 kp/mm<sup>2</sup> (HRC 47-52), polished necks, shank machined and lacquered in red.

Model

8 x 3 mm	<b>No. 729494</b>
12 x 3 mm	<b>No. 729495</b>
16 x 3 mm	<b>No. 729496</b>
17 x 11 mm	<b>No. 729497</b>
18 x 4 mm	<b>No. 729498</b>
20 x 4 mm	<b>No. 729499</b>
22.5 x 13 mm	<b>No. 729500</b>
32 x 5 mm	<b>No. 729501</b>
40 x 10 mm	<b>No. 729502</b>
45 x 22 mm	<b>No. 729503</b>



C



#### B HOLE PUNCHES, 9-PIECE SET

Set of hole punches made in Germany in a resealable tin. Suitable for punching cardboard, leather, rubber and other soft materials. Cutting edge hardened and tempered to HV 480 to 558 kp/mm<sup>2</sup> (HRC 47-52), polished pipes, shank machined and lacquered in red. Ø 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 7 / 8 / 9 / 10 mm. Overall length 100-125 mm  
**No. 729472**

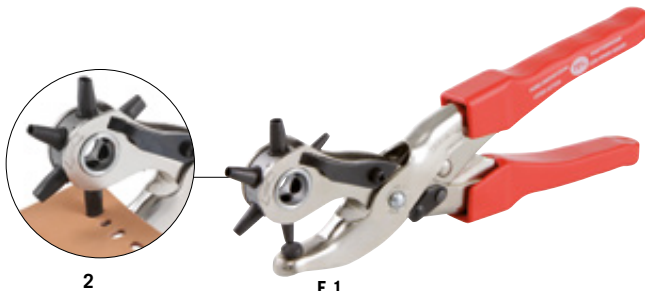
► For single punches see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### D HOLE PUNCH SET WITH CIRCLE CUTTER

Hole punch set consisting of rubberised hard plastic handle with spring-loaded drive head, 15 punch blades of different diameters, a spring-loaded centring tip and a circle cutter. The small blades are screwed onto the handle, while medium blades (small base) and large blades (large base) are inserted and snapped on. This makes it easy to cut rings of different diameters and punch accurate holes.



The circle cutter with replaceable blade is used for round cut-outs of up to Ø 330 mm. Blades Ø 3, 4 and continuing at 2 mm increments up to 30 mm. Burnished blades, chrome-plated handle.  
**No. 708347**



E 1

2

#### E REVOLVING PUNCH PLIERS WITH TRANSMISSION

70 % less force required thanks to lever transmission:

Makes strong and hard materials easy to work on. Professional-grade revolving punch pliers with six replaceable punches. With lever transmission (70 % less force required), nickel-plated surface, ergonomic plastic handles.

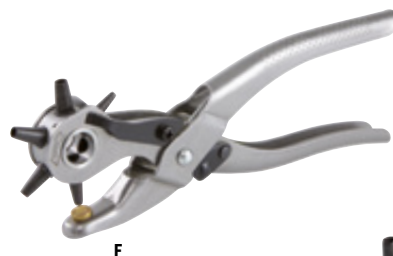
Metric punch diameters

2.0 / 2.5 / 3.0 / 3.5 / 4.0 / 4.5 mm.

A view window for reading the set hole size prevents mispunching. 450 g. Overall length 250 mm

1 Round Punches  
**No. 711993**

2 Oval Punches  
**No. 711998**



F

#### F REVOLVING PUNCH PLIERS

For punching leather, cardboard, rubber, plastic etc. Six punches with diameters of 2 / 2.5 / 3 / 3.5 / 4 and 4.5 mm. The diameter is displayed in the view window. Pressed, anti-skid corded steel shanks with stop.

270 g  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 711995**



G

**G REVOLVING »TWO IN ONE« HOLE AND EYELET PLIERS**  
The all-rounder:

With these pliers, first make an appropriately sized hole for the selected eyelet. Then set the required eyelet punch, insert the eyelets and press them together. The pliers are equipped with three punches with diameter 4.0 mm / 4.5 mm / 5.0 mm and three matching eyelet punches with diameter 4.5 mm / 5.0 mm / 5.5 mm. Nickel-plated surface, ergonomic plastic handles.  
Overall length 220 mm  
**No. 729510**

#### H EYELETS FOR »TWO IN ONE« PLIERS, NICKEL-PLATED BRASS, 100-PIECE PACK

Eyelets suitable for »Two in One« Revolving Hole and Eyelet Pliers (No. 729510). Eyelet shaft with predetermined breaking points. Star-shaped opening during pressing. Nickel-plated brass.

For hole Ø.	Dimensions	Ø
4 mm	Length 4.6 mm	Shaft: 4.5 mm / head: 7.5 mm
<b>No. 729511</b>		
4.5 mm	Length 5.5 mm	Shaft: 5 mm / head: 9 mm
<b>No. 729512</b>		
5 mm	Length 5.5 mm	Shaft: 5.5 mm / head: 9.5 mm
<b>No. 729513</b>		



H



**A EYELET PLIERS, Ø 5 MM**  
Stable, professional-grade, chromed eyelet pliers with solid head, punching mechanism and depth stop. Depth stop fully adjustable from 5-13 mm. Max. stapling capacity 30 sheets of 65 g paper (3.4 mm). Ø punch hole 5.2 mm - for eyelets with 5 mm inside diameter. Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 711996**



**B BRASS EYELETS, Ø 5 MM, 250-PIECE SET**  
High-quality eyelets of solid brass. For materials up to 2.7 mm thick. Ø punch hole 5.2 mm, eyelets inside diameter 5 mm. Fits eyelet pliers No. 711996.  
**No. 711997**

## Leather Care and Glues

### Rapide® Leather Care Products

High-quality products for the care and preservation of leather that have been manufactured using traditional methods. Since they contain vegetable extracts, oils and waxes, they are the ideal complement to natural leather, for which they provide permanent protection.



**C RAPIDE® LEATHER CREAM**  
Universal leather care cream with a pleasant aroma of almond oil.  
• Makes leather supple  
• Gives surface a light sheen  
• Impregnating and moisturizing effect  
• Suitable for all types of smooth leather  
150 g  
**No. 820145**  
1000 g  
**No. 820146**



**D EQUIFIX® LEATHER BALM**  
Resin- and acid-free leather balm with beeswax.  
• Gives surface a slight sheen  
• Has an impregnating and moisturizing effect  
• Suitable for all types of smooth leather  
500 g  
**No. 820148**



**E RAPIDE® LEATHER OIL**  
The leather oil absorbs quickly, giving a pleasant aroma of almond oil.  
• For intensive preservation, for dry and thick leather  
• Makes leather soft and supple  
• Protects against moisture  
• Suitable for all types of smooth leather  
100 ml  
**No. 820142**  
750 ml  
**No. 820194**



**F DICTUM® LEATHER BALM FOR ALL TYPES OF LEATHER**  
Colourless leather care balm based on natural ingredients with a high percentage of beeswax.

- Product causes almost no darkening of the surface
- The leather retains its natural stiffness and strength
- Gives surface a light sheen, polishable
- Has an impregnating and moisturizing effect
- Also suitable for untreated and light-coloured leathers
- Suitable for all types of smooth leather

50 g  
**No. 714175**



**G DICTUM® LEATHER MILK FOR ALL TYPES OF LEATHER**  
This leather milk is made of natural ingredients. It has an almost neutral colour and helps even out different shades.

- Product causes slight darkening of the surface
- The leather retains its natural stiffness and strength
- Preserves the natural look and feel of the leather
- Also suitable for untreated leather
- Penetrates deeply and protects against moisture
- Suitable for all types of smooth and rough leather

100 ml  
**No. 820263**



**H DISPERSION ADHESIVE FOR LEATHER**  
Highly flexible water-based leather adhesive. Adhesive is applied to a surface and hardens under pressure.

- The gluing surfaces can be moved for a short time after being brought together
- Non-toxic and non-flammable
- Can be diluted with water
- Colourless upon hardening
- Also suitable for textiles, paper, and wood

118 ml  
**No. 820260**



**I KÖVULFIX CONTACT ADHESIVE**  
Professional solvent-based contact adhesive for use with leather.

- Adhesive achieves full strength after a single application of pressure
- Also suitable for rubber (soles, seals), rainwear, hard PVC and soft foam (polyurethane foam, carpet backing), paper, cardboard, textiles, felt, cork, and wood

*Highly flammable liquid and vapour. Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*  
60 g  
**No. 451980**

*»I use the DICTUM leather care products to maintain my show saddles and bridles. I am delighted to have finally found a range of products that maintains and protects the leather and does not darken even light natural leather.«*

Kathrin Sedlmeier, successful western riding coach and European Reserve Champion

For more leather care products see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



# Leather

Tanning  
complying with  
strict environmental  
requirements

## A SWEDISH COWHIDE

Vegetable tanned:  
Strong, vegetable-tanned leather from  
Swedish cowhides. Acid-free, soft (can  
be hardened using soda), colourable.

Half Side (¼ hide)

Thickness 2.2 mm

Size from 0.7 to 2.20 m<sup>2</sup>



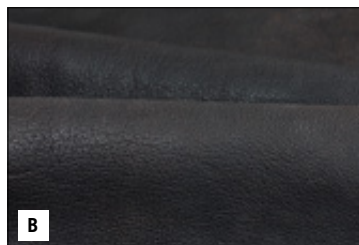
Pre-cut Piece  
Thickness 2.2 mm  
Size 120 x 250 mm  
1 natural No. 709071  
2 brown No. 709072



## Sustainable use of resources

None of the natural materials we offer  
derive from protected or endangered  
species. Our animal and vegetable  
products come from sustainable and  
managed sources.

Natural materials slightly differ in  
shape, colour, structure and size.



## B NAPPA COW LEATHER, HALF HIDE

Strong, but thanks to a special  
tanning process (oil-tanning) also very  
supple full grain leather with an interest-  
ing and highly textured surface and feel.

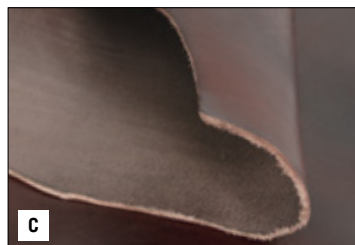
Colour dark brown

Thickness 4-4.5 mm

Size from 1.8 to 2.6 m<sup>2</sup>



Example of use



## C GERMAN COWHIDE/ UPHOLSTERY LEATHER, SHOULDER

Very high quality and robust, vegetable  
tanned leather from German cattle. Made  
in Germany. The offered thicknesses  
are popular for upholstery purposes and  
perfect for axe and knife sheaths.

Colour dark brown

Thickness 3.5-4 mm

Size from 1.2 to 1.6 m<sup>2</sup>



Pre-cut Piece  
Thickness 3.5-4 mm  
Size 120 x 250 mm  
No. 708078



## All our leathers



For an  
overview on all  
leathers see  
[www.dictum.com/leather](http://www.dictum.com/leather)

Sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

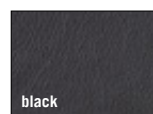


## Olive-tanned Leather

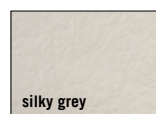
Olive-tanned leather, also known as wet-green leather, is made using a **patented, eco-friendly tanning process**. A herbal concentrate based on olive leaf extracts, which are also used to produce natural cosmetics, is applied as tanning agent. This means that, unlike other vegetable-based tanning procedures, this method is **environmentally-friendly**. The high-quality tanning agent has multiple certifications, including the »Original Dermatest« seal.

Ecological  
and sustainable  
tanning

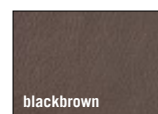
Online  
SHOP



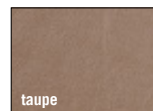
black



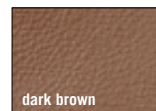
silky grey



blackbrown



taupe



dark brown



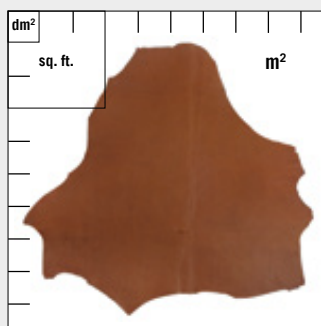
medium-brown

► Colours and sizes available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Leather by DICTUM

- Tanned in developed countries (Germany, Sweden, USA, Australia); **the tanning process complies with strict environmental requirements**
- Deriving from sustainable and resource-saving production; we do not use protected species for the production of our leather; the leather is always a by-product of live-stock farming
- Comes mainly from grazing animals in livestock farming; all of our leather produced using game animals is subject to state-regulated culling quotas
- Does not contain leftovers from industrial production; it is therefore guaranteed that reorders will possess comparable quality and colour; large quantities of identical leather types can also be purchased

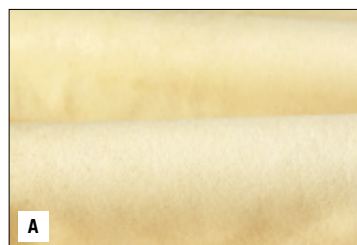


Leather is a natural product and will  
therefore inevitably show differences in  
form, colour, structure and size. Depending  
on the country of origin, the standard sizes  
and units are m<sup>2</sup>, dm<sup>2</sup> and sq. ft. (square  
footage).

1 sq. ft.	=	0.093 m <sup>2</sup>
1 dm <sup>2</sup>	=	0.01 m <sup>2</sup>
1 m <sup>2</sup>	=	10.763 sq. ft.
1 m <sup>2</sup>	=	100 dm <sup>2</sup>

The leather is measured either using pho-  
toelectric cells or mechanical sensors.





#### A RHUBARB-TANNED SHEEP LEATHER, WHOLE HIDE



This leather, deriving from the free-range sheep of the Lüneburg heath, is a real rarity. By raising the sheep in a species-appropriate manner and tanning the hide with a rhubarb-based tincture, this leather is as smooth as silk and exceedingly tear-resistant.

Ideal for clothing, purses, bags, shoe lining or handle wrappings.

Thickness 1.2 mm

0.5 m<sup>2</sup>

No. 831099

0.7 m<sup>2</sup>

No. 831149



#### B REINDEER LEATHER, WHOLE HIDE



Vegetable tanned:

Leather made from the hides of polar reindeer is particularly soft, yet highly durable and shapeable at the same time. This makes it ideal for making shoes, gloves, hats and other articles of clothing as well as for a variety of other leather-working projects.

Coloured-brown.

Thickness 0.8 mm

Size from 8 to 19 sq. ft.



Sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



#### C ELK LEATHER



Strong and supple:

The skin of the Scandinavian elk uniquely combines qualities like softness and sturdiness. Its distinct grain becomes even more beautiful by use. The leather is equally suitable for clothing, bags, belts or linings. Gained as a by-product from hunting, the hides show two or more bullet holes. Whole or half hides.

1 medium-brown

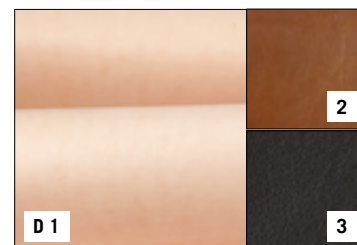
2 dark brown

Thickness 2 mm

Size from 0.65 to 2.1 m<sup>2</sup>



Sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



#### D KANGAROO LEATHER



Its use for making football shoes and motorcycle clothing shows how very strong and indestructible this leather is. The skins of wild Australian kangaroos are vegetable-tanned, barrel-dyed, and then milled mechanically. The processing with vegetable tanning substances makes the leather incredibly supple and smooth, it is skin-friendly and easily processed. Wildware with typical natural properties.

1 natural 2 medium-brown 3 black

Thickness 0.6 mm

Size approx. 0.5 m<sup>2</sup> (equals 50 dm<sup>2</sup>)



Sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Ostrich Leather

Our ostrich leather is produced in German and Austrian ostrich farms and tanned in Germany. The leather comes from 6-month-old animals (so-called breeder leather), making it thicker and therefore stronger. The quality and price of ostrich leather depend purely on the size and quality of the typical bump pattern, which is why same-price hides may vary in size. Once tanned, our ostrich leather is stretched tightly to produce an even, wrinkle-free surface.



#### E OSTRICH LEATHER, CUT



These pieces are the so-called belly cuts, which have a fine bump pattern. They are suitable for smaller applications, bracelets and pendants. Mat finish.

Size approx. 250 x 100 mm.

Thickness 1-1.3 mm



1 black

No. 708073



2 dark brown

No. 708071



3 campari red

No. 708072



4 ivy green

No. 708074



### Sustainable use of resources

None of the natural materials we offer derive from protected or endangered species. Our animal and vegetable products come from sustainable and managed sources.



#### F OSTRICH LEG LEATHER

Ostrich leg leather is characterised by its reptile skin-like structure. The decorative leather is suitable for making purses, knife sheaths, bracelets, pendants and for appliqué.

Size approx. 350 x 100 mm

Thickness 0.5-1 mm

1 black

No. 708076

2 cognac

No. 708077



Example of use



1



2



#### Whole hide

A whole hide is delivered. The hides may have irregular shapes.



#### Half hide

Cut in half along the spine.



#### Pre-cut pieces

Formatted pre-cut pieces of a leather hide - without outer edges.



#### Shoulder

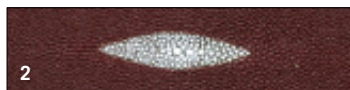
Leather from the neck part of the hide.



**A STINGRAY LEATHER, MIDDLE SECTION GROUND**  
Stingrays feature a raised structure in their middle section. When the skins are dyed and lightly sanded, this emerges in the natural white colour in the shape of an eye or a cross. This striking effect gives the piece a quite mythical radiance.

30 x 13 cm  
1 black **No. 830860**  
2 claret **No. 830875**  
3 dark brown **No. 830876**  
4 beige **No. 830878**

45 x 18 cm  
black **No. 830861**



### Stingray

Stingray is not a protected species. There are approximately 500 different species of ray; only the manta ray and sawfishes are protected. Stingray is a popular edible fish in Asia. Therefore, stingray skin is exclusively a by-product of food production.



**B LEDERARBEITEN - NÄHEN, FLECHTEN, BEARBEITEN**  
Michael Gärtner:  
The book »Lederarbeiten« is a practical introduction to leather handcraft. The author Michael Gärtner is founder of Lone Wolf, a prestigious brand of handmade leather products in Sweden. This book is aimed at beginners as well as advanced users and contains 20 projects - from key fobs to large shoulder bags, as well

as numerous different leather braiding instructions and knots. It also provides an insight into the basic elements of glueing and polishing, as well as creating a saddle stitch and the appropriate tools. 127 pages, paperback, numerous colour photographs, 185 x 225 mm. **In German No. 713500**

### All our leathers



For an overview on all leathers see [www.dictum.com/leder](http://www.dictum.com/leder)



**C KANGAROO BRAIDING LACES, FLAT**  
Compared with other types of leather, kangaroo leather is lighter but stronger and more hard-wearing. It is also extremely resistant to abrasion. These properties are valuable for braiding, as the leather is easy to process and can be knotted very tightly.  
Width 3 mm  
Length 20 m  
Thickness 1 mm  
1 black **No. 727902**  
2 dark brown **No. 727903**  
3 natural **No. 727904**  
4 saddle tan **No. 727905**

Natural materials slightly differ in shape, colour, structure and size.

**D DEER SKIN LACES, FLAT**  
Very soft and flexible deer skin for making jewellery, braiding and for decorative fringes on bags and clothing.  
Width 4 mm  
Length 15.2 m  
Thickness 1.4 mm  
1 cognac **No. 708041**  
2 black **No. 708040**



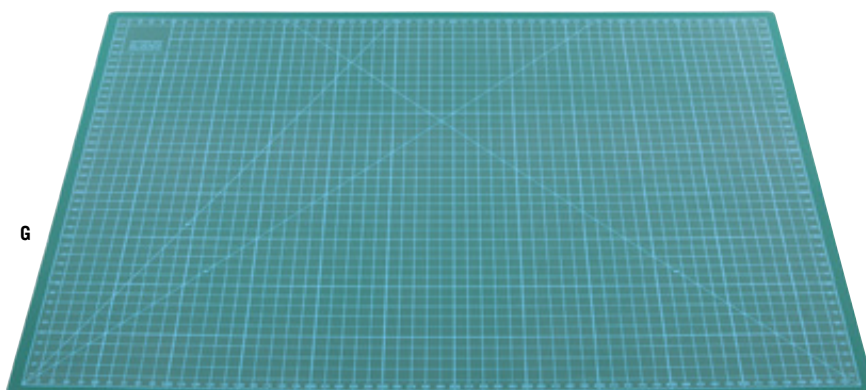
**E COW LEATHER LACES, FLAT**  
Rectangular leather straps. For making jewellery, braiding or decorating bags.  
Width 3 mm, length 46 m  
Thickness 1.1 mm  
1 black **No. 708045**  
2 brown **No. 708047**  
3 natural **No. 708046**



**F COW LEATHER LACES, ROUND**  
Hard-wearing round leather straps with an even structure. For making jewellery and leather wristbands. The soft leather is easy to braid.  
Thickness 2 mm  
Colour Size  
black 1.8 m **No. 708048**  
brown 1.8 m **No. 708049**  
natural 1.8 m **No. 708050**  
1 black 22.8 m **No. 708042**  
2 brown 22.8 m **No. 708043**  
3 natural 22.8 m **No. 708044**

## Papercraft Tools

**G CUTTING PAD**  
Elastic, slip-proof pad with »self-repairing« surface. Can also be used as a base for writing and drawing. With imprinted grid.  
460 x 600 mm  
**No. 708093**  
600 x 900 mm  
**No. 708089**





**A FOLDING BONE**

Folding bone for smoothing seams, folding and polishing leather edges as well as folding paper. Buffalo bone.  
180 x 20 x 5 mm

**No. 708305****B PAPER CUTTER**

For cutting paper, cardboard, foil and thin fabrics. Rotating blade, ergonomic aluminium handle.

Blade Ø 45 mm (thickness 0.3 mm). Overall length 150 mm.

**No. 710536**

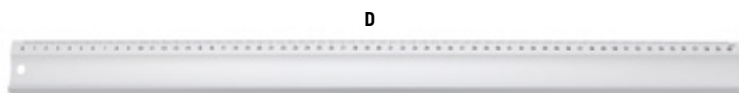
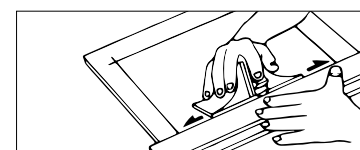
Replacement Blade

**No. 710537****C MAT CUTTER**

For 45° and 90° cuts. V-shaped sharp-edged blade for cutting clean edges. Plastic body with two blade holders and five double-edged blades.

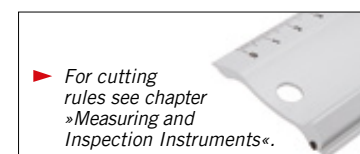
**No. 708090**

5 Replacement Blades

**No. 708091****D ALUMINIUM GUIDE RAIL FOR MAT CUTTER**

With groove for the mat cutter (No. 708090), slip-proof and with scale markings.

600 mm

**No. 708092**

► For cutting rules see chapter »Measuring and Inspection Instruments«.

## Paper

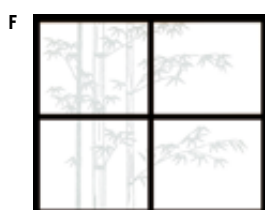
### Shoji Paper (Shoji Gami)

Japanese sliding doors, known as Shoji, serve to create a subtle barrier between light and space, interior and exterior, thereby giving rooms a uniquely enchanting atmosphere. They are traditionally covered with translucent paper, which stretches due to slight moistening after gluing. Shoji paper is also suitable for Japanese lamps, lanterns, prints and ink paintings.

**F SHOJI PAPER »SHOJI GAMI«, BAMBOO PRINT**

Delicate, watermark-like design.

94 cm x 7.2 m, 46 g/m².

**No. 716107****G SHOJI PAPER »SHOJI GAMI«, FIBRE PATTERN**

Fine, light fibre inclusions.

94 cm x 7.2 m, 46 g/m².

**No. 715997****E SHOJI PAPER »SHOJI GAMI«, PLAIN**

28 cm x 18.8 m, 46 g/m².

**No. 716100**

94 cm x 7.2 m, 46 g/m².

**No. 716103**

## WORKSHOP

### JAPANESE SLIDING DOOR

**You will learn:**

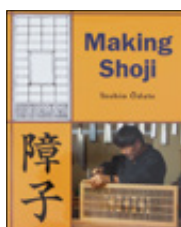
- Design and basic style of Shoji elements
- Making the exterior wooden frame
- Interlocking and grooving in the filigree mullions
- Shoji-covering with starch-based glue
- Material and tool science

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



For thicker and more tearproof shoji paper see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**MAKING SHOJI**  
Toshio Odate:  
Masterpieces of Japanese craft culture. In this book, Toshio Odate explains how to make a Japanese sliding door, from



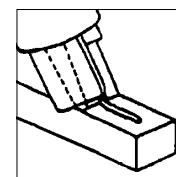
layout to gluing on the paper. Having been trained himself as a tategushi (sliding-door maker) in Japan, he gives insight into this traditional craft with great expertise and explains the process comprehensively.

120 pages, paperback, 217 b/w photographs and 51 drawings, 210 x 280 mm.

**No. 713470**

Online SHOP

► Special glue for Shoji paper available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





# SURFACE DESIGN

Bringing out the beauty of wood!

**Smoothing and  
Polishing Machines / Texturing Tools | 268**

**Hand Abrasives | 275**

**Pyrography Tools | 277**

**Surface Protection and Colours | 278**

Oils | 278

Waxes | 283

Milk Paints | 285

Resins | 285

**Synthetic Finishing Products | 287**

**Brushes and Accessories | 288**

**Glues, Adhesives and Glue Pots | 291**

# Smoothing and Polishing Machines / Texturing Tools

## King Arthur's Tools®

King Arthur's Tools is a small, family-owned business in North Florida that sells products in over 55 countries worldwide. The business is a multi-award winning firm, including recognition for business ethics and innovation. The products are patented and have distinct safety and performance features.



### A KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® MERLIN2®, SET

The Merlin2 offers new possibilities for wood shaping. It enables excellent control and light stock removal when shaping wood sculptures, finishing turned wooden bowls, carving small hollows or texturing surfaces. The slim gearbox neck of the long-necked angle grinder makes it possible to work in even hard-to-reach places and enables excellent visibility of the workpiece. For fine wood removal and detailed carving. Ultra-safe and offers optimum control. 100 watt motor, discs Ø 50 mm.

#### Features of the Merlin2:

- Optimised motor cooling due to efficient air flow
- Balanced motor ensures smooth operation
- Spiral gear
- Ergonomic, reinforced fibreglass housing ensures comfort during use

#### Includes:

- Carbide abrasive disc, flat profile
- Flap disc sander grit 60
- Flap disc sander grit 120

- Flap disc sander grit 240
- Fiberglass cutoff wheel for metal, wood and plastic
- Hex key
- Comes in storage bag

**Comes with manual in English and German.**

Motor 230 V  
Rated Input 100 W  
0.7 kg



Spiral gear



#### Original

Comes without additional electronic parts; fixed speed 13 000 rpm.  
**No. 715409**

*Infinitely Variable Speed Control*  
Variable speed 0-13 000 rpm.  
**No. 715407**



Merlin2 can also be used for deburring, grinding, finishing and chamfering steel, non-ferrous metal, glass, ceramics, alabaster, soapstone and other hard surfaces. Merlin2 is ideal for paint and rust removal, cutting small components, sharpening tools, auto repairs, and making models, tools, and dies.



► *Nick Agar Signature Series - Merlin2® Complete Surface Set available online.*

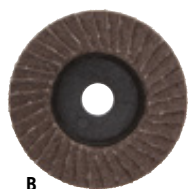
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► *For Kutzall® Carbide Tipped Cup Rasps see page 273.*

## King Arthur's Tools® Merlin2® Carbide Abrasive Discs

The sharp tungsten carbide teeth ensure fine and tear-free shaping of the wood. Rasp discs are also highly effective on bone, horn, antlers, fibreglass, plastic, solid rubber, foam core, polyurethane, soapstone and composite materials. Fits King Arthur's Tools Merlin2 (No. 715407 - 715409).



B

### B KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® FLAP DISC SANDER

Flap discs consist of a plastic disc with abrasive lamellae arranged around it in a circle. They are ideal for sanding concave surfaces, profiles or for deep hollows and vessels. Ornaments and surface structures can be sanded with the disc and effective removal of material, creating fine surfaces when working along or across the grain as well as on end grain. Fits King Arthur's Tools Merlin2 No. 715407 and 715408. Centre hole 10 mm  
Max. speed 13 000 rpm  
Disc diameter 50 mm  
Grit  
60 **No. 715355**  
120 **No. 715356**  
240 **No. 715357**  
320 **No. 715358**



C

**KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® CARBIDE ABRASIVE DISC, FLAT PROFILE**  
The small rasp disc allows for the fast and effective removal of material, creating fine surfaces when working along or across the grain as well as on end grain. For concave or convex shapes, profiles or deep hollows and vessels. Centre hole 10 mm  
Max. speed 13 000 rpm  
Disc diameter 50 mm  
Grit  
fine **No. 715353**  
medium **No. 715352**  
coarse **No. 715351**



D

**KING ARTHUR'S TOOLS® CARBIDE ABRASIVE DISC, FLAT FACE**  
This flat disc is only 3 mm thick and is used to mill fine grooves, make fine cuts, letterings and decorative grooves, e.g. on turned items. The small rasp disc allows for fast and effective removal of material, creating fine surfaces when working along or across the grain as well as on end grain. Centre hole 10 mm  
Max. speed 13 000 rpm  
Disc diameter 50 mm  
Cutting width 3 mm  
Grit fine (corresponds to grit 40) **No. 715354**



► *More abrasive discs for Merlin2 (No. 715382 / 83 / 84 / 85 / 86) / 715349 available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

fine	corresponds to grit 40
medium	60 teeth per cm <sup>2</sup>
coarse	40 teeth per cm <sup>2</sup>





**A PUNCHES, 3-PIECE SET**  
These punches are excellent for texturing the background of relief carvings, for

adding decorative patterns to wood-turned items or for giving strikingly realistic metal look surfaces to wooden workpieces using the airbrush technique. High-quality steel and precisely

formed tips guarantee an excellent edge life even when working with hardwood. 3-piece set with square, triangular and line-shaped punch.  
**No. 708440**

## DICTUM® Polishing and Grinding Machines

No matter which material is to be processed and which surface quality is to be achieved, with DICTUM polishing and grinding machines and the corresponding accessories, you are equipped for all tasks. From precise coarse and fine grinding of tool blades to grinding and polishing flat, profiled and organically shaped surfaces. With the appropriate accessories as well as grinding and polishing agents you can process metals, wood-based materials, natural materials, plastics, etc. until you achieve the desired result.

### B DICTUM® MINI POLISHING MOTOR PM 75

Compact polishing machine with double-sided motor shaft. Ideal for polishing small turned items, delicate objects, jewellery, etc. The shaft can be equipped on the left and/or right with optional accessories such as drill chucks, grinding rollers, grinding discs, circular brushes and various cleaning and polishing discs. The ideal tool for every application with a suitable, infinitely adjustable speed range (3000-8000 rpm). Entire machine housing made of robust die-cast aluminium. 400W, 230V.

#### 1 Mini Polishing Motor PM 75

- Includes:
- 2 polishing disc holders, conical (left/right) (No. 728798)
  - 2 cotton polishing discs, triple stitched, 75 x 10 mm (No. 728807)

**No. 728794**

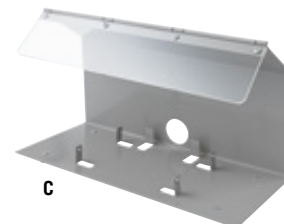


#### 2 incl. Flexible Shaft and Universal Handpiece

- Includes:
- Holding arbor with clamping flange (No. 728800)
  - Felt polishing disc (No. 728814)

- Flexible shaft, 92 cm (No. 728797)
- Universal handpiece UH-4, incl. chuck key (No. 728811)

**No. 728795**



**C SPLASH GUARD FOR DICTUM® MINI POLISHING MOTOR PM 75**  
Thanks to the high speeds of polishing motors, fibres of the polishing discs and polishing paste are spun away. The sheet steel housing with folding splash guard prevents contamination on workbenches or walls. A must for work outside workshops, e.g. on kitchen tables or desks. Dimensions 360 x 150 x 200 mm. For mounting on mini polishing motors No. 728794, 728795.  
**No. 728822**

### D COTTON POLISHING DISC

3-fold stitched, leather reinforced white cotton disc. For mirror polishing with polishing pastes. For tapered polishing disc mounts.

Bore 3 mm  
Disc diameter 75 mm  
Discs width 10 mm

**No. 728807**



### E SCROLL CHUCK 6.5 MM

For mounting on the right-hand shaft. Comes with chuck key. For machine shafts with diameter 10 mm. Clamping range 1-6.5 mm.

Bore 10 mm

**No. 728799**



### F CIRCULAR BRUSH

Pointed 3-row circular brush with plastic core. For pre- and post-polishing. For tapered polishing disc mounts.

Bore 6.8 mm  
Disc diameter 80 mm

**No. 728808**



### G GRINDING ROLLER

For mounting on the right-hand shaft of the polishing motor. Laminated rubber roller with holding arbor. Incl. sanding sleeves. For machine shafts with diameter 10 mm.

**No. 728802**

**No. 728803**



### H GRINDING DISC

For mounting on the right-hand shaft of the polishing motor. Velcro disc with mandrel. For machine shafts with diameter 10 mm.

Disc diameter 100 mm

**No. 728804**



### I CLEANING DISC

The fleece removes surface contamination and slight oxidation, and simultaneously deburrs cut edges. Several discs can be clamped together to form a roller. For use on a variety of metal surfaces. Fits holding arbor No. 728800.

Bore 10 mm

Disc diameter 75 mm

Discs width 20 mm

**No. 728806**



### J KLINGSPOR UNIVERSAL VELCRO GRINDING DISCS, Ø 100 MM, 10-PIECE SET

Velcro abrasive paper with universal abrasive for wood and metalworking. The PS 22 abrasive made of corundum has a synthetic resin bond on an e-paper base. Semi-open coating type. Fits No. 728804, 728870.

- Grit
- |     |                   |
|-----|-------------------|
| 60  | <b>No. 728954</b> |
| 80  | <b>No. 728955</b> |
| 120 | <b>No. 728956</b> |
| 240 | <b>No. 728957</b> |



More accessories available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





**A COTTON POLISHING DISC**  
White cotton disc, 6-fold stitched. For mirror polishing with polishing pastes. For arbors with Ø 10 mm. Fits holding arbor No. 728800.  
Bore 10 mm  
Disc diameter 75 mm  
Disc width 10 mm  
**No. 728818**



**B SISAL DISC**  
Untreated sisal disc, sewn in place. For pre-polishing all kinds of metal, even those with rough surfaces. Will result in a matt surface when used with coarse polishing paste. Fits holding arbor No. 728800.  
Bore 10 mm  
Disc diameter 75 mm  
Disc width 10 mm  
**No. 728817**



**C SISAL CORD DISC**  
Untreated sisal cords in radial direction on sheet metal ring. For pre-polishing, especially of profiled parts. After longer use, the sisal cords become more flexible. For use with polishing paste. Fits holding arbor No. 728800.  
Bore 10 mm  
Disc diameter 75 mm  
Disc width 10 mm  
**No. 728816**



**D HOLDING ARBORS WITH CLAMPING FLANGES, PAIR**  
One left-hand and one right-hand holding arbor with two flange discs each. For clamping polishing and grinding discs. For machine shafts with diameter 10 mm. Arbor diameter 10 mm x 35 mm.  
**No. 728800**



**E FELT POLISHING DISC**  
For high gloss polishing with polishing pastes. The felt retains its shape during polishing. White felt, for a uniform polishing pattern on smooth surfaces.

Fits holding arbor No. 728800.  
Bore 10 mm  
Disc diameter 75 mm  
Disc width 20 mm  
**No. 728814**



**F FLANNEL POLISHING DISC**  
Folded flannel, untreated, on sheet metal ring. For high gloss polishing with polishing pastes. Pleated rings show less wear and dust when roughened.

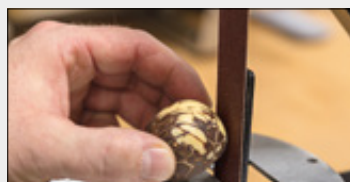
Fits holding arbor No. 728800.  
Bore 10 mm  
Disc diameter 75 mm  
Disc width 8 mm  
**No. 728819**



► For suitable polishing pastes see page 272.

## How to make your own jewellery and art objects from nuts

These nuts, that are produced by the female species of the ivory palm tree native to Ecuador, can be carved, ground, turned, scraped (scrimshaw) and polished. Tagua nuts are completely free of toxins and thus suitable for making children's toys. The surface can be stained or coloured using textile dyes.



First the shell must be removed on the Belt Disc Sander BTS (No. 720804, 720805) and the coarse shape worked out. If you leave some shell elements, an extraordinary pattern can be achieved. The grit size to be chosen should not be finer than 120, otherwise the nut will become too hot and burn marks will show through.



In the next step, the coarse grinding marks are removed and fine details are worked out. The subsequent grinding processes are therefore carried out with abrasive fleece, with fine and very fine grit (No. 727839, 727844). Make sure that you remove all grooves and scratches.



Now you can perform the first polishing works on the DICTUM Mini Polishing Motor PM 75 (No. 728794, 728795) by using a Cotton Polishing Disc (No. 728818) and Polishing Paste, Coarse (No. 705265) until you get the results you desire. For the final polishing, use a Flannel Polishing Disc (No. 728819) with Polishing Paste, Extra-Fine (No. 705459) and give your object a high gloss.



## Kirjes® Sanding System

Perfect finish to any shape in wood:

The quality and perception of any piece of work is largely influenced by its finish. Flat surfaces can easily be finished with a smoothing plane or sandpaper. However, concave or convex shapes, inner surfaces of rectangles and irregular shapes are much more difficult. So far, a machine finish was not possible while a hand surface was extremely time-consuming. This gap has been closed by the Swedish manufacturer Kirjes with its integrated sanding and polishing system: it enables a great leap in quality and facilitates working.

A sleeve of highly flexible abrasive cloth is fitted on a cylindrical or dome-shaped rubber bulb which is then inflated with a special hand pump through an air valve on the shaft. Such pneumatic drum sanders are very elastic, perfectly conforming to any shape. In addition to sanding sleeves, brush sleeves for polishing are also supplied. They will give your workpiece a polished surface. All inflatable drum sanders are fixed to the drill chuck of a 130 cm flexible shaft. The perfect tool for inner surfaces of carved and turned objects, for hard-to-reach areas, spoons, musical instruments, sculptures, ornaments, wooden toys, jewellery, knife handles etc.



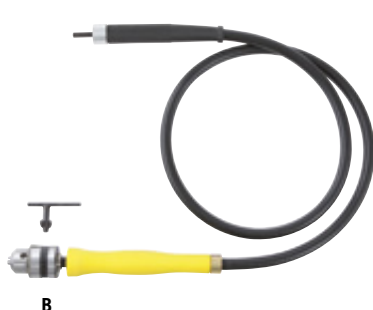
**G KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM »BASIC«**  
Sanding system including motor, flexible shaft, basic sanding kit and English manual.  
**No. 707689**

**H KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM »PRO«**  
Complete sanding system including motor, flexible shaft, drum sanding kit No. 101 and English manual.  
**No. 707437**



A

**A SANDING AND POLISHING MOTOR FOR KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM**  
Powerful and silent motor, equipped with two scroll chucks 0-10 mm. 300 W, 230 V, 3000 rpm, 4.5 kg.  
**No. 707432**



B

**B FLEXIBLE SHAFT FOR KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM**  
Highly flexible, equipped with three capsuled ball-bearings and scroll chuck 0-10 mm. Intended for max. speed 10 000 rpm. Length 130 cm.  
**No. 707433**



C

**C EXTRACTOR HANDLE FOR KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM**  
This extractor handle is made to vacuum fine saw dust produced with the Kirjes System right at the point of formation.  
**No. 707434**



► For Kirjes® OrbiCut see chapter »Sculpting Tools«

The flexible shaft with connection piece (inner diameter 32 mm) is easily fitted on any conventional vacuum cleaner.  
**No. 707434**



D

**D BASIC SANDING KIT FOR KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM**  
Set includes: drum sander Ø 42 x 44 mm (No. 140); dome sander Ø 42 x 35 mm

(No. 140R); one sanding sleeve (grit 80, 150 and 320) for each sander; hand pump; cleaning stick.  
**No. 707435**



E

**E DRUM SANDING KIT NO. 101 FOR KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM**  
Set includes: drum sander, Ø 20 x 32 mm (No. 120); drum sander, Ø 28 x 80 mm (No. 130); drum sander, Ø 42 x 44 mm

(No. 140); dome sander, Ø 42 x 35 mm (No. 140R); dome sander, Ø 20 mm (No. 120R); one sanding sleeve (grit 80, 150 and 320) for each sander; hand pump; cleaning stick.  
**No. 707435**



F

**F SANDING AND POLISHING SET FOR KIRJES® SANDING SYSTEM**  
Set includes: drum sander, Ø 20 x 32 mm (No. 120); drum sander, Ø 28 x 80 mm (No. 130); one sanding sleeve (grit 80,

150 and 320) for each sander; two polishing cloth sleeves each; one polishing brush sleeve each; cleaning stick; hand pump; 50 ml organic finishing wax.  
**No. 707695**



G

**G POLISHING SET FOR KIRJES® DRUM SANDER**  
Set includes: two polishing cloth sleeves for drum sander (No. 140); polishing brush sleeve for dome sander (No. 140);

two polishing cloth sleeves for dome sander (No. 140R); polishing brush sleeve for drum sander (No. 140R); 50 ml organic finishing wax.  
**No. 707688**



► Sorby™ polishing mop for Kirjes® sanding system available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



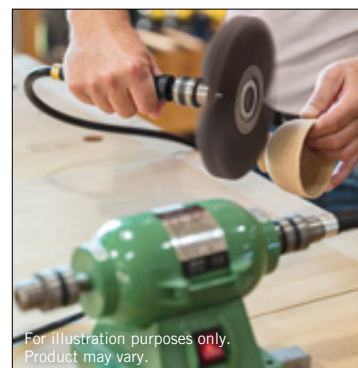
H

**H KLINGSPOR MM 630 ABRASIVE MOP WHEELS, 2-PIECE SET**  
Grinder mop wheel with highly flexible, longitudinally slotted and corundum-

scattered fabric lamellas with long service life and high removal rate. It is especially useful for processing strongly profiled workpieces on hand-guided machines or all straight grinders. Suitable for steel, stainless steel, wood and plastic.

180 x 25 x 6 mm  
Grit  
80 **No. 727909**  
120 **No. 727910**  
180 **No. 727911**

180 x 50 x 6 mm  
Grit  
80 **No. 727906**  
120 **No. 727907**  
180 **No. 727908**



For illustration purposes only.  
Product may vary.





**A FELT POLISHING WHEEL, MIXED WOOL FELT, STRAIGHT**  
Smoother felt, takes more polishing paste, enables more intense abrasion. Fits mandrel for felt wheel (No. 705491). Centre hole 20 mm  
Disc Ø 150 mm  
Width 20 mm  
**No. 705493**



**B FELT POLISHING WHEEL, STRAIGHT**  
Extra hard, wear-resistant felt for minor rounding off of sharpened edges. Fits mandrel for felt wheel (No. 705491). Centre hole 20 mm  
Disc Ø 150 mm  
Width 20 mm  
**No. 705490**



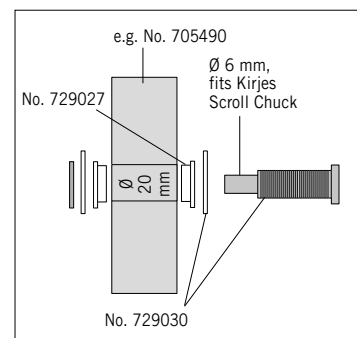
**C BUFFING WHEEL, SISAL**  
Approx. 70 layers of especially evenly woven sisal, double sewn, for fine polishing. Fits mandrel for felt wheel (No. 705491). Centre hole 20 mm  
Disc Ø 150 mm  
Width 20 mm  
**No. 705496**



**D CLAMPING MANDREL 10/6 MM**  
For rotary tools such as drills, straight grinders, flexible shafts etc. For 10 mm disc bores. By means of two additional flange discs with Ø 30 mm, discs with 20 mm bores can also be mounted when using reducing rings (No. 729027). Max. clamping width 25 mm. Burnished mandrel, stainless steel flange discs.  
Disc diameter 10 mm  
Shaft diameter 6 mm  
**No. 729030**



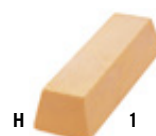
**E REDUCER RINGS, PAIR**  
For reducing the bore diameter of grinding and polishing wheels. Made of plastic.  
Outer diameter 20 mm  
Inner diameter  
10 mm **No. 729027**  
12 mm **No. 728995**  
12,7 mm **No. 728996**



**F MANDREL FOR FELT WHEEL**  
Mandrel with washer, nut and adapter sleeve Ø 20 / 8 mm. Suitable for felt wheels and cloth wheels with 8 and 20 mm bores. Hexagonal shaft 9.5 mm.  
**No. 705491** for Kirjes® sanding system.



**G GUNDEL-PUTZ® POLISH AND WHETTING PASTE**  
Proven cleaning and polishing agent for all shiny metals (steel, stainless steel, aluminium, brass, copper, silver, gold, nickel, chromium etc.). Ideal for honing blades on leather, e.g. Tormek sharpening system, strops, etc. Non-toxic, acid and formaldehyde-free.  
100 ml  
**No. 705262**



**H POLISHING PASTES**  
These wax-like polishing pastes are applied to felt buffing wheels and smooth leather sides of strops. No. 705265 only for steel/stainless steel, No. 705264, No. 705266 and No. 705459 also for aluminium.  
180 g  
35 x 45 x 80 mm

Grit  
1 extra-fine **No. 705459**  
2 fine **No. 705266**  
3 medium **No. 705264**  
4 coarse **No. 705265**

## Kutzall®



For over 50 years, Kutzall has been manufacturing quality products based on a simple principle: your tools should help you work better. This is why every Kutzall tool is coated by hand with robust tungsten carbide of the highest quality. The high precision enables fast and uniform material removal, minimal clogging, short cleaning times and a long service life. Made in USA.

## Kutzall® Burrs

For perfect and efficient detail work with rotary tools. The wide range of different coatings and shapes offers the right burr for every application. With their wide speed range of 5000-25 000 rpm, the burrs can be used with drilling machines, bending shafts, straight grinders or angle grinders.

### I CYLINDER BURRS

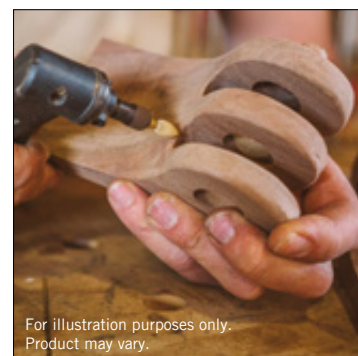
Version	Cutting length	Cutting Ø	Shaft Ø	
1 Original fine	13 mm	8 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727726</b>
2 Original coarse	14 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727725</b>
3 Extreme extra-coarse	14 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727727</b>
Original fine	23 mm	5 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727729</b>
Original coarse	23 mm	5 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727728</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	24 mm	6 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727730</b>

### J BALL NOSE BURRS

Version	Cutting length	Cutting Ø	Shaft Ø	
1 Original fine	13 mm	8 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727717</b>
2 Original coarse	14 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727716</b>
3 Extreme extra-coarse	14 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727718</b>
Original fine	23 mm	5 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727720</b>
Original coarse	23 mm	5 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727719</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	24 mm	6 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727721</b>
Original fine	30 mm	21 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727723</b>
Original coarse	31 mm	23 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727722</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	31 mm	23 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727724</b>
Original fine	39 mm	9 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727714</b>
Original coarse	40 mm	10 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727713</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	40 mm	11 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727715</b>



TC tipped rasp cutters are also very effective for fibreglass, plastic, solid rubber, foam core, polyurethane, silicone, soapstone and composite materials.





**A FLAME BURRS**

Version	Cutting length	Cutting Ø	Shaft Ø	
1 Original fine	13 mm	8 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727741</b>
2 Original coarse	14 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727740</b>
3 Extreme extra-coarse	14 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727742</b>
Original fine	27 mm	15 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727738</b>
Original coarse	27 mm	17 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727737</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	27 mm	17 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727739</b>

**B SPHERE BURRS**

Version	Cutting length	Cutting Ø	Shaft Ø	
1 Original fine	8 mm	8 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727750</b>
2 Original coarse	9 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727749</b>
3 Extreme extra-coarse	9 mm	9 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727751</b>
Original fine	11 mm	11 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727753</b>
Original coarse	12 mm	12 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727752</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	12 mm	12 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727754</b>
Original fine	28 mm	28 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727747</b>
Original coarse	29 mm	29 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727746</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	30 mm	30 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727748</b>

**C ROTOR SAW BURRS**

Version	Cutting length	Cutting Ø	Shaft Ø	
1 Original fine	5 mm	21 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727744</b>
Original coarse	5 mm	21 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727743</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	6 mm	22 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727745</b>

**D LONG TAPER BURRS**

Version	Cutting length	Cutting Ø	Shaft Ø	
1 Original fine	23 mm	5 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727762</b>
2 Original coarse	23 mm	5 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727761</b>
3 Extreme extra-coarse	24 mm	6 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727763</b>
Original fine	39 mm	9 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727756</b>
Original coarse	40 mm	10 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727755</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	40 mm	11 mm	6.35 mm (1/4 inch)	<b>No. 727757</b>

**E DOVETAIL BURRS**

Version	Cutting length	Cutting Ø	Shaft Ø	
1 Original fine	13 mm	11 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727735</b>
Original coarse	14 mm	12 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727734</b>
Extreme extra-coarse	14 mm	12 mm	3.2 mm (1/8 inch)	<b>No. 727736</b>

**F KUTZALL® TUNGSTEN CARBIDE TIPPED CUP RASPS**

Cup rasps with an almost semicircular profile are ideal for reworking concave surfaces or bowls, semicircular recesses or for shaping turned and sculpted workpieces. The five diameters and three different grits available offer a wide range of applications. Various clamping options such as optional accessories on drills, straight grinders, angle grinders, Merlin2 long-neck angle grinders, Arbortech Mini-Carvers, etc. allow an optimal and efficient application of the cup rasps. Recommended speed: 5000-15 000 rpm. A rubber insert, available as an accessory, also increases the stability and smooth running of the cup rasps.

**Possible adapters and drive options:**

- Clamping mandrel No. 727883 for drilling machines, straight grinders, flexible shafts
- Adapter No. 728823 for angle grinders with M14 spindle thread
- Adapter No. 728824 for Merlin2 long neck angle grinder
- Adapter No. 728825 for Arbortech Mini-Carver

1 Original Ø 45 mm  
fine **No. 727863**  
medium **No. 727864**

2 Original Ø 50 mm  
fine **No. 727865**  
medium **No. 727866**

**G RUBBER INLAYS FOR KUTZALL® CUP RASP**

The insert fits perfectly into the hollow profiles of the cup rasps. This ensures that the pots are aligned exactly with the shank of the adapter or of the machine. The additional momentum increases the stability and chatter-free cutting of the cup rasps. This also prevents any deformation of the pots, e.g. through rough handling. Centre hole 9.5 mm (3/8 inch)

Cup rasp Ø  
45 mm **No. 727878**  
50 mm **No. 727879**



**H ADAPTER FOR KUTZALL® CUP RASP ON MERLIN2**  
Fits Kutzall cup rasps with Ø 45 mm (No. 727863, 727864) on Merlin2 long-neck angle grinder (No. 715407, 715408). Made of stainless steel.  
**No. 728824**





**I MANDREL FOR KUTZALL® CUP RASP, SHANK Ø 6.4 MM**  
Fits e.g. Kutzall cup rasps and rubber inserts up to a maximum diameter of 50 mm, as well as other rotary tools with a bore diameter of 9.5 mm (3/8 inch).



**J SANDING ARBOR**  
Self-cut abrasive fabric is inserted in the slot and wrapped around the arbor. This allows you to smooth extra-small radius-

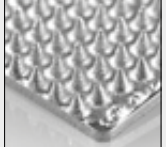
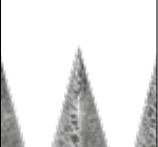


es. The external diameter can be enlarged by wrapping more layers

**Kutzall® Original**

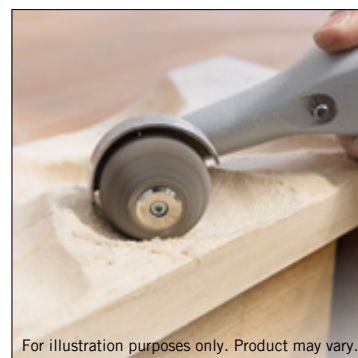
Consists of very sharp conical TC tips. The fine, randomly arranged and densely distributed tips are ideal for producing fine surfaces and for working in the low speed range. Ideal for processing softwood.

**Kutzall® Extreme**

Consists of precisely shaped cones with superior durability that are arranged in a regular pattern. The open arrangement of the TC teeth ensures »aggressive« free-cutting tips and cools the disc when working. It also prevents vibrations and excessive load on the disc. The best choice for hardwood as well as large-volume and fast material removal. In the upper speed range, it is also suitable for softwood.

► For more Kutzall® Burrs see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

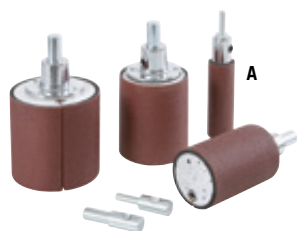


For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.

Shaft diameter 6.4 mm (1/4 inch), left-hand thread IUCN 3/8 inch x 24 tpi, clamping length 11 mm, total length 40 mm. Max. speed 25 000 rpm.  
**No. 727883**



**A SANDING DRUMS, 4-PIECE SET**  
Large format cylinder for cordless drivers, hand and bench drills. Its integrated clamping system makes it possible to use self-cut abrasive material. This means that expensive sanding cloth sleeves are no longer needed. The shafts can

be exchanged for all drum sizes, which extends the application range. The generous dimensions make it possible to work on workpiece edges that are up to 70 mm thick. The four diameters of the drums provide the correct dimensions for each workpiece, whether it has a

narrow or wide radius. Drum height 76 mm, sanding drum diameter 25, 50, 63, 76 mm, incl. two additional shafts with diameter 6.35 and 12.7 mm. Max. rotary speed 1500 rpm.

**No. 706586**



**B DICTUM® BELT DISC SANDER BTS 100/150**

The combination of belt and disc grinder offers a wide range of applications, from grinding small surfaces, longitudinal and end grain edges, mitres, curves and contours to grinding chamfers and deburring metal parts. The belt sanding unit can be adjusted without tools from a horizontal to a vertical position. The sanding table is mounted on the sanding disc or sanding belt. A quick clamping device ensures quick and effortless changing of the sanding belt, the sanding belt correction mechanism ensures precise alignment. For processing wood composite materials, plastics and metal. Grinding disc Ø 150 mm, sanding belt 100 x 914 mm.

**Your benefits:**

- Solid cast iron construction for high stability and low-vibration working
- Belt sanding unit can be used horizontally and vertically
- Sanding table made of cast aluminium tiltable up to 45°
- Mitre gauge made of die-cast aluminium
- Hook-and-loop pad on grinding disc for easy change of grinding wheel
- On/off switch with undervoltage release for greater work safety

**Includes:**

- Sanding table
- Mitre gauge
- Sanding belt 100 x 914 mm, grit 80
- Sanding wheel Ø 150 mm, grit 80

Motor 230 V  
Rated Input 370 W  
Hose Connection Ø 58/63 mm  
Belt speed 7.4 m/sec  
16.5 kg  
**No. 720805**



**Vide** available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**C KLINGSPOR UNIVERSAL VELCRO GRINDING DISCS, Ø 150 MM, 10-PIECE SET**

Velcro abrasive paper with universal abrasive for wood and metalworking. The PS 22 abrasive made of corundum has a synthetic resin bond on an e-paper base. Semi-open coating type. Fits BTS 100/150 (No. 720805).

Grit  
60 **No. 727319**  
80 **No. 727320**  
120 **No. 727321**  
240 **No. 727322**



**D KLINGSPOR UNIVERSAL ABRASIVE BELT LS 309 XH**

Abrasive belts are suitable for surface and edge grinding on belt abrasive machines. The universal abrasive is used for processing wood, metal and non-ferrous metals. The LS 309 XH abrasive made of corundum has a synthetic resin bond on a cotton base. Dense coating type. Fits BTS 100/150 (No. 720805).

Dimensions 100 x 914 mm

1 piece  
Grit  
P 60 **No. 727331**  
P 80 **No. 727332**  
P 120 **No. 727333**  
P 240 **No. 727334**



► More disc sanding machines and belt disc sanders available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**E ARBORTECH™ CONTOUR RANDOM ORBITAL SANDER, M5 VERSION**

Angle grinder attachment for sanding complex contours: Ideal for sanding concave curves and complex free-form contours. The flexible Ø 50 mm sanding pad moulds perfectly to the workpiece and allows quicker

sanding, even on the tightest of curves. Able to rotate freely, the sanding pad is fitted eccentrically to the dynamically balanced shaft, enabling it to vibrate and rotate. This eccentric orbital sanding motion ensures efficient material removal with a high surface quality. After machining with the Arbortech Mini-Turbo,

TurboPlane or sanding discs, the patented contour random orbital sander offers a perfect match. The sanding discs are secured to the rubber sanding pad with a countersunk screw. The Contour Sander fits any standard angle grinder (100-125 mm disc diameter) with M14 spindle. Maximum sanding depth 65 mm. In the new M5 version, the thread in the shaft extension has been changed from an M4 thread to an M5 thread. This makes assembly easier. Note: The grinding wheels of the M4 version cannot be used on the M5 version.

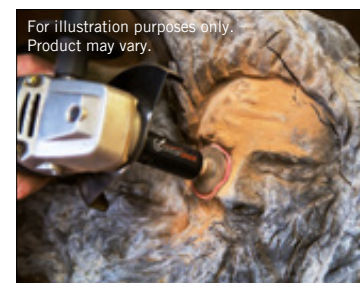
**Includes:**

Random orbital sander attachment, flexible sanding pad Ø 50 each with 3 sanding discs, grit 80, 120, 180, 240, 320, 400, 600.

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

**No. 715263**

Repl. pad **No. 715285**



For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.



A

**A SANDERS FOR ARBORTECH™ M5**  
Fit Arbortech Mini-Turbo No. 715284,  
Mini Carver No. 715264 and Contour  
Random Sanders No. 715263. To be  
used with Rubber Grinding Pads  
No. 715285 and Mounting Flange  
No. 715286.

**Set**  
21-piece set. 3 each of 40, 60, 80 120,  
180, 240 and 320 grits.  
**No. 715400**

20-piece set

Grit	
40	<b>No. 715391</b>
60	<b>No. 715392</b>
80	<b>No. 715393</b>
120	<b>No. 715394</b>
180	<b>No. 715395</b>
240	<b>No. 715396</b>
320	<b>No. 715397</b>



B

**B RUBBER GRINDING PAD FOR ARBORTECH™ M5**  
Fits Arbortech Mini-Turbo No. 715284,  
Mini Carver No. 715264 and Contour  
Random Sander No. 715263.  
Ø 50 mm  
**No. 715285**

## Hand Abrasives

### Klingspor Abrasive Technology

Klingspor is one of the world's leading manufacturers of high-quality abrasives. Since the company was founded in 1893, they have developed a variety of innovative products which are now being used in more than 80 countries.

 For sheets of Klingspor waterproof abrasive paper and a grinding aid with foam rubber coating see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



C

1

2

#### C KLINGSPOR ABRASIVE PAPER

PS 22 F ACT abrasive paper is ideal for woodworking. The dense coating ensures maximum stock removal and a uniform scratch pattern. Suitable for hand and machine use. Antistatic - prevents premature clogging.  
Abrasive: aluminium oxide, base: paper (approx. 300 g/m²).

**1 Strips**  
115 x 280 mm, 20 pieces

Grit	
80	<b>No. 706366</b>
100	<b>No. 706367</b>
120	<b>No. 706368</b>
180	<b>No. 706369</b>
240	<b>No. 706370</b>
320	<b>No. 706371</b>
400	<b>No. 706372</b>

**2 Rolls**  
115 mm x 25 m

Grit	
80	<b>No. 706373</b>
100	<b>No. 706374</b>
120	<b>No. 706375</b>
180	<b>No. 706376</b>
240	<b>No. 706377</b>
320	<b>No. 706378</b>
400	<b>No. 706379</b>



D

1

2

#### D KLINGSPOR ABRASIVE CLOTH

This high-quality, light cotton cloth KL 361 JF is suitable for a variety of uses. The highly flexible linen backing moulds itself perfectly to even highly profiled workpieces. The dense coating ensures a homogeneous scratch pattern in surface finishing and a long service life. Suitable for wood, varnish and metal.  
Abrasive: aluminium oxide, base: highly flexible cotton cloth.

**1 Strips**  
115 x 280 mm, 20 pieces

Grit	
80	<b>No. 706350</b>
100	<b>No. 706351</b>
120	<b>No. 706352</b>
180	<b>No. 706353</b>
240	<b>No. 706354</b>
320	<b>No. 706355</b>
400	<b>No. 706356</b>
600	<b>No. 706357</b>

**2 Rolls**  
115 mm x 25 m

Grit	
80	<b>No. 706358</b>
100	<b>No. 706359</b>
120	<b>No. 706360</b>
180	<b>No. 706361</b>
240	<b>No. 706362</b>
320	<b>No. 706363</b>
400	<b>No. 706364</b>
600	<b>No. 706365</b>

E

**E CORK SANDING BLOCK**  
Sanding block made of agglomerated cork, chamfered edges.  
120 x 60 x 35 mm  
**No. 718337**

F

**F SANDING AND POLISHING STEEL WOOL**  
Long-fibre quality steel wool made of superior, single-variety steel fibres,

making it extra wear-resistant, tearproof and elastic. The gentle scraping effect of the steel fibres produces an ultra-smooth surface. When working wood, steel wool is preferred for surfaces with a strong grain structure, as the steel fibres emphasise the surface structure rather than sanding it down. It is used for intermediate sanding or matting glossy varnish and shellac surfaces. Cleans high-grade metal objects and polishes nickel-silver and brass to a mirror finish. Also perfect for

plastic, stone and glass. Not suitable for use with water-based varnishes.  
200 g

Grit  
No. 0000. extra extra-fine  
**No. 706473**  
No. 000. extra-fine  
**No. 706472**  
No. 00. fine  
**No. 706471**  
No. 0. medium  
**No. 706470**

G

**G KA.EF.® SOFTPAD, 5-PIECE SET**  
The special foam, coated on one side, ensures an even pressure and achieves perfect surfaces without sanding through, e.g. when finishing lacquered surfaces. The extremely flexible SoftPads produce optimum sanding results both in dry and wet sanding of difficult areas such as curves, coves and recesses. Also suitable for abrad-

ing wood, metal and plastic before priming as well as for matting lacquer. Abrasive: aluminium oxide on one side.

The listed grits by KA.EF. are to be rated much finer in comparison with conventional abrasive paper grits:

- Indicated grit 100 corresponds to grit 220
- Indicated grit 220 corresponds to grit 500
- Indicated grit 280 corresponds to grit 1000

Grit	
100	<b>No. 706393</b>
220	<b>No. 706394</b>
280	<b>No. 706395</b>

H

**H KA.EF.® ABRASIVE SPONGES, 5-PIECE SET T** *Price advantage*  
Grinding device with pressure-distributing foam core, coated on four sides. The direct coating of the foam with the abrasive ensures a very fine finish. Ideal for intermediate sanding and sanding off paint flaws, as well as for working on

rabbets and inside corners. For sanding wood, metal, putty and plastic, both wet and dry.  
Abrasive: aluminium oxide on four sides.

The listed grits by KA.EF. are to be rated much finer in comparison with conventional abrasive paper grits:

- Indicated grit 60 corresponds to grit 105
- Indicated grit 100 corresponds to grit 220
- Indicated grit 180 corresponds to grit 322

Grit	
60	<b>No. 706390</b>
100	<b>No. 706391</b>
180	<b>No. 706392</b>





**A HARDWOOD SANDING BLOCK**  
Hand sander with durable and effective self-adhesive sanding pads (Velcro coated). Incl. 3 pads.  
Grit 80 / 120 / 240  
115 x 55 x 30 mm  
**No. 707863**



**B REPLACEMENT PADS FOR HARDWOOD SANDING BLOCK, 5-PIECE SET**  
115 x 55 mm  
Grit  
80 **No. 705121**  
120 **No. 705122**  
240 **No. 705123**  
320 **No. 705124**

## Micro-Mesh® Abrasive and Polishing Cloth

The finest quality smoothing and polishing material:

Micro-Mesh is excellent for intermediate sanding of varnishes and fine finishing work on wood, plastic, plexiglass, as well as metal surfaces, including polishing, especially on irregular and curved surfaces. The micron graded abrasive silicon crystals are suspended in a thin, highly flexible cloth so that no sticky residues are left on the finished surface. Micro-Mesh can be used dry, with water, or with petroleum, and offers a long service life under normal use.



### Micro-Mesh® MM

Micro-Mesh MM was originally developed for polishing hard plastics. The fine grits are also ideal for working wood, plexiglass and fibreglass, right through to polishing varnished surfaces.

**MICRO-MESH® MM SINGLE SHEET**  
153 x 82 mm

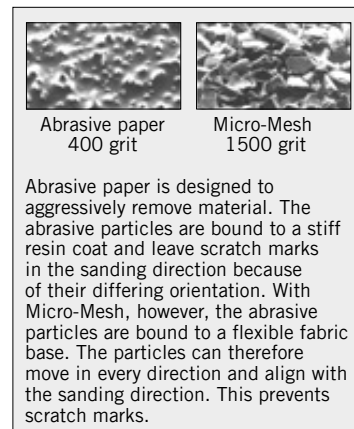
Grit	
1500	<b>No. 705101</b>
1800	<b>No. 705102</b>
2400	<b>No. 705103</b>
3200	<b>No. 705104</b>
3600	<b>No. 705105</b>
4000	<b>No. 705106</b>
6000	<b>No. 705107</b>
8000	<b>No. 705108</b>
12 000	<b>No. 705109</b>

**C MICRO-MESH® MM ASSORTMENT, 11-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
One sheet of each grit 1500, 1800, 2400, 3200, 3600, 4000, 6000, 8000, 12 000, polishing file, grinding block.  
**No. 705115**

**MICRO-MESH® MM ASSORTMENT, 20-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
Two sheets of each grit 1500, 1800, 2400, 3200, 3600, 4000, 6000, 8000, 12 000, polishing file, grinding block.  
**No. 705116**

**MICRO-MESH® SOFT PADS**  
100 x 75 x 5 mm

Grit	
1500	<b>No. 705411</b>
1800	<b>No. 705412</b>
2400	<b>No. 705413</b>
3200	<b>No. 705414</b>
3600	<b>No. 705415</b>
4000	<b>No. 705416</b>
6000	<b>No. 705417</b>
8000	<b>No. 705418</b>
12 000	<b>No. 705419</b>



Abrasive paper  
400 grit

Micro-Mesh  
1500 grit

Abrasive paper is designed to aggressively remove material. The abrasive particles are bound to a stiff resin coat and leave scratch marks in the sanding direction because of their differing orientation. With Micro-Mesh, however, the abrasive particles are bound to a flexible fabric base. The particles can therefore move in every direction and align with the sanding direction. This prevents scratch marks.

**D MICRO-MESH® SOFT PADS, 100 X 75 MM, 9-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
Colour-coded. One soft pad of each grit 1500, 1800, 2400, 3200, 3600, 4000, 6000, 8000, 12 000. 100 x 75 x 5 mm  
**No. 705420**



**E MICRO-MESH® SOFT PADS, 50 X 50 MM, 9-PIECE SET**  
Colour-coded. One soft pad of each grit 1500, 1800, 2400, 3200, 3600, 4000, 6000, 8000, 12 000. 50 x 50 x 4 mm  
**No. 705410**

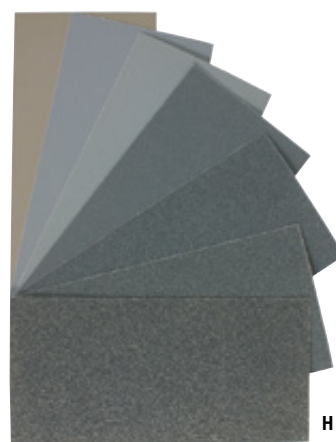


### F MICRO-MESH® CRAFT KIT

This kit consists of a 9-piece set of colour-coded soft pads with abrasive fabric on both sides and three Micro-Mesh MX polishing files for coarser abrasion of hard materials and difficult-to-reach spots. Also included for the perfect finish are a Micro-Gloss polish and polishing cloth for removing the finest scratches after using Micro-Mesh sandpapers.

One soft pad of each grit 1500, 1800, 2400, 3200, 3600, 4000, 6000, 8000, 12 000. 50 x 50 x 4 mm. Three MX polishing files with different grits on each side: 100, 150, 180, 240, 400, 600. 30 g Micro-Gloss polish, 300 x 300 mm polishing cloth.  
**No. 705310**

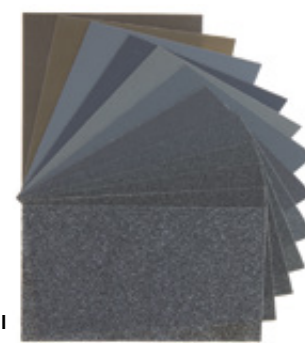
**G SANDING BLOCK**  
Made of foam.  
60 x 60 x 25 mm  
**No. 705114**



### Micro-Mesh® MX

The coarser grit of Micro-Mesh MX is designed for rapid sanding. Well suited for smoothing varnished surfaces, working hard materials (metal, stone, hard plastics), cleaning oxidised or stained surfaces, removing scratches, and for sharpening and polishing. MX is less flexible than MM due to the somewhat stiffer textile base used.

**H MICRO-MESH® MX, 7-PIECE SET**  
One sheet of each grit 60, 100, 150, 240, 360, 600, 1200.  
153 x 82 mm  
**No. 705481**



**I MICRO-MESH® MX, 12-PIECE SET**  
One sheet of each grit 80, 100, 120, 150, 180, 240, 320, 360, 400, 600, 800, 1200.  
100 x 76 mm  
**No. 705117**

**A MICRO-MESH® MM POLISHING FILE**  
Ideal for varnish repairs. Flexible file coated on both sides with grits 3200, 6000, 12 000.  
145 x 12 mm  
**No. 705110**



**B MICRO-GLOSS® POLISH**  
Eliminates the finest scratches: Micro-Gloss is a water-based polish containing aluminium oxide particles 1 µm in size for finely polishing acrylic, metal, wood and hard varnishes. It completely removes the visible scratches left by Micro-Mesh and leaves a brilliantly glossy finish. Does not discolour.  
55 g  
**No. 705482**

## Pyrography Tools



**C BURNMASTER® EAGLE WOODBURNER SET**  
For hobbyists, sculptors and woodturners: This set has everything you need for quality woodburning with maximum convenience. Thanks to the high 130 W power, the tips heat up to maximum temperature within just a few seconds. Whether light shading or deep burning, the continuously adjustable temperature control sets no limits to your creativity. The two pens allow optimum burning, as you do not have to constantly change tips. By means of the supplied

adapter, most pens made by other manufacturers can be used with the Burnmaster. Also suitable for cork, horn and leather.  
Operating voltage 230 V.

Set includes: woodburning station with holders, two pens with adapters and 15 tips.  
**Comes with German and English instructions.**

**No. 715300**



► Sorby™ Peter Child pyrography tool available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► For the full range of tools for surface texturing and finishing of sculpting as well as turning objects visit our theme world »Surface texturing and finishing - Airbrush / Pyrography / Texturing Tools«.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

# Surface Protection and Colours

## Oils



**A SINENSIS® CAMELLIA OIL**  
Versatile, light oil from the seeds of the camellia tree.

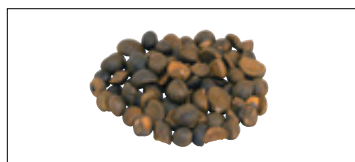
**Corrosion protection:** Camellia oil is acid-free, non-volatile and not susceptible to resinification, making it the ideal oil to protect tools, knives and weapons from rust. Made from pure natural plant products and food safe, it is ideal for preserving kitchen knives made of carbon steel.

**Wood protection:** When applied to wooden surfaces, it is absorbed quickly due to its low viscosity. Once absorbed, it helps protect the wood from damage by moisture, dirt and UV light. Clear, not discolouring, it emphasizes the wood's natural beauty. Non-hardening.

**Body care:** Camellia oil makes an excellent base for the preparation of lotions,

creams and soaps for cosmetic use. As a massage oil or hair oil, it has for ages been found irreplaceable by Japanese geishas.

- 1 100 ml  
No. 705280  
2 250 ml  
No. 705281  
3 1 l  
No. 705282



## Organic Swedish Linseed Oil

Cold-pressed from linseeds, this hardening oil is used for the ecological protection of wood. Highly transparent, chemical-free and food safe with only minimal odour. Linolja can be used directly in its pure form. It is also suitable for producing linseed-oil paint (with iron oxide pigment), as well as being mixed with tar oil for use outdoors.



**B LINOLJA® ORGANIC SWEDISH LINSEED OIL, COLD-BLEACHED**  
Especially bright and colour-fast. Pre-oxidation slightly bleaches the oil and significantly improves its drying properties.

- 1 | No. 705275  
5 | No. 705269

**C RA LINOLJA® ORGANIC SWEDISH LINSEED OIL, RAW**  
Untreated linseed oil, a pure natural product, dries slowly so penetrates deep into the wood, polishes well.

- 1 | No. 705354  
5 | No. 705355

Drying oils (e.g. tung oil, linseed oil) not only protect the surface from contamination, but also **harden the layers of wood near the surface**. The lower their viscosity and the more slowly they dry, the deeper they penetrate.



**D BOILED LINSEED OIL FOR INTERIOR USE**  
High-quality boiled linseed oil from cold-pressed linseed oil to which a small amount of manganese siccatives is added during the boiling process to reduce the drying time.  
1 | No. 810093  
5 | No. 810094

**E BOILED LINSEED OIL FOR EXTERIOR USE**  
Ideal product for mixing house or window paints with linseed oil pastes. It is made of high-quality cold-pressed linseed oil to which a small amount of manganese siccatives is added during the boiling process. This significantly reduces the drying time and ensures a stainless finish

## Boiled linseed oil manufacturing process

Boiling linseed oil initiates a polymerisation process in which the oil thickens slightly. This process is halted when the oil cools down and by the airtight atmosphere (packaging), and resumed when the oil is actually applied to the wood. The process then continues and the oil dries faster. Depending on the original quality of the linseed oil and how long and hot the oil was boiled, it is either still thin and fluid or becomes brittle relatively quickly after being applied. When siccatives are mixed with the oil in the boiling process, we call the result boiled linseed oil. Here too, the amount and type of drying agent determines the drying time, but also the environmental impact.

For our boiled linseed oils, we only use seasoned and thus degummed, cold-pressed linseed oil that was »gently« boiled to deeply penetrate and quickly dry. The manganese siccatives used for the boiled linseed oil are among the most environmentally compatible drying agents and their addition is strictly controlled.



even in changing weather. To protect against mildew and rot that mainly form because of the mucilage in the linseed oil, our oil is degummed before further processing. However, to ensure long-term protection, we add a small amount of IPBC fungicide to the product. With linseed oil pastes with a high zinc content and thus »natural« anti-fungal protection, the boiled linseed oil can also be used without fungicides for exterior use. Zinc also provides longer-lasting anti-

fungal protection. Because of its clear colour, boiled linseed oil itself does not provide any UV protection and thus can only be used outdoors in combination with linseed oil pastes.

*May cause an allergic skin reaction. Causes skin irritation. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

- 1 | No. 810097  
5 | No. 810098





#### A COLOUR SAMPLES FOR LINSEED OIL PAINTS

To make sure that the specified colours of the linseed oil paints look as desired on your surface, we offer mixed linseed oil paints as colour samples. These samples are only suitable for testing the colour, however - the drying times and spreadability of the paints depend on the type of oil or oil lacquer you will use to mix the linseed oil pastes. The colour samples are mixed with boiled linseed oil for the interior (with drying agent) without fungicide.

- |  | Colour                                      |
|--|---|
| 1 Graphite<br><b>No. 810114</b>            | 5 Haematite Red Lead<br><b>No. 810118</b>   |
| 2 Black Ferrous Oxide<br><b>No. 810115</b> | 6 Zoo Red<br><b>No. 810119</b>              |
| 3 RAL9010 Pure White<br><b>No. 810116</b>  | 7 Ultramarine Blue<br><b>No. 810121</b>     |
| 4 Svinkloev Grey<br><b>No. 810117</b>      | 8 Chromium Oxide Green<br><b>No. 810122</b> |
|  | 9 Coach Green<br><b>No. 810123</b>          |
|  | 10 Gold Ochre<br><b>No. 810124</b>          |
|  | 11 Skagen Yellow<br><b>No. 810125</b>       |
|  | 12 Siena<br><b>No. 810126</b>               |
|  | 13 Copenhagen Brown<br><b>No. 810128</b>    |

*Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

#### TRADITIONELLE ANSTRICHE

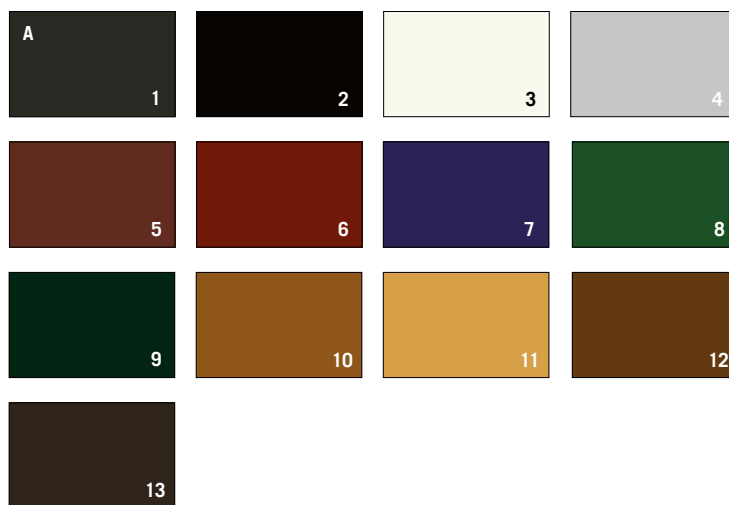
Simon Vejbaek  
Kinch:

This book provides a good overview on the manufacturing of oil based paint and the wide range of possible paint recipes for different purposes. The author describes additives, auxiliary



materials and tools as well as the necessary techniques. Common problems, their reasons and solution are explained in great detail, as well as similar techniques such as gloss paint, distemper, tempera/emulsion, wood tar, calcium lime and silicate paint. A unique reference book for enthusiastic amateurs and professional craftsmen.

103 pages, hardcover, coloured photographs on every page, 163 x 235 mm.  
**In German.**  
**No. 713602**



#### Linseed Oil Paints

Linseed oil paint has a long and proven tradition as indoor and outdoor paint. It has the following excellent properties:

- 100 % natural ingredients
- Diffusion-permeable - the wood can »breathe«
- Can be applied to oiled and already painted surfaces
- Stabilises the surface
- Natural UV protection
- Is absorbed by the wood, thus prevents unwanted layers from building up and avoids peeling off (frequent long-term reaction with industrial paint products)
- Long shelf life - can still be used after long storage



#### Outdoor use

##### Choice of colour

For outdoor use it is advisable to use light colours, as darker colours attract the heat in the sunny season. This causes:

- Faster decomposition of the oil, so it needs freshening up more frequently
- Cracks and warps in the wood and therefore damage to the surface

##### Protection against fungi

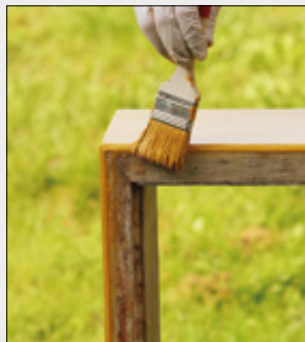
The higher the zinc content in a pigment, the better the paint inhibits fungal growth. This is important for the choice of colour for outdoor use. The zinc content is specified in the product information on the pastes. When mixing paints with a low share of zinc, you should add boiled linseed oil with fungicide additive.

##### UV protection

UV protection, which is not provided with raw, cold-bleached or boiled linseed oil or varnish in its pure form, is generally achieved by adding colour pigments.

##### Mixing components

Because painting outdoors is heavily dependent on the weather and long drying times can become a problem, we recommend using boiled linseed oil or oil varnish as the basis for outdoor use. Oil varnish is only slightly absorbed by the wood and, unlike boiled linseed oil, forms a coating layer. Parts that are subject to strongly fluctuating wood moisture, such as windows and doors, should therefore preferably be treated with varnish. You can also mix pine tar with the linseed oil pastes to obtain a different shade.



*Can be applied to weathered, oiled or already painted surfaces.*

#### Indoor use

##### Choice of colour

For indoor use you can use any colour.

##### Mixing components

Suitable mixing components are raw, cold-bleached or boiled linseed oil, oil varnish. Do not use boiled linseed oil with fungicides for interior use, as these can still evaporate even after a long time.

#### Linseed oil paints on metal

##### Choice of colour

Linseed oil paint is also an ideal base coat for rust-proofing metal parts. For this purpose, we especially recommend Haematite Red Lead and Graphite. Both colours provide excellent rust protection.

##### Mixing components

To ensure that the base coat is thoroughly absorbed by the metal, we recommend using linseed oil. For the second and third coat, you should use oil varnish (Le Tonkinois, No. 810087) to seal the surface permanently against penetrating water. Please find a detailed description in our product information.



**Vide** Application video available online.  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



For information on application techniques see our Finishing Primer which you can download free of charge on [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### WORKSHOP

#### FINISHING SURFACES



##### Content:

To bring out the natural beauty of the wood grain, we will recommend the appropriate formula for the application at hand from our rich fund of products. Proper treatment will protect wooden surfaces from becoming dirty and also retard aging.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



A

**A LINSEED OIL PASTE**

The pastes we offer contain only pure, powdered pigment that is saturated with a little linseed oil. To obtain linseed oil paint, you must add oil to the pastes. You can mix the linseed oil paint as you wish by adding raw, cold-bleached, boiled linseed oil (indoor use), oil varnish or wood tar (outdoor use). Freshly mixed paint also provides the best drying properties. A thin mix can also be applied as a »stain« (visible wood structure). The pastes can be mixed with each other. Detailed instructions for mixing and application come with the products. 500 ml

**Zinc content**

With its high zinc content, this paste provides long-lasting protection against mildew in outdoor use, so that no boiled linseed oil with fungicides needs to be added when mixing the paint.

**1 Graphite**

Heat-resistant pigment that is mainly applied to outdoor metal parts for rust protection. **No. 810099**

**2 Black Ferrous Oxide**

Light-fast, deep black with good resistance to acids and alkalis. The paste is often added to pine tar to obtain black, covering colours. **No. 810100**

**3 RAL9010 Pure White**

Classic white shade from the standard RAL colour chart; one of the most popular colours used by door and window manufacturers. Due to the light shade, the coated wood only heats up slightly, which prevents cracks and thus long-term damage to the surface. **No. 810101**



Coverage 60-100 ml/m<sup>2</sup> with a finished mix ratio of 1:1. 500 ml linseed oil paste cover approx. 10-15 m<sup>2</sup>.

**4 Svinkloev Grey**

Pleasant light grey colour which protects the coated wood from heating up. This prevents cracks and thus long-term damage to the surface. **No. 810102**

**9 Coach Green**

Dark green shade that was traditionally used for painting coaches in Denmark. Today you often find this colour on window frames, window shutters and front doors. **No. 810108**

**5 Haematite Red Lead**

Reddish-brown colour with excellent rust protection that is used as a base coat for metal outdoors. **No. 810103**

**6 Zoo Red**

Intense, fresh oxide-based red shade, which got its name from a Danish deer park where this colour was often used for exterior paintwork. **No. 810104**

**7 Ultramarine Blue**

Strong, non-fading blue that is considered the oldest blue pigment. **No. 810106**

**8 Chromium Oxide Green**

Natural shade of green with extreme colouring power, high stability and good drying properties. **No. 810107**

**10 Gold Ochre**

This earth-coloured pigment is obtained from ferrous soil, is highly resistant to fading and ideal for whitewashing. **No. 810109**

**11 Skagen Yellow**

Warm, discreet yellow shade with good coverage and high resistance to fading. **No. 810110**

**12 Siena**

Natural pigment from the yellow Siena soil that is also used for wood imitations. **No. 810111**

**13 Copenhagen Brown**

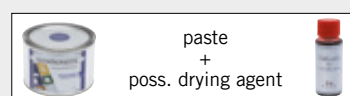
Restful brown mixed from different pigments.



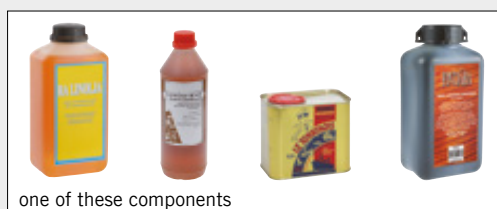
*Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

**No. 810113**

A

**Mixing guide for linseed oil paints**

+



one of these components

B

**B DRYING AGENT FOR LINSEED OIL PAINTS**

Depending on whether you mix linseed oil paints with raw, cold-bleached, boiled linseed oil or oil varnish, they have different drying times that may extend to several days. Adding this drying agent (siccative) based on unleaded cobalt allows you to apply the next coating of linseed oil paint after only a few hours of drying. For information on mix ratios, see the detailed instructions for use that come with the product or take a look at our Finishing Primer.

*Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation.*

28 ml  
**No. 810092**

C

**C LINSEED OIL SOAP**

Linseed oil soap is made of natural linseed oil and is ideal for cleaning brushes used to apply oils and oil-based paints. Simply soak the brush in pure linseed oil soap and later rinse it thoroughly with water. You can also clean untreated wooden floors by moistening them and then adding the concentrated linseed oil soap. However, it is not possible to apply oil afterwards. Diluted with water (1 l water / 10 ml soap), the soap can also be used to clean stone floors. 500 ml

**No. 810091**

**WORKSHOP****SURFACES WITH LINSEED OIL****Content:**

- Introduction to theory and practice
- Areas of application indoors and outdoors
- Surface pretreatment (wood and metal surfaces)
- Understanding the different possible combinations of raw, cold-bleached, boiled linseed oil, oil varnish or wood tar with linseed oil pastes (pure, ground pigment) and siccatives (drying agents)
- Blending of colours and formulas
- Layering onto model sheets
- Restored coating and transparent coating



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

**Vide** Application videos available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Tung oil

Tung oil in both its pure and liquid form has a distinctive smell that disappears after drying or when mixed with either orange oil or turpentine oil. Because of its odour, we do not recommend it for cupboard interiors. The tung oil offered here is ecologically sound. It is not pre-oxidized, nor is it mixed with chemical drying agents. Consequently, it takes up to three weeks to become dry (drying times vary considerably depending on the environmental conditions, type of wood and preparation of the surface). Once dry, the oil film is chemically stable and free of dangerous emissions. Pure tung oil is relatively viscous, but its ability to penetrate can be improved by thinning with turpentine oil (No. 705288) or by warming.

### A LIGNEA® PURE TUNG OIL

High-quality natural oil for indoor and outdoor use: Ligne, the oil obtained from the fruits of the tung tree, has many uses both indoors and out, e.g. for indoor and outdoor furniture, decks, flooring, turned items, musical instruments, wooden toys and wooden boats and can be used for impregnating fabrics and even masonry. Tung oil is absorbed by wooden surfaces very quickly and hardens them after it has dried, making them mechanically stronger and highly water-resistant. It provides approximately twice as much protection as linseed oil. It deepens col-



ours and enhances the contrast of the grain, but the wood retains its natural visual and tactile characteristics. The protective film is elastic, even in the long term, and, in contrast to linseed oil, darkens very little. The surfaces can be refreshed or repaired by applying a new coat. Ligne can be applied without any problems, even in multiple coats, using either a brush or a piece of cloth, and can be thinned with turpentine or mixed with other vegetable oils (e.g. linseed or camellia oil) depending on the user's preference.

1 l  
No. 705286  
5 l  
No. 705283



A



B

### B POPPY SEED OIL

Colour-true:  
Food safe oil extracted from the seeds of the white poppy flower (Papaver somniferum) is ideal for fine craftwork objects, turned parts, toys, kitchen furniture and kitchen utensils. Because of its good grip, it is suitable for knife and tool handles and, along with pigments, for making valuable paint oils and artists' colours. The high transparency of poppy seed oil makes it the perfect base for violin varnishes and clear protective wood finishes. It provides excellent protection against moisture and dirt, does not yellow, and penetrates deeply into the wood. Poppy seed oil dries much slower than linseed oil. Multiple coats of poppy seed oil yield a warm, silky gloss and a surface which is pleasant to the touch. Poppy seed oil can be mixed with other vegetable oils and solvents.

1 l  
No. 705272



1



2

### C PURE ORANGE OIL

Natural diluting and cleaning agent: Low-viscosity orange oil from the peel of the sweet orange, ideal for thinning vegetable-based protective wood oils, and its grease dissolving properties make it a useful household cleaner. Mixing 1-5 % of it with a linseed or tung oil finish markedly improves penetration, facilitates application and lends these oils a refreshing aroma. In combination with carnauba wax or beeswax, it can make a variety of agents for cleaning and caring for wooden surfaces, antiques and leather. Orange oil is also suited for use as aromatic oil.

*Flammable liquid and vapour. May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways. Causes skin irritation. May cause an allergic skin reaction. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

1 250 ml  
No. 705277  
2 1 l  
No. 705278

The wood grain, and especially the contrast between side grain and end grain is further enhanced on surfaces that have been treated with oil. The picture shows an ash table top by Charles Beresford with tenons mortised through, primed with shellac and finished with two layers of tung oil with 5 % orange oil.



## Pine Tar

One of the oldest wood preservatives from Sweden, ideal as paintwork for houses, shingles, fences, equipment, sleds and boats. This wood tar is obtained by the pyrolysis and careful distillation of resin-rich pine rootstock. Because of its long drying time, it penetrates deep into the wood, lends it a beautiful patina, and gives it lasting protection against the effects of weather. The relatively viscous Furutjåra, but also the Dalbränd Tjåra can be diluted with turpentine oil or linseed oil. Because of its strongly smoky aroma, we only recommend it for use outdoors.

*May cause an allergic skin reaction. Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*



untreated

treated

### D FURUTJÅRA® PINE TAR

Basic protection against UV radiation and weathering. Suitable for treating large surfaces (walls, roofs, fences). This wood tar is pitch black. Due to its high viscosity, it does not penetrate deeply into the wood.

1 l No. 705347  
5 l No. 705349

DALBRÄND TJÅRA® FINE PINE TAR  
Intensive protection against UV radiation and weathering. Suitable for treating large surfaces (walls, roofs, fences). This wood tar is black. Due to its moderate viscosity, it penetrates well into the wood.

1 l No. 705351  
5 l No. 705352



D



FINTJÅRA® DELUXE PINE TAR  
Highest protection against UV radiation and weathering. Suitable for small surfaces or parts such as doors or window frames. This wood tar is dark brown. Due to its low viscosity, it penetrates very well into the wood.

1 l No. 705341  
5 l No. 705342



E

1

2

### E TURPENTINE OIL

Solvent with ethereal aroma:  
One of the most valuable solvents on a natural basis, ideal for thinning vegetable oils, oil paints and varnishes as well as for making glazes and polishes with resins, waxes or pigments. This low-viscosity oil, obtained by double-distilling the resin of the maritime pine tree, is colourless and has a fresh, ethereal aroma.

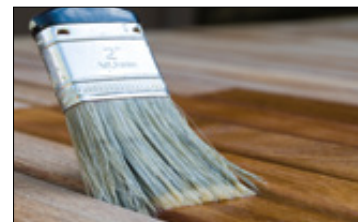
*Flammable liquid and vapour. Harmful if swallowed. Harmful in contact with skin. Harmful if inhaled. Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause an allergic skin reaction. May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

1 100 l  
No. 705293  
2 1 l  
No. 705288



## ASUSO® Nature Line (NL)

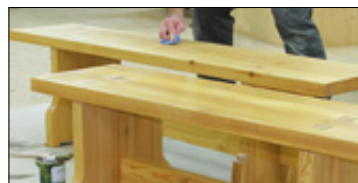
- Refines and protects heavy-duty surfaces of wood
- Penetrates the material deeply with a water-repellent finish for good protection against dirt and water; the wood is protected from the inside and thus retains its warm and natural feel
- Easy to renovate, partial areas can be repaired or renewed seamlessly, scratches and dents can be easily sanded down and retreated
- Open-pored surface allows the material to breathe and creates a positive atmosphere in a room; healthy, diffusible and free from electrostatic charge (important for those with dust allergies)
- The waxed grain is emphasised and accentuated; a natural patina gives the wood a vivid texture and aesthetically pleasing appearance



A

**A ASUSO® NL HARD OIL WAX, WATER-REPELLENT**

A combination of the good qualities of vegetable hard oil and the characteristics of natural waxes. Protects heavy-wear surfaces of wood, ideal for floors and other daily-used indoor surfaces. The fine wax layer makes the surface especially easy to clean. We recommend to use



Asuso NL Hard Oil as a priming coat. Easy to apply, quick-drying. Coated surfaces can already be used after approx. 24 hours.

Coverage 50-80 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat.

750 ml

Satin gloss

**No. 810062**

Silk matt

**No. 810060**



B

**B ASUSO® NL HARD OIL, WATER-REPELLENT**

This hard oil easily penetrates the material to create elastic-hard, heavy-duty surfaces. It refines and protects heavy-wear surfaces of wood, stone and cork and is also ideal for floors, work surfaces and other daily-used surfaces (even outdoors if water can run off freely). And you do not have to deresinate the wood beforehand, as the hard-oil contains a resin solvent. Easy to apply, quick-drying. Coated surfaces can already be used after approx. 24 hours. Coverage 80-120 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat.

*Repeated exposure may cause skin dryness or cracking. May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways.*

750 ml

**No. 810064**

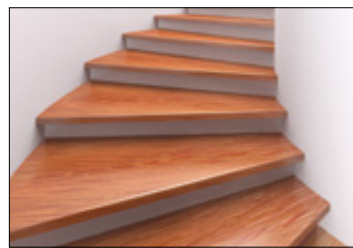
► For a Brush Buddy incl. brush see p. 290.



C

**C ASUSO® NL SPECIAL OIL**

Easily penetrates into the pores and provides an elastic-hard, wear-resistant and natural surface finish for untreated and stripped wood such as parquet floors, cork, stairs, walls, furniture and other interior wood. For floors and normal to heavy-duty use. Breathable impregnation



based on linseed oil, sunflower oil, safflower oil, soy bean oil and carnauba wax. Highly resistant to dirt, water and wear. Full material declaration without chemical additives. Hard-dry after 12-24 hours. Coverage 60-120 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat.

750 ml

**No. 810071**



D

**D ASUSO® NL MAINTENANCE OIL**

For extra maintenance of oiled/waxed surfaces that are exposed to extreme use. Significantly improves the surface hardness and resilience, cleans and maintains. For entrance areas, walkways, doorways, desk surfaces, handle areas etc. Natural fat solvents dissolve dirt particles, grease, water and alcohol stains, which are then removed with a pad or cloth. Evens out scratches and marks. Coverage 20-40 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat.

*Repeated exposure may cause skin dryness or cracking. May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways. Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

750 ml

**No. 810067**



G



E

**E ASUSO® NL HARD OIL HIGH SOLID, WATER-REPELLENT**

Since this oil contains up to 95 % solids, you will only need one coat, saving you time and money. The thick oil lends an opulent feel and keeps the open-pored structure of the surface material. It refines and protects stressed surfaces of wood, open-pored stone and cork and is thus ideal for floors, work surfaces and other used surfaces (even outdoors if water can run off freely). There is no need to deresinify the wood beforehand, as the hard oil contains resin solvents. Coated surfaces can be walked on after approx. 72 hours. Very economical. Coverage, 25-30 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat.

*Contains 2-Butanonoxim. May produce an allergic reaction.*

750 ml

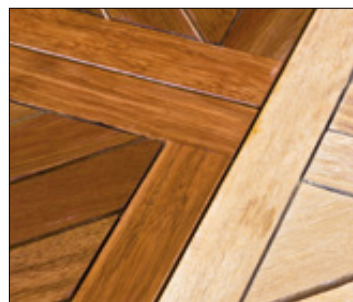
**No. 810059**



F

**F ASUSO® NL BANGKIRAI TEAK AND LARCH OIL**

For basic treatment and care of garden furniture, pergolas, hardwood terraces and anywhere outdoors where water can run off freely. Also suitable for fungicide-treated surfaces. Gives the wood a wear-resistant surface and beautiful bangkirai-colour emphasises the grain. The ready-to-use oil is an odourless, diffusible and UV-proof natural refiner made from vegetable oil, balsamic resins, ferrous oxides and isoparaffin. The dyestuffs of the oil are specially designed for bangkirai, but the dark pigmented oil can also be used on other types of wood, such as oak and ash, to obtain a slightly darker hue. Suitable for interior and exterior use. Touch-dry after approx. 1.5 hours, hard-dry after



24 hours. Coverage 40-50 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat.

*Repeated exposure may cause skin dryness or cracking. May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways. Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

750 ml

Colour

Teak

**No. 810068**

Larch

**No. 810069**

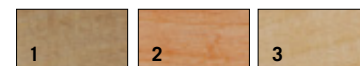
Bangkirai

**No. 810070**

**G MAINTENANCE OIL FOR KNIFE AND TOOL HANDLES**  
Ideal for all hard and exotic woods, for the treatment of knife and tool handles or rifle stocks. Made of high-quality oils; does not contain any substances that require labelling. The open-pored surface protects against moisture and preserves precious woods.



The oil has a slight colouring effect and highlights the grain of the wood. Easy to apply and quick-drying. 100 ml



Colour

1 Maroon

**No. 810133**

2 Coralline

**No. 810134**

3 Sienna

**No. 810135**



A

#### A RUSTINS DANISH OIL

A mixture of natural resins, natural oils and tung oil, Danish Oil penetrates the wood deeply and offers long-lasting, water-repellent wood protection. Suitable

for all raw wood surfaces - both indoors and outdoors - that are to be sealed naturally and kept open-pored. Can also be used on dyed and stained surfaces. This oil is a particular favourite of woodturners. Easy to apply, dries through quickly. Drying time 4-8 hours. Coverage 70 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat. Satin gloss.

*Repeated exposure may cause skin dryness or cracking. Flammable liquid and vapour. May cause drowsiness or dizziness. May cause an allergic skin reaction. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

500 ml  
No. 705296  
1 l  
No. 705297



#### B RUSTINS TEAK OIL, FOOD-SAFE

The teak oil from Rustins is food-safe and therefore ideal for food containers and children's toys. It gives a hard-wearing surface and a velvety shine to the wood. The ready-for-use oil is low on odour and diffusable. It is suitable for interior and protected outdoor spaces (table surfaces). Drying time approx. 4-6 hours. Coverage 70 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat.

B



*Flammable liquid and vapour. May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways. May cause an allergic skin reaction. May cause drowsiness or dizziness.*

250 ml  
No. 810224  
1000 ml  
No. 810225

## Le Tonkinois



Le Tonkinois is an ecologically safe oil varnish that has been approved by the French navy for use on their boats. Le Tonkinois provides excellent protection from moisture and is suitable for both indoor and outdoor use. This makes it ideal not only for furniture in the house but also for wood lagging, windows and external doors as well as garden furniture. The oil varnish is applied with a brush in several coats with intermediate sanding, similar to stains, and should be renewed after about 1-2 years (depending on

weather conditions). We recommend diluting Le Tonkinois with turpentine oil for the first coat. Detailed application instructions are provided.

- Also suitable for extreme weather conditions
- Enhances the natural features of the wood
- Allows both glossy and matt finishes
- Easy application
- Damaged varnish is easy to repair
- Recoat possible after 24 hours

C



#### C LE TONKINOIS OIL VARNISH, COLOURLESS

Linseed oil has been used to protect wood and metal for centuries. Le Tonkinois natural oil varnish only contains linseed oil of the highest purity. This oil is pressed using a manual process that has endured for more than 100 years, and is refined at 270 °C. Tung oil is added to the final product to make the surface even more water-resistant and durable. Le Tonkinois does not contain any aromatic, volatile, chlorinated or harmful solvents or chemical UV stabilizers. Coverage 40-50 ml/m<sup>2</sup> per coat. 500 ml  
No. 810086  
1 l  
No. 810087

D



**D MATTING AGENT FOR LE TONKINOIS OIL VARNISH, 250 ML**  
This matting agent is added to the Le Tonkinois oil varnish for the last coat to produce a satin gloss or silk matt sheen. 250 ml  
No. 810088

## Waxes

#### E ANTIQUE WAX

Pore-filling antique wax paste for coloured highlighting of exposed wood pores or creating antique effects (black-brown patina). Based on beeswax and carnauba wax. Also for creating an antique effect on gold-plated surfaces.

*Repeated exposure may cause skin dryness or cracking.*

300 ml  
No. 727639

E



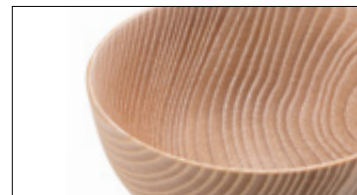
#### F LIMING WAX

Pore-filling liming wax paste for coloured highlighting of exposed wood pores. The best results are achieved on coarse-pored woods such as ash or oak. Based on beeswax and carnauba wax.

*Repeated exposure may cause skin dryness or cracking.*

375 ml  
No. 727640

F



## WORKSHOP

### WOOD SURFACES: TREATING THEM RIGHT!

#### Content:

In this course you will work out suitable finishings on samples which you can then use for your individual wood projects!

#### You will learn:

- Colouring, staining and glazing
- Oiling, waxing and varnishing
- Polishing with shellac, cellulose and nitro

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)





A

### A DICTUM® HOLZBALSAM »WAX FOR PRESERVING WOOD«

Completely natural: Hard wax for wood maintenance. Contains a high percentage of all-natural beeswax. HolzBalsam contains pure natural ingredients which preserve the wood. It is free of chemical substances, mineral oil derivatives and drying activators. The ideal natural preserver for toys, kitchen equipment, turned wooden objects, wooden furniture, wooden floors, carved items and all handicraft objects. Valuable natural

substances underline the beauty of a wooden surface with a silky smooth touch. The pleasant smelling balm made of ingredients such as beeswax, carnauba wax, linseed oil, tung oil and orange oil not only preserves normal wooden surfaces. It is easily spread on cork, smooth leather and metal for protection against moisture.

300 g  
**No. 705350**



B

**B RUSTINS SANDING SEALER**  
Rustins Sanding Sealer is a quick-acting, shellac-based product. It is significantly thicker than shellac, and one coat is usually sufficient. It is therefore suitable as a fast-drying base for shellac, but also for subsequent oiling or waxing. The Sanding Sealer is pore-filling if allowed to sink in on a slowly rotating lathe and then ground in with a fine abrasive during drying. The created dust serves as a pore filler. The Sanding Sealer has also established itself as an independent finishing product, with the produced surface resembling the waxy feel of shellac.

*Highly flammable liquid and vapour.*

300 ml  
**No. 810223**



C

**C KIRJES® NATURAL OIL WAX**  
Accentuates the natural beauty of the wood and protects it from moisture and contamination. The wax of the common bearberry (*Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*) makes Swedish oil wax one of the top-quality organic wood preservatives. Further components include beeswax and Swedish linseed oil. It is free from chemicals and solvents.

300 g  
**No. 705356**



D

### D RICE BRAN WAX

High hardness, excellent miscibility: Rice bran wax (*Oryza Sativa* Bran Wax) is a binder for oils that is superior to all other waxes and is therefore ideal for oil/wax mixtures. The raw rice oil produced for food and cosmetics production contains only about 4-6 % wax. It is correspondingly complex to obtain larger quantities of this wax as a by-product. However, the extraordinary combination of extreme hardness and excellent miscibility make it indispensable for wear-resistant ecological surface agents without additives (emulsifiers). Melting point 77-82 °C.

500 g  
**No. 714197**  
1 kg  
**No. 714198**



E

### E PURE BEESWAX GRANULATE

Protective and fragrant: The traditional wood polishing and preservative agent for hard-wearing surfaces with a silky gloss. The exudate of honeybees has been used since time immemorial for the care and conservation of wood surfaces and as a filler and adhesive. In its pure form, applied after being heated slightly (max. 70 °C), it penetrates raw wood surfaces well. Mixing with oil or alcohol can produce pasty or liquid polishes or cleaning solutions for furniture care.

500 g  
**No. 810006**  
1 kg  
**No. 810007**



F

### F CARNAUBA WAX

The hardest wax: For particularly wear-resistant, glossy final polishing. Can also be used as a lubricant for sliding wooden parts and as corrosion protection for metal surfaces. The wax of the Brazilian carnauba palm is distinguished by its great hardness and good physiological compatibility. The wax offered is unbleached and has a melting point of approx. 90 °C.

500 g  
**No. 810009**  
1 kg  
**No. 810010**



G

### G PARAFFIN WAX

Colour-true and water-resistant: Transparent wax for sealing cross-grained wood surfaces, for application while turning on a lathe, for mixing with beeswax, as preservative protection for wood and metals, and for lubricating sliding mating parts. Extracted from mineral oil, colourless and odourless, solvent-free and highly water-resistant.

1 kg  
**No. 810016**

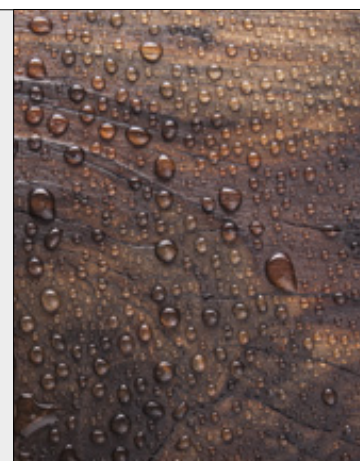
### Oil-wax mixture

500 ml linseed oil, 500 ml oil, 50 g rice bran wax.

Heat raw linseed oil to 80 °C and add rice bran wax. After the rice bran wax is dissolved, stir in the oil. After cooling, rub into the wood using a lot of pressure. Intermediate sanding is possible after two days. Additional coats are applied in the same way.



For information on application techniques see our Finishing Primer which you can download free of charge on [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





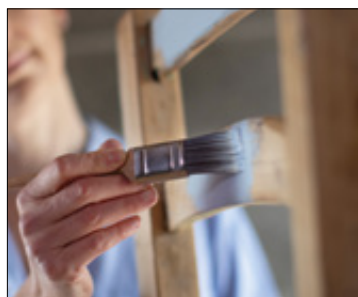
## Milk Paints



A

### A OLD-FASHIONED MILK PAINTS

Environment-friendly, absolutely non-toxic and incredibly versatile: These milk paints are environment-friendly and non-toxic. The paints made from vegetable/rock flours and milk casein are completely organic and biodegradable. They are supplied in powder form and can be stored unopened for an unlimited period. The rich colours are long-lasting and do not fade. To mix, simply add water to the powder. All of the colours



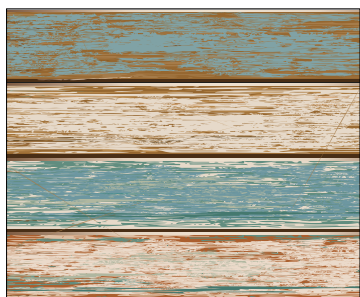
can be mixed with one another and the transparency of the colour can be adjusted by adding water. The colours are matt but can be polished to a gloss-look. Ideal for children's toys, turned objects, furniture coatings and colour effects, as well as for do-it-yourself Shaker and vintage furniture.

### Cover coating application

- On untreated, dust-free wood or with Extra-Bond No. 727560 on fine-pored woods or varnished, waxed surfaces
- Good abrasion resistance and moisture resistance with additional protection provided by a wax top layer
- Surfaces susceptible to penetrating water and dirt should be sealed with Sealer for Milk Paints No. 727572

### Vintage look

- Without Extra Bond on surfaces that have been treated (with varnish, wax, etc.)
- Cracks and imperfections can occur; these are typical with a vintage/antique look



### Pore-filler

- On untreated, dust-free wood
- Apply the paint, then sand the surface after drying

One pack (170 g) covers an approx. 3.3 m<sup>2</sup> surface area.

170 g

- 1 *barn red*  
No. 727540
- 2 *salem red*  
No. 727541
- 3 *pumpkin*  
No. 727542
- 4 *marigold yellow*  
No. 727543
- 5 *mustard*  
No. 727544
- 6 *tavern green*  
No. 727546
- 7 *lexington-green*  
No. 727547
- 8 *sea green*  
No. 727548
- 9 *federal blue*  
No. 727549
- 10 *soldier blue*  
No. 727550
- 11 *slate*  
No. 727551
- 12 *pitch black*  
No. 727552
- 13 *buttermilk*  
No. 727553
- 14 *oyster white*  
No. 727554
- 15 *snow white*  
No. 727555
- 16 *light cream*  
No. 727556
- 17 *salmon*  
No. 727559



B

### B SEALER FOR MILK PAINTS

Transparent surface sealer for milk paints, protects the surface from moisture. Mildew-proof and odourless, preserves the soft, matt look of milk paints. Can be used with milk paints No. 727540-59. 946 ml No. 727572



C

### C EXTRA-BOND FOR OLD-FASHIONED MILK PAINT

It is used in combination with milk paint No. 727540-59 to provide a good hold on varnished/waxed surfaces or very fine-pored woods (if the antique effect is not desired). Also suitable for glass, metal, stoneware and plastic substrates. Water-based polymer emulsion, non-toxic, hypoallergenic and VOC-free. 473 ml No. 727560

## Resins

### Shellac

The highly skilled finish surface technique:

French polishing is an incomparable technique to bring out the beauty of the wood. It creates a mechanically wear-resistant, physiologically compatible surface that does not become brittle and is of constant colour. The resin, an exudate of an East Indian scale insect, has been known since time immemorial as one of the best materials for making clear wood finishes. Shellac is notable for its hardness, transparency and

bonding strength. Its excellent insulative properties make it the substance of choice for use in traditional gilding (as a primer coat and fixative). For most applications, the shellac flakes are generally dissolved in alcohol and applied using either a cloth rubbing pad or brush in several coats. The shellac flakes offered here are highly pure, dewaxed and can be mixed to create a specifically desired tone or effect.



D

### D ASTRA SHELLAC

Bleached, highly transparent shellac, for clear polishes. 250 g No. 810030 1 kg No. 810031



E

### E KOMET SHELLAC

Orange-coloured shellac for polishes that display a slight tinge. 250 g No. 810034 1 kg No. 810035



F

### F SUPERIOR SHELLAC

Reddish shellac for polishing with marked toning and for accentuating the grain. 250 g No. 810037 1 kg No. 810038

### EINFÜHRUNG IN DIE SCHELLACK-POLITUR

In this training film, an expert shares with us the knowledge of the finest form of surface treatment as acquired by him over many years. Peter Zehmisch explains the materials and the individual operations (priming, basic polishing, cover polishing, polishing out scratches, and fine polishing). DVD, 21 minutes. In German. No. 713736



**A LIQUID SHELLAC**

Liquid shellac with optimum mix ratio for instant application. Our liquid shellac consists of ultra-clean, dewaxed shellac flakes and pure ethanol (alcohol 96 %). The liquid shellac is especially recommended when working on smaller objects, restorations and repairs because it is easy to dispense and does not require time-consuming preparation.

Storage life at least 12 months from purchase. 250 ml

*Highly flammable liquid and vapour. Causes serious eye irritation.*

Colour  
**1** Astra  
**No. 810032**  
**2** Komet  
**No. 810033**  
**3** Superior  
**No. 810036**

**B DICTUM® »SHELLAC« FINISHING SET WITH DVD, 3-PIECE SET**

Practical, complete set for French polishing; ideal for beginners. The premixed shellac is decoloured and can also be used for bright surfaces. The polishing cloths are especially designed for shellac application. The lint-free, finely woven cloths are ideal as an outer material for the pads used to apply the shellac. As inner material, we recommend simple cotton rags. The included DVD in German describes materials, techniques and the individual work steps of French polishing in detail.

Contains:

- Lint-free polishing cloth of fine yarn, 10 pieces
- Liquid Shellac, Astra, 250 ml (No. 810032)
- DVD »Einführung in die Schellackpolitur« (No. 713736)

*Highly flammable liquid and vapour. Causes serious eye irritation.*

**No. 810053**

**French polishing: DICTUM's finishing tips in cooperation with Garrett Hack****How do I mix the shellac?***Mixing the stock solution*

For quick availability, we recommend that you mix a liquid stock solution with alcohol (pure ethanol, min. 96 %, No. 810039, see page 287). Depending on the temperature, it may take 2-3 days until the resin is fully dissolved. Make sure you stir the solution thoroughly several times a day.

*Stock solution*

To obtain about a litre of stock solution, we recommend mixing 370 g shellac with 765 ml alcohol. The stock solution is later filtered for application and diluted until it has the consistency of water. This is usually done intuitively and strongly depends on the quality and age of the shellac. For half a litre, we recommend approximate quantities of 160 ml stock solution and 340 ml alcohol. Wine or apothecary bottles are best for storage because the metal lids of glass jars may react with the shellac.

**Vide** For more information on French polishing watch our video »Shellac Polishing by Garrett Hack«.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**C****C PUMICE POWDER**

Fine polishing powder for intermediate grinding, e.g. in French polishing or as a pore filler (is transparent with shellac). Pure silicate rocks. Applied with water or liquid paraffin. 250 g

**No. 810050**

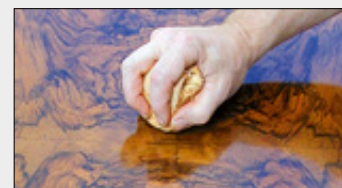


► For Rustins Sanding Sealer, a pore filler for French polishing, see page 284.

**WORKSHOP****FRENCH POLISHING**

What is shellac? Its types and how to use it optimally.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

**D NATURAL FINISHING SUPPLIES STARTER KIT, 11-PIECE SET Price advantage!**

Basic set with great price advantage consisting of natural oils, waxes and resins for mixing your own finishes. An attached brochure guides through the process. Delivered with a rectangular brush that has genuine bristles for easy application.

Set contains:

- Linolja Swedish linseed oil (No. 705275) 1 l
- Lignea tung oil (No. 705286) 1 l
- Turpentine oil (No. 705288) 1 l
- Pure orange oil (No. 705277) 250 ml
- Sinensis camellia oil (No. 705280) 100 ml
- Rectangular oil brush (No. 706184), width 50 mm
- Pure beeswax granulate (No. 810006) 500 g
- Carnauba wax (No. 810009) 500 g
- Benzoin (No. 810023) 100 g
- Alkanet root (No. 810024) 100 g
- Komet shellac (No. 810034) 250 g
- Finishing Primer (in German)

*Flammable liquid and vapour. Harmful if swallowed. Harmful in contact with skin. Harmful if inhaled. Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause an allergic skin reaction. May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

**No. 705299**







A

**A BENZOIN**

Captivating aroma:

Benzoin processed into paint is traditionally used as a glossy polished covering on shellac surfaces or high-quality oil-varnished surfaces. The pure benzoin almond offered here is obtained by cutting into the bark of Siamese Styrax trees

and removing the exuded and hardened resin. Benzoin is an aromatic resin of medium hardness. Because of its agreeable, vanilla-like aroma, it is also used in the manufacture of perfumes, aromatic oils, incense and ointments.

100 g  
**No. 810023**

**Benzoin tincture**

For further use, the benzoin is dissolved in hot (approx. 60 °C) alcohol (No. 810039). Then the solution is filtered. 55 g benzoin are mixed with 100 ml alcohol.

**Benzoin/tung oil mixture**

950 ml tung oil, 50 ml benzoin tincture

## Synthetic Finishing Products

**B GOLDFINGER METALLIC PASTES**

Pastes for metallic effects, such as accents or shimmers. They can also be used as pore fillers or to produce opaque finishes. The paste is applied with a cloth or simply with the fingertip and can be polished after a short drying time. It creates very even surfaces. Ideal for porous or slightly roughened surfaces of wood, plaster, leather or textiles.

50 ml

Colour

1 iridescent violet

**No. 727606**

2 copper

**No. 727610**

3 silver

**No. 727607**

4 gold

**No. 727608**

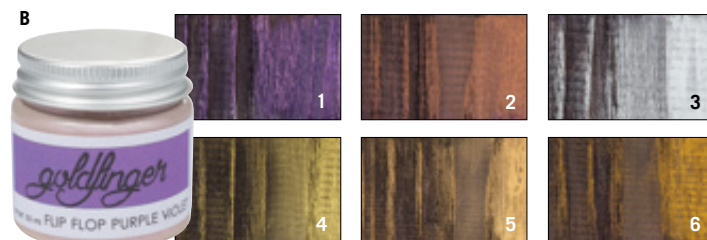
5 antique gold

**No. 727609**

6 renaissance gold

**No. 727611**

B

**C PEGMA® COLOUR**

»WOODSUNBLOCK« 1L

Optimum protection against yellowing, darkening and greying of wood. Maple, spruce and other light woods, but also walnut, have a strong tendency to yellow. This wood sunblock is excellent at preserving the initial, natural colour of the processed wood. Especially in furniture making, this sunblock has been used successfully for many years and is suitable for all common types of wood used indoors. One thin coat and your wood will remain light and naturally beautiful. For use on furniture, parquet floorings, doors and windows. After at least 24 hours' drying time you can give the wood further treatment with oil, varnish, lacquer, or stain. Coverage approx. 50-100 ml/m<sup>2</sup> (depending on wood type and surface). Eco-friendly and harmless to health.

**No. 810140**

C

**D CLOURETHAN® ONE-COMPONENT LACQUER, 1L**

Heavy-duty, well-filling one-component lacquer based on urethane alkyd for sealing stairs and wooden floors as well as doors and furniture. Ideal for surface mixtures with oils. Highly resistant to water, oil, grease and alcohol. Free of aromatic compounds and complies with European VOC Decopaint guidelines.

*Repeated exposure may cause skin dryness or cracking. Flammable liquid and vapour. May cause drowsiness or dizziness.*

**No. 716251**

D



E

**E ETHANOL (ALCOHOL) 96 %, 1 L**

This pure alcohol is suitable for dissolving and diluting shellac and other resins as well as for brush cleaning. The product is denatured and therefore not suitable for human consumption. Due to the denaturing agent that has been used, our alcohol is also suitable for gilding (it does not cloud if mixed with water).

*Highly flammable liquid and vapour. Causes serious eye irritation.*

**No. 810039****Sam Maloof's oil/lacquer mixture**

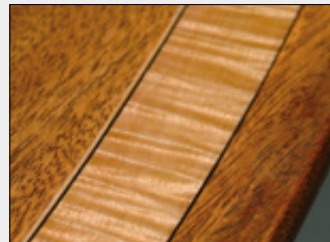
Mixing lacquer and oil at first sounds impossible, but furniture maker Sam Maloof has used exactly this mix for many of his projects. We have analysed the information in his book and, after much testing, found the right ingredients.

The mixture has the following advantages:

- Easy to apply
- Looks and feels similar to an oiled surface
- Highly resistant to water and acid stains (red wine, vinegar)

330 ml linseed oil, 330 ml tung oil  
330 ml Clouretan (No. 716251)

For fast drying, we recommend warming up raw linseed oil (55 °C) or using cold-bleached linseed oil. Once you have mixed all the ingredients together well, simply rub the mixture into the wood using plenty of pressure. Intermediate sanding is possible after two days. Additional coats are applied in the same way.

**OBERFLÄCHENBEHANDLUNG VON HOLZ**

Sam Allen: Classic techniques and recipes. Surface treatment not only makes wood easy to care for, it also enhances its beauty. Sam Allen provides all the comprehensive and very practical traditional methods, such as French polishing, painting, oiling and waxing, grinding, pickling and varnishing. 128 pages, hardcover, 165 colour illustrations, 210 x 255 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713739**







A

#### A ECOLOGIX® PEELAWAY PAINT REMOVER

PeelAway is a new CHC-free (dichloromethane-free) paint remover and de-coater from the boatbuilding industry, that is also ideal for stripping paint from pieces of furniture. Its unique formula makes PeelAway ideal for removing several coats of dispersion paints, house paints, one- and two-component paints, acrylic paints and carpet glue. After applying the product, the surface is covered with the supplied foil blanket. This prevents the product from drying out and makes it more effective, penetrating the coats of paint so that they can be stripped with a spatula. Comes with foil



blanket (1 m<sup>2</sup> per kg of product) and handbook. Coverage approx. 250 g/m<sup>2</sup> with thin coatings such as varnishes.

- Easy application with spatula, brush or airless spray system
- Removes 95 % of all types of coating
- Odourless and more eco-friendly than normal paint removers
- No neutralising required

*Physical properties: Storage life min. 9 months from purchase. Harmful if swallowed.*

750 g  
**No. 450505**  
4 kg  
**No. 450506**  
10 kg  
**No. 450507**

## DICTUM® Spirit Stains

Quick-drying solvent-based wood stain with lightfast colour pigments. These stains do not cause the wood fibres to stand up. They can be used to add colour to nitro lacquers, spirit varnishes and acid-curing paints. These stains come in high-quality glass bottles, so - unlike with plastic bottles - there is no danger of the solvent element dissolving any plastic. This guarantees long-lasting impermeability and longer durability of the stains.

The colours can be mixed with each other or brightened by adding a thinner. Dilute with cellulose thinner or ethanol (alcohol) 96 %. Create special effects like soft colour transitions by dissolving the stain with a thinner. For untreated wood surfaces only, it produces a »negative« stain effect. Drying time 10-15 minutes at 20 °C. Apply with a brush or cloth, spray on or immerse.

*May cause drowsiness or dizziness. Causes serious eye irritation. Highly flammable liquid and vapour.*



#### B DICTUM® SPIRIT STAINS STANDARD COLOURS

Primary and secondary colours, suitable for the coloured design of wood surfaces. 250 ml

Colour

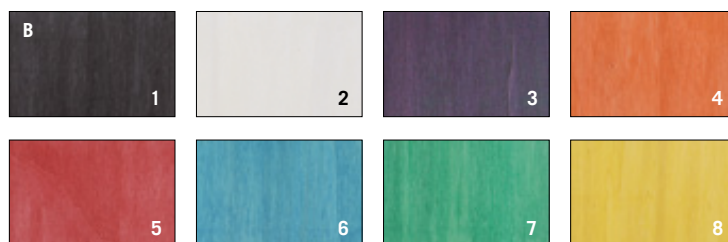
- 1 black  
**No. 810175**
- 2 white  
**No. 810174**
- 3 purple  
**No. 810173**

Colour

- 4 orange  
**No. 810172**
- 5 red  
**No. 810171**
- 6 blue  
**No. 810170**
- 7 green  
**No. 810169**
- 8 yellow  
**No. 810168**

DICTUM® SPIRIT STAINS, STANDARD COLOURS, 8-PIECE SET  
8 bottles, each containing 30 ml,

colours: blue, green, orange, purple, red, yellow, white, black.  
**No. 810150**



#### C DICTUM® SPIRIT STAINS, WOOD SHADES

For staining light-coloured wood, e.g. to match wood colours when replacing single wood elements and for restoration purposes. 250 ml

Colour

- 1 walnut  
**No. 810190**
- 2 brown oak  
**No. 810189**

Colour

- 3 light oak  
**No. 810191**
- 4 gold oak  
**No. 810188**
- 5 medium oak  
**No. 810187**
- 6 wenge  
**No. 810184**
- 7 dark jacobean  
**No. 810186**
- 8 antique pine  
**No. 810185**

DICTUM® SPIRIT STAINS,  
WOOD SHADES, 8-PIECE SET  
8 bottles, each containing 30 ml, colours: wenge, light oak, medium oak,

golden oak, brown oak, walnut, antique pine, dark jacobean.  
**No. 810152**



► For the Airbush System Mouth Atomizer see page 290.

## Brushes and Accessories

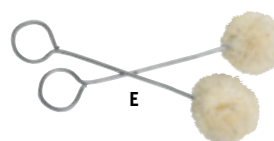
D



**D HABICO SPIRIT VARNISH BRUSH**  
As an esteemed German manufacturer of finest artist brushes, Habico has developed special brushes for violin makers. These slim brushes feature short hair to ensure finest and even lacquer layers. Many years of experience enable Habico to offer appropriate brush hair types for

different kinds of spirit and oil varnishes. Flat brush, pure Kolinsky red sable hair, stainless steel ferrule, wooden handle. Width 30 mm  
Overall length 185-195 mm  
**No. 706104**

E



**E PROFESSIONAL APPLICATORS, 20-PIECE SET**  
The applicator is soft, does not lose any hair and is resistant to chemical agents,

making it ideal for applying liquid media precisely and evenly.  
**No. 708541**



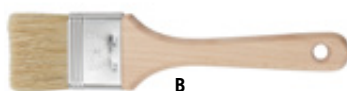
#### A FINE-HAIR BRUSHES

Fine-hair brush made in Germany. For applying high-grade shellac, violin varnishes and watercolours. Dense mix of fine hair (goat-Bonnie). Nickel-plated ferrule, beech handle. Overall length 185-190 mm  
Width  
13 mm **No. 706109**  
25 mm **No. 706110**  
38 mm **No. 706111**  
50 mm **No. 706112**



#### B RECTANGULAR OIL BRUSH

Made in Germany, this brush with rectangular head is suitable for oils and linseed oil paint, thanks to its mix of pure Chinese bristles. Nickel-plated ferrule, wooden handle. Width 50 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
**No. 706184**



#### C VARNISHING BRUSH

Basic varnishing brush made in Germany. For applying paints, oil varnish, pine tar or similar. Black China bristles. Nickel-plated ferrule, wooden handle. Width 50 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
**No. 706154**



#### D WISTOBA VARNISHING BRUSHES

Made in Germany, professional quality for 100 years. High-quality brush with full bristle structure ensuring the brush loads well with paint and has a long life. Ideal for applying solvent-based varnishes, glazes, oil varnishes and paints. Black

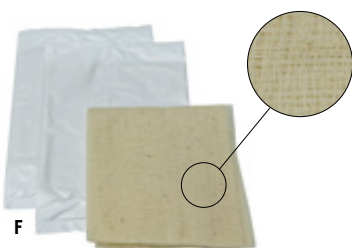
Chinese bristles, stainless brass ferrule, lacquered wooden handle, easy to clean. Overall length 220 mm  
Width  
30 mm **No. 706238**  
50 mm **No. 706233**



#### E WISTOBA VARNISHING BRUSHES, TOP QUALITY

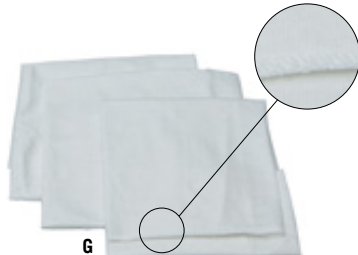
Made in Germany, professional quality for 100 years. This paintbrush has extra full, chisel-shaped bristles for perfect, even paint application and long service life. Excellent for applying solvent-based varnishes, glazes, oil varnishes and

paints. Black Chinese bristles, stainless steel ferrule, lacquered wooden handle, easy to clean. Overall length 220 mm  
Width  
30 mm **No. 706241**  
50 mm **No. 706234**



#### F DUST REMOVAL CLOTHS, 3-PIECE SET

Used to remove dust, dirt, and grinding dust before surface applications. Impregnated with resin, these cloths only require a single wipe to remove even the finest of particles that may otherwise disturb the look of a finished surface layer, while leaving no residue on the treated surface. The cloths can be used multiple times, provided they are stored in an airtight container or a different packaging that protects them against drying out. 420 x 200 mm.  
**No. 810027**



**G LINT-FREE POLISHING CLOTHS WITH SEWN EDGE, 3-PIECE SET**  
Square-shaped cut polishing cloth that is excellent for the application of oils and waxes. The woven cloth structure almost entirely prevents lint formation, enabling perfect surface application. 100 % cotton.  
300 x 300 mm.  
**No. 810028**



#### H LINT-FREE POLISHING CLOTHS MADE OF FINE YARN, 50-PIECE SET

This square polishing cloth is woven of the finest yarn, and is therefore extremely durable and one hundred percent lint-free. These properties make it the ideal exterior material for use as a pad in French polishing, as well as an excellent cloth to apply oils and waxes. 100 % cotton.  
260 x 260 mm.  
**No. 810029**



#### I PACKING AND POLISHING TUBE

Highly absorbent, ideal filling material for a rubbing pad used in French polishing. The finely woven material is also perfect for the careful packing of sensitive parts and tools thanks to its tubular shape and toughness. Terry-cloth-like fabric, 100 % cotton. Overall length 20 m  
**No. 810008**

**J STOPLOSSBAG®, 4-PIECE SET**  
Prevents surface agents from drying out: Wood varnish hardens in cans and jars due to evaporation, oxidation and moisture. The emptier the container, the faster the surface agent hardens. StopLossBags help you to store your expensive paints and varnishes safely so that they stay fresh. By squeezing excess air out of the bag and putting the closure back on, your finish will last a very long time. This means you can use every drop of the finish, saving you time, money and frustration.  
1 l  
**No. 727912**



**K STOPLOSSBAG® REPLACEMENT CAPS, 4-PIECE SET**  
Fits No. 727912.  
**No. 727914**



**L STOPLOSSBAG® FILLING SPOUT**  
It is particularly flexible, making it possible to put the rubber funnel over a standard litre can and thus fill the StopLossBags without spilling.  
**No. 727913**



► *Linseed oil soap for cleaning brushes see page 280.*

**A BRUSH BUDDY INCL. BRUSH**  
Transparent lid for 750 ml and 1 litre cans with integrated adjustment of the brush position. No more tedious washing or drying-out of the brush when you interrupt your work. Simply insert the brush through the rubber membrane of the Brush Buddy and close the can with it. You can adjust the brush height so that the bristles are dipped in the paint or the oil and thus prevent them from sticking together. Suitable for paint, oil, stain, thinner cans etc. and all common brushes. Comes with brush with China bristles, diameter 25 mm.

For illustration purposes only. Product may vary.



**D WASHI TAPES »GOLD TAPE UV 90«**  
Very thin and wet-strength adhesive tape made of Japanese Washi paper with specially formulated acrylate adhesive designed to perfectly suit the edges.

- High UV resistance
- Substrate-specific adhesive force
- Suitable for all kinds of interior and exterior painting work
- Creates very flat and sharp edges, prevents paint/varnish/blackening creep
- For smooth surfaces such as metal and glass (e.g. for taping off knife blades)
- For interior and exterior use, securely stays in place for up to 100 days

and can be removed without leaving residues

Overall length 50 m  
Width  
19 mm  
**No. 820274**  
30 mm  
**No. 820275**



**B MEASURING CUP, 1 L**  
High-quality transparent measuring cup made of polypropylene (PP) with spout, sturdy handle and black scale printed on both sides, easy to read even under poor lighting conditions. The volume is therefore easy to read for both left-handed and right-handed users. Solvent-resistant.

**No. 706124**



**C DISPOSABLE FILTER, 25-PIECE SET**  
Disposable paper filter with glued-in nylon filtering fabric. For filtering lacquers (Clourethan, Herdim dry spirit varnishes) and oil lacquers (Le Tonkinois).  
Top diameter 160 mm.  
Mesh opening 260 µm.

**No. 706149**



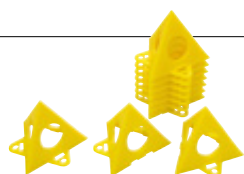
**E WAX POLISHING-/STAINING BRUSH**  
This brush features genuine leather inserts. After applying wax to a hardwood surface, it is an excellent choice for polishing. It can also be used to smooth out roughened wooden surfaces after the staining process. The brush should only be used for either of these two purposes, because in case there are wax residues on the leather inserts after polishing, these residues may affect the application of paint after the staining process.  
Material: natural fibre/leather  
Width 60 mm  
Overall length 175 mm

**No. 716264**



► *Painter's pyramids for reducing the contact surface of workpieces during painting or varnishing available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



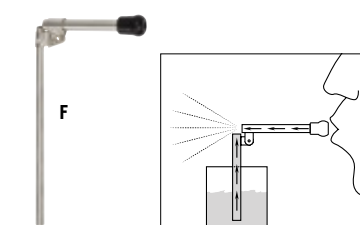
## WORKSHOP

### TURNING OBJECTS WITH JIMMY CLEWES

#### Content:

Jimmy Clewes will accompany you step-by-step through a project of your choice. Whether spindle or faceplate turning, special surface techniques, creating your object of desire or the sharpening of turning gouges, the internationally known, experienced woodturner will advise you individually. He will give you specific tips, how to reach your goal fast and safely. Whether hollow designs, winged bowls or jars with lid, the experienced woodturner will help you with useful tips.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



**F MOUTH ATOMIZER**  
The mouth atomizer is an airbrush system that operates without compressed air or electricity. Place the bare tube in

a container of paint and blow into the mouth piece of the tube. The created airstream causes negative pressure in the bare tube and draws in the paint that is then sprayed by the airstream. The paint does not come into contact with the mouth. This historical method is also used precisely nowadays because it is cheap and mobile, and no cables are required. It is therefore ideal for use on a rotating spindle directly on a lathe. This is how unusual surface techniques can be created with spirit-based stains.

**No. 701844**



► Airbrush compressors and accessories available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





# Glues and Glue Pots

## Bindulin® Glue/Adhesive

For over 80 years, the company Bindulin in Germany has been specialising in the production of glues and adhesives. With twenty different wood glues under the Bindan brand alone, Bindulin offers an exceptionally wide range of products suitable for many applications.



### A BINDAN-P »PROPELLER LEIM«® WOOD GLUE

High-quality, ready-to-use glue with outstanding bonding strength for waterproof bonds in windows and external doors as well as workpieces that are subject to higher loads. For wood, wood composites, cardboard, polystyrene, felt, fabric and leather. Ideal for prefinished parquet floors (tongue and groove glueing).

- Extremely high breaking strength
- Translucent glue line
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water
- Solvent-free

*Physical properties: Waterproof polyvinyl acetate glue according to D3, breaking strength 1400 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> in accordance with EN 204/205, application temperature 10-20 °C, open time 5/10 min., clamp time 30 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life 12 months from*

A



*purchase.*  
100 g  
**No. 450528**  
280 g  
**No. 450529**  
800 g  
**No. 450383**



### C BINDAN-IQ® WOOD GLUE

The ideal wood glue for the waterproof glueing of light woods or woods containing tanning agents that tend to change colour. The normal white glue has an acidic pH value, which in combination with tannic acids and other wood constituents can lead to stains and colour changes. The IQ wood glue is pH-neutral, which prevents colour changes on woods such as maple, Douglas fir, chestnut, larch, lime, walnut, etc. (not suitable for ferrous oak).

- Neutral PH
- Long open time
- Translucent glue line
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water
- Solvent-free

*Physical properties: Waterproof polyvinyl acetate glue conforming to D3, breaking strength 1000 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> in accordance with EN 204/205, application temperature 15-25 °C, open time 10-15 min., clamp time 20 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life 6 months from purchase.*  
280 g  
**No. 450530**

C



### E BER-FIX® EPOXY GLUE

Glues almost anything: Quick-setting epoxy resin glue. Glues materials such as metal, wood, glass, hard plastics, porcelain, ebony, and precious stones. Water- and chemical-resistant. Double syringe with attachable mixing nozzle.

*Physical properties: Two-component epoxy resin adhesive, transparent glue line, application temperature 10-30 °C, open time approx. 5 min., max. hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.*  
25 g

**1** Open Time approx. 5 Minutes  
Technical information:  
Temperature resistance -55 to +80 °C.

*Causes skin irritation. May cause an allergic skin reaction. Causes serious eye irritation. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

**No. 450379**  
Replacement Mixing Nozzle  
**No. 450412**

E



*Open Time approx. 30 Minutes*  
Technical information:  
Temperature resistance -50 to +80 °C.

*Causes skin irritation. May cause an allergic skin reaction. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause respiratory irritation. Suspected of causing genetic defects. May cause cancer. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

**No. 450417**  
Replacement Mixing Nozzle  
**No. 450412**



### B BINDAN®-BLITZ WOOD AND ASSEMBLY GLUE

This glue hardens very quickly and is therefore ideal for assembly work. It features an outstanding bonding strength and is suitable for the waterproof glueing of wood, chipboards and fibreboards. Also suitable for workpieces that are subject to higher loads, such as windows and doors. Ideal for prefinished parquet floors (tongue and groove glueing)

- Rapid curing
- Translucent glue line
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water
- Solvent-free

*Physical properties: Waterproof polyvinyl acetate glue conforming to D3, breaking strength 1400 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> in accordance with EN 204/205, application temperature 12-20 °C, open time 6-8 min., clamp*

B



*time 16-24 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life 12 months from purchase.*  
280 g  
**No. 450531**



### D BINDAN-BB® WOOD GLUE

Non-toxic glue for use in sensitive applications, such as bedrooms, children's rooms, nursery schools, etc. Good bonding strength, suitable for waterproof bonds with softwood, chipboard and also handicrafts.

- Absolutely free of pollutants
- Translucent glue line
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water
- Solvent-free

*Physical properties: Waterproof polyvinyl acetate dispersion conforming to D3, breaking strength 600 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> in*

D



*accordance with EN 204/205, application temperature 10-20 °C, open time 4/12 min., clamp time 22 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life 12 months from purchase.*  
100 g  
**No. 450526**  
280 g  
**No. 450527**



### F BINDULIN DUO-COL® TWO-COMPONENT GLUE

Slow-curing epoxy resin glue for chemical »welding« of metals, steel, plastics and hard materials as well as glass, porcelain, concrete and wood. Resistant to water and chemicals. Two tubes with 20 g each.

*Physical properties: Two-component epoxy resin adhesive, light-yellow glue line, application temperature 10-30 °C,*

*pot life 2 h, set time 10 h, set time can be reduced and tensile strength of bond can be increased with heat, maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.*

*Causes severe skin burns and eye damage. Causes skin irritation. May cause an allergic skin reaction. Causes serious eye irritation.*  
**No. 450382**

F



**Dry use, e.g. D1**  
For indoor use. Max. wood moisture 15 %.



**Water-resistant, e.g. D3 / ANSI TYPE II**  
Suitable for interior areas with frequent short-term exposure to water or high humidity as well as for exterior areas not exposed to weather.



**Waterproof, e.g. D4 / ANSI TYPE I**  
Suitable for interior areas with frequent long-term exposure to running or condensed water as well as for exterior areas exposed to weather provided with adequate surface protection. Not suitable for use under water.

## Titebond® Glues/Adhesives

The first choice when high bond strength is necessary: For extremely solid glue joints in woodworking applications, restoration and musical instrument making. For more than 65 years, Titebond has been the market leader in bonding wood and wood products in the United States.



### A TITEBOND® ORIGINAL WOOD GLUE

For ultra-strong bonds in wood, laminate, particle boards, leather, horn, bone, mother-of-pearl, fabric and porous materials indoors.

- Glued joints can be undone by heating
- Excellent sandability without softening
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water

*Physical properties:* Aliphatic resin emulsion, bond strength ASTM D-905: 256 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>, yellowish-translucent glue line, application temperature 10-30 °C, open assembly time 4-6 min., clamping time 30 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.

Weight  
237 g  
**No. 450360**  
946 g  
**No. 450361**  
3784 g  
**No. 450369**



### B TITEBOND® II PREMIUM WOOD GLUE

For waterproof bonds indoors and outdoors that are occasionally exposed to moisture (external doors, garden furniture etc.).

- Excellent sandability without softening
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water

*Physical properties:* Polyvinyl acetate glue, ANSI Type II water-resistance, bond strength ASTM D-905: 263 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>, yellowish-translucent glue line, application temperature 13-30 °C, open assembly time 3-5 min., clamping time 30 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.

Weight  
237 g  
**No. 450364**  
946 g  
**No. 450365**

## Bond strength of glues

The bond strength of glued joints is tested in compliance with various standards. Titebond glues are tested according to the ASTM D-905 standard, while Bindulin glues correspond to the requirements of EN 204/205. Basically, any modern glue has a bond with a higher strength than the wood itself to be glued. This means that a glued joint, which has been produced according to the glue manufacturer's specifications (pot life, clamping time, clamping pressure, temperature...), does not give way until the wood next to the glued joint breaks. According to ASTM standard, wood is used as test material and for this reason the specified values are based on the bond strength of the tested wood. The DIN standard allows tests to be carried out with special plastic, which results in much higher bond strength specifications. The strength values can therefore only be compared with one standard (in our case the



ASTM standard for Titebond and the EN standard for Bindulin). However, if the products of one manufacturer are compared with each other, it is possible to draw conclusions about their strength values. This can be useful, for example, if a glued joint is to be created under the worst possible conditions. In this case, the glue with the highest bond strength should be chosen so as to ensure sufficient strength even under poor conditions.



### C TITEBOND® III ULTIMATE WOOD GLUE

Superior bond strength, strong initial tack and a long open assembly time of at least 10 minutes make this the preferred glue for high demands in interior and exterior use.

- Extremely water-resistant
- Lower application temperature as of 8 °C
- Excellent sandability without softening
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water
- Solvent-free

*Physical properties:* Polymer glue, ANSI Type I water-resistance, bond strength ASTM D-905: 295 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>, light brown glue line, application temperature 8-30 °C, open assembly time 8-10 min., clamping time 30 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.

Weight  
237 g  
**No. 450362**  
946 g  
**No. 450363**



### D TITEBOND® II EXTEND WOOD GLUE

The advantage of this glue lies in its long open time. It is ideal for large applications, both indoors and outdoors, involving more complex assemblies.

- Long open time
- Suitable for hot press glueing systems
- Excellent sandability without softening
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water

*Physical properties:* Polyvinyl acetate glue, ANSI Type II water-resistance, bond strength ASTM D-905: 270 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> and EN 204/205: 1150 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>, creme coloured glue line, application temperature 15-30 °C, open assembly time 15 min., clamping time 30 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.

473 g  
**No. 450387**



### E TITEBOND® NO-RUN, NO-DRIP WOOD GLUE

This viscous glue does not drip and is therefore ideal for vertical glue joints and overhead applications such as cornice fixings, reveals and ceiling mouldings.

- No dripping, no running
- Provides a strong initial tack and fast speed of set, yet allows realignment
- Excellent sandability without softening
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water

*Physical properties:* Polyvinyl acetate glue, bond strength ASTM D-905: 210 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>, translucent glue line, application temperature 10-30 °C, open assembly time 3-5 min., clamping time 30 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.

237 g  
**No. 450388**



### F TITEBOND® TRANSLUCENT WOOD GLUE

Ideal glue for general household and furniture-making projects with short clamping time.

- Transparent glue line
- Excellent sandability without softening
- Excess glue can be wiped off with water

*Physical properties:* Polyvinyl acetate glue, bond strength ASTM D-905: 249 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>, application temperature 10-30 °C, open assembly time 5 min., clamping time 20 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.

237 g  
**No. 450396**



### G TITEBOND® LIQUID HIDE GLUE

First hide glue in liquid form for restoration work, veneering or making musical instruments.

- Glued joints can easily be undone by warming and moistening
- Long open time
- Excellent creep-resistance
- Excellent sandability
- Unaffected by finishes

*Physical properties:* Protein glue with additives, bond strength ASTM D-905: 252 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>, translucent glue line, application temperature 10-30 °C, open assembly time 10 min., clamping time 30 min., maximum hardness after 24 hours, storage life min. 6 months from purchase.

Causes serious eye irritation.  
237 g  
**No. 450368**



A



**A TITEBOND® POLYURETHANE GLUE**  
High-strength waterproof construction adhesive for universal use. In addition to its superior wood-to-wood performance, this glue is ideal for almost all porous or non-porous material combinations (metals, ceramics, plastics, stone etc).

- High strength
- Fills gaps
- Short clamp time
- Excellent sandability
- Unaffected by finishes
- Solvent-free

*Physical properties: Polyurethane glue, contains isocyanate (avoid skin contact),*

*cures by reacting with moisture, yellow glue line, ANSI Type I water-resistance, application temperature 10-30 °C, assembly time 25-30 min., clamp time approx. 45 min., maximum hardness after 4 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.*

*Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause allergy or asthma symptoms or breathing difficulties if inhaled. May cause an allergic skin reaction. May cause respiratory irritation. May cause damage to organs.*

237 g  
**No. 450366**



► Titebond® Construction Adhesive available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



B

#### B SUPERGLUE ACTIVATOR

The activator accelerates the hardening of superglue (cyanoacrylate adhesive). Used on strongly absorbing, porous surfaces, at low air humidities and temperatures, or with thick layers of adhesive. Can be used with Titebond instant bond wood adhesive.

Storage life min. 12 months from purchase.

*Extremely flammable aerosol. Pressurised container: May burst if heated. Causes skin irritation. May cause drowsiness or dizziness. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

200 ml  
**No. 451981**



C

1



2



3



4

#### C TITEBOND® INSTANT BOND WOOD ADHESIVE

Fast-action glue for small contact surfaces with a narrow joining gap especially for glueing together wood and wood composites. But other materials such as natural rubber, aluminium, stainless steel, fibreglass, PVC or porcelain can also be easily glued together or to wood and composites. The individual types differ in viscosity and hardening time.

- Solvent-resistant
- Ideal for glueing mitres of MDF and porous wood
- High ageing resistance
- Unaffected by finishes

*Physical properties: Cyanoacrylate glue, translucent glue line, application temperature 10-30 °C, open/closed assembly time 5-30 / 3-20 sec. depending on type, clamp time 30-60 sec., maximum hardness after 8 hours, storage life min. 12 months from purchase.*

*Harmful if inhaled. Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause respiratory irritation.*

55 g  
Viscosity

1 Gel

**No. 450377**

2 Thick

**No. 450376**

3 Medium

**No. 450375**

4 Thin

**No. 450378**



D

#### D KÖVULFIX CONTACT ADHESIVE

Professional solvent-based contact adhesive for use with leather.

- Adhesive achieves full strength after a single application of pressure
- Also suitable for rubber (soles, seals), rainwear, hard PVC and soft foam (polyurethane foam, carpet backing), paper, cardboard, textiles, felt, cork, and wood

*Highly flammable liquid and vapour. Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects. May produce allergic reaction.*

60 g  
**No. 451980**

## WORKSHOP PRACTICAL KNOWLEDGE ABOUT WOOD GLUES AND ADHESIVES



#### Content:

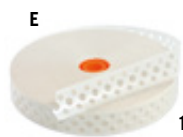
The course will teach you all you need to know about numerous glues and adhesives: modern white glues, adhesives for special applications, reaction adhesive, traditional bone and hide glue, etc.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



► Accessories for glueing and finishing available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



E

1



2

#### E VENEER TAPES, 200 M

This strongly adherent white veneer joint tape can be easily removed without leaving residues after veneering. 200 m roll. Width 20 mm.

##### 1 perforated

The three-row perforation offers both visibility of the joint and easy removing of the tape.

**No. 450138**

##### 2 unperforated

The unperforated surface ensures good adhesion performance even of smaller tape pieces, making this veneer joint tape ideal for intarsia and marquetry work.

**No. 450139**



F

#### F GLUE BOTTLE BABEBOT™

A two-chamber system automatically ensures that there is glue in the ascending container at all times. It is therefore also possible to apply glue when the bottle is in an upright position. An airtight lid prevents the glue from drying out in the bottle. The glue dispenser can be equipped with glue tips for any purpose. Easy refilling via the large main chamber closure. Replacement parts (tips and caps) available. Includes 1 blade tip and 1 yorker tip. Capacity approx 120 ml

**No. 716002**

► For more size see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



G

#### G GLUE INJECTORS, 3-PIECE SET

For the specific application of glue to hard-to-reach areas, e.g. in repairs of veneering or chair-leg bonds, cracks etc. Also ideal for the application of oil or for the dosage of paints and other liquids. Can be dismantled for cleaning. Contains 1.0 / 2.5 / 5.0 ml, needle diameter 0.5 / 0.6 / 0.7 mm.

**No. 716232**



##### Dry use, e.g. D1

For indoor use. Max. wood moisture 15 %.



##### Water-resistant, e.g. D3 / ANSI TYPE II

Suitable for interior areas with frequent short-term exposure to water or high humidity as well as for exterior areas not exposed to weather.



##### Waterproof, e.g. D4 / ANSI TYPE I

Suitable for interior areas with frequent long-term exposure to running or condensed water as well as for exterior areas exposed to weather provided with adequate surface protection. Not suitable for use under water.



## Natural Glues

Glues of animal origin are simple to use, resist aging and can be softened again by heating, which makes them very useful for repairs. In contrast to synthetic glues, they can be overpainted and stained. Also suitable as priming for painting and gilding. Cold water is added to the glue, which is left to soak. It is then carefully heated in a water bath.



**A BONE GLUE, GRANULATE**  
For hard bonds, very easy to sand. Amber glue line.  
250 g  
**No. 450141**  
1 kg  
**No. 450144**  
5 kg  
**No. 450145**  
10 kg  
**No. 450156**



**B ISINGLASS GLUE, GRANULATE**  
For difficult repairs requiring highest bond strengths. The glue itself consists of the air bladders of sturgeons. In recent years, the drastically reduced fishing quotas have made this glue a precious commodity. Glue line from light yellow to nearly transparent.  
100 g  
**No. 450142**



**C HIDE GLUE, GRANULATE**  
For elastic bonds. Amber glue line.  
250 g  
**No. 450140**  
1 kg  
**No. 450143**



**D RABBIT SKIN GLUE, GRANULATE**  
More viscous than hide or bone glue. High yield, very elastic. Light yellow glue line.  
500 g  
**No. 450153**  
1 kg  
**No. 450154**



**G FISH GLUE**  
High-grade, Canadian fish glue modified for cold use. Ready-to-use, liquid form, very high glueing effect. The joint can be softened again for repairs by simple heating. Yellow transparent glue line.

*Storage life min. 12 months from purchase.*

100 ml  
**No. 450188**  
250 ml  
**No. 450189**  
500 ml  
**No. 450169**



**I GLUE BRUSHES**  
Light China bristles, long, untreated handle. Colourfast plastic ferrule prevents discolouration of the glue. Suitable for persons suffering from nickel allergy.

Overall length approx. 310 mm  
Head diameter  
6 mm **No. 706156**  
8 mm **No. 706157**  
10 mm **No. 706158**



**J GLUE BRUSHES WITH NATURAL BRISTLES**  
Pure natural bristles, with no plastic or metallic bond - preventing discolouration of the glue. Bristles are hard enough to remove glue remainings. Suitable for persons suffering from nickel allergy.

Overall length 205-235 mm  
Head diameter  
10 mm **No. 706192**  
12 mm **No. 706193**  
17 mm **No. 706194**  
21 mm **No. 706199**

## Herdim® Glue Pot

For uncomplicated and gentle heating of hot glues, primers and waxes in a water bath. A built-in thermostat ensures the correct temperature within  $\pm 3^\circ\text{C}$ . Designed for constant professional use, these glue pots have proved themselves over and over again in woodworking, restoration and instrument making. Nickel-plated brass housing with heat-resistant plastic handle and slip-proof base. Maximum temperature approx.  $85^\circ\text{C}$ .



**E HERDIM® GLUE POT, 250 ML**  
Compact glue pot for violin making and other precision small scale work.  
Height 160 mm, 120 W. Ø 105 mm

230 V  
Ceramic Container  
**No. 736001**  
Plastic Container with Lid  
**No. 736013**

120 V  
Plastic Container with Lid  
**No. 736014**



**F HERDIM® GLUE POT, PLASTIC CONTAINER WITH LID, 1 L**  
For large-scale projects such as restoration, piano making, painting, stucco and gilding. Includes plastic glue container with lid.  
Ø 160 mm  
Height 220 mm, 230 V, 240 W.  
**No. 736003**

**H SHINWA® THERMOMETER**  
Stainless steel thermometer for measuring the temperature of all kinds of liquids. For oil-wax mixtures, the temperature of



the oil must be monitored to time the appropriate melting point of the wax. Large measuring range makes it suitable for a wide range of applications. Easy to read thanks to large letters.  
Ø 80 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
110 g  
**No. 717499**



**K SPIRIT LAMP WITH DIAL REGULATOR**  
Glass container with dial regulator, 120 cm³ capacity, burning time approx. 2-3 hours. Can be set upright or at an angle due to its polygonal shape. Round wick, diameter 6 mm, with cap.  
**No. 706013**  
Replacement Wick, 13 cm  
**No. 706014**



You will find helpful tips and technical information about how to apply the different adhesives in our Adhesive Primer, available free of charge at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► Glue containers available online.



### Prevention of mould forming on leftover glue

To prevent mould forming on leftover glue, we recommend to apply a few drops of citric acid into the mixture. The acid is available in any pharmacy.

# Materials

The material craftsmen's  
dreams are made of!

European and North American Wood | 307

Exotic Wood | 311

Green Wood Sealers / Wood Stabilisers | 314

Nuts, Cones and Semi-finished Wooden Products | 315

Hybrid Materials, Acrylic and  
Imitations of Natural Materials | 317

Horn | 322

Other Animal Materials | 323

Birch Bark | 325

Semi-finished Metal Products | 325

Blades and Blade Blanks | 327

Steels | 333

► **NEW:** For leather see chapter  
»Leather, Paper and Tools« on page | 302



# European and North American Wood

## A LIMWOOD BLOCKS

Carvers like nothing better than lime trees. This soft wood features an even, delicate cell structure. This makes the short-grained timber wonderful to cut and an extremely popular choice for wood carvings, sculptures and turned objects. Density 530 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



**1** Limewood Blocks, 1. Quality

300 x 100 x 80 mm

No. 831288

300 x 130 x 90 mm

No. 831109

400 x 100 x 80 mm

No. 831289

400 x 130 x 130 mm

No. 831110

300 x 180 x 80 mm

No. 831940

400 x 180 x 80 mm

No. 831941

**1** Limewood Boards, Planed, 1. Quality  
For carving and chipcarving.

250 x 100 x 25 mm

No. 831348

250 x 175 x 25 mm

No. 831103



**2** Limewood Blocks, 2. Quality  
Slight cracks, discolorations.

300 x 130 x 90 mm

No. R831109

400 x 130 x 130 mm

No. R831110



**B** LIMWOOD BOARDS WITH WANE ON BOTH SIDES, ROUGH-CUT  
For carving, chip carving and woodburning. Grown widths vary between 150-300 mm. Bark can fall off during

handling and shipping; this is not grounds for complaint.

300 x 150 - 300 x 40 mm

No. 832080

1000 x 150 - 300 x 40 mm

No. 832081



**D** LIMWOOD BOARDS, SAWN SURFACE, 5-PIECE SET  
Fine-grained and evenly structured, these boards are made of native lime. They can be used in many ways, e.g. for carving, chip carving and toys. Pieces may come with wane.

350 x 110 - 190 x 40 mm

No. 831178

**C** LIMWOOD BOARDS, FULL-EDGED, ROUGH-CUT, 5-PIECE SET  
Fine-grained and evenly structured, these boards are made of native lime. They can

be used in many ways, e.g. for carving, chip carving and toys.  
150 x 140 x 40 mm  
No. 832079

## E EUROPEAN WALNUT

Walnut is a much sought-after precious wood due to its aesthetic dark brown colour and vivid grain. Its appearance and its medium density makes it ideal for woodturning as well as for making musical instruments, high-grade furniture, rifle stocks and parquet. The steam heat treatment allows for stronger and more uniform colours and prevents wood from warping. Density 680 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm

No. 832015

300 x 40 x 40 mm

No. 832016

150 x 60 x 60 mm

No. 832017

300 x 60 x 60 mm

No. 832018

150 x 150 x 60 mm

No. 832019

180 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727859

280 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727860

350 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727861

450 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727862

## F RED BEECH, SPALTED

Very attractive grain thanks to the vividly coloured effects caused by fungi. The reddish-brown to black markings give the wood its particular charm. Spalted beechwood is used for turned and hand-crafted items. Density 720 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm

No. 831980

300 x 40 x 40 mm

No. 831981

150 x 60 x 60 mm

No. 831982

180 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727855

280 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727856

350 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727857

450 x 70 x 70 mm

No. 727858



Spalted beech bowl by George Watkins

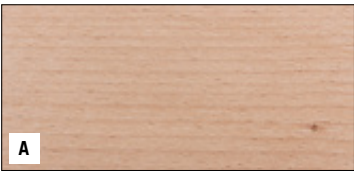
Find out more at [www.dictum-handwerksgalerie.de](http://www.dictum-handwerksgalerie.de)

All sizes and weights provided are approximate values which are affected by the natural drying process of the wood. The stated density listed next to each type of wood is the bulk density (moisture content 12-15 %).



A STEAMED RED BEECH

Very homogeneous, hard and tough wood. The sapwood varies from pale yellow to reddish-brown. Steaming gives the wood an even reddish-brown colour. Steamed woods expand and shrink less, so there is less risk of cracking. Popular as construction timber for making furniture and parquet. Easy to process, this wood is also suitable for turned and handcrafted items. Density 720 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831975

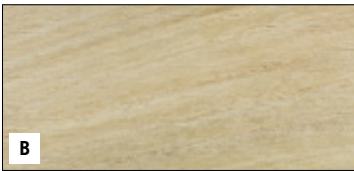
300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831976

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 831978

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
No. 831979

B ROBINIA

Also known as locust tree, robinia wood was imported into Europe in the 17th century. Very hard and tough, it is highly resistant to wood rot and insects, yet also bendable. The tannin-rich wood can be smoked dark (chemical reaction with ammonia fumes) and is easy to polish thanks to its high density. This makes it especially interesting for woodturning work. Outdoors, robinia can be used without additional chemical protection. Density 770 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831965

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831966

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 831968

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
No. 831969

C ASH

White to olive brown, ring-porous wood with high tensile and bending strength. Ash is elastic with good mechanical characteristics. When steamed, it is easy to bend. The white wood is particularly easy to stain. It often has a olive-coloured heart. Used to make tool handles, bent wooden parts, parquet flooring, floor planking, turned objects and for furniture making. Density 690 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831970

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831971

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 831973

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
No. 831974

D ALDER

This softwood has an even, fine grain. Easy to process, turn and carve, it is used for woodturning, creating mouldings and toys, and as a base for furniture and interior fittings. Alder is easy to stain and is therefore used as a substitute for precious woods, e.g. for restoration work. Density 550 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831990

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831991

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 831992



Spalted Maple

E ELM

The sapwood and ripewood are pale yellow, while the heartwood is reddish to brown. Because of its attractive grain, this decorative wood is popular for interior fittings. It is one of the most beautiful wood types in Europe. Processing is easy to moderately easy, therefore tools should be sharp. Elm is used in furniture making, for panelling, rifle shafts, parquet, carved and turned objects. Density 650 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831985

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831986

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 831987

F MAPLE

The sapwood and heartwood are pale yellow to white. This close-grained wood with low shrinkage is easy to process and mainly used for furniture making and interior fittings. Traditionally, tabletops, stairs and parquet flooring were made of this wood. It is easy to process, polish and stain. Also suitable for turned and carved objects and wooden toys. Density 650 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831995

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 831996

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 831997

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 831998

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
No. 831999

G SPALTED MAPLE

Its appeal lies in its brown to black striped and spotted grain caused by fungal infestation. Due to the different colours, each wood has an individual look. Moderately hard wood with fine, sparse pores. Particularly popular for turning objects. Density 650 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 832000

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 832001

150 x 50 x 50 mm  
No. 832002

300 x 50 x 50 mm  
No. 832003

150 x 150 x 50 mm  
No. 832004

H SPALTED BIRCH

Spalted birch is very different from conventional birch wood due to its remarkably strong grain caused by fungal infestation. It features remarkable brown to black-white spots. Spalted birch wood is ideal for woodturning and polishes very well. Density 650 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 832040

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
No. 832041

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 832042

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
No. 832043



I BOXWOOD

Boxwood is ideal for turning or carving due to its high stiffness, fine grain and beautiful polish it takes on. Perfect for making bowls, figurines, handles, balls, mechanical parts - the possibilities are limited only by the size of the blank. Large pieces of this slow-growing wood are very rare. Harvested in the French Pyrenees. Density 970 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

Boxwood Assortment

Top-quality boxwood, air-dried for at least three years, free of cracks. A typical assortment contains several 19 x 19 to 38 x 38 mm squares, 150-300 mm in length, and one or two rounds Ø 50-65 mm. 4.5 kg  
No. 520038

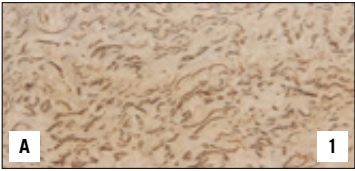
Boxwood



Because of its high density, boxwood is mainly used in making woodwind instruments, for piano keys and violin pegs, in addition to turning, engravings and carving. The extreme hardness is due to the slow growth of boxwood trees.

**A MASUR BIRCH**

The contrast between the light-coloured heartwood and dramatic dark-coloured rays running through the wood has made masur birch wood from the polar regions highly sought after by carvers and wood-turners alike. Masur birch is both highly wear-resistant and warm to the touch, making it the perfect choice for exquisite knife and tool handles, kitchen utensils, jewellery, intarsia and decorative objects. Air dried pieces. Density 650 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



**1 Premium Quality**  
Selected pieces with extremely fine grain.  
120 x 40 x 30 mm  
**No. 831325**



**2 1. Quality**  
Selected pieces with vivid grain.  
120 x 40 x 30 mm  
**No. 831326**



**3 2. Quality**  
Pieces with natural grain.  
120 x 40 x 30 mm  
**No. 831779**

**B**



**B BRIAR WOOD, HANDLE SCALES**

Wood harvested from the root stock of the French wild briar tree has been sought after by pipe makers for centuries due to its beautifully figured grain and high resistance to heat.

Due to its unique appearance and excellent polishing qualities, it is also great for making jewellery, intarsia and knife handles.  
95 x 30 x 6 mm  
**No. 831259**



Briar wood knife handle, dark coloured

All sizes and weights provided are approximate values which are affected by the natural drying process of the wood. The stated density listed next to each type of wood is the bulk density (moisture content 12-15 %).



Pear

**C PLUM**

Plum wood features a striking, in some places very strong reddish to purple-brown shade and is very good to work. Its finely grained and even structure makes it ideal for knife handles as well as woodwind instruments, for carving and woodturning. Density 800 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832030**

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832031**

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 832032**

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 832033**

**D PEAR**

The wood of the pear tree shows an even, fine-pored wood structure and is easy to work with. Its striking reddish colour makes it popular for furniture making. Thanks to its fine structure and hardness, it is also suitable for woodturning as well as for making musical instruments and carving. Density 700 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832025**

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832026**

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 832027**

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 832028**

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
**No. 832029**

**E APPLE**

Apple wood fascinates with its reddish-brown colour and its light-coloured sapwood. This finely pored, hard, often irregularly grained wood is easy to work. It is widely used for high-grade furniture making, woodturning and carving. Density 750 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832020**

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832021**

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 832022**

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 832023**

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
**No. 832024**

**F MULBERRY**

Mediterranean mulberry wood is highly valued for its hardness, durability and polishability. Its appeal lies in its unique golden yellow colour. It is traditionally used to make high-quality stringed instruments. Very good polishability. Density 650 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832056**

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 832057**

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 832059**

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
**No. 832060**

**G OLIVEWOOD**

Slow growing wood of the Sicilian olive tree with attractive grain. Due to its very high density and excellent polishability, it is suitable for making everyday pieces and jewellery of high aesthetic value and wear-resistance. Density 850 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

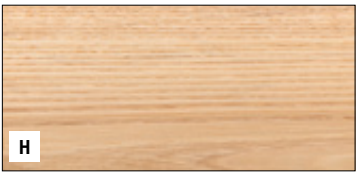


Olivewood

For prices and sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**H CHESTNUT WOOD**

The chestnut is not originally a native plant of Germany. It was not until 1561, that the chestnut arrived in Prague from Constantinople and spread throughout Europe. Chestnut wood is used for furniture making, woodturning and carving. Density 600 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 728890**

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
**No. 728889**

150 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 728888**

300 x 60 x 60 mm  
**No. 728887**

150 x 150 x 60 mm  
**No. 728886**

**A CHERRY**

The medium-hard wood of the cherry tree is easy to work and is much sought-after by furniture makers. The steam heat treatment allows for stronger and more uniform colours and prevents wood from warping. The lighter sapwood offers an attractive contrast to the heartwood and can also be used thanks to its similar hardness. Darkens slightly with age. Density 650 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

150 x 40 x 40 mm

**No. 832010**

300 x 40 x 40 mm

**No. 832011**

150 x 60 x 60 mm

**No. 832012**

300 x 60 x 60 mm

**No. 832013**

150 x 150 x 60 mm

**No. 832014**

180 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727835**

280 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727836**

350 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727837**

450 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727838****B POPLAR BURL**

Grained poplar - wood taken from burls at the trunk - is a rather lightweight and soft wood. Ingrown bark particles and branches are characteristic for this veined wood. Thanks to its structure the wood is very popular for turning objects. Density 450 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

150 x 40 x 40 mm

**No. 832005**

300 x 40 x 40 mm

**No. 832006**

150 x 60 x 60 mm

**No. 832007**

300 x 60 x 60 mm

**No. 832008**

180 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727851**

150 x 150 x 60 mm

**No. 832009**

280 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727852**

350 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727853**

450 x 70 x 70 mm

**No. 727854****Offcuts**

Randomly sorted pieces of wood with irregular sizes, partly with small defects and cracks. Suitable for smaller carvings, woodturning objects, jewellery, knife handles or inlay work.

**C FRUIT TREE WOOD**

Apple, pear, cherry and plum pieces, mixed.

4.5 kg

**No. 832067****D EUROPEAN WALNUT**

Walnut pieces with heart- and sapwood.

4.5 kg

**No. 832066****E POPLAR BURL**

Veined wood with attractive ingrown bark particles.

4.5 kg

**No. 832069****F OLIVEWOOD**

Beautifully grained pieces of olivewood.

4.5 kg

**No. 831131****G EUROPEAN WOOD (NO FRUIT TREE WOOD)**

Chestnut, mulberry, acacia, alder, walnut, ash, maple, elm, beech, olive, birch, poplar burl wood pieces, mixed.

4.5 kg

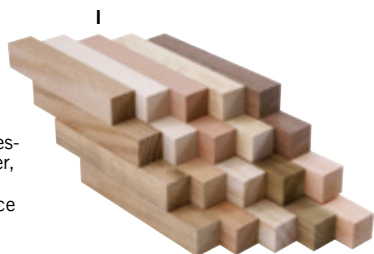
**No. 832092****H LIMEWOOD**

Dried, close-grained limewood pieces.

7.5 kg

**No. 831138**

**I PEN BLANKS ASSORTMENT, EUROPEAN WOOD SPECIES, 20-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
Blanks for making ball pens, fountain pens or small turned objects. Ten domestic wood species, two pieces each: alder, ash, birch, cherry, elm, maple, oak, steamed robinia, walnut and wild service tree. The blanks are marked with their wood species.  
125 x 20 x 20 mm

**No. 730477**



**A PEN BLANKS ASSORTMENT, CROSSCUT, EUROPEAN WOOD SPECIES, 20-PIECE SET**  
Crosscut blanks, natural finish. For making ball pens, fountain pens or small turned objects. Ten domestic wood species, two pieces each: maple, birch, oak, wild service tree, ash, cherry, smoked oak, redheart beech, elm, walnut. The blanks are marked with their wood species.  
125 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 730476**



► Pen turning kits available in our »Woodturning Catalogue« or online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## WORKSHOP

### PEN TURNING

**Content:** How do you make exclusive writing utensils from two simple turned objects? This course will teach you how to make twist-action ballpoint pens and high-quality fountain pens from different materials (solid wood, acrylic, horn). It explains the necessary equipment, the many different materials and how to work them. You will learn in detail how to cut with a bowl gouge and chisel, which clamping methods to use, and how to select the right tools and sharpen them.



► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

**B GRAINED JUNIPER, 5 WOOD PEBBLES**  
The wood obtained from the French juniper is fascinating, not just because of its wild-grown structure but also its enduring aromatic fragrance. The wood is water-repellent and skin-friendly. The oval »wood pebbles« can be used as air fresheners in rooms or cupboards, where they also keep out moths.



50 x 30 mm  
**No. 831341**

## Exotic Wood



Wild Olive »Mutenye«

All sizes and weights provided are approximate values which are affected by the natural drying process of the wood. The stated density listed next to each type of wood is the bulk density (moisture content 12-15 %).



Wenge

**C REDHEART**  
The incomparable shades of colour with partly purple and golden brown streaks make this intensive blazing red wood, also called »Chakte Kok«, especially attractive. To retain its rich hues, the hard, fine-pored wood should be treated with UV surface protection. Very easy to work. Can be used for objects, turning or carving wood. Density 750 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831376**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831377**

455 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831378**

150 x 150 x 50 mm  
**No. 831379**

**D WILD OLIVE »MUTENYE«**  
Hard, dense heartwood with a lively grain for turning and carving, for knife handles or inlay work. The natural oil content makes it particularly resistant to water and soiling. The blanks on offer are relatively fresh and therefore have to be processed under controlled drying conditions (instructions included). Density 880 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 831263**

150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831165**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831166**

380 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831264**

150 x 150 x 50 mm  
**No. 831167**

**E PALMWOOD**  
Its distinctive grain structure makes palmwood a difficult material to work with. But its dark-brown clusters of fibre set in the light heartwood give it an extremely vibrant appearance, making it desirable for knife handles and ornaments. Density 1000 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

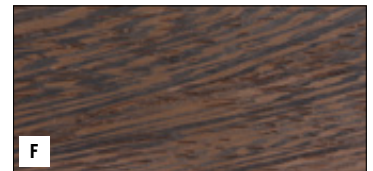


150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831277**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831278**

100 x 100 x 50 mm  
**No. 831280**

**F WENGE**  
This tropical wood from West Africa has a light brown core, which takes on a coffee-coloured hue when dry. The richly contrasting, coarse light/dark structure, usually combined with irregular or interlocked grain, gives wenge its exceptionally decorative character. The hard and heavy wood is used for high-quality interior design furnishings and fittings, but also for turning and carving. Density 860 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 831366**

150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831367**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831368**

380 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831369**



Desert Ironwood



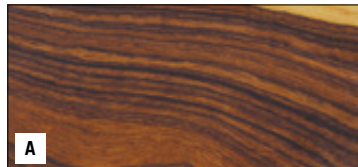
Snakewood



Camel Thorn

**A DESERT IRONWOOD**

Because of its slow growth, desert ironwood is one of the hardest and densest woods in the world. It is golden brown with dark streaks and a yellowish sapwood and grows predominantly in the deserts of Arizona and California, USA as well as Mexico. It is extremely easy to polish, hard and durable, making it ideal for knife handles. Density 1150 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



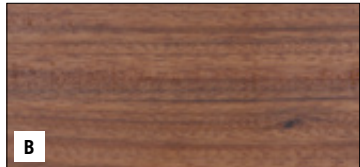
150 x 25 x 25 mm  
**No. 832226**

120 x 40 x 30 mm  
**No. 831269**

Handle Scales, Pair, 130 x 40 x 10 mm  
**No. 832225**

**B MOPANE**

Brownish-red to violet hued, high density heartwood from South Africa. The narrow-ringed, evenly grained wood is characterised by a fine dark brown veining and light brown to yellow sapwood. Density 1080 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



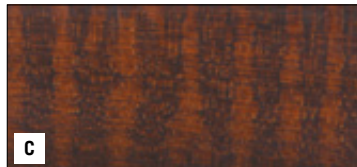
150 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 831261**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831163**

380 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831262**

**C SNAKEWOOD**

Snakewood (also known as Amourette) is one of the most decorative and hardest woods in the world. The scale-like appearance of its grain is perfect for making extraordinary jewellery and knife handles. Density 1000 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



95 x 30 x 6 mm  
**No. 831150**

120 x 30 x 20 mm  
**No. 831151**

120 x 30 x 30 mm  
**No. 831152**

**D CAMEL THORN**

The camel thorn tree is an acacia species common to southern Africa. Due to the slow growth of the tree, the annual rings are very close to each other. The wood is very hard and robust and is therefore ideal for turned items. Density 1185 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 831755**

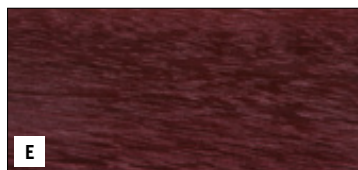
150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831756**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831757**

380 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831758**

**E PURPLEHEART**

Purpleheart is also known as Violetwood or Amaranth. The heartwood has a natural rich purple to violet colour with an irregular grain structure. The fine texture is shot through with lighter and darker fibres. It is ideal for knife handles and smallish objects or for woodturning. Density 800 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 25 x 25 mm  
**No. 831371**

150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831372**

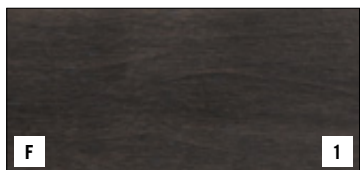
300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831373**

300 x 50 x 50 mm  
**No. 831381**

150 x 150 x 50 mm  
**No. 831374**

**F EBONY**

Ebony, one of the hardest, densest woods in the world, is often used in turnery, cabinet making, restoration work and musical instrument making for parts which need to either be particularly beautiful or resistant to wear, e.g. keys, furniture, and tool handles, jewellery, bowls, and intarsia. Ebony takes on an excellent finish due to its fine-pored structure. Density 1150 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



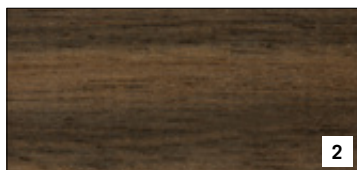
**1 Ebony**  
300 x 50 x 15 mm  
**No. 831021**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831140**

520 x 70 x 8 mm  
**No. 831022**

*The ebony we offer is verifiably sourced from countries that are not subject to species protection regulations.*

*Some of the longer edges on squared timber sections may contain sapwood. This is due to a resource-preserving cut.*



**2 Ebony, Second Quality**  
Ebony from streaked heartwood. The greyish-brown streaks make the otherwise deep black ebony somewhat lighter, yet give it a special charm. Waxed ends, virtually free of cracks. May be supplied with dot-shaped holes created by insects.

**G EBONY ASSORTMENT**

Heartwood ranging in colour from jet black to dark and brown striped. A typical selection contains 19 x 19 to 38 x 38 mm squares, 100-160 mm in length. Approx. 10-20 pieces total. All the pieces have waxed ends and are virtually free of cracks.  
**No. 831020**

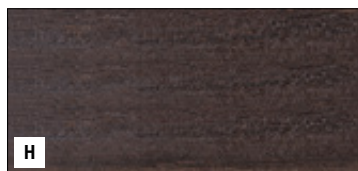
150 x 30 x 30 mm  
**No. 831923**

300 x 30 x 30 mm  
**No. 831924**

520 x 70 x 8 mm  
**No. 831053**

**H LEADWOOD**

The appeal of this exceptionally hard African wood lies in its dark colour. The wood is one of the heaviest of the world. Dark leadwood is easy to polish and is ideal for high-quality knife handles but also for jewellery and turned items. Density 1215 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



150 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 831750**

150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831751**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831752**

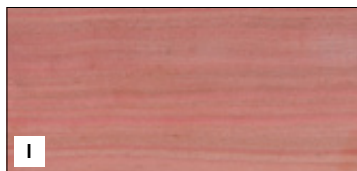
380 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831753**



Ebony

**I PINK IVORY**

Pink Ivory (Berchemia zeyheri) is one of the most magnificent coloured woods, with a spectrum ranging from bright pink to fiery red. Extremely dense with the finest pore structure, it takes on a fine polish and is ideal for creating exquisite pieces of jewellery, knife handles and turned pieces. Density 990 kg/m<sup>3</sup>



Pink Ivory

150 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 831139**

125 x 125 x 50 mm  
**No. 831087**

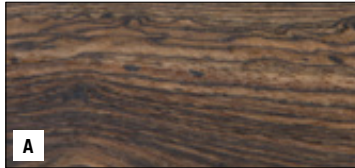
150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831144**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831260**

380 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831145**



Bocote

**A BOCOTE**

Bocote is a decorative hardwood from South America of light brown colour with dark brown veins. Due to the high oil content, this wood is perfect for turning and polishes very well.  
Density 850 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

150 x 25 x 25 mm  
**No. 831267**

150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831268**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831075**

300 x 50 x 50 mm  
**No. 831182**

150 x 150 x 50 mm  
**No. 831076**

**B MORA**

The golden yellow to orange coloured wood has a very fine-pored wood structure with shimmering hues. It is very hard, robust and resistant to moisture, fungi and insect attacks. In spite of its high density, it is very elastic and can easily be bent. Due

to its fine-pored structure and its low shrinkage, it is ideal for woodturning, knife handles and for small decorative items.  
Density 850 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

150 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831345**

300 x 38 x 38 mm  
**No. 831346**

**C BAMBOO HANDLE SCALES**

Bamboo is a very versatile material; the wood is tough, extremely lightweight and flexible. The high-quality raw material has a light yellowish to ochre colour by nature. Bamboo is a fast-growing, natural raw material and therefore very eco-friendly. We recommend treating

knife handle scales that often come into contact with water with Polycryl (No. 810049) beforehand. This reduces the absorbency of the bamboo.  
125 x 40 x 9 mm

**No. 720018**

**D ASIAN WOOD SAMPLE SET**

Collection of 18 different types of wood found primarily in Asia: champac, boxwood, rubberwood, maple, silverwood, gamari, pine, mango, haldau, mahogany, toonwood, badam, jackfruit, teak, coconut palm, padouk, ebony, laurel.  
Polished on one side.  
Plate approx. 85 x 45 x 3.5 mm  
**No. 831010**

**Australian precious woods**

In contrast to many types of tropical precious woods, Australian precious woods are harvested in a strictly controlled manner exclusively by federally licensed timber merchants. Burls growing on 100-year-old trees are carefully removed in a manner which actually revitalizes the living tree. The extraordinarily wild grain makes these timbers wonderful for turning bowls and boxes, making knife handles, and carving fine objects and jewellery.

**E AUSTRALIAN PRECIOUS WOOD, SQUARE TIMBER**

Blanks for making high-quality knife handles, turnery and decorative objects. Sealed end grain, virtually crack-free.

300 x 40 x 40 mm  
Wood type

Red Mallee **No. 831120**

Lace Sheoak **No. 831121**

Fig. Jarrah **No. 831122**

Goldfield **No. 831123**

Mulga **No. 831124**

120 x 40 x 30 mm  
Wood type

Red Mallee **No. 831330**

Lace Sheoak **No. 831331**

Fig. Jarrah **No. 831332**

Goldfield **No. 831333**

Mulga **No. 831334**

**F AUSTRALIAN PRECIOUS WOOD, SQUARE TIMBER ASSORTMENT, 5 KG**

A random selection of precious woods in fantastic colours and grain patterns. Sealed end grain, virtually crack-free.

The selection can include such woods as red mallee, sheoak, goldfield, lace sheoak, figured jarrah and mulga.

From 19 x 19 mm, lengths 150-300 mm.  
**No. 831117**



Red Mallee



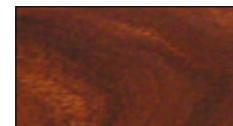
Lace Sheoak



Figured Jarrah



Goldfield



Mulga



Sheoak



G

**G AUSTRALIAN PRECIOUS WOOD, BOWL BLANKS ASSORTMENT, 5 KG**

A random selection of colourful Australian hardwood blanks for turning shallow bowls. Waxed end grain, virtually crack-free. The selection can include such woods as red mallee, lace sheoak, figured jarrah, sheoak, goldfield and mulga.  
From approx. 120 x 120 x 40 mm  
**No. 831115**

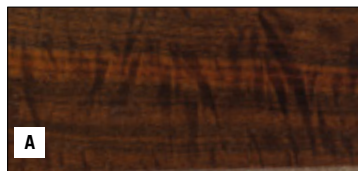


H

**H AUSTRALIAN PRECIOUS WOOD, GRAIN WOOD OFFCUTS, 5 KG**

A random assortment of beautifully grained, colourful Australian hardwood pieces such as jarrah, goldfield, sheoak, mulga etc. in irregular sizes, some of which have attached bark, slight defects or cracks. Suitable for small carvings, turned pieces, jewellery, knife handles or inlay work.  
**No. 831132**



**A CURLY GIDGEE**

Curly Gidgee is one of the hardest woods besides desert ironwood. The extremely delicate pattern gives the wood a unique appearance. It grows all over Australia. Due to the very long drying process, this wood is only collected as dead wood and is therefore very rare. Density 1100 kg/m³.



Pen Blank, 130 x 20 x 20 mm  
**No. 832223**

Handle Scales, Pair, 130 x 40 x 10 mm  
**No. 832222**

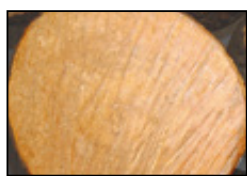
Block, 130 x 40 x 30 mm  
**No. 832221**

All sizes and weights provided are approximate values which are affected by the natural drying process of the wood. The stated density listed next to each type of wood is the bulk density (moisture content 12-15 %).



► For oils, waxes and varnishes see chapter »Surface Design«.

## Green Wood Sealers / Wood Stabilisers



with Anchorseal®



without Anchorseal®

**Anchorseal®**

Anchorseal Green Wood Sealer is a wax emulsion that prevents more than 90 % of splits in the end grain (drying splits) of freshly cut logs and sawn timber, as well as turning and cutting blanks.

Easy to use:

- Application with a brush or sprayer without heating
- Transparent curing facilitates stock valuation
- Clean with soap solution

Reduced valuable timber losses by:

- Low penetration depth compared to lacquer coatings
- Reduction of drying splits
- Reduction of fungal infection

For more information as well as extensive FAQ see [www.anchorseal.de](http://www.anchorseal.de)



► FlitchSaver and accessories for a better control of existing splits available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**B****B ANCHORSEAL® GREEN WOOD SEALERS, APPLICATION UP TO -4 °C**

The classic Anchorseal product that has been used successfully worldwide for many years by large sawmills and green wood processors.

Storage and application up to -4 °C:

- For storage in workshops or cellar spaces
- Ideal for cutting wood under temperate climate conditions

May cause cancer.

5 l  
**No. 810143**  
10 l  
**No. 810144**

**C****C ANCHORSEAL® GREEN WOOD SEALERS, APPLICATION UP TO -12 °C**

The classic Anchorseal product that has been used successfully worldwide for many years by large sawmills and green wood processors.

Storage and application up to -12 °C:

- For storage in unheated spaces such as barns and sheds
- Ideal for cutting wood in winter

May cause damage to organs.

5 l  
**No. 810136**  
10 l  
**No. 810141**

**D****D ANCHORSEAL® 2 GREEN WOOD SEALERS, APPLICATION UP TO -4 °C**

Variant of Anchorseal with a good price/performance ratio in which the paraffin is partly replaced by natural waxes. Somewhat thinner, therefore goes further. Due to the natural components, it is somewhat less effective under unfavourable conditions (extreme temperature fluctuations) than the classic Anchorseal but nevertheless produces excellent results compared to drying without coating agents.

Storage and application up to -4 °C:

- For storage in workshops or cellar spaces
- Ideal for cutting wood under temperate climate conditions

5 l  
**No. 810146**  
10 l  
**No. 810147**

Transparent curing of Anchorseal Green Wood Sealer facilitates stock valuation.



Anchorseal® 200 litre barrel available online at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**A POLYCRYL™ WOOD FORTIFIER**  
Stabilises spalted wood: Polycryl is a wood stabiliser that has been especially developed for soft and porous spalted wood. Polycryl stabilises the cell structure and thus makes working the wood easier, especially when turning. It dries colourless. Application: apply with brush on end grain or place the wood in the solution. Objects treated with Polycryl can be glued, stained, varnished or oiled. Suitable for sculptors, woodturners, knife and furniture makers. Depending on the wood properties, Polycryl can be diluted with up to 400 % water. Penetrates best in high-moisture-content wood. Can also be used in vacuum chambers.



**Comes with German and English instructions.**

*Causes eye irritation.*

950 ml  
**No. 810049**

**B WOOD JUICE™ WOOD STABILISER**  
Rejuvenates and stabilises dry or semi-dry wood: Wood stabiliser for dry, pre-dried and green wood. Rejuvenates old, dry wood and prevents cracking or warping. Especially useful for working with mature timber. If used properly and in time, Wood Juice prevents pine and spruce wood from blue stain. Smaller green wood cuttings and robust green woods can also be stabilised with Wood Juice. Ideal for sculpting, turning, knives and furniture making. Application: apply generously to all surfaces with a brush. It is also possible to soak the wood. Wood treated with Wood Juice can be glued, stained, varnished or oiled.



**Comes with German and English instructions.**

*Causes slight skin irritation.  
Causes eye irritation.*

950 ml  
**No. 810051**

### **C PENTACRYL™ GREEN WOOD STABILISER**

Working green wood without causing cracks: Pentacryl is a wood stabiliser used successfully by sculptors, woodturners and furniture makers to reduce cracks in green wood during drying. Especially on turned objects, it clearly shows its crack-reducing properties, decreasing bowl loss due to cracks to under 1 %. Pentacryl does not react with the natural wood ingredients and gives the wood a purer and lighter appearance. Application: apply with brush on end grain or place the wood in the solution. Objects treated with Pentacryl can be glued, stained, varnished or oiled. The higher the moisture content of the wood, the deeper it penetrates.



**Comes with German and English instructions.**

*Causes slight skin irritation.  
Causes eye irritation.*

950 ml  
**No. 810048**

## Nuts, Cones and Semi-finished Wooden Products



**D THIKA NUT, SOUTH AFRICA**  
A very interesting nut for woodturners. The seeds are short but, with a diameter of up to 40 mm, very thick. Ideal for turning objects, carving and scrimshaw. Easy to saw, grind and polish. For making small works of art, boxes, jewellery, etc. Size approx. 60-75 mm.

**No. 832200**



**E BRAZIL NUT SHELL**  
Half shell of the familiar Brazil nut. This very hard shell is ideal for turning bowls, boxes and other containers. It is easy to saw, sand and polish. Combined with turned wooden parts, the shells make interesting objects. Ø 70-100 mm.

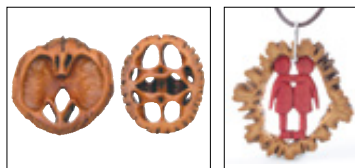
**No. 831393**



► For stabilised cones see page 318.



**F BLACK WALNUT**  
The fruits of the American black walnut tree have very hard, wrinkled inner shells with surprisingly intricate interiors. When cut lengthwise or crosswise (preferably with a Japanese Dozuki saw, e.g. No. 712808), the nuts reveal their amorphous inner structure. These



slices can be used to make unique, eye-catching key pendants or jewellery. Ø 25-40 mm

**No. 831040**



**G BANKSIA CONES**  
The irregularly shaped cones of the banksia grandis tree can be easily turned to make unique and bizarre vases, jewellery and other small objects.

Size 1: Weight 400-650 g  
**No. 831101**

Size 2: Weight 651-1000 g  
**No. 831111**



Banksia Cone



**H GRASSTREE ROOT**  
Cylindrical root of the grass tree (Xanthorrhoea). The wood is easy to turn and oxidizes to a red-brown colour once exposed to air. Length 150-500 mm.

Weight 1-10 kg.

Prices and sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Root and grained wood may have irregularities, inner cracks and pockets.



Grasstree Root

**A GOLDFIELD BURLS**

Ideal for turning unique bowls: Fine-grained, impressively coloured Australian burls with high density.

Weight 1-10 kg



Prices and sizes see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



Goldfield Burl

**B SHAKER PEGS**

Simple, yet elegant, hand-turned Shaker-style knobs and coat hangers of pure design and perfect workmanship. Fine-grained boxwood, polished, with tapered tenons.

**1 Wardrobe Hook**  
Tenon diameter 13 mm  
Tenon length 16 mm  
Overall length 82 mm  
**No. 820090**



**2 Drawer Pull, Large**  
Tenon diameter 19 mm  
Tenon length 15 mm  
Overall length 42 mm  
**No. 820094**

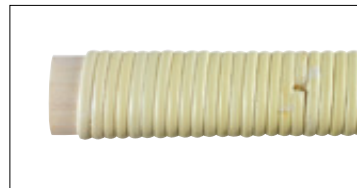
**3 Drawer Pull, Small**  
Tenon diameter 9 mm  
Tenon length 12 mm  
Overall length 32 mm  
**No. 820092**

**C RATTAN WRAPPINGS**

From time immemorial, thin strips pulled from rattan cane have been used to wrap all types of handles in Asia. This natural material, which is very comfortable to hold, lends elegance to the handles of Japanese saws as well as those of knives and other equipment. Its curved profile produces a slightly rounded surface structure that not only looks attractive, it also serves to regulate moisture, improve grip and prevent hand fatigue. Smooth surface, flexible and break-proof, can be affixed with wood glue.

**1 fine**  
Length 3-4 m (1-2 strips)  
Width 4 mm  
**No. 708898**

**2 extra-fine**  
Length 2.5-3.5 m (1-2 strips)  
Width 2 mm  
**No. 708899**



**D VIOLIN PEGS AND END BUTTONS**  
Also serve as fine furniture knobs. They are made of exquisite ebony, have rounded edges, slightly tapered shafts and polished surfaces.

**1 Violin Peg**  
Shaft diameter 9 mm  
Head diameter 22 mm  
**No. 820072**

**2 End Button**  
Shaft diameter 8 mm  
Head diameter 14 mm  
**No. 820075**

**H CHESTNUT WOOD KNIFE HANDLES THERMO**

Handle made of thermally treated chestnut wood with plastic ferrule and pre-drilled tang hole. Due to the special treatment process, the ability of the wood to absorb water is reduced and the resistance against bacteria is increased.

**1 Small, without finger groove**  
105 x 24 x 18 mm  
**No. 719855**

**2 Large, with finger groove**  
125 x 27 x 22 mm  
**No. 719560**

**3 Large, without finger groove.**  
125 x 27 x 22 mm  
**No. 719856**

**E MAGNOLIA WOOD KNIFE HANDLE, BUFFALO HORN FERRULE**  
Handle made of magnolia wood with buffalo horn ferrule. Pre-drilled tang hole.

**1 Without finger groove**  
135 x 28 x 23 mm  
**No. 719561**

**2 With finger groove**  
135 x 24 x 18 mm  
**No. 719562**



► For a birch bark knife handle see page 325.

**F CHESTNUT WOOD KNIFE HANDLES, BURNED**  
Handle made of dark burned chestnut wood with plastic ferrule and pre-drilled tang hole. The wooden surface is brushed after the burning process which is creating a structured appearance and gives the handle a rustic-style. Without finger groove.

**1 105 x 23 x 17 mm**  
**No. 719853**

**2 125 x 27 x 22 mm**  
**No. 719854**

**G HANDLE FOR STICK TANG BLADE BLANKS, PADOUK**


This knife handle is made of fine pored padouk, takes a good polish and is comfortable to hold. Suitable for stick tang blade blanks, which are inserted into the hole and secured with epoxy resin.  
Drill diameter 9 mm  
Drill depth 90 mm  
Front face 21 x 14 mm  
Rear face 34 x 20 mm  
**No. 719835**



Padouk Knife Handle

► For 12 mm thick stainless steel and brass sheets for creating a bolster see page 326.





**A WOODEN DOWELS, BEECH**  
Multi-purpose solid beech dowel rod for the production of dowels, woodturning objects but also threaded rods. Finishes and polishes well. Length 500 mm.

Ø	No.
12 mm	No. 701704
19 mm	No. 701705
25 mm	No. 701706
31 mm	No. 701707
38 mm	No. 701708

**B WOODEN DOWELS, MAPLE**  
Fine-grained maple dowel for making wooden screws, dowels and turned objects. Finishes and polishes well. Length 500 mm.

Ø	No.
12 mm	No. 831548
19 mm	No. 831549
25 mm	No. 831550
31 mm	No. 831551
38 mm	No. 831552

## Hybrid Materials, Acrylic and Imitations of Natural Materials

### Raffir® Stabilised Woods

In the stabilising process, the wood is filled with a specially developed acrylic resin in a high-pressure vacuum treatment. The stabilised wood is extremely resistant, hardly absorbs any moisture and is thus very hygienic, washable and warp-free (no shrinking or expanding). You can work it with conventional tools without any problems. Weight and material density similar to tropical hardwood. Produced in Denmark.



**C RAFFIR® STABILISED BOG OAK**  
Bog oak wood comes from oak logs that lay airtight under sand or mud in bogs for thousands of years.  
120 x 40 x 25-30 mm  
No. 831489



**D RAFFIR® STABILISED SPALTED BEECHWOOD**  
Spalted beechwood with an extraordinary pattern left by certain fungi that grow on the tree.  
Colour natural  
120 x 40 x 25-30 mm  
No. 831495



**E RAFFIR® STABILISED SPALTED BIRCH WOOD**  
Spalted birchwood with an extraordinary pattern left by certain fungi that grow on the tree.  
120 x 40 x 25-30 mm  
No. 831490

**F RAFFIR® STABILISED POPLAR BURLS**  
From roots or burls. Fascinates with its extraordinary pattern.  
120 x 40 x 25-30 mm

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1 blue    | No. 831760 |
| 2 natural | No. 831491 |
| 3 black   | No. 831494 |
| 4 red     | No. 831493 |



**G SPALTED MAPLE, STABILISED**  
Spalted maple features an extraordinary pattern left by certain fungi that grow on the tree.

Pen Blank, 140 x 22 x 22 mm  
No. 832205

Block, 140 x 43 x 33 mm  
No. 832203

Handle Scales Pair, 140 x 43 x 10 mm  
No. 832204



**H WALNUT BURL, STABILISED**  
Obtained from roots or burls.

Pen Blank, 140 x 22 x 22 mm  
No. 832208

Block, 140 x 43 x 33 mm  
No. 832206

Handle Scales Pair, 140 x 43 x 10 mm  
No. 832207



**I CHESTNUT, STABILISED**  
The horse chestnut is not originally a native plant of Germany. It was not until 1561, that the horse chestnut arrived in Prague via an envoy from Constantinople and spread throughout Europe. Horse chestnut wood is used for furniture making and carving.

Pen Blank, 140 x 22 x 22 mm  
No. 832220

Block, 140 x 43 x 33 mm  
No. 832218

Handle Scales, Pair, 140 x 43 x 10 mm  
No. 832219

### WORKSHOP

#### CLASSIC

### KNIFE MAKING

A KNIFE AFTER YOUR FANCY

**Content:** Create your very own, individual knife. A wide range of high-quality Japanese multi-layered steel blades with 3 to 32 layers will be provided. You will design the handle and the guard and learn to fit the blade into the handle, to grind and to sharpen the blade.

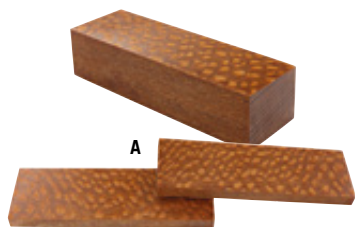
► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



Raffir® Stabilised Poplar Burl/Red



For Raffir® Stabilised Plane Tree see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**A LACEWOOD, STABILISED**

Lacewood is a wood species that grows in South America, Central America, Mexico and the Caribbean. If the medullary rays are cut correctly, it features an extremely decorative, lace-like pattern. Its reddish-brown base colour also provides an extraordinary contrast.

Block, 140 x 43 x 33 mm  
**No. 832209**

Handle Scales Pair, 140 x 43 x 10 mm  
**No. 832210**

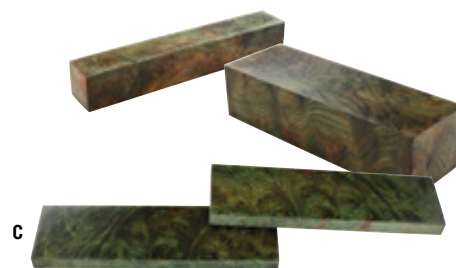
**B ELM BURL, STABILISED**

Obtained from roots or burls.

Pen Blank, 140 x 22 x 22 mm  
**No. 832214**

Block, 140 x 43 x 33 mm  
**No. 832212**

Handle Scales Pair, 140 x 43 x 10 mm  
**No. 832213**

**C ELM BURL, GREEN, STABILISED**

Obtained from roots or burls.

Pen Blank, 140 x 22 x 22 mm  
**No. 832217**

Block, 140 x 43 x 33 mm  
**No. 832215**

Handle Scales Pair, 140 x 43 x 10 mm  
**No. 832216**

**D THUJA BURL, STABILISED**

Extraordinarily patterned thuja burl, originating in Morocco, Tunisia and Northern Algeria. Obtained from roots or burls.

Pen Blank, 140 x 22 x 22 mm  
**No. 832227**

Handle Scales Pair, 140 x 43 x 10 mm  
**No. 832211**

**E STABILISED CONES**

Due to their porous and partly soft structure, it is not very easy to turn cones. In order to adjust the cone material to the hardness of the casting resin and thus to obtain a homogeneous material, we offer cones stabilised with resin (pressure treated). As this is a natural product, the sizes may vary slightly.

**1 Mountain Pine**

Combined with RosinLegnin epoxy resin, this stabilised mountain pine cone is ideal for turning jewellery or pens. Size approx. 60 x 50 mm  
**No. 832230**

**2 Fir**

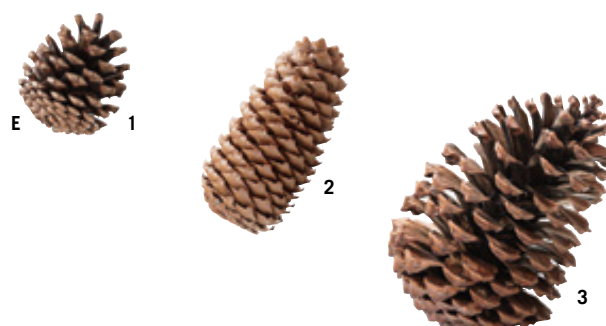
These fir cones are perfect for producing pen blanks. Due to their stabilisation, they can be turned very easily in combination with epoxy resin.

Size approx. 100 x 50 mm  
**No. 832229**

**3 Pine**

Large stabilised pine cone for turned objects, but also perfect for decoration purposes. Combined with RosinLegnin epoxy resin, it is ideal for unique turnery projects.

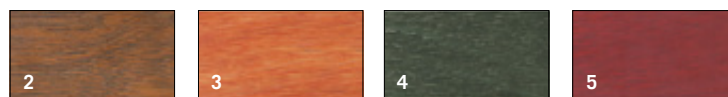
Size approx. 150 x 100 mm  
**No. 832228**

**F VULCANIZED FIBRE**

Vulcanized fibre is a composite material made from paper. It is ideal as a layer between tang and handle materials to enhance appearance.



250 x 130 x 0.4 mm	black		<b>No. 719641</b>
250 x 130 x 0.4 mm	rust-red		<b>No. 719642</b>
250 x 130 x 0.8 mm	black		<b>No. 719577</b>
250 x 125 x 0.8 mm	red		<b>No. 719643</b>
250 x 130 x 0.8 mm	white		<b>No. 719578</b>
250 x 130 x 0.8 mm	rust-red		<b>No. 719579</b>
250 x 125 x 1.0 mm	blue		<b>No. 719644</b>
250 x 125 x 1.0 mm	yellow		<b>No. 719645</b>
250 x 125 x 1.0 mm	green		<b>No. 719646</b>

**G PAKKA WOOD HANDLE SCALES, PAIR**

Pakka wood is the collective term for impregnated veneers which are laminated under high pressure. If used for knife handles, the shape of the handle brings



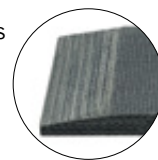
out the different wood layers which results in an attractive look. Our blocks are made from coloured birch veneers which are completely saturated with synthetic resin. This procedure makes the material water-resistant and easy workable. Can be durably glued to metal tangs with epoxy glue.

120 x 35 x 8 mm

- 1** black  
**No. 719563**  
**2** dark brown  
**No. 719564**  
**3** light brown  
**No. 719852**  
**4** green  
**No. 719850**  
**5** burgundy  
**No. 719851**

## Micarta

Micarta is one of the most favoured handle materials in knife making - even for fine collector's knives. There are good reasons for this: Micarta is produced using a special high pressure procedure which combines absorbent material (cellulose material, linen etc.) with epoxy resin. The resulting material is almost indestructible and resistant against oils and chemicals. Paper Micarta feels slip free and very comfortable in the hand, even under wet or cold conditions. The material can be easily refined by applying scrimshaw, engraving and carving.



**A PAPER MICARTA, WHITE**  
Tough and elegant:  
Ideal for applying scrimshaw, base  
material paper.  
254 x 38 x 3 mm  
**No. 800348**  
254 x 38 x 6 mm  
**No. 800349**  
254 x 38 x 10 mm  
**No. 720043**



**B PAPER MICARTA, BLACK**  
Tough and elegant:  
Ideal for applying scrimshaw, base  
material paper.  
254 x 38 x 3 mm  
**No. 720044**  
254 x 38 x 6 mm  
**No. 720045**  
254 x 38 x 10 mm  
**No. 720046**

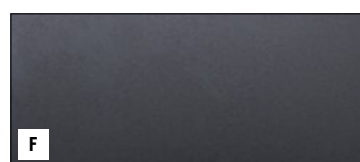
**C LINEN MICARTA, BLACK**  
Very fine structure, made of numerous  
layers of linen.  
254 x 38 x 3 mm  
**No. 831409**  
254 x 38 x 6 mm  
**No. 831410**

**D CANVAS MICARTA, BLACK**  
Made of numerous layers of canvas.  
254 x 38 x 3 mm  
**No. 831417**  
254 x 38 x 6 mm  
**No. 831418**



► Slight colour variations are possible.

**E CANVAS MICARTA, GREEN**  
Made of numerous layers of canvas.  
254 x 38 x 3 mm  
**No. 831423**  
254 x 38 x 6 mm  
**No. 831424**  
254 x 38 x 9.5 mm  
**No. 831425**



**F KYDEX®, BLACK**  
Kydex is a thermoplastic material  
that is suitable for a wide variety of

possible applications. The hard and  
resistant material is frequently used  
- as an alternative to leather - for the  
production of knife sheaths or holsters.  
It is also suitable for e.g. model and  
mould making. The plates soften when  
heated slowly (from 130-160 °C) and  
are then pressed over an object or a  
mould. After cooling down, they are  
easy to work with (e.g. trim, drill, mill,  
etc.). Kydex plates are of low flamma-

bility (in accordance with DIN 4102  
B1 UL 94V-0), scratch- and impact-  
resistant, weatherproof and resistant to  
chemicals.

300 x 200 x 1.5 mm  
**No. 720050**  
300 x 200 x 1.8 mm  
**No. 720020**  
300 x 200 x 2 mm  
**No. 720051**



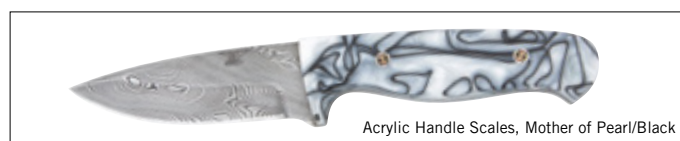
► Riveting tool and eyelets  
available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

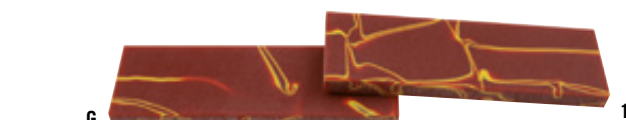
## Acrylic

Vibrant and colourful:

Acrylic is an excellent material to work with, as well as being resistant to  
scratching, weather and ageing. Even medium-concentration acids and  
bases cannot damage it. Compared to polyester, it is much more stable and  
heat-resistant. An optimum finish is achieved by using a polishing paste  
after wet sanding with micro-mesh.



Acrylic Handle Scales, Mother of Pearl/Black



**G ACRYLIC HANDLE SCALES, PAIR**  
125 x 40 x 9 mm

**1 red/yellow**  
**No. 831460**  
**2 blue/red/white**  
**No. 831388**  
**3 grey/red**  
**No. 831387**

**4 mother of pearl/black**  
**No. 831463**  
**5 chocolate**  
**No. 831462**  
**6 ocean blue/yellow**  
**No. 831461**  
**7 amber/black**  
**No. 831449**

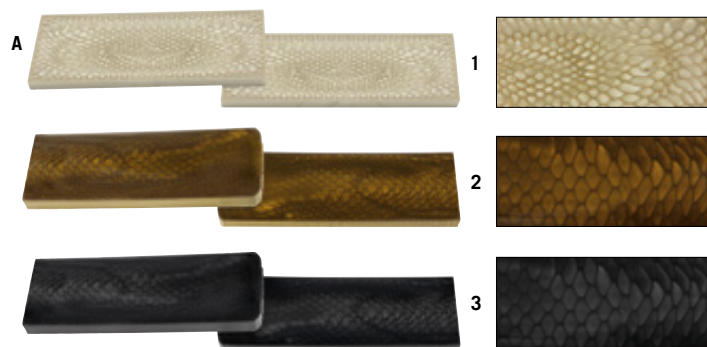
**8 jade**  
**No. 831448**  
**9 salmon mother of pearl/black**  
**No. 831447**  
**10 carbon**  
**No. 831428**  
**11 jungle**  
**No. 831429**

**12 ruby pearl**  
**No. 831610**  
**13 blue vein**  
**No. 831611**  
**14 turquoise pearl**  
**No. 831612**  
**15 violet/yellow**  
**No. 831792**



## Juma/Elforyn

Universal material, e.g. for creating artwork, jewellery, knife handles and inlays, right through to artistic turnery. This versatile material is composed of mineral base materials and resin components and allows very fine surfaces with a pleasant surface feel. Excellent for drilling, sawing, turning, grinding and polishing and unaffected by finishes. Resistant to all commonly used detergents, oils, greases, medium-concentration acids and bases. Ultra-hard surface and little abrasion. Very low water absorption. Thermo-formable in hot water.



### A JUMA HANDLE SCALES

Unique material structure with 3D reptile skin effect.  
120 x 40 x 10 mm

1 *Ivory Snake*  
No. 831472

2 *Golden Dragon*  
No. 831470

3 *Carbon*  
No. 831768

B



### B ELFORYN ALTERNATIVE IVORY, BLOCK

Natural ivory grain structure and look, permanently light-fast, no yellowing. Allows translucent and fluorescent effects.  
120 x 40 x 30 mm  
No. 831476



### C JUMA BLACK

Homogeneous, deep-black material structure.  
120 x 40 x 10 mm  
No. 831475  
120 x 40 x 30 mm  
No. 831474

C



## Alternative Ivory made of Polyester

The high-grade alternative ivory made of polyester comes astoundingly close to real ivory, which derives from protected species. The colour and fine grain give the material a natural appearance. Alternative ivory is good to work with and can be polished to a high gloss finish.

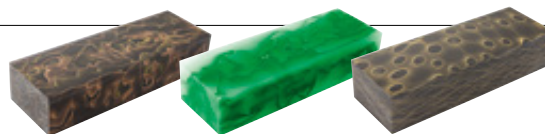


### D ALTERNATIVE IVORY, HANDLE SCALE

254 x 35 x 3 mm  
No. 831414

254 x 35 x 6 mm  
No. 831415

254 x 35 x 9.5 mm  
No. 831416



► Raffir® Noble composites, also with luminescent effect, available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### E ALTERNATIVE IVORY, BLOCK

Ideal for buttons, jewellery, knife handles with a hidden or full tang and for making musical instruments.  
130 x 35 x 25 mm  
No. 831172

E



## RosinLegnin Epoxy Resin Systems

### F ROSINLEGNIN EPOXY RESIN SYSTEM FOR WOOD APPLICATIONS

Epoxy resin system, ideal for applications involving wood for hobbyists. With minimal bubble formation, good results are achieved even without a vacuum chamber. The completely hardened resin is easy to fashion using woodworking tools, and is ideal for turning. The crystal clear resin can be dyed in a transparent

or opaque colour. Resin that is crystal clear or dyed white becomes yellow over time, so the use of UV stabiliser (No. 450411) is also recommended. The epoxy resin is almost odourless and the build-up of heat is also reduced, allowing even dishwasher-safe plastics to be used as moulds. Depending on layer thickness, the hardening process requires 12–24 hours per coat. Max. recommended layer

F



thickness per coat: 20 mm.  
Shelf life at least 12 months from purchase of the pack.

*Harmful if swallowed. Harmful in contact with skin. Causes severe skin burns and eye damage. May cause an allergic skin reaction. Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects. Harmful if inhaled. Causes serious eye irritation. Toxic in contact with skin. Causes serious eye damage. Causes skin irritation.*

500 g resin, 250 g hardener  
No. 450400  
1 kg resin, 500 g hardener  
No. 450413  
2 kg resin, 1 kg hardener  
No. 450414

G



### G COLLOMIX LX 70 S MIXING PADDLE

This paddle is especially suitable for stirring up to 15 litres of the RosinLegnin epoxy resin system, paints or other viscous materials. The special propeller design creates a strong current, so that the mixing work can be done effortlessly and quickly. Hex shaft for mounting on a drill or cordless driver.  
70 x 350 mm  
No. 727915

Spheres made of epoxy resin, birch and fluttering elm burl by Josef Schoppe.



**A ROSINLEGNIN BUBBLE-RELEASE AGENT, TRANSPARENT**  
Liquid additive with de-foaming and de-aerating effect for RosinLegnin epoxy resin (No. 450400 / 450413 / 450414). Prevents from surface foaming and removes gas bubbles during hardening. A quantity of 0.3-1.2 % (0.3-1.2 g per 100 g resin mixture) is added to the total mixture. A plastic pipette providing a

drop size of 0.03 g is included to allow more precise dosage.  
20 ml

*May be fatal if swallowed and enters airways. Harmful to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

**No. 450415**



**B ROSINLEGNIN UV STABILISER FOR EPOXY RESIN, TRANSPARENT**  
A solution of highly effective UV stabilisers with a high degree of transparency for RosinLegnin epoxy resins (No. 450400 / 450413 / 450414). A quantity of 3 % (max. 3 g per 100 g of resin mixture) in relation to the total mixture is added. A plastic pipette providing drop sizes of 0.03 g is included to allow more precise dosage.  
20 ml

*May cause an allergic skin reaction. Very toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects.*

**No. 450411**



**C PLASTIC PIPETTE**  
Transparent pipettes for dosing dyes, additives, etc. With graduated scale in 0.5 ml divisions. Full content 3 ml, length 16 cm. One drop corresponds to approx. 0.04 g (water).  
2 pieces **No. 727641**  
10 pieces **Price advantage No. 727642**



**D ROSINLEGNIN DYE PASTES FOR EPOXY RESIN, OPAQUE**  
Highly concentrated, easy-to-dose dye paste for RosinLegnin epoxy resin (No. 450400 / 450413 / 450414). A quantity of up to 5 % (max. 5 g per 100 g of resin mixture) is added. Dyes can be mixed together and also combined with transparent dye concentrates (No. 450401-05).

20 g  
1 yellow **No. 450406**  
2 blue **No. 450407**  
3 black **No. 450408**  
4 red **No. 450409**  
5 white **No. 450410**



**E ROSINLEGNIN DYE CONCENTRATES FOR EPOXY RESIN, TRANSPARENT**  
Highly concentrated, easy-to-dose dye concentrate for RosinLegnin epoxy resin (No. 450400 / 450413 / 450414). A quantity of up to 1 % (max. 1 g per 100 g of resin mixture) is added. Dyes can be mixed together and also combined with opaque colour pastes (No. 450406-410).  
20 ml

*Leak-proof glass bottle*

1 red **No. 450401**  
2 violet **No. 450402**  
3 blue **No. 450403**  
4 yellow **No. 450404**  
5 green **No. 450422**  
6 turquoise light **No. 450405**  
7 black **No. 450421**



**F ROSINLEGNIN MOULD, PEN BLANK**  
Silicone mould for casting pen blanks. With this mould you can easily cast resin pen blanks. No more trouble with leaking or sticking moulds. Exactly

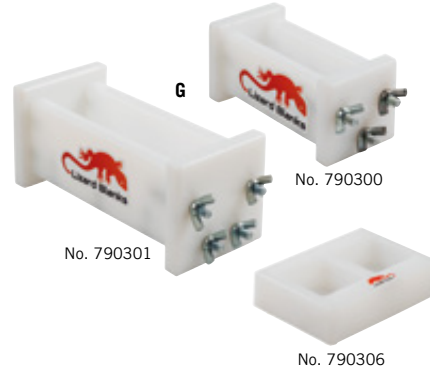
repeatable dimensions and high-gloss surfaces. The transparent mould is colour-neutral and translucent, so that colour combinations can be cast without discolouring. Additional ribs ensure stability. 5 pen blanks per mould,

dimensions of the finished pen blanks: 150 x 22 x 22 mm.  
1 piece **No. 714173**  
3 pieces **Price advantage No. 714174**

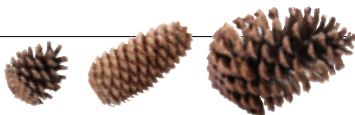


**G LIZARD BLANKS EPOXY RESIN MOULD**  
Stable, leak-proof and easy to remove: High-quality casting mould made of technical plastic for the extremely easy production of identically shaped epoxy resin blocks. The attached wing screws allow the casting mould to be firmly screwed down before use, thus preventing the liquid resin from escaping. To remove the cast object, the wing screws are loosened after the casting process and the side wall is removed. Leak-proof construction due to dovetail joints and milled grooves.

Shape	Interior dimensions
Mini Pen Blank <b>No. 790300</b>	102 x 27 x 32 mm.
Pen Blank <b>No. 790302</b>	150 x 27 x 32 mm
Double Pen Blank <b>No. 790304</b>	152 x 51 x 32 mm
Knife Handle <b>No. 790301</b>	153 x 38 x 45 mm
Mountain Pine Cone <b>No. 790307</b>	76 x 76 x 76 mm
Pine Cone <b>No. 790305</b>	127 x 127 x 127 mm
Fir Cone <b>No. 790303</b>	152 x 45 x 52 mm
Double Ring <b>No. 790306</b>	38 x 38 x 19 mm (2 pcs.)



► For stabilised cones see page 318.

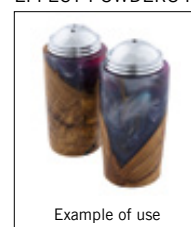


**H ROSINLEGNIN METALLIC POWDERS FOR EPOXY RESIN**  
The iridescent powder is added to the resin mixture to create a metallic effect. Can be combined with all RosinLegnin colours. Easy dosing powder for RosinLegnin epoxy resin (No. 450400 / 450413 / 450414). Add up to 7 %

(max 7 g per 100 g resin mixture).  
20 g  
1 gold **No. 727633**  
2 silver **No. 727634**  
3 copper **No. 727635**



**I ROSINLEGNIN MOTHER-OF-PEARL EFFECT POWDERS FOR EPOXY RESIN**



Example of use

The iridescent powder is added to the resin mixture to create a mother-of-pearl effect. Can be combined with all RosinLegnin colours. Easy-to-dose powder for RosinLegnin

epoxy resin (No. 450400 / 450413 / 450414). Add up to 7 % (max 7 g per 100 g resin mixture).  
30 g  
1 gold-pearl **No. 727603**  
2 silver **No. 727604**  
3 crystal white **No. 727605**

## A IMITATION STONE FOR INLAY WORK

The dyed stone nuggets and granules are embedded in cracks, grooves or drill holes and serve as decoration inlays with a stone-like appearance. Unlike real stone, the synthetic stones can be machined and processed with regular tools and abrasive paper. The colours are especially bright - a rare thing among natural stones.

**Use:** The nuggets are placed in the hollow spaces and the granules fill the remaining holes. The hollow spaces are then filled with instant adhesive (No. 450375) or cast resin. It is recommended choosing nuggets and granules of different colours but from the same range of colours. For an even more realistic appearance, you can use several colours of nuggets and granules.



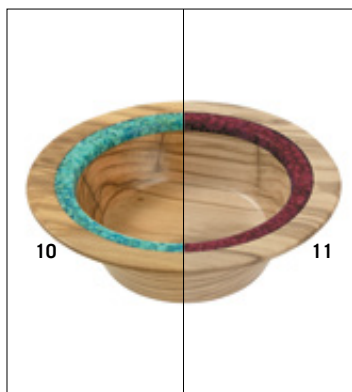
### 10 Set, Turquoise-like Appearance

#### Price advantage

With this basic set, it is possible to create beautiful inlays with a turquoise-like appearance. Set includes: No. 451744, 451593 and 450375.

*Harmful if inhaled. Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause respiratory irritation.*

No. 451750



Example of use



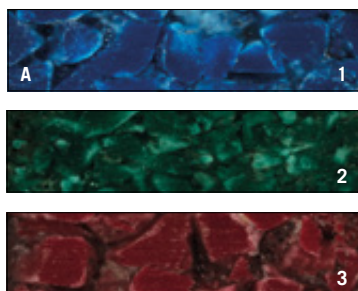
### 11 Set, Jasper-like Appearance

#### Price advantage

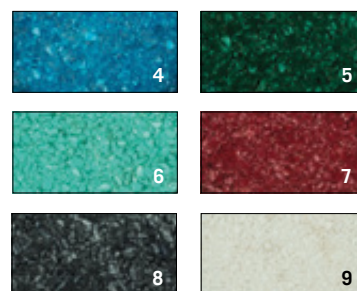
With this basic set, it is possible to create beautiful inlays with a jasper-like appearance. Set includes: No. 451748, 451596 and 450375.

*Harmful if inhaled. Causes skin irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause respiratory irritation.*

No. 451751



**Granules**  
110 g  
4 blue  
No. 451742  
5 emerald green  
No. 451743  
6 turquoise  
No. 451744  
7 bright red  
No. 451745  
8 black  
No. 451748  
9 white  
No. 451749



## Nuggets

Content: 110 g

- 1 blue  
No. 451593
- 2 emerald green  
No. 451594
- 3 bright red  
No. 451596

## Imitation Tortoise Shell

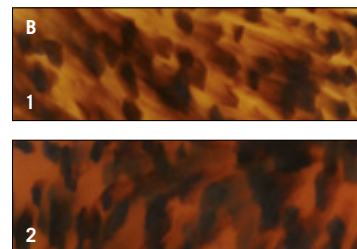
This material is made of casein proteins and looks almost identical to natural tortoise shell. It is ideal for restoration work, inlays and jewellery. The material is easy to process and feels extremely supple. Like other natural materials (wood, ivory), the casein surfaces should not be exposed to constant wet conditions. For glueing we recommend Titebond II Premium. To bring the best out of glued imitation tortoise shell, the transparent sheets are often backed with coloured paper. This emphasises the colour and hides the background grain pattern.

## B IMITATION TORTOISE SHELL SHEETS

Ideal for intarsia and restoration work.  
180 x 150 x 4 mm

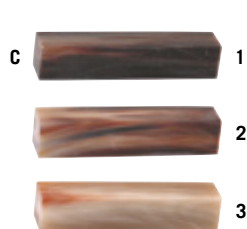
- 1 yellow with brown pattern  
No. 831450
- 2 reddish brown with black pattern  
No. 831451

► For the recommended Titebond glue see chapter »Surface Design«, page 292.



## Horn

Horn can be worked relatively easily by sawing, sanding, turning or carving, it polishes well and can be reshaped after heating. Unlike plastic, horn is non-static, regulates moisture well and is gentle on the skin.



## C WATUSSI HORN SQUARES

Horn squares made from African Watussi cattle, ideal for small turnery, jewellery, inlay etc. 75 x 15 x 15 mm

- 1 dark No. 831035
- 2 medium No. 831036
- 3 light No. 831037



## D BUFFALO HORN TIP PIECE

These especially dense horns from African Zebu buffalos are ideal for amulets, brooches, buttons, bowls, spoons, knife handles, pipe mouthpieces and many other objects. Completely solid tip pieces.  
Ø 30-40 mm  
Overall length 150-200 mm  
Weight between 70-250 g

Prices and sizes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## E BUFFALO HORN TIP

Polished water buffalo horn tips, suitable for bow tips, jewellery, furniture handles and other small objects.  
Ø 20-25 mm  
Overall length 60-70 mm

No. 831033



## F BUFFALO HORN, ROLLS

Solid horn roll made from a single piece of buffalo horn, which is easy to turn, carve and grind. A fine material for decorative objects, furniture knobs and knife handles, pens, mouthpieces, buttons or inlays. Black horn with partially white lines.

Diameter x overall length

- 1 Ø 8 x 100 mm  
No. 832151
- 2 Ø 10 x 100 mm  
No. 832152
- 3 Ø 18 x 100 mm  
No. 832153
- 4 Ø 20 x 150 mm  
No. 832154
- 5 Ø 25 x 115 mm  
No. 832160

## G BUFFALO HORN BLOCK, BLACK, POLISHED

The horn of the African water buffalo is a magical natural material. It can be easily worked by turning, carving or sanding. Its

dimensions make it ideal for producing knife handles. Black horn with some white lines. Sanded and polished.  
100 x 50 x 20 mm

No. 832178





**A COW HORN PLATE**

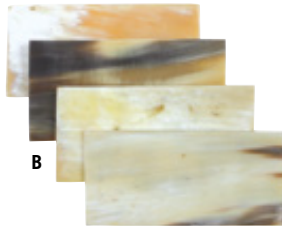
Norman cow horn plates which have been steam-heated and pressed. Due to their lively yellow-brown pattern and transparency, they look just like (protected) tortoise shell. Suitable for intarsia, restoring (in place of tortoise shell), jewellery and lighting objects.

Thickness 4-8 mm

Weight between 60-330 g



Prices and sizes see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**B COLOURED COW HORN, PLATE**

The vividly structured horn of the Indian and African cow (*Bos Indicus*) is a fantastic natural material. It is easy to work by turning, carving, sanding or steam bending to make vessels, knife handles, musical instruments, inlays or other unique objects. Sanded and polished.

100 x 50 x 3-4 mm

No. 831058

**C COW HORN PLATE, FLAT, TRANSPARENT**

The lively markings and translucency make it ideal for inlay work and art and craft objects. In restoration, it can be used as a substitute for tortoise shell.

160 x 60 x 2 mm

No. 831089

**D BUFFALO HORN PLATE, BLACK, POLISHED**

The horn of the African water buffalo is a fantastic natural material. It is easy to work by turning, carving, sanding or steam bending. When used as a knife handle, it can be refined with white ornaments using the scrimshaw technique.

Sanded and polished.

100 x 50 x 3-4 mm

No. 831224

**E STAG HORN CROWN PIECE**

Stag horn crowns are rarities especially sought after by scrimshaw artists. Their high density makes detailed work possible, which is in beautiful contrast to the pedicle shell. Also suitable for inlays, small turnery and ornamental items. Base sanded and polished. Height approx. 30 mm. Ø 50-60 mm.

No. 831060



Example of use

**G BUFFALO HORN PLATE, EXTRA LONG**

Plates made from the extra long, black horns of the Indian water buffalo (*Bubalus bubalis*), a domesticated and not endangered species. The plates are well-suited for making jewellery, inlay, mouthpieces etc.

Width approx. 35-40 mm.

Thickness 3-4 mm

Overall length 350-400 mm

No. 831031

**F STAG BURR**

The discs from the antler pedicles are used for the finest handicrafts. Traditionally, they are carved and decorate the »Lederhose« (traditional Bavarian leather trousers) and traditional accessories. Using the scrimshaw technique you can create artistic decorative objects with an attractive pedicle shell. Also suitable for inlays and turnery work. Height approx. 20 mm.

Ø 50-60 mm

No. 831394

**H REINDEER ANTLER**

Pieces of reindeer antlers, ideal for knife handle tips, handle scales and connecting pieces.

Ø 20-30 mm

Overall length 100-300 mm

Weight between 70-250 g



For prices and sizes see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Other Animal Materials

**I CAMEL BONE, HANDLE SCALES, HALF-ROUND**

Smooth white camel-bone plates for use as knife handle scales, ornaments or inlays.

125 x 35 x 6 mm (half round)

No. 719574

Natural materials slightly differ in shape, colour, structure and size.

**J BONE PLATES**

For making knife handle scales, inlays, jewellery and as a replacement for elephant ivory. Hard and resistant to wear, easy to sand and finish. Made from thick-walled, sterilized water buffalo bones.

55 x 18 x 5 mm

No. 831154

55 x 18 x 2 mm

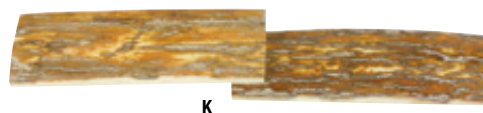
No. 831155

95 x 32 x 4-6 mm

No. 831156

95 x 32 x 2 mm

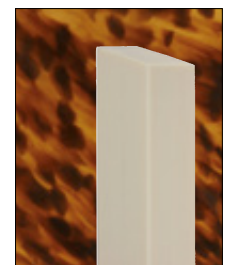
No. 831157

**K MAMMOTH HANDLE SCALES, BROWN**

The fascinating, 10 000 year old relics are the fossilized tusks of the Siberian woolly mammoths (*Mammuthus primigenius*). The pieces offered here have a lively surface pattern, polished, with a flat ground back. Can be used as handle scales, for turning an ordinary knife into a unique rarity.

55 x 18 x 5 mm

No. 831090



► For alternative ivory and imitation tortoise shell sheets see pages 320 and 322.

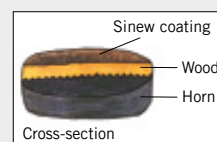


**A OSTRICH SINEWS, 5-PIECE SET**  
Ideal for laminated backings on wooden or composite bows. The lamination increases draw strength and prevents breakage of the bow. Almost unlimited durability when stored under dry conditions. These sinews are dried gently and

so keep their elasticity after drying. 7-9 sinews are adequate for one composite bow. Every sinew has approx. 10-30 g. Overall length 300 mm  
**No. 831247**

### Ostrich sinews

Because of their length and high quality, ostrich sinews are perfect for laminated backings on wooden or composite bows. The lamination (backing) with shredded sinew prevents breakage and reinforces the bow. The sinew fibres can also be used for the traditional bow string splices.



### Horse Hair


Horse hair has long been used for manufacturing brushes, upholstery, woven fabrics, string, rope, handles and even jewellery and artistic objects. Its toughness, elasticity and pleasantness to the touch make it suitable for a variety of applications. For example, not only is braiding or the »hitching« technique used to create horse accessories, but also beautiful armbands and decorative objects from multi-coloured horse hair. The hair we offer is sorted in China according to length and colour, and chemically cleaned and disinfected multiple times.

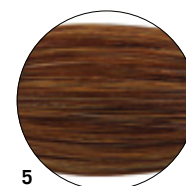
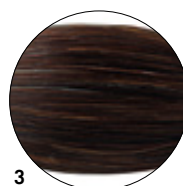
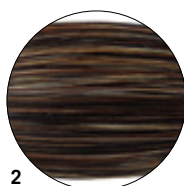


**B HORSE HAIR, BUNDLES**  
Natural colour, very strong, silky gloss. Overall length 635-730 mm. 500 g.

- 1 black  
**No. 820085**
- 2 mixed  
**No. 820081**
- 3 dark brown  
**No. 820082**
- 4 brown  
**No. 820091**
- 5 light brown  
**No. 820093**




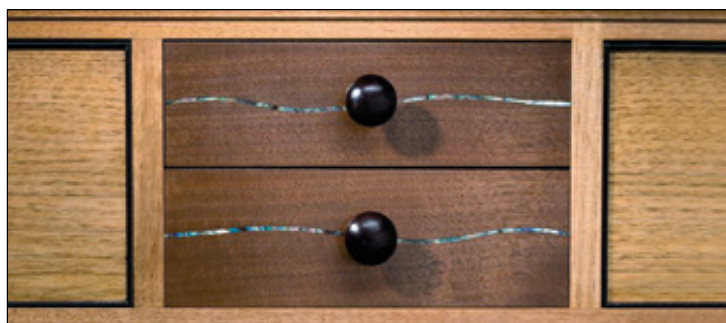
 For white horse hair see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### Mother-of-Pearl

Mother-of-pearl is one of the most fascinating natural materials known to humankind. Its magical glossiness and intriguing array of colors make it perfect for enhancing the appearance of turnery, furniture, caskets, toys and musical instruments. It is easy to work and polish and therefore ideal for intarsia, marquetry and jewellery applications. The white, pink, black and gold mother-of-pearl is harvested from the saltwater pearl (pinctada maxima). The paua mother-of-pearl is harvested from a mussel species (haliotis iris) from the South Seas that has a highly figured and colourful grain (blue/turquoise/green). Colours and materials as shown may vary from the original. Thickness approx. 1.3 mm.

 For further diameters and pack sized of mother-of-pearl eyes see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



Drawer front inlay by Garrett Hack



**C MOTHER-OF-PEARL, IRREGULAR PLATES**  
Random assortments of sizes. 50 g (5-10 plates). From 20 x 30 mm to 40 x 60 mm.

- 1 white **No. 830845**
- 2 black **No. 830846**
- 3 gold **No. 830847**

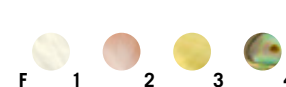
**D MOTHER-OF-PEARL, SQUARES**  
5 pieces. 20 x 20 mm

- 1 white **No. 830800**
- 2 black **No. 830802**
- 3 paua **No. 830804**



**E MOTHER-OF-PEARL, EYES, Ø 10 MM**  
Circular pieces. 20 pieces.

- 1 white **No. 830818**
- 2 pink **No. 830824**
- 3 gold **No. 830836**
- 4 paua **No. 830842**



**F MOTHER-OF-PEARL, EYES, Ø 5 MM**  
Circular pieces. 20 pieces.

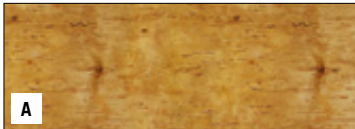
- 1 white **No. 830816**
- 2 pink **No. 830822**
- 3 gold **No. 830834**
- 4 paua **No. 830840**



# Birch Bark

## Birch Bark

The soft and flexible bark of the birch tree is also called birch leather. It contains essential oils with a natural preserving effect, which makes it ideal for making food containers. The leathery bark has traditionally been shaped to form vessels, shoes, backpacks, knife sheaths, mats and baskets using sewing and tucking techniques - a material with almost limitless possibilities. But it also has many technical and usage-related advantages. Birch bark is extremely durable, very light (380-550 kg/m<sup>3</sup>), fungistatic and bacteriostatic, water-repellent, highly moisture-resistant, slip-proof even when wet, easy-care, sustainable and ecologically produced. This birch bark is from Siberia. Central European bark is too thin for use in handicrafts.



**A BIRCH BARK**

35 x 20 cm  
**No. 831339**  
 60 x 20 cm  
**No. 831338**  
 50 x 40 cm  
**No. 831337**



**B BIRCH BARK KNIFE HANDLE**  
 Birch bark is fungistatic and bacteriostatic, water-repellent, moisture-resistant and slip-proof even when wet. With walnut ferrule. Tang hole is pre-drilled (10 x 6 x 85 mm).  
 125 x 23 x 27 mm  
**No. 760110**



**C BM1 BIRCH BARK BLANK**  
 Highly versatile - for making handles (knives, fishing rods, door handles, shaving brushes), turnery work, artwork, jewellery, etc. bm1 is not only pleasing to the eye with its interesting texture but also has a smooth, warm feel.  
 Core hole Ø 6.



*Application example*

Ø 31 mm  
 Ø 31 mm x 100 mm length  
**No. 760108**  
 Ø 41 mm  
 Ø 41 mm x 100 mm length  
**No. 760109**



► For leather, paper and suitable tools see chapter »Leather, paper and tools«.

## Semi-finished Metal Products

### Rods

To be used as rivets to fix handle scales to the blade blank or also for decoration purpose.



**D BRASS RODS, ROUND**  
 Length 200 mm.  
 Ø  
 2 mm **No. 719804**  
 3 mm **No. 719805**  
 4 mm **No. 719806**  
 6 mm **No. 719807**



**E STAINLESS STEEL RODS, ROUND**  
 Length 200 mm.  
 Ø  
 2 mm **No. 719800**  
 3 mm **No. 719801**  
 4 mm **No. 719802**  
 6 mm **No. 719803**



**F NICKEL SILVER RODS, ROUND**  
 Length 200 mm.  
 Ø  
 2 mm **No. 719808**  
 3 mm **No. 719809**  
 4 mm **No. 719810**  
 6 mm **No. 719811**

### Tubings

To be used for a thong hole in your knife handle or for making mosaic pins. The inner diameter is 1 mm less than the indicated outer diameter.

**G BRASS TUBINGS**  
 Length 200 mm.  
 Ø  
 4 mm **No. 719815**  
 6 mm **No. 719816**  
 8 mm **No. 719817**



**H STAINLESS STEEL TUBINGS**  
 Length 200 mm.  
 Ø  
 4 mm **No. 719812**  
 6 mm **No. 719813**  
 8 mm **No. 719814**







### Mosaic pins

Give your knife handle scales a touch of class with these fetching mosaic pins. The rosette-shaped pattern is composed of fine brass, copper and stainless steel wires cased in a high-strength brass tube. Also suitable for embedding in jewellery and decorative art.



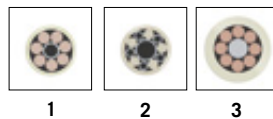
**A MOSAIC PINS, STAINLESS STEEL**  
Length 100 mm.

- Ø  
1 6.4 mm  
**No. 830890**  
2 6.4 mm  
**No. 830891**  
3 8.0 mm  
**No. 830892**  
4 8.0 mm  
**No. 830893**  
5 8.0 mm  
**No. 830894**  
6 9.5 mm  
**No. 830895**  
7 9.5 mm  
**No. 830896**



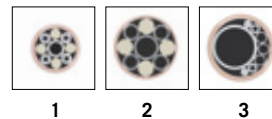
**B MOSAIC PINS, BRASS**  
Length 100 mm.

- Ø  
1 4.8 mm  
**No. 830880**  
2 4.8 mm  
**No. 830881**  
3 6.4 mm  
**No. 830882**



**C MOSAIC PINS, COPPER**  
Length 100 mm.

- Ø  
1 4.8 mm  
**No. 830910**  
2 6.4 mm  
**No. 830911**  
3 6.4 mm  
**No. 830912**



### D CORBY SCREW RIVETS

Corby screw rivets are ideal for joining knife handles on fully integral knives or handle scales.

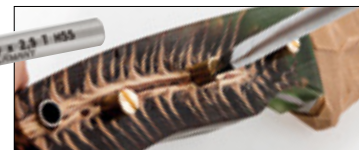


- 1 Brass**  
Length when screwed 27–approx.  
31 mm.  
Ø head Ø shaft  
6 mm 2.5 mm  
**No. 790308**  
8 mm 3.3 mm  
**No. 790309**

- 2 Stainless Steel**  
Length when screwed 27–approx.  
31 mm.  
Ø head Ø shaft  
6 mm 2.5 mm  
**No. 790310**  
8 mm 3.3 mm  
**No. 790311**



- E PILOTED COUNTERBORE,**  
HSS, DIN 373  
Piloted counterbore for countersinking cap screws. The smooth shank serves as a guide in the drill hole and the cutting diameter indicates the size of the cut for head screw and head. Ideal for the use of



- Corby rivets. Shaft diameter 5 mm.  
Overall length 70 mm  
Countersink diameter For borehole diameter  
**1 6 mm 2.5 mm**  
**No. 729597**  
**2 8 mm 3.3 mm**  
**No. 729598**

### F BRASS RIVETS

For the widest variety of materials, in particular to assemble handle scales, join thin components made of wood, metal, plastic, leather, or for decorative purposes. If necessary, the rivets can be cropped, and the heads can be rounded off. They are driven with



a hammer (or with a dimpling punch, if necessary).  
1 pack = 50 capsules and 50 bolts.  
Shaft diameter 4 mm

- Ø head MT\*  
6 mm 11 mm  
**No. 830150**  
6 mm 15 mm  
**No. 830151**  
8.5 mm 25 mm  
**No. 830152**

\* maximum thickness of the materials are to be joined

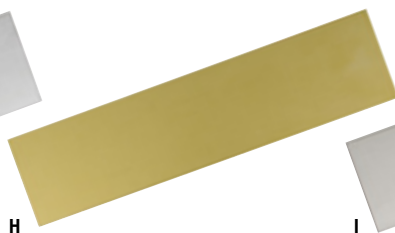


### Sheets

For universal application in knife making, e.g. spacers, handle head plates, decoration.



- G STAINLESS STEEL SHEETS**  
200 x 50 x 0.5 mm  
**No. 719828**  
200 x 50 x 1 mm  
**No. 719829**  
200 x 50 x 2 mm  
**No. 719830**  
200 x 50 x 3 mm  
**No. 719831**  
200 x 50 x 12 mm  
**No. 719837**



- H BRASS SHEETS**  
200 x 50 x 0.5 mm  
**No. 719823**  
200 x 50 x 1 mm  
**No. 719824**  
200 x 50 x 2 mm  
**No. 719825**  
200 x 50 x 3 mm  
**No. 719826**  
200 x 50 x 5 mm  
**No. 719827**  
200 x 50 x 12 mm  
**No. 719838**



- I NICKEL SILVER SHEETS**  
200 x 50 x 0.5 mm  
**No. 719818**  
200 x 50 x 1 mm  
**No. 719819**  
200 x 50 x 2 mm  
**No. 719820**  
200 x 50 x 3 mm  
**No. 719821**  
200 x 50 x 5 mm  
**No. 719822**

- J BRASS BOLSTERS**  
Bolster for the transition between handle and blade.



- 30 x 20 x 2.6 mm  
For blade thickness Slot size  
2.5 mm 15 x 2.5 mm  
**No. 709069**  
3.2 mm 15 x 3.2 mm  
**No. 709101**

- 22 x 15 x 3 mm  
For blade thickness Slot size  
3 mm Slot size 13 x 3 mm  
**No. 830924**

- K BRASS BOLSTER, WITH FINGER GUARD**  
Bolster for the transition between handle and blade.  
35 x 18 x 3 mm  
Slot size 17 x 3.2 mm  
**No. 709609**



# Blades and Blade Blanks

## Blades for Japanese Kitchen Knives

Ready-to-use blade blanks and blades, made of multi-layered steel, that have been hardened. The tang is soft annealed. The blades are not rustproof. Supplied with processing instructions.

### A BLADE BLANKS WITH BLACK FORGED SKIN, 3 LAYERS

Triple-layered blade blanks with black forged skin and a cutting edge layer of White Paper Steel. The blades must be polished and sharpened. Double bevel. Not rust-proof. Hardness 61 HRC.



**1 Santoku**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
**No. 719553**



**3 Gyuto 180 mm**  
Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
**No. 719591**



**2 Gyuto 135 mm**  
Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 719590**



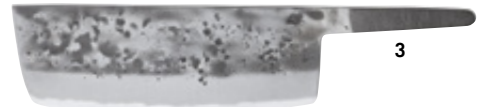
**4 Usuba**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
**No. 719554**

### B TADAFUSA NASHIJI BLADE BLANKS, 3 LAYERS

The forged skin with hammered structure gives the triple-layered blade blank an original and rustic appearance. The core cutting layer of Blue Paper Steel is sharpened and polished ready-to-use, the outer layers are made of rustproof steel, which makes it easier to care for. Not rustproof. Double bevel. Hardness 63 HRC.



**1 Santoku**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
**No. 721060**



**3 Usuba**  
Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
**No. 721061**



**2 Gyuto**  
Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 205 mm  
**No. 721062**



**4 Sujihiki**  
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 345 mm  
**No. 721063**

## WORKSHOP

CLASSIC

## DAMASCUS BLADE FROM JAPANESE STEEL



**Content:** We will forge a Damascus blade from White Paper Steel and a previously prepared, multi-layered Suminagashi steel blank. Apart from forging the Damascus bar, grinding, hardening, and annealing the blade will also be taught in this course. In the end, we will make a handle from precious wood and fit it onto the knife.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



**A DAMASCUS BLADES/BLADE BLANKS, 15 LAYERS**

15-layered blade with a cutting edge layer of White Paper Steel. Double bevel. Not rustproof. Hardness 61 HRC.

Blanks = Must be polished and sharpened.  
Blades = Pre-sharpened and polished ready-to-use.

**1 Santoku**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
Blank **No. 719555**  
Blade **No. 719557**

**2 Gyuto 135 mm**

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
Blank **No. 719592**  
Blade **No. 719594**

**3 Gyuto 180 mm**

Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
Blank **No. 719593**  
Blade **No. 719595**

**4 Usuba**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
Blank **No. 719556**  
Blade **No. 719558**

► For a steel glossary including chemical composition see page 336.

**B BLADES, 3 LAYERS**

The triple-layered Japanese blades with fine hammer marks on the surfaces have been sharpened and polished. The core layer is made of Blue Paper Steel, which is excellent at retaining an edge, and the outer layers are rustproof for easy care. Double bevel, 61 HRC, cutting edge not rustproof. Pre-sharpened and polished ready-to-use.

**1 Santoku**

Blade length 160 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 245 mm  
**No. 719911**

**2 Gyuto**

Blade length 115 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 719918**

**3 Usuba**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 245 mm  
**No. 719912**

**C COMPACT BLADES, 3 LAYERS**

Stainless triple-layered blade, double bevel. The VG-1 cutting edge layer is surrounded by two layers of stainless steel. Pre-sharpened and polished ready-to-use.

**1 Santoku**

Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 1.2 mm  
Overall length 145 mm  
**No. 719657**

**2 Petty**

Blade length 95 mm  
Blade thickness 1.2 mm  
Overall length 135 mm  
**No. 719656**

**3 Usuba**

Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 1.2 mm  
Overall length 145 mm  
**No. 719658**

**D BLADE BLANK AJIKIRI, 3 LAYERS**

For small chopping and rocker knives. Blue Paper Steel core, with black forging skin. Double bevel. Not rustproof. The blade must be polished and sharpened.

Blade length 110 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 719539**

**MESSER MACHEN WIE DIE PROFIS**

Ernst G. Siebeneicher-Hellwig:

This book teaches you how to make your own knife. It starts with a brief introduction to steel and describes the most common handle materials and the required tools. For beginners, the book explains in detail the individual steps involved in making a knife, based on various kits (including hunting knives and folding knives). For advanced knife makers, it contains instructions for developing and making your own knives from scratch. Information on embellishment and decorating techniques complete the book. 128 pages, hardcover, approx. 100 colour photographs, 163 x 219 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713004**

► For a matching finished kitchen knife handle made of padouk (No. 719835) see page 316.





# Blades for Japanese Hunting and Outdoor Knives



**A** DAMASCUS BLADE SWEEP-POINT, 14 LAYERS  
Forged blade for building a hunting or outdoor knife. The central cutting layer with its superbly durable cutting edge is made of Blue Paper Steel. 14 side layers of Suminagashi steel create an entirely

unique look. Hardened to 62 HRC, not rustproof. Pre-sharpened and polished ready-to-use.  
Blade length 115 mm  
Blade thickness 4.8 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
**No. 719647**



**B** DAMASCUS BLADE CLIP POINT, 14 LAYERS  
Clip point blade with black forging skin in the upper section of the blade. Suited for building a hunting or outdoor knife. The central cutting layer made of highly durable Blue Paper Steel is enclosed within 14 side layers of Suminagashi

steel to produce an entirely unique look. Hardened to 62 HRC, not rustproof. Pre-sharpened and polished ready-to-use.  
Blade length 130 mm  
Blade thickness 3.8 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
**No. 719648**



**C** MINIATURE DAMASCUS BLADE, 30 LAYERS  
This blade is ideal to create a pendant or carving knife. The core layer of White Paper Steel is sandwiched between 30 layers of Suminagashi steel. As all blades are handmade, they can vary slightly with regard to form and size. Hardness 62 HRC. Not rustproof. Pre-sharpened

and polished ready-to-use.  
Blade length 40-60 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 90-110 mm  
**No. 709290**



**D** RUSTIC BLADE, 3 LAYERS  
The blade is well suited to make a knife as every day companion, a neck knife or a little hunter for the smaller tasks in the forest. Triple-layered blade with a cutting layer of White Paper Steel. The rough forged surface of the upper part of the blade provides an attractive contrast to

the fine polished cutting layer. Hardness 61 HRC. Not rustproof. Pre-sharpened and polished ready-to-use.  
Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 135 mm  
**No. 709292**

# Blades for Western-Design Hunting and Outdoor Knives



**E** BRUSLETTO® KNIFE BLADE BLANK TROLLUNGEN  
Short blade, ideal for a carving knife. Blade made of rustproof Sandvik Steel 12C27. Hardened to 57 HRC. Annealed tang. Pre-sharpened but not polished.

Blackened surface.  
Blade length 50 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 90 mm  
**No. 709126**



**F** SWEDISH STICK TANG BLADE MADE OF DAMASTEEL® RWL34™  
Ready-to-use blade made of powder metallurgical steel RWL34. This rustproof steel has an excellent edge life as well as an extraordinary sharpness and is therefore ideal for hunting purposes. Hardness

61 HRC. Pre-sharpened and polished ready-to-use.  
Blade length 95 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 155 mm  
**No. 709615**

**G** FROST/MORA BLADE  
Triple-layered carbon steel, for making carving or outdoor knives. Core layer hardness 61 HRC, excellent edge life, sharpens well, not rustproof. Pre-sharpened and polished, ready-to-use.

**1** Blade length 60 mm  
Blade thickness 2.6 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 709211**

**2** Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 2.6 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 709213**

► For more Swedish Damascus blades made of Damasteel® DS93X™ see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► Exceptional, hand-made mosaic Damascus blades by Vlad Matveev (limited edition) available on our website.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Casström

Casström is a family-run company based in Lycksele in the Swedish part of Lapland. The company produces both traditional and modern Nordic utility knives for hunting and outdoor activities.

► For more Casström blades see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**A CASSTRÖM BLADE SAFARI**  
Ready-to-use blade made of rustproof Sandvik steel 12C27. Rivet holes 4 mm, safety strap eyelet 6 mm. Hardness 59 HRC.

Blade length 65 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 160 mm  
40 g  
**No. 727506**



**B CASSTRÖM BLADE NO. 10, K720**  
Ready-to-use blade made of Böhler K720\* tool steel, a robust and easy-to-sharpen steel. Rivet holes 5 and 8 mm, safety strap eyelet 7 mm. Not rustproof, hardened to 59 HRC.

\* Steel analysis:  $C = 0.9 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 2 / Cr = 0.35 / V = 0.1$   
Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 3.6 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
130 g  
**No. 727502**



**C CASSTRÖM BLADE NO. 10, RUST-PROOF, FLAT GRIND**  
Ready-to-use blade made of rustproof Sandvik steel 14C28N\*. Rivet holes 5 mm, safety strap eyelet 7 mm. Hardness 59 HRC.

\* Steel analysis:  $C = 0.62 / Si = 0.2 / Mn = 0.6 / Cr = 14$   
Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 3.6 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
100 g  
**No. 727504**



### D LAURIN CHROME STEEL BLADES, LAPLAND

The hardened blade (58 HRC) is ideal for the production of a Scandinavian knife due to its wide blade shape. Blade of X50CrMoV15 steel, rustproof. Blades come neither sharpened nor polished. Blade thickness 3.25 mm

Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
**No. 830954**



Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
**No. 830955**

Blade length 145 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
**No. 830956**

### E LAURIN CARBON STEEL BLADE, LAPLAND

Due to the wide blade shape it is ideal for the production of a Scandinavian knife. High sharpness due to 80CrV2 carbon steel, not rustproof. Hardened to 58 HRC. Blades come neither sharpened nor polished. Rustic forging skin. Blade thickness 3.25 mm

Blade length 90 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
**No. 830951**



Blade length 120 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
**No. 830952**

Blade length 145 mm  
Overall length 275 mm  
**No. 830953**

**F LAURIN CHROME STEEL BLADE**  
For making Nordic style knives. This Finnish blade made of rustproof X50CrMoV15 steel is hardened to 58 HRC. Good resharpenability. Blades come neither sharpened nor polished. Blade thickness 3.25 mm

Blade length 62 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 830945**



No. 830947 with  
Clip-point blade

Blade length 77 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 830946**



Blade length 85 mm  
Clip-point blade.  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 830947**

Blade length 105 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
**No. 830949**

Blade length 95 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 830948**

Blade length 125 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
**No. 830950**

**G LAURIN CARBON STEEL BLADE**  
Made of carbon steel (80CrV2) for extreme sharpness, not rustproof. The blades, which are hardened to 58 HRC, still require polishing and sharpening. Rustic forging skin. Blade thickness 3.25 mm

Blade length 62 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 830920**



No. 830921 with  
Clip-point blade

Blade length 77 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 830918**



Blade length 85 mm  
Clip-point blade.  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 830921**

Blade length 105 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
**No. 830922**

Blade length 95 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 830919**

Blade length 125 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
**No. 830923**

### Traditional Damascus Blades and Blanks

These beautifully structured Damascus blades with 192 layers are made in the Indus Valley. In order to achieve a high cutting performance, low alloy carbon steel 1095 is forged with nickel steel 15N20. All blades are already etched and hardened to 60 HRC. The edges are not completely sharpened. All you have to do to finish your knife is sharpen the edge, attach the handle scales and maybe bolsters to the tang. These blanks are handmade, they may vary slightly in form and size. Not rustproof.



**A ROUND STICK TANG BLADE BLANKS WITH BOLSTER**  
Forged blade blank for a Bavarian style hunter with a stick (round) tang. Largely finished. Random Damascus.  
Blade thickness 3-4 mm

Overall length 145-215 mm  
Blade length  
70 mm **No. 719832**  
90 mm **No. 719833**  
100 mm **No. 719425**  
110 mm **No. 719426**



Example of use

► For a steel glossary including chemical composition see page 336.



**B STICK TANG BLADE BLANK WITH SWEDGE**

**1 Ladder Damascus**  
Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 3.3 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 719315**

**2 Rose Damascus**  
Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 3.3 mm  
Overall length 195 mm  
**No. 719317**



**C STICK TANG BLADE BLANK, ARC SHAPE**

**1 Random Damascus**  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 3.3 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
**No. 719316**

**2 Ladder Damascus**  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 3.4 mm  
Overall length 150 mm  
**No. 719633**



**D FULL TANG BLADE BLANKS, RANDOM DAMASCUS**

**1 Classic**  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 2 mm and 3 mm.  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 4 mm  
Overall length 215 mm  
**No. 719415**

**2 Swedge**  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 2 mm and 3 mm.  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 719419**

**3 Finger Groove**  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 3 mm, thong tube hole Ø 5 mm.  
Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 3.4 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
**No. 719635**



**4 Ricasso Groove**  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 2 mm, thong tube hole Ø 4 mm.  
Blade length 65 mm  
Blade thickness 3.0 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
**No. 719636**

**5 Bolster**  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 3 mm.  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 3.6 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
**No. 719834**

**6 Ricasso**  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 3 mm and 5 mm.  
Blade length 95 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 719638**





**A** STICK TANG BLADE BLANK,  
SPEAR SHAPE  
Ladder Damascus  
Blade length 80 mm

Blade thickness 3.3 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
**No. 719318**

► For a steel glossary including chemical composition see page 336.



**B** STICK TANG BLADE BLANK,  
COMMON SHAPE  
Ladder Damascus.  
Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 195 mm  
**No. 719738**

Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
**No. 719739**



**C** FULL TANG BLADE BLANK WITH  
BOLSTERS, LADDER DAMASCUS  
Full tang blade blank with hand guard,  
largely finished. Pre-drilled tang holes  
Ø 3 mm and thong tube hole Ø 6 mm.

Blade length 85 mm  
Blade thickness 4 mm  
Overall length 215 mm  
**No. 719427**



**D** FULL TANG BLADE BLANK,  
RANDOM DAMASCUS, WITH BOLSTER  
Full tang blade blank with hand guard,  
largely finished. Pre-drilled tang holes  
Ø 3 mm.

Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 215 mm  
**No. 719319**



**E** FULL TANG BLADE BLANK,  
DAMASCUS FIRESTORM  
Pre-drilled tang holes, Ø 2 mm and thong  
tube hole Ø 4 mm.

Blade length 60 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 150 mm  
**No. 719637**



**F** FULL TANG BLADE BLANK,  
ROSE DAMASCUS  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 3 mm.  
Blade length 85 mm

Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 205 mm  
**No. 719418**



**G** FULL TANG BLADE BLANK, LADDER  
DAMASCUS  
Pre-drilled tang holes Ø 3 mm, thong  
tube hole Ø 6 mm.

Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
**No. 719417**



► Obsidian for knife making available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



Finished knife.

#### **H** KNIFE MAKING SET »PULCHER«

##### **Price advantage**

Construction kit for a small, relatively easy-to-make hunting knife. This kit contains a full tang blade of extraordinary design made of 192 layers of Damascus steel. The blank is etched, hardened to 60 HRC and only has to be sharpened. The handle scales are made of the burl wood of the French tree heath (briar wood) and only have to be shaped. The brass sheet has to be separated and glued between the blade and the handle scales. The brass rod acts as an additional connection to the handle. For glueing the handle materials, epoxy adhesive (e.g. No. 450379) is recommended.

##### Scope of delivery:

- Full tang blade blank, Damascus Firestorm (No. 719637)
- Briar wood handle scales (No. 831259)
- Brass sheet, 200 x 50 x 0.5 mm (No. 719823)
- Brass rod, round, Ø 2 mm (No. 719804)

Blade length 60 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 150 mm  
**No. 709756**

► More knife making sets available online.

**A »MINI HUNTER«**  
**KNIFE-MAKING SET** *Price advantage*  
 Construction kit for a small relatively simple hunting knife. This kit contains a rustproof and ready-to-use ground Casström blade made of Sandvik steel 12C27 with a hardness of 59 HRC. The handle scales are made of moisture-resistant pakka wood (stained birch veneers which are completely saturated with synthetic resin) and only have to be shaped. The red vulcanised fibre plate is cut to size and glued between the blade and the handle scales to enhance the

look. The stainless steel rod creates an additional connection to the handle. The stainless steel tube is used as a thong hole. Epoxy adhesive (e.g. No. 450379) is recommended for gluing the handle materials.

Scope of delivery:  
 • Casström Safari blade (No. 727506)  
 • Pakka wood handle scales (No. 719563)  
 • Stainless steel tubing, Ø 6 mm (No. 719813)  
 • Stainless steel rod, round, Ø 4 mm (No. 719802)



Finished knife.

• Vulcanised fibre red,  
 250 x 125 x 0.8 mm (No. 719643)

Blade length 65 mm  
 Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
 Overall length 160 mm  
**No. 727931**



## Steels

### Multi-Layered Steels



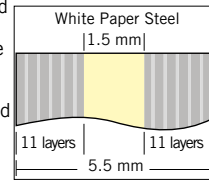
**B JAPANESE SUMINAGASHI**  
**FLAT STEEL, EXTRA THIN**  
 Rustproof, for cooking and folding knives: 33 layers of the best knife steel are revealed in this Suminagashi steel through a flat bevel and appropriate etching. Extremely edge-retaining core layer

from VG-10 steel. The outer layers of stainless steel give the blade the typical Suminagashi grain. The forging surface is roughly rolled and not ground-finished. Tempering instructions included.  
 2-2.5 x 55 x 250 mm  
**No. 719614**



#### C JAPANESE MULTI-LAYERED STEEL

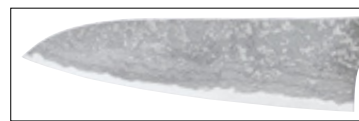
»SUMINAGASHI«  
 Finest 22-layered Suminagashi steel with a core layer of White Paper Steel. The multi-layered steel can be ground or forged and then



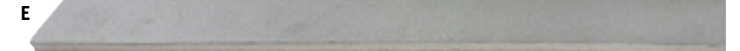
hardened to produce blades of both incredible sharpness and resilience. Flat steel, not rustproof. Supplied unhardened with heat treatment instructions.  
 5.5 x 33 mm x 1 m  
**No. 719610**



**D JAPANESE PM SUMINAGASHI**  
**FLAT STEEL**  
 For ultimate requirements: This novel Japanese blade steel leaves nothing to be desired: A core of the hardest powder metallurgical steel SG-2 makes the blade wear-resistant and tough. The 64-layered Suminagashi plating, made of nickel and stainless steel, gives it an extraordinary appearance. Whether used as a kitchen knife or for outdoor use, this steel impresses with its outstanding durability, sharpness

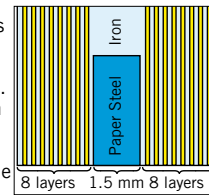


retention and resistance to corrosion. Flat stock, untempered, further processing by forging, heat treatment instructions included.  
 250 x 40 x 3 mm  
**No. 719627**



#### E JAPANESE MULTI-LAYERED STEEL

Close to the sword:  
 Steel with this composition was frequently used in Japanese swords (Katana). The high carbon core layer does only extend to the middle of the blade's profile.



Multiple layers of softer steel folded on either side make this metal virtually unbreakable with excellent cutting properties. This type of construction also minimizes the risk of cracking during hardening. The steel is further forged,

but a blade can also be ground from the steel directly. The material is supplied unhardened; instructions for heat treatment included (final hardness 62 HRC). Not rustproof.

**Core Layer White Paper Steel**  
 Finest grain, sharpest grade.  
 (C=1.2 %, S < 0.004 %, P < 0.02 %)  
 5.5 x 35 x 380 mm  
**No. 719617**

**Core Layer Blue Paper Steel**  
 Somewhat tougher and more wear-resistant (carbide formation) than White Paper Steel, with a slightly coarser grain.  
 5.5 x 35 x 380 mm  
**No. 719618**

► For forging and blade shaping tools see page 338 and further.

**F DAMASCUS FLAT STEELS**  
 High-performance Damascus:  
 This beautifully structured Damascus flat steel with 192 layers is made in the Indus Valley. Low alloy 1095 carbon steel and nickel steel 15N20, which is often used for band saws, are forge-welded to ensure excellent performance. The 15N20 steel with a high nickel content is much brighter than the

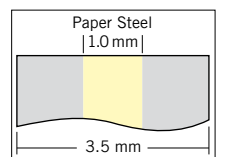
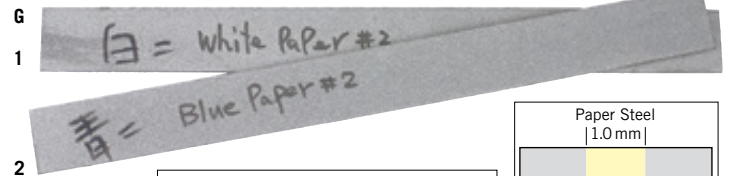
1095 steel, providing a nice contrast. Comes with heat treatment instructions.  
 230 x 38 x 4 mm

- 1 Random Damascus  
**No. 719402**
- 2 Rose Damascus  
**No. 719404**
- 3 Firestorm Damascus  
**No. 719406**



**G JAPANESE**  
**TRIPLE-LAYERED STEELS**  
 Martensitic hardening, Japanese triple-layered steel is renowned for its extraordinary sharpness, long edge life and excellent sharpenability (minimal burr). It can either be ground (using wet grinders) or forged into the desired form. Also suitable for making Damascus steel (folding techniques). Semi-finished product, not rustproof. Supplied unhardened with instructions for hardening and tempering.

- 1 Core Layer White Paper Steel  
 350 x 33 x 3.5 mm  
**No. 719615**
- 2 Core Layer Blue Paper Steel  
 350 x 33 x 3.5 mm  
**No. 719616**



**A JAPANESE SUMINAGASHI STEELS WITHOUT CORE LAYER**

This 8-layered Suminagashi steel is usually forged onto both sides of a hard core layer (Blue or White Paper Steel). Each of these eight layers of steel consists in turn of a »Gokunan-Koh« layer (traditional soft steel) that is welded to a thin,

alloyed carbon steel layer, which prevents the steel from decarbonising too quickly.

150 x 15 x 5 mm

**No. 719630**

200 x 30 x 5 mm

**No. 719631**

**B JAPANESE FLAT STEELS VG-10, LAMINATED, 67 LAYERS**

This rustproof, laminated flat steel is manufactured in Japan and is ideal for kitchen or outdoor knives. This steel reveals its 67 layers with a flat bevel and suitable etching. Extremely wear-resistant cutting layer made of VG-10 steel. The 33 outer layers of stainless steel on each side give the blade a typical Damascus pattern. Comes with heat treatment instructions.

2.5 x 40 x 245 mm

**No. 711648**

2.5 x 40 x 500 mm

**No. 711649**

2.5 x 40 x 1000 mm

**No. 711650**

3 x 40 x 245 mm

**No. 711651**

3 x 40 x 500 mm

**No. 711652**

3 x 40 x 1000 mm

**No. 711653**

6.5 x 40 x 245 mm

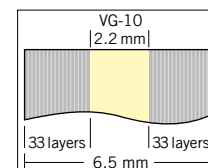
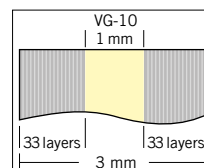
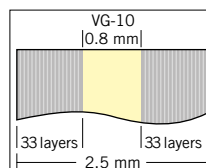
**No. 711654**

6.5 x 40 x 500 mm

**No. 711655**

6.5 x 40 x 1000 mm

**No. 711656**

**Damasteel®**

At the beginning of the nineties, the company Erasteels established a powder metallurgy steel division in Sweden which was later called Damasteel AB. Powder metallurgy technology had already been in use for over twenty years at this point. But even though the steel quality was greatly improved compared to standard production methods and alloys became possible that could not be produced before, it took time to become widely accepted on the market. Using the same technology the company began producing rustproof Damascus steel and patented this new process. Soon, several large knife manufacturers and smithies saw the potential of the new material which is now also available for end users in a multitude of patterns and sizes.

**Damasteel® DS93X™ Dense Twist™ Damascus Steel**

DS93X is a powder metallurgy Damascus steel. It is made from two different hardenable steel grades (RWL34 and PMC27). The two alloys are fused on smelting in more than 100 layers with no transition band and can therefore be regarded as a solid piece of steel before further processing. Further processing (creation of the pattern) is carried out in the same way as in traditional Damascus steel production. Soft annealed for easy processing. The steel becomes rustproof after heat treatment. Hardenable up to 64 HRC.

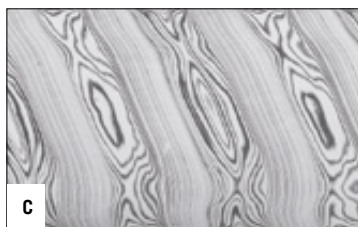
The steel has the following outstanding characteristics in comparison with Damascus steel made with standard production methods:

- Rustproof - due to powder metallurgy it is possible to fuse high-alloy steels
- Excellent durability - due to additional alloy components in the steel (carbide builder)
- Highest purity - for a homogenous microstructure and ease of sharpening
- Incomparable toughness - extremely resistant against breaking, bending and impact stress
- Durably bonded steel layers without the risk of layer separation

For more information on processing and a hardness chart see our instruction manual.



Damasteel® is rustproof and acid-resistant.

**C DAMASTEEL® DS93X™ DENSE TWIST™ DAMASCUS STEEL**

26 x 3.2 x 180 mm

**No. 831816**

32 x 2.5 x 210 mm

**No. 831817**

32 x 4 x 210 mm

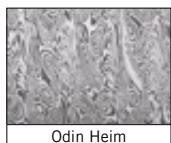
**No. 831818**

51 x 3.2 x 250 mm

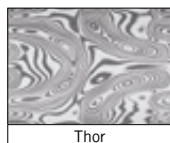
**No. 831819**



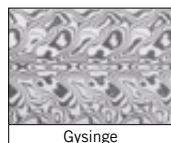
Björkmans Twist



Odin Heim



Thor



Gysinge

► These and other Damascus patterns of Damasteel® DS93X™ with outstanding characteristics suitable for kitchen and outdoor knives available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

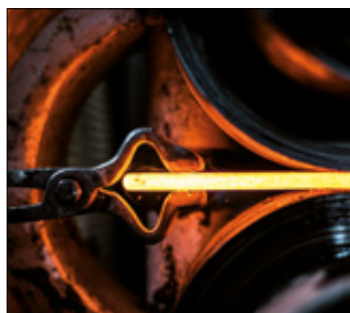
**Mono Steels****Damasteel® RWL34™ Steel**

RWL34 is a powder metallurgical steel based on ATS34 steel. ATS34 was originally developed for ball bearings by Kobe Steel in Japan. The internationally renowned knife maker Robert W. Loveless was the first to use this Japanese steel with its excellent qualities for knives. Damasteel improved the steel properties of ATS34 due to its powder metallurgical and consequently ultraclean manufacturing process. The powder metallurgically produced variation was named after the knife maker Loveless (abbreviation: RWL). Untempered (annealed) for simple processing. Hardenable up to 64 HRC.

The steel has the following outstanding qualities:

- Rustproof
- Excellent durability
- Highest purity - for a homogenous microstructure and ease of sharpening
- Incomparable toughness - extremely resistant to breaking, bending and impact stress
- Easy processing
- Excellent polishability

For more information on processing and a hardness chart see our instruction manual.

**D DAMASTEEL® RWL34™ STEEL**

38 x 2.6 x 245 mm

**No. 831864**

38 x 3.5 x 245 mm

**No. 831865**

38 x 4 x 245 mm

**No. 831866**

51 x 2.6 x 245 mm

**No. 831867**

51 x 3.2 x 245 mm

**No. 831868**

► For ready-to-use blade blanks made of Damasteel® RWL34™ see page 329.



A / B / C / D

**A FLAT STEELS 1.2067, 102CR6**

This ball bearing steel, also known as L-3 steel, offers a long service life. Well suited for forge-welding in Damascus structures. Final hardness 56-60 HRC. Not rustproof. Comes with heat treatment instructions.

1000 x 30 x 2.3 mm

**No. 711700**

500 x 30 x 2.3 mm

**No. 711701**

250 x 30 x 2.3 mm

**No. 711702**

1000 x 30 x 2.7 mm

**No. 711703**

500 x 30 x 2.7 mm

**No. 711704**

250 x 30 x 2.7 mm

**No. 711705**

1120 x 30 x 3.45 mm

**No. 711706**

560 x 30 x 3.45 mm

**No. 711707**

1120 x 30 x 4.5 mm

**No. 711709**

560 x 30 x 4.5 mm

**No. 711710**

280 x 30 x 4.5 mm

**No. 711711**

**B FLAT STEELS 1.2379, X153CRMOV12**

Due to the high carbide content, this steel has very good wear properties. Due to the high carbon and chromium content, this steel can be hardened to 62-65 HRC. It is therefore ideal for hunting and outdoor knives. Has the best toughness of high-chrome and high-carbon steels. Also known as D2 steel. Rust-resistant. Comes with heat treatment instructions.

800 x 40 x 2 mm

**No. 711712**

400 x 40 x 2 mm

**No. 711713**

800 x 40 x 2.7 mm

**No. 711714**

400 x 40 x 2.7 mm

**No. 711715**

1000 x 40 x 3 mm

**No. 711716**

500 x 40 x 3 mm

**No. 711717**

250 x 40 x 3 mm

**No. 711718**

1000 x 40 x 3.5 mm

**No. 711719**

500 x 40 x 3.5 mm

**No. 711720**

250 x 40 x 3.5 mm

**No. 711721**

1000 x 40 x 4 mm

**No. 711722**

500 x 40 x 4 mm

**No. 711723**

250 x 40 x 4 mm

**No. 711724**

**C FLAT STEELS 1.2842, 90MNCrV8**

Cold-work steel, also known as O2 steel, has a high warp-resistance during machining and heat treatment. The flat steel is easy to work, forge, forge-weld, polish and sharpen with machines and by hand. Excellent edge life and durability. Ideal for a Damascus structure with 1.2235 steel (80CrV2). 1.2842 steel is perfect for making outdoor or folding knives. Final hardness 55-62 HRC. Not rustproof. Comes with heat treatment instructions.

1000 x 40 x 2 mm

**No. 711725**

500 x 40 x 2 mm

**No. 711726**

250 x 40 x 2 mm

**No. 711727**

1000 x 40 x 2.5 mm

**No. 711728**

500 x 40 x 2.5 mm

**No. 711729**

250 x 40 x 2.5 mm

**No. 711730**

**D FLAT STEELS 1.4112, X90CRMOV18**

Versatile chrome steel, very wear-resistant and easy to polish. Also known as 440B steel. Due to its mechanical properties and high resistance to rust, it is widely used for making hunting, outdoor and folding knives. Not suitable

for Damascus welding! Final hardness 55-59 HRC. Comes with heat treatment instructions.

800 x 40 x 2 mm

**No. 711740**

400 x 40 x 2 mm

**No. 711741**

E

**E FLAT STEEL 1.2235, 80CRV2**

Versatile carbon steel with good workability and polishability. Also known as L2 steel. Ideal for a Damascus structure with 1.2842 steel (90MnCrV8). This steel is an excellent choice for outdoor, folding or carving knives. Final hardness 57-59 HRC. Not rustproof. Comes with heat treatment instructions.

300 x 40 x 3.25 mm

**No. 830926**

300 x 40 x 4.2 mm

**No. 830927**

925 x 30 x 2.35 mm

**No. 711731**

460 x 30 x 2.35 mm

**No. 711732**

990 x 30 x 2.8 mm

**No. 711733**

490 x 30 x 2.8 mm

**No. 711734**

245 x 30 x 2.8 mm

**No. 711735**

760 x 40 x 3.6 mm

**No. 711736**

380 x 40 x 3.6 mm

**No. 711737**

725 x 40 x 3.8 mm

**No. 711738**

360 x 40 x 3.8 mm

**No. 711739**

F

**F JAPANESE FLAT STEELS VG-10**

Premium rust-resistant blade steel. Ideal for laminating with softer stainless steels, whereby the VG-10 serves as cutting layer and is enclosed by one or more outer layers. Due to the high cobalt content, the VG-10 is particularly tough and wear-resistant and is very well suited for kitchen and outdoor knives. Comes with heat treatment instructions.

5.1 x 30 x 500 mm

**No. 711643**

5.1 x 30 x 1000 mm

**No. 711644**

5.6 x 30 x 245 mm

**No. 711645**

5.6 x 30 x 500 mm

**No. 711646**

5.6 x 30 x 1000 mm

**No. 711647**

**Knife blade hardening service**

We offer customers a qualified blade hardening service (up to 100 cm). This service includes a free original test certificate with the exact hardness value of the cutting edge in HRC (Rockwell). This will give you a clear understanding of the actual final hardness of your blade after hardening. We harden all conventional rustproof and non-rustproof blade steels using the vacuum procedure (DIN-certified).

This is how it works:

- 1.) Shape your blade and pre-grind it to grit 150 (the blade should still be 0.5 mm thick).
- 2.) Draw the outline of your knife blade on a sheet of paper (to keep track of the blade after hardening).
- 3.) Send us your knife with the outline drawing and information on the material as well as, if relevant, instructions on how to harden it (hand it in at one of our branches or mail it to us, using one of our special boxes (No. 909080) if required.)
- 4.) We will return the hardened knife blade with the test certificate and spherical indentation images within about 2-3 weeks of receipt.

Fee for the hardening service plus test certificate: € 29.90 (incl. VAT, excl. delivery fee). For more information on our hardening service please visit [www.dictum.com/service](http://www.dictum.com/service)

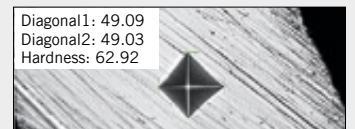
**Hardness test with test certificate for knife blades**

Have you always been curious about the hardness of your finished knife blade?

If so, you can use this service to get us to test the hardness (HRC) of your knife blade at its cutting edge. Heat treatment shops generally only perform HRC tests on the tang or back of the blade. However, testing these areas does not provide any reliable information about the hardness of the blade itself. Performing an HRC test at the cutting edge would destroy the blade. This is why we use the Vickers hardness test, which uses very low test pressures

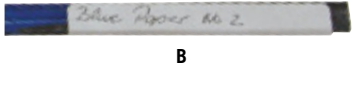
and allows us to test a blade's hardness right at the cutting edge without damaging it. This method simply involves minimal grinding of the cutting edge, which is then returned to its original state after the test. On completion, you will receive a test certificate with spherical indentation images and the Vickers values converted to HRC.

Fee for the hardness test plus test certificate: € 15 (incl. VAT, excl. delivery fee). For more information on our hardness test please visit [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

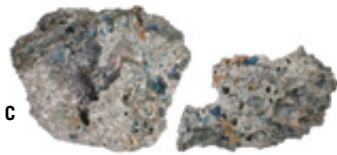




**A WHITE PAPER STEEL FROM JAPAN**  
The finest grain:  
Non-alloy Japanese carbon steel, finest martensitic structure. Extremely sharp, close to sword steel. With heat treatment instructions.  
480 x 30 x 4.5 mm  
**No. 719620**



**B BLUE PAPER STEEL FROM JAPAN**  
Tough and edge retaining:  
Alloyed Japanese carbon steel, martensitic, due to carbide formation somewhat tougher and more wear-resistant than White Paper Steel, coarser grain. With heat treatment instructions.  
530 x 30 x 4.5 mm  
**No. 719621**



**C JAPANESE SWORD STEEL TAMAHAGANE**  
The dream of every swordsmith:  
Japanese masters have been making the queen of blades from amorphous material. Original Tamahagane is made in the days-long Tataro process using the purest ore sand (masa) and pine charcoal. We have a small quota of this precious material, which formed the basis of over 1000 years of high culture of forging

swords. The material can be made into blades by experienced blacksmiths, and is also an asset to every collection as an object, due to its mystically shimmering fragments, which are streaked by coloured metal oxides. The weight versions only differ in the size of the lumps.  
230-500 g  
**No. 719606**  
750-1000 g  
**No. 719608**



**D DICTUM® AXE HEAD BLANK, C-60 CARBON STEEL**  
This axe head blank made of C-60 steel is used for the production of a freely

selectable axe form according to your needs. The blank already has an eye. The welded-on, approximately 60 cm long metal shank serves only as a holding aid during forging and can easily be

separated after forging work has been completed. Axe head dimensions approx. 140 x 50 x 30 mm.  
Head weight approx. 1.8 kg  
**No. 740100**

Steel glossary

**X50CrMoV15**  
Robust, wear-resistant and rust-resistant knife steel. Corrosion-resistant and easy to clean. Easy to sharpen.  
 $C = 0.45-0.55 / Mo = 0.5-0.8 / V = 0.1-0.2 / Cr = 14-15$

**White Paper Steel (Shiro Gami)**  
Trade name for a highly pure carbon steel made by Hitachi (Japan), mainly used for making cutting tools. This steel is particularly hard and has an especially fine martensitic structure. This means you can grind it to exceptional sharpness, which retains for a long time. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 1.2 / Si = 0.2 / Mn = 0.2 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.004$

**Blue Paper Steel (Ao Gami)**  
Similar to White Paper Steel but alloyed with additional 0.4 % chromium and 1.5 % tungsten. This makes it somewhat tougher. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 1.2 / Si = 0.2 / Mn = 0.2 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.004 / Cr = 0.4 / W = 1.5$

**Tamahagane**  
Extremely pure carbon steel with a very low content of impurities. It is also called »Japanese sword steel«. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 1.42 / Si = 0.01 / Mn < 0.01 / P = 0.025 / S < 0.004 / Cr = 0.02 / Mo = 0.03 / V = 0.01 / Cu = 0.01$

**Carbon Steel 1095**  
Carbon steel 1095 has a fine-grained structure and therefore features excellent sharpening qualities. Ideal for forge-welding, it is often used for Damascus blades. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 1 / Mn = 0.5 / P < 0.04 / S < 0.05$

**Uddeholm Mono Steel No. 1770**  
Carbon steel with a medium carbon content. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 0.7 / Si = 0.35 / Mn = 0.7 / P < 0.035 / S < 0.035$

**1.2235 / 80CrV2 / L2**  
Easy-to-sharpen carbon steel with minor alloy constituents. Ideal for a Damascus structure with 1.2842 steel (90MnCrV8). Not rustproof.  
 $C = 0.75-0.85 / Si = 0.15-0.35 / Mn = 0.3-0.5 / P < 0.025 / S < 0.01 / Cr = 0.4-0.6 / V = 0.15-0.25$

**1.2067 / 102Cr6 / L3**  
This ball bearing steel, also known as L3 steel, offers a long service life. Well suited for forge-welding in Damascus structures. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 0.95-1.05 / Si = 0.15-0.35 / Mn = 0.3-0.6 / P < 0.025 / S < 0.025 / Cr = 0.4 / Mo < 0.1 / Ni < 0.4$

**1.2379 / X153CrMoV12 / D2**  
Excellent edge retention and sharpness. With a chromium content of 12 %, it still belongs to the rust-resistant steels group.  
 $C = 1.53 / Si = 0.35 / Mn = 0.4 / Cr = 12.0 / Mo = 0.85 / V = 0.85$

**1.2842 / 90MnCrV8 / 02**  
High warp-resistance during machining and heat treatment. Can be easily polished and sharpened. Ideal for a Damascus structure with 1.2235 steel (80CrV2). Not rustproof.  
 $C = 0.9 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 1.95 / Cr = 0.35 / V = 0.15$

**VG-1 Steel**  
Rust-resistant steel, made by Takefu (Japan). Enhanced toughness due to its nickel content.  
 $C = 0.95-1.05 / Si < 0.5 / Mn < 0.5 / P < 0.03 / S < 0.03 / Cr = 13-15 / Mo = 0.2-0.4 / Ni < 0.25 / Cu < 0.25$

**VG-10 Steel**  
Rust-resistant high-class blade steel, made by Takefu (Japan). Extremely tough and durable due to high content of cobalt.  
 $C = 1 / Si = 0.6 / Mn = 0.5 / P < 0.03 / S < 0.03 / Co = 1.5 / Cr = 15 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.2$

**SG-2 Steel**  
Rust-resistant heavy-duty steel, made using a powder-metallurgical process. Specially developed for kitchen knives.  
 $C = 1.3 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.02 / Cr = 15 / Mo = 3 / V = 2$

**Sandvik 12C27**  
Rust-resistant blade steel made in Sweden. The company Sandvik has been continuously improving this steel over a period of 45 years. It is very popular for making hunting and folding knives.  
 $C = 0.6 / Si = 0.4 / Mn = 0.4 / P = 0.03 / S = 0.01 / Cr = 13.5 / Mo = 3 / V = 2$

**ATS34**  
A very pure, rust-resistant steel made in Japan. It displays a very fine crystalline structure due to its high molybdenum content.  
 $C = 1 / Si = 0.35 / Mn = 0.4 / P = 0.03 / S = 0.02 / Cr = 14 / Mo = 4$

**1.4112 / X90CrMoV18 / 440B**  
Versatile, very wear-resistant and easy to polish chrome steel. High resistance to rust. Easy to sharpen. Not suitable for forge-welding.  
 $C = 0.93 / Si = 0.5 / Mn = 0.5 / Cr = 18.0 / Mo = 1.1 / V = 0.1$

**440C**  
Hardenable, rust-resistant steel. Originally made for ball bearings. High wear- and corrosion-resistance.  
 $C = 1 / Si = 1 / Mn = 1 / P = 0.04 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 17 / Mo = 0.75$

**GIN 1**  
Rust-resistant blade steel made by Hitachi (Japan). Particularly corrosion- and wear-resistant due to its high chromium content.  
 $C = 0.9 / Si = 0.35 / Mn = 0.6 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.03 / Cr = 15.5 / Mo = 0.3$

**Damasteel® RWL34™**  
Rust-resistant, powder-metallurgically manufactured steel made by Swedish steel manufacturer Damasteel, based on the well-known knife steel ATS34. The powder-metallurgical manufacturing process allows for a precise chemical composition.  
 $C = 1.05 / Si = 0.5 / Mn = 0.5 / P = 0.05 / S = n. a. / Cr = 14 / Mo = 4 / V = 0.5$

**Damascus Steel**  
(Most commonly used combination:  
**Carbon Steel 1095 / Nickel Steel 15N20**)  
The combination of carbon steel 1095 (»dark«-coloured) and nickel steel 15N20 (»light«-coloured) ensures optimum contrasts when forging Damascus steel.  
Carbon steel 1095:  $C = 1 / Mn = 0.5 / P < 0.04 / S < 0.05$   
Nickel steel 15N20:  $C = 0.75 / Si = 0.3 / Mn = 0.4 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.10$

**Damasteel® DS93X™**  
Rust-resistant, powder-metallurgically manufactured Damascus steel, composed of RWL 34 (»light«-coloured) and PMC 27 (»dark«-coloured).  
RWL 34:  $C = 1.05 / Si = 0.5 / Mn = 0.5 / P = 0.05 / S = n. a. / Cr = 14 / Mo = 4 / V = 0.2$   
PMC 27:  $C = 0.6 / Si = 0.5 / Mn = 0.5 / P = n. a. / S = n. a. / Co = 13.5$

**Suminagashi**  
Traditional Japanese Damascus steel. Japanese Damascus steels are mostly offered as multi-layered steels with core layers of White or Blue Paper Steel or VG10 steel.

All alloy constituents are stated in %.

C	Carbon	Cr	Chromium
Si	Silicon	Mo	Molybdenum
Mn	Manganese	V	Vanadium
P	Phosphorus	W	Tungsten
S	Sulfur	Ni	Nickel
Co	Cobalt	Cu	Copper

Steel terms

**Alloying:**  
The addition of certain metals (e.g. chromium, manganese) to change the characteristics of the base metal.

**Hardening:**  
Heating hardenable steel to above the transformation point (approx. 780 °C for carbon steels, approx. 1050 °C for rustproof steels, depending on the alloy) and subsequently quenching them (in water, oil or air) results in the formation of a new, finer crystalline structure. The steel gets harder, more brittle and more sharpenable because of the finer structure. The hardness can be tested using the Rockwell method (pressing a diamond cone into the surface of the steel).

**Annealing:**  
After hardening, the steel must be annealed to avoid brittleness. In general, the steel is heated in a controlled manner (for a specific time at between 180 and 300 °C) to remove the internal stresses in the structure. In the process, the steel becomes somewhat less hard, but gets tougher and less prone to chipping. It is important to note that the properties exhibited by an individual blade do not solely depend on the chemical composition of the steel used. Careful forging, for example, further refines and homogenises the steel structure. Prolonged heating during the forging, hardening or annealing process lead to carbon diffusion that diminishes the hardness and edge life of the blade. Impurities (e.g. P, S) have a very detrimental effect on the blade and cause a dramatic increase in the brittleness of the edge.

# FORGING ACCESSORIES / BLADE PROCESSING

Robust tools

Gas Forges | 338

Knife Making Belt Grinder | 338

Accessories | 340



## Gas Forges

### A NARGESA® GAS FORGE

Gas forge for the manufacture of knives, swords, axes and horseshoes, as well as other wrought-iron works of art. In contrast to other gas forges of the same category, the Nargesa H1, H2 and H3 forging furnaces have been designed to heat workpieces more efficiently, quickly and safely with greater respect for the environment. Thanks to the newly developed burner technology, the fuel consumption of Nargesa furnaces is 75 % lower than with conventional furnaces. Higher energy efficiency due to low CO emissions of less than 0.002 %. The combustion chamber is made of 100 % natural vermiculite and is therefore 100 % recyclable since it does not contain any glass or ceramics fibres.

**Comes with German and English instructions.**

#### Advantages:

- Electronic ignition
- Removable back or side door for working in the centre of workpieces
- Gas hose made of stainless steel
- Precision pressure regulator with a built-in pressure gauge to adjust the gas pressure more accurately
- Integrated adjustable support table that is useful for longer workpieces; its special serrated shape also prevents round materials from rolling away to the side
- Double insulation of compacted vermiculite and special external coating to prevent heat loss
- Air flow regulator for adjusting to different material thicknesses for consistent combustion
- Thermocouple safety valve prevents the gas from flowing when the combustion chamber cools down in the event of a fault, thus preventing any possible leak.
- Use only propane gas (LPG)



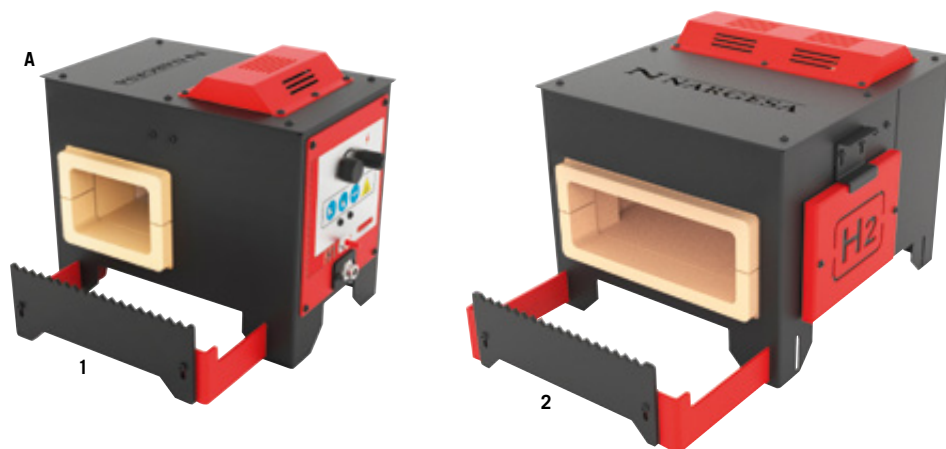
### WORKSHOP

## DAMASCUS BLADE FROM JAPANESE STEEL

#### Content:

Apart from forging the Damascus bar, grinding, hardening, and annealing the blade will also be taught in this course. In the end we will make a handle from precious wood and fit it onto the knife.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



#### 1 H1

Power 4 kW  
Number of burners 1  
Max. temperature 1300 °C  
Adjustable working pressure 0.1-1.5 bars  
Gas consumption at 1 bar working pressure 0.35 kg/h  
Combustion chamber internal dimensions 140 x 236 x 100 mm  
Overall dimensions 430 x 320 x 364 mm  
26 kg  
**No. 740301**

#### 1 H2

Power 8 kW  
Number of burners 2  
Max. temperature 1300 °C  
Adjustable working pressure 0.1-1.5 bars  
Gas consumption at 1 bar working pressure 0.7 kg/h  
Combustion chamber internal dimensions 324 x 240 x 100 mm  
Overall dimensions 440 x 500 x 364 mm  
38 kg  
**No. 740302**



► For forging steels see chapter »Materials« on page 333 or online at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

#### H3

Power 12 kW  
Number of burners 3  
Max. temperature 1300 °C  
Adjustable working pressure 0.1-1.5 bars  
Gas consumption at 1 bar working pressure 1 kg/h  
Combustion chamber internal dimensions 464 x 240 x 100 mm  
Overall dimensions 580 x 500 x 364 mm  
50 kg  
**No. 740303**

## Knife Making Belt Grinder

### B KNIFE MAKING BELT GRINDER

Professional belt grinding machine for knife makers. A high-torque motor ensures smooth and optimum grinding results even at high pressure. All control and adjustment functions are easily and safely within reach. The supplied flat grinding attachment can be fitted using two Ø 50 mm deflection rollers in place of the contact wheel. Its angle is adjustable and can be adapted to the respective work. Contact wheel: Ø 250 mm x 48 mm. Belt speed: 27 m/sec.

#### Advantages:

- Balanced rubber-coated aluminium contact wheel, Ø 250 mm
- Sturdy machine housing made of 3 mm steel for professional use



For a 230V knife making belt grinder see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

- Optimum sanding belt cover for increased work safety
- Tape corrector on contact wheel
- Change the grinding wheel tool-free via the hand lever and clamping arm
- Fully adjustable boom
- Phase inverter for forward and backward movement
- Incl. practical workpiece support, adjustable angle and height
- Incl. 5 m CEE connection cable

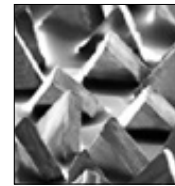
Abrasive belt not included.

Motor 400 V/50 Hz  
Rated input 750 W  
Belt length x belt width 2000 x 50 mm  
Belt speed 27 m/sec  
38 kg  
**No. 716050**

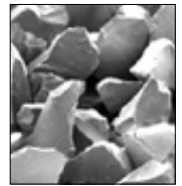
## Cubitron™ II

With the help of the new Cubitron II, grinding processes can be made even more efficient and, at the same time, a precise surface finish can be achieved more quickly. Grinding costs as well as unit costs are reduced, processing quantities increased. The secret of the Cubitron II lies in the unusual shape and arrangement of the abrasive grains. The individual ceramic grains are precisely formed, uniformly large, vertically arranged and have the shape of small triangles.

The result: every precision-formed ceramic grain serves as a cutting tool. It cuts through metal like a knife and sharpens itself continuously during the grinding process. Therefore, 3M Cubitron II abrasive belts operate at low temperatures and can even still be used when conventional abrasives have long failed and been disposed of.



Precision-shaped ceramic grains



Standard abrasive grains

### A 3M™ CUBITRON™ II CERAMIC GRAIN ABRASIVE BELTS 984F

Up to 4 times longer service life:  
Universal high-performance abrasive belt with up to 40 % faster stock removal on hard-to-process materials, 2-4 times longer life, self-sharpening effect and »cool grinding« - meaning no stress cracks or discolouration. Particularly suitable for chamfering blades and rough grinding.

#### You benefit from:

- **Longer service life:** Self-sharpening Cubitron II abrasive grains provide up to 4 times longer life than conventional ceramic grains. No clogging, blunting or glazing over.

- **Faster processing:** The precisely shaped individual abrasive grains penetrate the surface with uniform intensity. The revolutionary cutting geometry of the abrasive grains results in considerably higher rates of stock removal. You finish more jobs in less time.
- **Cool grinding:** Lower heat generation during work process - avoiding damage to the workpiece (heat-induced discolouration, deformities, cracks).
- **Precision surface finish:** The uniform-sized, exactly positioned abrasive grains ensure even, burr-free surfaces.
- **Low grinding pressure:** The high rate of stock removal and long lifespan mean that the user needs to use considerably

less pressure than with conventional ceramic products.

**Applications:** Pre-grinding, stock removal, deburring

**Materials:** Steel, construction steel, bronze, brass, non-ferrous metals

**Design features:** YF-weight cloth, full resin binding, grain type: Cubitron™ II precision shaped ceramic grain, semi-open coating

50 x 2000 mm  
Grit  
36 **No. 706593**  
60 **No. 706594**  
80 **No. 706595**



### B 3M™ ALUMINIUM OXIDE/ CUBITRON™ ABRASIVE BELTS 707E

This highly flexible abrasive belt guarantees excellent adaptation to free-form workpieces such as knife blades, profiles and armatures. The grinding aid applied ensures »cool grinding«, while the abrasive grain mix of aluminium oxide and Cubitron guarantees cutting efficiency combined with consistent surface finish.

**Application:** Intermediate grinding, fine polishing

**Materials:** Steel, stainless steel alloys

**Design features:** JE weight cloth, full resin binding, grain type: aluminium oxide/ Cubitron ceramic grain, sealed coating

50 x 2000 mm  
Grit  
120 **No. 706596**  
240 **No. 706597**



## Klingspor

Klingspor is one of the world's leading manufacturers of high-quality abrasives. Since the company was founded in 1893, they have developed a variety of innovative products which are now being used in more than 80 countries.

### C KLINGSPOR CERAMIC GRAIN ABRASIVE BELTS CS 931 JF

High-flexibility, high-performance abrasive belt for maximum grinding efficiency and excellent adaptation to edges and radii. Long lasting, thanks to semi-open coated, self-sharpening ceramic grain, uniform surface finish. The added multi-bond coating ensures cooler grinding and

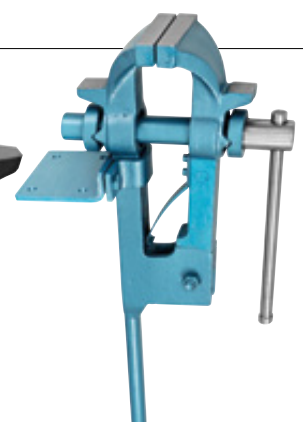
prevents heat-induced discolouration when working with stainless steel. Perfect for finishing knife blades, contours, profiles, armatures and metal fittings. Very good price/performance ratio.

**Application:** Intermediate sanding, fine polishing

**Materials:** Stainless steel, titanium/-alloy

**Design features:** JF-cotton, full resin bond, grain type: ceramic aluminium oxide, semi-open coating

50 x 2000 mm  
Grit  
80 **No. 706516**  
120 **No. 706517**  
240 **No. 706518**  
400 **No. 706519**



► For more forging accessories see our theme world  
»Forging Accessories / Blade Processing« online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

# Accessories

**A PICARD® BLACKSMITH'S HAMMERS**  
Drop-forged hammer with traditional Scandinavian shape: elliptical house, conically tapered hammer face with feruled edges and rounded fin. Ash handle with annular wedge.  
Overall length 360 mm  
Head weight  
1000 g **No. 705334**  
1500 g **No. 705335**

**B HULTAFORS® FORGING HAMMERS**  
Robust blacksmithing hammer with hardened pane and face. Sand-blasted and clear-coated hammer head. Hickory handle.  
Overall length 380-400 mm  
Head weight  
1500 g **No. 703065**  
2000 g **No. 703064**

**C BLACKSMITH'S HAMMER, HAND-FORGED**  
Each of these blacksmith's hammers is individually hand-forged, their classic German shape and optimal weight distribution having been appreciated for centuries by smiths all over the world. Handle made of untreated ash wood.

**1 Head weight 1000 g**  
Ideal for working out details.  
Overall length 260 mm  
**No. 714432**

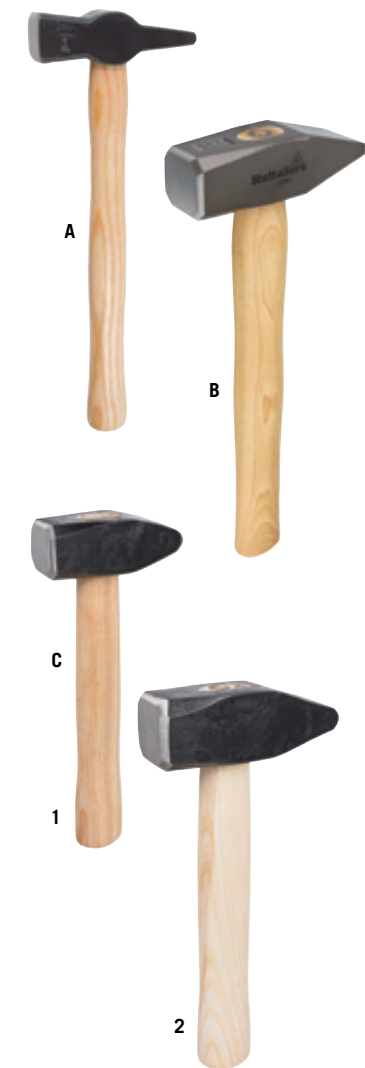
**2 Head weight 2000 g**  
Ideal addition to the 1000 g version. Excellent for re-forming work or forge-welding of Damascus steel.  
Overall length 300 mm  
**No. 714433**

**E BALLISTOL® BURNISHING SET**  
Even amateurs can achieve spotless burnishing results: With this set, you can create the traditional surface protection at home, accurately burnishing knife backs or other metal components. You can also touch up existing finishing, e.g. on rifle shafts, without any problems. Burnishing creates a protective layer (patina) on a ferrous surface to protect against rust.



Content:  
• Ballistol Universal Oil, spray 50 ml  
• Ballistol Robla Cold Degreaser, spray 50 ml  
• Ballistol Klever Quick Burnishing, bottle 50 ml  
• 2 pairs of nitril disposable gloves  
• 2 goat hair brushes  
• 2 lint-free care cloths

**F EISENBLÄTTER BRIGHTEX® TEST AND POLISHING SET FOR SPEED-CONTROLLED ANGLE GRINDERS**  
The newly developed BRIGHTEX method gives a shadow-free mirror finish to untreated metal. This set is perfect for polishing knife blades prior to etching and other metal surfaces that should be highly polished. For a perfect result in just two, maximum three work steps.



**D BLACKSMITH'S TONGS**  
• Forged from C-35 or C-45 carbon steel  
• Black paint prevents corrosion  
• Long legs allow for high leverage  
• Lap-joint ensures the stable connection of both legs

**1 Band Jaw Tong, 300 mm**  
For flat workpieces with a max. thickness of approx. 6 mm. Jaws length approx. 35 and 25 mm.  
Overall length 300 mm  
685 g  
**No. 727810**

**2 Hollow Jaw, 300 mm**  
For round-shaped workpieces with a max. diameter of approx. 8 mm. Jaws length approx. 70 mm. Jaws width approx. 18 mm.  
Overall length 300 mm  
635 g  
**No. 727812**

**3 Mouth Tong, 300 mm**  
For flat workpieces with a max. cross-section of approx. 17 x 10 mm. Jaws length approx. 70 mm.  
Overall length 300 mm  
685 g  
**No. 727814**

**4 Wolf's Jaw, 300 mm**  
For square-shaped workpieces with a max. cross-section of approx. 6 x 6 mm. Jaws length approx. 56 mm. Jaws width approx. 20 mm. Jaws thickness approx. 8 mm.  
Overall length 300 mm  
675 g  
**No. 727816**

**5 Flat Jaws, 300 mm**  
For workpieces with a maximum material thickness of 7 mm. Jaws length approx. 55 mm.  
Overall length 300 mm  
600 g  
**No. 727845**



**Band Jaw Tong, 400 mm**  
For flat workpieces with a max. thickness of approx. 8 mm. Jaws length approx. 50 and 40 mm.  
Overall length 400 mm  
800 g  
**No. 727811**

**Hollow Jaw, 400 mm**  
For round-shaped workpieces with a max. diameter of approx. 12 mm. Jaws length approx. 70 mm. Jaws width approx. 18 mm.  
Overall length 400 mm  
800 g  
**No. 727813**

**Mouth Tong, 400 mm**  
For flat workpieces with a max. cross-section of approx. 20 x 14 mm. Jaws length approx. 70 mm.  
Overall length 400 mm  
800 g  
**No. 727815**

**Wolf's Jaw, 400 mm**  
For square-shaped workpieces with a max. cross-section of approx. 10 x 10 mm. Jaws length approx. 65 mm. Jaws width approx. 24 mm. Jaws thickness approx. 10 mm.  
Overall length 400 mm  
900 g  
**No. 727817**

**Flat Jaws, 400 mm**  
For workpieces with a maximum material thickness of 8 mm. Jaws length approx. 60 mm.  
Overall length 400 mm  
800 g  
**No. 727818**

*Extremely flammable aerosol. Pressurised container. May burst if heated. Causes skin irritation. May cause drowsiness or dizziness. Toxic to aquatic life with long lasting effects. May be corrosive to metals. Harmful if swallowed. Causes serious eye irritation.*

**No. 705938**

Includes:  
• FIX KLETT Special-grip Support Disc 110 mm, M14, Velcro, Centralising  
• FIX KLETT Soft Damping Adapter 110 mm, Harpoon Velcro  
• FIX KLETT Cool Top Flap Disc 115 x 10 mm, Grit 40, Velcro  
• 3 FIX KLETT Trizact Discs 115 x 10 mm, Grit 400, Velcro  
• 3 FIX KLETT Trizact Discs 115 x 10 mm, Grit 600, Velcro



• 5 FIX KLETT BRIGHTEX Berry 115 x 10 mm, Velcro, Polishing Disc  
• 5 FIX KLETT BRIGHTEX Sun 115 x 10 mm, Velcro, Polishing Disc  
• BRIGHTEX Scratch-free Cloth 400 x 400 mm  
• BRIGHTEX Softclean Powder approx. 200 g, Aluminium Powder Dispenser

**No. 720526**







# Garden tools

The sheer pleasure of gardening!

**Hoes and Claws | 342**

**Shovels, Forks and Rakes | 345**

**Secateurs | 348**

**Two-handed Garden Shears | 352**

**Loppers | 352**

**Hedge Shears | 353**

**Japanese Pruning Saws | 355**

**Garden Knives | 360**

**Scythes and Accessories | 362**

**Sickles | 364**

**Gardening Sets and Accessories | 366**

# EVERYTHING ABOUT GARDENING

## Tools, accessories and knowledge

Tradition, sharpness, and durability are the hallmarks of our garden tools. This was also our motto when we compiled premium gardening products to meet your highest demands.

### TOOLS FOR BONSAI AND INDOOR PLANTS

- Bonsai Shears
- Tweezers
- Carefully Selected Tool Sets

### PLANT PROTECTION

- Natural Caterpillar Glue from Renewable Sources
- Grafting and Wound Treatment
- Protection against Frost Cracks and Frost Damage

### WATERING

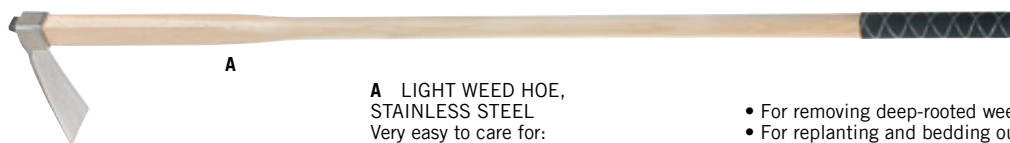
- Spray Lances
- Garden Hoses and Accessoires
- Indoor and Outdoor Watering Cans



For the full range of garden tools see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Hoes and Claws

### Two-handed Hoes and Claws



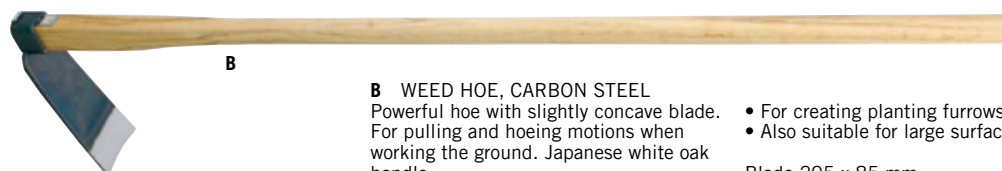
A

**A LIGHT WEED HOE, STAINLESS STEEL**  
Very easy to care for. Particularly light shaft hoe with a narrow blade made of stainless steel. Thanks to its low weight and convex and hence energy-saving bevel, this hoe is ideal for lady gardeners. Japanese white oak handle.

- For deep digging work, as well as loosening and aerating the ground

- For removing deep-rooted weeds
- For replanting and bedding out plants
- For creating planting and seed furrows
- For precise work around existing plants and closely-spaced bed borders

Blade 150 x 70 mm  
Overall length 1.2 m  
1.05 kg  
**No. 717934**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*



B

**B WEED HOE, CARBON STEEL**  
Powerful hoe with slightly concave blade. For pulling and hoeing motions when working the ground. Japanese white oak handle.

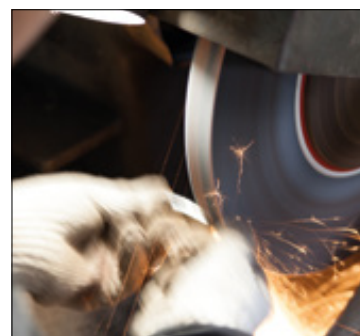
- For digging and loosening soil
- For weeding
- For replanting and bedding out plants

- For creating planting furrows
- Also suitable for large surfaces

Blade 205 x 85 mm  
Overall length 1.2 m  
1.85 kg  
**No. 717921**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*



Forging a hoe head



Form grinding the finished blade



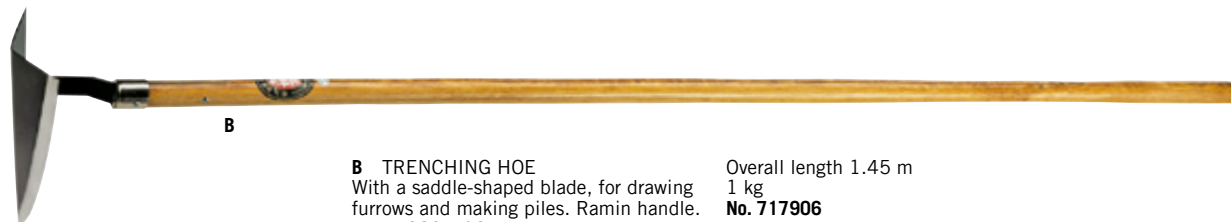


A

**A SICKLE HOE**

For weeding and loosening the soil. The sharp, slightly drop-point blade cuts even through thick roots. Double-layered steel blade, pasania wood handle.

Blade 130 x 210 mm  
Overall length 1.2 m  
970 g

**No. 718155***Surcharge for bulky goods.*

B

**B TRENCHING HOE**

With a saddle-shaped blade, for drawing furrows and making piles. Ramin handle. Blade 230 x 125 mm

Overall length 1.45 m

1 kg

**No. 717906***Surcharge for bulky goods.*

C

**C WEEDING HOE**

Light hoe with a good balance and a sharp blade. The tang is secured irremovably in a forged ring on the untreated tough Japanese white oak handle.

Blade 80 x 180 mm

Overall length 1.4 m

750 g

**No. 718162***Surcharge for bulky goods.*

D

**D HEART-SHAPED PLANTING HOE, NARROW**

Narrow, forged ground hoe for loosening hard, loamy soils. Beech handle.

Blade 200 x 135 mm

Overall length 1.3 m

1.2 kg

**No. 717999***Surcharge for bulky goods.*

For hard,  
loamy soils

## Sneeboer

Family-owned business Sneeboer & Zn has been manufacturing hand-forged stainless steel garden tools for over 100 years. The company's forge in Bovenkarspel, Northern Holland, combines traditional techniques with innovative ideas.



E

**E SNEEBOER WEEDER, 4 CM BLADE**

This Sneeboer weeder with extra narrow, hand-forged blade is perfect for loosening soil in tightly planted areas or for drawing seed furrows. Due to the approx. 1.2 m long, waxed ash wood handle, work can be

carried out comfortably while standing.

Blade 55 x 40 mm

Overall length 1.32 m

560 g

**No. 718650***Surcharge for bulky goods.*

F

**F SNEEBOER GRUBBER, THREE-PRONGED, STAINLESS STEEL**

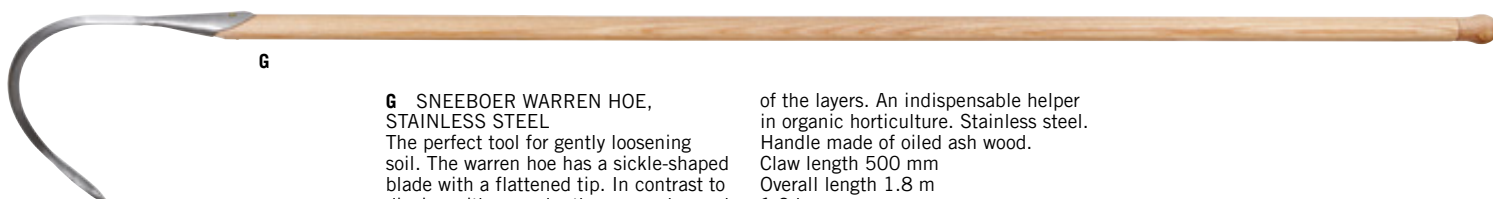
For loosening and aerating soil and removing weeds. Three curved, sharpened stainless steel prongs. Suitable for narrow plantations, work width 80 mm.

Handle made of oiled ash wood.

Claw 80 x 120 mm

Overall length 1.7 m

1 kg

**No. 718392***Surcharge for bulky goods.*

G

**G SNEEBOER WARREN HOE, STAINLESS STEEL**

The perfect tool for gently loosening soil. The warren hoe has a sickle-shaped blade with a flattened tip. In contrast to digging with a spade, the warren hoe only penetrates the uppermost layer of soil and does not disturb the natural order

of the layers. An indispensable helper in organic horticulture. Stainless steel. Handle made of oiled ash wood.

Claw length 500 mm

Overall length 1.8 m

1.2 kg

**No. 718390***Surcharge for bulky goods.*

For more Sneeboer products  
see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### Highest quality - Hand-forged gardening tools

It only takes a glance at a traditionally arranged Japanese garden to understand that such detailed precision requires extremely sharp gardening tools. Most sickles and soil working tools presented here are manufactured in selected master workshops, hand-forged from carbon steel using traditional techniques. They can be sharpened on waterstones. Even though carbon steel is not rustproof, sharpest edges are possible while sharpening is done with ease.

We recommend storing the gardening tools in a dry place, and oiling them slightly if they are unused for an extended period (e.g. with Japanese rust-prevention oil, No. 711541).

For sharpening, we recommend Japanese waterstones and diamond stones. More care and expense is needed when using hand-forged tools but the joy created while working with them is every bit worth the effort.



### One-handed Hoes and Claws

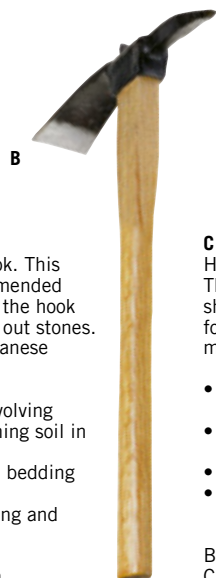
For working the soil between closely-spaced plants or in planter boxes and raised beds. Spring hammer forged blade from high-quality carbon steel, hardened cutting edges.



**A ONE-HANDED PLANTING HOE WITH WIDE BLADE**  
The cutting properties of the thin-bevelled blade make this hoe ideal for weeding in loose soil. Handle made of Japanese white oak.

- For digging and loosening the soil
- For replanting and bedding out potted plants
- For creating planting furrows
- For weeding

Blade 130 x 75 mm  
Overall length 405 mm  
450 g  
**No. 717902**



**B ONE-HANDED DOUBLE HOE**  
Robust hoe with hook. This hoe is highly recommended for stony ground, as the hook is useful for digging out stones. Handle made of Japanese white oak.

- For small tasks involving digging and loosening soil in hard ground
- For replanting and bedding out potted plants
- For creating planting and seed furrows

Blade 120 x 50 mm  
Overall length 405 mm  
550 g  
**No. 717904**



**C ONE-HANDED PRONG HOE WITH SHOVEL**  
This solid prong hoe with shovel is a versatile tool for working the soil. Handle made of Japanese white oak.

- For digging and loosening as well as for aerating the soil
- For replanting and bedding out potted plants
- For weeding
- For creating planting and seed furrows

Blade 80 x 65 mm  
Claw 105 x 70 mm  
Overall length 405 mm  
550 g  
**No. 717903**



**D ONE-HANDED TRENCHING HOE**  
Lightweight hoe for careful work in densely grown beds. Double-layered blade. Pasania handle. Blade 140 x 55 mm  
Overall length 400 mm  
215 g  
**No. 717905**



**E THREE-PRONGED GARDENING CLAW**  
Forged prongs. Ergonomic magnolia handle. Claw 70 x 50 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
160 g  
**No. 717911**



**F SINGLE-PRONG CLAW**  
Sharp forged prong. Ergonomically shaped magnolia handle. Claw length 75 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
120 g  
**No. 717910**



**H CAT'S PAW CLAW**  
Ideal for digging up and removing deep roots. Forged hook mounted in an iron sleeve. Japanese white oak handle with knob.

Claw length 95 mm  
Overall length 380 mm  
230 g  
**No. 717909**



**G LONG-PRONG RAKE**  
Deep-reaching, strong triple prongs for loosening soil and exposing roots. Japanese white oak handle.

Claw 115 x 100 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
320 g  
**No. 717914**

### PKS Garden Tools

Expertise, special craft skills and a wealth of experience are the prerequisites for manufacturing such extraordinary tools as those produced by the PKS forge in Bad Ischl, Upper Austria. Since 1995, every product has been handmade and individually tested for quality.

**I PKS SOIL WORKING SET**  
»PHOEMUS«, 2-PIECE SET, COPPER  
Two-piece soil working set including a

planting trowel and a prong hoe. Ideal for raised beds.  
**No. 714338**



### Copper garden tools have many advantages:

PKS copper garden tools are the ideal tools for vegetable and ornamental gardens, raised beds, vineyards and orchards. They combine functionality and beauty with particularly favourable material properties for gardening. Solid copper alloy made of 94 % copper and 6 % tin.

#### Your benefits:

- No maintenance necessary
- No rust formation (also no verdigris)
- Copper can be planished in the event of damage
- Resilient and therefore suitable for rough use
- Significantly longer service life than iron devices
- Effortless to use thanks to the polished and therefore low-friction surface
- As a result of abrasion, copper trace elements are introduced into the soil and play an essential role in enzymatic processes

A



**A** PKS ONE-HANDED WARREN HOE »CORVUS«, COPPER

The ideal tool for loosening the soil between plants without damaging their roots. This Warren hoe, made of a solid copper alloy, consists of a sickle-shaped tine with a flattened tip that does not disturb the natural layers of the soil during use. Oiled beech handle.

Claw length 210 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
210 g

**No. 714167**

B



**B** PKS ONE-HANDED PICKAXE »POLLUX«, COPPER

This hoe is ideal for light digging and loosening work with small planting distances. The hook is used to loosen solid soils. Then you can dig planting and seed furrows with the pointed triangular shovel. Oiled beech handle.

Blade 80 x 75 mm  
Claw length 80 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
210 g

**No. 714166**



## Shovels, Forks and Rakes

C

1

2



**C** PLANTING TROWELS, STAINLESS STEEL

Robust planting trowel with stainless steel blade for planting young plants and for other general gardening work. The dark-stained ash handle provides a comfortable grip and is attached to the blade with a solid stainless steel ferrule. Blade 150 x 80 mm

**1** Overall length 320 mm  
260 g

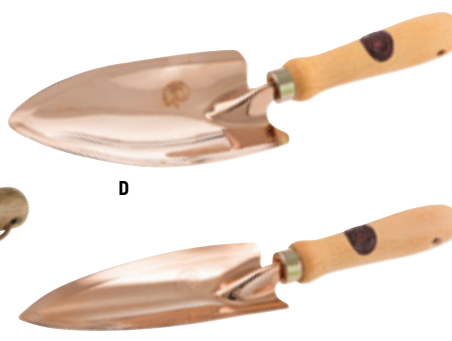
**No. 717973**

**2** Overall length 490 mm  
350 g

**No. 717954**

D

E



**D** PKS PLANTING TROWEL »CASTOR«, COPPER

Robust planting trowel with solid copper blade for planting young plants and for daily gardening work. Oiled beech handle. Blade 160 x 85 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
230 g

**No. 714164**



**E** PKS PLANTING TROWEL »MIRA«, COPPER, NARROW

Robust planting trowel with solid copper blade for digging planting holes and re-potting houseplants. Oiled beech handle. Blade 160 x 50 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
200 g

**No. 714165**

F



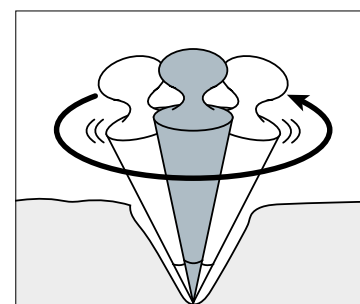
**F** PLANTING TROWEL, CURVED SHAPE

This forged planting trowel with its ergonomically curved neck is ideal for planting young plants as well as for digging out stubborn weeds. The elliptical

blade with a slight tip is ideal for hard and stony ground. Blade 160 x 75 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
270 g

**No. 717919**

G



**G** JAPANESE PLANTING CONE

Planting cone with a practical knob handle and rustproof steel tip. Plastic body with scale, zinc-plated steel core. Overall length 210 mm  
280 g  
**No. 717924**

**A ROSE BED FORK**

This two-pronged rose fork is used for planting roses and aerating rose roots with ease. This is especially important as aeration encourages root growth. In order for them to be able to free minerals, it is essential that the soil bacteria have sufficient oxygen. Even weak plants will

recover. The heavy-duty steel head is drop-forged, the handle is made of solid ash.

Fork 270 x 70 mm  
Prong spacing 40 mm  
Prong width 15 mm  
Overall length 1.12 m  
1.15 kg

**No. 717939**

**Baack® Spaten**

Baack Spaten has been forging spades from a single piece of the best carbon steel in the tradition of the old masters since 1878. More than 150 hammer strikes produce a highly compact steel and thus a spade blade that is extremely break- and wear-resistant. Over a century of experience results in tools that enjoy a unique reputation among professionals from tree nurseries, the garden and landscaping trade as well as underground engineering.

**B BAACK® EIDERSTEDTER SPADES**

Hand-forged, solid spade for underground engineering with long blade for digging draining ditches, peat digging and deep loosening of the ground.

- Edge treads protect shoes from damage
- Special forging technique allows blade to be shaped without tapered handle opening, yet ensuring the same stability; thus the blade does not have any areas where the soil can accumulate
- Ergonomic ash handle with natural finish for a secure grip
- The blade gets thinner towards the edge, »sharpens itself« during use and penetrates the ground without effort
- Trapezoidal blade reduces friction

Blade 310 x 130 / 150 mm

**D-handle**

2 kg  
Overall length  
1.21 m  
**No. 718423**  
1.31 m  
**No. 718424**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*

**1 T-handle**

1.9 kg  
Overall length  
1.21 m  
**No. 717952**  
1.31 m  
**No. 718425**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*

**D SNEEBOER »GREAT DIXTER« PERENNIAL SPADE, STAINLESS STEEL**

This compact perennial spade, consisting of a stainless steel blade and a waxed ash T-handle, is more practical than a standard planting trowel. Thanks to the special shape of the blade and handle, the spade can also be used as a shovel and, due to the sharpened edges, is suitable for digging plant holes as well as for dividing perennials and shrubs. Extended blade neck provides protection against bending.

**Note:** For good visibility and optimal control you should work on your knees when using this tool. Placing your arms on your knees creates a leverage effect when digging planting holes, which relieves the wrists.

Blade 140 x 125 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
600 g  
**No. 718649**

**Spade handles**

**D-handle:** The handle piece allows effortless working, because the fingers do not have to be spread, contrary to the T-handle. The handle of the spade is straight and the blade is slightly angled. This model is therefore designed for more precise work, such as cutting out root balls.



**T-handle:** With this handle, you can work with both hands on which is an advantage when levering. The slightly curved handle and the slightly forward-angled blade ensure easy transportation of soil when the spade is levelled.

**Handle length:** If you are taller than 185 cm (6 ft), standard spades are often too short and not ergonomic to use. Therefore, a spade with a longer handle is recommended. By rule of thumb: When you extend your forearm out in front of you (keeping the upper arm by your body), the spade should reach your outstretched hand. This will ensure comfortable digging and avoid straining your back.

**C BAACK® HOLSTEINER RÜFFEL SPADES**

All-round spade for professional and hobby gardeners.

- Edge treads protect shoes from damage
- Special forging technique allows blade to be shaped without tapered handle opening, yet ensuring the same stability; thus the blade does not have any areas where the soil can accumulate
- Ergonomic ash handle with natural finish for a secure grip
- The blade gets thinner towards the edge, »sharpens itself« during use and penetrates the ground without effort
- Trapezoidal blade reduces friction

Blade 270 x 150 / 170 mm

**1 D-handle**

2 kg  
Overall length  
1.15 m  
**No. 717953**  
1.25 m  
**No. 718420**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods (long version).*

**T-handle**

1.9 kg  
Overall length  
1.15 m  
**No. 718421**  
1.25 m  
**No. 718422**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods (long version).*

**E PEDIGREE GARDEN FORK, STAINLESS STEEL PRONGS**

Four-pronged fork for aerating, loosening and breaking up the soil. Ash handle.

Fork 295 x 175 mm  
Overall length 1 m  
1.85 kg  
**No. 715432**



► *Pedigree Rabbiting Spade available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



## Japanese Stainless Steel Garden Tools

These elegant stainless steel garden tools are made in Japan exclusively for our customers. They are very easy to maintain. Thanks to the polished surface, dirt and soil do not cling to the tools. The tools are hardened and therefore extremely wear-resistant. The head, shaft and handle are welded together, hand-ground and polished. The broad D-handle guarantees a comfortable grip while working.



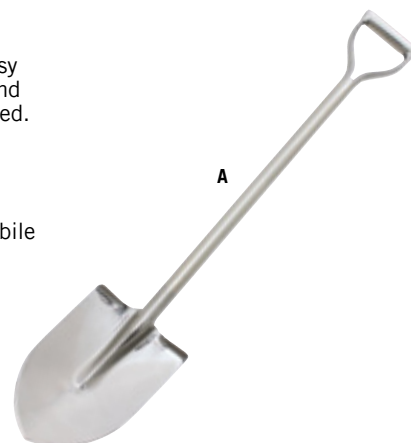
### The special bonus:

With the supplied tear-proof, textile transport case, the spade and fork are ideal for mobile use. The head case is secured to the tool shaft with a Velcro fastener.

**A POINTED BLADE SPADE, STAINLESS STEEL**  
Forged stainless steel spade with pointed head for breaking and digging work. Head case included.

Overall length 1.05 m  
Blade 250 x 190 mm  
1.5 kg  
**No. 717937**

Overall length 0.87 m  
Blade 220 x 160 mm  
1.4 kg  
**No. 717928**



## Sneeboer

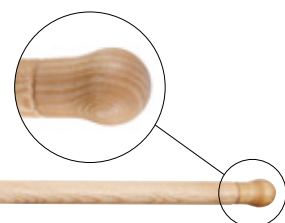
Family-owned business Sneeboer & Zn has been manufacturing hand-forged stainless steel garden tools for over 100 years. The company's forge in Bovenkarspel, Northern Holland, combines traditional techniques with innovative ideas.



**B SNEEBOER GARDEN RAKE, FOUR-PRONGED, STAINLESS STEEL**  
Multi-purpose garden rake for all common work on flowerbeds or vegetable patches, for cultivating and raking,

removing weeds or spreading fertiliser. Suitable for narrow plantations. Stainless steel. Handle made of oiled ash wood. Rake width 100 mm  
Prongs 4

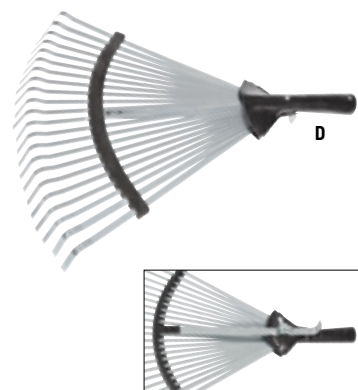
Prong spacing 35 mm  
Overall length 1.67 m  
1 kg  
**No. 718395**  
Surcharge for bulky goods.



**C SNEEBOER GARDEN RAKE, EIGHT-PRONGED, STAINLESS STEEL**  
This eight-pronged garden rake allows neat and effortless working. With this garden tool, you can easily remove leaves

and undergrowth and level sand, gravel or soil. Stainless steel. Handle made of oiled ash wood. Rake width 300 mm  
Prongs 8

Prong spacing 40 mm  
Overall length 1.67 m  
1.2 kg  
**No. 718394**  
Surcharge for bulky goods.



**D ADJUSTABLE LEAF-RAKE**  
This tough and at the same time light leaf rake can be changed in width from 30 to 50 cm, which makes it possible to gather yet the smallest leaves and grass. Even pebbles cannot stop this rake. A wing nut on the back of the rake allows for easy adjustment. The two outward pins on each side of the rake are wider than the others which give

more efficiency, for example when raking moss. All metal parts are galvanised or gun-finished for rust protection and to provide a non-stick surface against soil and dirt. The rake is delivered without handle. Prongs 22  
Overall length 440 mm  
680 g  
**No. 717942**

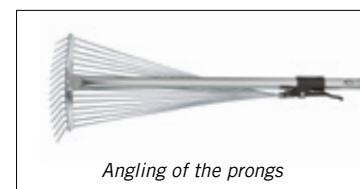
**E TOOL HANDLE, SPRUCE**  
Tool handle made of untreated spruce. Rests well in the hand, is low in weight and 1.5 m long, which makes it also suitable for taller people. Fits rake No. 717942. Ø 28 mm  
Overall length 1.5 m  
**No. 717965**  
Surcharge for bulky goods.



**F BARNEL® ADJUSTABLE TELESCOPIC LEAF RAKE**  
High-quality leaf rake with individually adjustable length, ideal for storage and transport.

- Easy and effortless adjustment of spread from 190 to 550 mm

- Telescopic handle adjustable to an overall length of 1.15 to 1.75 m
- Compact transport size of 89 cm
- Galvanised spring-steel prongs
- Strong eccentric lever allows for angling of prongs for raking on flat ground



Prongs 15  
750 g  
**No. 718273**

## Secateurs

### Japanese Pruning Shears - Highest Sharpness, Edge Retention and Durability

Japanese pruning shears combine the knowledge of a gardening and forging culture that is continually developing. They are extremely sharp and wear-resistant. For premium-class pruning shears, only best-quality steels are used. In small forges, true masterpieces are created completely by hand from high-purity carbon steel. The forged surfaces and the shape of the handles reflect the master's skills. The result are pruning shears with a long service life that make gardening a lasting pleasure. Their sharpness makes it possible to cut plants gently with minimal effort. Cleanly cut plant fibres heal more quickly and protect the plant from infections. This enhances plant growth and vitalises the plants. Spare parts are available for most of our garden shears.



#### Hidehisa - Premium Class Plant Shears

With his premium class plant shears, master blacksmith Hidehisa pays tribute to the beauty of nature. He dedicates himself to creating finely dimensioned masterpieces, which are light in weight and aesthetically pleasing. Made from high quality steel, all joints are polished and adjusted by hand. The handles are faced with oiled walnut wood, making these cutting tools a joy both to behold and to hold. Due to their extreme sharpness, they cut almost effortlessly while doing no harm to the plants.



**A HIDEHISA PRUNING SHEARS**  
For trimming fruit trees, hedges and ornamental trees.  
Max. branch diameter 15-20 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
200 g  
**No. 707489**



**B HIDEHISA ROSE AND HARVESTING SHEARS**  
For pruning rose trees and harvesting grapes and other fruit and flowers.  
Blade length 55 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
165 g  
**No. 707490**



**D ONOGI PRUNING SHEARS, STAINLESS STEEL**  
Easy to care for:  
Master craftsman Onogi makes these exceptional quality pruning shears from solid stainless steel. The sturdy, high-gloss polished blades cut twigs and thin branches effortlessly without damaging

the plants. The mat handles are non-slip and comfortable to hold, and adapt to body temperature within seconds.  
Max. branch diameter 15-20 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
260 g  
**No. 718330**  
Leather Sheath **No. 718118**



**C PRUNING AND VINE SHEARS**  
Shears with extremely sharp cutting edges, ideal for cutting fruit trees, rose bushes and vines. Finely polished blades with outstanding durability, ergonomically forged handles, pure carbon steel.

Max. branch diameter 15-20 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
250 g  
**No. 718115**  
Leather Sheath **No. 718118**



**F SMALL PRUNING SHEARS (FOR WOMEN)**  
Sturdy forged shears for small hands with

outstanding cutting performance. To fit better in the hand, the finger rest is at the bottom of the handle, closer to the head of the shears. Ideal for pruning fruit trees, rose bushes and vines. Finely polished cutting edges with excellent durability.  
Max. branch diameter 10 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
170 g  
**No. 707417**



**Bypass shears**  
Precise, clean cuts, ideal for cutting green wood.



**E GIFT SET PRUNING SHEARS AND LEATHER SHEATH**  
The ultimate gift for keen gardeners - a very valuable set: a pair of extra strong

pruning and vine shears (No. 718115) with leather sheath (No. 718118) in an attractive gift box.  
**No. 718186**



**G LEATHER SHEATH FOR PRUNING SHEARS**  
Saddler quality, with belt loop.  
Fits: No. 707487, 718115, 718133, 718169, 718253, 718297, 718330 and 718382  
**No. 718118**





#### A BOXWOOD SHEARS KARIKOMI HASAMI

There are no better scissors for topiary pruning shrubs and decorative trees than the Karikomi Hasami. Forged from one piece, with mirror-polished blades and extremely smooth, it makes trimming

boxwood hedges a pleasure. Self-opening blades with hollow grind, adjustable joint, handle with hand guard. Blade length 115 mm Overall length 270 mm 350 g  
**No. 718287**



#### B ERGONOMIC PRUNING SHEARS

Thanks to their ergonomically shaped, extra-wide handles, these garden shears made by master blacksmith Hidehisa are comfortable to hold, even during extended use. Forged of extra-hard White Paper Steel with polished, finely adjusted

blades, it will stay sharp for a long time. Ideal for pruning fruit trees, hedges and bushes. Max. branch diameter 15-20 mm Overall length 200 mm 230 g

**No. 707487**

Leather Sheath **No. 718118**



#### C OKATSUNE PRUNING SHEARS

Japanese multi-purpose hand pruner for pruning shrubs, roses or fruit trees. Excellent value for money. The lightweight yet sturdy construction guarantees a clean cut without effort. The fine-grained Japanese carbon steel ensures an excellent edge life.

Plastic-coated handles. Max. branch diameter 25 mm Overall length 200 mm 230 g

**No. 718382**

Leather Sheath **No. 718118**



#### D THINNING SHEARS

Ultra-light, handy yet elegant shears. The archaic-looking forged texture on the handle ensures a non-slip grip even in wet hands. The slim blade makes it easy to cut withered blooms and dead plant

parts, and is ideal for pruning roses or harvesting wine grapes and fruit.

Blade length 55 mm Overall length 185 mm 120 g

**No. 718311**



#### E ROSE SHEARS

The slender blade is ideal for cutting roses and grapes, removing flowers and precision trimming. The fitting can be adjusted.

Blade length 60 mm Overall length 200 mm 180 g

**No. 718098**



#### F TRIMMING SHEARS

For harvesting fruits or thinning out shrubs. The slender, tapered shape of the forged cutting edge will allow you to access even stems in the back or fruits hidden behind leaves. The non-slip, roughened surface lets the handles lie well in the hand and the safety latch can be easily locked. The slightly curved

contour of the polished blade made from carbon steel results in a skewed cut that leaves an extraordinarily clean cut surface.

Blade length 75 mm Overall length 210 mm 220 g

**No. 718134**



#### G KIJO PRUNING SHEARS

Feather-light shears with easy to hold metal handles.

Max. branch diameter 15-20 mm Overall length 200 mm 205 g

**No. 718169**

Leather Sheath **No. 718118**

#### Max. branch diameter?

Many manufacturers indicate the maximum branch thickness for which a pruner or lopper is suitable. But they often only consider the opening of the tool, which will not keep this promise in practice. We test all the shears, pruners and loppers in our range, independently of the manufacturer's specifications, with respect to the possible branch diameter and indicate these values as the »max. branch diameter« for each product. We apply criteria such as the function of the tool, the cut surface as well as the required effort resulting from the leverage. We test cutting on both fresh and dead wood and on different wood types.



#### Accessories and spare parts



In order to make our pruning shears life-long lasting, we offer a wide range of replacement parts and accessories available on request.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
**For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



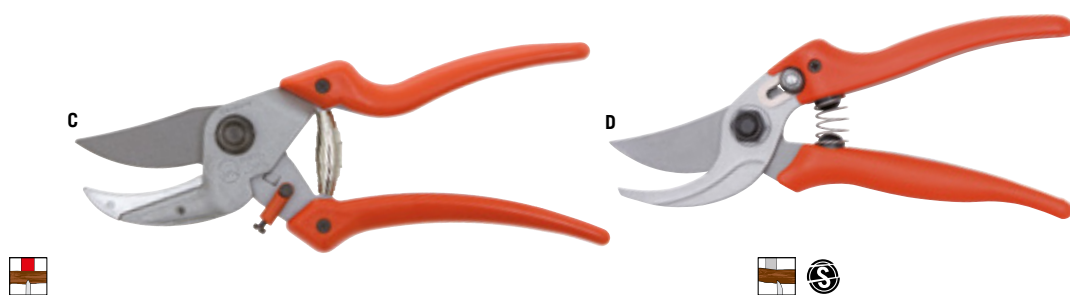
## Arno® French Pruning Shears

Ergonomic design and sophisticated function - the professional garden shears made by the traditional French company Arno have embodied these characteristics since 1927. French viticulturists and fruit growers swear by the shears, which save energy and protect plants when harvesting fruit and grapes and growing flowers.



## Löwe® Shears

The invention of the anvil shears in 1923 turned Löwe into the world market leader of these tools. Both then and now, all the firm's shears are 100 % made in Germany. The specially developed, non-stick-coated blade steel guarantees the necessary hardness with maximum toughness, making the blades virtually unbreakable, even at temperatures below freezing. All parts are available separately and can be easily replaced if necessary.



**E** CLEANING SPRAY FOR GARDEN SHEARS AND SAWS

Just spray on, leave, wipe off and you are done: Japanese cleaning spray for easy removal of resin residues and sticky tree sap on garden shears and pruning as well as carpentry saws. Thanks to the fine mist of the pump spray, the liquid can also be distributed optimally on small saw teeth. We recommend to apply a rust-prevention oil after cleaning, in order to neutralise the resin remover and help preserving the tool.



## E CLEANING SPRAY FOR GARDEN SHEARS AND SAWS

Just spray on, leave, wipe off and you are done: Japanese cleaning spray for easy removal of resin residues and sticky tree sap on garden shears and pruning as well as carpentry saws. Thanks to the fine mist of the pump spray, the liquid can also be distributed optimally on small saw teeth. We recommend to apply a rust-prevention oil after cleaning, in order to neutralise the resin remover and help preserving the tool.

*May cause respiratory irritation. Causes serious eye irritation. May cause an allergic skin reaction. May be corrosive to metals. Causes severe skin burn.*

100 ml  
**No. 706252**

## Barnel® Pruning Shears

Barnel, a globally renowned tool manufacturer based in the US, has been making superlative garden tools since the 1970s. Most Barnel shears have a patented centre oiler, by which oil is applied directly to the blades. The oiler can be quickly refilled with an oil applicator (No. 708540). Spare parts available.



**F** BARNEL® PRUNING SHEARS »EXPERT«

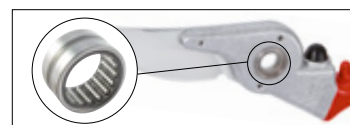
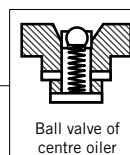
Highly functional, effortless pruning shears for long-term professional use.

- Wear-proof shear joint - the built-in needle bearing prevents friction between pivot bolts and handle, thus ensuring long life
- Carbon steel blade with wire cutter
- Replaceable, hardened anvil blade
- Slip-proof coated, drop-forged aluminium handles with finger rest
- Optimal head adjustment thanks to a safety catch



- Rubber pad to minimise the cutting impact
- With centre oiler

Patent pending.  
Max. branch diameter 15-20 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
260 g  
**No. 718356**



## WORKSHOP

### CLASSIC

## SHARPENING OF CUTTING TOOLS

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

## Sharpening service for cutting tools

Let our perfectly trained specialists restore your cutting tools to their original sharpness. They will gently and precisely sharpen your garden tools on the same sharpening devices that you can find in our product range. We will return your razor-sharp tools within a few days.

To find out more about our sharpening service please call:  
+49 (0)9931 4058-910.

For sharpening equipment for garden tools, see chapter »Sharpening Devices«.

## Types of shears

Pruning shears are basically divided into two different types: bypass and anvil shears.

Bypass shears have two cutting blades that slide past each other.

Anvil shears operate on a different principle, whereby the cutting blade comes down on a flat surface, called the anvil.

### Bypass shears

Advantages:

- Precise, clean cut
- Ideal for cutting green wood

Drawbacks:

- More force required

### Anvil shears

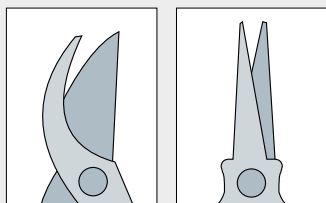
Advantages:

- Effective force transmission
- Ideal for cutting dead wood

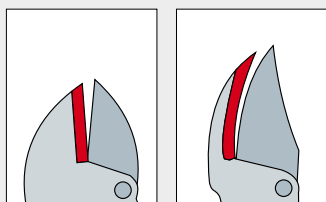
Drawbacks:

- The cut material is slightly squashed during cutting
- The bark may get damaged

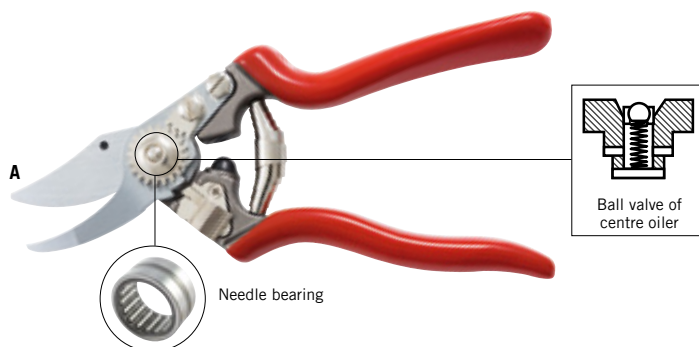
Both types can have a curved or straight blade. The advantage of a curved blade is the slightly skewed cut, which requires less effort when cutting.



Most bypass shears operate on the principle of the skew cut, the only exception being trimming shears. This type of shear needs a slim blade, which is difficult to achieve with a curved shape. The parts of the plants that are cut with trimming shears are usually quite thin and require less cutting force.



Most anvil shears have straight blades because this design allows a more solid anvil.



### A BARNEL® PRUNING SHEARS

»LOW-FRICTION«

Powerful, robust, yet lightweight shears for ambitious gardeners. Perfect for pruning fruit trees, roses and vines.

- Wear-proof shear joint - the built-in needle bearing prevents friction between pivot bolts and handle, thus ensuring long life
- Carbon steel blade with wire cutter
- Replaceable, hardened anvil blade
- Slip-proof-coated aluminium handles with finger grooves, drop-forged



### B BARNEL® TRIMMING SHEARS, EXTRA LONG

Trimming shears with longer blade, ideal for picking fruits and flowers or trimming withered shoots. The slim blade ensures that the surrounding parts of the plant do not get caught or damaged. Made of stainless steel with a deep juice groove to

guide any sticky plant juices away from the blade. Handles of light aluminium alloy with nickel coating. Blade length 65 mm  
Overall length 205 mm  
120 g  
**No. 718274**



### D MINI PRUNING SHEARS

Fits inside any trouser pocket. These small garden shears, which have been made in Germany, are a practical companion for simple gardening work. Their size means that they fit easily inside any type of jacket or trouser pocket, and a latch keeps them safely locked in position.

Perfect for quickly pruning garden, balcony or indoor plants, collecting wild-growing plants while out and about or for grave maintenance. Carbon steel blades. Blade length 35 mm  
Overall length 140 mm  
80 g  
**No. 718233**



- Optimal head adjustment thanks to a safety catch
- Rubber pad to minimise the cutting impact
- With centre oiler

Patent pending.

**Blade Length 45 mm**

Shorter blade for greater ease when pruning dense branches.

Max. branch diameter 15 mm

Overall length 195 mm

215 g

**No. 718378**

**Blade Length 55 mm**

Standard version with longer blade for branches with a larger diameter.

Max. branch diameter 20 mm

Overall length 210 mm

230 g

**No. 718379**

C

### C OIL APPLICATOR

Synthetic high-tech oil for instrument and tool care. Odourless, transparent, silicone-free. No blotches or crusting, unlike with mineral oils. The 7 mm long V2A stainless steel tip allows precise dosage even on large surfaces, e.g. all types of scissor and shear blades.

- Anti-drip valve for precise dosage, no dripping
- Vapour-permeable, resists temperatures of up to 260 °C
- Drips best at room temperature
- Approved for food by USDA\* and FDA\*
- Physiologically safe according to DAB\* and LFGB\*
- Also ideal for folding knives, weapon care, cosmetic instruments

\* USDA - United States Department of Agriculture  
FDA - Food and Drug Administration  
DAB - Deutsches Arzneibuch (German Pharmacopoeia)  
LFGB - Lebensmittel- und Futtermittel-gesetzbuch (German Food and Feedstuff Code)

Content 10 ml

**No. 708540**



### E SHEEP SHEARS

These sheep shears are an icon from the early history of cutting tools. The sharp blades not only cut hair but are also ideal for trimming boxwood, and cut grass and flower stems efficiently without effort. The shears are forged in Germany from high-grade steel and have a welded double-bow spring. Blade length 160 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
400 g  
**No. 718281**



### Anvil shears

Effective force transmission, ideal for cutting dead wood.



### Bypass shears

Precise, clean cuts, ideal for cutting green wood.

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Tools for bonsai trees and ornamental plants available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Two-handed Garden Shears

### Loppers



**A LÖWE® 22 ANVIL PRUNING LOPPERS WITH CURVED BLADE**  
These anvil pruning shears are light-weight but tough as they come. The robust blade on the slim cutting head is teflon-coated to minimise friction and prevent the cut material from sticking. With an overall length of 800 mm, this tool with its ergonomically shaped plastic grips on sturdy tubular handles allows ideal leverage for large branches.

- Allows for a skewed cut
- Holds material between the blades so as to ensure optimal cutting performance
- Ideal for cutting dead wood.

Max. branch diameter 40 mm  
Overall length 800 mm  
1.18 kg  
**No. 718254**



**B TELESCOPIC RATCHET LOPPERS**  
This pruning shears operate on the bypass principle which allows - in combination with its ratchet system - clean cuts as well as an ideal force transmission through the best possible leverage. Ideal for cutting dead and green wood.

- Bypass blade for precise, clean cuts
- Coated blade for smooth cutting and easy cleaning
- 4-step ratcheting action for cutting up to 45 mm thick branches
- Telescopic handles can be locked in six stages (handle length 490-830 mm)
- High-quality aluminium handles with plastic grips

Max. branch diameter 45 mm  
Overall length 660 mm  
1.58 kg  
**No. 707475**



**C BARNEL® PRUNING LOPPERS**  
Powerful performance:  
The jaws of these extra light loppers are drop-forged and therefore have a very fine and uniform metal structure. An oiler makes it easy to apply oil to the cutting edges. Together with a special hardened bolt, this cutting mechanism is almost indestructible and cuts branches up to 35 mm with ease. The handles

of high-quality aluminium are light and torsion-resistant. A dampener minimises the shock load after cutting and a juice rim at the anvil prevents the blades from sticking together. The hand rest on the handle is covered with high-quality, easy-to-clean rubber which offers a good grip. Ideal for cutting dead and green wood.  
Max. branch diameter 35 mm  
Overall length 800 mm  
1.27 kg  
**No. 718319**

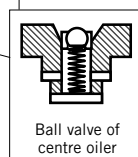


**D BARNEL® TELESCOPIC RATCHET LOPPERS**  
Thanks to its ratchet system, these high-quality anvil loppers reduce the power required by up to two thirds. It is ideal for cutting dead wood.

- Solid anvil blade for best possible force transmission
- Coated blade for smooth cutting and easy cleaning
- 4-step ratcheting action for cutting up to 50 mm thick branches

- Telescopic handles can be locked in four stages (handle length 447-777 mm)
- High-quality aluminium handle with plastic grip
- Centre oiler for easy application of oil onto joint faces
- Replacement parts available

Max. branch diameter 50 mm  
Overall length 670 mm  
1.9 kg  
**No. 718355**







**A JAPANESE PRUNING AND ROOT LOPPERS**  
These powerful shears made of extra-hard SK5 Hitachi steel cut through branches and roots up to 25 mm in diameter.

Japanese white oak handles.  
Max. branch diameter 25 mm  
Overall length 600 mm  
950 g  
**No. 707479**



**B NISHIGAKI® TELESCOPIC SHEARS**  
Combined Japanese telescopic saw and shears for pruning and harvesting fruit trees. Thanks to its straight

design, the easily attachable saw blade for larger branches is easy to manoeuvre even in thick growth. With its high-quality teeth, the telescopic rod of anodised aluminium is fully adjustable up to 3 m, while the adjustable second L-shaped handle ensures an ergonomic grip.

Max. branch diameter 10 mm  
Overall length 1.8-3 m  
1.3 kg  
**No. 712705**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712706**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*



**C BARNEL® TELESCOPIC SHEARS ULTRA REACH®**  
Telescopic cut-and-hold shears that make it possible to place cut branches securely on the ground. With the attachable saw blade, you can turn the telescopic pruner

into a telescopic saw in no time, making it suitable for thicker branches as well. The curved saw blade allows good guidance in the kerf. Aluminium telescopic pole that can be locked in three positions up to an overall length of 2 m.

Max. branch diameter 10 mm  
Overall length 1.25-2 m  
970 g  
**No. 718237**  
Repl. Blade **No. 718238**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*

For an application video see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Hedge Shears

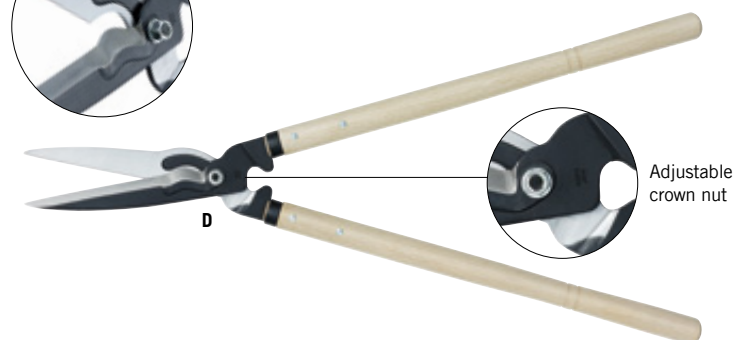
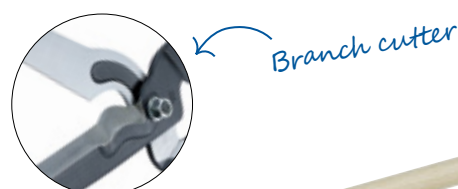
### Japanese Hedge Shears

In traditional Japanese gardens, topiary is often used to enliven and give structure. Therefore, Japanese hedge shears are perfect for topiary hedge cutting, in terms of both function and balance. The often long carbon steel blades, which are difficult to forge, are extremely sharp and wear-resistant.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



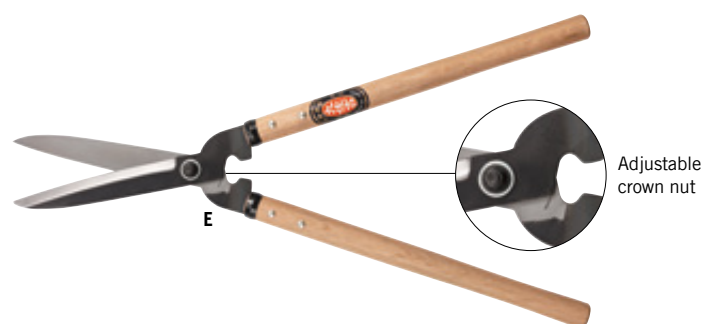
#### **D HEDGE SHEARS WITH BRANCH CUTTER**

You surely know the following situation: When trimming hedges, a thick branch may stop and force you to use a saw. This change of tools is a thing of the past with this Japanese hedge shears. A recess in the back part of the blade fits branches up to 15 mm thickness and cuts them

effortlessly and without unnecessary loss of time. The blades are forged from high grade SK5 steel, the handles are made from untreated Japanese white oak. Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 680 mm  
890 g  
**No. 718180**



**E HEDGE AND BOXWOOD SHEARS**  
Well-priced hedge shears with hollow-ground blades for trimming boxwood and hedges. Adjustable. Varnished Japanese white oak handles. Blade length 185 mm  
Overall length 630 mm  
910 g  
**No. 718219**



**Anvil shears**  
Effective force transmission, ideal for cutting dead wood.



**Bypass shears**  
Precise, clean cuts, ideal for cutting green wood.

**Sharpening hedge shears**

Take the shears apart and sharpen only the blade facet on the bevelled side (front), and not on the concave back-side! Never sharpen the high-quality hardened tool on a double-wheeled grinder, as the hardness and edge life are adversely affected by overheating! If you wish, you can call upon our professional sharpening service.

For suitable sharpening tools see chapter »Sharpening Devices«.

**B**

**B LEATHER SHEATH FOR HEDGE SHEARS**  
Saddler quality. Fits No. 718261.  
**No. 718160**

**A HAND-FORGED HEDGE AND BOXWOOD SHEARS**  
With their short handles, these hand-forged shears are ideal for topiary cutting. The double-layered blade of high-purity carbon steel has an excellent edge life and is extremely sharp. The hollow-ground polished blades minimise friction for improved cutting performance. Castellated nut for easy adjustment. Japanese white oak handles.



*Pre-grinding of the blades after forging*

**1 Long Blade**

Forged from Blue Paper Steel, primarily for long straight cuts. Blade length 280 mm  
Overall length 635 mm  
880 g

**No. 718260**

Adjustable castellated nut

**2 Short Blade**

Forged from White Paper Steel, for round topiary cuts. Blade length 190 mm  
Overall length 545 mm  
820 g

**No. 718261**Leather Sheath **No. 718160****Barnel® Hedge Shears**

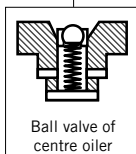
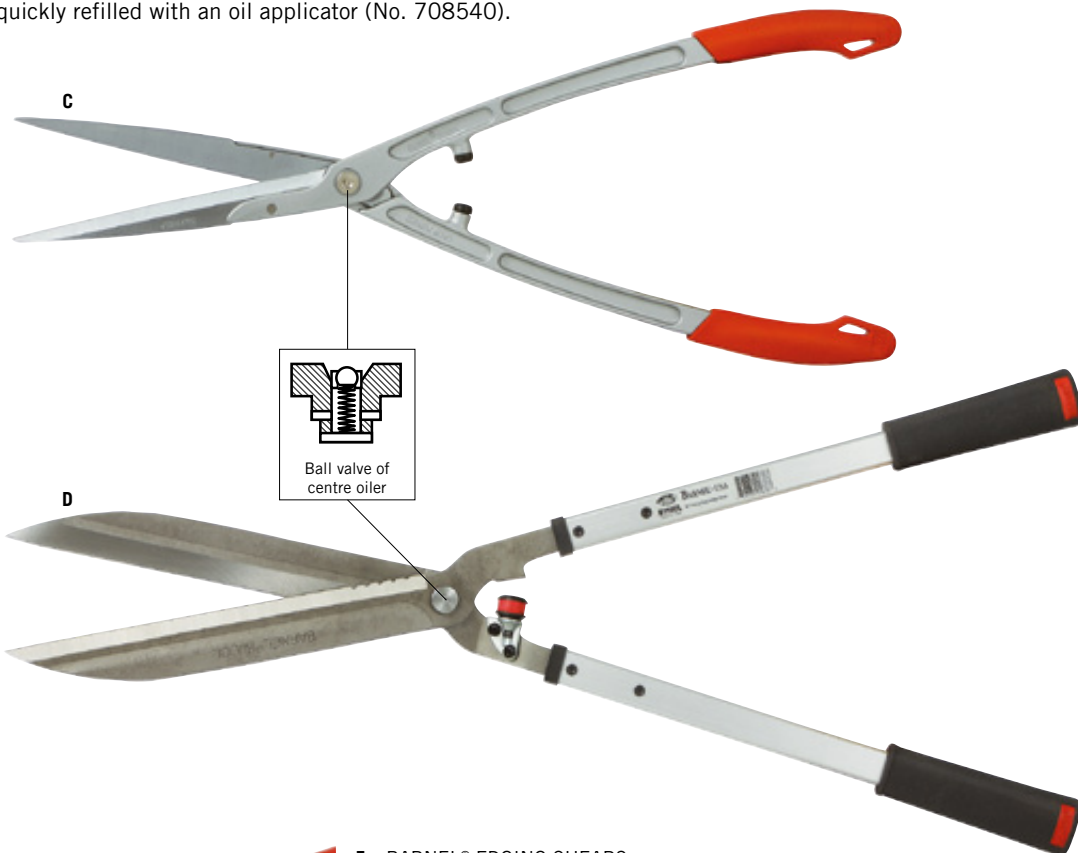
Barnel, a globally renowned tool manufacturer based in the US, has been making superlative garden tools since the 1970s. Most Barnel shears have a patented centre oiler, by which oil is applied directly to the blades. The oiler can be quickly refilled with an oil applicator (No. 708540). Spare parts available.

**C BARNEL® HEDGE SHEARS**

Robust hedge shears with forged, slightly angled aluminium handles for topiary work and trimming hedge bushes or boxwood. The replaceable blades made of premium carbon steel are hard-chromed for rust protection. Shock-absorbing rubber pads. Non-slip grips. Blade length 230 mm  
Overall length 700 mm  
930 g

**No. 718256****D BARNEL® HEDGE AND BUSH TRIMMER**

This »monster« among hedge shears will impress you above all with its 4 mm thick forged blades and its robust design with angled handles. It allows shaping even overgrown hedges effortlessly. An elaborate cushioning system minimises shock during cutting. In addition to a forged sap groove, the end of the blade is serrated to keep even the smallest branches in the shears. Blade length 300 mm  
Overall length 770 mm  
1.42 kg

**No. 718257**

Ball valve of centre oiler

**E BARNEL® EDGING SHEARS, ROTATABLE**

Robust, all-metal grass shears for trimming grass, shrubs and small hedges. The swivel joint allows three different blade positions. The blades can be easily turned to the correct angle for the individual application. This makes cutting easier at difficult edges and corners. The adjustable spring-tensioned carbon steel blade ensures consistently clean cuts over the entire blade length. Right blade fixed, chromed rubberised handles, one-handed lock. Blade length 130 mm  
Overall length 345 mm  
380 g

**No. 718278**

# Japanese Pruning Saws - Cleanest and Effortless Cuts

## For environmentally-friendly trimming of trees

Professional Japanese pruning saws help to maintain and care for lumber and ornamental trees. Trees with cleanly cut off branches, such as those cut with a sharp Japanese saw, are less susceptible to fungal or bacterial diseases. In contrast to the widely available average quality low-cost products, all our pruning saws are manufactured in Japanese master workshops. The teeth are razor-sharp and the blade surfaces are hard-chromed and therefore rustproof. The tips are hardened to maximise the saw's durability and resistance to breakage. Replacement blades will be available for many years to come.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

## Fixed-blade Saws



**A DICTUM® PRUNING SAWS CLASSIC**  
These pruning saws are made exclusively for DICTUM customers by a leading Japanese manufacturer. Its slender design makes it ideal for pruning fruit trees, trimming hedges and bushes. Taper-ground blade with coarse trapezoidal teeth for excellent cutting performance, coated for rust prevention. Untreated beech handle absorbs moisture, preventing blisters. Comes in a beechwood case with a belt loop.



Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 0.8 mm  
Setting 1.2 mm  
Crosscut teeth 4 mm

*Pruning Saw Classic 240*  
Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 390 mm  
**No. 712116**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712822**

## DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



*Pruning Saw Classic 270*  
Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 420 mm  
**No. 712117**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712827**

## ALLES ÜBER GEHÖLZSCHNITT - ZIERGEHÖLZ-, OBST- UND FORMSCHNITT

Helmut Pirce:

Excellent growth habit, glorious blooms and a rich crop of fruit - that is the dream of every garden owner. This reference book about pruning helps you professionally shape your deciduous trees and conifers, ornamental bushes, climbing plants, roses and fruit trees. Get to know the growth habits and laws of your woody plants and learn all about the right tools. With over 600 photographs and nearly 500 drawings, this book presents the correct cutting techniques for different trees and shrubs. 360 pages, hardcover, 628 photographs, 492 illustrations, 205 x 272 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713088**



**B SAW AND FILE BRUSH**  
Robust Japanese brush for cleaning wet wood saws for garden and carpentry as well as all types of files. The flexible plastic bristles prevent damage to scratch-sensitive teeth.  
Length 220 mm  
**No. 716119**



Tooth checking by microscope



**C KOBIKI PRUNING SAW**  
Robust saw for forestry work. This saw cuts thick branches and even small trunks with just a few strokes. The teeth, which get finer towards the handle, make it easier to start a cut and reduce

the cutting force required. Handle and sheath made of hardwood, with belt loop.  
Blade width 40 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Setting 1.5 mm

*Kobiki Pruning Saw 300*  
Blade length 300 mm  
Overall length 450 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3.2-4 mm  
**No. 712723**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712823**

*Kobiki Pruning Saw 330*  
Blade length 330 mm  
Overall length 480 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3.5-4.5 mm  
**No. 712724**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712824**



**D**



## D SUPER SPEED PRUNING SAW

The curved, taper-ground blade ensures extremely high-performance cutting and is capable of dealing even with thick branches. Ergonomic, unvarnished beech handle. Comes without sheath.

Blade length 330 mm  
Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 1.1 mm  
Overall length 485 mm  
Setting 1.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 4 mm  
**No. 712173**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712174**



## F WIRE SAW

Ideal for camping and trekking: Our most compact saw consists of a spiral toothed wire with two pull rings. It can even be used to make a very effective frame saw with the help of a flexible branch. Cuts wood, plastic, plaster, limestone and metals.  
Ø 1 mm  
Overall length 500 mm  
12 g  
**No. 712520**



## Forestry work

Robust saw, designed for fast cuts and large branch diameters.



## General pruning

Standard pruning saw for cutting fresh and dead wood.



## Fruit tree pruning

Tests have proved that this saw produces extremely clean cuts, which prevents fungal and bacterial attacks.



## FUGAKU Saws

Japanese professional saws featuring optimum tooth spacings and shapes for specific cutting situations. The hard-wearing, ergonomic handle snaps on easily and securely in the supplied plastic sheath with belt loop.



### A FUGAKU® NAMAKI

This saw is ideal for trimming cuts in the garden and forest and for cutting dead wood.

- The teeth, which get finer towards the handle, make it easier to start a cut and reduce the cutting force required

Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade width 40 mm  
Blade thickness 0.9 mm  
Setting 1.3 mm



*Fugaku® Namaki 270*  
Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 440 mm  
Crosscut teeth 2.7-3.6 mm  
**No. 712935**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712940**

*Fugaku® Namaki 300*  
Blade length 300 mm  
Overall length 470 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3.1-3.9 mm  
**No. 712936**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712941**



### B FUGAKU® EDAUCHI

The combination of taper-ground saw blade and curved tooth line makes this saw the ideal tool for trimming and fruit tree cutting in the garden.

- Curved blade:
- Good guidance in the kerf

Taper-ground blade:

- Allows cutting with little friction
- Creates the cleanest cuts - helps water run off quickly and thus prevents rotting

Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 1.1 mm  
Setting 1.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 4 mm



*Fugaku® Edauchi 270*  
Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 450 mm  
**No. 712930**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712931**

*Fugaku® Edauchi 300*  
Blade length 300 mm  
Overall length 480 mm  
**No. 712932**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712933**

### Sawing technique for heavy branches

When sawing off thick, heavy branches, you should first take the pressure off the branch before you cut it off close to the trunk. Otherwise, in the worst case, the weight of the branch may cause the bark on the trunk to tear during sawing. You can avoid this with a simple cutting technique:



1. Make a cut with the saw on the underside of the branch about 30 cm away from the trunk (do not cut too deep, as otherwise the saw may get stuck in the kerf because of the weight of the branch).
2. Make a cut with the saw on the top of the branch, same distance from the trunk (its own weight should cause the branch to break off in a controlled manner).
3. Now you can make the final cut at the trunk without pressure from the branch.



### C FUGAKU® SENTEI

The taper-ground blade creates smooth, clean cuts, making it ideal for cutting fruit trees.

Taper-ground blade:

- Allows cutting with little friction
- Creates the cleanest cuts - helps water run off quickly and thus prevents rotting

Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 1.1 mm  
Setting 1.2 mm  
Crosscut teeth 4 mm



*Fugaku® Sentei 270*  
Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 440 mm  
**No. 712937**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712942**

*Fugaku® Sentei 300*  
Blade length 300 mm  
Overall length 470 mm  
**No. 712938**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712943**



**Video** on origin, features, tooth shapes and general tips on sawing available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### Forestry work

Robust saw, designed for fast cuts and large branch diameters.



### General pruning

Standard pruning saw for cutting fresh and dead wood.



### Fruit tree pruning

Tests have proved that this saw produces extremely clean cuts, which prevents fungal and bacterial attacks.



### D SILKY® IBUKI PRUNING SAW

The weapon among the pruning saws: Solid forest saw also used by professional tree climbers.

- Fully hardened teeth for sharpening by hand
- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof
- Curved cutting edge for improved control

- Special tooth setting in which some teeth are only slightly angled and thus act as raker teeth
- Non-slip handle coating for a better grip
- Robust aluminium housing
- Break-proof plastic sheath

Blade length 390 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 580 mm

Setting 2.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 5.5 mm  
**No. 712076**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712077**





A



#### A BARNEL® DOUBLE-EDGE FOREST SAW

Large robust saw for cutting thick branches and felling small trees. To prevent the bark from tearing when cutting off heavy branches, you first make a cut on the underside of the branch. Thanks to the teeth on the back of the blade, you can make these cuts from underneath

without having to change the position of the saw in your hand or its direction. A large D-handle provides a comfortable grip with work gloves. The unset raker teeth with wide spacing reduce the cutting force on the other teeth, thus increasing the edge life and preventing the saw cut from clogging. Hard-chromed (rustproof) blade with impulse-hardened

teeth for increased wear resistance.

Blade length 450 mm  
Blade width 80 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Overall length 640 mm  
Setting 1.4 / 1.1 mm  
Crosscut teeth 5.7 / 3 mm

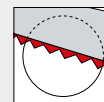
**No. 718315**

Repl. Blade **No. 718316**

#### Straight saw blades:

Advantages:

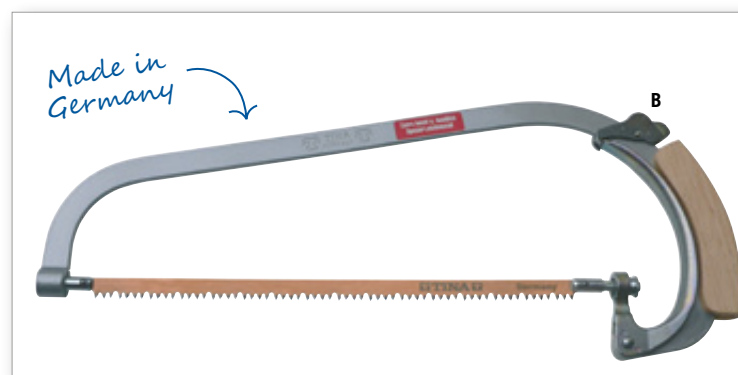
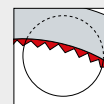
- Longer stroke length
- Maximum control when working close to the body (up to shoulder height)



#### Curved saw blades:

Advantages:

- Good guidance in the kerf
- Maximum control when working over shoulder height



B



#### B TINA® LIGHT STEEL METAL FRAME COPING SAW

360° swivelling saw blade with quick adjustment: High-quality, sturdy frame saw »Made in Germany« for universal trimming purposes. The blade can be swivelled by 360° and is therefore ideal for cutting in hard-to-reach areas such as branch forks. The rustproof light metal frame stabilises the blade and allows for cutting large branch diameters.

Raker teeth prevent the kerf from clogging and thus enable a fast cut.

Beechwood handle.  
Blade length 350 mm  
Blade width 15 mm  
Blade thickness 0.7 mm  
Overall length 485 mm  
Setting 1.4 mm

**No. 712018**

Repl. Blade **No. 712021**

## Folding Saws



C



#### C DICTUM® FOLDING SAW DELUXE 240

Handmade in a Japanese master workshop: The details make the difference to industrially manufactured series products. For example, the blade of this saw is taper-ground by 0.2 mm, and the teeth sides are polished to make cutting even

easier. Raker teeth prevent clogging. Manual straightening on the aligning anvil by the master saw-smith himself ensures that the saw blade runs smoothly. Curved wooden handle with a natural Urushi surface for comfortable feel and dirt protection (water-proof, solvent-resistant, extremely ageing-resistant).

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 0.6 mm  
Overall length 525 mm  
Setting 0.9 mm  
Crosscut teeth 2 mm

**No. 712107**

Repl. Blade **No. 712108**

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



D



#### D SILKY® POCKETBOY FOLDING SAW, COARSE

Whether on the building site, in the workshop or for outdoor use, this compact folding saw with its razor-sharp teeth runs rings around many »large« saws. For crosscuts and ripcuts.

- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof

- Robust aluminium handle with anti-slip rubber coating
- Can be locked in two positions - also for cuts in tight spaces

Taper-ground blade with no additional set teeth:  
• Allows cutting with little friction  
• Creates the cleanest cuts - helps water run off quickly and thus prevents rotting

Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 1.4 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3 mm



#### Pocketboy 130

Blade length 130 mm  
Overall length 290 mm

**No. 712774**

Repl. Blade **No. 712775**

#### Pocketboy 170

Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 370 mm  
**No. 712776**

Repl. Blade **No. 712777**



#### A SILKY® POCKETBOY CURVE FOLDING SAWS, COARSE

Due to its compact design, this saw is ideal for outdoor use and provides an enormous cutting capacity thanks to the curved line of the blade.

- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof
- Robust aluminium handle with anti-slip rubber coating
- Can be locked in two positions - also for cuts in tight spaces

Curved blade:

- Good guidance in the kerf

*Pocketboy Curve 130, Coarse*

Blade length 130 mm  
Overall length 290 mm

**No. 712266**

Repl. Blade **No. 712267**

Taper-ground blade with no additional set teeth:

- Allows cutting with little friction
- Creates the cleanest cuts - helps water run off quickly and thus prevents rotting

Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade width 30 mm  
Blade thickness 1.4 mm  
Trapezverzahnung 3 mm

*Pocketboy Curve 170, Coarse*

Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 370 mm

**No. 712268**

Repl. Blade **No. 712269**



#### B SILKY® F180 FOLDING SAW

Small all-rounder with unbeatable value for money:

- Taper-ground blade with coarse toothing for effortless cuts and little friction
- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof
- Non-slip rubber areas integrated in the handle for a better grip
- Handle can be locked in two positions for optimum adjustment to different working positions

Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade length 180 mm  
Blade width 32 mm  
Blade thickness 1.35 mm  
Overall length 420 mm  
Crosscut teeth 4 mm

**No. 712054**

Repl. Blade **No. 712055**



For more pruning saws  
see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

DICTUM tool handles are free of toxic chemicals (all plastic handles are regularly tested).



#### C SILKY® GOMBOY FOLDING SAWS, OUTDOOR

Silky's best-selling outdoor saw: The Gomboy is a multifunctional saw for various outdoor activities and fruit trees pruning.

- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof
- Robust aluminium handle with anti-slip rubber coating
- Can be locked in two positions - also for cuts in tight spaces

Taper-ground blade with no additionally set teeth:

- Allows cutting with little friction
- Creates the cleanest cuts - helps water run off quickly and thus prevents rotting

Special raker teeth:

- Reduces the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevents clogging



C

Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 3 mm

*Silky® Gomboy 210*

Blade length 210 mm  
Overall length 445 mm

**No. 712272**

Repl. Blade **No. 712273**



*Silky® Gomboy 240*

Blade length 240 mm  
Overall length 505 mm

**No. 712270**

Repl. Blade **No. 712271**



#### D SILKY® GOMBOY FOLDING SAW 270, COARSE

The most universal folding saw: Robust folding saw with excellent cutting performance for larger sections (carpentry), insulation material and pruning fruit trees. Cuts across and diagonally to the grain - also in wet wood.

- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof
- Robust aluminium handle with anti-slip rubber coating

Taper-ground blade with no additional set teeth:

- Allows cutting with little friction
- Creates the cleanest cuts - helps water run off quickly and thus prevents rotting

Special raker teeth:

- Reduces the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevents clogging



D

Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Crosscut teeth 2.8 mm

**No. 712096**

Repl. Blade **No. 712097**



E



#### E SILKY® BIGBOY FOLDING SAW 360, COARSE

With its curved cutting edge and wider tooth spacing, this version of the Bigboy is ideal for cutting off large branches from decorative and fruit trees as well as for use in forestry.

- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof
- Can be locked in two positions - also for cuts in tight spaces

- Robust aluminium handle with anti-slip rubber coating can be used with one or both hands

Taper-ground blade with no additionally set teeth:

- Allows cutting with little friction
- Creates the cleanest cuts - helps water run off quickly and thus prevents rotting

Special raker teeth:

- Reduce the cutting force on the other teeth and thus increase the edge life
- Prevent clogging

Blade length 360 mm  
Blade width 42 mm  
Blade thickness 1.45 mm  
Overall length 760 mm  
Crosscut teeth 5 mm

**No. 712721**

Repl. Blade **No. 712722**



#### Forestry work

Robust saw, designed for fast cuts and large branch diameters.



#### General pruning

Standard pruning saw for cutting fresh and dead wood.



#### Fruit tree pruning

Tests have proved that this saw produces extremely clean cuts, which prevents fungal and bacterial attacks.



## Promoting wound healing when pruning fruit trees

When a branch is cut off a tree, this creates a relatively big wound on the trunk. The tree tries to close this wound with special wound tissue. The larger the wound, the rougher the cut surface and the younger the tree, the longer this overgrowth process takes. In the case of very large wounds, it can take years. During this time, the part of the cut surface that is not yet overgrown is not protected against fungi and pests that destroy wood. Fruit trees are particularly delicate.

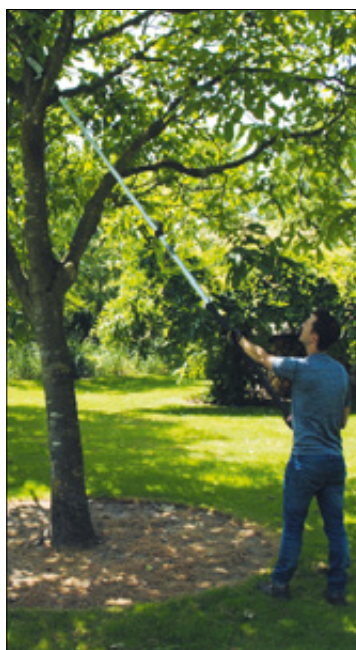
1.) Use the right saw. The larger the setting (alternate bending of the teeth to the right and left) of a saw, the larger the ridges and scratches on the cut surface. This results in a greater exposed surface and water can accumulate between the ridges, which may later cause rotting. Consequently, saws with very slightly setting or unset teeth are ideal for pruning fruit trees (see pictogram fruit tree pruning).



2.) The branch should be cut at the collar. »Cutting at the branch collar« means that you should not cut the branch flush with the trunk but leave the branch collar intact, as the tissue there is particularly active. However, you should never leave a stub on the trunk, as this hinders or even prevents wound overgrowth.



3.) In particular, dormant pruning in winter makes it more difficult for the tree to close the cut surfaces with wound tissue. It is recommended to apply special wound sealants such as tree waxes or tars to cut surfaces.



A



### A SILKY® KATANABOY FOLDING SAW 500

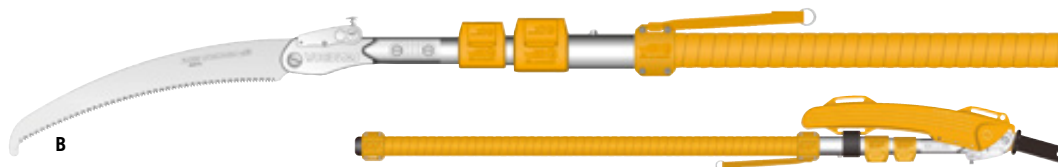
The chain saw's sharpest competitor: This folding saw by Silky for carpentry work, tree care and forestry can easily stand the comparison with the Katana, the legendary Samurai sword. With its blade length of 500 mm, this saw is ideal for cutting larger stock and branches. Comes with a robust nylon shoulder bag with Velcro fastener and pocket for replacement blades.

- Saw blade is hard-chromed and thus rustproof
- Robust aluminium handle with anti-slip rubber coating
- Taper-ground blade allows cutting with little friction
- Fully hardened teeth for sharpening by hand

Blade length 500 mm  
Blade width 50 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 1.18 m  
Setting 1.9 mm  
Crosscut teeth 6 mm  
**No. 712048**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712049**



For a Silky® Katanaboy 650 or 1000 with even longer blade see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



B



### B SILKY® LONGBOY TELESCOPIC SAW

Long and extremely effective: The »Silky Longboy« telescopic pruning saw is the first choice of professionals working in forestry and for fruit tree care.

- Unset teeth for reduced friction and clean cuts
- Hard-chromed blade (rustproof, easy cleaning)
- Impulse-hardened tooth points for long service life
- Hooks on the saw blade for gathering branches
- Light weight
- Saw blade retractable for transport
- Break-proof sheath

Blade length 360 mm  
Blade width 55 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 1.8-3.5 m  
Crosscut teeth 4.3 mm  
2.1 kg  
**No. 712050**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712051**  
Surcharge for bulky goods.



C



### C SILKY® HAYAUCHI PROFESSIONAL TELESCOPIC SAWS 390

For professional use: Superlative saws in a class of their own for professional use in tree care and forestry.

- Fully hardened teeth for sharpening by hand
- Ball locking mechanism and additional locking clamps on the handle
- Hard-chromed blade (rustproof, easy cleaning)

- Two hooks on saw blade for gathering and trimming small branches and to prevent slippage
- Quick-change fastener on the saw blade for easy transport
- Raker teeth push cut material out of the saw cut and extend the edge life
- Break-proof sheath

Blade length 390 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Setting 2.2 mm  
Crosscut teeth 4.5 mm

Three-Part  
Overall length 2.4-4.9 m  
2.2 kg  
**No. 712046**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712047**  
Surcharge for bulky goods.

Four-Part  
Overall length 2.5-6.3 m  
3.0 kg  
**No. 712045**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712047**  
Surcharge for bulky goods.



Saw blade for Silky® Hayauchi with removeable front hook available online.



### A JAPANESE TELESCOPIC PRUNING SAW

Light but stable telescopic saw for tree care, which can be perfectly adjusted to any cutting height thanks to its continuously extendable aluminium

pole. Slim blade with proven Japanese cutting action for use in dense treetops. The head can be unscrewed for easy transport and storage.

Blade length 300 mm  
Blade width 35 mm  
Blade thickness 1 mm  
Overall length 2.1-3.4 m  
Setting 1.6 mm

Crosscut teeth 4 mm  
1.2 kg  
**No. 712728**  
Repl. Blade **No. 712828**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*



B



### B BARNELE® TELESCOPIC SAWS

Good price/performance ratio: These telescopic tree-care saws will impress you with their practical design and high-quality workmanship.

- Ball locking mechanism with spring-loaded lever and additional locking clamps on the handle
- Hard-chromed blade (rustproof, easy cleaning)
- Impulse-hardened tooth tips
- Two hooks on saw blade for gathering and trimming small branches and to prevent slippage
- Quick-change fastener on the saw blade for easy transport
- Raker teeth push cut material out of the saw cut and extend the edge life
- Break-proof sheath

Blade length 430 mm  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Setting 2 mm  
Crosscut teeth 5.2 mm

*Barnele® Telescopic Saw 510*  
Overall length 2.2-5.1 m  
2.7 kg  
**No. 718247**  
Repl. Blade **No. 718249**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*

*Barnele® Telescopic Saw 640*  
Overall length 2.8-6.4 m  
3.4 kg  
**No. 718248**  
Repl. Blade **No. 718249**  
*Surcharge for bulky goods.*



C



### Forestry work

Robust saw, designed for fast cuts and large branch diameters.



### General pruning

Standard pruning saw for cutting fresh and dead wood.

**C BARNELE® CATERPILLAR SHEARS HEAD FOR TELESCOPIC SAW RAIL**  
Whether for thinning out and cutting back treetops or harvesting fruit at great heights - the pruner head, once used for removing caterpillar nests from treetops, is the solution to problems with higher plants. The pruner head is placed over a branch from above and thus ensures a controlled cut and fast healing of the

wound on the branch. Thanks to the tackle system with two pulleys you can trim even thick branches of 35 mm diameter with little effort. Carbon steel blade. The 5 m long rope is made of polyamide with a wooden handle. Comes with tackle system and adapter for telescopic saw No. 718239, 718247 and 718248. 1.1 kg  
**No. 718318**



D

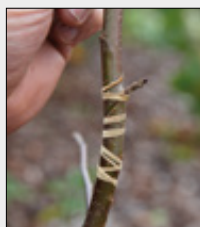
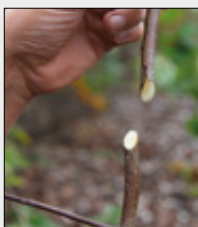
### D DIAMOND SAW FILE

Saw file with wear-resistant, diamond-coated surface, especially for very hard, tip-hardened teeth. Cross section 2.8 mm Width 20 mm Cut length 100 mm  
**No. 712802**

## Garden Knives

### Florist's grafting knives

Florist's grafting knives are used to graft scions with a base or to cut flowers. The straight form of the relatively broad blade allows for excellent stability. All grafting knives have a single bevel to enable a perfect surface.



E



### E TINA® FLORIST'S GRAFTING KNIFE

Professional gardeners greatly appreciate this universal folding knife with its tried and trusted Tina handle that prevents fatigue while working. The walnut handle broadens towards the back making sure the knife lies comfortably against the ball of your thumb, while an additional curve close to the blade prevents your

fingers from slipping accidentally. The hand-forged blade emerges almost directly from the handle to enable precisely executed cuts. The blade has a single bevel and cutting tip made of high-purity carbon steel (61 HRC). Blade length 55 mm Overall length 165 mm 60 g  
**No. 709702**

F



### F KUNDE® FLORIST'S GRAFTING KNIFE

Beautifully designed folding knife with brass liners whose intrinsic weight lets it lie pleasantly in the hand. The single bevel is ideal for grafting and cutting

flowers. Carbon steel blade hardened to 58 HRC. Polymer handle scales. Blade length 55 mm Overall length 165 mm 60 g  
**No. 718058**

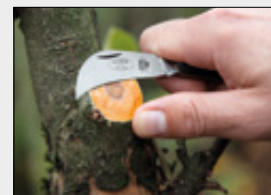


**A JAPANESE GARDEN KNIFE**  
Powerful foldable garden knife with a curved carbon steel (58 HRC) grafting blade and a large handle made of untreated precious wood. Double bevel.

With practical hanging eyelet.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 195 mm  
120 g  
**No. 709169**

### Pruning and nursery pruning knives

The design of this knife features a broad blade, which makes it ideal for smoothening the edges of cuts after pruning trees or removing canker. The sickle-shaped blade is equally ideal for harvesting herbs. Its solid shape also allows horticulturalists to cut back epicormic shoots. Suitable for left- and right-handers thanks to its double bevel.



**B TINA® PRUNING AND NURSERY GRAFTING KNIVES**  
This beautifully designed pruning knife features a curved walnut handle that broadens towards the back and nestles perfectly against the palm of the hand. The curved handle makes the strenuous work for which this pruning knife is designed particularly easy. The preferred

tool of professional gardeners, this pruning knife has an extremely sharp, supra pure carbon steel blade (61 HRC) with a durable edge. Folding blade. Double bevel.  
Blade length 65 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
120 g  
**No. 709704**



**C KUNDE® PRUNING AND NURSERY GRAFTING KNIVES**  
Classic pruning knife that lies comfortably in your hand thanks to its curved handle, thus minimising the force needed when cutting. This is particularly beneficial when performing strenuous work such as removing shoots and for the

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.

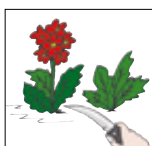


Two free sharpenings

treatment of bark wounds. Double bevel. Folding blade made of carbon steel, hardened to 58 HRC. Wooden handle scales.  
Blade length 65 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
105 g  
**No. 718108**



**D SICKLE KNIFE**  
»KAMA«  
Sickle-shaped knife with waved edge for weeding and harvesting flowers, herbs and vegetables. Stainless



steel. Beechwood handle.  
Blade length 140 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
75 g  
**No. 718158**



**E HARVESTING KNIFE DELUXE WITH FIRE-HARDENED HANDLE**  
Archaic-style knife for harvesting flowers, herbs, cabbage and lettuce. The triple-layered blade made of Japanese steel with a core layer of White Paper Steel cuts effortlessly through even thick stalks and is securely fixed to the handle

via a dark ferrule. The fire-hardening of the chestnut handle over an open flame makes it less susceptible to mechanical stress and dirt.  
Blade length 105 mm  
Overall length 235 mm  
70 g  
**No. 718202**



**F JAPANESE PLANTING KNIFE**  
Simple, non-stick garden knife with double-edged blade for digging small planting holes and planting bulbs. The black non-stick coating prevents damp soil and dirt from sticking to the blade. Concave blade with serrated edge. Han-

dle of untreated beechwood. Comes with faux leather sheath with belt loop.  
Blade length 145 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
280 g  
**No. 718294**



**G PROFESSIONAL JAPANESE PLANTING KNIFE**  
Robust planting knife of hardened stainless steel with ergonomic plastic handle and scale on reverse, for all kinds of planting tasks. The shovel-shaped, dirt-resistant polished blade is useful not only for precise digging of plant holes and baring the roots of potted and out-

door plants, but also for prying out small stones. The serration on one side allows you to cut off stubborn roots. Comes in a break-proof plastic sheath.  
Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 330 mm  
220 g  
**No. 718109**



**H TRADITIONAL JAPANESE PLANTING KNIFE**  
This traditional Japanese planting knife with hardened stainless steel blade with scale on the reverse is used for precise

planting of root balls. With its pointed, concave shape, it is also suitable for baring the roots of potted and outdoor plants. The toothed blade is useful for cutting through roots. Dirt-resistant polished surface, varnished hardwood handle.

Riveted sheath with belt holster.  
Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
220 g

**No. 718157**





## Scythes and Accessories



### Schröckenfux® Scythes

Schröckenfux, a company from the Austrian Krems Valley, is one of the last scythe makers in Central Europe. For over 450 years, carbon steel blanks have been shaped to elegantly curved, razor-thin scythe and sickle blades. ► *Surcharge for bulky goods.*

#### A SCHRÖCKENFUX® STYRIA-SCYTHE WITH STONE TIP

Traditional Austrian scythe shape: Due to the comparably flat blade with a length of 650 mm and the relatively strong curvature of the cutting edge, this scythe works very smoothly and is easy to guide. This type of scythe is therefore suitable for beginners and people who want to scythe with little effort. The specially shaped stone tip protects the cutting edge from accidental contact with stones and is therefore ideal for stony soils.

The S-shaped ash snath ensures an optimal body position when mowing. It is adjustable for height (155-185 cm) and body position. Peened and sharpened ready for mowing; instructions are included.

Body height 155-185 cm  
Blade width 55 mm  
Blade length 650 mm  
Overall length 153 cm  
**No. 707781**  
Repl. Blade **No. 707782**

**B SCHRÖCKENFUX® ORIGINAL RAZOR-CUT GARDENING SCYTHE**  
Universal scythe with a slender peened blade. The special design of the blade reduces efforts even when mowing uneven ground. The patented snath, an oval steel tube with wooden handles, is adjustable for height (170-185 cm) and body position. Peened and sharpened ready for mowing, instructions are included.

Blade width 50 mm  
Blade length  
600 mm **No. 705600**  
Repl. Blade **No. 705603**  
700 mm **No. 705601**  
Repl. Blade **No. 705602**

#### D SCHRÖCKENFUX® WOODEN SCYTHE SNATH, ASH

Optimal body positioning for mowing via adjustable handles and S-shape. Fits Schröckenfux and all standard scythe blades. Made from ash.  
Snath cross-section 26 x 30 mm.

*Wooden Scythe Snath, Size 1-2, Small*  
Body height 155-185 cm  
**No. 705609**

**C SCHRÖCKENFUX® BUSH SCYTHE**  
Ideal for controlled mowing of weeds and undergrowth along hedges or on fruit tree meadows. The blade is shorter and thicker than grass blades, and is not easily damaged when it hits a foreign body. The patented snath, an oval steel tube with wooden handles, is adjustable for height (170-185 cm) and body position. Peened and sharpened ready for mowing, with instructions.  
Blade width 60 mm  
Blade length 500 mm  
**No. 705607**  
Repl. Blade **No. 705608**

*Wooden Scythe Snath, Size 3, Medium*  
Body height 185-195 cm  
**No. 705610**

*Wooden Scythe Snath, Size 4, Large*  
Body height 190-200 cm  
**No. 706439**

### Mowing keeps fit

Mowing with a scythe is not only an environmentally friendly alternative to lawnmowers, but also perfect exercise. The rhythmic mowing movements train your arms and upper body, the silence and the aroma of freshly-mown grass have an almost meditative effect. A must-have for uninterrupted enjoyment is a well-balanced scythe which retains its sharpness for a long time.



For more scythes and oval steel tubing scythe snaths see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## WORKSHOP

## SCYTHES - MOWING AND PEENING

**Content:** The comeback of mowing with a scythe keeps your body and the environment fit. An increasing number of hobby gardeners are enjoying that smell of freshly cut grass. Handling a scythe is a skill that requires some practice. The course starts out with peening the blade using the peening anvil, honing it on a whetstone, adjusting the snath, and it ends with mowing practices. You may bring your own scythe. It is also possible to purchase high-quality scythes and blades during the course.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



CLASSIC

**EINFACH MÄHEN MIT DER SENSE**  
Bernhard Lehnert:  
Mowing with a scythe is becoming increasingly popular. Anyone who has learned to handle this age-old tool will experience mowing as a pleasantly relaxing

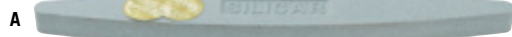


form of physical exercise out in the fresh air. The author uses numerous pictures to provide tips and tricks on how to make mowing easier and on picking the right scythe. The richly illustrated guides on the proper honing and peening of the blade are particularly valuable. 80 pages, paperback, 133 illustrations, 146 x 210 mm. In German.  
**No. 713894**

## DVD: SCYTHING TECHNIQUES

In this introduction, scythe-master Ernst Schoiswohl and Canadian organic farmer Peter Vido teach knowledge which has virtually been forgotten. From adjusting the snath, body position when mowing to peening and honing the blade viewers will learn everything they need to know about working with scythes.

DVD.

DE **No. 713734**EN **No. 713752**

**A SILICAR® SILICON CARBIDE WHETSTONE FOR SCYTHES, COARSE**  
Unbreakable artificial stone made of pure silicon carbide without filler, hardened tips. Grit 220.

- Soft stone with very good material removal properties for honing
- For the treatment of grass cutting

scythes after peening and for honing of bush and forestry scythes during mowing

- For scythe cuttings in very hard grasses and thinning work
- All-round polished surfaces

260 x 35 x 15 mm

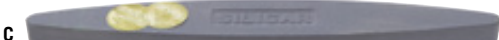
**No. 711304**

**B NATURAL WHETSTONE FOR SCYTHES, MILAN**  
Classical whetstone for scythes from a quarry near Milan. Grit 300-400.

- Rather soft and very efficient stone, ideal for honing
- For honing during cutting and the treatment of the blade after peening

- For scythe cuttings in hard grasses (mountain pastures, dry and semi-dry grassland)
- Two narrow sides and one broad side polished

240 x 40 x 18 mm

**No. 711311**

**C SILICAR® SILICON CARBIDE WHETSTONE FOR SCYTHES, FINE**  
Unbreakable artificial stone made of pure silicon carbide without filler, hardened tips. Grit 400.

- Soft stone with very good material removal properties for honing

- For honing during cutting and the treatment of the blade after peening
- For scythe cuttings in hard grasses (mountain pastures, dry and semi-dry grassland)
- All-round polished surfaces

260 x 35 x 15 mm

**No. 711305**

**D NATURAL WHETSTONE FOR SCYTHES, ROZSUTEC**  
Natural stone from the Slovakian Mala-Fatra Mountains. Grit 300-400.

- High density and very small material removal, for drawing out the cutting edge

- For honing during cutting
- For scythe cuttings in soft grasses and herbs (wet grassland and rich pastures)
- All-round polished surfaces

215 x 35 x 14 mm

**No. 705582**

**E NATURAL WHETSTONE FOR SCYTHES, LA PRADALUNGA**  
This fine natural stone from the region of Milan with a high content of quartz meets highest demands. Grit 400-500.

- Very dense structure and even, durable grain for slight material removal, thus ideal for drawing out and thinning the metal at the cutting edge slightly

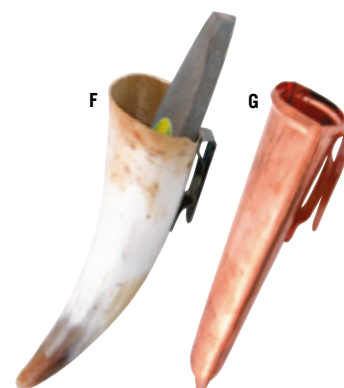
- For honing during cutting
- For scythe cuttings in soft grasses (wet grassland and rich pastures)
- Narrow sides polished

240 x 40 x 18 mm

**No. 711312**

## F WHETSTONE HOLDER, COWHORN

This traditional-style whetstone holder is made of original Austrian cowhorn. It offers an even classier way of keeping your whetstone wet and within reach when scything large areas. Fitted with a belt clip.

**No. 705590**

## G WHETSTONE HOLDER, COPPER

Fill the container with water and wear it on your belt. The perfect device for keeping your whetstone wet and handy when scything large areas. Copper, with a belt clip.

190 x 75 x 40 mm

**No. 705589**

## H PEENING ANVIL, WITH STOPPER

Peening made easy:

Peening makes the cutting edge of scythe and sickle blades thinner, harder and easier to sharpen. But peening is quite a challenge. A well-balanced blow with the hammer, an even feed motion and a precise positioning of the blade

on the anvil are required. All demand a lot of practise. This peening anvil solves this problem. The blade is placed on an adjustable support plate. A depth stop makes sure that the blade is exactly positioned on the curved anvil. Another advantage: you can always easily view the field of work. The anvil is made of impact-resistant tool steel, the surface area is hardened to a depth of 3 cm to 58-60 HRC. Since the anvil is not hardened through, the hammer will not bounce. Suited for all scythe and sickle blades. The anvil has a horn for beating it to a wooden block. Includes instruction sheet and abrasive fabric for cleaning blade, anvil and hammer. Galvanized.

► Suitable hammers No. 714104 and 714117.

800 g

**No. 705587**

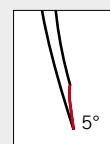
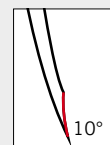
## Peening and honing

## Hard clippings - thick edge - abrasive grindstone

A thick edge is more robust and can also withstand woody tree shoots. Nevertheless, the cutting edge is subject to heavier wear owing to the hard grasses and should therefore be worked on with an abrasive whetstone (No. 711304, No. 711305, No. 711311).

## Soft clippings - thin edge - hard grindstone

For soft cuttings, you need an extremely sharp edge. A thin edge is easier to sharpen, providing the greatest possible degree of sharpness. A hard grindstone straightens up the edge, which is often only slightly bent from working in soft grasses (principle of a sharpening steel). Since the edge itself is not subject to heavy wear, it only needs to be sharpened to a limited extent during honing (No. 705582, No. 711312).



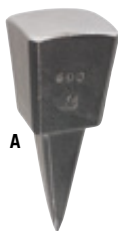
**A PEENING ANVIL**

Drop-forged steel anvil with a polished face for peening scythes and a horn for fastening on wooden blocks. The scythe blade is laid on the anvil, the cutting edge is peened with the hammer.

For de-tailed instructions on peening scythes, we recommend the DVD »Scything Techniques« (No. 713752).

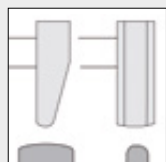
► Suitable hammers No. 714116 and 714117.

Face 40 x 40 mm, 500 g  
**No. 705664**

**B PEENING JIG**

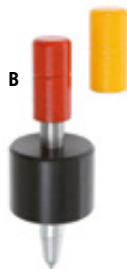
For controlled peening of scythe and sickle blades. Round anvil with stop, centring pin for holding in a wooden block. Two striking sleeves for coarse and fine peening.

► Suitable hammer No. 714117.  
800 g  
**No. 705591**

**Which hammer goes with which anvil?**

If the face of the anvil is rounded, use a hammer with a straight, slightly curved striking surface.

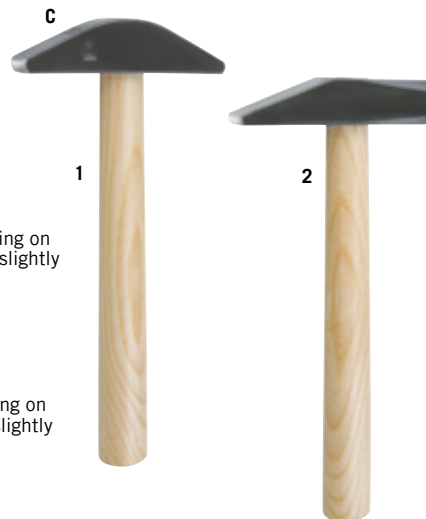
If the face of the anvil is straight and slightly curved, use a hammer with a rounded peen. The head weight of the hammer should lie between 500 and 600 g. The heavier the hammer, the easier it will be to shape the material. We recommend you start with a 500 g hammer as beginners generally lack accuracy.

**B****D****Picard®**

Picard hammers have been manufactured in Germany for over 150 years. With innovation and experience, the company develops products of exceptional quality.

**C PICARD®****PEENING HAMMERS**

Hammer with drop-forged head and polished faces or panes for peening scythes. Varnished ash handle, secured with annular wedge.

**1 with Two Panes**

Ensures good balance when peening on a peening anvil with straight and slightly curved face.

Head weight 500 g  
Overall length 280 mm  
**No. 714116**

**2 with Face and Pane**

Versatile hammer suited for working on peening anvils with straight and slightly curved as well as rounded face.

Head weight 500 g  
Overall length 280 mm  
**No. 714117**

**D SQUARE HAMMERS**

All-purpose hammer with particularly good directional stability, ideal for assembly work, driving nails etc. A Genno with a head weight of 375 g is suitable for striking Japanese chisels. Square-headed, rounded edges. Selectively hardened, flat and curved faces.

Head weight 570 g  
Overall length 370 mm  
**No. 714104**



► **SF Peening Machine**  
(No. 705864)  
available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Sickles****Japanese Sickles - Feather-light and Extremely Sharp**

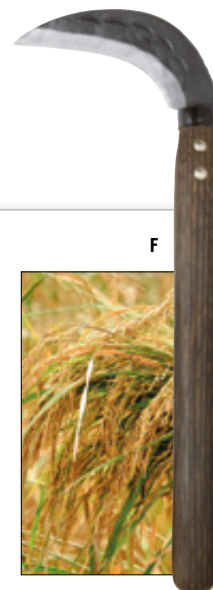
These sickles are feather-light and extremely sharp, making gardening work much easier. Their handles consist of water-resistant Japanese hardwoods like ho or white oak.

**E****E DAMASCUS STEEL SICKLE**

Hand-forged:  
The powerful blade of this multi-layered Damascus steel sickle cuts even through the strongest grasses, weeds and undergrowth effortlessly. Harvesting salad and

vegetables with it is a pleasure.

Blade length 155 mm  
Overall length 400 mm  
365 g  
**No. 718161**

**F****F SICKLE WITH FIRE-HARDENED HANDLE**

Hand-forged:  
Archaic-looking sickle with double-layered forged blade for cutting small branches, grass or picking lettuce. The chestnut handle is fire-hardened over an open flame to make it more resistant to mechanical stress and dirt.

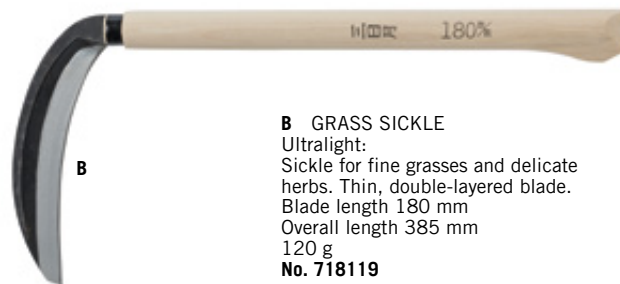
Blade length 100 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
100 g  
**No. 718054**



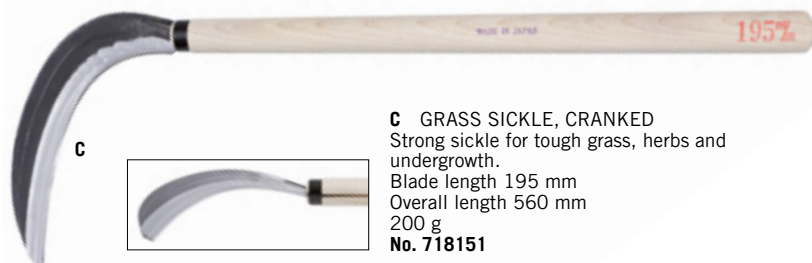




**A FARMING SICKLE**  
Sickle with thick blade. Cuts branches, undergrowth and brush. 4 mm thick triple-layered steel blade.  
Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 430 mm  
460 g  
**No. 718152**



**B GRASS SICKLE**  
Ultralight:  
Sickle for fine grasses and delicate herbs. Thin, double-layered blade.  
Blade length 180 mm  
Overall length 385 mm  
120 g  
**No. 718119**



**C GRASS SICKLE, CRANKED**  
Strong sickle for tough grass, herbs and undergrowth.  
Blade length 195 mm  
Overall length 560 mm  
200 g  
**No. 718151**



**D HARVESTING SICKLE**  
Compact sickle with toothed blade, ideal for harvesting salad, vegetables and herbs.  
Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
100 g  
**No. 718150**



**E DROP-POINT FARMING SICKLE**  
With triple-layered, robust blade for removing brush and clearing undergrowth.  
Blade length 170 mm  
Overall length 500 mm  
430 g  
**No. 718156**



**F SICKLE HOE**  
Short hoe for weeding and loosening soil. Cranked blade, hand-forged from double-layered steel.  
Blade length 125 mm  
Overall length 330 mm  
180 g  
**No. 718358**



**G DICTUM® SICKLE CLEAVER**  
This tool is designed for clearing undergrowth and containing rank growth. Due to its long cutting edge, you can also cut thorny wood with up to 2 cm branch diameter from a safe distance. The hand-made ashwood handle with its rounded end allows the tool to be held firmly and

safely without slipping. Blade made of flexible, wear-resistant pre-tempered spring steel. Comes without leather sheath.  
Blade length 320 mm  
Overall length 870 mm  
Head weight 990 g  
**No. 708360**

#### DICTUM satisfaction guarantee

Products can be tested for 15 days.  
(For more information see page 4)



► For garden hatchets see chapter »Hatchets and Axes«.



**H SCYTHE SICKLE**  
This sickle forged in Germany is ideal for cutting tough and woody grasses and uncontrolled growth. Varnished beech handle.

- Peened and forged by hand
- Ergonomic handle
- Broad, strong blade

Blade length 270 mm  
Overall length 330 mm  
360 g  
**No. 718280**



**I SABATIER® FRENCH MACHETE**  
This machete has been used by the French Foreign Legion for decades. However, the extra-long sturdy carbon steel blade is not only suitable for survival in

tropical rainforests. This machete is an ideal tool for forestry, gardening, hunting or fishing. It is easy to sharpen and retains its edge even after heavy-duty work. Thick leather case with belt loop.

Blade length 550 mm  
Overall length 710 mm  
1 kg  
**No. 705666**



#### Handle-fitting pass

One handle fitted free.  
(For more information see page 4)



#### Inclusive free sharpening pass.

For more information see page 4.

Two free sharpenings

## Gardening Sets and Accessories



**A JAPANESE GARDENING TOOLS, 5-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
 Good start:  
 With this professional set of Japanese gardening tools, you are optimally equipped for pruning and other work with plants. It contains a DICTUM classic 240 pruning saw (No. 712116) in a beechwood sheath for trimming fruit trees and hedges, the lightweight (205 g)



Kijo pruning shears (No. 718169), a Japanese garden knife (No. 709169), and a sheathed planting knife (No. 718157) for replanting potted and outdoor plants. Practical storage and transport with the tool roll (No. 707514) made of strong cotton cloth with clip fastener.  
**No. 712633**



**B JAPANESE GARDENING TOOLS, 7-PIECE SET** *Price advantage*  
 For professionals:  
 Professional set of Japanese quality tools for pruning and planting. It includes Kijo pruning shears (No. 718169) for cutting without damaging the plant, a Silky Pocketboy folding saw 170 (No. 712776), a universal planting, rooting and transplanting knife (No. 718157), flower shears (No. 730459), the sickle knife for harvesting and cutting weeds (No. 718158) and the Japanese garden knife (No. 709169), stylishly housed in the gardening apron made of split leather (No. 707501).  
**1 No. 718916**



**2 Gardening Apron without Content**  
**No. 707501**



More accessories and useful items available online.



**C JAPANESE GARDENER'S HAT**  
 This classically designed hat is not only essential to rice farmers and Japanese gardeners - it is suitable for other outdoor activities as well - from fishing to sunbathing. The fine bamboo weave and reed covering allows the hat to keep you cool, while its light weight makes it barely noticeable even on long days. For head circumference 57-58 cm.  
 Ø 42 cm, 160 g.  
**No. 708894**



**D WIND BELLS, GREEN**  
 Cast iron bell whose tender tones play the song of the wind. Surface ornamented in the style of a Buddhist temple bell and with patina.  
 90/140 g  
**1 Ø 48 mm**  
**No. 820032**  
**2 Ø 55 mm**  
**No. 820033**



**E HEMP STRING**  
 The plant-friendly, black hemp string is traditionally used in Japan for tying bamboo fences and trellises when shaping bushes and trees. It is highly tear-resistant, non-elastic and easy to knot.  
 Ø 3 mm, overall length 200 m.  
**No. 708891**



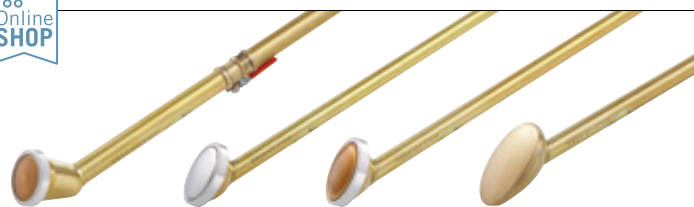
**F LEATHER APRON**  
 This heavy-duty leather apron provides reliable protection against dirt, dust, wood chips and shavings. Made from a single piece of 2 mm thick leather, it is ideal for woodworking, woodturning, sharpening, sculpting and gardening. Inside breast pocket, adjustable cross over shoulder straps for best wearing comfort. Made in Germany.  
 90 x 60 cm  
**No. 707500**



**G JAPANESE SCRUB BRUSH**  
 »KAMENOKO TAWASHI«  
 This brush made of natural palm fibers is ideal for cleaning garden tools or wooden objects such as cutting boards. It can be used wet or dry, is hard-wearing and long lasting. Hanging the brushes with the attached loop extends their life span. Overall length 100 mm  
**No. 716111**



Online SHOP



► Ichihana spray lances and other accessoires for irrigation available online.

www.dictum.com





# Knives

»The hocho is the soul of the cook«.  
Japanese proverb

**Japanese Knives | 370**

**Knives for Special Applications | 390**

**Knife Rolls | 391**

**Kitchen Utensils | 393**

**Teapots and Accessories | 393**

**Cutting Boards | 394**

**Knife Blocks | 395**

**Cast Iron Cookware | 396**

**Peelers, Rasps and Accessories | 398**

**Hunting and Outdoor Knives | 400**

**Japanese Hunting and Outdoor Knives | 400**

**Western Hunting and Outdoor Knives | 404**

**Nordic Hunting and Outdoor Knives | 405**

**Japanese Folding Knives | 407**

**Western Folding Knives | 411**

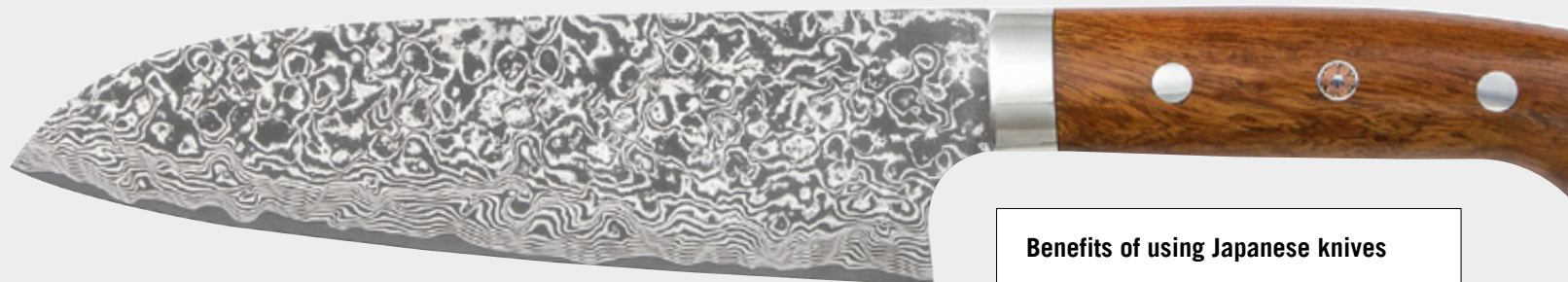
**Knife Making Kits | 418**

**Obsidian | 418**

**Brief Glossary of Steel Terms | 418**

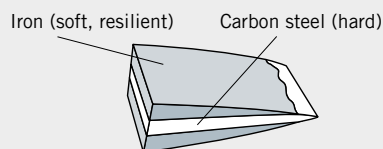


## KITCHEN QUALITY STARTS WITH CUTTING!



## Japanese knives

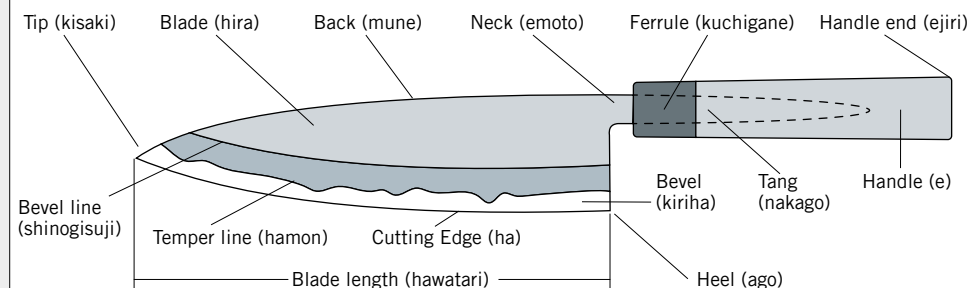
Japan has cultivated the aesthetics of food preparation like no other country, with the Hocho - the handforged knife - being the most important tool. The razor-sharp cut does not crush the cells, the juice is retained, and the natural flavour of the food is preserved.



The blades are forged traditionally in multiple layers, with hard carbon steel

forge-welded with tough iron. Only this elaborate procedure ensures an optimum synthesis of breaking strength and ultimate sharpness. The shape has been developed solely to suit the purpose these knives are intended for, which gives them an aesthetic quality that is unaffected by fashion trends. The light wooden handles, the well-balanced design and the extraordinary sharpness make the use of a Hocho a remarkable experience. Our in-house steel and knife experts and the best contacts with leading Japanese smiths vouch for the quality of the blades we offer.

## Hocho-Terms



## The right knife

Choosing the right knife depends primarily on the intended purpose (vegetables, fish, meat, all-purpose, etc.), but you should also consider how much time you are willing to spend on looking after it. How »easy-care« a knife is depends mainly on the blade steel and the design of the handles:

## Blade steel - highest quality: not rustproof!

**a)** Classic carbon steel (one or more layers) is not rustproof. The blade must therefore be dried after use and regularly oiled. However, it achieves ultimate sharpness and is easy to sharpen.

**b)** Carbon steel for the cutting edge, embedded in stainless steel (three or more layers). **The blade is largely rustproof, only the exposed cutting edge can oxidise.** A good compromise between maintenance requirements and ease of sharpening. As sharp as a).

**c)** Stainless steel (one or more layers). The blade is rustproof and does not need to be oiled. However, due to the high chrome content, it is not as easy to sharpen (chrome affects the sharpening stone and causes a larger burr). These knives are also unfit for the dishwasher.

## Handle construction

**a)** Classic design with attached wooden handles: These can expand when wet and may become loose (light tapping will tighten them again). These knives must be kept dry.

**b)** Design with full-length tang and handle scales (integral or semi-integral design): Depending on the material, these knives are normally hard-wearing. However, their centre of gravity is slightly further back and they are usually more heavy than a).

## Benefits of using Japanese knives

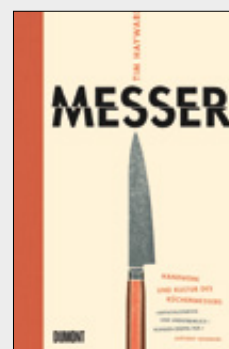
## \* Ultra-sharp cutting for exquisite taste

The superb taste is achieved by a sharp, clean cut that severs the cells rather than squashing or crushing them, as a duller blade might. This also means that the food retains all its flavours. When cutting onions, a sharp blade has the advantage that only a little juice leaks from the cuts - and it is mainly the essential oils contained in the juice that cause tears to the eyes.

## \* Minimal cutting effort

\* They stay sharp longer and are very easy to sharpen

\* The blade shapes are wide, the rear cutting edge stays sharp; you can use the full length of the cutting edge, which is an advantage both for chopping and filleting



## Messer - Handwerk und Kultur des Küchenmessers

Interacting with knifsmiths, chefs, and collectors, the food journalist Tim Hayward explores the world of knives: their design, production, and significance in the various cuisines and cultures of the world. Hayward presents over forty different knife types in detail - from German stainless steel blades, via the Chinese Chai Dao, to the Japanese Santoku made of Damascus steel. These portraits are complemented with practical tips for knife care as well as holding, cutting, and grinding techniques.

224 pages, hardcover, approx. 120 colour photographs, 160 x 240 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714344**

## Knives types and their use

### Santoku

All-purpose knife for meat, fish and vegetables (Santoku = the three virtues). Wide blade for good guidance along the finger knuckles.



### Bunka

Original shape of the all-purpose knife for meat, fish and vegetables. Also suitable for chopping herbs. Later, the all-purpose knife »Santoku« developed from the Usuba and Gyuto shape.



### Gyuto/Kiritsuke

Versatile cooking knife for slicing, filleting and preparing fish and meat. Slim blades for intricate tasks, pull or push cuts.



### Ajikiri

For small fish and for cleaning vegetables and salads, as well as chopping herbs.



### Usuba

Vegetable knife with straight blade for clean cutting on the chopping board; paper-thin slices are no problem, even with ripe tomatoes.



### Petty

Small all-purpose knife for fruit, peeling and cutting small objects.



### Sashimi/Yanagiba

For cutting and filleting fish or ham with a pull stroke. Slim blade in the shape of a willow leaf or Katana (sword). Usually with single bevel for precise filleting and wafer-thin cuts.



### Sujihiki

Versatile cooking knife. The long, slender blade shape is suitable for slicing, filleting and preparing meat and fish. With double bevel.



### Takobiki

Fish knife with slightly curved blade tip in the form of a Japanese Katana (sword). It is suitable for processing fish fillet to sashimi and sushi as well as for dividing octopus.



### Deba

For cutting fish and light mincing. Thick, wide blade. The back of the blade can be used to chop thin bones.



► **Our suggestion:** As a start, we recommend a Santoku (all-purpose knife) and a Petty (fruit and peeling knife) or a Gyuto up to a blade length of 150 mm.

► **Our tip for those who love vegetables:** cutting with an Usuba is a sensual delight!

## Application note

In Japan, cooking is understood as the »art of cutting«. Accordingly, the Hocho is a **highly sensitive** and incredibly **sharp tool** that demands **respectful handling**. The blade consists of several layers of steel, whereby the cutting edge is particularly hard and relatively brittle. Thus, avoid any **breaking, bending and impact stresses** on the blade. The knife is not suitable for cutting hard foods such as frozen foods, bones, bread crusts, etc. Avoid tilting the blade and instead try to work with straight, drawn cuts. Rough handling can cause the blades to break.

## Correct care

**Cutting board:** the correct cutting board - and this applies to all knives, not just original Japanese ones - is made of wood or plastic. Working on porcelain, marble or glass quickly dulls the blade.

► For cutting boards see page 394.

**Storage:** store your knives in a knife block, knife rest or casket. Japanese cooks wrap their knives in individual cloths. We advise against using magnetic holders because they magnetise the blade and make it harder to sharpen.

► For knife rolls see page 391.

**Cleaning:** Clean the knife by hand, rinsing it under luke-warm water and, if required, adding a little washing-up liquid. Do not use

scouring powder and **never put the knife in the dishwasher**, even if it is rustproof.

**Sharpening:** Japanese kitchen knives are, due to their hardness of steel, exclusively sharpened on fine-grained waterstones, dry grinding tools are not suitable. Therefore you require at least a combination sharpening stone. Please follow the sharpening instructions provided with each knife or simply take advantage of our professional sharpening service.

► For sharpening stones see chapter »Sharpening Devices«.

**Sharpening courses:** The perfect introduction to the art of sharpening knives given by experts who were trained in Japan.

► Workshops see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

## How do I identify a Japanese knife?

The visible quality features of original Japanese knives include:

- The traditional form
- They often have a Japanese signature (not a Chinese one!)
- As Japanese blades are always made of at least two and usually even three layers of metal, a wavy border line must be visible at the cutting edge
- The so-called Suminagashi pattern - the damask-like structure of multi-layered steel - is often imitated in cheap knives by etching; when buying a knife, compare two knives of the same type; the etched pattern is always the same, while the structure lines of multi-layered steel are slightly different in each knife

## Beware of fakes!

**Widely used Japanese-looking knives from Asian low-wage countries are often only similar in shape to the original Hocho.**

## ► With us you get the originals!

All Hochos offered by DICTUM are exclusively made in Japan and are distinguished by their sharpness, cutting properties and best steels.

## ► Your exclusive benefit



## Sharpening Pass

All knives come with a sharpening pass for **two free sharpenings**. Send us your knives and we will return them razor-sharp within a few days. All you pay is the postage.

## Premium sharpening service

High classed knives include the **unlimited sharpening service**. Just send us your knife whenever you feel it is not sharp enough. You will get it back sharpened free of charge within a few days. All you pay is the postage.

**Training video:** Demonstrates the sharpening of Japanese knives (No. 713806).

**Sharpening Primer:** Our Sharpening Primer can be downloaded free of charge on [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Japanese Knives



15-layered  
Suminagashi  
blade

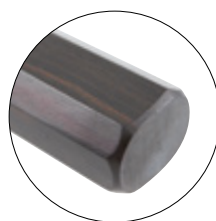
Cutting layer  
made of  
Blue Paper  
Steel

Hand-engraved  
signature

熊五郎



Fine  
buffalo horn  
ferrule



Octagonal  
handle made of  
Macassar ebony

### A HOCHO DELUXE

The highest perfection of blacksmithing:

The forging of knives has always had a strongly mystical cultural history. This is the only explanation why the products are often enhanced way beyond their actual utility. The passionate search for perfection, characterised by the Samurai sword blacksmiths, can still be found in certain blacksmiths today. One of them is Yoshikazu Tanaka, where these perfectly formed Hocho are created. He joins multiply folded, high-purity carbon steel with a cutting edge of Blue Paper Steel to make exceptional blades with a hardness of 61 HRC. The result persuades with a classical wave pattern on the wide side of the blade and a breathtaking sharp cutting edge. The octagonal shaped handle made of Macassar ebony, a very dense, non-fading and ageing-resistant precious wood, is completed with a buffalo horn ferrule. The blade comprises 15 layers in total with a right-hand bevel, not rustproof.

#### 1 Deba

Blade length 185 mm  
Blade thickness 7 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
370 g

**No. 719713**

#### 2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife

Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 3.7 mm  
Overall length 325 mm  
225 g

**No. 719714**

#### 3 Sashimi, Fish Knife

Blade length 290 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 450 mm  
235 g

**No. 719715**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

### Original Japanese kitchen knives

Outstanding knives with traditional blade shapes have been made in the traditional manner in small Japanese foundries for centuries. Often with a high level of manual work or even completely handmade. Knives with this classical form are known as »Wabocho« in Japan. They are valued by experts because of the best steels, carefully selected materials for the handles and ferrules, a high level of workmanship,

original design - and last but not least, extreme sharpness and sharpness retention. The blades usually have a hard carbon steel core forge-welded to one or more outer layers of iron - similar to multi-layer Samurai swords. Traditional materials and forms are also used for the handles.

**Knives are tools!**



## Shigefusa Hocho

Master Shigefusa uses original materials to create knives in classical shapes following the strict code of traditional Japanese aesthetics. With meditative devotion, he creates the finest blades in his workshop using traditional swordsmithing methods. This includes forge-welding of the individual layers in a charcoal furnace, forming of the blades with a scraper blade and then grinding and polishing by hand on a veritable arsenal of waterstones. Magnolia wood handles with buffalo horn ferrules. Cutting edge made of non-rustproof carbon steel (V1), hardness 64 HRC.



**A SHIGEFUSA HOCHO KITAEJI**  
Original and authentic:  
61 layers, double-bevelled.

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
150 g  
**No. 719137**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 160 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
185 g  
**No. 719666**



**B SHIGEFUSA HOCHO KASUMI**  
Original and authentic:  
Triple-layered blade, double-bevelled.  
Surface has a forged structure, gunmetal finish.

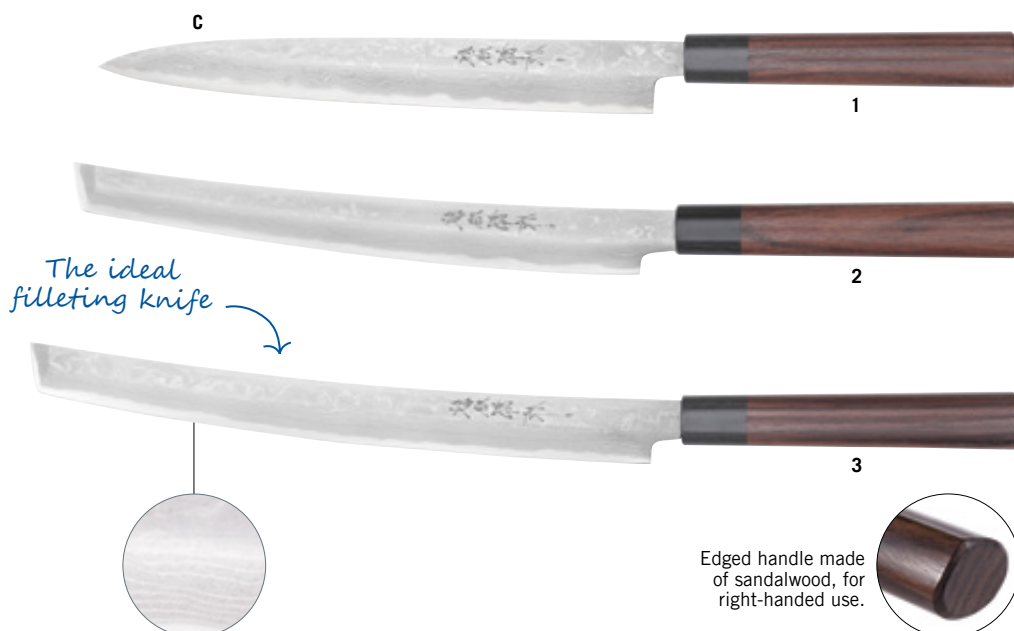
**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
155 g  
**No. 719665**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 160 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
180 g  
**No. 719206**



Edged handle made of magnolia wood, for right-handed use.

**C OKADA HOCHO**  
Masanobu Okada is a Japanese Dento-Kogeishi - a master of traditional crafts. Working out of the Takefu Knife Village, he represents the third generation of his family to fashion superb kitchen knives. The blade's individual Suminagashi pattern is produced by 20 layers of folded steel enclosing the core cutting layer made of White Paper Steel. This ultrapure carbon steel has extraordinarily fine grinding properties, allowing it to achieve outstanding sharpness. The sandalwood handle possesses a fascinating brown hue with dark lines, and is held in place beneath a black ferrule made of wood laminate. Right-handers will find the knife extremely comfortable to hold thanks to the finger groove positioned on the right side of the handle. The blade bears the signature of the smith and is double-bevelled. Hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof.



**1 Yanagiba, Fish Knife**  
Suitable for portioning and filleting fish, and for preparing sushi.  
Blade length 260 mm  
Blade thickness 3.4 mm  
Overall length 405 mm  
200 g  
**No. 719879**

**Takobiki, Fish Knife**  
Fish knife with a tapered blade tip in the form of a Japanese Katana (sword). The Takobiki is ideal for cutting fish fillets when making sashimi and sushi, but also to portion octopus. However, you will also enjoy this knife for all other cuttings tasks.

	Blade length	Blade thickness	Overall length	Weight	No.
<b>2</b>	270 mm	3.3 mm	410 mm	180 g	<b>719880</b>
<b>3</b>	300 mm	3.3 mm	440 mm	185 g	<b>719884</b>

Edged handle made of sandalwood, for right-handed use.





# Masashi Yamamoto

Masashi Yamamoto comes from the Yoshikane family of knife makers, which has existed since 1919. The exceptionally beautiful kitchen knives of this young smith are handmade in his workshop in Sanjo City, Niigata.



## A YAMAMOTO HOCHO SLD

Traditional Japanese knives with forged skin and traditional character. The perfect antique look of the Japanese knife is completed by the handle made of flamed chestnut wood which is finished with a buffalo horn ferrule. The wooden surface is brushed after the burning process, which creates a slightly structured appearance and gives the handle a rustic charm. The core cutting layer made of Hitachi SLD steel\* guarantees excellent sharpness and edge life due to its high carbon content; rustproof side layers facilitate maintenance. Double bevel, hardness 62 HRC. Rust-resistant core cutting layer, rustproof outer layers.

\* Steel analysis: C = 1.5 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 0.4 / Cr = 12 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.35 (in %)

Available August 2021.



Octagonal handle made of chestnut wood.

Kiritsuke, a variant of the knife form Gyuto

A

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

SET

**10 2-Piece Set** *Price advantage*  
 • Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 718670)  
 • Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 718672)  
**No. 718678**

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
 Blade length 165 mm  
 Blade thickness 2 mm  
 Overall length 300 mm  
 155 g  
**No. 718670**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
 Blade length 175 mm  
 Blade thickness 2.1 mm  
 Overall length 310 mm  
 190 g  
**No. 718671**

**3 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**  
 Blade length 120 mm  
 Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
 Overall length 255 mm  
 65 g  
**No. 718672**

**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
 Blade length 150 mm  
 Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
 Overall length 275 mm  
 95 g  
**No. 718673**

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
 Blade length 180 mm  
 Blade thickness 2 mm  
 Overall length 320 mm  
 150 g  
**No. 718674**

**6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
 Blade length 210 mm  
 Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
 Overall length 350 mm  
 185 g  
**No. 718675**

**7 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
 Blade length 240 mm  
 Blade thickness 2 mm  
 Overall length 390 mm  
 235 g  
**No. 718676**

**8 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**  
 Blade length 240 mm  
 Blade thickness 1.9 mm  
 Overall length 390 mm  
 230 g  
**No. 718677**

SET

**9 3-Piece Set** *Price advantage*  
 • Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 718670)  
 • Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 718671)  
 • Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 718672)  
**No. 718679**

**A YAMAMOTO HOCHO**

Hand-forged Japanese kitchen knives made by master knifemaker Masashi Yamamoto. The blade's high-contrast Suminagashi pattern is created by a total of 57 folded layers of steel. The core cutting layer of Hitachi SLD steel\* guarantees excellent sharpness and edge life due to its high carbon content; rustproof side layers facilitate care. The perfect look of the Japanese knife is completed by its handle made of Enju wood (wood of the Japanese pagoda tree), which is finished off with a buffalo horn ferrule. Blade with hand-engraved signature. Double bevel, hardness 63 HRC. Rust-resistant cutting core layer, rustproof side layers.

\* Steel analysis: C = 1.5 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 0.4 / Cr = 12 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.35 (in %)



Oval handle made of Enju wood.

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
145 g  
**No. 720053**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 315 mm  
170 g  
**No. 720054**

**3 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 125 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
65 g  
**No. 720052**

**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
100 g  
**No. 720055**

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
150 g  
**No. 720056**

**6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 355 mm  
210 g  
**No. 720057**

**7 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 405 mm  
235 g  
**No. 720058**

**8 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 390 mm  
130 g  
**No. 720059**

**SET**

- 9 2-Piece Set** *Price advantage*
- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 720053)
  - Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 720052)
- No. 720060**



Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



## Shigeki Hocho

Every piece is unique: Master Shigeki practices steel folding and forge-welding with great virtuosity to create blades with an enchanting aesthetic - each one unique in its structure.



### A SHIGEKI HOCHO »CLASSIC«

Hard Blue Paper Steel is used for the core cutting layer and low alloyed steels for the outer layers. Every knife is hand signed and packed in a beautiful case made of kiri wood. Magnolia wood handle with a buffalo horn ferrule and finger groove for right hand use. Hardness 64 HRC, not rustproof.



**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
31 layers, double-bevelled.  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
130 g  
**No. 719290**

**Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
31 layers, double-bevelled.  
Blade thickness 1.8-2.5 mm

Blade length	Overall length	Weight
105 mm	240 mm	55 g
<b>2 No. 719790</b>		
135 mm	270 mm	60 g
<b>3 No. 719791</b>		
150 mm	275 mm	75 g
<b>4 No. 719792</b>		
185 mm	320 mm	125 g
<b>5 No. 719386</b>		
210 mm	355 mm	150 g
<b>6 No. 719793</b>		

**7 Sashimi, Fish Knife**  
17 layers, single-bevelled  
(right-handed use).  
Blade length 230 mm  
Blade thickness 4.0 mm  
Overall length 375 mm  
160 g  
**No. 719183**

**8 Deba**  
17 layers, single-bevelled  
(right-handed use).  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 6.5 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
280 g  
**No. 719184**

**9 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
31 layers, double-bevelled.  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
130 g  
**No. 719794**

### SET

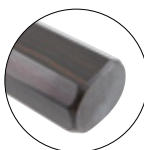


**10**

**10 2-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife  
(No. 719290)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife  
(No. 719791)  
**No. 719798**



Edged handle made of magnolia wood, for right-handed use.



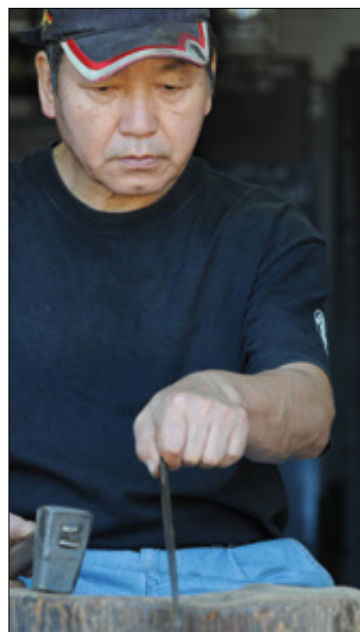
Octagonal handle made of ebony.

► For Shigeki Hocho »Ebony« No. 718664 and other models see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## Takefu Knife Village

The Takefu Knife Village is a cooperative of blade-smithing specialists. It has upheld the tradition of metalworking for almost 700 years. A small group of extremely skilled master smiths forge limited series of superb knives in their smithies located in the tiny village in Fukui Province. They craft their products by hand to create one-of-a-kind Japanese kitchen knives made only of the best materials.



A

1



2



3



4



5

**A HIDEO KITAOKA HOCHO**  
These traditional Japanese knives are handmade by Hideo Kitaoka. The master blacksmith learned his craft from his father at a young age and is now known for his traditional Japanese knives. He uses White Paper Steel for the core cutting layer. This high-purity carbon steel can be ground very finely and thus achieves excellent sharpness. The edged oval handle made of flamed chestnut wood is finished with a buffalo horn ferrule. The wooden surface is brushed after the burning process, which creates a slightly structured appearance and gives the handle a rustic charm. Blade with surface structure; the Funayuki and Yanagiba models feature the traditional Machi notch between blade and tang. This traditional design has its origin in the shape of Japanese swords. The knives are equipped with a hand guard at this point. Single bevel for right-handed use, not rustproof, double-layered, hardness 63 HRC.

**1 Funayuki, All-purpose Knife**  
In former times, the Funayuki was used as an all-purpose knife on fishing boats. It is somewhat stronger than a Santoku and is also suitable for filleting fish.  
Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 3.9 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
180 g  
**No. 708875**

**2 Kasaiki, Small All-purpose Knife**  
For cutting and filleting small fish, as well as for preparing vegetables or other small cutting jobs.  
Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 2.40 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
90 g  
**No. 708876**

**3 Ajikiri, Trimming Knife**  
The wide blade of the Ajikiri is ideal for preparing small fish, vegetables and salad, as well as chopping and cutting herbs.  
Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
90 g  
**No. 708877**

**4 Yanagiba, Fish Knife**  
Suitable for portioning and filleting fish, and for preparing sushi.  
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 3.7 mm  
Overall length 365 mm  
165 g  
**No. 708878**

**5 Yanagiba, Fish Knife**  
Suitable for portioning and filleting fish, and for preparing sushi.  
Blade length 270 mm  
Blade thickness 3.7 mm  
Overall length 415 mm  
195 g  
**No. 708879**



Oval handle made of flamed chestnut wood, for right-handed use.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

## Hayashi Hocho

Light and elegant: Aesthetically pleasing knife with a 12-layered blade from Suminagashi steel. The blade is ground very thin and allows you to cut very fine. The handles are made of water-resistant magnolia wood with ferrules of glue-laminated precious wood. Cutting edge of White Paper Steel with a hardness of 60 HRC. Not rustproof, double-bevelled.



Edged handle made of magnolia wood, for right-handed use.

### A HAYASHI HOCHO, WITHOUT WOODEN SHEATH

### B HAYASHI HOCHO, WITH WOODEN SHEATH



1

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
140 g  
**No. 719207**



2

**2 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 145 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 285 mm  
90 g  
**No. 719225**



3

**3 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
140 g  
**No. 719227**



B

1

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
140 g  
**No. 719112**



2

**2 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 145 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 285 mm  
90 g  
**No. 719226**



3

**3 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
140 g  
**No. 719228**

### SET

Hayashi Hocho, without Wooden Sheath, 3-Piece Set **Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719207)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719225)  
• Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719227)  
**No. 719433**

### SET

Hayashi Hocho, with Wooden Sheath, 3-Piece Set **Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719112)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719226)  
• Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719228)  
**No. 719432**

► All Hochos offered by DICTUM are exclusively made in Japan and are distinguished by their sharpness, edge life and best steels.



C

1

Oval chestnut handle.



2

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
120 g  
**No. 719980**



3

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.4 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
135 g  
**No. 719981**



4

**3 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.4 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
60 g  
**No. 719982**

**C TADAFUSA HOCHO**  
Light Japanese kitchen knives from the traditional Tadafusa smithy. The high-contrast blade consists of a total of 35 layers of Suminagashi steel. High-purity White Paper Steel is used for the cutting layer, which can be ground extremely finely. The oval handle made of thermally treated chestnut wood is completed with a black synthetic ferrule. Double bevel, not rustproof. Hardness 63 HRC.

**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 325 mm  
115 g  
**No. 719983**



### SET

2-Piece Set **Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719980)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719982)  
**No. 719984**





Oval chestnut handle.



#### A TADAFUSA HOCHO NASHIJI

The forged skin with hammered structure gives the blade an original and rustic appearance. A thermal treated\* chestnut wood handle with black plastic ferrule fits the blade. The cutting edge of Blue Paper Steel is perfectly polished and sharpened, the outer layers are of rustproof steel which makes it easier to care for. Not rustproof, double-bevelled cutting edge, hardness 63 HRC.

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
135 g  
**No. 719940**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 295 mm  
150 g  
**No. 719941**

**3 Ajikiri, Trimming Knife**  
Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
75 g  
**No. 719942**

**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
75 g  
**No. 719943**

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 360 mm  
170 g  
**No. 719944**

**6 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
125 g  
**No. 719945**

**7 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 390 mm  
150 g  
**No. 719946**

#### SET

**8 2-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719940)  
• Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719941)  
**No. 719947**



#### SET

**9 2-Piece Set, Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719940)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719943)  
**No. 719948**

\* *Thermic wood: Under the effect of heat (170-250 °C) and steam, the wood structure is changed and improved for special uses (e.g. in the kitchen) in a targeted and natural way without adding any chemicals. During the special treatment process, the cell wall structure is modified in such a way that the ability to absorb water is reduced and the resistance against bacteria is increased. The thermal treatment also lends the wood a slightly darker tone.*



Buffalo horn ferrule



Edged handle made of magnolia wood, for right-handed use.



#### B OCHI HOCHO

The archetype of the Japanese knife: Each of these triple-layered blades, made according to a traditional design, is personally signed by the master blacksmith. The cutting edge of hard Blue Paper Steel (61 HRC) is flanked by tough steel. The black-burned surface forms an effective contrast to the ferrule of extremely rare, grained buffalo horn and the handle of natural magnolia wood. Not rustproof, double-bevelled.

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
160 g  
**No. 719251**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
140 g  
**No. 719252**

**3 Ajikiri, Trimming Knife**  
Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 235 mm  
60 g  
**No. 719250**

**4 Herbs Knife**  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 205 mm  
70 g  
**No. 719249**



#### SET

**5 2-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719251)  
• Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719252)  
**No. 719339**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



**A SHIRO KAMO HOCHO**  
The smith Shiro Kamo crafts his blades in the Takefu Knife Village. This is a smithy cooperative that has upheld the tradition of sophisticated metalworking for almost 700 years. The individual Japanese kitchen knives are crafted by hand, using only the best materials. In recognition of his outstanding work, the smith was awarded the title of »Master of the Traditional Craft« at the age of 45. The triple-layered blade has a cutting layer made of Blue Paper Steel and a black forged skin. The octagonal handle made of walnut is closed with a black laminated wooden ferrule. The double-bevelled forged blade carries the smith's signature. Hardness 63 HRC, not rustproof.

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 315 mm  
135 g  
**No. 719882**

**2 Bunka, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 315 mm  
140 g  
**No. 719950**

**3 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
145 g  
**No. 719951**

**4 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 215 mm  
60 g  
**No. 719952**

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
70 g  
**No. 719953**

**6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 330 mm  
140 g  
**No. 719954**

**7 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 215 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 365 mm  
170 g  
**No. 719955**



**8 SET**  
**8 2-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719882)  
• Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 719952)  
**No. 719956**



Octagonal walnut handle.



Octagonal walnut handle.

**2 White Paper Steel**  
In total, the blade consists of 21 layers with a cutting core made of White Paper Steel. Hardness 61 HRC, not rustproof.  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
130 g  
**No. 719881**

**B SHIRO KAMO HOCHO SANTOKU**  
The smith Shiro Kamo crafts his blades in the Takefu Knife Village. This is a smithy cooperative that has upheld the tradition of sophisticated metalworking for almost 700 years. The individual Japanese kitchen knives are crafted by hand, using only the best materials. In recognition of his outstanding work, the smith was awarded the title of »Master of Traditional Crafts« at the age of 45. The octagonal handle made of walnut is closed with a laminated wooden ferrule. The double-bevelled forged blade carries the smith's signature.

**1 PM Steel**  
Blade with a cutting core made of SG-2 steel produced using powder metallurgy techniques - one of the hardest blade steels worldwide. 30 layers of Suminagashi steel enclose the core cutting layer to create a truly unique structure. Hardness 63 HRC, rustproof.  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
145 g  
**No. 719883**

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.

**S** Two free sharpenings

**A YOSHIMI KATO HOCHO SG-2**

These Japanese kitchen knives by Yoshimi Kato are real head-turners for your kitchen. The son-in-law of the famous master blacksmith Hiroshi Kato continues the traditional Kanehiro Hamono forge. Distinctly rich in contrast, this eye-catching blade consists of 63 layers in total. The cutting edge made of SG-2 steel manufactured using powder metallurgy lends it an exceptional sharpness and durability. The elegant octagonal walnut handle is finished with a red pakka wood ferrule. Knife with double bevel, rustproof, hardness 63 HRC.

Octagonal handle  
made of  
walnut wood.

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 1.9 mm  
Overall length 305 mm  
120 g

**No. 708480****2 Bunka, All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
110 g

**No. 708481****3 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
140 g

**No. 708482****4 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 1.4 mm  
Overall length 245 mm  
50 g

**No. 708483****5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
55 g

**No. 708484****6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
120 g

**No. 708485****7 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 390 mm  
120 g

**No. 708486****8 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 270 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 410 mm  
120 g

**No. 708487****SET****9****9 2-Piece Set Price advantage**

- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 708480)
- Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 708483)

**No. 708488**

► For Yoshimi Kato Hocho (No. 718480-718488) with keyaki wood handles see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)





## Ryusen Hamono

Ryusen Hamono was founded in 1953 in Echizen City, Fukui Prefecture, Japan. The company has been manufacturing exclusive knives for three generations already. Every knife is handmade and therefore unique. Ryusen Hamono was the first company ever to receive the title of »Dentouteki-Kougeihin«, which is an award granted by the Japanese chamber of commerce and industry for traditionally manufactured products.



### A PREVER HOCHO »MAPLE«

The fascinating appearance of the blade of this timeless, modern kitchen knife is created by a total of 66 folded layers of stainless steel. The cutting layer is made of VG-10, a stainless steel of the highest grade, which is characterised by its excellent edge life. The perfect look of the Japanese knife is completed with an oval handle made of spalted, stabilised maple wood, which is finished with two polished stainless steel ferrules. Spalted maple features an intensive grain caused by fungal decay, which makes each knife unique. The wood has been completely impregnated with synthetic resin in a vacuum pressure process and thus stabilised. All models have a double bevel. Comes in gift box. Hardness 60 HRC, rustproof.

#### 1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife

Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
180 g

**No. 718690**

#### 2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife

Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 3.10 mm  
Overall length 1.5 mm  
180 g

**No. 718691**

#### 3 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife

Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
60 g

**No. 718692**

#### 4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
70 g

**No. 718693**

#### 5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
180 g

**No. 718694**

#### 6 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 375 mm  
165 g

**No. 718695**



Oval handle made of stabilised maple wood.

7

**SET**

#### 7 3-Piece Set *Price advantage*

- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 718690)
- Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 718691)
- Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 718692)

**No. 718697**



8

**SET**

#### 8 2-Piece Set *Price advantage*

- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 718690)
- Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 718692)

**No. 718696**



**Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



► Further Models (No. 709930-709937) with handles made of walnut wood at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**A TANGANRYU HOCHO**

A perfect combination of modern design and traditional blade form. The Damascus structure of the lower part of the blade offers a beautiful contrast to the hammered surface structure of the upper part, which also prevents the cut material from sticking to the blade so easily. The non-riveted handle of water-resistant linen micarta has an attractive black/grey grain and is set in a polished stainless steel ferrule and hoop. The blade comprises a total of 63 layers of steel, with the cutting edge layer made of VG-10 steel. Double-bevelled, hardness 61 HRC, rustproof.



A

A



For further models with walnut or maple wood handles see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
200 g

**No. 719490**

1

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**

Blade length 160 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
200 g

**No. 719494**

2

**3 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 2.1 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
75 g

**No. 709952**

3

**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
80 g

**No. 719491**

4

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
90 g

**No. 709953**

5

**6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 345 mm  
200 g

**No. 719493**

6

**7 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 380 mm  
255 g

**No. 709954**

7

**8 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**

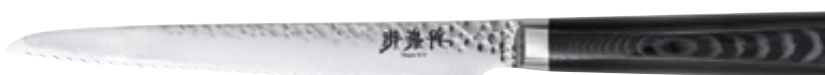
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 2.1 mm  
Overall length 380 mm  
200 g

**No. 709955**

8

**9 Bread Knife**

Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
165 g

**No. 709956**

9

For a Sujihiki with blade length 270 mm see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**SET****10 2-Piece Set *Price advantage***

- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719491)
- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719490)

**No. 719495**

10



Square handle made of water-resistant linen micarta, polished stainless steel hoop with hammered surface structure.

# A BONTENUNRYU HOCHO

Each of these blades with exciting patterns is unique thanks to its handforged Damascus structure. A total of 62 folded, rustproof outer layers surround the cutting layer of VG-10 steel, a rustproof steel of the highest quality, which is characterised by its long edge life. The handle scales made of black pakka wood are triple riveted to the tang with stainless steel pins and completed with polished stainless steel bolsters. Comes in a gift box. Suitable wooden sheaths are available separately. Rustproof, hardness 60 HRC, double bevel.



**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 2.1 mm  
Overall length 295 mm  
190 g  
**No. 708700**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 295 mm  
200 g  
**No. 708701**

**3 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
60 g  
**No. 708702**

**4 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 95 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
70 g  
**No. 708703**

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 130 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 235 mm  
80 g  
**No. 708704**

**6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
90 g  
**No. 708705**

**7 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 300 mm  
170 g  
**No. 708707**

**8 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 335 mm  
190 g  
**No. 708708**

**9 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 370 mm  
240 g  
**No. 708709**

**10 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 270 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 405 mm  
310 g  
**No. 708710**

**11 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 300 mm  
Blade thickness 1.9 mm  
Overall length 430 mm  
340 g  
**No. 708711**

**12 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 235 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 360 mm  
170 g  
**No. 708712**

**13 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 270 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 400 mm  
220 g  
**No. 708713**

**14 Slicer, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 370 mm  
200 g  
**No. 708714**



**SET**  
**15 2-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 708700)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 708705)  
**No. 708715**

**SET**  
**16 3-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 708700)  
• Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 708701)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 708705)  
**No. 708716**



**A FUKAKURYU HOCHO, MAPLE**

Each of these blades with exciting patterns is unique thanks to its handforged Damascus structure. The Hitachi ATS314 steel\* core layer is sandwiched between a total of 62 folded stainless steel outer layers, creating a fascinating blade pattern. Flamed maple wood is used for the elegant octagonal handle. Rustproof, hardness 61 HRC, double bevel. Comes in a gift box.

\* Steel analysis: C = 1 / Si = 0.3 / Mn = 0.4 / P < 0.03 / S = 0.004 / Co = 1.4 / Cr = 15 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.2 / Ni = 0.15 (in %)



**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 315 mm  
115 g  
**No. 708982**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
130 g  
**No. 708983**

**3 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
55 g  
**No. 708984**

**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
125 g  
**No. 708985**

**5 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 270 mm  
Blade thickness 2mm  
Overall length 425 mm  
150 g  
**No. 708986**



Octagonal handle  
made of flamed  
maple wood.



**IM SET**

**6 2-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife  
(No. 708982)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife  
(No. 708984)  
**No. 708987**



**IM SET**

**7 3-Piece Set Price advantage**  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife  
(No. 708982)  
• Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 708983)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife  
(No. 708984)  
**No. 708988**



► For »Bontenunryu Hocho Wenge« (No. 708940-708947) with handles made of wenge see online [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

## Saku Hocho

These all-purpose blades are exactly right for becoming acquainted with traditional Japanese knives: The sharp cutting edge made of carbon steel is flanked by two layers of stainless steel, which makes it easier to care for. The oval-shaped chestnut wood handle is completed with a black ferrule. These knives are available with or without wooden sheath. Hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof, double-bevelled cutting layer.



Oval chestnut handle.

### A SAKU HOCHO, WITH WOODEN SHEATH

#### 1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
70 g

No. 719723

#### 2 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 140 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
65 g

No. 719724

#### 3 Usuba, Vegetable Knife

Blade length 130 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
75 g

No. 719725

#### 4 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife

Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Overall length 205 mm  
35 g

No. 719719



### S SAKU HOCHO, WITHOUT WOODEN SHEATH

#### Santoku, All-purpose Knife

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
70 g

No. 719720

#### Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 140 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
65 g

No. 719721

#### Usuba, Vegetable Knife

Blade length 130 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
75 g

No. 719722

#### Petty, Small All-purpose Knife

Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Overall length 205 mm  
35 g

No. 719718



### B JAPANESE KNIFE SET WITH COMBINATION SHARPENING STONE AND SHARPENING DVD

#### Price advantage

A Gyuto for fish and meat, the Usuba for cutting vegetables into wafer-thin slices and for peeling. In order to help you keep these valuable pieces razor-sharp, a combination sharpening stone is included, along with an instructional DVD. The set comes in a beautiful wood case, ideal for storage or as a gift.

Set includes:

- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719721)
- Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719722)
- Combination Stone 1000/6000 (No. 711007)
- Sharpening DVD (in German) (No. 713806)
- Wooden Case (No. 820239)

No. 719728

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

C

### C SAKU HOCHO WITH WOODEN SHEATH, 3-PIECE SET

Saku Hocho 3-piece knife set with dark brown leather roll pouch. Great for storage or as a gift.

Set includes:

- Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719725)
- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719724)
- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719723)

No. 719726



E

### E STARTER SET - JAPANESE KNIFE, COMBINATION STONE, WITH SHARPENING PRIMER

#### Price advantage

Starter set:

Razor-sharp cuts forever are almost guaranteed with this starter set! If necessary, the handy Santoku knife can easily be sharpened on the included waterstone. The also included Sharpening Primer gives instructions on how to proceed.

Set includes:

- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719723), triple-layered blade with

hard carbon steel core (not rustproof), flanked on both sides with stainless steel, handle made from chestnut wood, with wooden sheath

- Combination stone (No. 711365), grit 1000/3000 for sharpening and finishing, 175 x 55 x 25 mm
- Sharpening Primer

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
70 g

No. 711085

### D SAKU HOCHO SANTOKU WITH TOKICO® KNIFE SHARPENER

#### Price advantage

- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719720)
- Tokico Knife Sharpener (No. 705373)

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
70 g

No. 719727



**A MIKIHISA HOCHO, PETTY**  
Ideal for all types of small cutting tasks in the kitchen: Double-layered blade with cutting layer made of Takefu White Paper Steel, black forged skin and hammered surface structure. Handle made of untreated magnolia wood with black ferrule. Single bevel for right-handed use. Hardness HRC 62, not rustproof.

**1** Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2.6 mm  
Overall length 205 mm  
65 g  
**No. 719023**

**2** Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 2.6 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
95 g  
**No. 719786**

**SET****3 2-Piece Set****Price advantage**

- Ajikiri (No. 719783):  
The wide blade is ideal for preparing small fish, cleaning vegetables and salad, as well as chopping and rocking herbs.
- Petty (No. 719786):  
Ideal for all types of small cutting tasks in the kitchen.

**No. 719787**

Edged handle made of magnolia wood, for right-handed use.



For further models see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**B ALL-PURPOSE KNIFE WITH SHARPENING STONE AND DVD**  
Sharp as a razor and almost without resistance, the double-bevelled blade of the Santoku cuts fish, meat and vegetables equally. The beautifully shaped handle made of Magnolia wood and genuine buffalo horn ferrule is very comfortable to hold. A wooden sheath protects the blade. In order to keep the valuable knife sharp, use the combination sharpening stone together with the instruction on DVD.

Our Japanese master blacksmith will show you how to professionally sharpen kitchen knives on waterstones. He presents different types of stones, showing motions and gives care instructions. Santoku Hocho: triple-layered blade, core layer White Paper Steel, hardness 61 HRC, not rustproof. Sharpening stone: grit 1000/6000. DVD (15 min), in German. With DICTUM Sharpening Primer. Comes in a gift box.

**No. 719196**

**C SMALL KNIFE WITH SHEATH**  
Light-duty knives with rustproof, triple-layered blades and sheaths made of water-resistant enju wood. Double-bevelled. Hardness 58 HRC.

**1 All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 1.2 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
30 g  
**No. 719217**

**2 Fruit Knife**  
Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 1.2 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
30 g  
**No. 719020**

**3 Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 1.2 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
40 g  
**No. 719229**

**4 3-Piece Set**  
With this starter kit you are well prepared for any cutting work. Three compact knives in an attractive red leather roll-up case:

- All-purpose knife (No. 719217)
- Fruit knife (No. 719020)
- Vegetable knife (No. 719229)

**No. 719195**

Birch bark:  
antibacterial and  
water-repellent

**bm1**

Made from numerous single layers of birch bark, this is a vivid material whose colour, growth pattern and texture vary greatly. A patented manufacturing process tailored to the material characteristics of birch bark allows high stability at a low weight. Compared to other natural materials, bm1 keeps its shape extremely well, especially when exposed to moisture.



**D GYUTO WITH BIRCH BARK HANDLE**  
Japanese forging art with finest steel quality and perfect handle material: Each knife is unique. This knife is a combination of two high-quality materials - and not just visually. The varied natural texture of the birch bark handle made of bm1 and the vivid blade of 15-layered Damascus steel

make the perfect combination. The bm1 handle not only has a pleasantly smooth, warm feel but also boasts unique technical qualities. An extremely durable natural material with high stability at a low weight, it is water-repellent, keeps its shape extremely well and is slip-proof even when wet. Its antibacterial effect, due to the natural ingredients of birch

bark, is particularly important in the kitchen. The cutting edge of the 15-layered Damascus blade is made of White Paper Steel with a hardness of 61 HRC. Not rustproof, double-bevelled. Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 315 mm  
120 g  
**No. 719730**



### A SAJI HOCHO

Takeshi Saji is among the most famous master smiths in the Takefu Knife Village. With a high-contrast look, this eye-catching blade consists of 31 layers in total. The cutting edge made of SG-2 steel manufactured using powder metallurgy lends it an exceptional sharpness and edge retention. The desert ironwood handle scales, designed specifically with European hands in mind, are fitted to the one-piece blade. Sourced in the deserts of Arizona, the Olneya tree grows at an exceptionally slow pace to produce desert ironwood, one of the world's hardest and densest timbers. The exquisitely beautiful grain shows a golden brown hue with dark streaks. Its high density makes the wood particularly resistant to moisture. One mosaic pin and two stainless steel pins add the finishing touches to the look of this delightful knife. Polished stainless steel flanges fit the blade, which bears the master's engraved signature. Rustproof, double-bevelled, hardness 63 HRC. Supplied in a box made of kiri wood.



► *Saji Rainbow, Santoku, all-purpose knife available online.*

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



#### 1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife

Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
235 g  
No. 719840



#### 2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife

Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 295 mm  
235 g  
No. 719841



#### 3 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 1.1 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
125 g  
No. 719842



#### 5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 340 mm  
210 g  
No. 719844

#### 6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 380 mm  
270 g  
No. 719845

#### 4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.4 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
190 g  
No. 719843

#### 7 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 270 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 410 mm  
250 g  
No. 719846

8



**SET**

#### 8 2-Piece Set *Price advantage*

- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719840)
- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719842)
- Casket with sliding lid

No. 719847


**A DICTUM® KNIFE SERIES »KLASSIK«**

Classical aesthetics, traditional technology:  
Perfect, traditional Damascus blades and optimally balanced handles of brown laminated precious wood. Traditional methods result in classical aesthetics for daily use.  
32-layered Suminagashi steel blade with a cutting edge of VG-10 steel. Rustproof.  
Hardness 62 HRC, double-bevelled.

**DICTUM satisfaction guarantee**

Products can be tested for 15 days. (For more information see page 4).



► All Hochos offered by DICTUM are exclusively made in Japan and are distinguished by their sharpness, edge life and best steels.



**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 285 mm  
170 g  
**No. 719296**

**2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 285 mm  
165 g  
**No. 719297**

**3 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 185 mm  
70 g  
**No. 719308**

**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
70 g  
**No. 719292**

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
90 g  
**No. 719293**

**6 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 295 mm  
150 g  
**No. 719294**

**7 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 335 mm  
200 g  
**No. 719295**

**8 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 365 mm  
260 g  
**No. 719298**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening



For a Gyuto with blade length 270 mm see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**SET**

- 9 5-Piece Set *Price advantage***
- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719295)
  - Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719297)
  - Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719296)
  - Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719294)
  - Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719292)
  - Precious knife case made of beech-wood (No. 705850)
- No. 705883**



9



10

**SET**

- 10 2-Piece Set *Price advantage***
- Petty, small all-purpose knife (No. 719308)
  - Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719296)
- No. 719397**



 **A ARATA HOCHO**  
Archaic design at a beginner's price:  
Lovely shaped knives with hand-forged  
blades of archaic appearance. Cutting  
edge of Blue Paper Steel flanked by  
two layers of rustproof steel. Hammered  
surface, handles of walnut wood. Not  
rustproof, double-bevelled cutting edge,  
hardness 63 HRC.

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 170 mm  
Blade thickness 1.9 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
150 g  
**No. 719148**

**2 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife**  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 1.9 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
45 g  
**No. 719370**

**3 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
60 g  
**No. 719371**


**4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 180 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
135 g  
**No. 719372**

**5 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 210 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 350 mm  
190 g  
**No. 719373**

**6 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**  
Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 2.2 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
180 g  
**No. 719147**

**7 Sujihiki, Fish and Meat Knife**  
Blade length 240 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 380 mm  
160 g  
**No. 719374**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
**For more information see page 4.**

 **Two free sharpenings**



**8**

**SET**

**8 2-Piece Set *Price advantage***  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719148)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife  
(No. 719371)  
**No. 719378**



**9**

**SET**

**9 3-Piece Set *Price advantage***  
• Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719147)  
• Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719148)  
• Gyuto, fish and meat knife  
(No. 719371)  
**No. 719375**



# A SHIGEKI HOCHO

High contrast and sharp: Due to the contrast between the Damascus blades and the red birch wood laminated handles, these knives are real head-turners with an attractive price-performance ratio. The 32 layers of Japanese Damascus steel and the cutting edge of VG-10 steel are rustproof. Attractive price/performance ratio. Blade with signature, hardness 61 HRC, double-bevelled.

## 1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
140 g

**No. 719128**

## 2 Petty, Small All-purpose Knife

Blade length 115 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
75 g

**No. 719788**

## 3 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 155 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
90 g

**No. 719059**

## 4 Gyuto, Fish and Meat Knife

Blade length 185 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
130 g

**No. 719775**

## 5 Usuba, Vegetable Knife

Blade length 165 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
150 g

**No. 719129**

## 6 Mincing knife

Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
90 g

**No. 719716**



► More models with black birch wood laminated handles available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

► All Hochos offered by DICTUM are exclusively made in Japan and are distinguished by their sharpness, edge life and best steels.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

## SET

### 7 3-Piece Set **Price advantage**

- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719059)
- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719128)
- Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719129)
- Wooden case (No. 705885)

**No. 719233**

7



A

1

2

3

4

5

6

8

9



## SET

### 8 2-Piece Set **Price advantage**

- Santoku, all-purpose knife (No. 719128)
- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719059)

**No. 719778**



## SET

### 9 2-Piece Set **Price advantage**

- Usuba, vegetable knife (No. 719129)
- Gyuto, fish and meat knife (No. 719059)

**No. 719779**

## Knives for Special Applications



A

**A CHINESE COOKING KNIFE**

From traditional Chinese cuisine: This cleaver from a traditional Shanghai manufacturer features a high-quality, triple-layered steel blade offering superior sharpness and edge life. The blade, ferrule and tang are forged from a single piece of steel, the colourfully

accented pakka wood handle is seamlessly attached. Rustproof, double-bevelled, hardness 56 HRC. Blade length 185 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 310 mm  
430 g

**No. 708082**

B

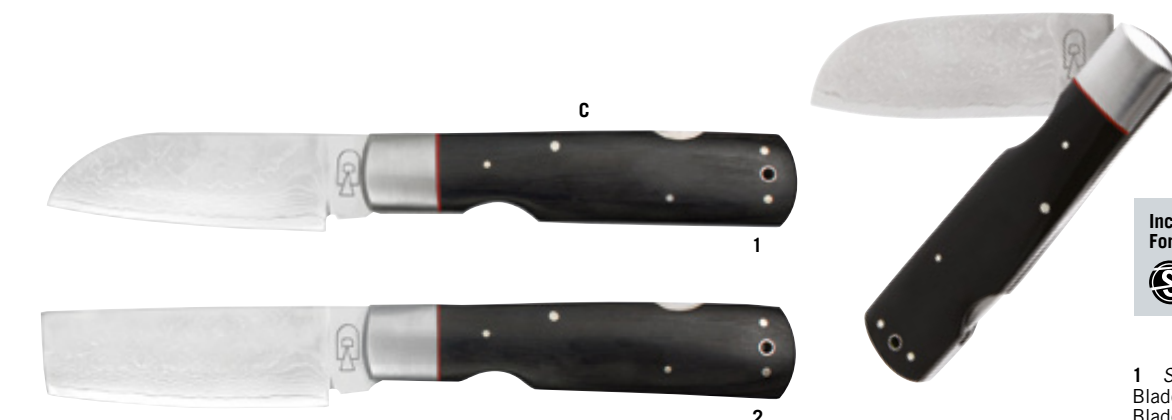
**B JAPANESE MINCING KNIFE**

Allows the aroma of herbs to develop: This knife is forged exclusively for our customers by our Japanese master. Fitted with a heavy, arched blade, it chops all types of herbs with a rocking cut. Tender stems and leaves are not squashed but cut to enhance the flavour. Triple-layered steel blade\*, ground razor-sharp, surface left in forged condition with burned-in linseed oil (antirust).

Every knife is signed by the master. Magnolia wood handle with a buffalo horn ferrule, bevelled on both sides.

\* Core layer of Blue Paper Steel, 61 HRC, (not rustproof) outer layers iron.

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 6 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
280 g

**No. 719253**

C

1

2

**C JAPANESE KITCHEN FOLDING KNIVES »ONO«**

This practical knife is useful for cooking away from home. Whether sailing or camping, this folding knife can be stored in a minimum of space and is well protected when you are out and about. Easy to maintain and a great head-turner:

32 layers of Japanese Damascus steel surround the cutting edge of VG-10 steel. The blade is safely held in place via a back-lock mechanism. Handle scales of laminated precious wood with red fibre. The blade is fully rustproof, double-bevelled, hardness 61 HRC.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings

**1 Santoku, All-purpose Knife**

Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
220 g

**No. 719286****2 Usuba, Vegetable Knife**

Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
225 g

**No. 719287**

D

1

2

3

4

**D TABLE KNIFE BUCKELS**

Whether at the breakfast table or on a picnic - this typically shaped table knife called a »Buckelsmesser« (Buckel = hunchback) has proven itself for over 140 years and has become a classic. This knife is suitable for cutting bread, cheese and sausage, plus its wide blade can be used to thinly spread butter or other spreads. The special shape of the blade is characteristic of the traditional, old German table knife. The spine of the blade is slightly curved and instead of a point, the front of the blade is quite round. The handle scales are mounted on the full-length tang and triple-riveted. Rustproof steel No. 1.4034, double-bevelled, hardness 56 HRC. Blade length 125 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
55 g

**1 Olive Wood**

Handle scales made of olive wood. This type of wood has excellent properties and has therefore been regarded as a valuable material for many centuries due to its warm colouring and honey-coloured grain.

**No. 709676****2 Smoked Oak**

Handle scales made of dark smoked oak.

**No. 709745****3 Juniper**

Handle scales made of finely grained juniper wood.

**No. 709746****4 Pistachio Wood**

Handle scales made of pistachio wood. The attractive chestnut brown colour usually includes decorative darker streaks.

**No. 709747**

### A LE THIERS® STEAK AND TABLE KNIVES, OLIVE WOOD, 4-PIECE SET

Thanks to their low weight, these elegantly designed knives fit comfortably in the hand. The double bevel edge made of rustproof X50CrMoV15 steel\* is polished to a mirror finish and achieves a hardness of 56 HRC. Comes in a locking case made of beech wood. Handle scales made of olive wood with honey-coloured grain. The wood has excellent properties and has therefore been regarded as a valuable material for many centuries due to its warm colouring.

\* Steel analysis: C = 0.5 / Cr = 15 / Mo = 1 / V = 1 (in %)

Blade length 110 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
70 g

No. 719991



► More steak and table knives available online.

### B STEAK KNIFE

From the Japanese Hiroaki Masui blacksmith workshop. A total of 32 layers form this impressive damask pattern around the core layer made of edge-holding VG-10 steel. The perfectly-sized handle with its soft structure is made of dark brown Pao Rosa wood and is very comfortable to hold. The handle features a vulcanized fibre insert and a

rosette-shaped mosaic pin. The rustproof blade is double-bevelled and has a high-gloss finish.

Hardness 58 HRC.

Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
60 g

No. 719696



For the highest demands

### C STEAK KNIFE VG-10, MICARTA

This elegant steak knife is a head-turner on any set table. The vividly patterned blade is created by a total of 34 folded, rustproof outer layers. The cutting layer is made of VG-10, a rustproof steel of the highest grade, which is characterised by its excellent edge life. The handle scales made of black paper micarta are triple riveted to the tang with

stainless steel pins and completed with polished stainless steel bolsters. The blade is rustproof, double-bevelled and has a hardness of 59 HRC.

Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 1.6 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
70 g

No. 719699



## Knife Rolls

Knife roll bags made of premium leather, handmade in a German leather factory: for safe storage of your kitchen knives. Each roll-up pouch is unique, as the special tanning process partially preserves the individual skin structure. Waxed, pleasantly smooth surface.



### D KNIFE ROLL, COWHIDE, 4 POCKETS, BLACK

The leather used for this roll bag comes from European cattle and is tanned and dyed in Germany in an ecological and sustainable manner with extracts from bark materials, and is therefore particularly environmentally friendly.

- Roll-up bag with 4 pockets in three different heights and two widths for kitchen knives up to a blade length of 20 cm
- Dimensions of the pockets: 1 x height 15 cm, width 4.5 cm / 1 x height 18 cm, width 6 cm / 2 x height 20 cm, width 6 cm
- Rivets at the upper part of the pockets reinforce the seam
- Cut-resistant Kevlar reinforcement at the pocket bottoms
- Foldable cover
- Easy closing of the rolled knife bag with two leather straps
- Made of vegetable-tanned cowhide with bark extracts used as a tanning agent
- Handmade in German leather factory

No. 710410



NEW: Safe, easy & practical storage for chef's knives!



For more knife rolls with other compartment quantities see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### E DELUXE KNIFE ROLL, HORSE LEATHER WITH KEVLAR® REINFORCEMENT, 4 POCKETS, COGNAC

The leather used comes from horses from Iceland, Germany or Switzerland, which have completed their natural life cycle. Traces of the species-appropriate husbandry are reflected in the leather, with shades of colour and different graining lending these bags their special appearance, making each one unique. The leather is olive-tanned in a German tannery. Since the applied tanning agent is a herbal concentrate based on olive

leaf extracts, this is an eco-friendly tanning process.

- Roll-up bag with 4 pockets in four different heights and three widths for kitchen knives up to a blade length of 24 cm
- Dimensions of the pockets: 1 x height 15 cm, width 4.5 cm / 1 x height 18 cm, width 4.5 cm / 1 x height 20 cm, width 5.5 cm / 1 x height 24 cm, width 6 cm
- Rivets at the upper part of the pockets reinforce the seam

- Cut-resistant Kevlar reinforcement at the pocket bottoms
- Additional protection: each pocket is completely reinforced with cut-resistant kevlar
- Foldable cover
- Variable and comfortable opening/closing of the rolled knife bag with belt strap and button stud
- Leaf-tanned; a particularly eco-friendly variant of vegetable tanning
- Handmade in German leather factory

No. 710420





**A SMALL JAPANESE ALL-PURPOSE KNIFE »MIKI«**  
Ideal for peeling and cleaning fruit and vegetables and all types of small cutting tasks in the kitchen. It consists of a VG-10 steel cutting edge and stainless steel outer layers. Laminated birch wood

handle. Double-bevelled, rustproof, hardness 61 HRC.  
Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
60 g  
**No. 719304**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings

**B BREAD KNIFE, OLIVE WOOD**  
Handle scales made of olive wood with honey-coloured grain. The wood has excellent properties and has therefore been regarded as valuable material for many centuries due to its warm colouring. Bread knife with tried-and-tested serrated edges. With its ergonomically shaped handle, this knife provides a

comfortable grip. The full-length blade of wear-resistant chrome-molybdenum-vanadium steel X50CrMoV15 is rustproof, hardness 56 HRC.  
Blade length 200 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 320 mm  
130 g  
**No. 719908**



For a version with linen micarta handle see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**C JAPANESE BREAD KNIFE**  
Long tried-and-tested, super-sharp Japanese serrated knife. It has a long, flexible blade of solid stainless steel, polished to a fine mirror finish, laminated precious wood handle. Rustproof, hardness 56 HRC.

Blade length 250 mm  
Blade thickness 1.3 mm  
Overall length 375 mm  
110 g  
**No. 719065**

**D BRIETO®, SALAMI AND BAGUETTE KNIFE**  
Ideal knife for thin slices, provides a comfortable grip, is slip-proof and lightweight in your hand. The flexible Japanese blade made of AUS-6M steel (hardness 58 HRC) with serrated edge is also ideal for small pieces of ham. Handle made of

hammered, satin-brushed stainless steel. Rustproof.  
Blade length 160 mm  
Blade thickness 1.9 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
70 g  
**No. 719158**



For more Brieto® knives, e.g. cooking or ham knives, see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

## KNIVES - MASTERPIECES OF BLACKSMITHING ART



Tradition, sharpness and durability are the hallmarks of hand-forged knives. Following this motto, we compiled products of exceptional quality to meet your highest demands in our Knives Catalogue.

► **All catalogues available at**  
**[www.dictum.com/catalogues](http://www.dictum.com/catalogues) as**

- **Interactive flip catalogue**
- **PDF download**

**Interactive  
flip catalogue  
For free!**

# Kitchen Utensils

## Teapots and Accessories

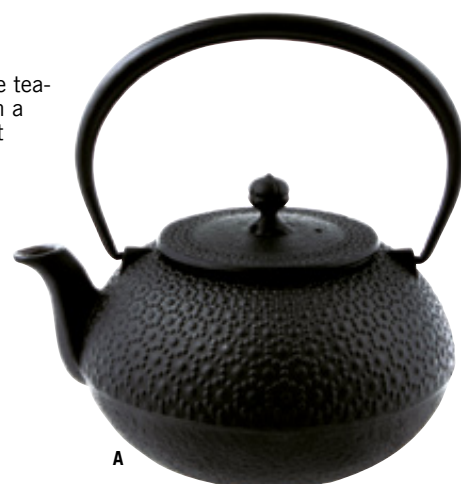


For more teapots and accessories see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

### Cast Iron Teapots

Enjoy the simple beauty of Zen-Buddhist tea culture with these teapots by Japanese craftsmen. Precision-cast from molten iron in a sand mould, the outsides are black-annealed to protect against oxidation, while the insides are enamelled. Includes stainless steel strainer insert.

**Note:** Unlike Chinese copies and similar mass-produced items, the teapots offered here are guaranteed hand-made by Japanese master craftsmen, with the corresponding high standard of quality and workmanship. The glazes are guaranteed heavy-metal-free.



A

**A TEAPOT »KATSURA«**  
Classic teapot with large volume and traditional knobby pattern.  
Height 95 mm

Lid-Ø 170 mm  
Capacity 1.25 l  
1.9 kg  
**No. 820300**



B

**B TEAPOT »SANDAMA ARARE«**  
Teapot with traditional knobby pattern.  
Height 70 mm

Lid- Ø 145 mm  
Capacity 0.7 l  
1.2 kg  
**No. 820293**



C

**C TEAPOT »ZUI-UN«**  
In a traditional discus shape. The vividly structured surface is decorated with a pattern of spiral-shaped raised dots that are manually pressed into the sand mould.

Height 70 mm  
Lid-Ø 210 mm  
Capacity 1.2 l  
2.3 kg  
**No. 820040**

### D SENCHA TEA BOWL SET, 5-PIECE SET

Attractive Japanese tea bowl set in the following colours: green, blue, turquoise, brown and yellow. The outsides of the clay bowls are glazed in a reserved grey hue, while the lips are highlighted in brown. The glazed insides provide colourful features in a fine craquelé structure. This effect is produced by rapid cooling

after the firing process. These tea bowls come in an elegant wooden box and are an ideal gift.  
Height 50 mm  
Lid-Ø 85 mm  
140 g  
**No. 820346**



D



### Cherry Bark Tea Box (Kabazaiku)

Kabazaiku, the traditional art of bark crafting, is especially common in the area around Akita, where the wild cherry tree forms a particularly hard skin in the harsh mountain climate. For more than 200 years, skilled craftsmen have been creating fascinating objects from cherry bark. In order to allow the bark to be shaped, it is first cleaned and made supple with steam, then the pre-shaped pieces of bark are attached to the wooden object made of walnut with glue using a heated trowel. Cherry tree bark naturally keeps the air moisture relatively stable and is thus an ideal material for tea boxes. A precisely closing inner lid preserves the aroma of the tea. The tea boxes are at the same time useful containers and handicraft objects.

#### E TEA BOX NATURAL FINISH

This box is made of multiple layers of cherry tree bark. The top part of the core container is polished, while the outside preserves its natural finish.

Height 115 mm  
Ø 80 mm  
Capacity 180 ml  
**No. 820305**



E

## Cutting Boards



**A** CHOPPING BOARD OLIVE WOOD, RUSTIC, WITH SAP GROOVE  
Rustic olive wood board with surrounding sap groove. Ideal for daily cutting and

chopping in the kitchen.  
450 x 290 x 20 mm  
1.8 kg  
**No. 708257**



**B** HEVEA CHOPPING AND CUTTING BOARD WITH SAP GROOVE  
Ideal for daily cutting and chopping in the kitchen. Hevea is a hardwood from the genus of the rubber tree, also called rubberwood. The wood is characterised by its hardness and excellent durability.

Bright, warm colour with fine grain. With surrounding sap groove and handles cut into both sides.  
420 x 280 x 30 mm  
2.3 kg  
**No. 708855**

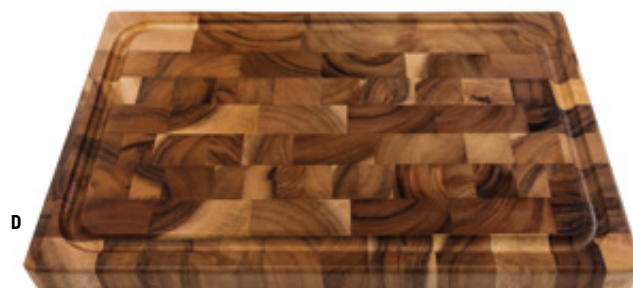
### Acacia wood

Acacia wood is not an endangered rainforest wood. The wood is characterised by its hardness and excellent durability.



**C** CUTTING BOARD ACACIA  
Small acacia wood board, ideal for smaller cutting jobs or as a snack board.

1 275 x 150 x 15 mm.  
330 g  
**No. 708850**  
2 350 x 190 x 15 mm.  
560 g  
**No. 708851**



**D** ACACIA END GRAIN CUTTING AND CHOPPING BOARD, WITH SAP GROOVE  
This gorgeously grained cutting board made of hard-wearing acacia wood sets the tone in your kitchen. The food safe, glued cross-grained pieces with varied shadowing are especially hard and water-resistant. Brushing with

clean water and oiling with vegetable oil will preserve the beautiful surface of this natural work of art for a long time. With handles cut into both sides.  
420 x 280 x 30 mm  
1.8 kg  
**No. 708240**



**E** GINKGO CUTTING BOARD  
Rarity:  
Tough but not too hard, easy on knife cutting edges, good looking and antibacterial, ginkgo is an ideal wood for cutting boards. This solid board is made of non-glued, air-dried Japanese ginkgo, with a planed and untreated surface.

360 x 210 x 30 mm  
1 kg  
**No. 706028**



For more cutting boards see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**F** CHOPPING BOARD MOSAIC, CHERRY/WALNUT  
The colour contrast of the two types of wood and the individually glued end grain pieces with visible annual rings create a singular pattern and a marvellous look. Due to the vertically oriented fibres, end grain is more cut-resistant and durable compared to chopping boards made of long grain wood. Each piece is unique due to the different natural patterns of the wood. Anti-slip rubber feet on the

underside ensure a firm grip. Care: the board can be treated with food-grade oil whenever necessary. We recommend the use of linseed oil. Handles cut into both sides. Made by hand in Germany.  
425 x 240 x 30 mm  
2 kg  
**No. 707850**

► Chopping Board Mosaic Walnut available online.



## Knife Blocks

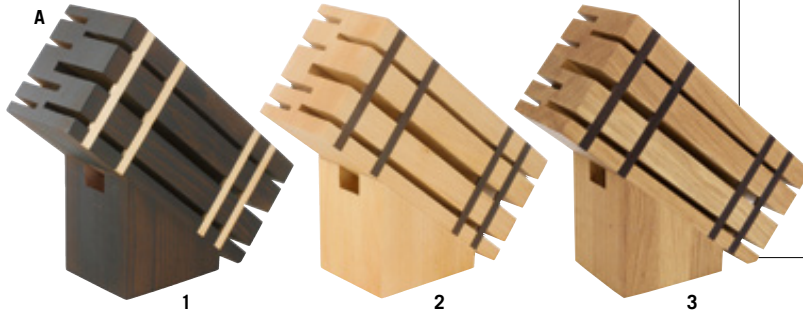
### A KNIFE BLOCKS

Fine knives should not be stored in a cutlery box or on a magnetic holder because the resulting magnetisation makes sharpening more difficult. Instead, we recommend this knife block specially designed for Japanese Hochos, made in Germany according to our strict quality criteria. It fits seven knives with blades up to 270 mm long and 9 mm wide, as well as a pair of scissors. The solid weight provides stability and the pitched arrangement allows fast access. The surface is sanded and treated with vegetable oil. It is also suitable for European kitchen knives.

**1 Thermo Beech**  
Thermo beech\* with maple inserts.  
**No. 718992**

**2 Natural Beech**  
European beech with thermo beech\* inserts.  
**No. 718990**

**3 Oak**  
Oak wood with thermo beech\* inserts.  
**No. 709751**



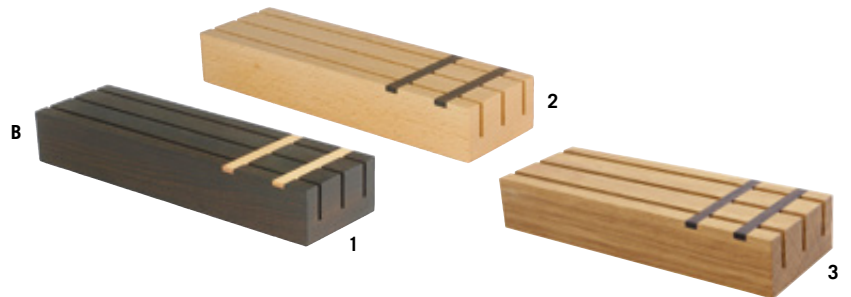
### B KNIFE RESTS

A great way to always have your kitchen knives ready to hand: Whether on the working surface or in the drawer. The blades are safely separated from each other thus staying sharper for longer. For three knives with blade lengths of up to 180 mm.

**1 Thermo Beech**  
Knife rest of thermo beech\* with maple inserts.  
270 x 80 x 43 mm  
**No. 718997**

**2 Natural Beech**  
Knife rest of European beech with thermo beech\* inserts.  
270 x 80 x 43 mm  
**No. 718994**

**3 Oak**  
Knife rest of oak wood with thermo beech\* inserts.  
270 x 80 x 43 mm  
**No. 709750**



\* High-temperature treated thermo wood is not only resistant against bacteria and fungal attacks, it is particularly stable and durable.

## Maintenance & Care



**C JAPANESE SCRUB BRUSH**  
»KAMENOKO TAWASHI«  
This brush made of natural palm fibers is ideal for cleaning garden tools or wooden objects such as cutting boards. It can be used wet or dry, is hard-wearing and long lasting. Hanging the brushes with the attached loop extends their life span.  
Overall length 100 mm  
**No. 716111**

The insert can be removed and individually rearranged.



### D FLEXIBLE KNIFE BLOCK

Universal application:  
On one hand, a knife block should be handy, on the other hand it has become an attractive kitchen object. This bamboo knife block meets both expectations. The insert can be removed for cleaning purposes and rearranged in any order according to the size and variety of your knives. The loose bottom can be released very quickly and can be used as a cutting board. The variable knife block offers space for a total of ten knives with a maximum blade length of 280 mm.  
290 x 135 x 225 mm  
**No. 718981**

Loose bottom as small cutting board



## Cast Iron Cookware

### Skeppshult - Swedish company with a long tradition since 1906

The products of the Swedish foundry Skeppshult have been made by hand with high diligence already since the year 1906. The factory attaches great importance to sustainable and energy-efficient production, which is why they use only wind power for their processes and local raw materials sourced within a radius of 150 km. Skeppshult's products are exclusively made of natural, carefully controlled materials and ingredients with no additional chemicals. The pans are seasoned with organic rapeseed oil and delivered ready for use. You only need to rinse the product quickly with warm water prior to first use. For daily cleaning of the pan, a brush and warm water without any detergent should be used. This helps to preserve the natural non-stick coating and achieve best frying results.

- Suitable for all heat sources; due to the ferromagnetic characteristics also suitable for induction hobs
- Seasoned with organic rapeseed oil and delivered ready to use
- Excellent cooking and frying due to perfect heat distribution and storage capacity
- Purely natural non-stick coating
- Extremely durable products



© For a manufacturing video see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**A SKEPPSHULT GRILL PANS**  
Ideal for making juicy steaks. The ribbed inner bottom lends the meat an appealing BBQ look and helps minimize liquid loss, thus ensuring excellent frying results.



Diameter pan bottom 250 mm,  
upper diameter 280 mm.  
Height 40 mm  
Overall length 520 mm  
3.1 kg

**1 Walnut Handle**  
Walnut handle with cast iron eyelet.  
Not suitable for use in the oven due to wooden handle.  
**No. 820401**

**2 Stainless Steel Handle**  
**No. 820407**

**B SKEPPSHULT FRYING PANS**  
All-purpose pan, ideal for browning and stewing of meat or to make fried potatoes. Diameter pan bottom 230 mm, upper diameter 280 mm.  
Height 35 mm  
Overall length 520 mm  
2.7 kg

**1 Walnut Handle**  
Walnut handle with cast iron eyelet.  
Not suitable for use in the oven due to wooden handle.  
**No. 820400**

**2 Stainless Steel Handle**  
**No. 820406**



For wok dishes and stewing



**C SKEPPSHULT WOK, WALNUT HANDLE**  
All-purpose pan for steaming, frying, roasting and stewing. The round shape with long bevelled sides provides lots of space for the heat to distribute and thus achieve high frying temperatures. This way, vegetables remain longer crunchy

and vitamins are better preserved. Walnut handle with cast iron eyelet. Not suitable for use in the oven due to wooden handle. Upper diameter 300 mm.  
Height 80 mm  
Overall length 540 mm  
3.3 kg  
**No. 820402**





**A SKEPPSHULT FISH AND FILET PAN**  
The oval form of this pan makes it ideal for frying whole fishes. Cast iron handle, also suitable for use in the oven and on open fires.

Diameter pan bottom 290 x 180 mm, upper diameter 330 x 215 mm.  
Height 35 mm  
Overall length 390 mm  
2.4 kg  
**No. 820409**



**B SKEPPSHULT SPICE MILL**  
With this solid spice mill, peppercorns and other spice seeds can be easily grated. By rotating the mill, fresh aromas are released within seconds. By varying the pressure, you can vary the degree of fineness of your homemade spice and

herb mixtures. The upper part provides a walnut lid - a perfect item to store your mixtures.  
Height 85 mm  
Ø 75 mm  
1.1 kg  
**No. 820404**



*Perfect for braising and frying!*



**C SKEPPSHULT DEEP PANS**  
All-purpose pan with high edge. Ideal for browning and stewing of meat or to make fried potatoes. Walnut handle with cast iron eyelet.  
Diameter pan bottom 250 mm, upper diameter 280 mm.  
Height 50 mm  
Lid diameter 280 mm  
Overall length 530 mm  
3.1 kg



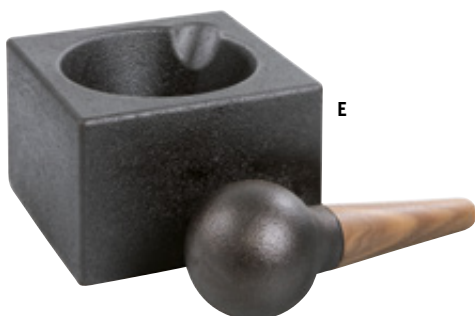
**1 Walnut Handle**  
Walnut handle with cast iron eyelet. Not suitable for use in the oven due to wooden handle.  
**No. 820405**

**2 Stainless Steel Handle**  
**No. 820408**

**D SKEPPSHULT FRYING PAN**  
Multi-purpose cookware, ideal for cooking, frying, roasting, and steaming vegetable and meat dishes. Also suitable as a dish for grilling dishes au gratin in the oven. With two handles.



Base diameter 200 mm, top diameter 240 mm.  
Height 45 mm  
Ø 240 mm  
2.9 kg  
**No. 820416**



**E SKEPPSHULT MORTAR**  
Very practical kitchen aid and design object in one item. This solidly built mortar is perfectly suitable for making fresh and individual mixtures of herbs and spices and to chop up herbs. The robust pestle features a walnut handle, which makes it

very comfortable to hold.  
Overall length pestle 175 mm.  
Height 80 mm  
120 x 80 mm  
4 kg  
**No. 820403**



## Peelers, Rasps and Accessories

**Microplane®**

**From the workshop into the kitchen:** Microplane originally manufactured **rasps for woodworking**. Eventually it was a Canadian housewife who

paved the way for the manufacture of kitchen tools when she set about baking a cake. Frustrated with her old, blunt grater, she took her husband's **Microplane wood rasp** from his tool box and was amazed at the excellent grating result. A sophisticated manufacturing process, optimized throughout 40 years of first-hand experience, makes Microplane products so amazingly successful. An innovative **photo-etching process is applied to etch the teeth out. Unlike stamped teeth, etched contours do not have any burr, achieve long service life and are extremely sharp.** The appliances cut the food with surgical precision, allowing the ingredients to preserve their full aroma and taste, and avoiding the crushing produced by many standard graters.



A



1



2



3



4



5

**A MICROPLANE® PROFESSIONAL KITCHEN RASPS**  
Razor-sharp blades on this rasp will revolutionize your kitchen: effortlessly achieve first-class grating results of cheese, fruit, vegetables, spices etc. A non-slip rubber end ensures stability and a safe grip. The professional stainless steel utensil can be cleaned in the dishwasher. With hanging eyelet. Friction surface 135 x 60 mm. Overall length 330 mm.

**1 Fine**  
Ideal for: spices, citrus fruits, chocolate, hard cheese, garlic, nuts  
**No. 705153**

**2 Medium**  
Ideal for: carrot, cabbage, potato, zucchini, apple, hard cheese, nuts  
**No. 705154**

**3 Coarse**  
Ideal for: carrot, cheese, ginger, chocolate, hard cheese, garlic, nuts  
**No. 705134**

**4 Extra Coarse**  
Ideal for: carrot, cabbage, cheese, potato, zucchini, apple  
**No. 705132**

**5 Large Shaver**  
Ideal for: chocolate, hard cheese, truffel, cucumber  
**No. 705136**



B

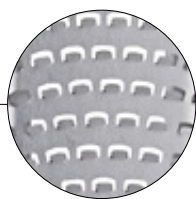
► **Microplane® Slider Attachment** (No. 705172) for professional kitchen rasps available online.

**B MICROPLANE®****PREMIUM ZESTER/GRATER**

This stainless steel grater is ideal for grating citrus fruits, hard cheese, garlic, ginger and nutmeg. Ergonomic soft touch handle with hanging eyelet. Dishwasher-safe.

Friction surface 200 x 25 mm. Overall length 320 mm

**No. 705181**



C

**C MICROPLANE® GOURMET PROFESSIONAL VEGETABLE SLICER**  
Razor-sharp blades that will revolutionize your kitchen:

The vegetable mandolin cuts thin 2 mm slices out of: potatoes, courgettes, carrots, cucumbers, onions, and much more. The anti-slip underside ensures stability and a firm grip. Ergonomically designed, comfortably soft handle with opening for hanging, dishwasher-safe.

Overall length 310 mm

**No. 746236**

► **Microplane® Gourmet Professional Julienne Slicer** (No. 746249) available online.



► **MICROPLANE® MASTER KITCHEN RASP**

The Master Series from Microplane combines a sturdy stainless steel frame with an elegant handle made of walnut wood.

**No. 746230-746234 available online.**



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Front side



D

Back side



**D MICROPLANE® 4-SIDED BOX GRATER**  
Four in one:

This 4-sided Microplane box grater copes with all tasks due to the cutting technology and the ergonomic design: blades made of best stainless steel. Four friction surfaces: fine, medium and extra coarse graters and one slicer. The fine grater blade can be removed in order to clean the grater. The razor sharp blades prevent from clogging. Soft grip and skid-proof stands for safety and stability. Dishwasher-safe.

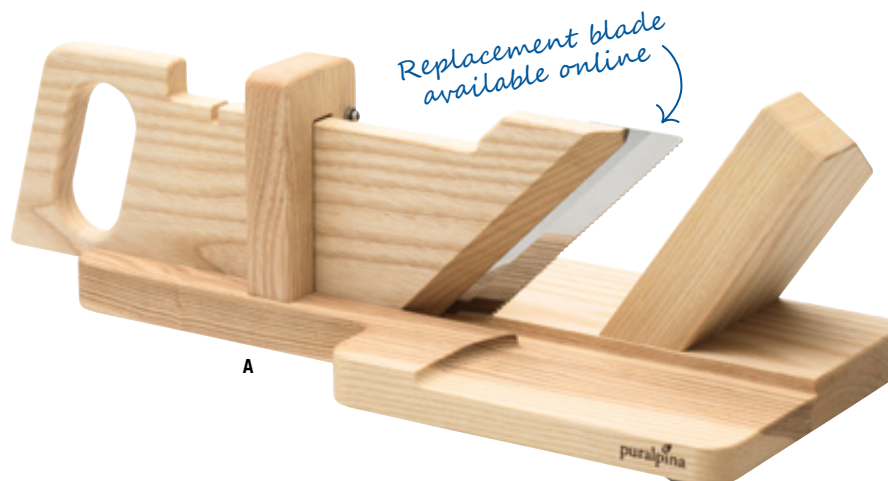
280 x 130 x 85 mm

**No. 705159**



**Video** of the salami slicer can be found online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



A

#### A SALAMI SLICER, ASH

Elegant and practical:

With its well thought-out mechanism, this solid wooden slicer cuts salami, bacon and gammon, etc. easily and quickly up to a diameter of 9 cm directly at the table and without electricity. Whether wafer-thin or thick, cut the slices according to your taste – without tedious adjustment. The high-quality

knife blades are specially made for this purpose by the traditional Swiss company Victorinox.

375 x 175 x 150 mm

No. 729456



For versions in cherry or walnut wood see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



► **HEVEA RUSTIKAL SERVING TRAYS**  
Heva rustic serving trays with two cast iron handles (No. 708856-708857) available online.



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



B

#### B POULTRY SHEARS, STAINLESS

For easy cutting:

With these robust forged shears, you can easily cut up any kind of poultry with very little effort. For thorough and hygienic cleaning and resharpening, the shears can be dismantled into two parts quickly

and easily. Both shears and spring are made of stainless steel.

Blade length 100 mm

Overall length 240 mm

330 g

No. 718265



C



#### C DESIGNER KITCHEN SHEARS

Exceptionally lightweight Japanese kitchen shears with smooth action. For cutting poultry, fish, herbs and vegetables. Adjustable cutting action blades of rustproof hardened stainless steel. Can be dismantled very quickly for washing.

Blade length

75 mm

Overall length

205 mm

115 g

No. 718137



### Japanese Cutting Utensils

Excellent kitchen slicers, graters and peelers. Blades of rustproof steel, natural wood handles.



D

#### D MINI SLICER

For ginger, small cucumbers and truffles.

145 x 90 mm

No. 719164



E

#### E PEELER

For carrots, radishes and asparagus.

135 x 75 mm

No. 719162



F

#### F CERAMIC PEELER

This innovative feather-light ceramic peeler peels asparagus, vegetables and fruit effortlessly and without clogging to release the pure flavour of the food. This is due to the blades of zircon ceramic, a material that is not only sharper, but also retains its cutting edge ten times longer than hardened steel. Dishwasher safe.

Blade length 40 mm

30 g

No. 719185



G

#### G STAINLESS STEEL PEELER

A useful kitchen tool for peeling potatoes, cucumbers, carrots, apples etc. The flexible stainless steel (18/8) blade adjusts to the shape of the fruit or vegetable, thus ensuring precise peeling of the skin. Using the tip at the side of the tool, you can easily remove small blemishes. Dishwasher safe.

Manufactured in Japan.

120 x 55 mm

46 g

No. 719442

# Hunting and Outdoor Knives

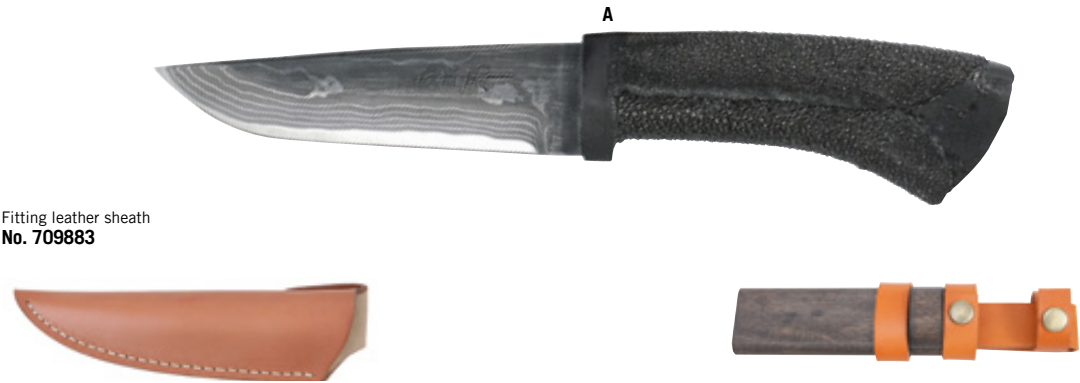
## Japanese Hunting and Outdoor Knives

### Saji outdoor knives - hand-forged to ultimate perfection in Japan

The Japanese master smith Takeshi Saji uses traditional components to create utility knives that have revolutionised the market - not only in Japan. Blades of multi-layered steel make these knives feasts for the eyes, while the steel used for the cutting edges lends exceptional sharpness and edge retention. The size of the handles is designed with European hands in mind, while a firm attachment of the tang and anti-slip features ensure that these knives are also ideal for heavy use. Saji's knives are characterised by highly functional design and a rustic finish alongside exceptional value for money. The master engraves his signature by hand on each of the blades. Double-bevelled.

► Handmade solid leather sheaths with belt loop available for all Saji hunting knives.

»The knife for the lonely wolf.«  
Manager magazine

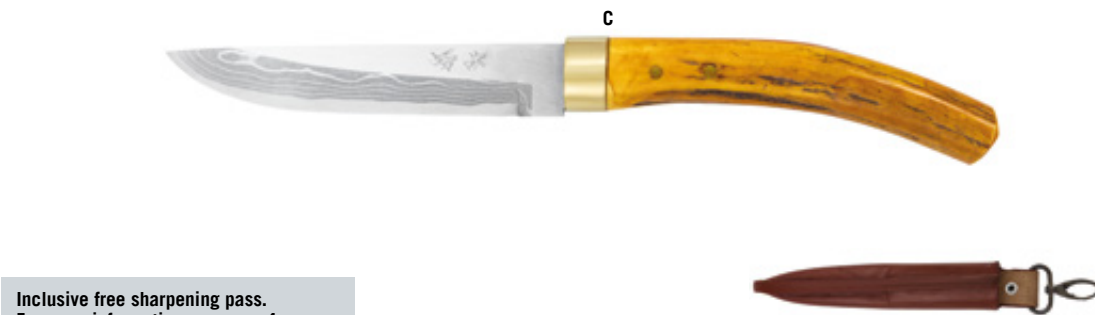


Fitting leather sheath  
No. 709883


**A** SAJI HUNTING KNIFE,  
»KAWA KURO«  
This sturdy knife will withstand all challenges during your hunting or trekking activities. The oak wood handle, wrapped in black ray skin, ensures a secure grip even under wet conditions. Scabbard made of magnolia wood with leather mounts, belt hook. Gunmetal finished 11-layered blade with Suminagashi pattern. Core cutting layer of White Paper Steel, hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof. Blade length 110 mm  
Blade thickness 4.5 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
190 g  
**No. 719260**



**B** SAJI HUNTING KNIFE,  
STAG HORN  
Strong hunting knife with 11-layered blade of Japanese Damascus steel and traditional stag horn handle. For this knife, Japanese stag horn originating from Sika deer from the Hokkaido region was used, whose individual structure makes each knife unique. Cutting core layer of White Paper Steel, hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof. Comes with strong leather sheath with belt hook. Blade length 150 mm  
Blade thickness 4.8 mm  
Overall length 290 mm  
245 g  
**No. 719368**



**C** SAJI OUTDOOR KNIFE,  
STAG HORN  
Small, handy outdoor knife with buck-horn handle. 11-layered Suminagashi blade core layer made of White Paper Steel. Leather belt holster with snap hook. Hardness 64 HRC, not rustproof. Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 3.4 mm  
Overall length 215 mm  
100 g  
**No. 708972**

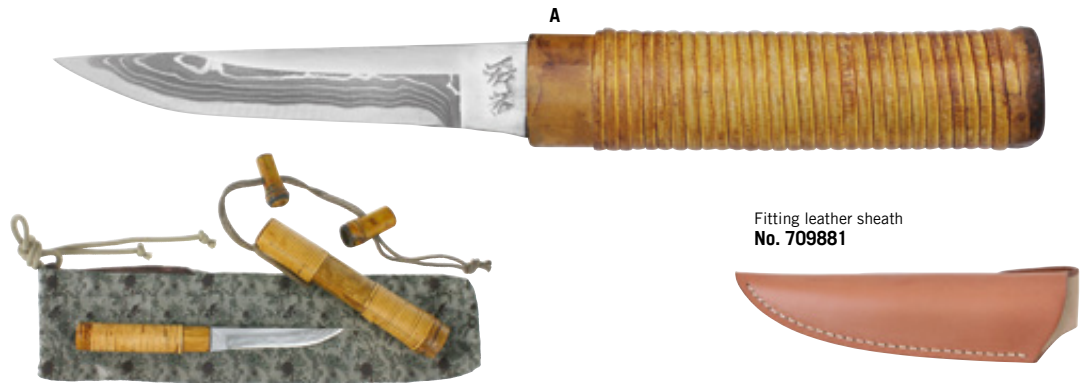
Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.  
 Two free sharpenings



**A SAJI HOCHO BAMBOO**

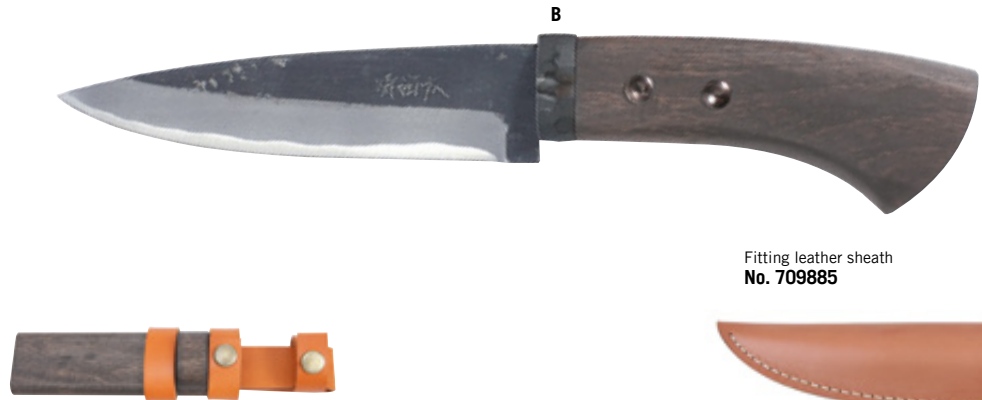
Simply classic:

The magnificently structured blade of 17-layered Suminagashi steel is based on the strict shape of a Kozuka (a side-knife for use with a Japanese sword) and offers an attractive contrast to the magical natural bamboo. Handle and sheath are made of two glued scales wrapped with bamboo and lacquered. Carrying cord and lovely silk pouch included. Cutting layer of White Paper Steel, hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof. Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 4 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
85 g

**No. 709035**Fitting leather sheath  
**No. 709881****B SAJI ARCHAIC OUTDOOR KNIFE**

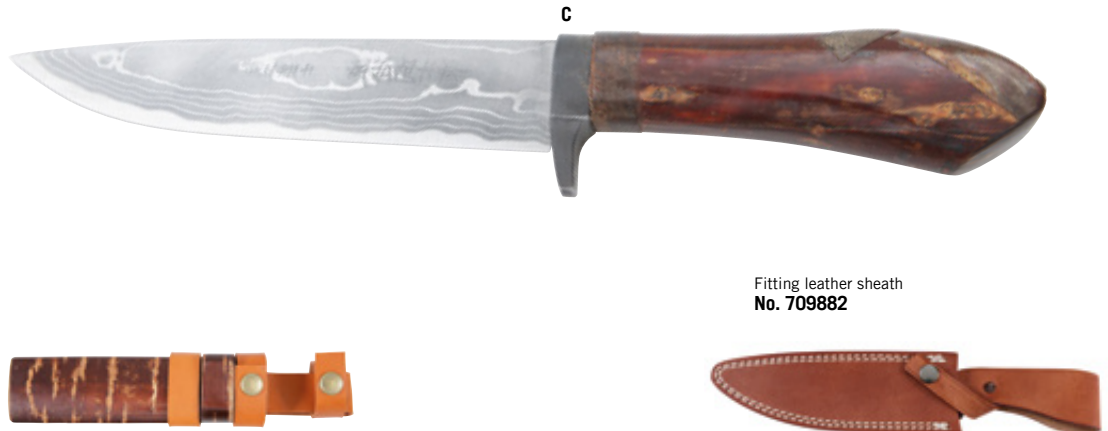
A strong triple-layered blade with a core cutting layer of White Paper Steel makes this knife very sharp and durable. The blade is securely anchored in the unvarnished oak handle by a hand forged ferrule. With leather covered magnolia wood sheath. Hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof.

Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 5 mm  
Overall length 245 mm  
170 g

**No. 719280**Fitting leather sheath  
**No. 709885****C SAJI HUNTING KNIFE CHERRY BARK**

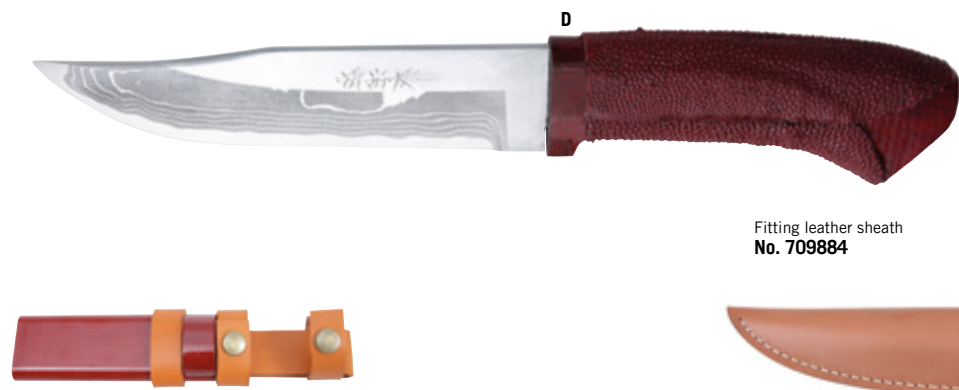
With this generously dimensioned utility knife the master blacksmith reanimates the traditional art of cherry tree bark handwork (Kaba Zaiku). The beautifully grained, breathing skin of the cherry tree adds class to the handle and sheath. The strong blade of 11-layered Suminagashi steel is amazingly sharp and durable even under the most demanding conditions. Cutting core of White Paper Steel, hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof.

Blade length 155 mm  
Blade thickness 5.5 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
250 g

**No. 709036**Fitting leather sheath  
**No. 709882****D SAJI HUNTING KNIFE, KAWA AKA**

11-layered Suminagashi blade, cutting layer of White Paper Steel. Oak handle with red ray skin wrapping. Magnolia wood scabbard with leather mounts, belt loop. Urushi varnishing. Not rustproof, hardness 60 HRC.

Blade length 130 mm  
Blade thickness 4.7 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
180 g

**No. 719268**Fitting leather sheath  
**No. 709884**



**A SAJI HUNTING KNIFE**  
**HINOMOTO**  
 The strong blade made of 11-layered Suminagashi steel has a cutting core of Blue Paper Steel, which is well-known for its sharpness and edge retention. In the outer layers, the smith uses a combination of copper, brass and stainless steel to give the blade a fascinating look. The light-coloured rattan wrapping offers an attractive contrast with the black paint on the wooden handle. Ferule with hand guard. Including a thick black leather sheath with belt loop.  
 Not rustproof, hardened to 64 HRC.  
 Blade length 135 mm  
 Blade thickness 3.9 mm  
 Overall length 270 mm  
 200 g  
**No. 719863**


**B SAJI OUTDOOR KNIFE, OAK**  
 Small outdoor knife with round oak wood handle. The blade consists of a total of 11 layers, the cutting layer is made of durable White Paper Steel. Leather belt holster with snap hook.  
 Hardness 64 HRC, not rustproof.  
 Blade length 95 mm  
 Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
 Overall length 210 mm  
 80 g  
**No. 708974**

**C SAJI OUTDOOR KNIFE**  
**KONOH**  
 Puristic:  
 The Konoha Hocho is characterised by a clear shape and rustic finish. Powerful triple-layered blade in a willow leaf form (iron/White Paper Steel/iron), with an akagashi (oak) handle, belt sheath of formed naturally tanned leather and karabiner. Hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof.  
 Blade length 80 mm  
 Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
 Overall length 185 mm  
 70 g  
**No. 719139**

**D HUNTING KNIFE WITH OAK**  
**WOOD HANDLE**  
 This exceptional knife features a clip-point blade. The hammered forging surface contributes to create the archaic appearance. The cutting core of Blue Paper Steel is hard and tough at the same time and may be honed to a razor sharp edge. The 32 outer layers create a very nice Damascus structure. The Loveless design rivets are made of stainless steel and brass. This sturdy knife comes with a high-quality saddle leather sheath (with belt loop).  
 Hardness 64 HRC. Not rustproof.  
 Blade length 110 mm  
 Blade thickness 4 mm  
 Overall length 240 mm  
 170 g  
**No. 719349**

**E HUNTING KNIFE**  
 Hand-forged knife with an archaic appearance, made of 16-layered Suminagashi steel and a core of Blue Paper Steel with excellent sharpness retention (60 HRC). The red notch is the signature of the blacksmith. Not rustproof. Cord-wrapped handle, leather sheath.  
 Blade length 90 mm  
 Blade thickness 3 mm  
 Overall length 230 mm  
 130 g  
**No. 719215**

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
 For more information see page 4.

 Two free sharpenings

### A HUNTING AND OUTDOOR KNIFE »KEN NATA«

Light, sharp and handy:

This extremely practical knife is the result of the cooperation between a Japanese knife smith and several hunters. It is very light, stable, very sharp and easy to resharpen. Triple-layered blade with core layer made of Blue Paper Steel and of softer, more flexible steel side layers. Bowie style blade shape (Duckbill). The flat part of the blade has a hammered forging surface. Signature of the master smith partly coloured with gold. Traditional, forged iron bolster with long hand guard. Handle made of fire-hardened, thus weight-reduced oak, stained black and brushed. Robust saddle leather sheath with belt loop. Safety strap. Hardness 62 HRC, not rustproof. Blade length 135 mm  
Blade thickness 4 mm  
Overall length 260 mm  
170 g

**No. 709158**



### B OUTDOOR KNIFE »MORIYUKI«

Whether hunting or trekking, you can rely on this sturdy outdoor knife even under the hardest conditions. The strong, ergonomically shaped oak handle is decorated with rivets. The gunmetal-finished blade has a core layer of tough Blue Paper Steel, is 5 mm thick and hand signed by the master blacksmith. The meticulously worked robust leather sheath has two fastening straps.

It can be worn on a belt.  
Hardness 63 HRC, not rustproof.  
Blade length 160 mm  
Blade thickness 5 mm  
Overall length 280 mm  
280 g

**No. 719284**

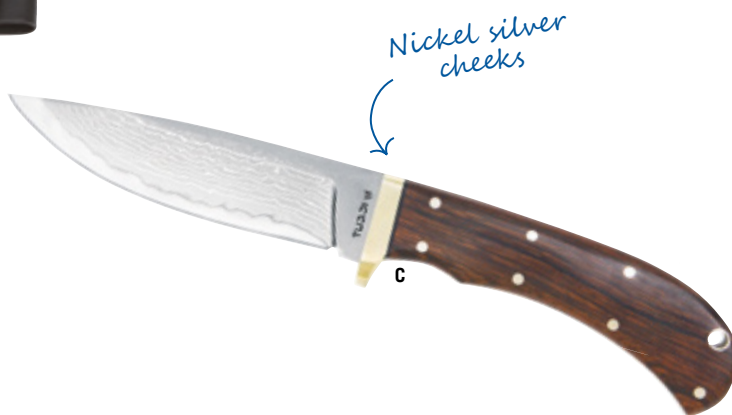


### C HUNTING KNIFE HIRO, DESERT IRONWOOD

This reliable companion for all outdoor activities is entirely convincing thanks to its smart blend of functionality and harmonic design. 32 side layers of stainless steel combined with a VG-10 cutting edge produce a full-length blade with an appealing Suminagashi pattern - perfectly matched by handle scales made of grained desert ironwood. The wood features a high density and is therefore particularly resistant to humidity. Black liner material connects the wood with the nickel silver cheeks, which come with a hand guard.

Leather sheath with belt loop.  
Hardness 60 HRC, rustproof.  
Blade length 115 mm  
Blade thickness 3.6 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
170 g

**No. 719530**



### D HUNTING AND OUTDOOR KNIFE »KEIRYU-TO«

Light and handy Japanese hunting and outdoor knife with a handle made of stained oak wood. The distressed surface of the handle ensures a good grip in the hand, while the large hand guard prevents any injuries from contact with the cutting edge. Forging the triple-layered blade by hand, the smith uses a cutting edge of White Paper Steel that is characterised by superb sharpness and durability. The outer layers are made of softer iron, and the surface of the blade is hammered. Includes a leather sheath with belt loop.

The blade bears the smith's signature.  
Hardness 59 HRC, not rustproof.  
Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
145 g

**No. 719861**





## Western Hunting and Outdoor Knives

**AFK**

The Hungarian knifemaker Attila Kertész has been making hunting knives and exclusive collector's knives by hand since 1986. Since 2004 he is a member of the Hungarian and since 2014 in the German Knifemakers Guild.

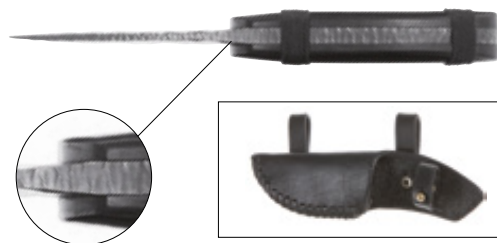
**A****A HUNTING KNIFE DARKNESS, EBONY**

A special hunting knife:

The extraordinary surface structure of the fixed blade is created by controlled grinding and a specially developed heat treatment. The curved handle provides a comfortable grip. The integral blade of ATS34 steel is rustproof and has a hardness of 59 HRC. The handle scales are made of a combination of ebony and leather wrapping. The

handmade cowhide pouch is sewn with an attractive pattern, while the two adjustable hanging loops allow the knife to be carried on a belt either straight or at an angle.

Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
170 g  
**No. 719588**

**B****B HUNTING KNIFE INTEGRAL, MACASSAR EBONY**

Clear, simple aesthetic design:

A very handy and elegant hunting knife forged from a single piece of steel. The rust-resistant D2 steel is extremely sharp and wear-resistant. The handle scales fit exactly and the ergonomic handle

ensures a good, secure grip. With its 9.5 mm thick blade, this solid knife is also capable of heavy-duty application. Comes with robust handmade cowhide sheath with belt loop. Hardness 60 HRC. This knife series won first place in the category »Best of Fixed Hunting Knives« at the 2008 Brno knife show.

► For a version with Goldfield handle see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Handle scales made of Macassar ebony, one of the densest and hardest woods in the world. Jet black.  
Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 9.5 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
185 g  
**No. 719586**

**Casström**

Casström is a family-run company based in Lycksele in the Swedish part of Lapland. The company produces both traditional and modern Nordic utility knives for hunting and outdoor activities.

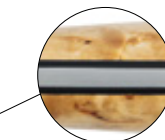
**C****C CASSTRÖM LARS FÄLT, OUTDOOR KNIFE**

Lars Fält is Sweden's outdoor legend. He has trained Swedish and British military units in winter survival and is also the author of many outdoor books as well as the designer of this knife. Due to its Scandinavian design and the Scandi grind, it is a robust, all-purpose outdoor knife. The tough blade is made of Böhler K720\* tool steel, a robust and easy-to-sharpen steel.

Handle scales made of Nordic masur birch. This robust type of wood has a very interesting look due to the contrast between the light-coloured heartwood and dramatic dark-coloured veins radiating through the wood. Black liner material between handle scales and tang. Comes in a sturdy leather sheath with belt loop and a leather strap for the thong hole. Not rustproof, hardened to 59 HRC.

\* Steel analysis: C = 0.9 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 2 / Cr = 0.35 / V = 0.1 (in %)

Handle scales made of masur birch.  
Blade length 110 mm  
Blade thickness 3.8 mm  
Overall length 230 mm  
180 g  
**No. 709719**



► Casström Lars Fält folding knife No. 727509 available online.

## Nordic Hunting and Outdoor Knives



### Wood Jewel

Wood Jewel is a small, family-owned workshop based in Finland that has been producing traditional Finnish utility knives since 1986. The handles are made of natural materials such as Nordic masur birch and reindeer horn. All knives come with a sturdy leather sheath.

- A WOOD JEWEL HUNTING AND OUTDOOR KNIFE »VUOLU«**  
Universal hunting and outdoor knife. It is joined by a brass ferrule to the blade, with black forged skin. Blades made of easy-to-sharpen carbon steel 80CrV2, not rustproof, hardness 58 HRC.  
Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
105 g  
**No. 708872**



- B WOOD JEWEL HUNTING AND OUTDOOR KNIFE**  
Handle in an optimal ergonomic size, made of Nordic masur birch and aspen with a brass ferrule. Blade made of easy-to-sharpen carbon steel 80CrV2, not rustproof, hardness 58 HRC.  
Blade length 145 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 275 mm  
170 g  
**No. 709766**



- C WOOD JEWEL OUTDOOR KNIFE WITH FIRE STICK**  
The ideal companion for all outdoor activities:  
Versatile outdoor knife with black forged skin. Handle combination of Nordic masur birch, reindeer horn and leather with brass end. The fire stick with a masur birch and reindeer horn handle enables you to light a warming campfire. Scrape the fire stick on the groove on the back of the blade specifically designed for that purpose to create big sparks for lighting dry paper or tinder. Blade made of easy-to-sharpen carbon steel 80CrV2, not rustproof, hardness 58 HRC.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 190 mm  
90 g  
**No. 709761**



- D WOOD JEWEL FISH KNIFE**  
This rustproof knife with its slim, flexible blade is ideal for gutting and filleting fish. Handle combination of Nordic masur birch, reindeer horn and leather with brass end. Hardness 57 HRC.  
Blade length 160 mm  
Blade thickness 1.1 mm  
Overall length 270 mm  
65 g  
**No. 709760**



Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



## Brusletto®

The Norwegian traditional manufacturer Brusletto has been producing knives for hunting, fishing and outdoor activities for more than 100 years. Their knives have always been designed and produced to be practical. Handle and blade are worked to fulfill all functional requirements and to fit securely in the hand. The natural structure of wood creates a unique pattern on each handle knife.



A



### A BRUSLETTO® BAMSEN

Hunting and outdoor knife with handle made of nicely grained olive wood and aluminium ferrules. The blade is made of rustproof Sandvik steel 12C27 with a hardness of 57 HRC. Comes with leather sheath with belt loop. Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 225 mm  
150 g

No. 709253



B



### B BRUSLETTO® HUNTING KNIFE FEMUND

Solid hunting knife with robust finger protection. The fitted handle scales made of linen micarta are attached with two screws. The knife also features a thong tube hole. Micarta is a very durable material that ensures a safe and comfortable grip. Rustproof 440C steel blade with a hardness of 58 HRC. Comes with leather sheath with belt loop. Blade length 105 mm  
Blade thickness 3.8 mm  
Overall length 235 mm  
250 g

No. 709651



C



### C BRUSLETTO® FISHERMAN'S KNIFE FISKERN

A perfect knife for all fishermen. The slim blade made of rustproof 440C steel is ideal for eviscerating fish. The handle combination of cork and Nordic birch assures that the knife will not sink in case that it will drop in water - it floats. Comes with leather sheath with belt loop. Hardness 57 HRC. Blade length 120 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
55 g

No. 709252



*Cork handle -  
knife floats if it  
drops in water*



D

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.

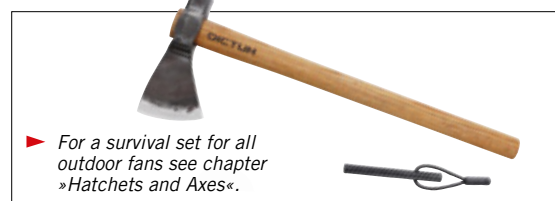
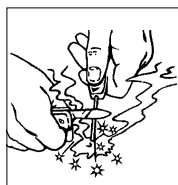


Two free sharpenings

## D FIRE STICK (WILDMARKSSTICKAN)

Essential for every trekking tour: When your matches and lighter let you down, then you can always rely on the fire stick to provide you with a warming campfire. Simply rub any steel blade across the fire stick to create a burst of sparks large enough to easily light dry paper or tinder. Magnesium stick with a reindeer horn handle. With instruction booklet. Overall length 100 mm

No. 708890



E



### E OUTDOOR-SET *Price advantage*

Three things that people need for their outdoor activities: Karesuando outdoor knife with a rustproof Swedish steel blade and a leather sheath that can be carried on a belt, the ultra-compact Japanese wire saw that, despite of a weight of only 12 g, can saw arm-thick branches, and a fire stick that generates copious sparks when stroked along a knife blade. Blade length 65 mm  
Blade thickness 2.3 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
80 g

No. 709606



## Japanese Folding Knives

### Higonokami - Japanese Pocket Knives

In former times, nearly every young man in Japan owned a Higonokami pocket knife. It has been manufactured in the traditional manner for over a century. The blade is set in a handle without locking mechanism and is opened using the lever tang.



**A HIGONOKAMI BURASU.**  
Handle of folded brass plate.  
Triple-layered carbon steel blade  
(Blue Paper Steel), not rustproof.  
Hardness 60 HRC.  
Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 160 mm  
40 g

- 1 Without Sheath  
No. 719069
- 2 With Leather Sheath  
No. 719070
- 3 With Folding Leather Sheath  
No. 719073

**B HIGONOKAMI BLACK WITH FORGED SKIN**  
The original by Nagao:  
Handle is made of galvanized sheet metal. Triple-layered carbon steel blade (Blue Paper Steel) with black forged skin, not rustproof. Hardness 60 HRC.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
50 g

- 1 Without Sheath  
No. 700467
- 2 With Leather Sheath  
No. 700468
- 3 With Folding Leather Sheath  
No. 700469



**C HIGONOKAMI BURASU WITH FORGED SKIN**  
The original by Nagao:  
Handle of folded brass plate. Triple-layered carbon steel blade (Blue Paper Steel) with black forged skin, not rustproof. Hardness 60 HRC.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
50 g

- 1 Without Sheath  
No. 700500
- 2 With Leather Sheath  
No. 700501
- 3 With Folding Leather Sheath  
No. 700502



**D LEATHER FOLDING SHEATH**  
2.5 mm thick, vegetable tanned leather. Serves as a comfortable handle when the knife is in use. Fits pocket knives No. 719069, 700467 and 700500.  
No. 719072



**E MINI HIGONOKAMI**  
The original by Nagao:  
Fully functional and handy miniature version of the Japanese Higonokami. Blade of triple-layered carbon steel (SK5 steel cutting layer), simple finish, brass plate handle. Hardness 55 HRC, not rustproof.  
Blade length 40 mm  
Blade thickness 2.45 mm  
Overall length 90 mm  
16 g

- 1 Mini Higonokami with Bell  
No. 709043
- 2 Mini Higonokami with Leatherette Case  
Suitable as key pendant.  
No. 719628





1



2



1



2

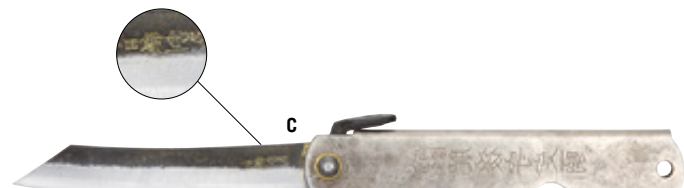
With practical  
finger groove



Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



1



2



3



**C HIGONOKAMI HYORIN**

The original by Nagao:

In order to obtain the exceptional patina on the handle surface, the folded brass handle is corroded using a special process. The cutting core made of Blue Paper Steel is flanked by two tougher layers of steel. The black forged skin on the upper part of the blade carries the signature of the knife maker Nagao,

partly inlaid in gold. Double-bevelled, not rustproof, hardness 63 HRC.

Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 3.2 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
50 g

1 grey No. 700457  
2 brown No. 700458  
3 blue No. 700459



**D HIGONOKAMI SILVER**

The original by Nagao:

Handle made of folded nickel-plated steel. Carbon steel blade, not rustproof. Double-bevelled, hardness 62 HRC.

Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 2.3 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
40 g  
No. 709999



D



E



**E HIGONOKAMI VG-10, RUSTPROOF**

The original by Nagao:

Folded stainless steel handle. Triple-layered blade with core layer made of rustproof VG-10 steel, hardness 62 HRC.

Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
45 g  
No. 700461

### A JAPANESE FOLDING KNIFE KOTOH

Timelessly modern, very light gentleman's pocket knives by Yoshimi Kotoh. The smith, born in 1957, manufactures his knives on Kyushu, Japan's most South-Western island. The triple-layered blade with a cutting layer of rustproof VG-10 steel is set in a handle without locking mechanism and is opened using the lever tang. Comes with a leather pouch. Rustproof, hardness 60 HRC. Blade length 60 mm. Blade thickness 2 mm. Overall length 145 mm. 20 g.



#### 1 Wenge

Handle scales made of wenge. The richly contrasting, coarse light/dark structure, usually combined with irregular or interlocked grain, gives wenge its exceptionally decorative character.

No. 719848



#### 2 Ebony

Handle scales made of elegant black ebony, one of the densest and hardest woods in the world.

No. 719849



### B FOLDING KNIFE HIGO-STYLE SUMINAGASHI

The fascinating Suminagashi blade stands out clearly and perfectly matches the snakewood's vivid grain. The wood is mounted to stainless steel plates and is one of the most precious and hardest wood types in the world. The interesting colour fascinates with the scale-like appearance of its grain. The 31-layered

blade is securely locked due to the smooth liner lock mechanism, the handle back has an open design. Core cutting layer is made of stainless AUS-8 steel, double-bevelled, hardness 58 HRC. Blade length 70 mm. Blade thickness 2.4 mm. Overall length 185 mm. 75 g.

No. 719698



### C FOLDING KNIFE LINER LOCK CARBON

Modern Japanese folding knife with titanium-coated plates and stainless steel pins, which provide colour and an interesting contrast to the black carbon handle scales. The blade consists of 71 layers in total with a distinctive Suminagashi pattern; core cutting layer of 440A steel. The elongated blade back

acts as a handle tang to open the blade. The blade is locked by a liner lock mechanism. With thong hole, rustproof, hardness 56 HRC. Blade length 75 mm. Blade thickness 2.6 mm. Overall length 185 mm. 80 g.

No. 719769



*Titanium-coated plates and stainless steel pins*



### D SAJI FOLDING KNIFE PETTY

Takeshi Saji is among the most famous master smiths in the Takefu Knife Village. For this Japanese folding knife, handles made of black, slightly textured G10 were mounted on a stainless steel plate. The material is extremely hard and

robust, and the textured surface gives it a slip-resistant feel. The blade consists of a total of 31 layers and is securely locked with a liner lock mechanism. The cutting edge made of powder-metallurgically produced SG-2 steel gives this folding knife an extraordinary sharpness and

edge-holding capacity. With thong hole, rustproof blade, hardness 63 HRC.

Blade length 105 mm. Blade thickness 2.3 mm. Overall length 235 mm. 120 g.

No. 719859



E



### E JAPANESE FOLDING AND STEAK KNIFE, COCOBOLO

These slim, stylish pocket knives available for everyday life, equipped with handles made of cocobolo wood, can also be used as steak knives. The handle scales contrast attractively with the blue titanium-coated screws and liners. Thanks to the two finger rests, the knife fits comfortably in the hand. The attractively patterned blade consists of a cutting core of 440A steel

encased in 70 layers of rustproof steel. The blade is locked securely with a liner lock mechanism; the blade back is uncovered. Comes in leather case. Rustproof, hardness 56 HRC. Blade length 100 mm. Blade thickness 2.3 mm. Overall length 225 mm. 60 g.


No. 719743



 Also available with black handle scales (No. 719744) online.





 Models with micarta handle scales available online.



#### **A HIRO SUMINAGASHI FOLDING KNIFE, DESERT IRON WOOD**

Exquisite knives with extravagant Damascus steel blades and a beautiful pattern, suitable for everyday use. The Suminagashi pattern makes the blade, which is forged with 33 layers of Japanese steel, a real eye-catcher. The cutting edge is made of VG-10 steel. The polished handle scales with nickel silver bolsters create an interesting contrast to the blade. The back lock mechanism ensures that the blade can be locked safely, and the double cam ensures smooth folding. Handle scales made of desert ironwood with black liner material between the nickel silver bolsters and the handle scales. Desert ironwood has a beautiful gold-brown colour with dark streaks. Due to its high density it is

extremely resistant to moisture. Hardness 60 HRC, rustproof, with hanging eyelet. Comes with a sturdy, attractive punched leather sheath with belt loop for storage and transport. Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
100 g  
**No. 719760**



#### **B FOLDING KNIFE SUMINAGASHI**

The harmonious design of this stylish folding knife is fascinating. The structure of the 31-layered Damascus steel, which is not only found on the blade, but also in the handle jaws, is quite impressive. The finger groove makes it easy to swing out the rustproof blade, which is securely locked in place thanks to the back lock mechanism. Core cutting layer 440C steel, rustproof, hardness 57 HRC.

##### **1 Stag Horn**

Slightly textured handle scales made of stag horn.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 2.3 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
100 g  
**No. 719753**

##### **2 Ebony**

Handle scales made of dark, elegant ebony, one of the densest and hardest woods in the world.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 2.3 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
95 g  
**No. 719755**


#### **C FOLDING KNIFE »NORTH MAN«**

These hand forged blades stand up to the heaviest demands. The mechanics and back lock are solidly made and show no signs of wear even after years of use. Blades of rustproof Japanese Hitachi GIN-1 steel, walnut handle scales. Hardness 57 HRC.

Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
105 g  
**No. 719514**

► Also available as a knife making kit, see page 418.

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.

 Two free sharpenings



#### **D MINI FOLDING KNIFE »ABALONY«**

This Japanese mini folding knife with handle scales of coloured abalone is a real jewel. The lockable blade of highest quality GIN-1 steel (59 HRC, rustproof) is impressively sharp. This knife will be your constant companion as a fine key ring or a piece of jewellery. Blade length 35 mm  
Blade thickness 1.95 mm  
Overall length 85 mm  
20 g  
**No. 709034**



#### **E SAJI FOLDING KNIFE**

Takeshi Saji is among the most famous master smiths in the Takefu Knife Village. For this Japanese folding knife, handles made of black, slightly textured G10 were mounted on a stainless steel plate. The material is extremely hard and robust, and the textured surface gives it a slip-resistant feel. The blade consists of a total of 31 layers and is securely locked with a liner lock mechanism. The cutting edge made of powder-metallurgically produced SG-2 steel gives this folding knife an

extraordinary sharpness and edge-holding capacity. Belt clip made of G-10. With thong hole, leather pouch, rustproof blade, hardness 63 HRC. Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
90 g  
**No. 719839**



## Western Folding Knives



### Laguiole en Aubrac

The traditional Laguiole en Aubrac forge is one of the most renowned forges in France. The company is located in Espalion, within the »Laguiole Origine Garantie« zone. Each knife is made by a knife smith and is unique because of its handmade components; depending on the design, up to 216 work steps are necessary.

▶ For a video that shows the manufacturing process see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

▶ Comes with linen bag.



A

**A LAGUIOLE FOLDING KNIFE WITH CORKSCREW, EBONY WOOD**  
Handle scales made of elegant black ebony wood, one of the densest and hardest woods in the world. Blade made of easy-to-sharpen, rustproof Sandvik 12C27 steel. Stainless steel bolsters

and blade mirror polished.  
Hardness 56 HRC.  
Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
95 g  
**No. 718588**

B

**B LAGUIOLE FOLDING KNIFE WITH FORGED SKIN, DESERT IRON WOOD**  
Sourced in the deserts of Arizona, the Olneya tree grows at an exceptionally slow pace to produce desert ironwood, one of the world's hardest and densest timbers. The exquisitely beautiful grain shows a golden brown hue with dark

streaks. Its high density makes the wood particularly resistant to moisture. Stainless steel bolsters and satin-finished blade. Blades left with forged skin made of easy-to-sharpen carbon steel XC75, not rustproof, hardened to 54 HRC.  
Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
90 mm g  
**No. 718595**

**C LAGUIOLE FOLDING KNIFE**  
Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 220 mm

**1 Olive Wood**  
Handles scales made of olive wood with honey-coloured grain. The wood has excellent material properties and has been appreciated for centuries because of its warm colour. Blade made of easy to sharpen, rustproof Sandvik 12C27 steel. Stainless steel bolsters and blade satinated.  
Hardness 56 HRC.  
80 g  
**No. 718580**

**2 Ebony**  
Handle scales made of elegant black ebony wood, one of the densest and hardest woods in the world. Blade made of easy to sharpen, rustproof Sandvik 12C27 steel. Stainless steel bolsters and blade mirror-gloss polished.  
Hardness 56 HRC.  
85 g  
**No. 718581**

**3 Juniper**  
Handle scales made of juniper. This kind of wood has a brownish colour and a very pleasant peppery scent. In the Middle Ages, this type of wood was popular for smoking purposes, as the smoke was considered to have a cleansing, disinfectant effect. Blade made of easy to sharpen, rustproof Sandvik 12C27 steel. Stainless steel bolsters and blade satinated.  
Hardness 56 HRC.  
85 g  
**No. 718585**

**4 Snakewood**  
Handle scales made of vividly grained snakewood. This kind of wood is one of the world's most precious and hardest wood types. The interesting colouring fascinates with its wavy, shingle-like pattern. Blade made of easy to sharpen, rustproof Sandvik 12C27 steel. Stainless steel bolsters and blade mirror-polished.  
Hardness 56 HRC.  
85 g  
**No. 718584**

*Satinated blade and bolsters*

*Mirror-gloss polished*



▶ Further models available online.

#### The original by Laguiole en Aubrac

The Laguiole folding knife is an icon of French design. As early as 1829, this knife shape was created in the small mountain village of the same name, Laguiole, in southwest France. The trademarks of this classic knife are the ergonomic shape of blade and handle, the »bee« stop and the fine engraving on the spring. All Laguiole handles have the traditional »Shepherd's cross« made of fine silver ornamental rivets (excluding staghorn handles). Shepherds who spent the summers with their flocks in the Auvergne highlands used to stick the blade into the ground and pray in front of the cross. Feather and bee are forged from one piece and artfully decorated by hand (needle etched), each blacksmith having his own engraving.

**Note:** Pay attention to the origin of the knife when buying. Beware of cheaply produced knives manufactured in China or Pakistan, because the name »Laguiole« cannot be protected. The »LOG« (Laguiole Origine Garantie) stamp guarantees that the knife originates from the genuine Laguiole area and is produced using traditional methods.



#### A FOLDING KNIFE D'ICI

Rustic work and utility knife created in cooperation with French designer Auzier. The simple but functional locking mechanism sinks the extended back of the blade into the notch in the handle. Blade of Z40 steel with black forged skin. Rustproof, hardness 54 HRC. Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2.6 mm  
Overall length 210 mm



#### 1 Walnut Wood

Handle scales made of fine quality walnut wood.  
60 g  
**No. 708814**

#### 2 Olive Wood

Handle scales made of olive wood with honey-coloured grain. The wood has excellent material properties and has been appreciated for centuries because of its warm colour.

65 g  
**No. 708812**

#### 3 Ebony

Handle scales made of elegant black ebony, one of the densest and hardest woods in the world.

65 g  
**No. 708813**



### Claude Dozorme®

The company was founded in 1902 by Blaise Dozorme in Thiers, the »knife capital« of France. This family-run company combines traditional craftsmanship that has been passed down through the years with modern manufacturing technology. Thus, the range includes both traditional folding knives as well as new interpretations of regional knives. Cutlery and flatware complete the product range.



► Also with Damascus blade available online!



#### B LE THIERS® RLT FOLDING KNIFE BANKSIA

Named after the French region Thiers, this folding knife fascinates with its elegant design. Australian banksia cones are used for the handle scales. The natural cavities of the Banksia Grandis tree's fruit cones are filled with coloured acrylic resin and stabilised. Stabilised materials are extremely resistant, absorb practically no moisture and are therefore very hygienic, washable and do not warp. Stainless steel bolsters finish off the handle and form the join with the polished blade of Swedish Sandvik 14C28N steel. The blade operation can be adjusted using the supplied wrench; the blade runs on a ball bearing. The lavish decoration on the blade spring is hand filed. Rustproof, hardness 58 HRC.



Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2.4 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
140 g

1 red **No. 708803**  
2 white **No. 708804**  
3 blue **No. 708805**



► More animal designs available online.



#### C LE THIERS® FOLDING KNIFE NATURE, STAG

Named after the French region Thiers, this folding knife fascinates with its elegant design. An elegant laser engraving decorates the front handle scale made of fine walnut wood. The blade is locked with a liner lock mechanism. Blade of rustproof X50CrMoV15 steel\*, hardness 56 HRC.



Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
110 g  
**No. 708915**



#### D LAGUIOLE FOLDING KNIFE BAROUEUR

The Baroudeur is a sturdy pocket knife with integrated corkscrew. The blade is locked with a liner lock mechanism. Handles scales made of olive wood with a honey-coloured grain. The wood has excellent material properties and has been appreciated for centuries because

of its warm colour. With safety strap and leather hanging loop. Blade of rustproof X50CrMoV15 \*steel, hardness 54 HRC. Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 215 mm  
120 g  
**No. 708846**

\*Steel analysis: C = 0.5 / Cr = 15 /  
Mo = 1 / V = 1 (in %)



**Douk-Douk®**

The functional and durable Douk-Douk developed into an icon of knife design in the last century. Originally created in 1928 for the French colonies in Africa and Asia, this

knife has been numerous copied but the originals offered here have unmistakable characteristics. The handle scales of folded seam gunmetal plate have a convex form so that they fit better in the hand. Embossed with the symbol of the shaman for luck. To avoid injuries, the strong XC48 steel spring can also be latched in the middle position when folding the blade. The blade is decorated with ornamental patterns, hardness 53 HRC. Made by the 4th generation of Pierre Cognet in the French knife metropolis of Thiers.

**A DOUK-DOUK®**

Blade made of XC70 carbon steel, not rustproof. Gunmetal-finished handle.

**1 Small**

Blade length 65 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 160 mm  
40 g  
**No. 709300**



*Classic*

**A DOUK-DOUK®****2 Large**

Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm

Overall length 200 mm  
70 g  
**No. 709301**

**B FOLDING KNIFE SPHÈRE, OLIVE WOOD HANDLE**

Practical utility knife with a special locking mechanism - the sphere at the end of the blade snaps into place securely in a recess on the handle. Loosening or tightening the screw on the handle adjusts the smoothness of the folding mechanism. Made in Thiers, France. Blade made of rustproof Sandvik steel 12C27. Olive wood handle.

Comes with case.  
Hardness 57 HRC.  
Blade length 85 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
50 g  
**No. 709238**

**C SVÖRD™ FOLDING KNIFE PEASANT, BLACK**

A rustic working and utility knife with a simple but effective locking mechanism. The elongated back of the blade slides into the notch on the handle. The robust plastic handle has two brass screws for individual adjustment of the locking mechanism. The blade is made of Swedish carbon steel, which ensures an extremely long edge life. Not rustproof.

Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
75 g  
**No. 709334**

**D SVÖRD™ FOLDING KNIFE PEASANT MICRO**

The Peasant Micro is a compact pocket knife that is a perfect companion for small cutting tasks. Comes with a leather pouch.

**1 Copper**

Blade length 50 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 125 mm  
45 g  
**No. 709697**

**2 Brass**

Blade length 50 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 125 mm  
45 g  
**No. 709698**

► Folding Knife Svörd™ Peasant is also available online as a knife making kit, No. 709699.

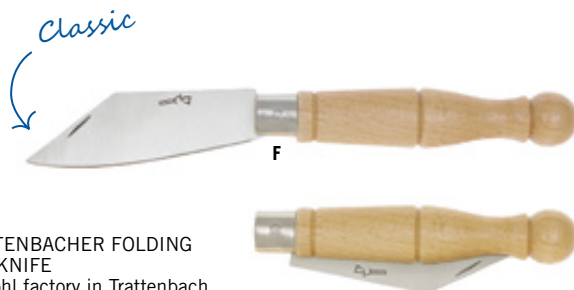
**Inclusive free sharpening pass.**  
For more information see page 4.

**Two free sharpenings**

**E KNIFE PENDANT WITH LEATHER SHEATH**

Hand-forged and fully functional: This beautiful knife made out of carbon steel (61 HRC) is completely handcrafted. Its ancient design makes it very attractive and it is also fully functional. The dark scaled surface of the metal provides a nice contrast to the light brown leather

sheath. Made out of high quality, vegetable-tanned Vachetta leather that is soft to the touch and absolutely skin-friendly.  
Overall length 95 mm  
30 g  
**No. 719707**

**F TRATTENBACHER FOLDING POCKET KNIFE**

The Löschenkohl factory in Trattenbach is a relic and meanwhile a classic of the once blooming foundry industry in Upper Austria. The folding pocket knives have been ideal bread knives since the 16th century, but hobbyists, hikers and craftsmen alike can also appreciate these rustic folding knives. Original shape, with turned beech handle and wide roof-shaped blade. Rustproof blade,

hardness 50 HRC, simple finish.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 1.5 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
30 g  
**No. 719149**



1

**A MINI DAMASCUS FOLDING KNIFE**

This sample of a fascinating Damascus blade is created by 32 lateral layers of stainless steel and a cutting layer made of Japanese VG-10 steel. The blade of this handy knife is held in place with a back lock mechanism. Each handle scale has a unique colour. Made in the USA. Rustproof, hardness 60 HRC.

Blade length 50 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 135 mm  
50 g

**1 Beech**

Handle scales made of stabilised spalted beech wood with intensive pattern caused by spalling. During the stabilisation process, the wood is completely impregnated with a specially developed acrylic resin, using a vacuum pressure procedure. By means of this procedure, it becomes highly robust and absorbs practically no moisture, making it hygienic, washable, and warp-free. One handle scale is inlaid with turquoise precious stones.

**No. 719668****2 Mammoth Tusk/Stone**

This model uses two different handle scales. One handle scale is a combination of mammoth tusk, set in nickel silver strips and dark black jet (gemstone). The stone, mined in the southwest of the USA, is also known as »black amber«. The fossil tusks of the mammoth are obtained from permafrost soil or glacial ice. Due to thousands of years of storage in permafrost, the originally cream-coloured teeth have become individually discoloured. The other handle scale is made of dyed, stabilised birch wood.

**No. 708794****Nieto**

The history of Nieto goes back to 1957, when Miguel and Inocencio Nieto helped their father in his small knife production. In 1980, Miguel Nieto founded his own company and since then has been producing high-quality and reliable knives under the brand name »M. Nieto« in Albacete, Spain.



B

**B NIETO POCKET KNIFE****CAMPAÑA, THUJA WOOD**

With the Campaña series, the Spanish manufacturer Nieto presents a traditional pocket knife. The robust blade of rustproof Sandvik steel 14C28N is held in position by a strong back spring with decorative filework. Handle scales made of vividly grained, red-brown thuja wood. Supplied with safety strap. Rustproof, hardness 59 HRC.

Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 3.5 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
105 g

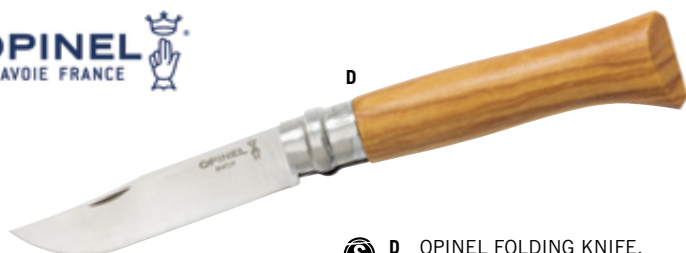
**No. 708791**

C

**C NIETO POCKET KNIFE****CENTAURO, BOCOTE**

Traditional, handy pocket knife with satin-finished blade made of high-quality Böhler N-695 steel. When open, the blade is reliably locked by a back lock mechanism. The ergonomic handle is composed of stainless steel plates, an intermediate layer of red fibre-glass and cleanly adapted handle scales. Handle scales made of grained bocote

wood. The decorative hardwood from South America is of a light brown colour with dark brown veins. Supplied with safety strap, rustproof, hardness 60 HRC. Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 185 mm  
110 g

**No. 708793**

D

**D OPINEL FOLDING KNIFE, OLIVE, NO. 8**

French classic: Blade made of rustproof Sandvik steel 12C27. It can be locked in place at lightning speed by turning a safety ring (Virobloc system). Olive wood handle. Blade length 85 mm  
Blade thickness 1.7 mm  
Overall length 195 mm  
50 g

**No. 708282**

E

**E MERCATOR® POCKET KNIFE, SHEET STEEL**

This folding knife is an icon of German knife design and has been produced almost unchanged since the era of Emperor Wilhelm II. Light and compact (only 7 mm thick) but almost indestructible, it is a reliable companion for all outdoor activities. The hand guard offers a high level of safety, even under the hardest use (e.g. carving). Handle with hanging loop. Carbon steel achieves ultimate sharpness and is easy to sharpen, the

blade must be regularly oiled. Blade length 85 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
75 g

**No. 709168**

Seit 1840 scharfe Qualität aus Solingen.

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



For further models see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



Seit 1840 scharfe Qualität aus Solingen.

### HIPPEKNIEP FOLDING KNIFE

The Hippekniep (Hippe = goat; Kniep = fold in) is a versatile, robust pocket knife. In the past it was used as a working knife in agriculture. Stable workmanship and selected handle woods give these slip joint knives their special charm. The blade is made of easy-to-sharpen, non-rustproof carbon steel C75, hardness 57 HRC.

#### **A SMALL**

Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 1.9 mm  
Overall length 165 mm  
55 g

#### **B LARGE**

Blade length 90 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
100 g



#### **1 Eisbuche®**

Eisbuche® is beech wood with an attractive grain refined by a special icing process. Brass blanks and rivets.

Small **No. 710040**  
Large **No. 710043**



#### **2 Plum**

In some places, plum wood has a very intensive reddish to violet-brown hue with a fine, even structure. Brass blanks and rivets.

Small **No. 710041**  
Large **No. 710044**

#### **3 Smoked Oak**

Smoked oak is oak wood, elegantly darkened by smoking. Stainless steel blanks and rivets.

Small **No. 710042**  
Large **No. 710045**

**A**



**1**

**B**



**1**



**2**



**3**



**MERCURY®**  
MANIAGO 1950

### **Mercury®**

Mercury, founded in 1950, has its headquarters in the well-known Italian »knife capital« Maniago. Originally, the company specialised in the complex production of multifunctional pocket knives. Meanwhile, the product range includes a large selection of folding knife models as well as hunting and outdoor knives with fixed blades.



**C**

### **C MERCURY® FOLDING KNIFE STAGHORN**

Rugged folding knife with staghorn handle scales and stainless steel bolsters. The rustproof Z50CD15 steel blade is locked by a back lock mechanism.

Hardness 57 HRC.  
Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 180 mm  
115 g  
**No. 708829**

### **D MERCURY® MULTITOOL STAGHORN**

Multi-purpose pocket knife with robust staghorn handle scales and stainless steel bolsters. In order to save some weight, the liners are made of »Anticorodal«, a light aluminium alloy.

Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 170 mm  
130 g  
**No. 708830**

The knife has the following functions:

- Blade made of rustproof 420 steel, hardness 55 HRC
- Saw
- Bottle opener with integrated slotted screwdriver
- Scissors
- Corkscrew
- Can opener
- Fork
- Piercing awl/reamer



**D**





## Maserin®

The Maserin head office is based in the Italian »knife making capital« Maniago, where authentic folding and hunting knives have been made since 1960. Together with renowned Italian knife makers and designers, new innovative models are being developed all the time. Combined with high-value handle materials, they create aesthetic utility knives of excellent quality.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



A

### A MASERIN® GOURMET FOLDING KNIFE, BOCOTE

Gourmet series pocket knives are ideal and stylish companions in everyday life. A reliable liner lock mechanism holds the rustproof blade made of AUS-8 steel firmly in place. The handle cheeks are mounted on stainless steel plates. A wood inlay seals the back of the handle, underscoring the knife's elegant look. This design was created in cooperation with Attilio Morotti, an Italian knife maker. Handle scales made of grained bocote wood. The decorative hardwood from South America is of a light brown colour with dark brown veins.

Comes with a leather pouch, hardness 58 HRC.

Blade length 100 mm  
Blade thickness 2.6 mm  
Overall length 220 mm  
85 g

**No. 709663**



► Further models available online.



B

### B MASERIN® FOLDING KNIFE SCOUT, OLIVE WOOD

Pocket knife in a classic shape made of modern materials. The stonewash-finished blade of rust-resistant D2 steel is characterised by an excellent edge-holding capacity and sharpness. Handle scales made of olive wood with honey-coloured grain. The wood has excellent material properties and has been appreciated for centuries because of its warm colour.



Handle with thong hole. Rust-resistant, hardness 60 HRC.  
Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 185 mm  
65 g

**No. 708837**



C

### C MASERIN® FOLDING KNIFE, OLIVE WOOD

This satin-finish blade of wear-resistant D2 steel is locked with a liner lock mechanism. The bolsters are made of structured G10. This high-quality fibreglass composite, which is manufactured using a special high-pressure process in combination with epoxy resin, is very hard and resistant. The belt clip is removable. Handle scales made of olive wood with honey-coloured grain. The wood has

excellent properties and has therefore been regarded as a valuable material for many centuries due to its warm colouring.

With thong hole, rust-resistant blade, hardness 60 HRC.

Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 195 mm  
90 g

**No. 709837**



D

### D MASERIN® »SESSANTESIMO« FOLDING KNIFE, CARBON

Maserin celebrates its 60th anniversary. The Sessantesimo slip joint folding knife series has been reissued in memory of the first models produced in the 1960s. These light, handy folding knives fit in every trouser pocket and are perfect for on-the-go. The knife consists of a main blade and a smaller saw cut blade made

of rustproof 420 steel. Anodised aluminium handle with carbon and gold-plated screws. Sturdy leather case with clip. Rustproof, hardness 56 HRC.

Blade length 60 mm  
Blade thickness 1.8 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
40 g

**No. 709847**



E

### E MASERIN® MUSHROOM KNIFE

The perfect companion for picking mushrooms:  
The rustproof steel blade is slightly curved to cut the mushrooms precisely, and it can be folded securely to store and transport it. The serrated back of the blade adds extra stability and can also be used to remove larger pieces of residue, e. g. soil. The brush with wild boar bristles helps you clean the mushrooms. The walnut wood handle is provided with a tape measure (5 cm scale) and a pair of tweezers is integrated into the handle. Chain with snaplink.

Rustproof 420 steel, hardness 56 HRC.  
Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 210 mm  
90 g

**No. 709503**

Tweezers - integrated into the handle





## Tecnocut

Like most great Italian knife manufacturers, the company Tecnocut is based in the »knife capital« of Maniago. It has been constantly developing and producing new knife models under the brand name Viper since it was founded in 1987.



For further models see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### A VIPER® FOLDING KNIFE SLIM, DOG

This small folding knife could almost be confused with a piece of jewellery. The handle is decorated with a dog, made of 825 silver. The pocket knife is locked with a frame lock mechanism. With belt clip. Blade of rustproof

Sandvik steel 12C27. Comes in box.  
Hardness 55-57 HRC.  
Blade length 50 mm  
Blade thickness 2 mm  
Overall length 120 mm  
45 g  
**No. 709922**

### B VIPER® FOLDING KNIFE RASOLINO, ZIRICOTE

Characteristic of this traditional Sicilian folding knife is the shape of the blade, which is based on a razor and gives the knife its name. It evolved in Sicily in the middle of the 18th century when it was forbidden to carry knives with pointed blades. Rustproof blade made of durable X50CrMoV15 steel\* (1.4116). The patented Action Stopper system is used as slip joint mechanism. The blade is stopped by two detent balls, but not locked. Limited edition of 1000 pieces. Supplied with leather bag. Rustproof, hardness 55-57 HRC.

\* Steel analysis: C = 0.5 / Si = 1 / Mn = 1 / Cr = 15 / Mo = 0.8 / V = 0.2 (in %)



Handle scales made of attractively figured zircote wood.  
Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 200 mm  
85 g  
**No. 709914**

### C VIPER® FOLDING KNIFE KEY, BRONZE CARBON

Modern, slim gentleman's pocket knife, designed by Jesper Voxnaes. The rounded blade spring is elaborately decorated by hand. Satin-finish blade made of powder-metallurgical Böhler M390 steel. The handle scales, made of bronze carbon fibres, are mounted on titanium plates and titanium jaws. To produce carbon, thousands of microscopic carbon fibres

are woven together and fused with epoxy resin. The result is an extremely durable material which, despite its low density, possesses considerable tensile and compressive strength. Comes in a leather sheath. Rustproof, hardness 61 HRC.

Blade length 80 mm  
Blade thickness 2.7 mm  
Overall length 185 mm  
65 g  
**No. 708817**



## Lionsteel®

Since 1969, Lionsteel - located in the Italian »knife capital« Maniago - has been primarily producing utility knives, pocket knives and hunting knives in classical clear shapes using exquisite handle materials.



### D LIONSTEEL® BESTMAN FOLDING KNIFE, EBONY

Equipped with two different blade shapes, this men's knife is fairly versatile. The clip-point blade has a classic pointed shape. A characteristic feature of the Wharncliffe blade shape is the straight cutting edge with the downward curving tip, which is particularly suitable for drawing cuts. Powder metallurgically produced Böhler M390 steel\* is used for the blades. The handle scales are made of elegant black ebony with titanium bolsters. Rustproof, hardness 61 HRC.



\* Steel analysis: C = 1.9 / Si = 0.7 / Mn = 0.3 / Cr = 20 / Mo = 1 / V = 4 / W = 0.6 (in %)  
Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 2.5 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
90 g  
**No. 709916**



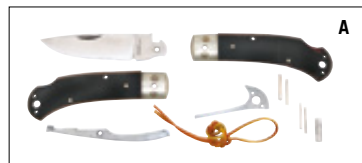
### E LIONSTEEL® FOLDING KNIFE OPERA, OLIVE

The product line »Opera« has been designed in cooperation with »Max Design«, a well-known Italian artisan. First class utility knife with back lock mechanism, olive wood handle. The handy knife has a hanging eyelet with twisted leather string. Delivery with leather belt pouch. Blade made of wear-resistant D2 steel

with a hardness of 59 HRC.  
Blade length 75 mm  
Blade thickness 2.8 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
75 g  
**No. 709320**



## Knife Making Kits



**A HIRO FOLDING KNIFE MAKING KIT**  
With this kit from the Japanese master blacksmith Hiro, and a bit of manual dexterity, you can build your own pocket knife. Blade of rustproof Hitachi GIN-1 steel, nickel silver fittings, handle scales of glue-laminated walnut wood. With detailed assembly instructions.

Blade length 70 mm  
Blade thickness 3 mm  
Overall length 175 mm  
105 g

No. 719517

For more kits see  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Polished handles



## Obsidian

**B OBSIDIAN KNIFE BY SUEMORI**  
Unique pieces:  
The Hokkaido-based knife maker Tokashi Suemori learned the archaic art of fracturing obsidian from the Ainu, an ancient tribe in the north of

Japan. We are occasionally able to offer examples of his work, with each piece having a unique form. The price lies between €280-490 depending on the size and form of the knife.

No. 716247

Price on request!

► For more information and obsidian products as well as tools for processing obsidian see [www.dictum.com/obsidian](http://www.dictum.com/obsidian)

## Brief Glossary of Steel Terms

### White Paper Steel (Shiro Gami)

Trade name for a highly pure carbon steel made by Hitachi (Japan), mainly used for making cutting tools. This steel is particularly hard and has an especially fine martensitic structure. This means you can grind it to exceptional sharpness, which retains for a long time. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 1.2 / Si = 0.2 / Mn = 0.2 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.004$

### Blue Paper Steel (Ao Gami)

Similar to White Paper Steel but alloyed with additional 0.4 % chromium and 1.5 % tungsten. This makes it somewhat tougher. Not rustproof.  
 $C = 1.2 / Si = 0.2 / Mn = 0.2 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.004 / Cr = 0.4 / W = 1.5$

### VG 10

Rustproof high-class blade steel, made by Takefu (Japan). Extremely tough and durable due to high content of cobalt.  
 $C = 1 / Si = 0.6 / Mn = 0.5 / P < 0.03 / S < 0.03 / Co = 1.5 / Cr = 15 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.2$

### D2

Extremely sharp and wear-resistant. It has a chromium content of 12 % and is therefore rust-resistant.  
 $C = 1.5 / Si = 0.6 / Mn = 0.6 / P < 0.03 / S < 0.03 / Cr = 12 / Mo = 0.8 / V = 0.9$

### Böhler N690

Rustproof steel with cobalt, molybdenum and vanadium. Finely structured, tough and wear-resistant steel.  
 $C = 1.05 / Si = 0.4 / Mn = 0.4 / Co = 1.5 / Cr = 17 / Mo = 0.5$

### VG 1

Rustproof steel, made by Takefu (Japan). Enhanced toughness due to its nickel content.  
 $C = 0.95 - 1.05 / Si < 0.5 / Mn < 0.5 / P < 0.03 / S < 0.03 / Cr = 13 - 15 / Mo = 0.2 - 0.4 / Ni < 0.25 / Cu < 0.25$

### SLD

Japanese steel made by Hitachi which guarantees excellent sharpness and wear-resistance due to its high carbon content. It has a chrome content of 12 % and is therefore rust-resistant.  
 $C = 1.5 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 0.4 / Cr = 12 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.35$

### Sandvik 12C27

Rustproof blade steel made in Sweden. The company Sandvik has been continuously improving this steel over a period of 45 years which evolved the 12C27 steel into the high performing steel grade it is today. It is very popular for making hunting and folding knives.  
 $C = 0.6 / Si = 0.4 / Mn = 0.4 / P = 0.03 / S = 0.01 / Cr = 13.5 / Mo = 3 / V = 2$

### Sandvik 19C27

Swedish blade steel made by the company Sandvik. A rustproof steel with a high content of carbon, very good wear-resistance.  
 $C = 0.95 / Si = 0.4 / Mn = 0.65 / P = 0.025 / S = 0.01 / Cr = 13.5$

### CPM S35VN

A powder-metallurgically manufactured premium knife steel. The steel has an excellent combination of wear and corrosion resistance.  
 $C = 1.4 / Cr = 14 / Mo = 2 / V = 3 / Nb = 0.5$

### ATS34

A very pure, rustproof steel made in Japan that displays a very fine crystalline structure due to its high molybdenum content.  
 $C = 1 / Si = 0.35 / Mn = 0.4 / P = 0.03 / S = 0.02 / Cr = 14 / Mo = 4$

### C75

Spring steel with high carbon content, easy to re-sharpen.  
 $C = 0.75 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 0.7$

### Damasteel® DS93X™

Rustproof, powder-metallurgically manufactured Damascus steel, composed of RWL34 (»light-coloured«) and PMC27 (»dark-coloured«).  
 $RWL34: C = 1.05 / Si = 0.5 / Mn = 0.5 / P = 0.05 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 14 / Mo = 4 / V = 0.2$   
 $PMC27: C = 0.6 / Si = 0.5 / Mn = 0.5 / Co = 13.5$

### Damasteel® RWL34™

Rustproof, powder-metallurgically manufactured steel made by Swedish steel manufacturer Damasteel, based on the well-known knife steel ATS34. The powder-metallurgical manufacturing process, allows for a precise chemical composition.  
 $C = 1.05 / Si = 0.5 / Mn = 0.5 / P = 0.05 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 14 / Mo = 4 / V = 0.2$

### 440 Steel

A description for rustproof steels which are often used in the knife making industry and which are separated in three categories. The steels 440A, 440B (1.4112) and 440C (1.4125) differ by their carbon content.

440A:  
 $C = 0.7 / Si = 1 / Mn = 1 / P = 0.04 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 17 / Mo = 0.75$

440B:  
 $C = 0.85 / Si = 1 / Mn = 1 / P = 0.04 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 17 / Mo = 0.75$

440C:  
 $C = 1 / Si = 1 / Mn = 1 / P = 0.04 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 17 / Mo = 0.75$

### AUS Steel

The Japanese, rustproof steels AUS-6 and AUS-8 are comparable to the European 440 steels concerning their characteristics. These steels are mainly differing by their carbon content.

AUS-6:  
 $C = 0.6 / Si = 1 / Mn = 1 / P = 0.04 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 14 / V = 0.2 / Ni = 0.49$

AUS-8:  
 $C = 0.7 / Si = 1 / Mn = 0.5 / P = 0.04 / S = 0.03 / Cr = 14 / Mo = 0.2 / V = 0.2 / Ni = 0.49$

### GIN 1

Rustproof blade steel made by Hitachi (Japan). Particularly corrosion- and wear-resistant due to its high chromium content.  
 $C = 0.9 / Si = 0.35 / Mn = 0.6 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.03 / Cr = 15.5 / Mo = 0.3$

### SG-2

Rustproof heavy-duty steel, made using a powder-metallurgical process. Specially developed for kitchen knives.  
 $C = 1.3 / P < 0.02 / S < 0.02 / Cr = 15 / Mo = 3 / V = 2$

### PM Steel

Sintering allows metals which normally cannot be alloyed or welded together to be combined. The components are mixed in powdered form and then hot isostatically pressed in a process known as Powder Metallurgy (PM). These rustproof steels even outreach low alloyed steels in terms of hardness. However, they cannot be ground as fine as low alloyed carbon steels (e.g. White Paper Steel).

### Suminagashi

Traditional Japanese Damascus steel. Japanese Damascus steels are mostly offered as multi-layered steels with core layers of White or Blue Paper Steel or VG 10 steel.

All alloy constituents are stated in percent (%).

C	Carbon	Mo	Molybdenum
Si	Silicon	V	Vanadium
Mn	Manganese	W	Tungsten
P	Phosphorus	Ni	Nickel
S	Sulfur	Cu	Copper
Co	Cobalt	Nb	Niobium
Cr	Chromium		

## WORKSHOP

### DAMASCUS BLADE FROM JAPANESE STEEL

**Content:** Apart from forging the Damascus bar, grinding, hardening, and annealing the blade will also be taught in this course. In the end we will make a handle from precious wood and fit it onto the knife.

► For workshop dates see [www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



► For blades and blade blanks see chapter »Materials«.



# Razors and scissors

Light and convenient!

Razors and Accessories | 421

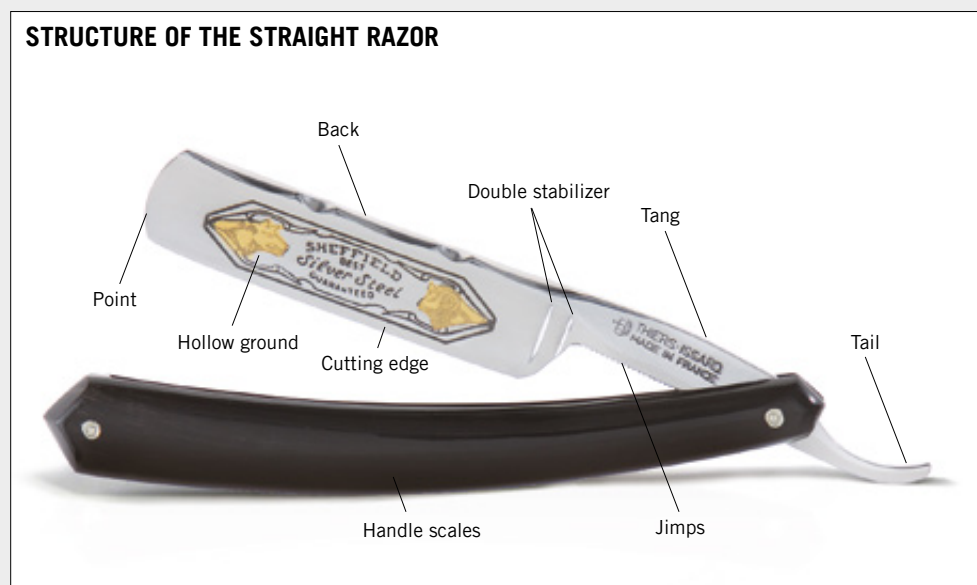
Scissors | 424



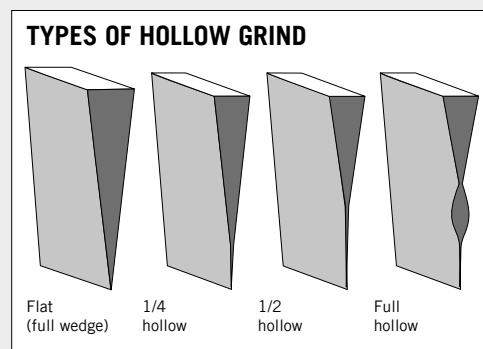


## THE FINE ART OF WET SHAVING

## STRUCTURE OF THE STRAIGHT RAZOR



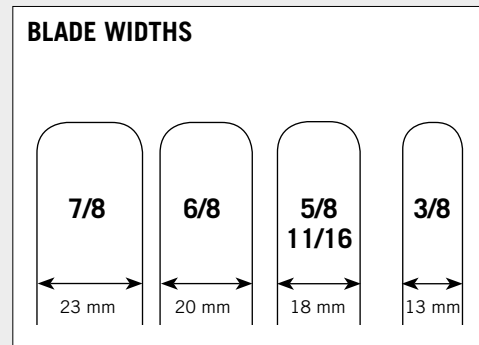
## TYPES OF HOLLOW GRIND



The first straight razor blades were wedge-shaped, rather like kitchen knives. This is called a flat grind. Over time, the idea of a blade with a hollow grind arose. This hollow grind makes the blade easier to hone and allows an extremely fine cutting edge. The thinner the cutting edge, the better the shave, as the blade edge can better follow the skin contours. This is how full hollow, 1/2 hollow and 1/4 hollow grind were developed. The full hollow grind is probably the most elaborate and therefore also the most expensive blade type. As you can see in the picture above, the blades actually have two hollows, and a thin »ridge« is formed between them along the middle of the blade. In the picture, this ridge shown is oversized, but it can also be identified on the razor itself by a different reflection of the blade. The ridge increases stability and allows an even finer cutting edge. When perfectly ground, a razor is referred to as a »singing razor«.

You can check a full hollow grind using the »nail test«: When pressed on the thumbnail, the cutting edge will yield already to light pressure and then spring back fully. This means that the blade is very thin and highly elastic at the front and can thus easily follow the skin contours. A blade with a 1/2 or 1/4 hollow grind is slightly less flexible when shaving than a full hollow. A blade that is not full hollow-ground offers a better control when shaving, which is an advantage that makes it suitable for beginners.

## BLADE WIDTHS



Blade widths are traditionally specified in inches. A 3/8 inch razor is a smallish razor, which is used, for example, by barbers to shave the neck or for parts of the body that are not too round. In principle, the size of the razor should suit the size of the hand and the face. The 5/8 inch or 6/8 inch widths are the most common sizes for beard shaving and are ideal for chin and cheeks.

## SHARPENING AND POLISHING

**For a razor already in regular use:**

Before shaving, we recommend using either a strop coated with Thiers-Issard finishing paste, followed by an unpasted strop or, from the very beginning, an unpasted strop alone.

**For an out-of-the-box razor, not yet shave-ready:**

For beginners, the Thiers-Issard aluminium oxide-based sharpening paste is sufficient to make a blade fit for shaving. After applying the paste, strop the blade without paste. For professionals, we recommend to proceed in the following order: bio-diamond sharpening pastes 6 micron, 3 micron, 1 micron, 0.25 micron, chromium oxide paste and finally an unpasted strop. In addition, for regular razor care once every two or three weeks, apply in the following sequence: bio-diamond paste 1 micron, bio-diamond paste 0.25 micron, chromium oxide paste and finally an unpasted strop.

**For a blade that needs to be restored:**

A blade that needs to be restored should always be honed on a honing stone first. For this purpose, we recommend our Shapton stones. The ceramic bond makes the stones harder than waterstones and ideal for the fine grinding of razors due to their highest available grit sizes up to 30 000. For many, this will be sharp enough, but others will want to polish the blade further with finishing pastes. After honing with the stone to restore the correct edge geometry, we recommend to subsequently use bio-diamond compounds with following grades: 6 micron, 3 micron, 1 micron and 0.25 micron. The further step is honing the surface with chromium oxide finishing paste and then stropping the razor on unpasted leather.

**Sharpening pass**

Two free sharpenings (see page 4).

**Sharpening service**

Free lifetime sharpening for Premium products (see page 4).

## Razors and Accessories



### Razors by Thiers-Issard

Since 1884, traditional French company Thiers-Issard in Auvergne has been making exquisite razors for wet shaving. The blades are made almost exclusively from Carbonsong C135 steel\* with an extremely high carbon content of 1.35 %. Due to this high carbon content and the extreme hardness of 64 HRC, they can be ground to a very thin edge, thus providing the necessary

**Care instructions:** After shaving, clean the knife with pure water and dry thoroughly. If the razor is not used over a long period of time, it should be slightly oiled (e.g. Camellia Oil, No. 705280).

sharpness for a comfortable shave. For a better grip, the underside of the tang is serrated on all razors. Leather pouch included.

*\* Carbon steel is far superior to rustproof steel as far as sharpness is concerned. The supposed disadvantage of rust susceptibility is offset by following the care instructions.*



**A »LE DANDY« RAZORS**  
Handle scales made of high-grade black plastic, blade engraved with »Le Dandy«. Blade with round head and full hollow, polished to a satin finish.

Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 245 mm  
Blade width  
5/8" No. 709014  
6/8" No. 709309



**B RAZOR WITH ENGRAVING 5/8", STAMINA WOOD**  
The blade is etched with the black »wolf and ram« logo. Blade with round head and full hollow. The red stamina wood handle is extremely resistant to moisture.

Satin polished blade.  
Blade width 5/8"  
Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
No. 709314



**C RAZOR WITH GOLD ENGRAVING 5/8", BOXWOOD**

A collector's piece:  
The blade is etched with the black »wolf and ram« logo and is additionally decorated by hand with 24 carat gold leaf. Blade with round head, full hollow polished to a mirror finish. The boxwood handle has a relief-like structure with a floral design.

Blade width 5/8"  
Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 250 mm  
No. 709191

For a 7-piece wet-shaving set No. 709113 see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



**D RAZOR WITH GOLD ENGRAVING 6/8", DARK HORN**  
The blade is etched with the black »wolf and ram« logo and is additionally decorated by hand with 24 carat gold leaf. Blade with round head, full hollow polished to a mirror finish. These historical blades were forged at the beginning of

the 19th century using the best Sheffield cast steel. The back of the blade is decoratively hand-filed, handle made of dark Norman cow horn.  
Blade width 6/8"  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 240 mm  
No. 709122

### Rasoir Sabre

The blades are made of non-rustproof carbon steel because it can be ground very finely and is extraordinary sharp. The supposed disadvantage of rust susceptibility is offset by following the care instructions. Up to 80 individual work steps are required to produce the handmade blades. Finally, the blade is honed on Belgian sharpening stones and leather strops. Comes with handmade case of vegetable-tanned cowhide.

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening



**E RAZOR 5/8", OLIVE WOOD**  
Distinctively grained olive wood handle scales. The wood has excellent material properties and has been appreciated for centuries because of its warm colour. Blade polished to a satin finish with round head made of Solingen carbon steel 115CrV3 (C 1.15 %), full

hollow. The underside of the tang is serrated and ensures a good grip. Hardness 61-62 HRC.  
Blade width 5/8"  
Blade length 70 mm  
Overall length 245 mm  
No. 709721

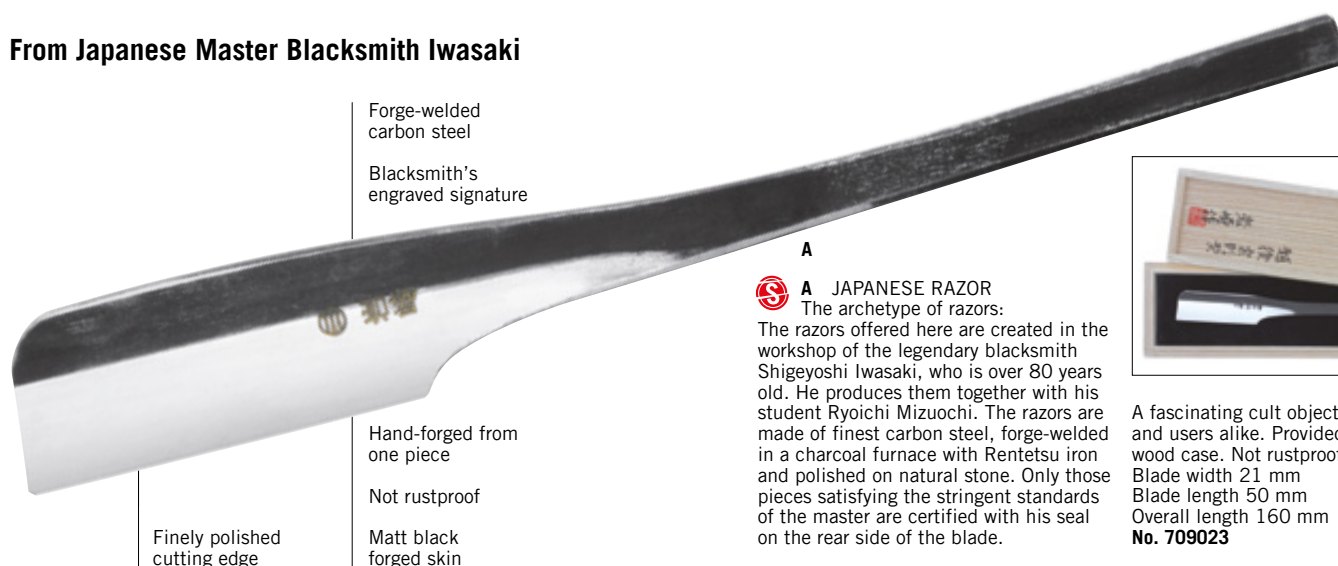


**F RAZOR 6/8", BUFFALO HORN**  
Dark buffalo horn handle scales. Blade polished to a satin finish with round head made of French carbon steel 100c6 (C 1 %), full hollow. With decorative grooves on the back of the blade.

Hardness 59-60 HRC.  
Blade width 6/8"  
Blade length 75 mm  
Overall length 255 mm  
No. 709720



## From Japanese Master Blacksmith Iwasaki



Forge-welded  
carbon steel

Blacksmith's  
engraved signature

A

**A JAPANESE RAZOR**

The archetype of razors:

The razors offered here are created in the workshop of the legendary blacksmith Shigeyoshi Iwasaki, who is over 80 years old. He produces them together with his student Ryoichi Mizuochi. The razors are made of finest carbon steel, forge-welded in a charcoal furnace with Rentetsu iron and polished on natural stone. Only those pieces satisfying the stringent standards of the master are certified with his seal on the rear side of the blade.



A fascinating cult object for collectors and users alike. Provided in a lovely kiri wood case. Not rustproof.

Blade width 21 mm  
Blade length 50 mm  
Overall length 160 mm  
**No. 709023**

**Mühle**

Pure shaving culture from the Ore Mountains: High-quality shavers, fine brushes and elegant wet shaving accessories have been produced in a small town called Stützengrün, located in the Ore Mountains, Germany, since 1945. Mühle combines traditional craftsmanship with trend-setting designs, resulting in beautiful and durable products.



B

**B MÜHLE SAFETY RAZOR ROCCA**  
The traditional 3-piece safety razor with exchangeable blade is considered by many people to be the first mechanical »shaver« for self-shaving. This model has a closed comb, adapts smoothly to the contours of the face and is therefore easy to use, even for inexperienced shavers. The surface of the razor head is satin-finished. The birch bark handle is naturally anti-fungal and anti-bacterial, water-repellent, highly moisture-resistant and slip-proof even when wet.  
Overall length 105 mm  
75 g  
**No. 709694**



C

**C MÜHLE SHAVING BRUSH ROCCA**  
For the shaving brush that is made by hand, only the best carefully selected badger hair is used. Among connoisseurs, the crowning point is the silver-tipped badger hair. The valuable natural material is particularly smooth and flexible. Thanks to the conical end of the shaft of the individual hairs, the brush is able to take up large quantities of shaving cream and direct it towards the tips. A further quality feature is the black band that runs through the predominantly silvery gleaming. The brush head is equipped with a fine screw thread and therefore easy to replace. The birch bark handle is naturally anti-fungal and anti-bacterial, water-repellent, highly moisture-resistant and slip-proof, even when wet.  
Ring diameter 21 mm  
Overall length 105 mm  
130 g  
**No. 709693**

**D MÜHLE SHAVING BRUSH VIVO**

Fine badger hair is the most solid quality among the natural hair grades, the single hair is a little bit stronger, but still soft. Its relatively dark colour is a characteristic of this material. As a contrast to the elegant chrome fitting, the high-quality synthetic resin\* handles show to their fullest advantage. Chrome is a corrosion-resistant and durable material with an elegant shimmer.

\* High-quality resin based on pigmented polyester is turned from solid, round rods and polished in multiple cycles in order to create an additional surface sealing and giving it a special shimmer. Handles made from this material are extremely durable and possess outstanding haptic properties.  
Ring diameter 21 mm  
Overall length 100 mm  
110 g

**No. 709636**



D



E

**E MÜHLE SAFETY RAZOR TWIST**

Traditional safety razor with precision mechanics: The cap of the razor can be released with a simple twist of the small wheel at the end of the handle while the closed comb remains firmly attached to the handle. Used blades can then be removed safely and replaced with new ones. The model has a protected comb with smooth edges and is therefore also ideal for less experienced users. The chrome surface is corrosion-resistant, particularly durable and has an elegant shimmer, the handle fascinates with its smoothly chiselled surface. One blade included.

Overall length 105 mm  
85 g  
**No. 709638**

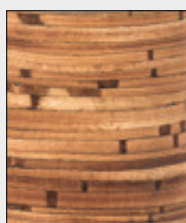


F

**F RAZOR BLADES, 10-PIECE SET**  
Ten Mühle razor blades, fit safety razors.  
**No. 709692**

**Birch bark**

Each product made of birch bark is unique. Made from numerous individual layers of birch bark, this is a vivid material whose colour, growth pattern and texture vary greatly. A patented manufacturing process tailored to the material characteristics of birch bark allows high stability at a low weight. Compared to other natural materials, birch bark keeps its shape extremely well, especially when exposed to moisture.



Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

**WORKSHOP**

CLASSIC

**WETSHAVING WITH A STRAIGHT RAZOR**

**Content:** Practice in handling the straight razor, the perfect shave with the blade, sharpening of the straight razor with Japanese waterstones, stropping it on the leather, caring for your straight razor, and background information about wetshaving.

► For workshop dates see  
[www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)



**A KLAR SHAVING SOAPS**

The shaving soaps are made from vegetable ingredients only and are gentle on the skin. Fine perfume oils from Grasse in France give them a sensual aroma. The thick, creamy lather is highly effective and lets the razor blade glide gently over the skin, protecting and nourishing sensitive men's skin during shaving. The resealable aluminium container is also ideal for on-the-go.  
110 g

*Classic*  
Aromatic lemon scent with a hint of leather.  
**No. 709304**

*Sandalwood*  
With a tart sandalwood note.  
**No. 709305**

*Lemongrass*  
With a fresh lemongrass note.  
**No. 709730**



**B SHAVING SOAP DISH WITH LID**  
Stainless steel shaving soap dish with high-gloss polished finish. The lid is not air sealed allowing the soap to dehumidify and it is also protected from dust and dirt. The easy-to-clean dish is only 85 g, Ø 90 mm. It accommodates our shaving soaps by Thiers-Issard and Mühle.  
**No. 709197**



**C MÜHLE STYPTIC PENCIL**  
Relaxes the skin after a shave, with an astringent effect. Apply to damp skin. Practical when travelling, as the detachable handle is also a transport case.  
9.5 g  
**No. 709688**

**D THIERS-ISSARD SHARPENING PASTE**

The paste for regular, effortless use: Thanks to its aluminium oxide abrasive, which is less aggressive than diamond, the Thiers-Issard sharpening paste is ideal for delaying the more complex basic sharpening (approx. every 2-3 weeks) a little longer. The paste is used to retain the sharpness for longer and can regularly be applied before each third or fourth shave. Rub a thin layer of paste into the cotton side of a hanging strop or the second leather side of the strop. First »sharpen« on the paste side and then finish on the leather side without paste.  
10 g

**No. 709019**



For Jende strop blocks and poly emulsions see chapter »Sharpening Devices«

**E CHROMIUM OXIDE FINISHING PASTE**

After sharpening with extra-fine diamond grits, e.g. 0.25, this finishing paste is used to take the »bite« out of a too aggressive blade, thus avoiding possible irritation and/or razor-burn. Applied on the fine leather side of an additional strop, this paste will give you the smoothest edge you have ever experienced.  
Oil-based carrier.  
50 g

**No. 709124**

Please refer to the tips on sharpening razors in the attached user instructions.



► Sharpening set for razors available online.

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**F PADDLE STROP, WIDE**

French strop with different leather sides, attached to a beech paddle with wood ribs. These allow the strop to adjust to the blade, similar to a hanging strop. Sharpening paste can be applied on both sides; the brown leather is suitable for

daily stropping.  
Length 410 mm  
Width 75 mm  
Height 20 mm  
Leather surface 250 x 75 mm  
**No. 709024**

**G HANGING STROP**

Hanging strops are used to straighten up razor edges, since they adjust to the rounding of the blade. The supplied hook is mounted on the wall and the strop is hung on it with the attached snap hook. The swivel also allows quick switching of the two sides. The sanded top of our strops is made of high-quality vegetable-tanned cowhide (thickness 3 mm), which is exceptionally soft. If required, the rear, cotton side of the strop can be used with sharpening pastes, and thus serves as a substitute for sharpening on a fine honing stone.

**1 Width 80 mm**

With its 80 mm width, this strop is ideal for beginners, since they can draw the razor at a right angle along the whole width. Length 695 mm, usable length 390 mm.  
**No. 709139**

**2 Width 40 mm**

A 40 mm wide strop requires a more precise stropping technique than a wider one. The great advantage of a narrow strop is that the leather hardly bends along the narrow width. This ensures exquisite sharpness. Length 695 mm, usable length 390 mm.  
**No. 709138**

**Strop**

During shaving, the ultra-fine edge of the razor bends when it meets a beard hair. This burr that forms on the razor blade partially straightens up with time (min. 24 hours), but stropping removes it completely. The razor strop works like a burnisher with a conventional blade that is not sharpened but cuts only with the fine raised burr.

**Hanging strop/paddle strop with ribs**

Basically, hanging strops and paddle strops require the blade to be managed in the same way. The type of strop is more a matter of taste. The fine ribs in the wood of the paddle strop create an elasticity that feels similar to stropping on a hanging strop. Both types are available in two widths. On the narrow version, the razor must be handled differently than on the wide version. On the narrow strop, you must draw the blade in the form of an elongated X, which seems more difficult for beginners. Professionals, however, can strop individual parts of the cutting edge with much more control on a narrow strop. The narrow width also reduces bending in the transverse direction. On a wide strop, you can draw the blade in parallel to the edge of the strop, which is much easier to learn for a beginner.

**H HANGING STROP STARTER-SET****Price advantage**

This set consists of an 80 mm wide hanging strop that is ideal for beginners because the blade is easier to manage, a cream for leather care and a Thiers-Issard sharpening paste for refining the edge on the cotton side between sharpenings.  
695 x 80 x 3 mm.  
**No. 709137**

## Scissors



## Japanese Scissors (Nigiri)

Japanese Nigiri are the most ancient form of scissors. Forged from a single piece of steel, they are exceptionally light and comfortable to hold. Pressure from the thumb and forefinger produces well-controlled cuts; the spring action of the thinly forged handle causes the blades to reopen automatically. Nigiri are suitable for all precise work with paper and fabric, opening seams, and pruning houseplants.

**A NIGIRI BASAMI**

Exclusive Nigiri for daily use: This pair of elegant Nigiri scissors is hand-forged from one single piece of double-layered steel. The epoxy-resin coating is applied following a special procedure and then fused, until it becomes hard. This makes the scissors a timeless design tool for everyday use. Cutting layer made of Blue Paper Steel. Hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof. Comes with a kiri wood case.

Overall length 105 mm

Blade length 35 mm

20 g

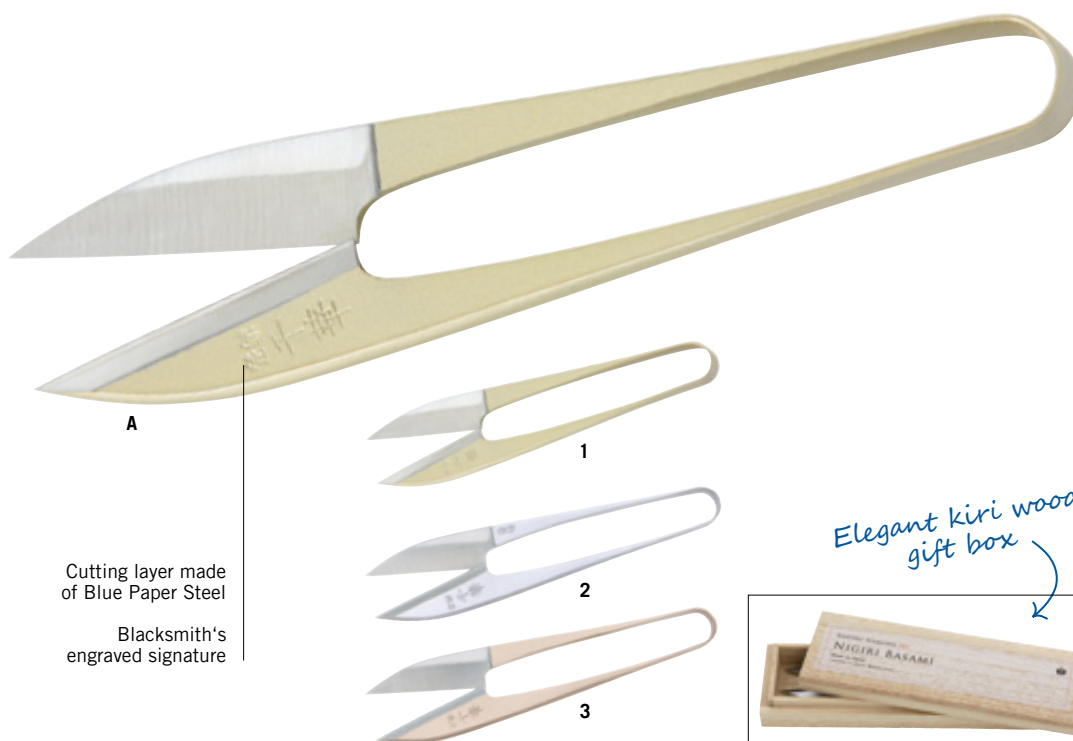
1 gold No. 718320

2 silver No. 718321

3 copper No. 718322

Cutting layer made of Blue Paper Steel

Blacksmith's engraved signature



Elegant kiri wood gift box



**B**

**B NAGA-HA NIGIRI, HAND-FORGED**

Hand-forged, double-layered steel blade, black gunmetal finish, finely ground edge. Core layer White Paper Steel, not rustproof.

*Large*

Overall length 120 mm

Blade length 55 mm

25 g

No. 718106

*Small*

Overall length 105 mm

Blade length 35 mm

20 g

No. 718329

**C MISUZU NIGIRI**

Silk cord wrapped handle, solid blade of SK5 carbon steel, not rustproof.

Overall length 105 mm

Blade length 35 mm

20 g

No. 718312



**C**



**D**

**D SISHU NIGIRI, HAND-FORGED**

Hand-forged, double-layered steel blade, extra finely ground edge, very sharp. Core layer White Paper Steel, not rustproof.

*Large*

Overall length 105 mm

Blade length 45 mm

20 g

No. 718105

*Small*

Overall length 105 mm

Blade length 35 mm

20 g

No. 718107

**E MINI NIGIRI HASAMI**

Gunmetal-finished blade made of SK5 carbon steel, not rustproof.

Overall length 75 mm

Blade length 25 mm

10 g

No. 718324



**E**

## How Japanese Nigiri scissors are made



Soft iron is hammer-welded to a layer of hard carbon steel. The scissors are then hammered into shape.

Vide

see  
www.dictum.com

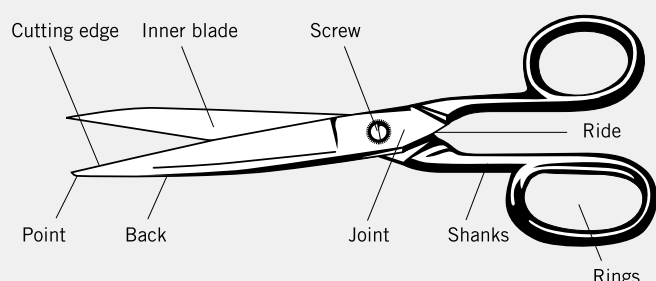




## Japanese Tailor's Scissors

Hand-crafted tailor's scissors for soft, effortless cuts. Carefully forged blades, hand-sharpened facets and the fine adjustment during assembly make these scissors the perfect implement for the sophisticated tailor, while promising an exceptionally long service life. The ergonomically fashioned eye rings have an excellent feel and enable precise work. The cutting action is adjustable and the scissors can be taken apart for re-sharpening. Crafted by one of Japan's leading scissors manufacturers.

### Structure of Scissors



**A TAILOR'S SCISSORS**  
Tailor's scissors made of SK5 carbon steel (C 0.85 %), chromed to protect against rust. Black painted handles. Hardness 59 HRC.

Blade length	Overall length	Weight	
110 mm	240 mm	245 g	<b>No. 718361</b>
115 mm	260 mm	270 g	<b>No. 718362</b>



**B PROFESSIONAL TAILOR'S SCISSORS**  
Professional tailor's scissors with a double-layered blade. Crafted from White Paper Steel, the high purity and high carbon content (1.2 %) of the cutting edge guarantee superb sharpness and durability. The edge layer is not rustproof; chromed to protect against rust, brass screw. Hardness 60 HRC, not rustproof.

Blade length	Overall length	Weight	
100 mm	240 mm	230 g	<b>No. 718823</b>
110 mm	260 mm	250 g	<b>No. 718824</b>



**C EXPERT TAILOR'S SCISSORS**  
Premium class, finely adjusted tailor's scissors, crafted by the master smith from corrosion-resistant SLD steel\* by Hitachi with a high carbon content to guarantee exceptional sharpness and durability. Outer layer made of rustproof steel; brass screw. Hardness 58 HRC.

* Steel analysis: C = 1.5 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 0.4 / Cr = 12 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.35 (in %)			
Blade length	Overall length	Weight	
100 mm	240 mm	215 g	<b>No. 718365</b>
115 mm	260 mm	255 g	<b>No. 718366</b>



**D DELUXE TAILOR'S SCISSORS**  
Premium class, exquisitely balanced tailor's scissors crafted by a master smith with perfectly smooth action to enable highly precise cuts. The handles are painted in silver and have an excellent feel in the hand. The blades are manufactured from corrosion-resistant SLD steel\* by Hitachi with a high carbon content to guarantee exceptional sharpness and durability, while the outer layer is made of rustproof steel. Stainless steel screw. Hardness 58 HRC.

* Steel analysis: C = 1.5 / Si = 0.25 / Mn = 0.4 / Cr = 12 / Mo = 1 / V = 0.35 (in %)			
Blade length	Overall length	Weight	
110 mm	240 mm	235 g	<b>No. 718369</b>
120 mm	260 mm	245 g	<b>No. 718370</b>



**E PINKING SHEARS**  
Pinking shears are used to produce the seam at the edge of fabrics to prevent the material from fraying during work. They can also be used to produce decorative effects and ornamentation. Blades of

rustproof steel (1.4028), teeth spacing 5 mm. Hardness 47 HRC.  
Overall length 220 mm  
Blade length 80 mm  
135 g  
**No. 718328**



**F THREAD TRIMMER**  
Small thread trimmer with slightly curved blades. Lies firmly in the hand thanks to rubberised finger rests. Hardness 52 HRC, rustproof.  
Overall length 90 mm  
Blade length 20 mm  
15 g  
**No. 718372**

**Inclusive free sharpening pass. For more information see page 4.**



Two free sharpenings



Lifetime sharpening

## All-purpose Scissors

## Campi Scissors

New edition of the famous Campi scissors from the 1950s. Due to their timeless and elegant design, the scissors have received many awards and have been on display at the Museum of Modern Art (New York) among others. The forged scissors are made of stainless 3Cr13 steel\*, polished to a high gloss and precisely ground by hand. A smooth shearing action ensures precise cutting. The round eye rings are ergonomically shaped and comfortable to hold even after extended cutting.

\* Steel analysis: C = 0.35 / Mn = 1 / Cr = 13 / Ni = 0.6 (in %)

## A CAMPI PAPER SCISSORS

Extra-long blades ideal for cutting paper, foil or thin cardboard.

Overall length 255 mm

Blade length 140 mm

90 g

No. 708215

## B CAMPI ALL-PURPOSE SCISSORS

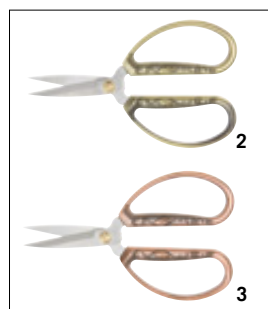
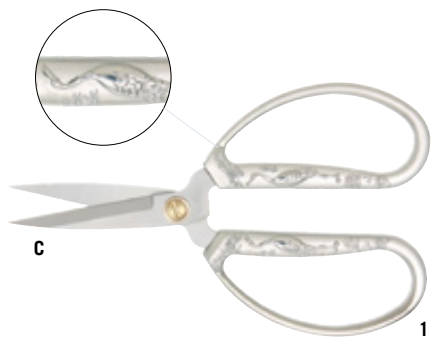
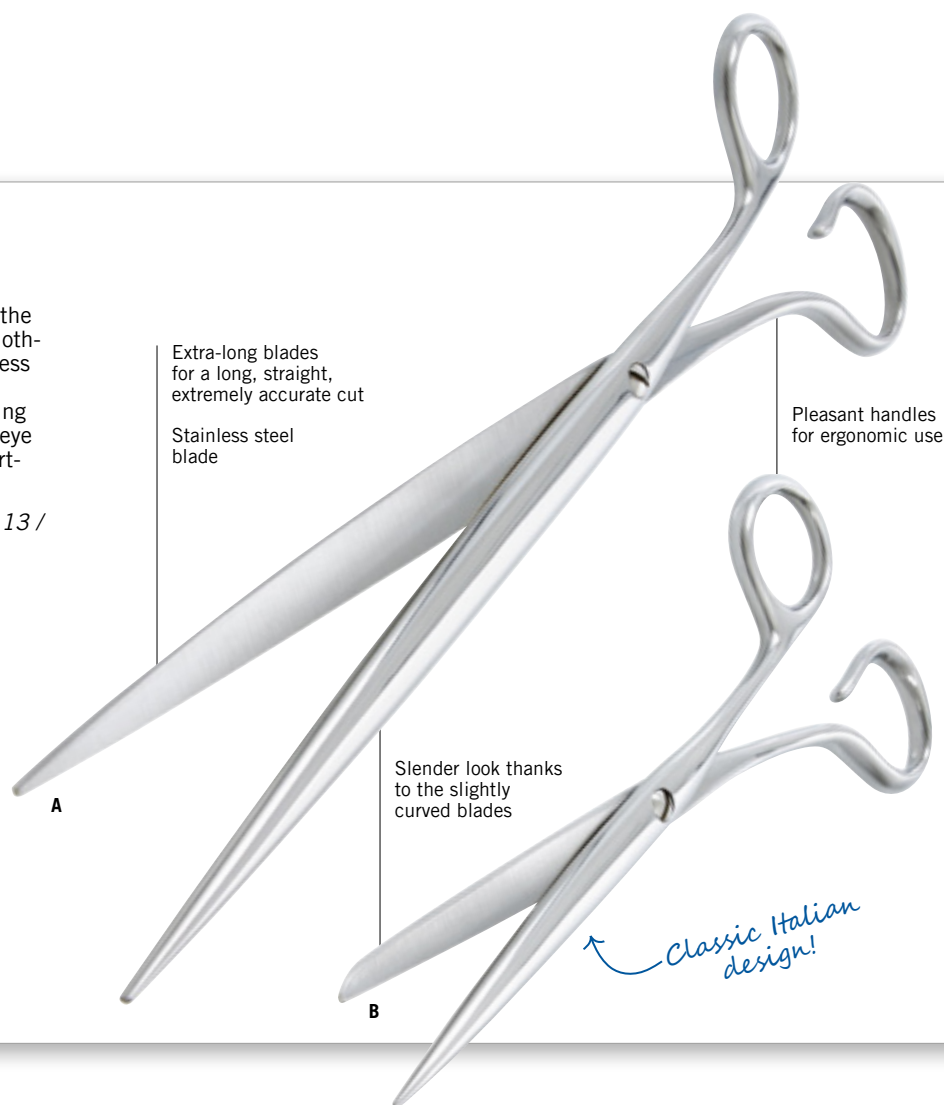
Handy all-purpose scissors with rounded tip for multi-purpose use at home, such as cutting paper, cardboard, twists, tapes, handicraft materials and packaging.

Overall length 185 mm

Blade length 80 mm

70 g

No. 708216



## C TRADITIONAL CHINESE SCISSORS

Universal stainless steel scissors. The handles are decorated with cranes, which in China symbolise wisdom and a long life. The brass screw allows you to adjust the smoothness and disassemble the

scissors for sharpening.

Overall length 135 mm

Blade length 45 mm

75 g

1 silver No. 708209

2 bronze No. 708210

3 copper No. 708211



## D TRADITIONAL JAPANESE HOUSEHOLD SCISSORS

Wonderfully lightweight and with high-precision cutting, these hand-forged scissors are outstanding in both form and function. Non-rustproof, double-layered

steel (White Paper Steel/iron).

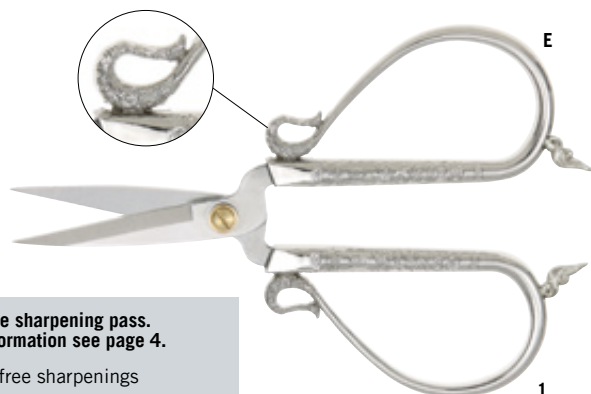
Adjustable cutting action.

Overall length 185 mm

Blade length 70 mm

80 g

No. 718147



## E ALL-PURPOSE SCISSORS WITH TRADITIONAL CHINESE DECORATION

Traditional universal Chinese scissors of stainless steel with beautifully decorated handles. The brass screw allows you to adjust the smoothness and disassemble the scissors for sharpening.

1 Large

Overall length 155 mm

Blade length 50 mm

85 g

No. 708212

2 Small

Overall length 120 mm

Blade length 35 mm

45 g

No. 708213

2-Piece Set **Price advantage**

No. 708214

Inclusive free sharpening pass.  
For more information see page 4.

Two free sharpenings

# Books

An indispensable guide  
along your path of learning!

Wood Identification, Storing, Sawmilling | 428

Sculpting, Carving | 428

Furniture Making, General Woodworking | 428

Carpentry, Architecture | 431

Tools | 431

Boat building | 432

Finishing | 432

Bow Making | 432

Woodturning | 432

Sharpening | 432

Forging, Knife Making | 433

Leather | 433

Garden, Nature | 433

DVDs | 433



The deeper you explore a specific subject, the more fascinating it becomes. Books, DVDs as well as workshops offer an indispensable guide along your path of learning and discovering new insights. Our range of books mainly deals with tools, techniques and traditions of working wood by hand, metal work and gardening. The selection process is simple - all books we propose have been previously read and selected by our experts for the quality of their content.

## Wood Identification, Storing, Sawmilling

### HOLZWUNDER

Erwin Thoma:

Did you know that the active ingredients in wood can be used by each and every one of us as protection against lifestyle diseases, and that ants' architectural designs provided the model for passive houses without insulating material, heating, ventilation, air-conditioning, or refrigeration? Or why forest woodpeckers are paving the way towards the energy of the future? Nature is full of surprise, and is at the same time the best teacher. This book combines rediscovered knowledge with the latest scientific findings and model applications.

237 pages, hardcover, with many colour photographs and lunar wood calendar, 155 x 220 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713042**



### HOLZMERKMALE DER BÄUME

Christoph Richter:

This book teaches you how to determine the inner composition of trees from their external form and identify the causes of specific characteristics of wood - essential knowledge for foresters, wood engineers and wood buyers. But it will also help the woodworking professionals such as turners and cabinet-makers to select the right wood and find unusual grains. The book explains wood characteristics, imperfections and shake by comparing photos, and discusses how they arise and how to avoid them. The photos show, for example, the bark structure or shape of the tree and the grains or imperfections that might occur inside the cut product. 223 pages, hardcover, numerous colour photographs and illustrations, 300 x 215 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713453**



### HOLZ TROCKNEN UND LAGERN

Alan Holtham:

A comprehensive book for all crafts that involve seasoning wood. Author Alan Holtham, who studied forestry and wood science, gives an insight into the correct storage and drying of wood. The book explains industrial kiln drying as well as the correct stacking and storage for air drying. In other chapters, the author describes how to select the correct type of wood for a project, mistakes made in drying, and the use of recycled timber. 192 pages, hardcover, many colour photographs, 225 x 260 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713622**



### HOLZFÜHRER - EINHEIMISCHE HOLZARTEN MIT MAKROAUFNAHMEN

Jean-Denis Godet:

This practical guide to wood for foresters, gardeners and hobby joiners is an introduction to the 30 main domestic types of wood. Detailed photographs of flowers, leaves, fruit and buds make it easy to identify the trees. Lists the density and uses of the individual types of wood.

128 pages, paperback, 540 colour photographs, 210 x 297 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713169**



### HOLZWERKEN - DIE BAUMPORTRÄTS

Andreas Duhme, Sonja Senge:

55 types of wood for your workshop - from apple trees to Swiss pines. Portraits for reference ranging from A to Z. Each tree and its wood are described comprehensively on two pages: locations, historical and current use, as well as cultural history aspects. This book focuses on the following question: What is the wood like in the workshop? Is it easy to cut, turn, carve, polish, and varnish? Each section also contains images of trees, wood samples, and fascinating items made from the respective type of wood.

120 pages, paperback, colour photographs on every page, 212 x 298 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713054**



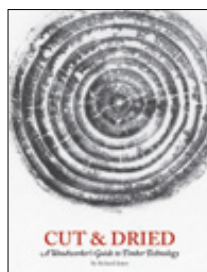
### CUT & DRIED: A WOODWORKER'S GUIDE TO TIMBER TECHNOLOGY

Richard Jones:

The book for practicing wood craftsmen. A complete guide describing every aspect of the tree and its wood, from how it grows to how it is then cut, dried and delivered to your workshop, how you can identify problems and defects as well as avoid bad timbers. The author explores the topic from the perspective of a woodworker in terms anyone can understand, from non-technical to those who like the science behind wood technology.

336 pages, hardcover, colour photographs on every page, 230 x 305 mm.

**No. 714373**



## Sculpting, Carving

### GRUNDKURS SCHNITZEN

Dick Onians:

This in-depth technical book guides ambitious carvers from simple relief work to complex sculpted figures. The author pays particular attention to designs suitable for the workpiece and the anatomy of humans and animals.

183 pages, hardcover, 275 photographs, 65 illustrations, 217 x 282 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713358**



### EINFACH SELBST SCHNITZEN! LÖFFEL, SCHALEN, KÄMME

Bernard Bertrand:

In over 300 step-by-step illustrations, this book will teach you the ancient technique of carving wood and making simple workpieces by yourself. An abundance of pictures shows the making of various wooden objects such as ladles, salad servers, fruit bowls, and napkin holders. Why not add an individual touch to your clothes by using self-carved buttons? Beside explaining how to make them, and giving many other useful tips on the tools you need and how to handle them, the author also points out wood types that are suited for carving.

143 pages, hardcover, colour photographs on every page, 222 x 286 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713930**



### Price note

As German books are subject to the store price agreement, we are obliged to pass on any price changes to our customers.

### EINFACH SELBST GESCHNITZT - SCHRITT FÜR SCHRITT

Peter Benson:

For beginners and advanced, 20 carving projects from very simple to slightly more advanced. Letter opener and planting board, plaited fork, egg spoon and walking stick, pretty amulets in the shape of leaves and a special drinking bowl from Lapland, Christmas stars, a pair of ducks, dwarves and a cheese board with mice, a pretty breakfast plate for eggs and bread, an individual pommel for a walking stick or umbrella, or a cute piglet. The introductory chapter deals with suitable types of wood, the right carving knives and safety instructions.

144 pages, paperback, numerous colour photos, 149 x 210 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714474**



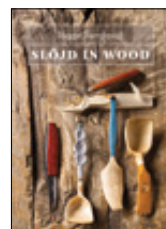
### SLÖJD IN WOOD

Jögge Sundqvist:

Follow Jögge Sundqvist into the world of the traditional Swedish carving art of »Slöjd«, according to which everyday objects are made with simple tools and materials. »Slöjd in Wood« is the first English translation of Jögge Sundqvist's Swedish classic. It offers wonderful insights into a work dominated by rich colours and handcrafted items. In addition to carving projects such as hand-carved bread knives, bowls, spoons, etc. for your home, Jögge Sundqvist explains the correct handling of carving knives in order to safely and efficiently copy the techniques shown in the book. The author also provides some advice for the colourful design of your workpieces.

116 pages, hardcover, numerous photographs and drawings, 190 x 267 mm.

**No. 714391**



## Furniture Making, General Woodworking

### DER MÖBELBAU

Fritz Spannagel:

First published in 1954, this classic remains just as topical today. Its importance is derived from the systematic instructions, descriptive illustrations and detailed descriptions of the joints and other techniques of woodworking craft. The book is largely intended for apprentice and qualified joiners, but also for architects and woodworking teachers.

368 pages, hardcover, 1538 illustrations, 220 x 297 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713543**



### HOLZIS HANDBUCH FÜR SCHREINER

Carsten Hilbert:

Over 2200 terms, from »Anleimer« on to »Zulage« help apprentice carpenters, qualified carpenters and ambitious hobby carpenters whenever they have questions. The comprehensive knowledge of carpentry in user-friendly form, numerous tables, many tips and tricks make this book an invaluable companion.

424 pages, paperback, 1600 colour illustrations, many useful tables, 110 x 180 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713876**



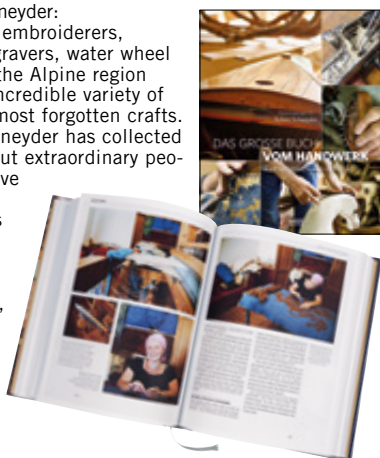
### DAS GROSSE BUCH VOM HANDWERK - FAST VERGESSEN, NEU ENTDECKT

Achim Schneider:

Pinfather embroiderers, copper engravers, water wheel builders - the Alpine region offers an incredible variety of old and almost forgotten crafts. Achim Schneider has collected stories about extraordinary people who have dedicated themselves heart and soul to theirs.

308 pages, hardcover, numerous colour photographs, 220 x 265 mm.

**In German.**  
**No. 714368**



### WERKSTATTHILFEN SELBER BAUEN

Sandor Nagyszalanczy:

Have you ever held a workpiece in your hands and thought »How on earth am I going to work on this?«. This book by Sandor Nagyszalanczy, former editor of »Fine Woodworking« magazine, provides clear instructions on how to make templates and workshop aids which are essential for efficient and precise work. Whether sanding aids, sawing, planing or milling templates, this book offers solutions for even complex shapes.

266 pages, hardcover, over 850 colour photographs and drawings, 240 x 285 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713508**

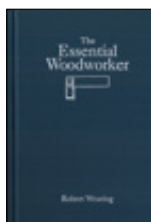


### THE ESSENTIAL WOODWORKER

Robert Wearing:

This revised edition of the renowned text written in 1988 is an invaluable collection of all woodworking basics using hand tools. It covers a wide range of techniques and carpenter's pieces of wisdom, it shows many illustrations of several smaller projects, auxiliary devices and gives advice on maintenance and proper handling of hand tools. A treasure of ideas and knowledge for beginners and experienced woodworkers. 253 pages, hardcover, 500 b/w illustrations and photographs, 160 x 235 mm.

**No. 713665**



### INGENIOUS MECHANICS - EARLY WORKBENCHES & WORKHOLDING

Christopher Schwarz:

In this book by Chris Schwarz the reader is given extraordinary insights into workbench constructions of days long gone, which help to equip modern workbenches with additional useful functions. Without having any original instructions to refer to, for more than three years, Chris Schwarz constructed workbenches based on historical paintings and conserved models from Pompeii to Rome to see if and how they worked. The simple designs have many advantages and can be built in a few days in a material- and cost-efficient manner. They can be worked with in a seated position and some clamping possibilities even exceed the functions of modern vices or shaving horses.

160 pages, hardcover, colour photographs on every page, 216 x 280 mm.

**No. 714362**



### THE SOLUTION AT HAND

Robert Wearing:

»The Solution at Hand« covers a wide range of materials, from workbench devices for planing, the manufacture of hand screws and many other ingenious clamps to simple tools you cannot buy elsewhere, and marking tools that make complex tasks easier. The author describes 157 devices in total, all accompanied by hand drawn illustrations by Robert Wearing.

200 pages, hardcover, b/w illustrations, 160 x 235 mm.  
**No. 714410**

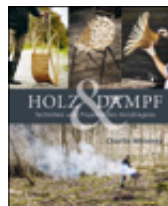


### HOLZ & DAMPF - TECHNIKEN UND PROJEKTE DES HOLZBIEGENS

Charlie Whinney:

Steam-bending of wood is a process used to make wood pliable for a short time. Charlie Whinney, England's leading expert on steam-bending, reveals the secrets of this unusual craft technique. He shows how to select suitable wood for wood-bending projects and then, using practical instructions, how to create your own steam-bent objects for each level of difficulty. The projects range from wooden coat hangers, a dome structure for your garden to beautifully shaped fruit bowls, lamps, chairs or even a self-built boat.

144 pages, hardcover, colour photographs on every page, 190 x 240 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 714412**



### HOLZ BIEGEN

Wolfgang Fiwek:

How do you bend or deform wood? This book presents the whole spectrum of different methods. In addition to basic procedures and the required equipment, Wolfgang Fiwek gives an insight into all manner of workshops, from cane makers to musical instrument makers and boat builders. Readers will also find practical and individual solutions used by different manufacturers and craftsmen to bend wood. 192 pages, hardcover, colour illustrations on every page, 210 x 276 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713624**



### WILDHOLZ-MÖBEL

Ernst Maier, Thomas Thelen:

Some branches and a few tools are enough to enter the fascinating world of rough wood joinery. The many step-by-step projects allow the reader to learn how to take the organic shapes of the material and find the technically correct joints. In addition to techniques, this book also provides information for procuring suitable wood as well as on the necessary tools.

123 pages, hardcover, numerous colour photographs and illustrations, 200 x 250 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713809**



### HOLZVERBINDUNGEN - AUSWÄHLEN, KONSTRUIEREN, BAUEN

Gary Rogowski:

This book is a complete compilation of Western style wood joinery. From the most basic butt joints to sophisticated mortise and tenon joints. Each of the 12 chapters focuses on the specific problems, techniques, materials, and tools that are relevant for your work. Each joint is explained by step-by-step illustrations that show you how to make them. Several tips and cross-references included. A reference book for beginners and ambitious professionals alike. 343 pages, hardcover, colour photographs on every page, 238 x 282 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713925**



### PERFEKTE VERBINDUNGEN

John Bullar:

Professional furniture maker John Bullar explains the essentials of well-fitting wood joints and the application of selected hand and power tools. Clear instructions with step-by-step illustrations show the designing and cutting of 34 different wood joints for any purpose. This practical book teaches you how to choose, design and cut suitable wood joints for your workpieces. 175 pages, hardcover, numerous colour photographs, 215 x 280 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713060**



### MÖBELBAU - GRUNDLAGEN, KONSTRUKTIONEN, TRICKS & KNIFFE

Andy Rae:

German version of the Fine Woodworking book on »Furniture & Cabinet Construction«. After a brief introduction to materials and tools, this book gets right to the point, covering all basic constructions from cabinets, boxes, shelves, drawers, doors, floors and feet, though to chairs, frames, panels, table tops and back walls. In text and pictures, the author explains how to assemble these parts and also goes into detail on fittings and joints. All with detailed step-by-step instructions. 324 pages, hardcover, over 800 colour illustrations, 235 x 282 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713956**



### GRUNDLAGEN HOLZARBEITEN WERKZEUGE-TECHNIKEN-ERSTE WERKSTÜCKE

Alan Goodsell and Randall Maxey:

This book contains all the basics required for beginners to woodworking. In addition to the basic tools and their use, it covers correct measuring and marking, drilling, sawing, chiselling, hammering, glueing and grinding. It describes the most important wood joints such as butt joints, mitre joints or tenon joints, dovetails, rebate and groove joints, as well as overlap joints with numerous step-by-step illustrations. This knowledge will enable you to successfully implement your first woodworking projects. Detailed instructions, sketches, material lists and many photos guarantee success. 159 pages, paperback, colour images on every page, 210 x 280 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 714170**

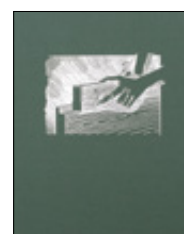


### THE WOODWORKER: THE CHARLES H. HAYWARD YEARS, VOL. III: JOINERY

This admirable companion covers all types of woodwork joints, including how to design, cut and fix them when things go awry.

Based on the important book »Woodwork Joints« by Charles H. Hayward (1898-1998), which was first published in 1950 and then reprinted many times, it contains the kind of spare prose that made him one of the best woodworking authors of the 20th century. Like a good woodworking joint, Hayward's text contains nothing superfluous and lacks nothing important to the task at hand. Because of the nature of the magazine format, this book plumbs much deeper into the details of cutting and fitting joints to include things that never made it into »Woodwork Joints«. In addition to Hayward's take on joinery, this volume also offers the perspective of other British writers at the time that Hayward published in »The Woodworker«, including J. Maynard, Robert Wearing, K. J. S. Walker and C. A. Hewett. 288 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w illustrations and drawings, 222 x 287 mm.

**No. 713068**



For more books on each subject  
see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### THE WOODWORKER: THE CHARLES H. HAYWARD YEARS, VOL. I: TOOLS

There is little doubt that Charles H. Hayward (1898-1998) was the most important workshop writer and editor of the 20th century. Unlike any person before (and perhaps after) him, Hayward was a trained cabinetmaker and extraordinary illustrator, not to mention an excellent designer, writer, editor and photographer. The book seeks to reprint a small part of the information Hayward published as editor in chief of »The Woodworker« magazine from 1939 to 1967.

#### Volume I: Tools

Sharpening, setting out tools and chisels, planes, saws, boring tools, carving, turning, veneering and inlay

#### Volume II: Techniques

General techniques, miscellaneous tools & techniques

This is however not simply a quick reprint of old magazines. It took eight years to organize, scan, edit and re-edit those articles so that they are now accessible for a future generation of woodworkers. 888 and 455 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w photographs and drawings, 222 x 287 mm.

**No. 713040**

### WITH ALL THE PRECISION POSSIBLE: ROUBO ON FURNITURE

Donald C. Williams, Michele Pietryka-Pagán, Philippe Lafargue:

This book is the first English translation of the 18th century masterpiece »L'art du Menuisier« by André-Jacob Roubo. »Roubo on Furniture« is full of insights into wood processing and furniture making that, even nowadays, are hard or impossible to find. Contrary to many authors of the 18th century, Roubo was a traditionally trained, practising cabinetmaker. He interviewed craftsmen to gain deeper insights into their practices. He studied drawing (almost every illustration in this book was drawn by him) to be able to explain everything accurately in every detail. No matter what kind of woodworking you have learned, »Roubo on Furniture« will expand your knowledge on how to build furniture aesthetically. 472 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w illustrations and drawings, 216 x 305 mm.

**No. 713076**

### BY HAND & EYE

George R. Walker, Jim Tolpin: This book provides a deep insight into the world of architecture and design. Instead of complex formulae with magical names like the golden ratio, the authors present simple ubiquitous proportions that were already used in crafts before the industrial revolution. The key to great design is mastering these basic principles. Besides the exercises, the book provides many examples and encourages readers to use simple geometry for better design. The principles described in the book are applied in nine contemporary projects that anybody can recreate. 186 pages, hardcover, colour illustrations on every page, 152 x 228 mm.

**No. 713990**

### PRÄKTISCHE WERKSTATTMÖBEL

Christopher Schwarz:

This book provides basic knowledge on the subject of workshop equipment, from building your own clamping aids and workbenches to the appropriate arrangement of manual and machine workstations. The author also focuses on how to keep the costs for the workshop equipment low. The instructions include step-by-step explanations with pictures and illustrations. In short, the ideal reference book for all those who want to equip and arrange a practical, small workshop on a budget. 173 pages, hardcover, colour images on every page, 216 x 283 mm.

**In German. No. 714376**

### HOLZVERBINDUNGEN

Wolfram Graubner:

The comparison of Japanese and European wood joints broadens perspectives and leads to new construction solutions in the area of sophisticated artisan woodworking. The author presents a number of interesting and unusual examples and uses a large amount of drawings and photos to explain how they were produced and applied. Furniture and carpenter joints are also examined. Part of the book also deals with structural and chemical wood protection as well as the development of wood construction in different countries. 176 pages, hardcover, numerous drawings and b/w photographs, 237 x 300 mm.

**In German. No. 713507**

### WIE WIR MÖBEL BAUEN - UND WARUM

Michael Pekovich:

There is a growing appreciation for handmade items and an understanding of the need to fill our lives with fewer objects, that are useful and meaningful. How can carpenters respond to this call? Mike Pekovich explains which projects are worth the time and effort and how they can improve the quality of life. This book provides a lot of important, detailed and clearly illustrated information for designers and furniture makers. In terms of completeness, clarity and presentation, the author covers all the basic aspects of the subject, from essential tips on wood selection, design considerations and working methods to finishing. A series of projects explained in detail completes the book. 218 pages, hardcover, coloured illustrations on every page, 210 x 280 mm.

**In German. No. 714417**

### THE WOODWORKER: THE CHARLES H. HAYWARD YEARS, VOL. IV: THE SHOP & FURNITURE

Charles H. Hayward (1898-1998) was one of the most important workshop authors and editors of the 20th century. With the 4th edition of »The Woodworker« the collection is now complete. Contrary to many other people - before and perhaps also after him - he was a trained cabinetmaker, remarkable illustrator, excellent designer, writer, editor and photographer. This new volume encompasses various topics from the construction of workbenches, tool chests and wall cabinets, to furniture making and its details, including the construction, mouldings and metal fittings. All of these are explained in detail along with many construction drawings in this volume. Many important and famous pieces of furniture constructed by Charles H. Hayward during his lifetime are also presented again. 336 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w illustrations and drawings, 222 x 287 mm.

**No. 713077**

### WOODWORKING IN ESTONIA

Ants Viires:

This book gives you a multitude of information about the entire history of woodworking in the small Northern European nation of Estonia. Stanley Tools kept the traditional aspect of this work by preserving its old look and design. The author, Ants Viires, combined personal interviews and direct observation of work habits with archaeological evidence and other literature of his country. It is a gigantic source of inspiration for anyone who is interested in woodworking. Find out, how our ancestors worked with wood - from pre-historical times up through Estonia's independence. 304 pages, hardcover, more than 240 photographs and illustrations, 220 x 290 mm.

**No. 713056**

### HANDS EMPLOYED ARIGHT - THE FURNITURE MAKING OF JONATHAN FISHER

Joshua A. Klein:

In this book, the author Joshua A. Klein, founder of Mortise & Tenon Magazine, presents the perhaps most comprehensive record of the life of American craftsman Jonathan Fisher, who lived in the early 19th century. With the help of detailed drawings, antique tools and conserved pieces of furniture, Joshua A. Klein describes how the furniture was made at that time and which tools Fisher worked with. Using similar tools and modelling methods, the author created replicas of over 100 pieces of furniture to gain insight into the manufacturer's remarkable productivity. Colour photos, maps, natural history drawings, mathematical exercises and woodcuts make these insights almost breathtaking. A comprehensive and exciting work that will captivate woodworkers and history lovers alike. 288 pages, hardcover, numerous colour photographs, 228 x 305 mm.

**No. 714377**

### THE ANARCHIST'S WORKBENCH

Christopher Schwarz:

Not only is the book »The Anarchist's Workbench« a detailed plan for a simple workbench that can be built with construction timber and standard woodworking tools, it also tells the story of Christopher Schwarz's 20-year journey of researching, building and refining historical workbenches until there was nothing left to improve. »The Anarchist's Workbench« is the third and last book in the »Anarchist's« series and attempts to cut through the immense amount of misinformation about building a perfect workbench. It helps to answer the questions that occur to every woodworker: What kind of bench should I choose? Which kind of wood should I use? What dimensions should my workbench have? And which vices should I attach to it? Surprisingly, not much has changed in the way a workbench is built over the last 700 years. What has changed, however, are the raw materials available to the modern wood craftsman.

344 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w photographs and drawings, 142 x 229 mm.

**No. 714465**



For more books on each subject see [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)



### THE ANARCHIST'S DESIGN BOOK - EXPANDED EDITION

Christopher Schwarz:

Most of the American furniture we celebrate as the pinnacle of design is overbearing, over-embellished and a monument to waste and excess. These are precious pieces that are auctioned, collected, reproduced and written about in exhaustive detail. »The Anarchist's Design Book« is an exploration of furniture forms that have persisted outside of the high styles that dominate every museum exhibit of the last 200 years. Some of those historic furniture forms have been around for almost 1000 years. They are simple to make. They have clean lines, and can be shockingly modern. This book explores 11 of these forms - a bed, dining tables, chairs, chests, desks, shelving - and offers a deep exploration into the two construction techniques used to make these pieces that have been forgotten, neglected or rejected. Apart from the plans this book also gives you the road map for designing your own pieces. 656 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w photographs and drawings, 203 x 254 mm.

**No. 713039**

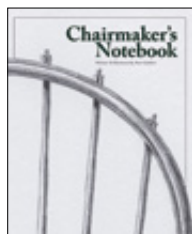


### CHAIRMAKER'S NOTEBOOK

Peter Galbert:

Gain an insight into the art of chairmaking on 406 pages. With this book, both the experienced chairmaker and the hobbyist will get their money's worth. Professional chairmaker Peter Galbert brilliantly explains all necessary work steps concisely and understandably. Numerous hand-drawn sketches illustrate all manufacturing details. The detailed work steps deal with the question of which wood to choose and explain the manufacturing of the single parts needed, a wide variety of joints from simple to sophisticated, as well as the finishing. Even experienced chairmakers will stand to gain from the comprehensive professional advice provided. 406 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w sketches, 216 x 279 mm.

**No. 713685**



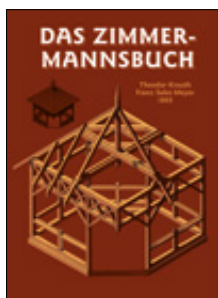
## Carpentry, Architecture

### DAS ZIMMERMANN'SBUCH

Theodor Krauth, Franz Sales Meyer:

This textbook has lost none of its topicality since its first publication in 1895. Even today, any carpenter or restorer interested in the traditional techniques would do well to consult it. From material science to decorative carving, all aspects of the carpenter's craft are discussed in detail.

512 pages, hardcover, 131 panels, 361 illustrations, 175 x 240 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713799**



### DAS HOLZBAU-BUCH

Adolf Opderbecke:

Anyone who is interested in classical wood construction will find all the information they need in this reprint of a standard work from 1909. The wood joints, wall and roof structures, stairs and interior fittings are explained comprehensively in detailed drawings. 352 pages, hardcover, 736 illustrations and 30 panels, 220 x 285 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713402**



### BLOCKHÄUSER UND HÜTTEN SELBST GEBAUT

Sven-Gunnar Håkansson:

In this technical book, the Swedish author presents the fundamentals of log construction. The design basics, wood selection, joints, insulation, roofing, wood coating and design appropriate for the material are discussed in detail. Numerous examples, from sauna cabins to residential houses, are fully documented in photographs. 338 pages, hardcover, over 500 photographs and drawings, 175 x 245 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713213**



### DAS HOLZ UND SEINE VERBINDUNGEN - TRADITIONELLE BAUTECHNIKEN IN EUROPA, JAPAN UND CHINA

Klaus Zwerger:

A comprehensive representation of Eastern and Western timber architecture from two millennia in terms of its construction techniques, aesthetic design and ecological dimension. The book covers subjects such as materials and tools, typology and function of wood joints, log, post and roof construction. Elements are connected using wood joints which do not require the assistance of adhesives or metal connectors, but which hold the wooden pieces together through skilful interleaving. With several hundred examples from Japan and 18 European countries. 320 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w illustrations and three-dimensional drawings, 230 x 304 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713944**



### HANDBUCH DER SCHIFTUNGEN

Manfred Euchner:

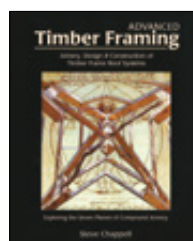
A classic manual for carpentry techniques. This standard reference helps apprentices, journeymen, masters-in-training and master craftsmen refresh what they already know as well as discover new techniques. The art of mechanical joints, the marking of hip rafters, valley rafters, jack rafters and rafter joints, birdsmouth joints, »witch's cuts«, valley rafter joints and dormers are explained using clear design drawings and explanatory illustrations. Increasing in difficulty from step to step, the examples show how various points of detail can be identified, whether on the lofting floor or the drawing board. 184 pages, hardcover, numerous b/w photographs and drawings, 235 x 299 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713045**



### ADVANCED TIMBER FRAMING

Steve Chappell:

This is the most complete work ever on the art and design of compound timber frame joinery. Given 35 years of experience in the field, Steve Chappell gives away all his knowledge on design and theory through layout and execution. The work is divided into two parts. The first part »Design and History« is explaining proper proportions and design and gives a brief history on roof framing in Europe, China and Japan. In the second part Steve Chappell is explaining a complete geometric and mathematical system that can be used to design virtually any conceivable arrangement of complex structural members in mortise and tenon joinery. 348 pages, paperback, colour photographs on every page, 220 x 290 mm.  
**No. 713607**



## Tools

### DIE WERKZEUGKISTE DES ANARCHISTEN / ANARCHIST'S TOOL CHEST

Christopher Schwarz:

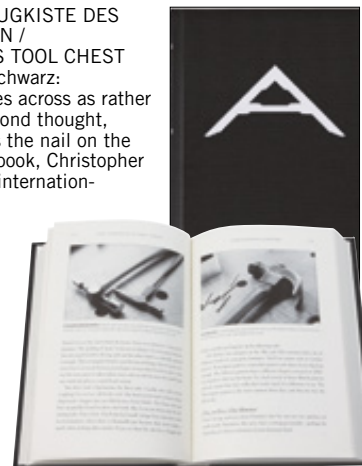
The title comes across as rather poetic, on second thought, though, it hits the nail on the head. In this book, Christopher Schwarz, the internationally known author and woodworker, summarizes necessary and unnecessary developments of tools in the area of woodworking. The result is a list of tools that is reduced to the utmost minimum required for meeting the greatest challenges and that you can fit into one single tool chest. Apart from providing instructions on how to build a suitable storage box for tools (i.e. the anarchist's tool chest), the book also helps a lot in making the right purchase decisions in a frequently unmanageable supply of products. Hardcover, numerous b/w photos, 160 x 235 mm.

**In German** (480 pages)

**No. 713692**

**In English** (475 pages)

**No. 713636**



### DIE WERKZEUGE DES JAPANISCHEN SCHREINERS

Toshio Odate:

Japanese saws and planes have different designs and uses compared with Western tools. Toshio Odate, a Japanese joiner and professor of design, explains the tools and their use in detail, and describes technical and historical aspects. An indispensable reference work for anyone who wants to use Japanese tools properly. 198 pages, hardcover, lavishly illustrated with b/w photographs and drawings, 245 x 310 mm. **In German.**  
**No. 713504**



## HAVE A LOOK INSIDE!

► Get a first impression by reading an extract from a book in our online shop.

[www.dictum.com/books](http://www.dictum.com/books)

## THE TOOL CABINET AND WORKBENCH OF HENRY O. STUDLEY

Donald C. Williams,  
Narayan Nayar:

In a space of just 25 x 100 cm, Henry O. Studley managed to artfully arrange more than 250 of his tools into a dovetailed mahogany cabinet. Since it was first unveiled in 1988 on the cover of »Fine Woodworking«, this cabinet has captivated tens of thousands of woodworkers. The cabinet and Studley's equally amazing workbench, however, were sold to a private collector and have not been seen by the public for well over a decade. Donald Williams and his team had the opportunity to study the cabinet for four years. All the tools, every swinging frame and every hinged panel of this three-dimensional, multi-layered sculpture have been documented and photographed. This in-depth examination resulted in a book about one of the most beautiful and amazing tool chests ever constructed. The book also presents the first-ever and only biography of the constructor Henry O. Studley (1838-1925), a piano and organ builder in Quincy, Massachusetts. It becomes clear, why he created a shrine for his tools, how this piece of art was built and how it works. 216 pages, hardcover, many photographs and drawings, 222 x 286 mm.

**No. 713689**



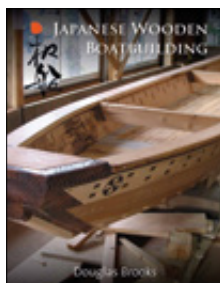
## Boat Building

### JAPANESE WOODEN BOATBUILDING

Douglas Brooks:

Under the tutelage of five Japanese masters, the author, Douglas Brooks, spent several years building unique and traditional wooden boats. In the first part of the book, the author introduces significant aspects of traditional Japanese boat building: design, workshop and tools, wood and materials, propulsion, ceremonies and the apprenticeship system. In the second part, Douglas Brooks gives an insight into his five teachers' boat building methods. This fascinating book fills a gap in the literature on Japanese handicrafts and will be of interest to boat builders, woodworkers and all those impressed with the marvels of Japanese design and workmanship. 281 pages, hardcover, numerous colour photographs, 230 x 285 mm.

**No. 714366**

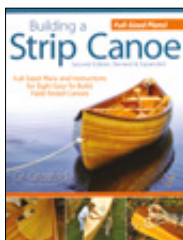


### BUILDING A STRIP CANOE

Gil Gilpatrick:

After supervising the construction of more than 500 canoes during 30 years as an outdoor resources instructor in the school system in Skowhegan, Maine, Gil Gilpatrick shares his experience with easy step-by-step instructions on how to build strip canoes. »Building A Strip Canoe« includes plans and patterns for eight proven designs, along with directions for making handwoven cane seats and attractive, lightweight but robust paddles. A book that will successfully guide both novice and accomplished woodworkers through the process of building a sturdy, ready-to-use strip canoe. 111 pages, paperback, numerous colour photographs, 220 x 280 mm.

**No. 713395**



## Finishing

### TRADITIONELLE ANSTRICHE

Simon Vejbaek Kinch:

This book provides a good overview on the manufacturing of oil based paint and the wide range of possible paint recipes for different purposes. The author describes additives, auxiliary materials and tools as well as the necessary techniques. Common problems, their reasons and their solution are explained in great detail, as well as similar techniques such as gloss paint, distemper, tempera/emulsion, wood tar, calcium lime and silicate paint. A unique reference book for enthusiastic amateurs and professional craftsmen. 103 pages, hardcover, coloured photographs on every page, 163 x 235 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713602**



### OBERFLÄCHEN BEHADELN

Melanie Kirchlechner:

Staining, varnishing or oiling the finished product is the final stage of cabinet making. This is also how woodturners and sculptors refine and protect their work. However, woodworkers everywhere are faced with an almost impenetrable jumble of products, descriptions and techniques. This book addresses the problem. It provides guidance on how to deal with misleading names, and offers simple explanations of the differences between finishing products. What is more, the book is a rigorously practical tool to help users understand which varnish, lacquer, oil or wax is best suited to which task. The author provides step-by-step instructions on how superb finishing can be achieved, even using simple resources. Equipped with this knowledge, nothing can get in the way of perfectly finished furniture. 204 pages, hardcover, numerous colour photographs and illustrations, 240 x 285 mm.

**In German.**

**No. 713032**



## Bow Making

### DAS BOGENBAUER-BUCH

European bow making from the Stone Age to today. A group of experts focuses on the history and design of European longbows, and offers beginners clear instructions, and advanced learners tips on selecting wood and adhesives, as well as precise dimensions for making the different bow shapes yourself.

236 pages, paperback, 127 b/w photographs, 12 colour panels, many illustrations, 215 x 275 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713349**



### HOLZBOGEN BAUEN - WAS ICH VORHER GERNE GEWUSST HÄTTE

How do I make a good bow out of a piece of wood? One of the best-known and most experienced wooden bow makers in North America has captured his 40 years of experience in this book. There are three simple basic rules that any bow-making project can use to succeed. From the selection of the wood right through to the finish, with concrete measurements for bows made of different types of wood, Jim Hamm conveys exactly what you need to know or »what I wish I'd known before«. 68 pages, paperback, 54 photographs, 149 x 211 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714387**



## Woodturning

### DRECHSELTECHNIKEN

Michael O'Donnell:

This book is a comprehensive guide for woodturners, written by one of the most respected experts in this field. Michael O'Donnell, international master turner, is able to explain woodturning in an easy way. From the standard equipment over techniques up to surface treatment, in this book you will find everything you need to make your workpiece. Practical instructions for small objects enable you to take the step from theory into practice. 192 pages, hardcover, detailed colour photographs and sketches on every page, 215 x 280 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713612**



### DRECHSELN MIT ELLSWORTH

David Ellsworth:

David Ellsworth is considered the pioneer of turned hollow forms. This standard work by the Grand Master introduces wood craftsmen to his sophisticated woodturning techniques. Easy-to-follow instructions and high-definition photos show how Ellsworth manufactures bowls, natural rim bowls and hollow vessels. For all those new to the lathe, Ellsworth offers expert tips for getting started. Advanced woodturners will appreciate the advice on surface treatment, tool making and sharpening. The chapters on design and ergonomic posture while turning make the book particularly unique. A work that should not be missing from any woodturner's library.

247 pages, paperback, 483 photos and 35 drawings, 217 x 279 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714478**



## Sharpening

### HOLZWERKZEUGE SCHÄRFEN

Rudolf Dick:

This book explains how to sharpen tools quickly and permanently. Detailed instructions explain how to turn blunt chisels, planes, carving tools, axes and hatchets, woodturning tools, drills and saws into sharp ones. The sharpening techniques are based on the centuries-old tried-and-tested method of sharpening on waterstones. Valuable tips and sound knowledge of steel and abrasives complete this standard work.

220 pages, hardcover, colour photographs and drawings on every page, 168 x 238 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713988**



### JAPANMESSER SCHÄRFEN

Rudolf Dick:

Everything you ever wanted to know about sharpening Japanese knives: Step by step and with numerous illustrations, expert Dr. Rudolf Dick explains an exact and practical sharpening technique. This book also helps you select the correct sharpening stones and details the special characteristics of Japanese knives. Important practical tips for care and correct application complete this comprehensive work. 125 pages, hardcover, colour photographs on every page, 165 x 235 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713920**





### SCHÄRFEN - GRUNDLAGEN, TECHNIKEN, AUSRÜSTUNG

Thomas Lie-Nielsen:

Step-by-step instructions and many insider tips are provided for sharpening all types of woodworking tools and knives. A discussion on types of steel and a complete overview of all sharpening tools and machines complete the most comprehensive and technically in-depth book on sharpening currently available. 216 pages, hardcover, over 750 colour photographs and numerous drawings, 240 x 285 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713513**

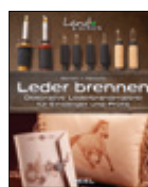


### LEDER BRENNEN - DEKORATIVE LEADERBRANDMALEREI

Michele Y. Parsons:

Pyrography is the decorative burning of natural materials such as wood, leather, fabric or cork. Michele Y. Parsons is a trained artist and pyrography virtuoso. In her book, she teaches all the important basics of leather pyrography for beginners, and provides tips and tricks for the advanced. She explains the equipment in detail, demonstrates techniques, deals with the use of colours and presents projects of different levels of difficulty. Which type of leather is suited for the different projects and which tips are used for which degree of shading. 160 pages, paperback, illustrated throughout in colour, 183 x 225 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714476**



### ALLES ÜBER GEHÖLZSCHNITT - ZIERGEHÖLZ-, OBST- UND FORMSCHNITT

Helmut Pirce:

Excellent growth habit, glorious blooms and a rich crop of fruit - that is the dream of every garden owner. This reference book about pruning helps you professionally shape your deciduous trees and conifers, ornamental bushes, climbing plants, roses and fruit trees. Get to know the growth habits and laws of your woody plants and learn all about the right tools. With over 600 photographs and nearly 500 drawings, this book presents the correct cutting techniques for different trees and shrubs. 360 pages, hardcover, 628 photographs, 492 illustrations, 205 x 272 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713088**



## Forging, Knife Making

### MESSER MACHEN WIE DIE PROFIS

Ernst G. Siebeneicher-Hellwig:

This book teaches you how to make your own knife. It starts with a brief introduction to steel and describes the most common handle materials and the required tools. For beginners, the book explains in detail the individual steps involved in making a knife, based on various kits (including hunting knives and folding knives). For advanced knife makers, it contains instructions for developing and making your own knives from scratch. Information on embellishment and decorating techniques complete the book. 128 pages, hardcover, approx. 100 colour photographs, 163 x 219 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713004**

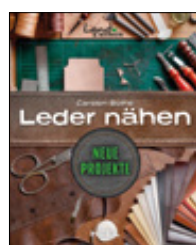


### LEDER NÄHEN - NEUE PROJEKTE

Carsten Bothe:

With this follow-up volume, outdoor and bushcraft pro Carsten Bothe delivers new leather projects that can be realised with simple tools and a bit of skilled craftsmanship in a manageable time. With the easy tasks you will quickly achieve respectable results and with increasing practice the level of difficulty of the projects will also increase. This guide provides creative ideas and a lot of practical know-how. 112 pages, paperback, numerous colour photos, 183 x 225 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714475**



### WERKBUCH BIOGARTEN - ANLEITUNG ZUM HANDWERKLICHEN ARBEITEN IN BILDERN

Annelore Bruns, Susanne Bruns:

Those who cultivate vegetables and fruit using organic methods find that, in addition to purely horticultural tasks such as fertilising, sowing, planting and cultivating, there are also many more manual tasks to be done. This book shows clearly and with numerous construction plans and step-by-step drawings, how compost containers and cold frames are produced, as well as plant frames for berries and vegetables and small earth cellars for storing the harvest. It describes how to mow with a scythe, how to build «Hügelkultur» hill beds and raised beds, species-appropriate bird nesting boxes and beneficial animal shelters, how to plant and prune shrubs and trees and much more. 109 pages, paperback, numerous colour photographs and illustrations, 172 x 240 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714172**



### SCHMIEDEN - TECHNIKEN, WERKZEUGE, PROJEKTE

Robert Thomas:

The award-winning blacksmith Robert Thomas presents the most important tools and techniques that every modern blacksmith should know. Anyone who would like to turn their interest in forging into a proper hobby will find numerous inspirations and practical instructions here. This book offers everything you need to get started right away: From useful information on iron and an overview over the history of forging, to the most important design principles and concrete projects with step-by-step instructions for each level. It includes the most important tips to ensure the success of your projects and exciting insights into the work of Robert Thomas, his team and other contemporary blacksmiths. 160 pages, hardcover, illustrated throughout in colour, 210 x 260 mm. **In German.**

**No. 714394**



### LEDERARBEITEN - NÄHEN, FLECHTEN, BEARBEITEN

Michael Gärtner:

The book »Lederarbeiten« is a practical introduction to leather handcraft. The author Michael Gärtner is founder of Lone Wolf, a prestigious brand of handmade leather products in Sweden. This book is aimed at beginners as well as advanced users and contains 20 projects - from key fobs to large shoulder bags, as well as numerous different leather braiding instructions and knots. It also provides an insight into the basic elements of glueing and polishing, as well as creating a saddle stitch and the appropriate tools. 127 pages, paperback, numerous colour photographs, 185 x 225 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713500**



## DVDs

### DAS SCHÄRFEN JAPANISCHER MESSER

A Japanese master blacksmith with

a legendary reputation in Japan shows you how to professionally sharpen kitchen knives on waterstones. He introduces different types of waterstones, shows the correct sharpening motions for sharpening single- and double-bevelled knives and provides information on knife care. Knives that are sharpened following this method not only make the work easier but are also a pleasure to use and allow you to treat your food with respect. DVD, 15 minutes. **In German.**

**No. 713806**



## Leather

### LEDER NÄHEN

Carsten Bothe:

Leather is a strong and versatile material that is easy to work with. This book guides you through the various stages of cutting, stitching and trimming leather. It also shows you how to punch and stretch leather and how to attach snaps, clasps and rivets. Richly illustrated step-by-step tutorials provide even beginners with a thorough introduction to these techniques. In addition to tips on avoiding mishaps, the book also presents all the materials and tools you will need in detail. Five interesting projects (a belt, a dog leash, a bag, a sheath and a holster) allow readers to put their newly acquired skills immediately into practice. 111 pages, paperback, numerous colour photographs, 185 x 225 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713035**



## Garden, Nature

### DAS SENSE-HANDBUCH: RICHTIG DENGELN, WETZEN, MÄHEN UND ERNTEN

Ian Miller:

The scythe is an elegant, efficient manual tool that takes care of nature without making any noise. It is ideal for mowing long grass in gardens, orchards and hard-to-reach areas. The scythe manual provides gardeners, house owners and farmers with all necessary information about this ancient, nature-friendly mowing method: from the assembly of the scythe to the correct mowing technique, the whetting and peening, the forging of the scythe blade and the correct storage of the scythe. This book explains in detail how to make hay and the different drying methods, along with grain cultivation and processing. 143 pages, hardcover, lavishly illustrated with b/w photographs and drawings, 156 x 213 mm. **In German.**

**No. 713082**



### EINFÜHRUNG IN DIE SCHELLACKPOLITUR

In this training film, an expert shares with us the knowledge of the finest form of surface treatment as acquired by him over many years. Peter Zehmisch explains the materials and the individual operations (priming, basic polishing, cover polishing, polishing out scratches, and fine polishing). DVD, 21 minutes. **In German.**

**No. 713736**



**Vide**

**MORE NEW VIDEOS - COMPLETELY FREE!**

We regularly post new tutorials, impressions from our courses and product videos on YouTube. Discover all videos at

[www.youtube.com/dictumgmbh](http://www.youtube.com/dictumgmbh)



Index

A

abrasive cloth	275– 276
abrasive cloth for varnishes	276
abrasive paper	275– 276
acrylic blank	319
adhesive for leather	301
adhesive tape	290
adze	79
alcohol	287
alder	308
all-metal chisel	40
allongee gouges	60
Anchorseal® wood sealer	314
antique wax	283
anti-slip mat	129, 154
antler	323
anvil shears	351, 353
apple wood	309
apron	265–266
Arkansas sharpening stone	134, 137
Arno® shears	350
ash	308
ASUSO® oils	282
auger bit	234
Australian wood	313

B

Baack® spades	346
ball cutter	74, 76
bamboo	313
banksia cones	315
bar clamp	248
Barnel® pruning shears	350–351
Barnel® saw	357, 358, 360
Barnel® shears	352, 352–354
beechwood	308
beeswax	284
Belgian coticule whetstones	135, 137
belt grinder	160, 274
belt	304
bench planes	105
bench stone	124–133, 139
bench vice	258– 259
benzoin	287
Bessey® clamp	245
birch bark	325
black walnut	315
blade (knife-making)	327–331
block plane	100, 109
bocote (wood)	313
body clamps	246
bog oak	317
bone plate	323
boxwood shears	349, 354
brading needle	299
brass (metal)	325–326, 326
bread knife	392
Brieto® knife	392

brush	294
Brusletto® blade	329
Brusletto® knife	406
buckel	390
buffalo horn	322
burnisher	120
burnishing Set	340
bypass shears	350

C

cabinet maker’s scraper	110, 113
cabinet scraper	110
calliper	210– 211
camel thorn (wood)	312
camellia oil	166, 278
Campi shears	426
cap	264
carnauba wachs	284
carpenter’s axe/hatchet	92
carpenter’s bit	234
carpenter’s gear	87
carving knives	66–72, 72
carving machine	72
carving tools	52
Casström knife	404
cast resin	320
centre markers	223
chamfer plane	113, 118
Chinese carving gouge	64
Chinese chisel	49
Chinese plane	113–114
Chinese shears	426

chip carving knife	67, 71
chisel	35
chisel (woodcarver)	62
chopping board	394
chopping knife	390
chuck	239
circular plane	110
clamp rack	261
claw	345
cloth	289
collet chuck	257
combination square	214
combination stone	124, 127
compass plane	113
compass	224
conical slipstone	135
contact spray	166
contour random orbital sander	274
coping saw	29–30
corrosion inhibitor paper	165
Creusen low-speed grinder	158, 159
Crown® hollowing tool	190–192
Crown® turning tool	183–188
Cubitron™ abrasive paper	339
cutter knife	227, 228
cutter saw	22
cutting board	394
cutting pad	304

D

damascus blade	329, 331–332
----------------	--------------

damascus hammer	168
Damasteel® steel	334
Danish oil	283
decorative wax	283
deluxe saw	23
diamand saw file	137, 164
diamond sharpening stone	130–131
DICTUM® axes and hatchets	83–90
DICTUM® clamp	244, 245
DICTUM® grinding machine	274
DICTUM® low-speed grinder	157–158
DICTUM® plane	100–106
DICTUM® saw	10–22
DICTUM® stain	288–289
DICTUM® workbench	253–254
disc sander	274
disposable filter	290
DMT® sharpening stone	128–129, 137
dogleg gouge	59
double hoe	344
double-wheeled grinder	157, 158, 159
Douk-Douk knife	413
dovetail saw guide	33
dowel rod	317
Dozuki saw	10–13
drake gouge	59
draw hoe	343, 344
drawknife	78
dry grinding machine	157–160
dust mask	263
dust removal cloth	289

E

earplugs	262
ebony wood	312
edge beveller	299
edge clamp	243, 244
edge slicker	299
edge-trimming plane	299
edging shears	354
elforyn Blank	320
elk leather	303
Ellsworth gouge	182
elm	308
end mill	230
endpin	316
epoxy adhesive	291
epoxy resin	320
Estwing® hammer	171
ethanol	287
European wood	307–311
exotic wood	311–313
eyelet	301
eyelet pliers	301

F

face shield	263
figured Jarrah (wood)	313
file handle	204
file rasp	198
Filson products	50
filter	290
fine saw	25, 27

fire stick	406
Fisch® bit	232–237
fish glue	294
fishermans knife	406
fishtail chisel	38
flat steel	333– 335
florist’s grafting knife	360
flush-cut saw	27
folding bone	299, 305
folding cone file	137
folding knife	407, 407–415
folding rule	207–208
folding saw	18, 358
forest axe/hatchet	82, 83, 84
forest saw	357
forging hammer	340
Forstner bit	232–233
frame saw	28, 357
front vice	258
Fugaku® saw	356
functional year-round underwear	266

G

garden knife	360–361
garden shears	348– 356
gardener’s hat	366
gardening saw	355–360
gardening set	366
gas forge	338
Genno (hammer)	168–170
Glass Stone (sharpen)	126
gloves	264
glue brush	294
glue injector	293
glue scraper	121
Goldfield (wood)	313
gouge	58, 62, 63
grafting knife	360
Gränsfors Bruks® axe/hatchet	90–91
grasstree root	315
grater (kitchen)	398
grater	398
grinding machine	151-161
grinding oil	165
grinding roller	274
grubber	343
Gyuto (knife)	385–398

H

hand guard	298
hand-cut rasp	194–195
handle blank	317– 318
handle scales	309, 313, 318, 319, 320, 323
handle	204, 316, 325
hanging strops	423
hard oil	282
Hattori® turning tool	189
head protection	264
hedge shears	354
Hegner scroll saw	34
hemp string	366
Henry Taylor® hollowing tool	192

Herdim® carving knife	66	Kunsuto® sharpening stones	125, 133	moisture meter	220	pear wood	309
hide glue	294	Kunz® planes	108–109	mopane (wood)	312	peeler (kitchen)	399
Hocho (knife)	370–385	Kydex® material	319	mora (wood)	313	peening anvil	363
hold-down clamp	260	<b>L</b>		Mora® carving knife	70– 71	Pfeil® carving tool	56–63
hole punch	300			mortar	397	Pfeil® carving tool	66, 67, 69
hollow chisel	299	Lace Sheoak (wood)	313	mosaic pin	326	pine tar	281
Holzbalsam		Laguiole en Aubrac knife	411	mother-of-pearl effect	321	pink ivory (wood)	312
(wax for preserving wood)	284	lathe	177–179	mother-of-pearl	324	pinking shears	425
honing compound	154	Laurin blade	330–331	moxon vice (collet chuck)	256	pipette	321
honing stones	124, 126, 128	lawn rake	347	Mühle shaving accessories	422–423	plane blade	118
horn	322	Layers (knife-making)	318	mulberry	309	plane rasp	197
horse hair	324	leadwood (wood)	312	mulga (wood)	313	planting cone	345
how (garden)	342–343	leaf rake	347	multi-angle vise	259–260	planting knife	361
hunting axe	92	leather apron	265	mutenye (wood)	311	planting trowel	345
hunting knife	400–408	leather care	301	<b>N</b>		plum wood	309
<b>I</b>		leather cream	301			pocket plane	100, 109
		leather knife	296	Nagura (cleaning stone )	128	pod tool	60
imitation stone	322	leather strap	304	nail puller	174	polishing	289
Incra® tool	207	leather tool roll	50	nail	173	polishing agent	276
ink line	225	leather	302–305	Naniwa® sharpening stone	127	polishing brush	290
isinglass glue	294	light	262	Nano Hone® truing block	138	polishing cloth	289
ivory alternative	320	liming wax	283	nappa leather	302	polishing paste	423
<b>J</b>		linen Micarta	319	Narges® gas forge	338	polyester	320
		linocut tools	68	natural glue	294	poppy seed oil	281
Japanese carving tools	63– 65	linseed oil paint	279, 280	natural oils	278–281	pore filler	283
Japanese chisels	42–48	linseed oil paste	280	natural sharpening stone	134	poultry shears	399
Japanese folding knives	407–409	linseed oil varnish	278	natural wax	284	precision rule	206
Japanese hammer	168–170	linseed oil	278	needle	299	precision saw	34
Japanese kitchen knives	370–385	lot	218	Nigiri (scissors)	424	precision square	214
Japanese knife blade	327–329	Löwe® shears	350, 352	Norton® sharpening stone	133	ProEdge grinding machine	160–161
Japanese natural stone	134	low-speed grinders	157, 158, 159	nursery grafting knife	361	protractor	209
Japanese plane	111–113	<b>M</b>		nut	315– 316	pruning saw	355–360
Japanese razors	422			<b>O</b>		pry bar	174
Japanese saw	10– 22	machete	365			pumice powder	286
Japanese shears	424–425	magnetic base light	262	obsidian knife	418	punch awl	223
Japanese socks	264	magnetic retriever	219	offcut (wood)	310	punch plier	300
Japanese steel	333	magnifier	219– 220	oil varnish	283	punch	269
jig saw	31	mallet	65–66	oil wax	282, 284	Purpleheart (wood)	312
jointer plane	116	mammoth ivory plate	323	oil	278–283	pyrography tool	277
Juma Blank	320	marking gauge	222–223	oilstone	133, 134, 137	quick-action clamp	260
<b>K</b>		marking pen	225	olive wood	309	quick-action drill chuck	239
		marking rule	207	olive-tanned leather	302	<b>R</b>	
kangaroo leather	303	Maserin® knife	416	one-component lacquer	287		
Kanna (plane)	111–113	masonry drill bit	234	one-handed clamp	243–245	rabbit skin glue	294
Kataba saw	13–15	mat cutter	305	orange oil	281	Raffir® blank	317
King®/Sun Tiger®		measuring cup	290	ostrich leather	303– 304	rake	344, 347
sharpening stone	124, 135	metal drill bit	235	ostrich sinew	324	random orbital sander	274
Kirjes® sanding system	270–271	metal file	201– 204	outdoor axe/hatchet	82	rasp blade	76
kitchen knives	370–387	metal pipe	326	outdoor knives	400–408	rattan wrapping	316
Klemmsia® clamp	247	metal sheet	326	outdoor set	406	raw (metal)	326
Klingspor abrasive paper	339	metallic powder	321	<b>P</b>		razor-plane	422
KME sharpening system	143–144	Micarta	319			razors	421–422
knife bank	395	Micro-Mesh® abrasives	276	pakka	318	red beech	308
knife block	395	Microplane® kitchen rasp	398	palmwood	311	red mallee (wood)	313
knife grinding machine	338	Microplane® rasp	197	pan	396–397	reform smoothing plane	116
knife handle	316, 325	microscope	219	panel (metal)	326	reindeer leather	303
knife making belt grinder	338	milk paint	285	panel saw	29	resin	320
knife polishing set	340	mitre clamp	249	paper cutter	305	respiratory protection	262, 263
knife sharpener	140	mitre saw	32–33	paper steel	336	riewood	299
knife sharpening aid	142	mitre trimmer	262	parallel marker	225	robinia	308
knife sharpening machine	157	mobile workbench	256	paring chisels	36, 37, 38, 39	roller ball	262
knife sharpening system	143– 148	modelling tool	297	parrafin wax	284	roll-up bag	50
knife-making set	332	moisture measuring instrument	220	parting tool	182	root shears	353

root	315	sickle hoe	343	telescoping shears	352–354	workshop apron	264					
rose fork	346	sickle knife	361	tenons	315–316	<b>Z</b>  zester/grater	398					
Rosin/Legnin resin	320	sickle	364–365	thermometer	294							
rotary cutter	305	silicon carbide powder	165	thick leather	302							
roughing-out gouge	181	Silky® saw	356, 357, 359	Thiers-Issard razor	421							
router bit	197	skew chisel	182	thread trimmer	425							
router	230	slicers	398, 399	throwing axe	92							
ruler	207	slick	48–49	Tina® knife	360							
rust loosener	166	sliding bevel	216	Titebond® glue	292–293							
rust remover	166	smoothing plane	109, 116	tool carrier	252							
Rustins oil	283	snake wood	312	Tormek® Sharpening System	151–155							
Ryoba saw	16–18	Sneeboer tool	343, 347	trimming shears	349, 351							
<b>S</b>		socks	264	triple-layer steel	333							
		Sorby™ grinding machine	160–161	trowel	345							
	Sabre razors	421	spades	346	truing grille	138						
	saddle leather	302	spalted maple	308	try square	212–214						
	saddler's awl	298	spalted wood	308, 317	tung oil	281						
	safety goggles	264	spear planes	64	twist drill	231, 234						
	Saji (hunting knife)	400–402	spice mill	397	<b>U</b>							
	sanding block	276	spindle gouge	181, 184								
	sanding pad	275	spirit burner	294				Ulmia– tool	212			
	sanding system	270–271	spirit stain	288–289				Ulmia– workbench	255			
	Sashimi (knife)	370–385	splitting axe	83				universal oil	166			
	saw case	24	splitting maul	83				Usuba (knife)	370–385			
	saw for metal	32	spokeshave	114				<b>V</b>				
	saw for plastic	31	spring mitre bracket	250								
	saw guide	33–34	stabilised wood	317							variable burnisher	120
	saw guide	33–34	stabiliser	315							varnish	283, 286, 287
saw rasp	197	stag horn	323	VCI paper	165							
saw set	19	stainless steel inlay	322	vegetable knife	399							
saw vice	164	steel	333–335	vegetable slicer	398, 399							
scalpel	227	steel lapping plate	165	veneer hammer	170							
Schröckenfux® scythe	362	steel wool	275	veneer saw	27							
scraper blade	119	stiching pony	299	veneer tape	293							
scraper	120, 121	stick (metal)	325	Veritas– sharpening system II	141–142							
scroll saw	34	strap cutter	296	vice	259							
sculptor's axe	77	string	324	vice	259							
sculptor's bench	257	stronghold chuck	180	vine shears	348							
scythe	362–363	strop	163, 423	violin peg	316							
shaker peg	316	styptic pencil	423	v-parting tool	58, 62							
shaped stone	135–136, 136, 137	Suehiro® sharpening stone	136	vulcanised fibre	318							
shaping stone	124, 125	Suminagashi steel	333	<b>W</b>								
Shapton® sharpening stone	126	Svante Djärv										
sharpening aid	140–142	carving and paring knives	78				warren hoe	343				
sharpening card	136	Svante Djärv drawknife	71				Washi tape	290				
sharpening cone	137	sweater	266				Watussi horn	322				
sharpening guide	140–142	Swedish blade	329				Wax	284				
sharpening machine	151–161	swing holster	298				wenge	311				
sharpening paste	423	swivel knife	297				whetstone for scythes	363				
sharpening set	139–140	Systainer®	107				whetstone	363				
sharpening stone holder	140						Wildmarksstickan	406				
sharpening stones	124–139	<b>T</b>		wing compass	224							
sharpening wheel	155	table knife	390	wire saw	355							
shaving brush	422	tagua nut	315	wok	396							
shaving soap	423	tailor's scissors	425	wood	307–314							
shears	424–426	tape tensioner	250	wood drill	231–234, 234							
sheep shears	351	tapered chisel	48	wood file	198							
sheepskin	303	tapered drill bit	237	wood stabiliser	315							
shellac	285, 286	tea bowl	393	wooden mallet	65–66							
Shinko® sharpening machine	157	tea caddy	393	Woodpeckers® tools	206, 207							
Shinwa® tool	216	teapot	393–394	woodturning	307–314							
Shoji paper	305	Teknatool® chuck	179	Woolpower® products	266							
sickle cleaver	365	telescoping saw	360	workbench	253–257							



## Our Obligation to Inform

The contractual partner is DICTUM GmbH, Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3, 94447 Plattling, Germany  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902, Fax: +49 (0)9931 4058-800; E-mail: [info@dictum.com](mailto:info@dictum.com)  
If you have any complaints or questions regarding the contract, please contact the above address.

### 1) Prices

- 1.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Seller's product descriptions, the prices indicated are total prices and include the statutory Value Added Tax (VAT). The Seller reserves the right to adjust the prices if the VAT rate is altered. Any potential additional delivery and dispatch costs are not included in the price of the product(s) but are specified separately in the respective product description. Unless otherwise agreed, shipping costs must be borne by the Customer. For international orders, the Seller reserves the right to choose express delivery as the method of shipping if in this case the shipping costs are lower than that of standard shipping.
- 1.2 In the case of deliveries to countries outside the European Union, additional costs may be incurred in individual cases for which the Seller is not responsible and which have to be borne by the Customer. These include, for example, transfer fees charged by banking institutes (transfer charges, currency conversion fees) or import duties or taxes (customs). Such additional costs regarding money transfers may also be incurred if the Customer initiates the payment from a country outside the European Union, even if delivery is not made in a country outside the European Union.
- 1.3 The prices shown in the catalogue are valid until 31st July 2021. After 31st July 2021, the Seller reserves the right to make price adjustments due to short-term price changes introduced by suppliers, currency fluctuations or similar. Any order placed after 31st July 2021 that has not been placed through our online shop ([www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)) will be accepted on the basis of the catalogue prices (order confirmation) provided that no price alterations have been necessary. In the case of necessary price alterations, the Seller shall submit a new price offer. If the latter is the case, the contract shall only be concluded if the Customer explicitly accepts this offer within 14 days.
- 1.4 Book prices are subject to national book price maintenance. In the case of a price increase on the part of the publisher, the Seller shall be obliged to charge the new price.

### 2) Terms of Payment for Catalogue Orders

Payment in advance (a 2 % discount shall be granted if payment is made in advance by means of bank transfer; this does not apply to vouchers), invoice (15 days net without discount), direct debit. Other payment methods are available for online orders (see [www.dictum.com/de/zahlungsarten](http://www.dictum.com/de/zahlungsarten)). The Seller reserves the right to restrict the payment method to advance payment.

### 3) Shipment and Delivery Conditions

- 3.1 Goods are generally delivered to the delivery address indicated by the Customer, unless agreed otherwise.
- 3.2 If goods are delivered by freight carrier, the goods shall be delivered free to kerbside, i.e. to the public kerbside which is closest to the delivery address, unless otherwise stipulated in the shipping information displayed in the Seller's online shop or unless otherwise agreed.
- 3.3 Should the assigned transport company return the goods to the Seller because delivery to the Customer was not possible, the Customer shall bear the costs for the unsuccessful dispatch. This shall not apply if the delivery cannot be made due to circumstances beyond the Customer's control or if the Customer has been temporarily impeded from receiving the offered service, unless the Seller has notified the Customer about the service a reasonable time in advance. Furthermore, this shall not apply if the Customer effectively exercises their right of revocation. In the event that the Customer has effectively exercised their right of revocation, the provision made in the Seller's revocation policy shall apply for the return costs.
- 3.4 In the case that the Customer is a consumer, the risk of accidental destruction and accidental deterioration of the sold goods shall be transferred to the Customer upon delivery of the goods to the freight forwarder, carrier or other person or institution designated with the task of performing shipment. This notwithstanding, it shall also apply to Customers who are consumers that the risk of accidental destruction and accidental deterioration of the sold goods shall be transferred to the Customer upon delivery of the goods to the freight forwarder, carrier or other person or institution designated with the task of performing shipment if the Customer has instructed the freight forwarder, carrier or other person or institution designated with the task of performing shipment to carry out the delivery of the goods and if the choice of this person or institution was not previously offered by the Seller.
- 3.5 The Seller reserves the right to withdraw from the contract in the event of incorrect or improper self-supply. This shall only apply if the Seller is not responsible for the non-delivery and if the Seller has shown the required diligence and concluded a specific hedging transaction with the supplier. The Seller shall make all reasonable efforts to procure the goods. In the case of non-availability or partial availability of the goods, the Seller shall inform the Customer and grant the Customer immediate counterperformance.
- 3.6 Should the Customer collect the goods themselves, the Seller shall initially inform the Customer by e-mail that the goods are available for collection. After receiving the e-mail, the Customer may collect the goods from the Seller's site in consultation with the Seller. In this case, shipment costs shall not be charged.
- 3.7 Delivery to recipients in Germany shall be made within 1-3 working days, unless otherwise stated in the product description. For information on delivery times to other countries see [www.dictum.com/service](http://www.dictum.com/service)

### 4) Online Dispute Resolution

The EU Commission provides on its website the following link to an online dispute resolution (ODR) platform: <https://ec.europa.eu/consumers/odr>. This platform acts as a point of contact for out-of-court resolutions of disputes arising from online sales and service contracts concluded between consumers and traders. The Seller is neither obliged nor prepared to attend a dispute settlement procedure before an alternative consumer arbitration board.

### 5) Rectification of Defects

Should the object of purchase be deficient, statutory provisions shall apply. Deviating therefrom, the following shall apply:

- 5.1 If the Customer is a consumer, the following restriction shall apply to used goods: Claims for defects are excluded if the defect does not occur until one year after delivery of the goods. Claims for defects that occur within one year of delivery of the goods can be asserted within the statutory limitation period.
- 5.2 The aforementioned limitations of liability and the restrictions of limitation periods shall not apply
  - to products which have been used in accordance with their usual application for building construction and which have caused the building's defectiveness,
  - to claims for damages and reimbursement of expenses by the Customer, or
  - if the Seller has fraudulently concealed the defect.

### 6) Data Protection

For detailed information on data protection see [www.dictum.com/en/privacy-and-data-protection](http://www.dictum.com/en/privacy-and-data-protection)

### 7) The Customer's Right of Revocation

Consumers shall be entitled to the right of revocation according to the following provisions, whereby the consumer is any natural person entering into a legal transaction for a purpose that can predominantly be attributed neither to a commercial nor a self-employed professional activity.

## Instructions for Cancellation

### A) Right of Revocation

The Customer shall be entitled to revoke the concluded contract within a period of one month without stating reasons. The revocation period of one month shall commence upon the day when either the Customer or a third party, who has been personally named by the Customer and who is not the carrier, has taken ownership of the goods. If the Customer has ordered several goods within one joint order and the goods are delivered separately, the revocation period of one month shall commence upon the day when either the Customer or a third party, who has been personally named by the Customer and who is not the carrier, has taken ownership of the last delivered item. If the Customer has ordered an item which is delivered in several partial shipments or pieces, the revocation period of one month shall commence upon the day when either the Customer or a third party, who has been personally named by the Customer and who is not the carrier, has taken ownership of the last partial shipment or the last delivered piece. If the Customer has ordered goods which shall be delivered regularly over a specified period, the revocation period of one month shall commence upon the day when either the Customer or a third party, who has been personally named by the Customer and who is not the carrier, has taken ownership of the first delivered item. To exercise their right to cancel, the Customer must inform the Seller (DICTUM GmbH, Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3, 94447 Plattling, Germany; Tel.: +49 (0)9931 4058-902; Fax: +49 (0)9931 4058-800; E-mail: [info@dictum.com](mailto:info@dictum.com)) of their decision to cancel this contract by means of an unequivocal statement (e.g. a letter sent by post, fax or e-mail). The Customer may use the cancellation form template (B), but it is not obligatory. To meet the cancellation deadline, it is sufficient for the Customer to send their communication exercising their right to cancel before the cancellation period has expired.

### Consequences of Revocation

If the Customer revokes the contract, the Customer shall be reimbursed all payments including the shipping costs (with the exception of the supplementary costs resulting from any mode of shipment chosen by the Customer other than the offered, least expensive mode of standard shipment) without undue delay and in any event not later than 14 days after receipt of the revocation notice. The reimbursement shall be effected using the same payment method as was used for the initial transaction, unless other terms have explicitly been stipulated; the Customer shall not incur any fees as a result of such reimbursement. The Seller may withhold reimbursement until the returned goods have been received or until the Customer has supplied evidence of having sent back the goods, whichever is the earliest. The Customer shall send back the goods or hand them over without undue delay and in any event not later than 14 days from the day when the Customer has communicated the revocation of the concluded contract. The deadline shall have been met if the Customer sends back the goods before the period of 14 days has expired. The Customer shall bear the direct cost of returning the goods. Notwithstanding the foregoing provision, the Seller shall bear the costs of returning goods which are consignable by parcel post if the Customer uses the prepaid return shipping label enclosed to return the goods. If the goods cannot be shipped as a parcel, the returning costs shall be estimated corresponding to and not exceeding the initial shipping costs. If the goods cannot be shipped as a parcel, the Seller shall organise the collection of the goods from the Customer's premises if requested by the Customer. If the Customer exercises this option, the returning costs borne by the Customer shall correspond to the initially quoted shipping costs. The Customer shall only be liable for any diminished value of the goods resulting from any handling other than that which is necessary to establish the nature, characteristics and functioning of the goods.

### B) Cancellation Form Template

If you wish to cancel this contract, please complete and submit this form to:

DICTUM GmbH  
Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3  
94447 Plattling  
Germany  
Fax: +49 (0)9931 4058 800  
E-mail: [info@dictum.com](mailto:info@dictum.com)

I/We (\*) hereby give notice that I/We (\*) cancel my/our (\*) contract of sale for the following goods (\*) / for the supply of the following service (\*),

Ordered on (\*) \_\_\_\_\_ received on (\*) \_\_\_\_\_

Name of consumer(s) \_\_\_\_\_

Address of consumer(s) \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of consumer(s) (only if this form is submitted on paper) \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

(\*) Delete as appropriate

### 8) Exclusion of the Right of Revocation

The right of revocation does not apply to consumers who do not belong to a member state of the European Union at the time of the conclusion of the contract and whose sole residence and delivery address are outside the European Union at the time of the conclusion of the contract.

The right of revocation does not apply for distance contracts for

- the delivery of goods that are manufactured according to the Customer's specifications or that are clearly adapted to personal requirements, or due to their nature are not suitable for return shipment, or may deteriorate rapidly, or if after shipping their sell-by-date would be exceeded;
- the delivery of audio or video recordings or of software if the delivered data medium has been unsealed by the Customer;
- the delivery of newspapers, magazines and periodicals, unless the Customer has submitted the contractual statement by telephone;
- the provision of other services relating to leisure activities, where the contract provides for a specific date or period of time for the provision of such services.

### 9) Return and disposal

For detailed information on the return and disposal of electrical equipment in accordance with the WEEE Directive see <https://www.dictum.com/en/return-disposal>

Obligation to provide information according to Art. 18 (2) WEEE Directive:

<https://www.bmu.de/themen/wasser-abfall-wirtschaft/statistiken/elektro-und-elektronikaltgeraete/>

**Our general terms and conditions apply. You can find them at [www.dictum.com/en/general-terms-and-conditions](http://www.dictum.com/en/general-terms-and-conditions)**

# MORE THAN TOOLS - FOR CRAFTS, GARDEN AND HOUSE!

## DICTUM catalogues free of charge:

Experience the variety of DICTUM products in our categories of catalogues:

- ▶ Garden Tools (German)
- ▶ Power Tools (German)
- ▶ Woodturning (German)
- ▶ Knives (German)
- ▶ Workshop scheduler (German)

Online at [www.dictum.com/catalogues](http://www.dictum.com/catalogues)



Discover our online flip catalogues ...



... with desktop, tablet and smartphone - [www.dictum.com/catalogues](http://www.dictum.com/catalogues)



## SERVICES

### Hardness test

We test the hardness (HRC) of your knife blade at its cutting edge using the Vickers testing method, which involves very low test pressures and allows us to test the cutting edge without damaging it. You will receive a test certificate with impression images and the Vickers values converted to HRC.

Fee for the hardness test plus test certificate ..... **€15.00**

For further information on our hardness test see [www.dictum.com/service](http://www.dictum.com/service)

### Hardening service

We offer customers a qualified blade hardening service (up to 100 cm). The service includes a free original test certificate with the exact hardness value of the cutting edge in HRC (Rockwell). This will provide you a clear understanding of the actual end hardness of your blade after hardening.

Fee for the hardening service plus test certificate ..... **€29.90**

For further information on our hardening service see [www.dictum.com/service](http://www.dictum.com/service)

## DELIVERY COSTS (PRIVATE CLIENTS)

### Delivery within Germany

**Delivery free of charge** for orders over €150.00 (including 19 % VAT).

For orders below this amount a €4.95 (€4.16 + 19 % VAT) shipping charge including P&P will be added.

### Express delivery:

Express deliveries on the next working day are guaranteed only for orders placed til 2 pm by phone. For express deliveries we will charge additional shipping costs of €13.00 (€10.92 + 19 % VAT).

### Delivery to other countries

Please find information on delivery costs to other countries at [www.dictum.com/delivery-costs](http://www.dictum.com/delivery-costs)

### General sharpening service

Our sharpening experts - who are trained in Japan - are happy to sharpen your blades at discount prices.

Knives (full flat grind of hunting and carving knives only on request) ..... **€7.00**

Axes, plane blades, woodturning tools, carving and sculpting tools, scissors ..... **€9.00**

Chisels (only bevel and honing the back) ..... **€6.00**

Chisels (bevel and back) ..... **€13.00**

*Inclusive additional **trueing** and **polishing** of the back\**

Plane blades (bevel and »Ruler trick«\*\* on the back of the blade) ..... **€6.00**

Plane blades (bevel and back) ..... **€13.00**

*Inclusive additional **trueing** and **polishing** of the back\**

Garden and hedge shears ..... **€12.00**

Hair cutting scissors (only products from our range) and razors ..... **€19.00**

*For extremely time-consuming sharpening processes that require additional effort, we reserve the right add a surcharge of € 7.00. In this case, our sharpening expert will get in touch with you before starting the work.*

*If products are sharpened prior to dispatch on the customer's instructions (special order), these are excluded from the right of return and exchange.*

*\* When sharpening Japanese blades, the hollow grinding may be reduced depending on the original flatness of the back.*

*Plus shipping charges (prices include VAT).*

### \*\*»Ruler trick« - The Lie-Nielsen Method

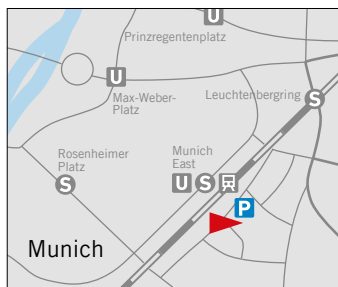
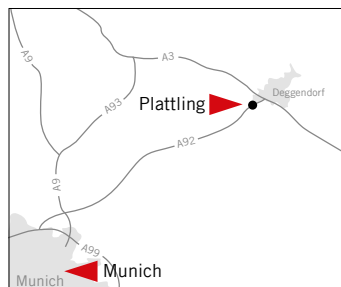
A thin steel ruler is placed along the long edge of a fine-grit honing stone and the very tip of the back of the blade polished along the opposite long edge of the stone. See expert knowledge »Sharpening Plane Blades« at [www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

**Sharpening advice:** +49 (0)9931 4058-971

If you wish to use our Sharpening Service, please send the blades to be sharpened along with the properly completed Sharpening Order Form (available at [www.dictum.com/schaerfauftrag](http://www.dictum.com/schaerfauftrag)) to DICTUM GmbH • Sharpening Service • Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3 • 94447 Plattling • Germany. We will return your sharpened cutting tool within a few days. You only have to pay the shipping costs.

**TIP:** Products with this symbol can be sharpened by our experts free of charge. For further information about our free sharpening service, see page 4.





## Dictum Retail shops

- ▶ **Touch and try** for as long as you want
- ▶ **Stay a while and relax** in our reading corner with a cup of coffee or tea

### Dictum Shop Plattling

Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3  
94447 Plattling  
Germany

#### Telephone

+49 (0)9931 4058-410

**P** Free parking

### Dictum Shop Munich

Haager Str. 9, II<sup>nd</sup> floor  
81671 Munich  
Germany

#### Telephone

+49 (0)89 638908-91

**P** Free parking (adjoining multi-storey car park, top floor D; direct access to our shop)

## Dictum Workshops

[www.dictum.com/workshops](http://www.dictum.com/workshops)

Learn how to expertly handle tools, materials, and techniques in the stimulating environment of one of our workshop centres.

## Dictum Tool Knowledge Blog (in german)

[www.dictum.com/blog](http://www.dictum.com/blog)

The Dictum Tool Knowledge Blog provides you with access to one of our most important knowledge platforms. Our experts will guide you through all you need to know about woodwork and sharpening tasks.

## Dictum Handicraft Gallery (in german)

[www.dictum-handwerksgalerie.de](http://www.dictum-handwerksgalerie.de)

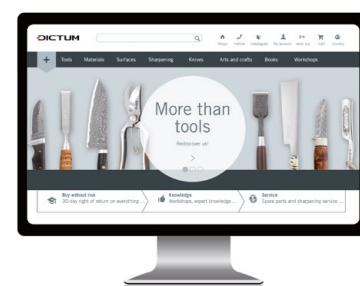
Get inspired by the items produced by our customers and employees. Our handicraft gallery contains thrilling DIY objects and projects. We would love you to add your projects to those on display there!

## Onlineshop

[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

In our online shop you will find:

- ▶ New products
- ▶ Interesting offers
- ▶ A wide range of products
- ▶ Lots of useful tips and tricks
- ▶ Helpful expert knowledge



## Der Dictum Newsletter:

**Subscribe, keep up to date, benefit**

[www.dictum.com/newsletter](http://www.dictum.com/newsletter)

**A newsletter you will really benefit from:**

- ▶ Exciting new products
- ▶ Selected offers and promotions **for subscribers only**
- ▶ New video tutorials and blog posts
- ▶ Creative hands-on activities and raffles
- ▶ Tips and tricks on how to handle your tools correctly
- ▶ And much more

As a subscriber, you will also benefit from **limited price advantages** on **selected new products!** Benefit from exclusive offers – subscribe to our newsletter!

It is also important to us that we compile and distribute our newsletter with careful consideration. As ever, Dictum is about quality, not quantity!

## Always up to date: our social media channels!

**Facebook - Instagram - YouTube**

This is where handicraft lovers can meet like-minded people, comment, and exchange ideas. Our YouTube channel provides you with a variety of information videos and practical tutorials on a wide range of craft topics.



[Dictum.MehrAlsWerkzeug](https://www.facebook.com/Dictum.MehrAlsWerkzeug)



[dictum\\_mehr\\_als\\_werkzeug](https://www.instagram.com/dictum_mehr_als_werkzeug)



[DictumGmbH](https://www.youtube.com/DictumGmbH)



[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com)

Order Hotline:  
Telephone: +49 (0)9931 4058-902  
Fax: +49 (0)9931 4058-800  
DICTUM GmbH • Gottlieb-Daimler-Str. 3 • 94447 Plattling • Germany  
[www.dictum.com](http://www.dictum.com) • [info@dictum.com](mailto:info@dictum.com)

Version March 2021



Value €5.00